![USGS logo - science for a changing world]

ArcView Coal Evaluation User's Guide

By William Watson

U.S. Department of the Interior
U.S. Geological Survey

U.S. Department of the Interior
DIRK KEMPTHORNE, Secretary

U.S. Geological Survey
Mark D. Myers, Director

U.S. Geological Survey, Reston, Virginia 2007

Table of Contents

ArcView Coal Evaluation User's Guide

By William Watson [1]

Chapter 1.
INTRODUCTION TO THE ACE USERS GUIDE

Purpose: This chapter provides a brief outline of the main features of the ArcView Coal Evaluation (ACE) Users Guide.

Overview: The methodology of the ACE Users Guide is reviewed. Hardware and software requirements are reviewed. The main topics/analytic steps in each chapter of the ACE Users Guide are outlined. The chapter has a set of "frequently asked questions" (FAQ's) and references to the pages in the ACE Users Guide where these FAQ's are addressed. A short list of GIS references to supplement the Users Guide is found at the end of the chapter.

---

[1] Current affiliation:
Coal Team Leader
Energy Information Administration
U.S. Department of Energy
1001 Independence Ave., SW,
Washington, D.C.   20585
Phone: (202) 287-1971
Fax: (202) 287-1934
Email: William.watson@eia.doe.gov

Methodology

The geologic coverages developed in the National Coal Resource Assessment (NCRA) are the starting coverages used in the Geographic Information Systems (GIS) evaluation of coal resources. These coverages or layers include:

- isopach or coal bed thickness
- structure contour or elevation at the top of the bed
- thickness of coal partings
- point data on coal sulfur and heat content
- areal extent of the original coal resource
- areal extent of the remaining coal resource
- areal extent of mined-out areas

The objective of the ACE is to estimate the amount and location of coal available to be mined by various coal mining technologies. Availability is determined by the amount of remaining coal as reduced by
- technical restrictions to mining determined on the basis of slope, proximity, thickness, and overburden
- social and environmental restrictions determined on the basis of federal and state regulations, and industry practice

The categories into which remaining mineable coal resources are allocated for future mining include

- Contour Strip Mines	12-36 inches in coal thickness
- Contour Strip Mines	> 36 inches in coal thickness
- Small Area Surface Mines	12 inches and greater, coal thickness
- Auger Mines	12-36 inches in coal thickness
- Auger Mines	> 36 inches in coal thickness
- Longwall Mines	42-72 inches in coal thickness
- Longwall Mines	72-96 inches in coal thickness
- Longwall Mines	> 96 inches in coal thickness
- Room and Pillar Continuous Miner	24-42 inches in coal thickness
- Room and Pillar Continuous Miner	42-72 inches in coal thickness
- Room and Pillar Continuous Miner	72-96 inches in coal thickness
- Room and Pillar Continuous Miner	> 96 inches in coal thickness

The ACE Users Guide uses the Pittsburgh coal bed as an example application. However, the methods are applicable to any other coal bed. There could be different types of mining technology in other applications. The Users Guide provides many examples of how to apply technical limits based upon mining technology. The methods, which are iterative for any given mining technology, should transfer directly by mining technology to other coal beds.

The analysis begins by using the extent of the remaining Pittsburgh bed as the starting coverage. The remaining Pittsburgh is reduced by the area where coal has a thickness less than 12 inches. Coal less than 12 inches in thickness is not mineable by any mining technology. Then the resulting layer is reduced by a 50 foot safety barrier around the historic mined-out area. The 50 foot safety barrier represents industry and regulatory practice to meet mine safety standards.

The remaining Pittsburgh bed, reduced by coal less than 12 inches in thickness and by coal in safety barriers, then is allocated to the various mining technologies. We follow the order indicated by the technology list above: contour strip mines, small area surface mines, auger mines, longwall mines, and room and pillar mines using continuous miners. The evaluation by mining technology starts with surface mining methods. We assign coal primarily at the outcrop or the boundary of remaining coal to surface mining. The assignment then is made for underground technologies starting with longwall mining. We assign as much of the underground mineable coal as possible to longwall mining because longwall mining is the lowest cost underground technology. Room and pillar mining considers all coal not assigned to any of the other technologies. In each case coal is consolidated into coal resource blocks to determine whether there is enough coal to support a minimum-size operation.

Within each mining technology category, the coal passes through these filters as appropriate:

- a thickness filter
- an overburden filter if underground mineable
- a stripping ratio filter if surface mineable
- a filter for surface slope if surface mineable
- a filter for bed slope if underground mineable
- a filter for social and environmental restrictions

The available mineable coal by mining technology (coal that remains after the various filters are applied) is parsed into **coal resource blocks** appropriate for the specific mining technology. When there is **not enough** contiguous coal (underground mineable) or nearby coal (surface mineable) to support a minimum size mine for the specific technology, the coal is assigned to the category, **fragmented coal**. After the estimate of mineable coal is completed, we delineate the coal in safety barriers.

For each of the **coal resource blocks** assigned to a mining technology, we estimate coal quality characteristics:

- average thickness (inches)
- average overburden (ft)
- average parting (inches)
- average sulfur content (%)
- average heat content (Btu/lb)

These estimates are based upon the geologic coverages determined in the NCRA.

The minimum sizes for mines are based upon the configurations of mining technology in COALVAL. Mine life is set equal to the life of the longest-lived equipment having significant cost. The minimum size mine (in units of tons of resources) then is calculated using the technology-specific values for tons of raw coal handled per year, recovery rate, and mine life.

Every time coal is assigned to a mineable technology category, safety barrier, or to a restriction category (technical, social or environmental), the coal is removed from the latest updated layer of remaining coal. This procedure keeps a running tab or materials balance account of all assignments of remaining Pittsburgh coal.

After coal is estimated for the last mining technology, a final breakdown of remaining coal is made to account for any residual categories for which estimates have not been made up to that point.

Overall, the procedure can be likened to "peeling and sectioning an orange." The orange is the amount of coal remaining as determined in the National Coal Resource Assessment. As we remove coal that is not mineable (parts of the skin peeled away) we keep an account of why those parts are not mineable. The sections of the mineable coal "orange" not large enough to support a minimum-size mining operation are assigned to the fragmented coal category. Social and environmental restrictions are represented by sections set aside for special purposes. We tag and weigh all the parts of the orange to build a record of where all the parts of the coal "orange" go.

Chapters 6 through 10 of the ACE Users Guide walk you through the assessment of coal resources by mining technology.

Getting Ready

Before assessment can be undertaken a number of preparatory steps are required:

- establish a working directory that is used throughout the analysis**;** keeps all our coverages and data organized in a single folder

- decide upon a projection and projection parameters for all the coverages to be built; normally would be the projection used in the NCRA

- decide upon the grid size for grid coverages; set at 16 meters on a side for the evaluation of the Pittsburgh bed

- determine counties where remaining coal is located; helps us to efficiently download data used to map the areas restricted by social and environmental limits

- download data to build coverages of the social and environmental restrictions

- delineate the restricted areas including relevant buffers around restricted areas

- convert vector coverages of restricted areas to grid coverages; needed for the efficient assessment of unrestricted available coal

- add NCRA coverages, including mined out, thickness, partings, and elevation at the top of the bed

- add a Digital Elevation Model and use it with the bed elevation layer to build a coverage of overburden

- build a coverage of surface slope (less than or equal to 32 degrees vs. > 32 degrees)

- build a coverage of bed slope (less than or equal to 12 degrees vs. > 12 degrees)

- reduce the remaining Pittsburgh coal bed layer by coal with thickness less than 12 inches and by coal in a 50 foot safety barrier around the mined-out areas

- create a grid layer of coal thicknesses for cells 16 meters on a side; used to determine whether coal meets thickness filters

- create a layer that has tons of coal as the value in each cell of the coverages; used to calculate the coal tonnage in various categorized layers

- create a layer of coal partings for cells 16 meters on a side; used to calculate partings for the coal assigned by mining technology

- create a layer of all social and environmental restrictions; used to determine social and environmental restrictions when coal by mining technology is assessed

Chapters 1 through 5 of the ACE Users Guide walks you through the preparatory steps.

Hardware and Software Requirements

Hardware Requirements

Both minimum and suggested hardware requirements are provided:

	Minimum	Suggested
Operating System	Windows 95 or 98	Windows NT
Random Access Memory (RAM)	32 mb	256+ mb
CPU Processor Speed	166 mhz	450+ mhz
Hard Drive Capacity	5 gb	20+ gb
Video Card	8 mb	16+ mb
Storage/Backup	Tape Drive	Jaz 2 gb

The Users Guide was designed using the low end of the suggested configuration. The longest time to complete the most compute-intensive operations was about 10 minutes. The minimum configuration would work but with long wait times for some operations.

Many of the files created in a coal assessment are large. It will be necessary to store files off-line after a specific regional assessment is completed to keep systems operational. A Jaz drive is an efficient way to accomplish off-line storage. The Jaz drive can be set up to run the projects that you build in carrying out an assessment. In some cases, you may want to work solely with a Jaz drive. However, if you do, make sure you make duplicate Jaz disks as you move along. There are some GIS files that appear to be incompatible with the Jaz operating software so you may have to restore your files to the C drive to run your ArcView projects.

Software Requirements

ArcView (version 3.1 or latest version which, as of Dec. 1999, is version 3.2)
Spatial Analyst extension (latest version) to ArcView
Excel
Internet Browser
WinZip or comparable utility
WS_Ftp or comparable utility

Chapter Overviews

Chapter 2

In chapter 2, we establish a working directory, set projection parameters, and determine counties where remaining coal is located. The county list is our guide when we download coverages for social and environmental restrictions.

Chapter 3

In chapter 3, we download and add coverages for features where coal mining is restricted. The projection and datum of the restriction layers are changed to the target projection and datum. Vector layers are converted to grid layers. Using the "expand " request, we add buffers to the protected features. The coverages cover the extent defined by the counties included on the list prepared in Chapter 2.

Chapter 4

In chapter 4, we download coverages (e.g., from the National Coal Resource Assessment), including mined out extent, thickness, elevation at the top of the bed, and partings. We add a Digital Elevation Model and use it to estimate overburden. We reduce the coverage of remaining coal by a safety barrier around the mined-out extent. Coal must be at least 12 inches thick to be mined by any method. We create a net coverage of remaining coal by reducing remaining coal both by the safety barrier and by coal with thickness less than 12 inches. Coverages for slope restrictions are created. This includes areas where surface slope exceeds 32 degrees (a restriction to surface mining), and areas where bed slope exceeds 12 degrees (a restriction to underground mining).

Chapter 5

In chapter 5, we estimate available coal. The coverages for areas restricted to coal are netted out of the remaining coal coverage to determine <u>available</u> coal. We estimate coal in each of the restricted areas, in safety buffers, and in thickness less than 12 inches. These estimates are subtracted from the coal in the remaining Pittsburgh bed to estimate available coal. <u>These estimates are a preliminary estimate of coal availability</u>. Remaining chapters apply mining

technologies to the remaining Pittsburgh bed. As a result of blocking the coal for prospective mining, we identify various technical limits that further reduce and, indeed, re-consolidate the restrictions on the remaining Pittsburgh coal to arrive at available coal. The final estimates and the final restriction categories are described in Chapter 10.

Chapter 6

In chapter 6, we estimate coal available for prospective mining by surface mining methods and by thickness within surface mining methods. We apply technical limits. We apply social and environmental restrictions. Coal is blocked into units for mining by grouping small contiguous blocks when separation distance between small blocks is approximately 2 miles or less. We test to see if total coal in consolidated coal resource blocks exceeds required resources for the smallest mine size. If not, the coal is removed from consideration but is included in later analysis to form consolidated coal blocks for underground mining.

Chapter 7

In chapter 7, we estimate coal available for prospective mining by auger mining methods and by thickness within the auger method. We assume that coal is auger mined as a 50 foot extension of the area where strip mining stops. The coal in areas restricted by social and environmental limits is then removed from the coal targeted for auger mining. We check to see if there is enough coal to support a minimum-sized mining operation.

Chapter 8

In chapter 8, we estimate coal available for prospective mining by longwall mining methods and by thickness within the longwall method. We identify and analyze contiguous blocks of coal to determine whether they have total tonnage at least equal to the required resources for a minimum-size mine. To help that process, a square grid is superimposed on top of the coal targeted for longwall mining. The superimposed grid has an orientation of about 20 degrees to the northwest similar to historic Pittsburgh longwall mines. Each square cell of the grid has about 50 million tons of coal when it is completely filled in with coal. However, cells with large amounts of restricted coal and cells that are cutoff at the edge of the Pittsburgh bed have smaller amounts of coal. As appropriate, when the coal is contiguous, the cells with smaller tonnages are combined to form a consolidated coal resource block. The coal in restricted areas is then removed from the coal in each of the resource blocks. We test to see if each coal resource block has enough coal to support a minimum-size mine. If not, the coal is removed from consideration but is included in later analysis to form coal blocks for room and pillar underground mines using continuous miners.

Chapter 9

In chapter 9, we estimated coal available for prospective mining by room and pillar methods

using continuous miners, and by thickness within the room and pillar method. We identify and analyze contiguous blocks of coal to determine whether they have total tonnage at least equal to the required resources for a minimum-size mine. Similar to the procedure in Chapter 8, we superimpose a grid with an orientation of about 20 degrees to help us analyze resources in coal resource blocks. Each square cell of the grid has about 50 million tons of coal when it is completely filled in with coal. However, cells with large amounts of restricted coal and cells that are cutoff at the edge of the Pittsburgh bed have smaller amounts of coal. As appropriate, when the coal is contiguous, the cells with smaller tonnages are combined to form a consolidated coal resource block. The coal in restricted areas is then removed from the coal in each of the resource blocks. We test to see if each coal resource block has enough coal to support a minimum-size mine. If not, the coal is removed from consideration.

Chapter 10

In chapter 10, we estimate coal in any remaining category where we don't have an estimate to this point. These categories include (1) coal which meets thickness and overburden technical requirements for **longwall extraction** but is not mineable because the slope of the bed exceeds 12 degrees; (2) coal which meets thickness and overburden technical requirements for **room and pillar extraction** but is not mineable because the slope of the bed exceeds 12 degrees; (3) coal which meets thickness and overburden technical requirements for contour strip mining but is not mineable because the slope of the surface exceeds 32 degrees; (4) coal that is not mineable because it has thickness between 12 and 24 inches and an overburden ratio greater than 20 to 1 (too thin for room and pillar and too deep for contour strip mining); (5) coal over 24 inches in thickness with overburden less than 100 feet (cannot use room and pillar) and an overburden ratio greater than 20 to 1 (cannot use contour strip mining); (6) all other remaining coal in blocks too small for mining by any of the technologies, termed fragmented coal. Analysis is applied to estimate the coal in each category. The coal is subtracted from the latest estimate of remaining coal in order to maintain an "adding up" check on our methods. Also, we calculate the amount of coal in areas where social and environmental restrictions apply. These estimates are made for the coal assigned to each mining technology and to coal that is determined to be fragmented. We summarize the results and provide final estimates that add up to the tons of coal in the remaining Pittsburgh coal bed.

Frequently Asked Questions

Question 1: How can I make sure that all the files I create in an assessment are placed in a single folder or directory on my PC?

Answer 1: At the beginning of each step of the assessment, you should set a <u>working directory</u>. The working directory is the folder where ArcView stores all your files. See page 2-1.

Question 2: What should I use as a projection for my coverages?

Answer 2:   The basic geologic coverages that you use in an assessment will have a projection. The projection and its parameters will be included in the metadata for the geologic coverages. It is advisable to use that projection for your assessment. This maintains consistency between the various data sets that the public may wish to use. See page 2-2.

Question 3:   How do I project the coverages that I add so that they match the projection of the geologic coverages that I start with?

Answer 3: If the coverages you add are vector (point, line, or polygon) coverages, then they can be re-projected using the ArcView Projector Extension. You make the extension active and provide information in response to Projector queries. You will need to know the initial projection of the data that you are adding in order to change the projection. Most data have metadata where the projection is recorded. It is advisable to obtain the metadata and place it in a binder as you proceed through your assessment. See pages 2-1 and 2-2.
        If the coverages you add are grid (cell) coverages, then you will need to add an extension downloadable from ESRI's ArcScripts. The extension is called Grid Projector. After you download and unzip the extension add it to c:\esri\av_gis30\arcview\ext32. It then will appear as an extension in the list under the View Menu. It works just like the vector Projector extension. See p. 8-11 for instructions on how to attach to the ESRI ArcScripts site.

Question 4: What is a datum? What should I be doing with respect to the datums for my coverages?

Answer 4: A datum is an origin point and other triangulated points built off the origin point. These points are used along with an idealized representation of the spherical Earth to project spatial data. You need to have all of your coverages in the same <u>projection</u> and in the same <u>datum</u>. Metadata ordinarily identifies the datum for the coverage. The Users Guide provides instructions on how to download and apply a utility to change datums. See p. 2-11 through 2-13, and p 2-15 through 2-17. ArcView 3.2 has a built-in procedure for changing datums.

Question 5:   Since much of the analysis is performed using cell coverages, how do I determine an appropriate cell size for the analysis?

Answer 5: Cell size is determined as a matter of convenience for the analysis. The data set with the largest cell size determines the resolution of the data used in your analysis. For example, if your DEM is 100 meter data and your bed elevation coverage is for 300 meter cells then an overburden coverage derived from the 2 coverages cannot be more accurate than the 300 meter data. The width of buffers around restricted areas is an important consideration for setting cell size. The "expand" request is used to build buffers. An expand of 1, expands the selected feature by the width of 1 cell. Therefore, if you want a 50 foot buffer and multiples of 50 feet for other buffers, then a cell size of 50 feet would be an expeditious choice. If you work in feet, then the map units for your projected data must be in feet. See discussion, p. 2-14 though 2-15.

Question 6: Where do I obtain the data representing social and environmental restrictions to coal mining?

Answer 6: The data are found in several places: (1) ESRI ArcData Online; (2) ESRI Data and Maps; (3) the USGS Oil and Gas Assessment; and (4) EIA. Chapter 3 of the Users Guide walks you through the steps to download data from the various sources, reproject it, convert it to grid, and buffer the restricted areas. The data described in the Users Guide are at a 1:100,000 scale.

Question 7: What are the good-practice strategies I should use to name and catalog my data and coverages?

Answer 7: Here are some of the basics: (1) for any data obtained from external sources, obtain a copy of its metadata and place the metadata in a binder; (2) ArcView assigns a default name to the coverages you create; you should record these names as you go along; (3) at the end of each major analytic step you should use the ArcView Data Source Manager to rename newly-created coverages and data files; (4) at the end of each major analytic step you should delete any coverages that are not needed. At the end of each chapter (starting with Chapter 3), the Users Guide prompts you to rename and consolidate files.

Question 8: What assurance do I have that the commands are producing the result I want or expect?

Answer 8: Many times you will be able to see visually that the command has worked as advertised. You start with a coverage. You run a request to alter the coverage. You can zoom into the new coverage to see if the outcome is correct. Also, an "adding-up" rule is imposed. Each time we finish with the assignment of coal to a specific category, we subtract that coal from the layer that contains unassigned coal. The coal in the updated "remaining' unassigned layer should, of course, be equal to the coal in previous remaining layer reduced by the coal just assigned. The Users Guide walks you through a series of adding-up checks.

Question 9: A lot of the data for social and environmental restrictions is organized by county. Doesn't that mean that we will have to handle many data sets to complete the assessment?

Answer 9: Yes, the data files for streams, populated places, and water bodies are aggregated to the county level and have to be downloaded separately. However, early in the process of analysis we use ArcView's Geoprocessing Wizard to merge the county files into a single coverage file. Thereafter, additional processing is performed on the single file. In general, our approach is to merge pieces into a single coverage to cut down on the number of files handled in the analysis.

Question 10: Should I be careful about how the software resamples data as I move from floating point to integer grids and from an initial cell size to a different cell size.

Answer 10: Yes, absolutely. You need to be aware of how the data could be changed according

to the resampling method applied. At appropriate places, the Users Guide discusses alternate resampling methods and provides guidance on the appropriate choice.

Question 11: Aren't we handling a lot of data? Shouldn't I expect some operations to take a long time?

Answer 11: The data files and coverages are large. We minimize processing time by converting floating point grids to integer grids which process a lot faster. When we perform an integer request against data, the data are truncated. To maintain significance, we often multiply the initial data by 10 or 100 so that after truncation we do not loose information. Then to obtain final results, we divide through or adjust labels to account for movement of the decimal point. With a 450 mhz processor, the longest running operation is about 10 minutes. Most requests are completed in a matter of seconds.

Question 12: Isn't it difficult and complex to calculate the tons of coal in various coverages and coal characteristics such as sulfur content in various coverages?

Answer 12: Estimation of coal tonnage and coal quality is not at all difficult. The procedure for estimating tons is to create a grid coverage that has <u>tons of coal by cell</u> as the cell value. This calculation is straightforward: tons are the product of area, thickness, and density. A coverage of tonnage by cell is obtained by transforming the thickness coverage by multiplying it by cell area and coal thickness. Then for any given coverage or part of a coverage, we obtain tons of coal in the coverage by running "Summarize Zones", a selection under the Analysis Menu. We sum in the coverage of tons by cell, over all the cells in the selected zone. Similar procedures are used to estimate coal characteristics for specific coverages. See discussion of steps used to create a coverage of tons by cell, p. 4-17 through 4-18. The request, Summarize Zones, is used over and over again in the Users Guide to estimate tons and coal quality characteristics.

Question 13: Assume you have removed the safety barrier around mined-out coal and the coal less than 12 inches in thickness from the remaining Pittsburgh. Then assume you remove the area with social and environmental restrictions. Is the coal that is left a good estimate of **available** remaining coal?

Answer 13: In the case of the Pittsburgh bed, the estimate is not a good estimate of available remaining coal. By identifying areas according to mining technology and accounting for technical limits we obtain a much different estimate of available remaining coal. One advantage of our regional assessment of an entire bed, is that we can identify contiguous coal blocks that are large enough to support economically viable mining operations. The outlying areas of the remaining Pittsburgh contain significant blocks of coal that are too small for viable mining operations.

Question 14: Out of the entire block of remaining underground mineable coal how do I find the smaller individual blocks of coal made up of contiguous coal?

Answer 14: We begin the process of assigning coal to various mining technologies by (1) imposing certain conditions on the slope of the bed (e.g., equal to or less than 12 degrees) and (2) by identifying coal within certain thickness ranges (e.g., equal to or greater than 42 inches and equal to or less than 72 inches). Then on that layer we run a RegionGroup request. This request assigns a unique identification number to each group of cells in the layer that are contiguous. In the case of longwall mining, we set one of the arguments of the RegionGroup request so that only orthogonal neighboring cells are included. In the case of room and pillar mining, we search for orthogonal and diagonal neighboring cells. See p. 8-44 for an example. The request, RegionGroup, is used in many places in the Users Guide.

Question 15: In the case of the Pittsburgh (and perhaps other beds), there is a large area of remaining coal available for longwall mining. How do I group the coal into resource blocks at a size that represents coal needed for a unified mining operation?

Answer 15: We superimpose a grid on the longwall area that splits the area into cells that contain (when the grid cell is totally coal) enough coal for production at the rates in table 7-1, p. 7-2. However, the cells have restricted areas and some cells (at the edge of the longwall area) are not complete. Thus, many cells contain coal that would support fewer years of production. At a minimum, each coal block must have at least enough coal to support a minimum-size mine as specified in table 7-1, column 6. Because we are conducting a regional analysis based on limited data, the superimposed grid to form mineable coal blocks is sized to have coal for several individual mines. The procedures for creating the grid and rotating the grid (to match historic orientations of mines) are found on p. 8-11 through 8-39.

Question 16: Within a mining technology, the coal is analyzed by various thickness categories. This approach suggest that the operations are repeated for each thickness category. Are there automatic procedures that can be applied?

Answer 16: Not at this time. There is a set procedure to assess the coal within thickness and mining technology categories. The procedure has 13 steps: (1) starting from a coverage that meets mineability requirements for a given mining technology, create a layer that contains the area with coal in a specific thickness range, (2) superimpose the coal resource block grid on the layer, (3) run the RegionGroup request to delineate contiguous coal resource blocks, (4) delete the coal resource blocks when the tons of coal are less than the amount needed for a minimum-size mine, (5) convert the resulting grid to a shapefile, (6) use editing tools to delete all the restricted areas for the deleted coal resource blocks, (7) use editing tools to union and split coal resource blocks to sizes consistent with the maximum and minimum sizes for viable mining operations, (8) convert final shapefile to a grid that contains coal resource blocks net of restricted areas, (9) update the latest remaining coal layer by removing coal allocated to the thickness category, (10) estimate tons of coal in the outside safety barrier, (11) estimate tons of coal in interior safety barriers, (12) update the latest remaining coal layer by removing the coal allocated to outside safety barriers, and (13) estimate coal characteristics. This series of steps is repeated for each thickness category. It is likely that automatic procedures will be included in the next

version of the Users Guide. The automatic approach will be enabled through query windows that guide the user through the various steps.

Question 17: It appears that tracking the coal in restricted areas coupled with the coal ultimately found to be available for mining under the various mining technologies is very complicated . How is that accomplished?

Answer 17: This was a challenge. It is necessary to keep the cells that fall into the restricted areas in a separate category with a unique cell value. That allows us to estimate the coal net of restricted tons and check whether contiguous blocks are large enough to support viable mining operations. But it also carries along restricted areas coupled with the coal that ultimately passes through the various mineability filters. When we arrive near the end of the assessment each final thickness category (within mining technologies) contains the area that is restricted to coal mining. We can union all of these cells together (across thickness and technology layers) to obtain total restricted tonnage or analyze the restrictions for the individual thickness layers.

Question 18: How is the coal estimated for individual restriction categories?

Answer 18: We apply a weeding process that provides a mutually exclusive estimate of coal in each restriction category. Because some coal is restricted under several categories, it is necessary to follow a priority or hierarchy that gives an ordered precedence for each restriction category relative to all other restriction categories. The weeding process is described on pp. 5-23 through 5-25.

Question 19: How important are technical mineability requirements in the determination of coal available for future prospective mining?

Answer 19: In the case of the Pittsburgh bed, the tonnage of coal set aside under technical limits in total was about 4 times larger than the coal set aside by social and environmental restrictions. The largest technical category was coal in fragmented blocks too small to be mined by any method. Other "in-between" categories were also found to be significant. For example, coal with thicknesses between 12 and 24 inches with a stripping ratio greater than 20 to 1, or coal too deep to be mined by surface methods. Another example, is coal with thickness greater than 24 inches, overburden less than 100 feet and stripping ratio greater than 20 to 1, or coal too shallow for room and pillar methods and too deep for surface mining. Relative to the earlier quadrangle studies of availability, the regional assessment of an entire bed has the added capability to identify coal in these categories. See pp.10-53 through 10–54 for a summary of the estimates for the Pittsburgh bed.

Question 20: Following the procedures in the Users Guide, how long does it take to complete a coal availability assessment to the level of coal by mining technology?

Answer 20: Let's assume you have assembled the following geologic layers and placed them in a

folder on your PC:

> extent of mined-out coal
> extent of remaining coal
> a grid coverage of coal thickness
> a grid coverage of partings
> a grid coverage of elevation at the top of the bed
> a DEM

Starting from that point it takes approximately 2 weeks to work through the procedures of the Users Guide to complete a coal availability assessment.

Application to Other Beds

This Users Guide provides a template of methods and an organized procedure, which are applicable to other coal beds. The Users Guide assesses the Pittsburgh coal bed to illustrate a somewhat lengthy GIS process to estimate available coal.   In application to other coal beds, parameters may be different. For example, the economic thickness cutoff for the Pittsburgh is set at 12 inches. Many other Appalachian coal beds have an economic thickness cutoff of 14 inches. An assessment of a bed with a 14 inch cutoff would apply ACE methods but would use the 14 inch parameter value rather than the 12 inch value appropriate for the Pittsburgh coal bed. Each ACE application should use parameter values appropriate for the specific coal bed being assessed.

References

It is advisable to have the following books on hand. On occasion you may find it necessary to check the indices of these references and review GIS requests/procedures used in the assessment. The ArcView online help menu also should be consulted. Online help is very thorough. The reference books provide elaboration beyond the online guidance.

1. Environmental Systems Research Institute, Inc. 1998. **Introduction to ArcView GIS**, Redlands, California.

2. Environmental Systems Research Institute Inc., 1998. **Working with ArcView Spatial Analyst**, Redlands, California.

3. Environmental Systems Research Institute, Inc. 1996. **Using ArcView GIS**, Redlands, California.

4. Environmental Systems Research Institute, Inc. 1998. **Getting to Know ArcView GIS**, Redlands, California.

Chapter 2. SETUP

Purpose: In this chapter, we establish a working directory, set projection parameters, and determine counties where remaining coal is located. The county list is our guide when we download coverages for social and environmental restrictions.

Step 1: Open New ArcView Project and Set Working Directory

Add New View.

Under File Menu
> Set Working Directory (choose folder with convenient name):
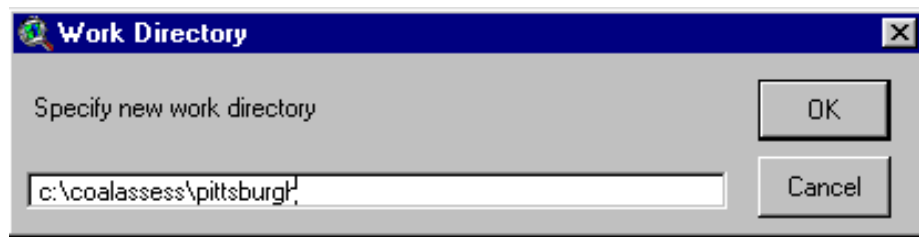
Under File Menu
> Save Project As (choose convenient name, e.g.: c:\coalassess\pittsburgh\proj1)**.**

Step 2: Determine Projection for Project

Ordinarily, the projection will be the same projection as used for the base geologic data. Record the projection parameters on a sheet and tape that sheet to a surface visible to you when you are working on your PC. Many digital datasets, coverages, or themes will each have to be projected. You will have to enter these projection parameters into ArcView's Projector Extension Dialogue Windows at the time you reproject a theme.

To make the Projector Extension available to the project follow these steps:

1. In Windows Explorer browse to
> > c:\esri\av_gis30\ arcview\samples\ext

> > Copy **prjctr.avx**

> > Paste to

> > c:\esri\av_gis30\arcview\ext32

Under the file menu

Click Extensions

Check toggle box for **Projector!**

If you are successful, a new icon with a north arrow will appear on the right-hand-side of the ArcView Button Bar

2. Hereafter, anytime you want to reproject a theme, you click the Projector button. The Projector extension will open dialogues to guide you through the projection process.

3. You will need to know the existing projection for the theme and the desired or target projection. As indicated above, the target projection ordinarily is the same projection as the one used for the base geologic data. For example, in the Pittsburgh project, the following projection parameters from the base geologic data (found in the metadata for the Pittsburgh assessment), were used:

Category: Projections of the United States
Type: Albers Equal-Area (Conterminous U.S.)
Spheroid: Clarke 1866
Central Meridian: -80.75
Reference Latitude: 23.0
Standard Parallel 1:   29.5
Standard Parallel 2:   45.5
Map Units: Meters
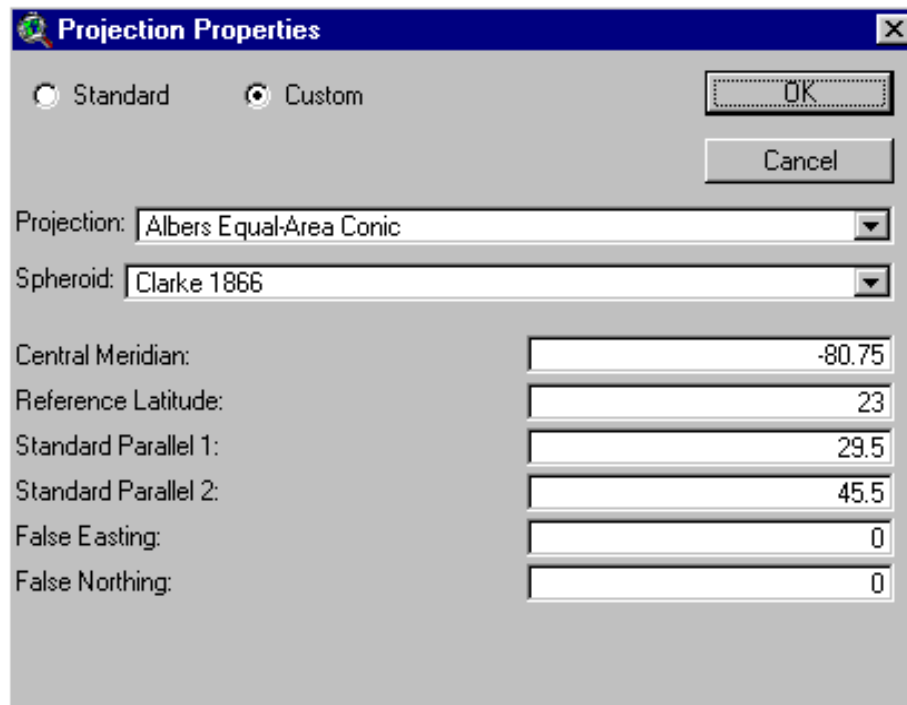
Step 3: Load the Spatial Analyst Extension

Load the Spatial Analyst Extension by checking the toggle switch.

Under the File Menu
>Click Extensions

>Click the toggle on button for Spatial Analyst
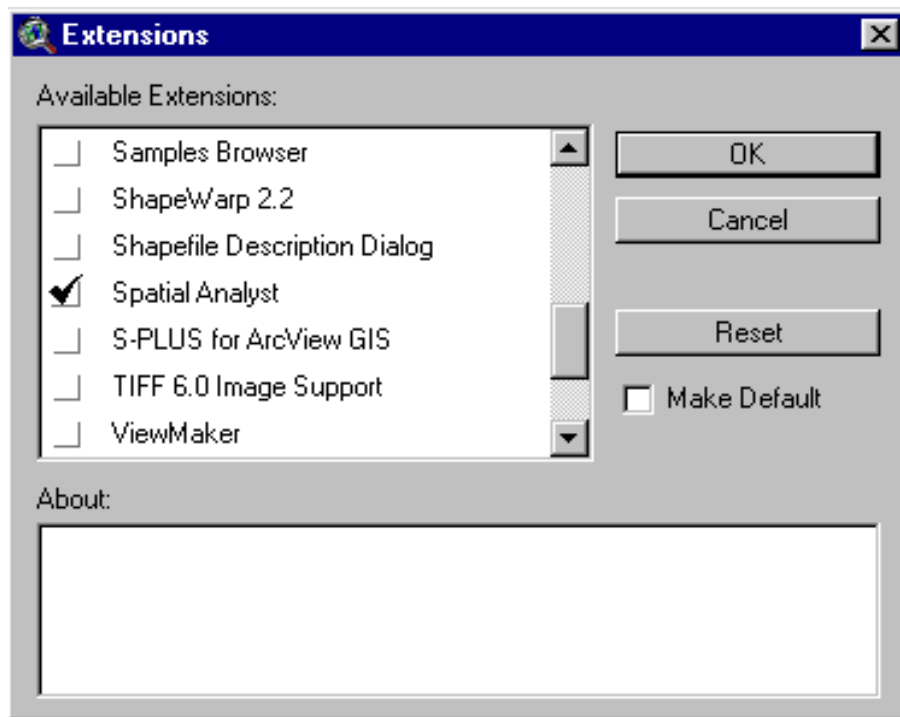
Step 4: Determine the Counties With Remaining Coal

The purpose of this step is to determine the largest area (consisting of counties) that covers the extent of the remaining coal. For the Pittsburgh assessment, the remaining Pittsburgh coal coverage extended over Pennsylvania, Ohio, West Virginia, and Maryland.

Add the remaining coal coverage (probably a vector coverage) to View1:

Add the coal polygon coverage from the assessment. This is likely to be an Arc/Info coverage available in Arc Export format, *.e00. Use Import71 to add the coverage to your project folder. As an example, the coal coverage for the Pittsburgh is named c9024bill. Add the coal coverage (polygon) to View1. It will already have the target projection because it is the source we use to determine the target projection. This users guide uses c9024bill as an example; you would use the name appropriate for your coal coverage.

In its attribute table, C9024bill has an attribute labeled "Mine." A value of **101** for Mine indicates the coal is <u>not</u> mined, i.e., it represents remaining coal.

For the Pittsburgh coal bed, the metadata also has a value of 999 for the "mine" attribute, indicating an internal island polygon that has no coal. However, the 999 value for the Mine attribute was not applied. Rather, in the Pittsburgh coal coverage another attribute, thick_ob_cat, was used to identify the no coal interior polygons (thick_ob_cat = 999). Therefore, to obtain a coverage of remaining Pittsburgh coal, we query on "mine = 101" and "thick_ob_cat <> 999" to create a coverage of remaining coal. (Note: <> is the "not equal to" operator.) If we queried to obtain polygons with "mine = 101", the resulting incorrect coverage would include interior polygons, which have no coal.

This circumstance is a good example of cautions that should be applied, particularly in the beginning stages of a coal assessment. First, always carefully examine the attribute data and the metadata to see if there is correspondence with categories that would indicate remaining coal. Second, look at all attributes where categories point to internal island polygons that have no coal. In the query to create the remaining coal layer, use all the coal attribute categories available to identify remaining coal. Third, after you create the remaining coal layer have it reviewed by the person who created the original base coal coverage.

Examine the attribute table and metadata for your coal coverage. Determine the field name and value indicating areas with remaining coal. When you see "101" and "999" in this users guide, substitute the values appropriate for your data.

Make c9024bill active. You would, of course, be working with the theme appropriate for your assessment.

Zoom to the extent of the active theme.

Click the query builder button and make a new set for Mine = 101 and Thick_ob_cat <> 999:
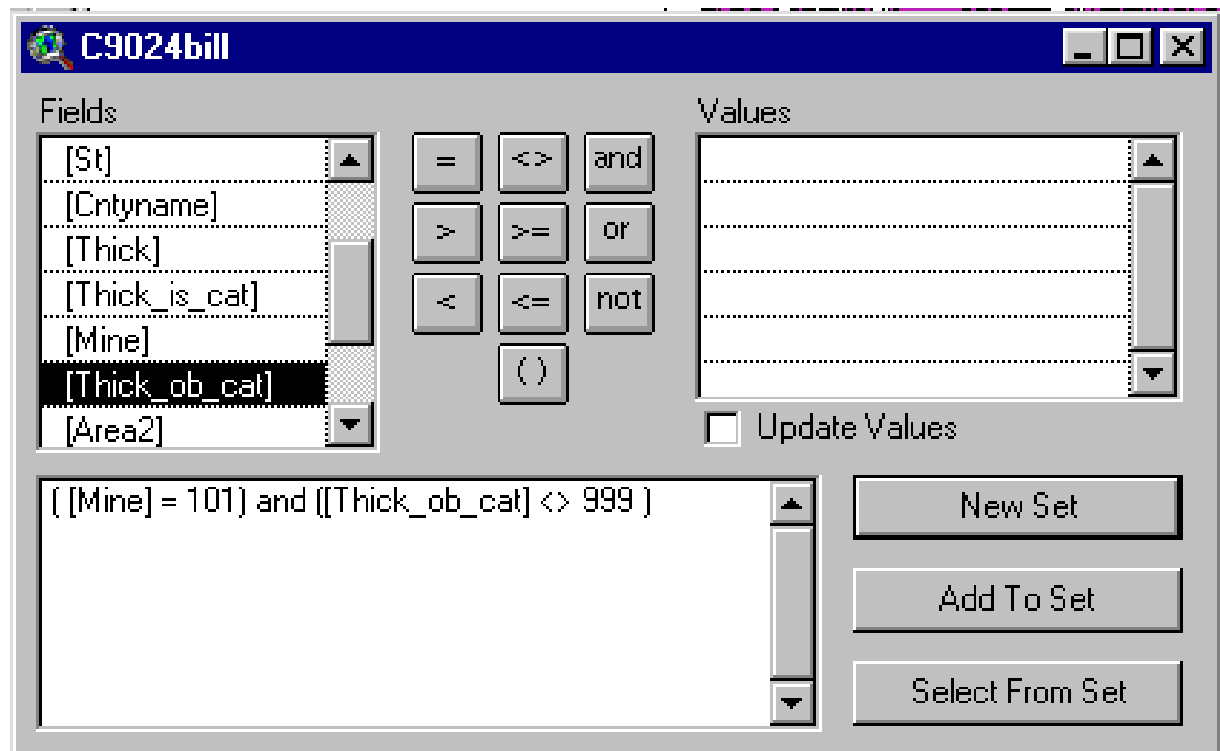
Name the new theme: Remainingalb

Add it to View1

Check its toggle display

For the instructions that follow, it is assumed that the remaining coal coverage has the projection that you want for your assessment project. All other themes will be put into this projection.
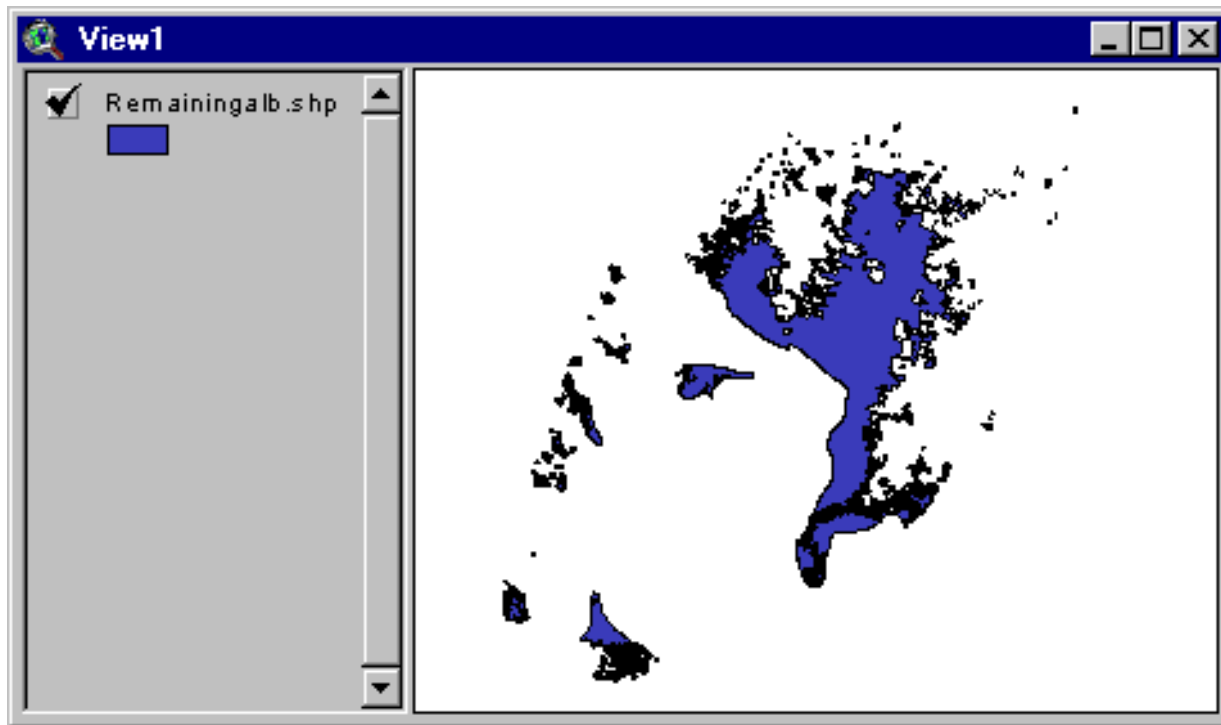
Coal Polygon (Remaining Pittsburgh Coal Bed)

Next add a coverage of county boundaries by following these steps:

(**Read the important note on page 2-19 - 2-20. You should use the ArcView Version 3.2 CD data set, which has spatial reference information (datum and projection) for coverages. It is important to know datum and projection so that coverages from different data sources can be converted to the same spatial reference.**)

1. Obtain the ESRI Data & Maps CD set. The person (probably project chief) whose name is on the ArcView license received the CD set when ArcView was purchased. Familiarize yourself with the data available in the set. A number of the coverages will be used. The ArcView help menu contains metadata for the coverages. <u>As you use various coverages, print the metadata and place it in a binder, making sure you note the name you give to the coverage when you add it to your project. This step will make preparation of metadata much easier. As well, you will have a central place where you can review the accuracy of the data and the projection parameters for each coverage. Filing and organization is very helpful, if later, things don't seem to quite line up.</u>

To learn about the data, under the Help Menu in ArcView 3.2, click on Help Topics.
Pick the Contents Tab. Click "Data that comes with ArcView", then "United States." The
various coverages will be choices under "United States."
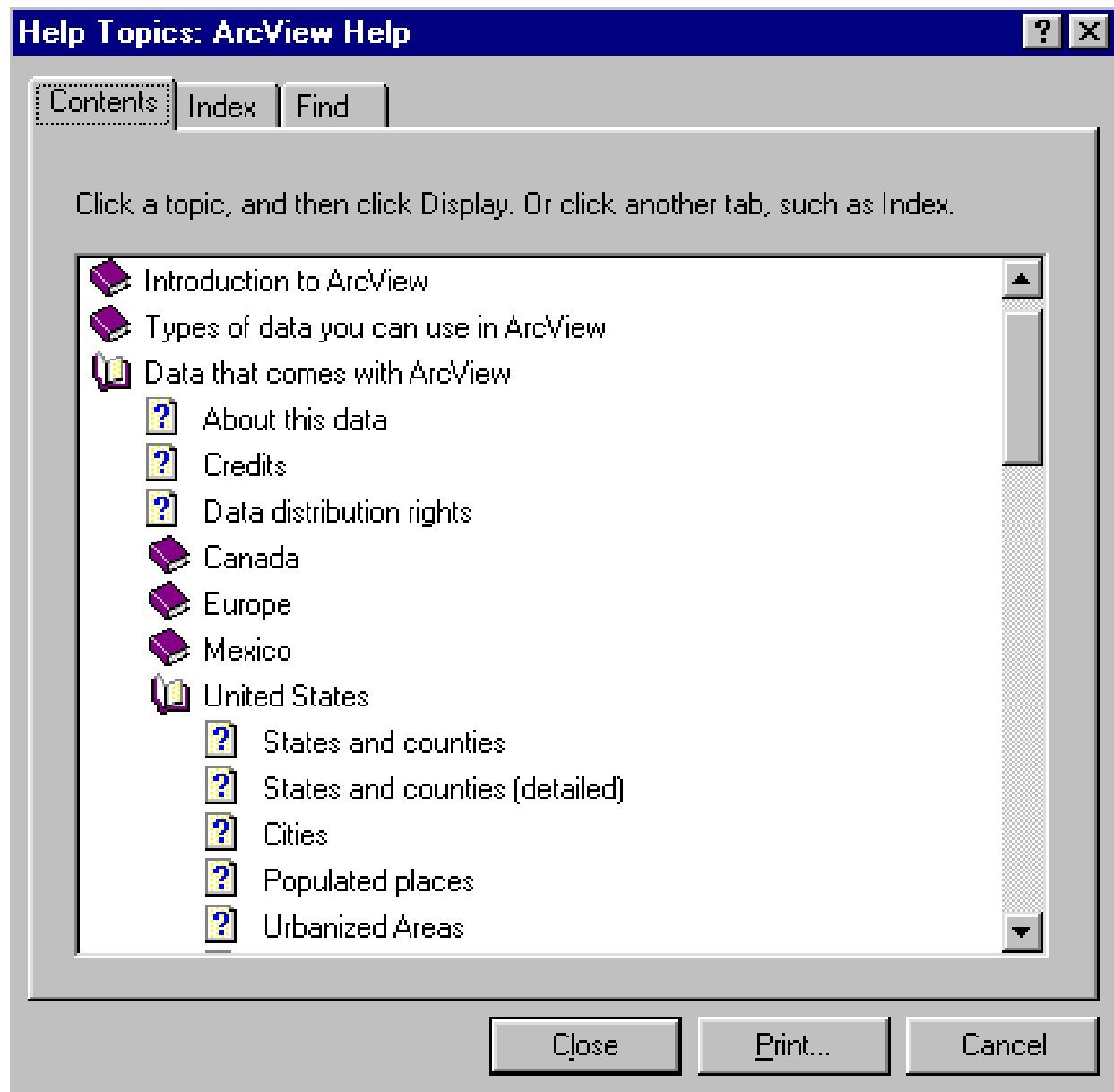
Print and read "Data distribution rights." Most coverages can be used in our projects as long as
we cite source.

2. The following instructions assume that the 5 CD set is the ArcView 3.2 set. Load county boundaries from the detailed United States CD (#2) into a **new View Window**. The county boundary theme is called Dtl_cnty.shp. By checking its metadata you will learn that the county boundary coverage is unprojected latitude and longitude in decimal degrees with a datum of NAD83. Therefore, after adding the county theme, you will need to reproject it to use it with the coal polygon.
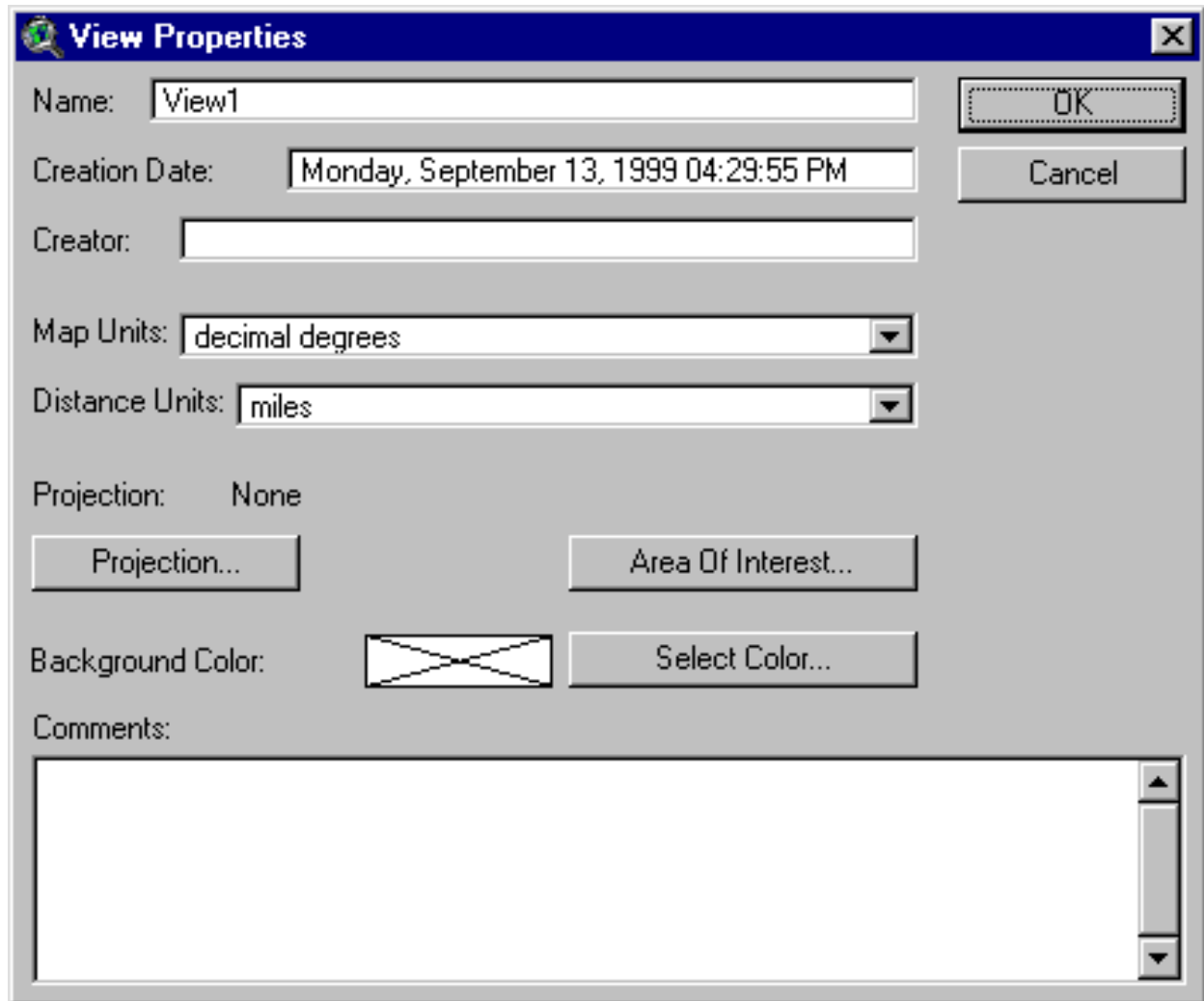
Immediately after loading the county boundaries, under the View Menu click View Properties. In the dialogue box that opens, note that the Map Units are "Decimal Degrees." ArcView is smart enough to recognize that the county boundaries are unprojected.

We use **View 2** (the new View Window) as a workspace where we reproject coverages.

3. Dtl_cnty.shp contains county boundaries for all States. We want just the subset of it that has boundaries for the States containing our coal coverage. In this example case (Pittsburgh), we need boundaries for Pennsylvania, Ohio, West Virginia, and Maryland. Make the county boundary coverage active. Use the Query Builder Button to select the 4 states and add that coverage to View 2:

When the Query Builder Dialog opens choose the states that contain the coal coverage

Dtl_cnty.shp

Fields

- [Shape]
- [Name]
- [State_name]
- [State_fips]
- [Cnty_fips]
- [Fips]
- [Area]

Operators: `=` `<>` `and` `>` `>=` `or` `<` `<=` `not` `( )`

Values

- "Utah"
- "Vermont"
- "Virginia"
- "Washington"
- "West Virginia"
- "Wisconsin"

☑ Update Values

```
( [State_name] = "Maryland") or ([State_name] =
"Ohio") or ([State_name] = "Pennsylvania") or
([State_name] = "West Virginia" )
```

New Set

Add To Set

Select From Set
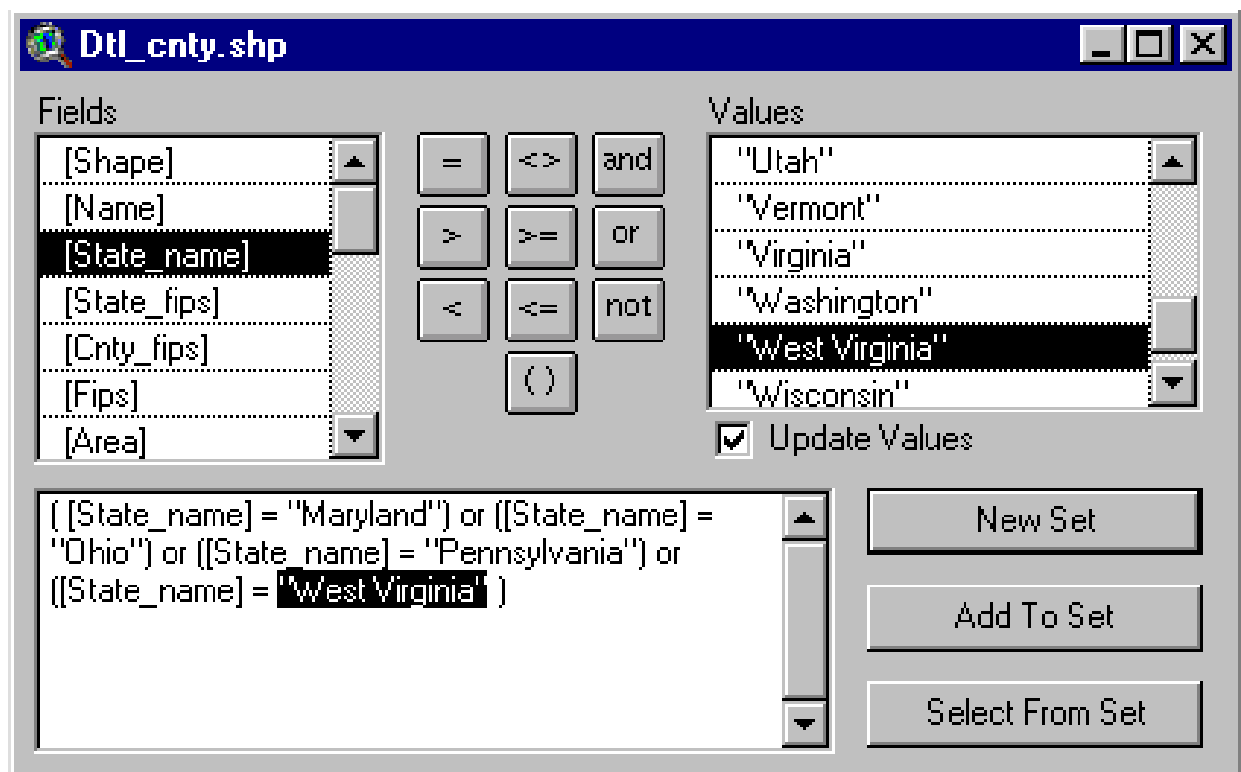
Immediately after you click "New Set", under View Menu click Convert to Shapefile
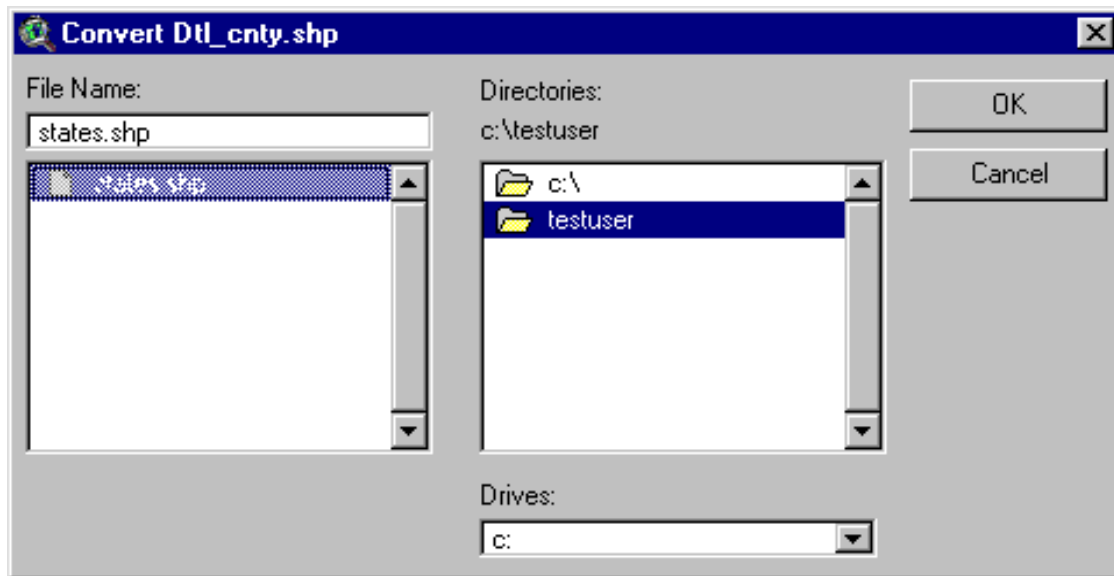
Provide a File Name and add the theme to View 2.

Then make the State theme active and zoom to it. Delete the detailed county theme.
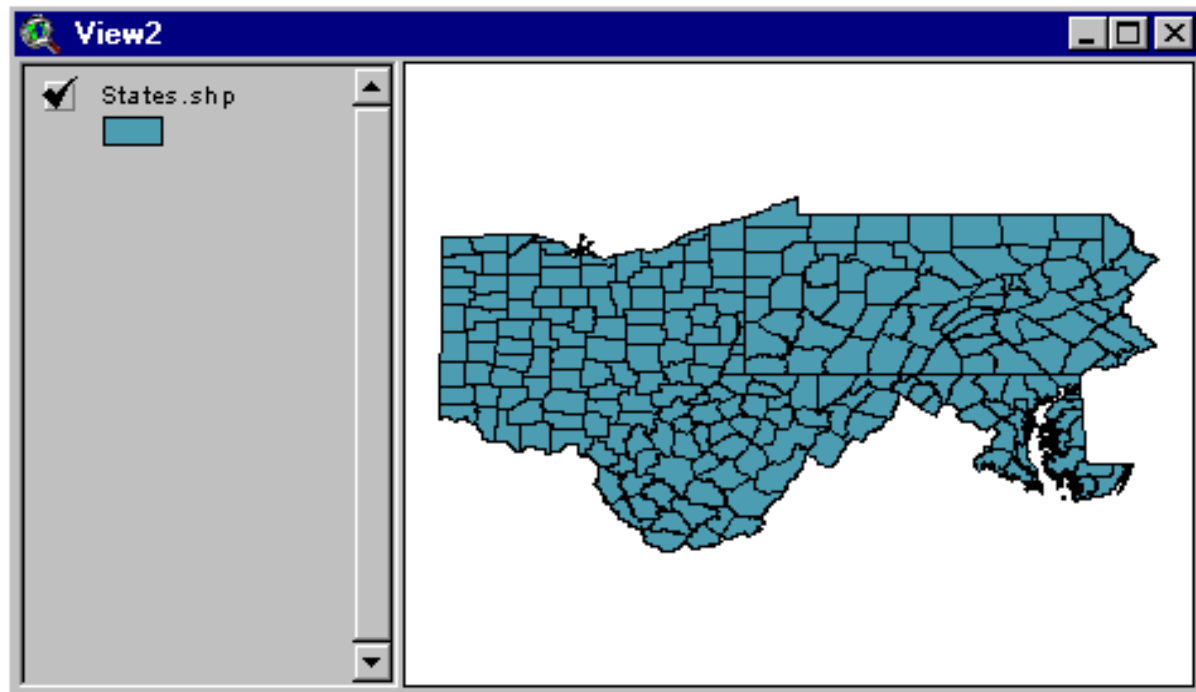
4. The metadata for the county boundaries indicates that the boundaries were built up from TIGER 95 boundaries. TIGER 95 boundaries are NAD83. If your coal boundary is not NAD83, say it is NAD27, then you will also have to change the datum for the county boundaries to match the datum of the coal data, or change the datum of the coal data to NAD83. We know the coal data has NAD27 because it has spheroid Clarke 1866 (documented in metadata) which indicates a datum = NAD27.

This is one of those choices where it pays to think ahead about the processing required for the entire project. We are going to be downloading significant numbers of county-by-county data coverages from ESRI's ArcData OnLine site. These coverages are used to identify the areas restricted to coal mining. The ArcData OnLine is TIGER 95; therefore, it is NAD83. NAD83 uses spheroid GRS80 and is more accurate than NAD27. As a general principle it is desirable to have data in NAD83. Almost all new data will be NAD83.
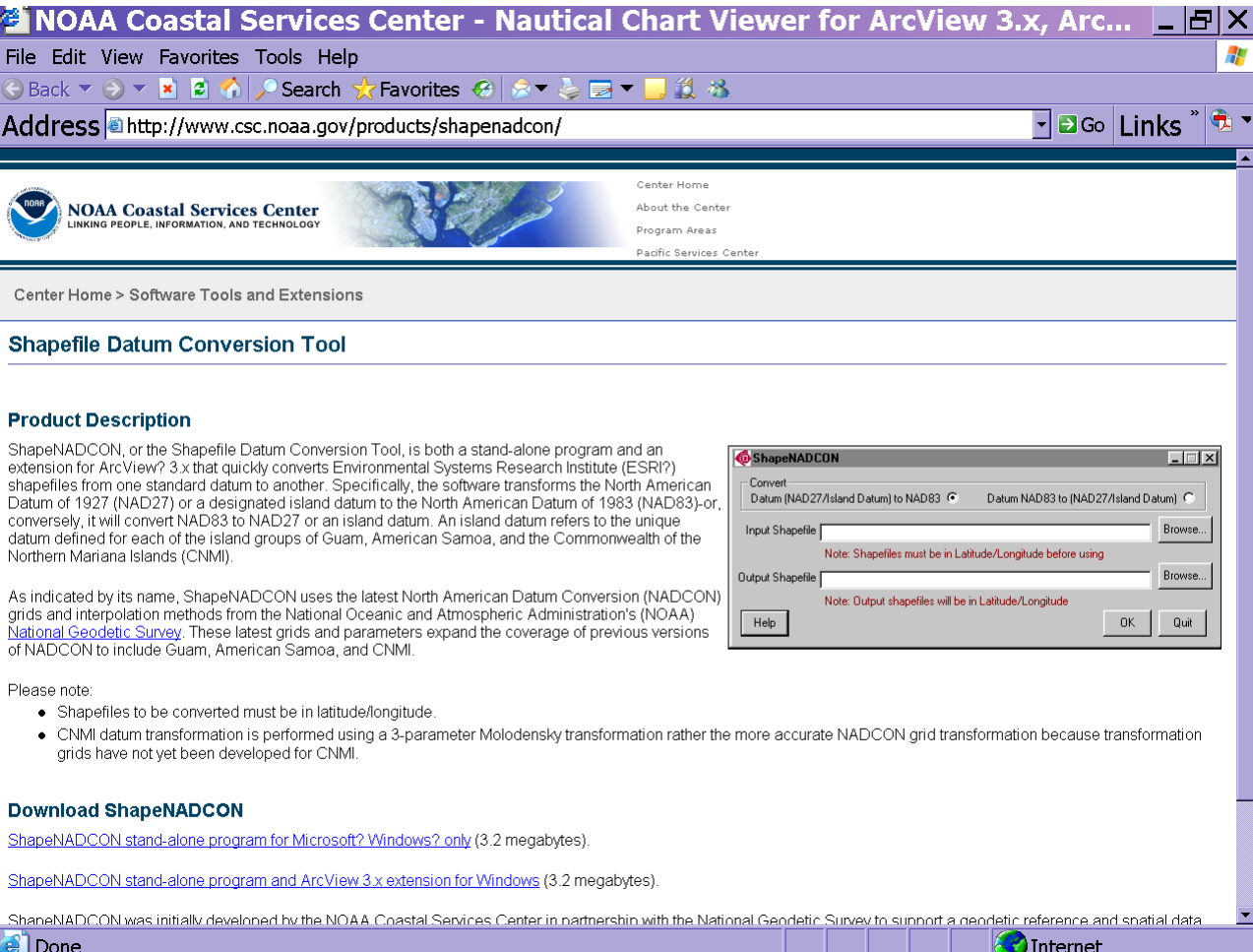
Our decision is complicated by the fact that the coal coverages (from some of the assessments) may be gridded or cell-based coverages. In this case, the only option for converting from NAD27 to NAD83 is to use the "Project" command in ArcInfo. You would have to move the coal coverages to a server where ArcInfo is installed, invoke ArcInfo, issue the Project command, and move the converted coverages back to ArcView. All of that is doable but cumbersome.

This User's Guide is using data from the Pittsburgh coal assessment to develop example processing steps. In the case of the Pittsburgh assessment (and other Appalachian beds), the assessment coverages are vector coverages. Thus, in this case, the conversion to NAD83 can be done using PC desktop tools in reasonable time.

A final consideration is the prior decision that will have been made already concerning NAD. If the coal assessment data provided to the public is NAD27, for consistency, the data from the Coal Availability Assessment should be NAD27. In the case of the Pittsburgh assessment, NAD27 was chosen. Thus, this User's Guide will convert (as an example) all data coverages to NAD27.

You can convert data coverages from NAD27 to NAD83 and vice versa using a utility called ShapeNADCON downloadable from www.csc.noaa.gov/products/shapenadcon. (Editor's note: The TransNAD utility is no longer available. Please substitute ShapeNADCON, a utility which converts shapefiles from one datum to another for TransNAD, when it is mentioned in the text.)

Download ShapeNADCON, a utility program to convert datums

ShapeNADCON will make the conversion only if the shapefiles are unprojected in decimal degree:
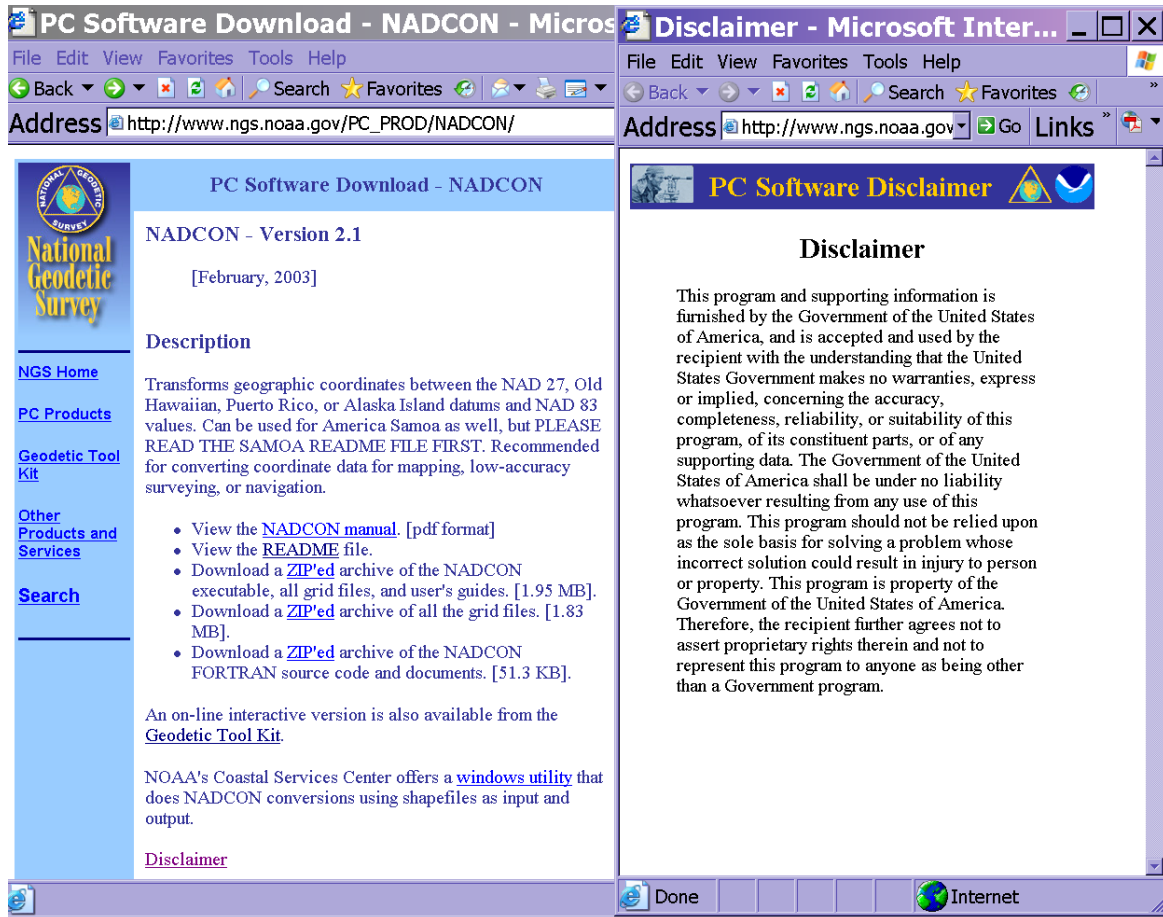
Download ShapeNADCON, install it, and add a shortcut icon to your desktop
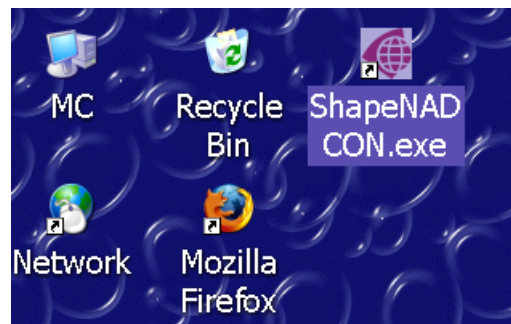
Later, we will be doing a lot of the analysis in Spatial Analyst with gridded coverages. At this stage, we need to decide the size of the cells that we will use and the units (e.g., meters or feet).

Important Considerations:

1. Some of the basic assessment coverages for the Pittsburgh were carried out in Earth Vision. Due to limitations of the software, a cell size of 300 meters on a side was used to interpolate on point values to make a grid of coal thickness and a grid of bed elevations (at the top of the bed). The large areal extent of the Pittsburgh bed made it necessary to go to a 300 meter cell size. Other assessments may have other cell sizes. **This is the important point:** in the case of the Pittsburgh assessment, the accuracy of any other coverages that use these original coverages retain the accuracy inherent in the data at a resolution of 300 meters on a side. We will want to make a grid of overburden by subtracting the bed elevation from surface elevation estimated from a DEM. In the case of the Pittsburgh assessment, the bed elevation grid is 300 meters on a side and the DEM grid is 100 meters on a side. When we estimate overburden, we convert the bed elevation coverage to 100 meter grids and then perform the subtraction. The results cannot be more accurate than the accuracy of the 300 meter data. Later, for convenience, we reduce the cell size to 16 meters on a side. The 100 meter cells are now represented by 36 cells (approximately) each carrying the value of the original 100 meter cell. But the accuracy remains at the level of the 300 meter data.

2. Areas restricted to coal mining usually are buffered areas around certain features protected under Federal and State regulations. The buffers can be as narrow as 50 feet. The protected buffered areas analyzed in the Pittsburgh assessment were all 50 feet or multiples of 50 feet. ArcView has 2 ways of forming buffers: (1) placing a specified buffer around a chosen set of features (vector analysis) or (2) expanding a gridded theme by a specific number of cells. Vector buffering is very compute intensive; the arcs formed to delineate buffers intersect other arcs and the software has to dissolve the overlap to form a composite buffer.

3. The overall approach to coal assessment is one in which we start with point values (real data) and then interpolate on the points to make a modeled estimate of values at other points. The resource estimate for an area is then based upon a mixture of real data and interpolated data. Coal thickness is the basis for the estimate of coal tonnage: coal tonnage = thickness x density x area. The approach we take in the Coal Availability Assessment is to start with the grid for coal thickness and then identify areas where coal mining is restricted. The calculation of tonnage is then run over the area that remains after the restricted area is pulled out, yielding an estimate of **available** tonnage. The calculations are most efficiently performed by building coverages (as grids) of the restricted areas and then calculating coal only in cells that do not fall into one of the restricted areas. Under this approach, we calculate the restricted areas by taking a protected feature (such as roads) and expanding its coverage by an appropriate number of cells. To start the process, all coverages use grids with cells at 16 meters on a side. Sixteen meters is approximately 50 feet. A 1 cell expansion is a buffer of 50 feet, a 2 cell expansion is a buffer of 100 feet, and so on. Through cell expansion, we are able to keep control over buffers. We can visually check our buffers and see whether they accord with the expected outcome. An approach that starts with vectors, places a buffer around the vectored feature, and then converts

the buffer into a cell coverage (needed to estimate tonnage) is erratic in its representation of buffers.

Bottom Line: <u>We will use cells 16 meters on a side</u>. (Note: If we had very dense point data and very accurate DEM's, an approach that used **feet** as the map units might be justified. In this case, we would have to reproject all data from meters into feet.) Almost all original coverages (coal assessment and ArcData OnLine) are in meters. Thus, most coverages would need to undergo a reprojection to new map units. The advantage, of course, is that the buffers would be set at 50 feet and multiples of 50 feet as appropriate rather than at the distance of 16 meters and multiples of 16 meters which is an approximation.)

Taking stock

- We have the remaining coal polygon as a shapefile, in our chosen projection (View1)

- We have a polygon coverage with county boundaries for the states containing our coal coverage, in unprojected decimal degrees (View2)

- We have decided that gridded coverages will have cells 16 meters on a side.

- We have decided that buffers will be represented by expanding protected features (that have been gridded) by an appropriate number of 16 meter cells.

- We have decided that NAD27 will be the datum for all coverages.

- We have downloaded TransNAD, a utility to convert shapefiles projected in decimal degrees from NAD27 to NAD83, or from NAD83 to NAD27.

- There are two remaining tasks to complete **Step 4** (Recall **Step 4** is to: Determine areal extent for the assessment of areas restricted to coal mining):

Task 1

If necessary convert states.shp (View 2) from NAD83 to NAD27 and project the NAD27 version to our target projection. [Review discussion on p 2-19.]

At the desktop, click the TransNAD shortcut.

In the dialog window, browse to c:\testuser\states.shp
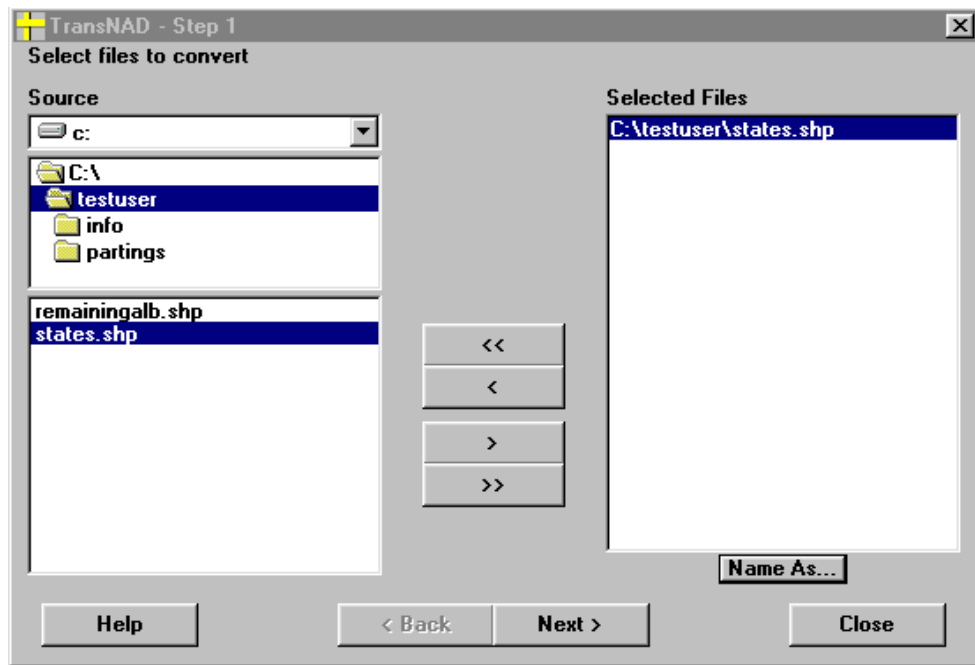
Click **">"** to place the file name in the Selected Files Box. Click the "**file name**" to make "**Name As**" Active. Click **"Name As"**
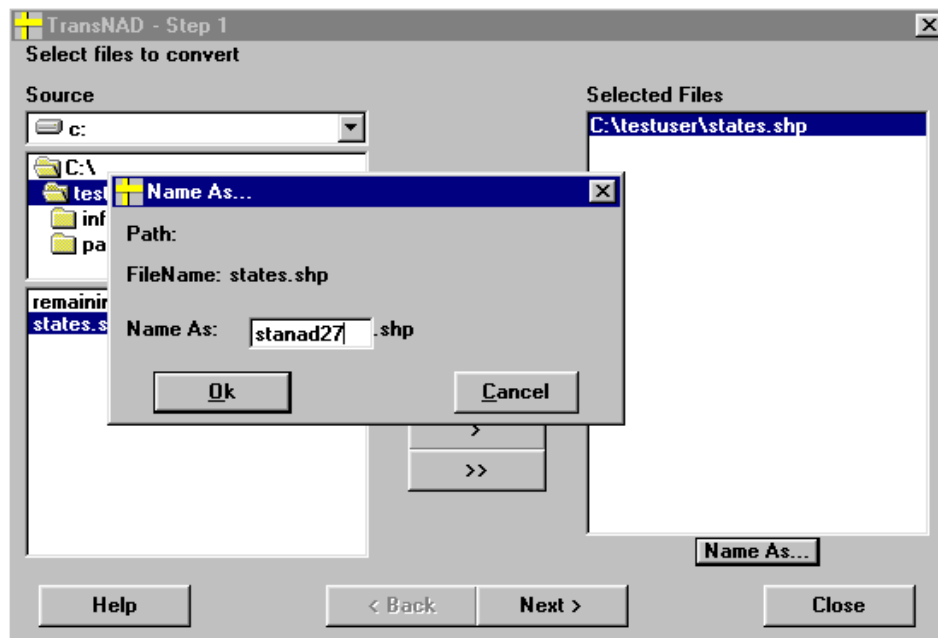
Type in new name (e.g. "Stanad27") and click OK. Then click "**Next**"
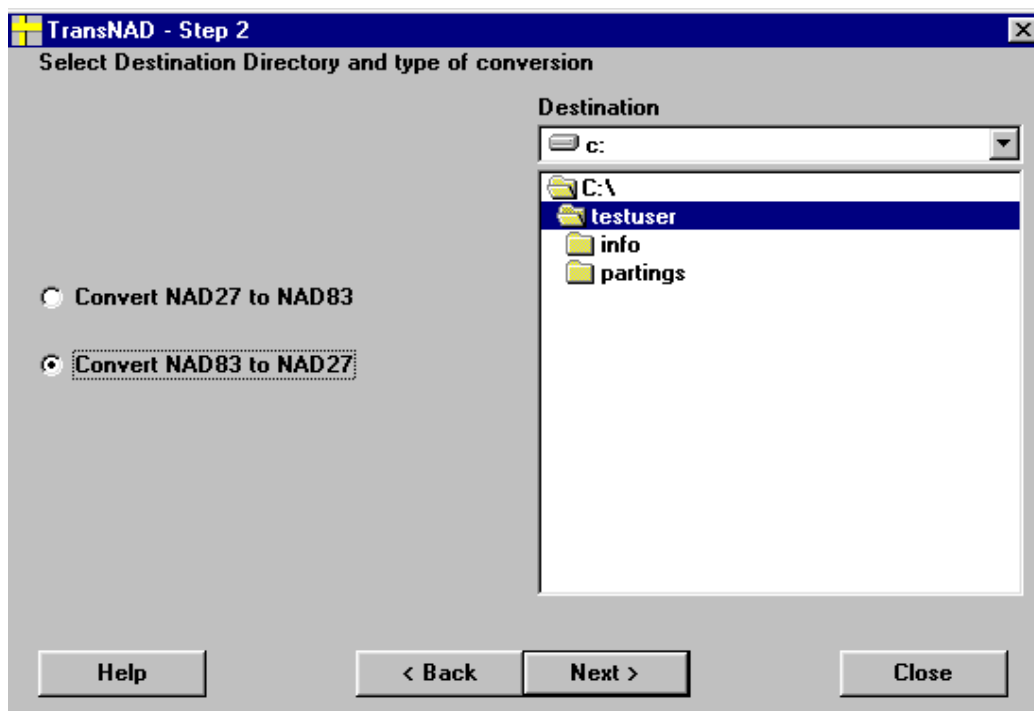
Make sure the Destination path is correct. Click radio button: **Convert NAD83 to NAD27**

Click Next. Conversion is launched. Click Close when prompted.

Add Stanad27 to View 2.

Zoom real tight in the area of the Chesapeake Bay. You will see that Stanad27.shp is shifted left and down relative to States.shp.

Delete States.shp.

Ordinarily in TransNAD (to speed processing), you bypass the rename option in which case TransNad replaces your original file with the translated file and keeps the original name.

Next we reproject Stanad27.shp from geographic to our target projection.

Click open View Properties and check that map units are decimal degrees.

Click the Projector Button and enter the projection parameters:

Projector!

Please pick output units

[OK]

meters ▼

[Cancel]

Projection Properties

○ Standard   ● Custom

[OK]

[Cancel]

Projection: Albers Equal-Area Conic ▼

Spheroid: Clarke 1866 ▼

Central Meridian:	-80.75
Reference Latitude:	23
Standard Parallel 1:	29.5
Standard Parallel 2:	45.5
False Easting:	0
False Northing:	0
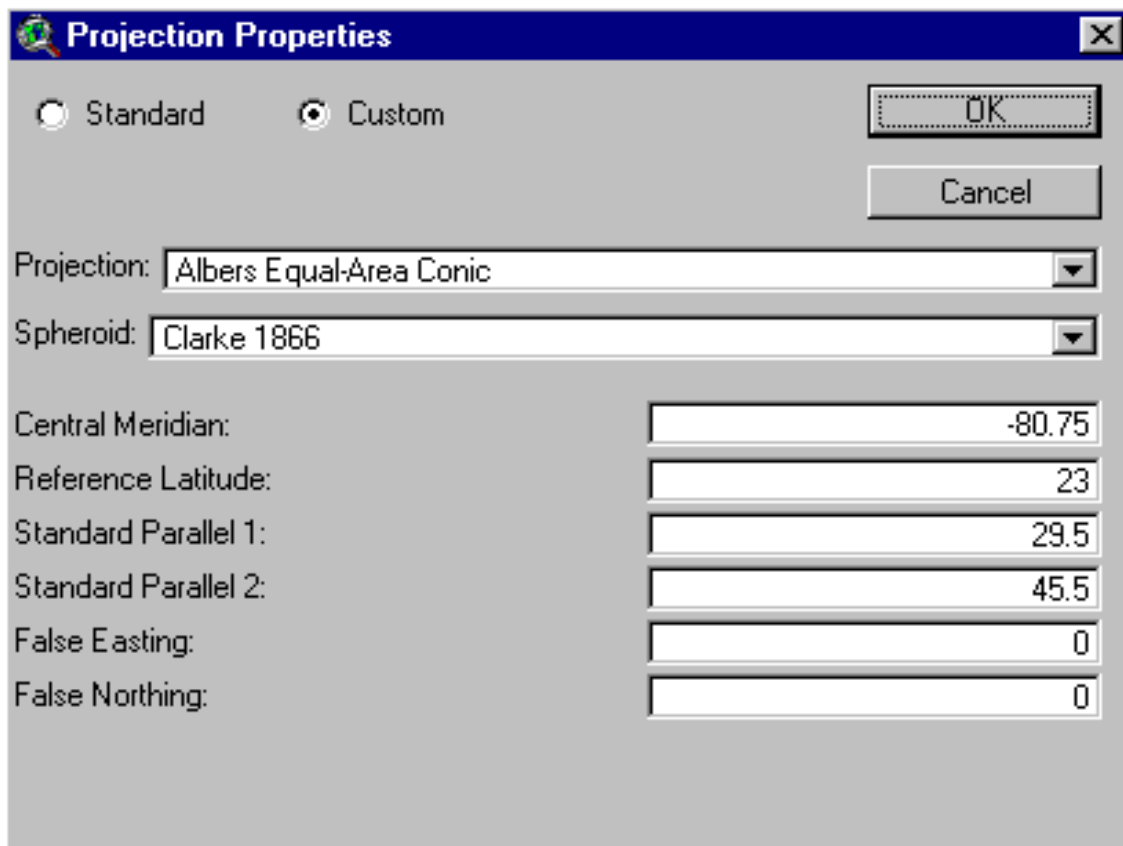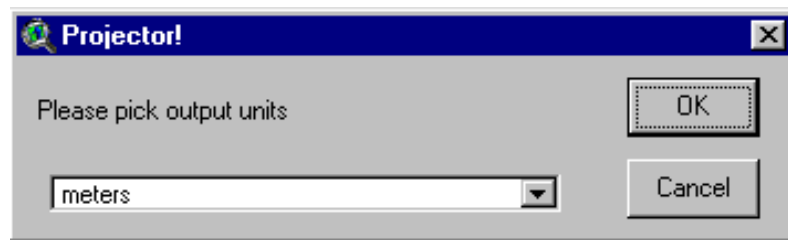
When prompted to "Recalculate", click "No".

Name new projected coverage "statesalb." Save it in your project directory.
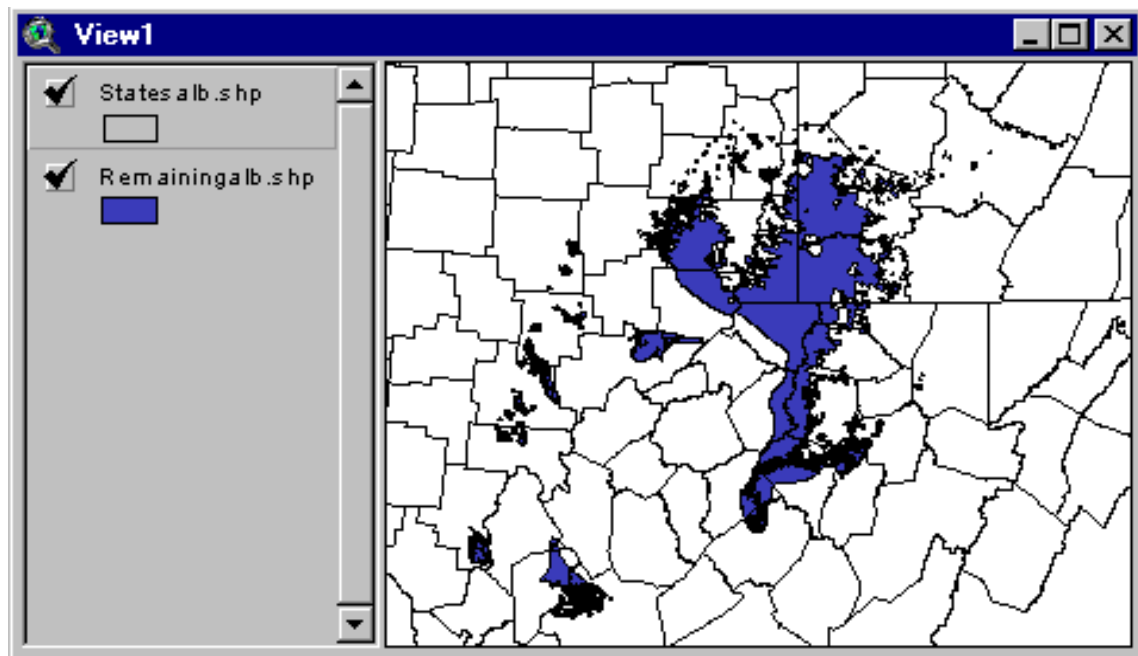
Add Statesalb.shp to View1

Change its polygon fill to transparent and click its display toggle.

Important Note: Upon review it was found that the original states file (states.shp in View 2 from the ArcView 3.1 CD data set) had a datum of NAD27. When metadata are not prepared for coverages, it can be difficult to determine datums (and projections) of coverages. The ESRI help for ArcView 3.1 (opened by clicking the Help menu) does **not** report the datum for the states coverage. In such cases you have to compare a coverage (unknown datum) with another similar coverage whose datum is known. The figure on the next page shows the state file boundary (as obtained from the 3.1 ESRI CD) compared to boundary coverages for Greene and Washington counties, Pennsylvania. The county boundary files were obtained from ESRI's ArcData OnLine site. All Tiger95 data at that site have a datum of NAD83. The state line coverage is to the left of the county coverages (which are documented to be NAD83). Therefore, it can be concluded that the state line coverage is NAD27. Furthermore, when the county coverages are converted to NAD27, they coincide with the state coverage, demonstrating again that the state coverage from the ArcView 3.1 CD data set is NAD27.

This method is cumbersome. **Fortunately, such comparisons to determine datums are no longer necessary (as of Spring 2000).** The new release of ArcView 3.2 includes 5 CD's containing geographically referenced data coverages. **In the new release, ESRI has provided spatial reference information for each coverage, correcting the oversight on the data provided under version 3.1.**

Therefore, users are advised to use the ArcView 3.2 CD data set in place of the ArcView 3.1 CD data set in completing a coal assessment. Complete spatial reference information is available through ArcView 3.2 Help for the coverages included in the new 5 CD data set.

Task 2

Create a table containing the names of counties with remaining Pittsburgh coal.

Make Statesalb.shp active. (We are using a Statesalb coverage that has NAD27 datum.)

As much as possible, we use the software to perform analysis. You might be tempted to use the select tool/shift key to select the counties in the Statesalb.shp coverage that are overlain by coal. Chances are you would miss some very small polygons that are not visible.

Creative use of the Geoprocessing Wizard is a better choice.

Open Extensions under the File Menu and toggle Geoprocessing on.

Open the table for Remainingalb.shp. The Remainingalb.shp has a field, Mine, which carries the value 101 for every feature.

Using the Geoprocessing Wizard, dissolve the theme, Remainingalb.shp using the Mine attribute.

If you are successful, Remainingalbdis.shp (the dissolved theme) will have **1** polygon feature. Open the table for Reminingalbdis to confirm that there is a single feature.
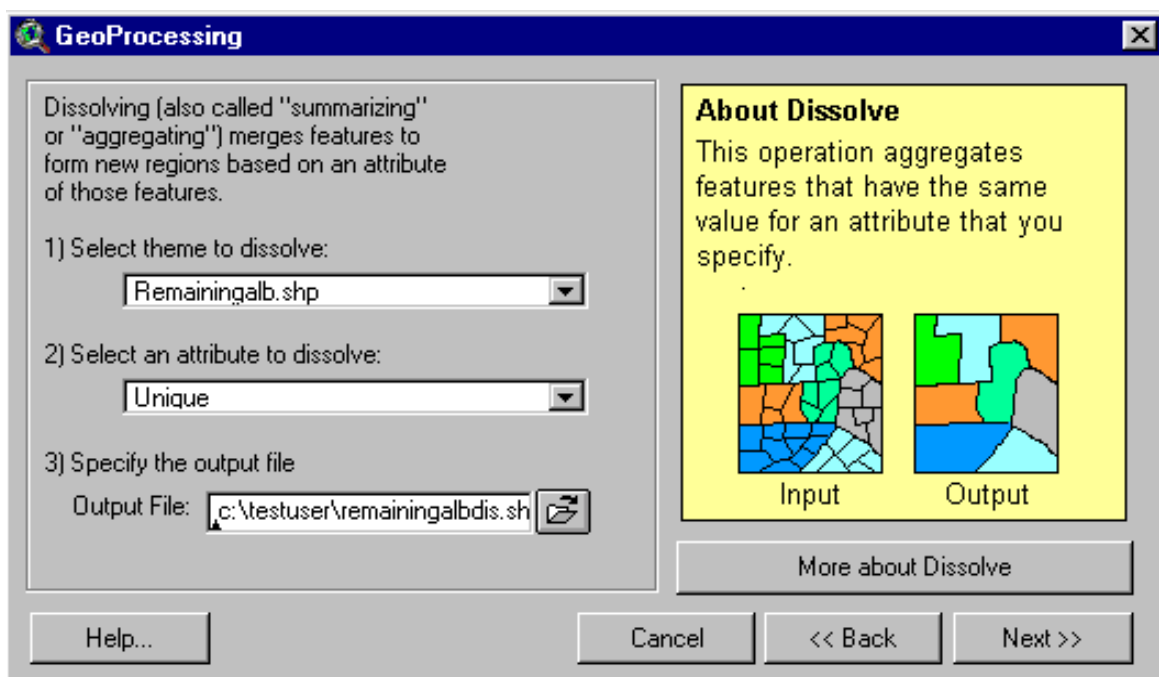
Then use the Geoprocessing Wizard to clip Statesalb.shp using Remainingalbdis.shp

GeoProcessing

1) Select input theme to clip:

Statesalb.shp

☐ Use Selected Features Only

Number of Features: 234

2) Select a polygon overlay theme:

Remainingalbdis.shp

☐ Use Selected Features Only

Number of Features: 1

3) Specify the output file

Output File: c:\testuser\statesclip1.shp

About Clip

This operation uses a clip theme like a cookie cutter on your input theme. The input theme's attributes are not altered.

Input Theme + Clip Theme = Result Theme

More about Clip

Help...   Cancel   << Back   Finish

Finally use the Geoprocessing Wizard to **dissolve** Statesclip1.shp using Fips as the dissolve attribute. When prompted select **Name by First** and **State_name by First** as additional fields.

GeoProcessing

Dissolving (also called "summarizing" or "aggregating") merges features to form new regions based on an attribute of those features.

1) Select theme to dissolve:

Statesclip1.shp

2) Select an attribute to dissolve:

Fips

3) Specify the output file

Output File: c:\testuser\statedissolve1.shp

About Dissolve

This operation aggregates features that have the same value for an attribute that you specify.

Input   Output

More about Dissolve

Help...   Cancel   << Back   Next >>

Open the table for Statedissolve1.shp. Under the File Menu select print to print the table. The table contains the Fips code, county name, and state name of the counties where remaining coal is located. You will use this list to download coverages to map restricted areas. The download requires that you select data files by county name.

Make a theme that contains the boundaries of the counties that have remaining Pittsburgh coal.

This new theme will help to give some reference boundaries for the restricted features.

Open a new view in ArcView (View3).

Add themes:

       Statesalb.shp

       Statesdissolve1.shp

We join tables for the themes: Statesalb.shp and Statesdissolve1.shp

Open the attribute table for Statesalb.shp

Make the table small enough so that it takes up about 20% of the screen. Move the scroll bars until the Fips field label is visible.

Open the attribute table for Statesdissolve1.shp.

Make the table small enough so that it takes up about 20% of the screen. Move the scroll bars until the Fips field label is visible.

Move the table so that the Fips field label is visible in both tables.

In the Attributes of Statesdissolve1.shp table, click the Fips field label to highlight it.

In the Attributes of Statesalb.shp table, click the Fips field label to highlight it.

Click the **Join** button near the top of the ArcView Window.

Click the title bar of View3 to make it active.

Click near Statesalb.shp in the table of contents to make Statesalb.shp active.

Click the Query Builder button.

Build the following expression:
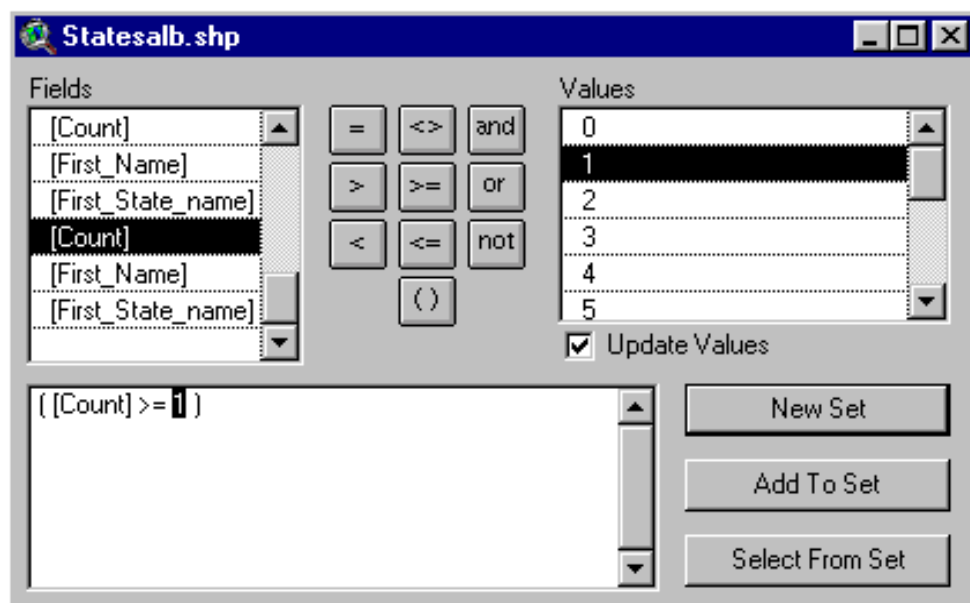
Click new set.

Convert to shapefile with name "counties".

Add Counties.shp to View1.

Change its polygon fill to transparent.

Use table editing to change its attribute table to have the following fields:

Attributes of Counties.shp

Shape	Fips	Count	First_name	First_stat
Polygon	24023	1	Garrett	Maryland
Polygon	39009	48	Athens	Ohio
Polygon	39013	24	Belmont	Ohio
Polygon	39019	1	Carroll	Ohio
Polygon	39053	17	Gallia	Ohio
Polygon	39059	53	Guernsey	Ohio
Polygon	39067	130	Harrison	Ohio
Polygon	39081	76	Jefferson	Ohio
Polygon	39105	21	Meigs	Ohio
Polygon	39111	3	Monroe	Ohio
Polygon	39115	39	Morgan	Ohio
Polygon	39119	18	Muskingum	Ohio
Polygon	39121	7	Noble	Ohio
Polygon	39167	15	Washington	Ohio
Polygon	42003	44	Allegheny	Pennsylvania
Polygon	42005	1	Armstrong	Pennsylvania
Polygon	42007	36	Beaver	Pennsylvania

Print the Attributes of Counties.shp table. It should have the same records as the attribute table for Statesdissolve1.shp.

In View3, display

Remainingalb.shp

Statesalb.shp

Counties.shp
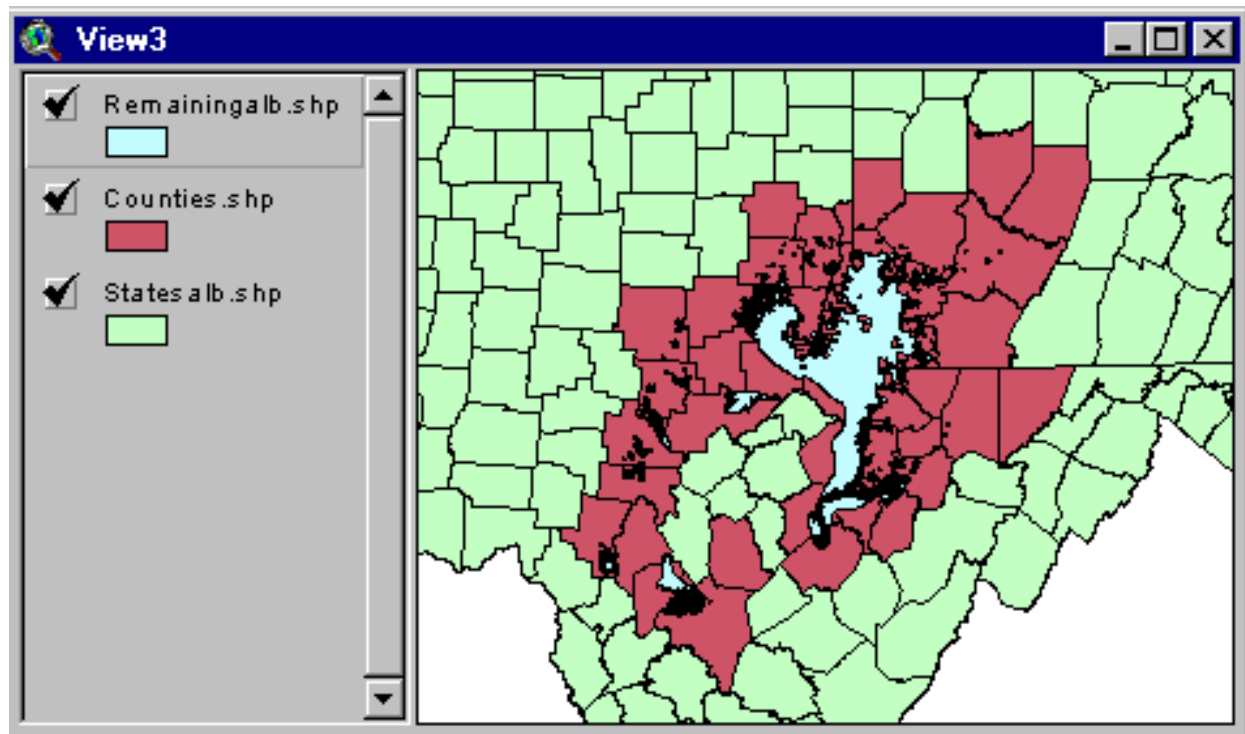
The table you just printed (Attributes of Counties.shp) may be preliminary. We now proceed to make one additional check to insure we have a county coverage that will give us a correct assessment.

Please note the following important point: When we buffer protected features (next chapter) we want the **buffering to be done on protected features in an area that exceeds the boundaries of the remaining coal. Why?: A protected feature could be outside remaining coal, but when it is expanded by a buffer, the buffered area could extend into remaining coal. By running the buffering operation on the protected features when they extend over counties, we probably will have all the protected features <u>and</u> their buffers accounted for within the remaining coal area. But a problem could arise if the remaining coal boundary is at or very close to a county boundary. Investigation of the Pittsburgh coal remaining area does not indicate a problem. However, if you have this situation now is the time to add the counties needed to insure that protected buffers will be accounted for in the remaining coal area.**

To make this check, we will create a grid coverage of remaining coal, add it to View2, and check to see if any segments of the remaining coal boundaries are within 0.1 miles of the perimeter county boundaries.

Make a grid coverage of remaining coal with cells 16 meters on a side. Start with ArcInfo coverage obtained from the assessment.

Add the coal polygon coverage from the assessment. This is likely to be an Arc/Info coverage available in Arc Export format, *.e00. Use Import71 to add the coverage to your project folder. As an example, the coal coverage for the Pittsburgh is named c9024bill. Add the coal coverage (polygon) to View2. The coal coverage will already have the target projection because it is the source we use to determine the target projection. This guide uses c9024bill as an example; you would use the name appropriate for your coal coverage.

In its attribute table, C9024bill has an attribute labeled "Mine." A value of **101** for Mine and **999** for thick_ob_cat indicates the coal is <u>not</u> mined, i.e., it represents remaining coal.

Examine the attribute table and metadata for your coal coverage. Determine the field name and value indicating areas with remaining coal. When you see "101" and "999" in these instructions, substitute the value appropriate for your data.

Make c9024bill active. You would, of course, be working with the theme appropriate for your assessment.

Zoom to the extent of the active theme.

In Analysis Properties, make Analysis Extent: Same as Display. Set Cell Size to 16.

This is the first time we are setting Analysis Properties. Be careful to set an extent that extends generously across the area you are analyzing. A setting of "Same As Display" will vary according to the themes in the View. If you want to replicate the Pittsburgh analysis, then type the numbers (as shown below) into the corresponding windows of the Analysis Properties Dialogue window.

Analysis Properties: View2

Analysis Extent | Same As Display ▼

Left | -155677.503175   Top | 1970649.93125

Bottom | 1693107.69375   Right | 191805.378175

Analysis Cell Size | Current Value ▼

Cell Size | 16   m

Number of Rows | 17346

Number of Columns | 21718

Analysis Mask | No Mask Set ▼

[OK]   [Cancel]

Save your project.

Make the coal polygon (e.g., C9024bill) active.

Using query builder, make a New Set for: "Mine = 101 and thick_ob_cat <> 999."

Under theme menu, click "Convert to Grid."

Make grid name: Rem16mcell. (Note: grid names cannot exceed 14 characters).

Pick "Mine" as field for cell values.

When you click OK, the software should display a progress bar and make steady progress in the conversion. If you do not see a progress bar fairly soon, the software has hung. You may have to shut down PC and try again. Software seems to be overly glitchy with respect to Convert to Grid.

Display the remaining coal grid.
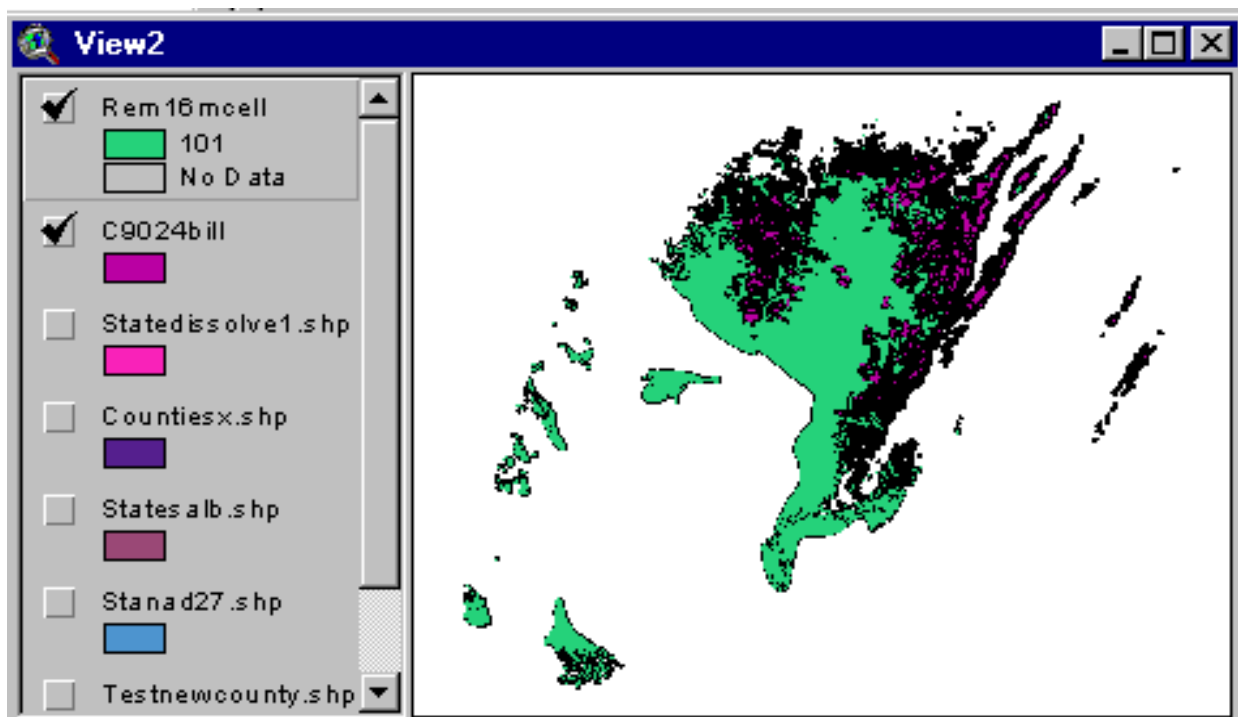
Add the following feature themes to View2:

        Counties.shp

        Statesalb.shp

Display as illustrated below
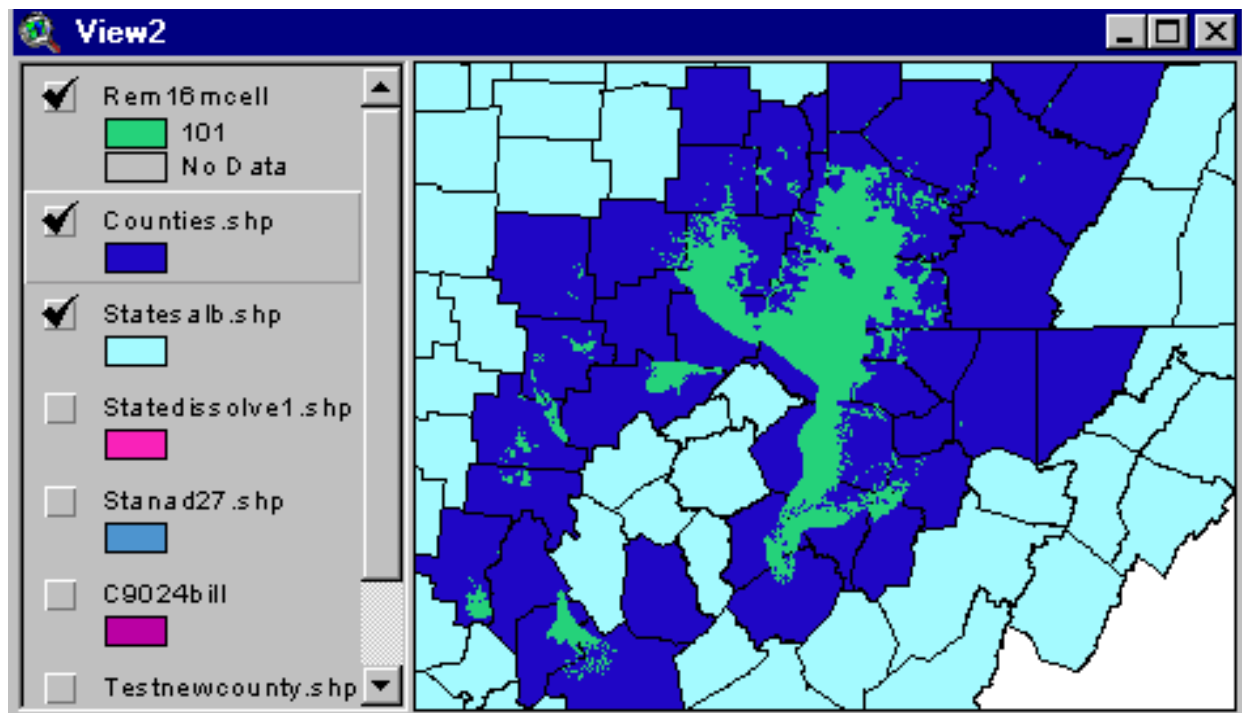
Use the Zoom and distance tools to visually inspect any areas where the remaining coal is close to a perimeter county boundary.
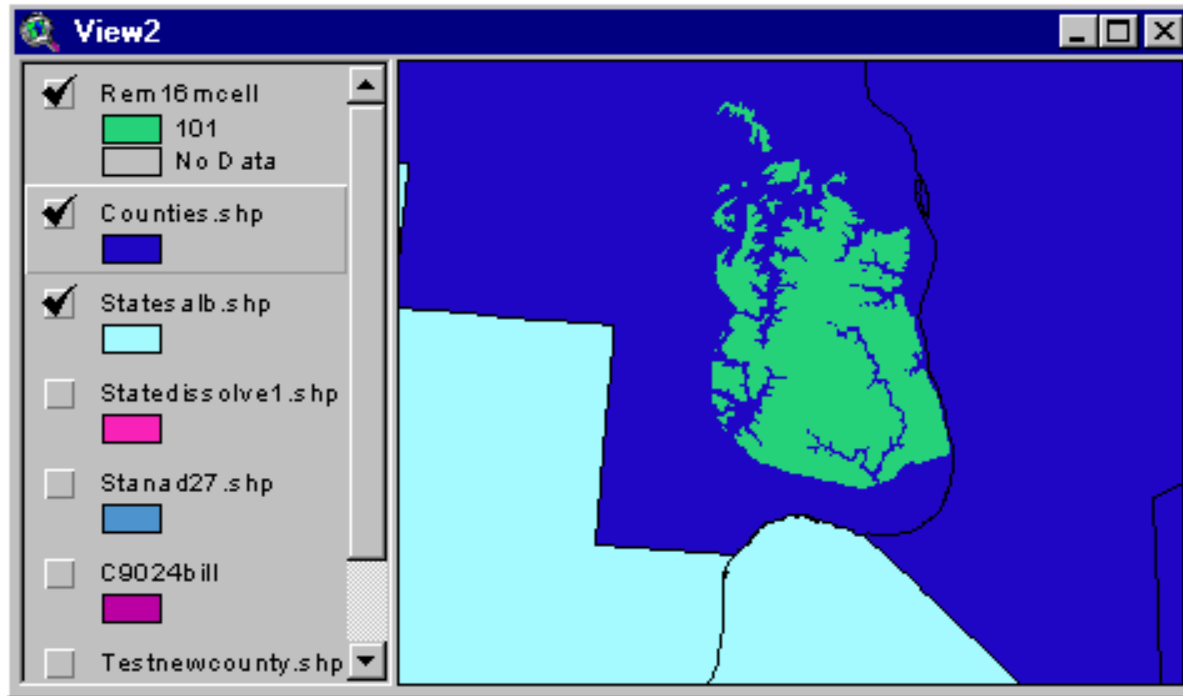
Interstate highways (processed in next chapter) have a buffer of 400 feet. This is the largest buffer we use. Thus, if you have coal closer than about 0.1 mile (measured by distance tool) then you want to add the adjoining county to the Counties.shp coverage.

You can do this by

    1. Making Statesalb.shp active.

    2. Using the select tool to highlight all of the adjoining counties.

    3. Convert to shapefile.

    4. Use table editing to reduce fields and make field labels the same as the attribute table for Counties.shp.

    4. Use Geoprocessing Wizard to merge additional counties to Counties.shp.

    5. Print the merged Counties.shp attribute table.

NOTE: It is critical that you have all the counties that contain remaining coal or counties that are within 0.1 mile of remaining coal. All of the analysis in subsequent chapters of this guide are built from the counties list constructed here. If later you find you have missed a county, then all of the processing starting from this point will have to be redone.

Congratulations you have finished **SETUP!!!!**

An example table of county names appears on the next page. For the remaining Pittsburgh, the Geoprocessing Wizard found 42 counties located across the states of Maryland, Pennsylvania, Ohio, and West Virginia

Attributes of Statedissolve1.shp

Shape	Fips	Count	First_Name	First_State_name
Polygon	24023	1	Garrett	Maryland
Polygon	39009	48	Athens	Ohio
Polygon	39013	24	Belmont	Ohio
Polygon	39019	1	Carroll	Ohio
Polygon	39053	17	Gallia	Ohio
Polygon	39059	53	Guernsey	Ohio
Polygon	39067	130	Harrison	Ohio
Polygon	39081	76	Jefferson	Ohio
Polygon	39105	21	Meigs	Ohio
Polygon	39111	3	Monroe	Ohio
Polygon	39115	39	Morgan	Ohio
Polygon	39119	18	Muskingum	Ohio
Polygon	39121	7	Noble	Ohio
Polygon	39167	15	Washington	Ohio
Polygon	42003	44	Allegheny	Pennsylvania
Polygon	42005	1	Armstrong	Pennsylvania
Polygon	42007	36	Beaver	Pennsylvania
Polygon	42051	4	Fayette	Pennsylvania
Polygon	42059	38	Greene	Pennsylvania
Polygon	42063	2	Indiana	Pennsylvania
Polygon	42125	87	Washington	Pennsylvania
Polygon	42129	26	Westmoreland	Pennsylvania
Polygon	54001	15	Barbour	West Virginia
Polygon	54007	21	Braxton	West Virginia
Polygon	54009	8	Brooke	West Virginia
Polygon	54017	1	Doddridge	West Virginia
Polygon	54021	5	Gilmer	West Virginia
Polygon	54029	6	Hancock	West Virginia
Polygon	54033	82	Harrison	West Virginia
Polygon	54039	73	Kanawha	West Virginia

.
.
.

2 - 35

Chapter 3.

COVERAGES FOR FEATURES WHERE COAL MINING IS RESTRICTED

Purpose: In this Chapter, you download or add themes of features where coal mining is restricted, change datum to NAD27, reproject, convert to grid, and add buffers.

Overview: The coverages are for the counties included on the list prepared in Chapter 2. For each restriction, we end up with a single coverage that can be used for every mining technology. The coverages are used later with the coal thickness and tonnage coverages to calculate available coal by mining technology.

Step 1: List features where coal mining is restricted and identify data source.

The Surface Mining Control and Reclamation Act (SMCRA), state regulations, and industry practice are the guides to features that are protected from coal mining:

Feature	Buffer	Data Source
Streams	100 feet	ESRI ArcData Online
Water Bodies	100 feet	ESRI ArcData Online
Parks	300 feet	ESRI Data and Maps
Populated Places	300 feet	ESRI ArcData Online
Urbanized Areas	300 feet	ESRI Data and Maps
Oil and Gas Wells	200 feet	Oil and Gas Assessment
Pipelines	100 feet	EIA (James Tobin)
Interstate Highways	100 feet	ESRI Data and Maps

Step 2: Download coverages from ESRI ArcData Online.

These coverages are streams, waterbodies, and populated places.

Attach to the ESRI website

On the left side of the ESRI homepage, click "ArcData Online"

On this page, in the middle Data Selection Shortcuts scroll window, select "U. S. Tiger Data." Then click on "GO."

Complete registration and enter email address into query box.

In the window that opens, select State = Maryland (the first state on our Chapter 2 list). You, of course, select the state appropriate to your application.

Submit selection.

In the "County Scroll", we select "Garrett" and submit selection. Note: We have only one county for Maryland. Thus, it is efficient to first select the county and then the feature layers we want for the county. For the other states with multiple counties (PA, WV, and OH), it is efficient to first select the feature layer and then all the counties for that layer (as demonstrated later).

If you have multiple counties per state, then read-over material on pages 5, 6, 7, 8, and 9. Begin your processing, following the instructions that start near the bottom of page 9.

☐ ~~Key Geographic Locations~~	~~1.4 Kb~~
☑ Land and Water Outlines	46.9 Kb
☐ Landmark Areas	8.9 Kb
☐ Landmark Points	2.9 Kb
☐ Line Features, Landmark	576.0 bytes
☐ Line Features, Railroads	12.6 Kb
☐ Line Features, Ridges/Fences	4.3 Kb
☑ Line Features, Streams	191.4 Kb
☐ Line Features, Streets	559.6 Kb
☐ Line Features, Utility Lines	7.3 Kb
☐ Minor Civil Divisions (1990)	55.0 Kb
☐ Minor Civil Divisions (1995)	54.8 Kb
☐ Places (1990)	6.4 Kb
☑ Places (1995)	5.5 Kb
☐ School Districts, Unified	17.0 Kb
☐ Urban and Rural Outlines	15.0 Kb

Select "Line Features, Streams" (for Streams), "Places (1995)" (for Populated Places), and "Land and Water Outlines" (for Water Bodies).

Click Generate File Now

In next ESRI window, click "Download Data Now".

Make a new folder for your ESRI downloads (e.g., c:\"your project path"\esridata)

Save your ZIP file to the esridata folder.

Save As...

Save in: esridata

File name: at_williamwatson71834.zip

Save as type: All Files (*.*)

Save   Cancel

Your Data File is Ready!

)95 Data

You may now download the selected data to your local system. You will receive a **.ZIP file**
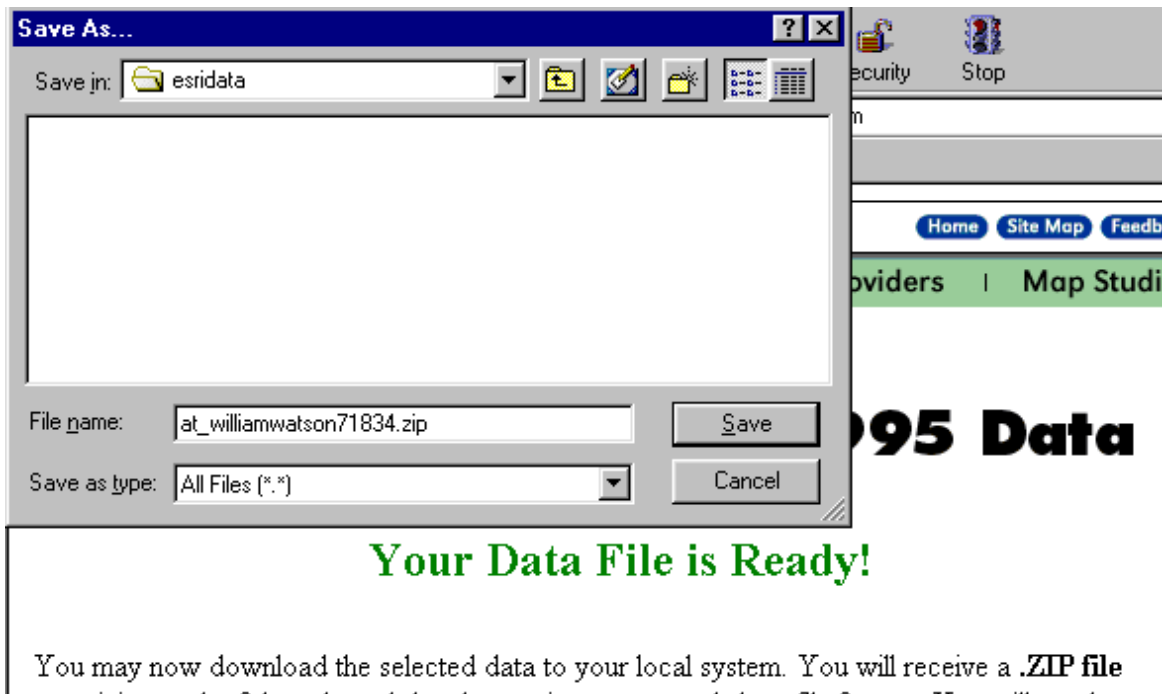
Minimize the browser window where you have attached to ESRI ArcData Online. **Do not close the window.** We will go back to it a number of times to complete the entire data download.

After the data downloads to your esridata folder, we unzip it.

WinZip is an excellent utility for unzipping. If you do not have WinZip, you can download an evaluation copy or purchase WinZip at www.winzip.com. Load WinZip on your system and add a shortcut icon to your desktop.

On your desktop, double click the WinZip icon.

Navigate to the folder containing the ZIP file. Double click the ZIP file.

When the Zip file opens, you will notice that it contains 3 zip files, one file for each of the three coverages.
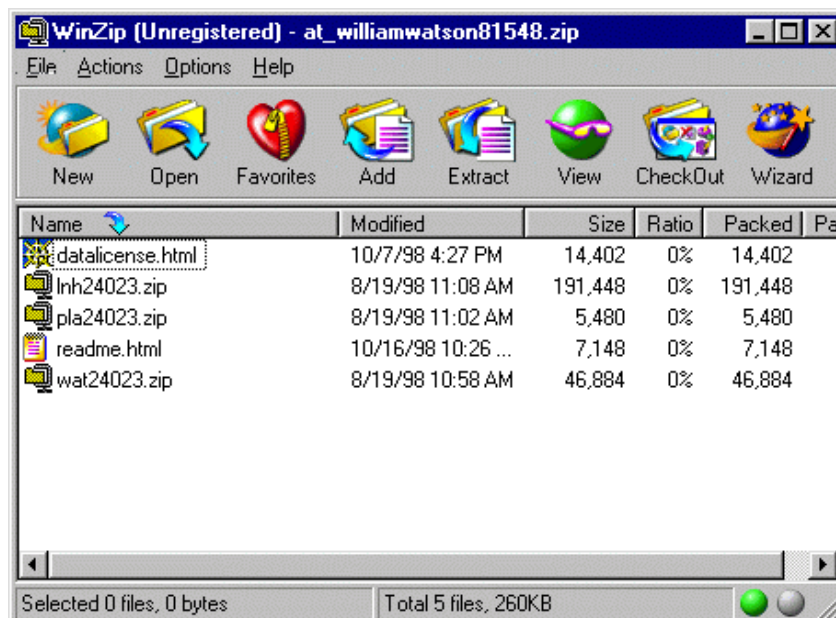
The "lnh....." zip file is the line hydrology or the streams coverage. The "pla......" zip file is the populated places coverage. The 'wat......" zip file is the water bodies coverage.

Double click the lnh24023.zip file to launch WinZip for the lnh24023.zip file. Extract all the files to your esridata folder. (See the example screens on the next page.). Close the WinZip window that has the lnh24023 files.

Double click the pla24023.zip file (in the download WinZip file: at_yourname...) and proceed through the extract to your esridata folder.

Double click the wat24023.zip file (in the download WinZip file: at_yourname...)and proceed through the extract to your esridata folder.
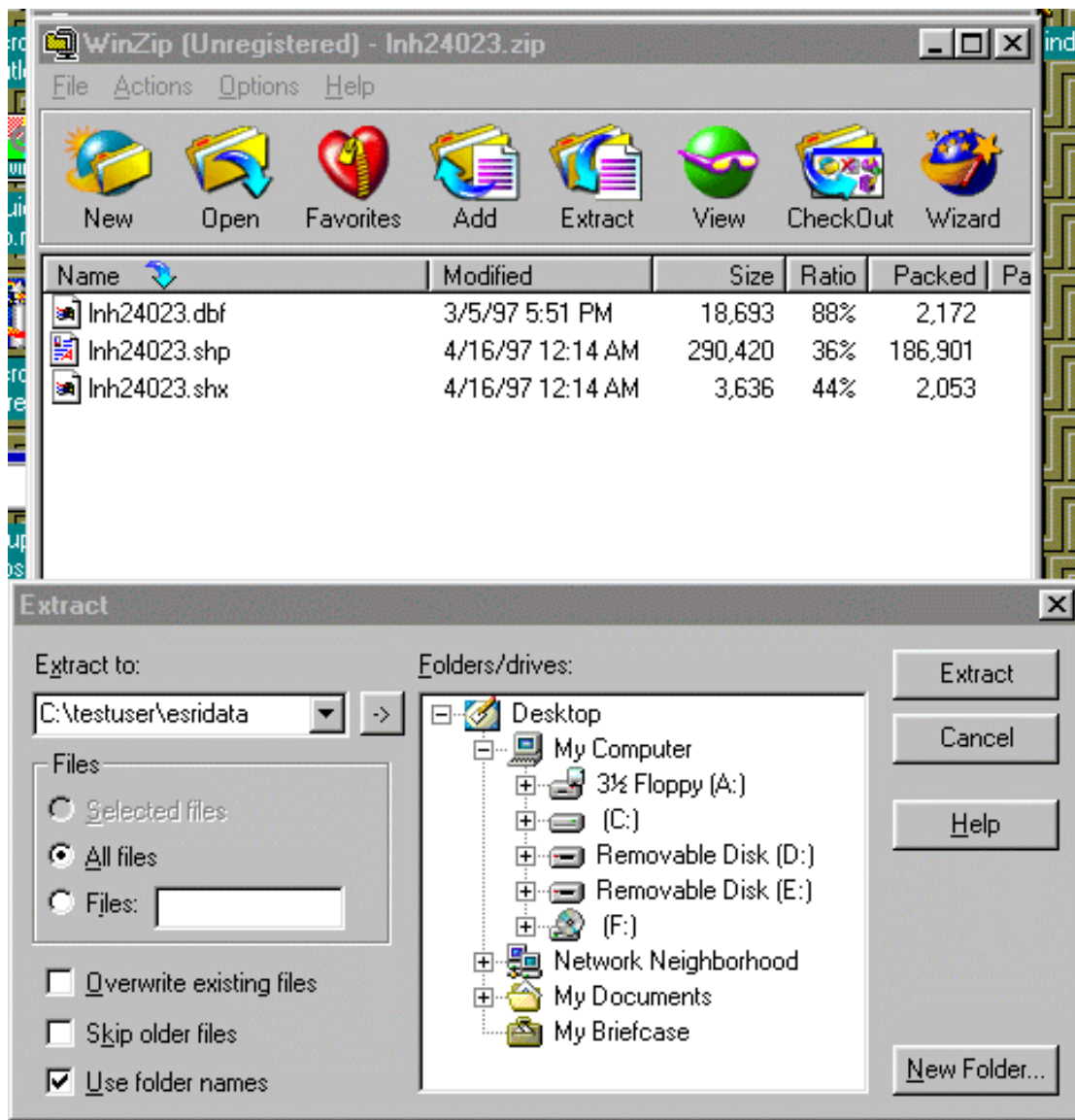
Your esridata folder should contain the 2 download zip files and 9 extracted files:
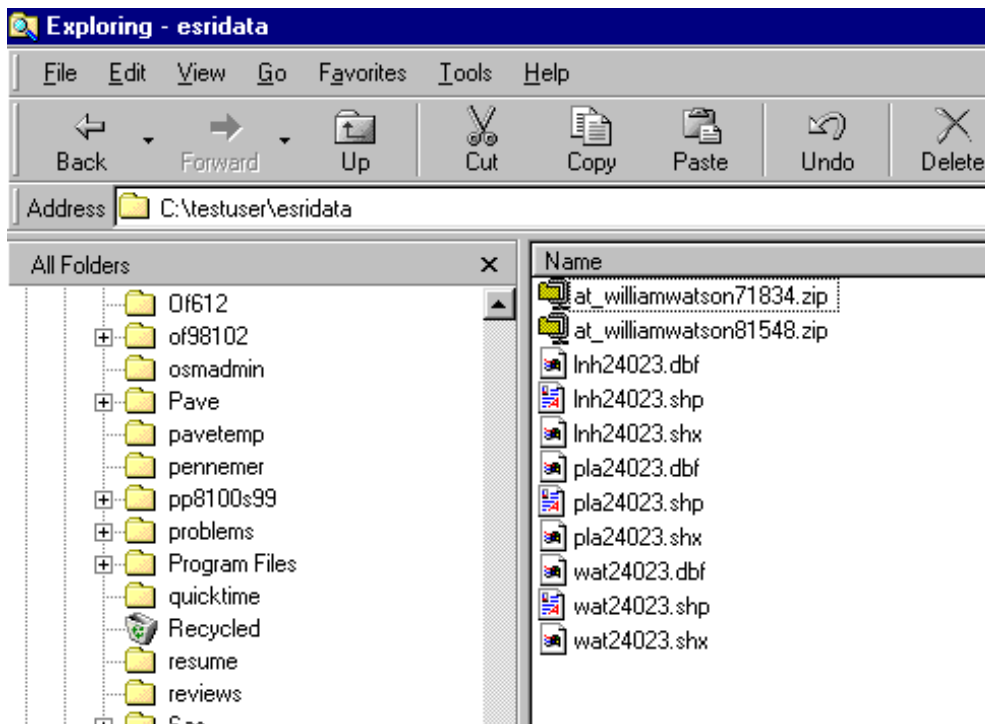
Next, we download the same set of files for the counties in Ohio (the next group in order on our Chapter 2 list). In your application you would be following your specific list and would go to the next state on the list.

Reopen the browser window where you are attached to ESRI ArcData Online. Backup to the screen where you select the state.

Select Ohio (as an example). You, of course, select the appropriate state for your application.

Open the "Select by Layer" dropdown list and click on **"Land and Water Outlines"**

Submit Selection

In the window that appears, select all the counties for the state you are processing.

Click "Generate File Now"

When you receive message "Your data file is ready," click "Download Data Now"

Save file to your esridata folder
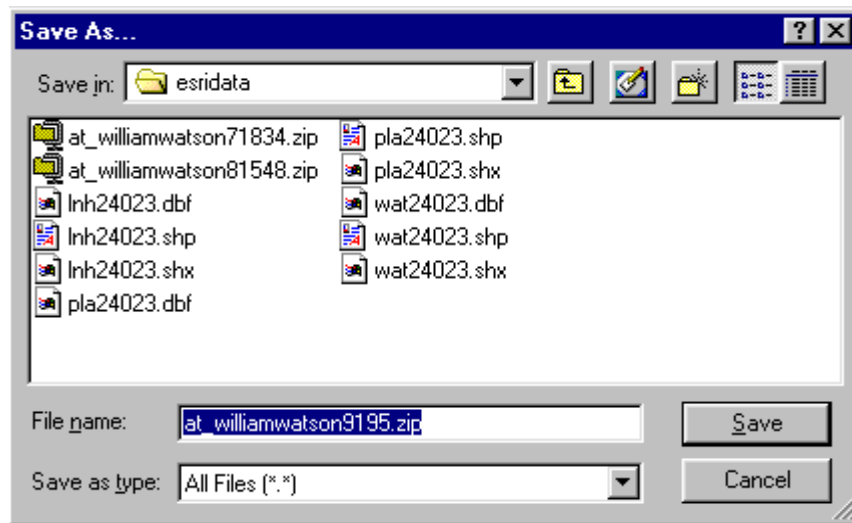
Next we unzip the downloaded file using WinZip (as above). It is likely that most of the time your application will require picking a layer for multiple counties. Therefore, we will go through instructions for using WinZip to unload all the county files. The procedure laid out here will have to be repeated for each layer. These steps will be the reference for all subsequent cycles of unzipping a multi-county zip file.

1. Start WinZip and open the downloaded "layer" zip file.

In the WinZip window you will see wat... files for all the counties.
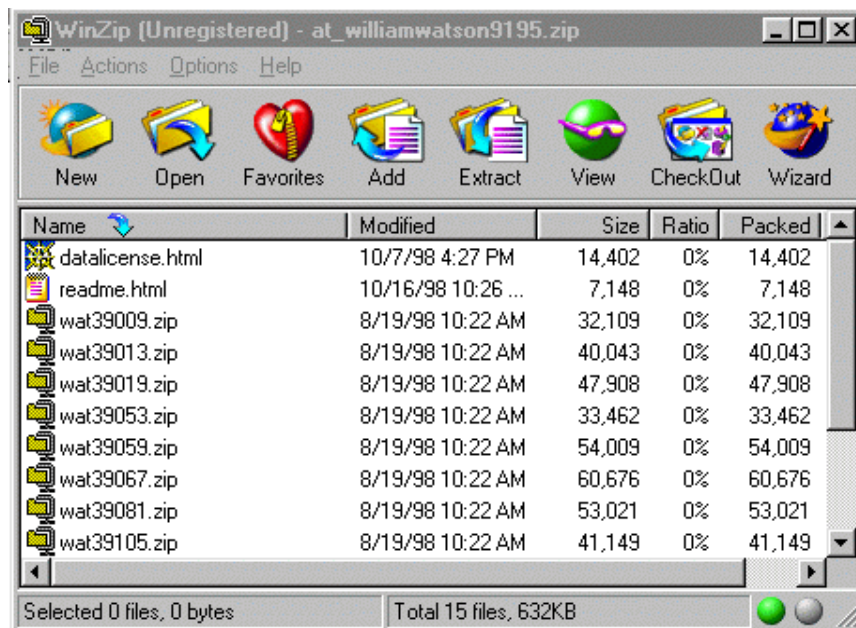
In the example shown at the bottom of page 11, the downloaded file contains 13 zip files or 1 waterbody zip file for each of the 13 counties in the example. The number of county files is calculated by observing the total number of files (right bottom of window) and subtracting 2 (to account for the datalicense and readme files). The count of 13 agrees with the count of 13 from the list of counties for Ohio.

2. Unzip each county file by double clicking it and extracting its files to the esridata folder.
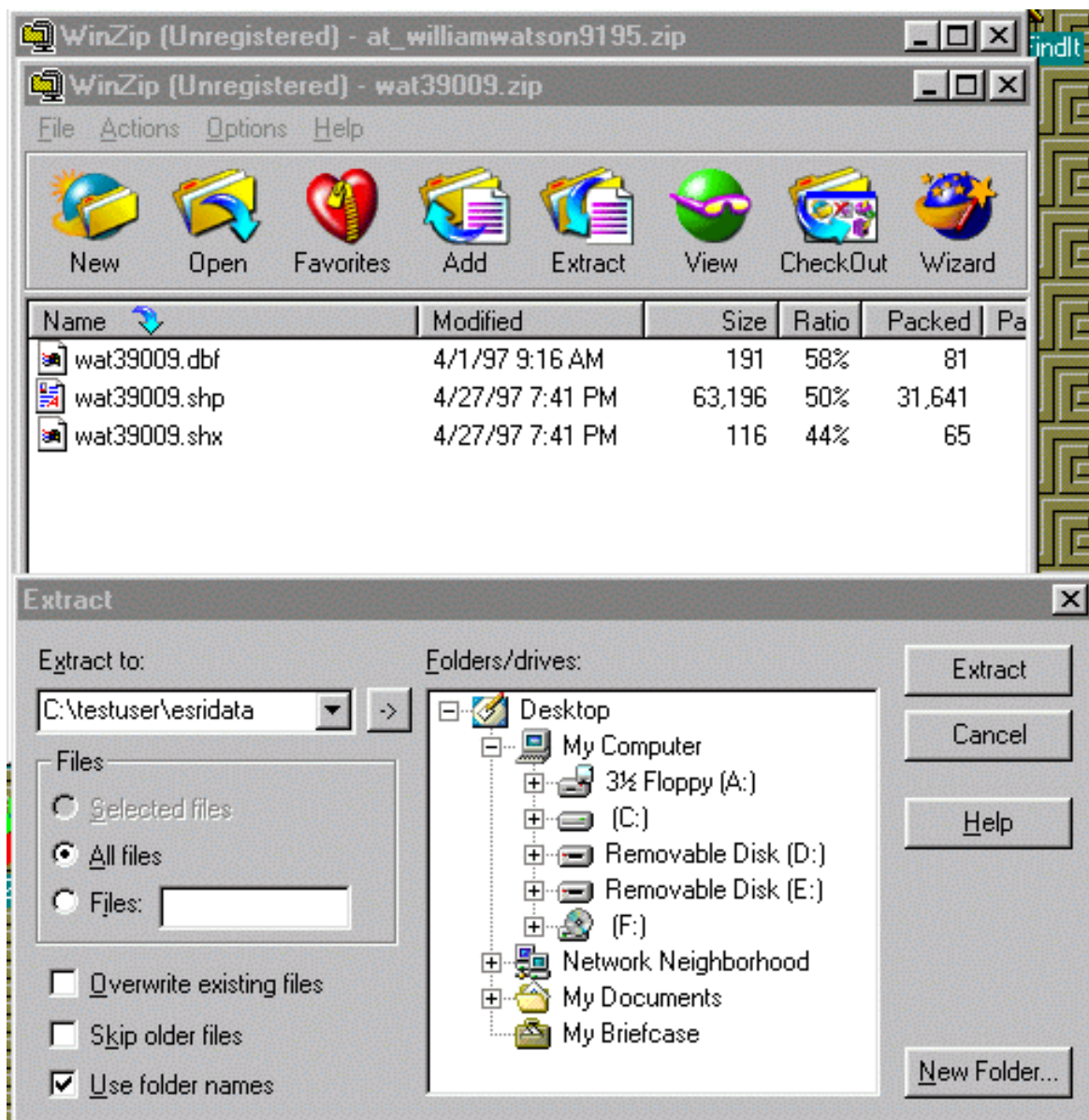
3. Keep the 1st and 2nd WinZip windows open and visible on your desktop.

4. To finish extracting all waterbody files for all counties, repeat the following steps:

    - Drag and drop the next county zip file from the 1st WinZip window into the 2nd WinZip window

      - Click Extract

      - Click Extract

Next we proceed to process the files for streams

Open the browser window

Back up 2 windows to the window with the **Layer Selection**

Select **Line Features, Streams**

Click **Submit Selection**

In the window that opens, select the counties again

Generate, Download, and Extract Files

Record the filename that ESRI assigns to the downloaded file. You will need this to navigate in your esridata folder.

The individual zip files (by state and county) have the fips in their name. This helps to identify the files you are processing.

Follow steps 1-4 (above) to extract files.

Next we proceed to process the files for populated places

Open the browser window

Back up 2 windows to the window with the **Layer Selection**

Select **Places (1995)**

Click **Submit Selection**

In the window that opens, select the counties again

Generate, Download, and Extract Files

Follow steps 1-4 (above) to extract files.

The above steps represent the iterations to process all the files for the 3 layers for the counties in one state

You then go to the next state on the Chapter 2 list and repeat the process for each of the 3 layers for the counties in that state.

You iterate this process until you have the 3 layers for the counties in all states on the Chapter 2 list.

At the end of this process you will have many files in your esridata folder. The total number should equal

> 3 (files per shape theme)

Times

> 3 (layers available from ESRI's ArcData Online site)

Times

> # of counties across all States

Plus

> # of downloaded files

CAUTION!!!!

Check to make sure you have all the files. Hereafter we begin to merge files. If any are missing and you have to backtrack, the effort will be heavy duty.

Taking stock

1. We have downloaded all of the feature data that is available from the ESRI ArcData Online site. These feature data allow us to define areas restricted to coal extraction in 3 categories: streams, water bodies, and populated places.

2. All of the files are Census TIGER 95 and all have NAD83 as a datum. Thus we will have to translate to NAD27 using TransNAD.

3. After NAD translation, we will merge all county files (by restriction) into a single file.

4. The single restriction file will then be converted to a grid.

5. Finally, we will expand the restricted feature by an appropriate # of cells to account for the buffer around the areas restricted for coal mining.

This guide will walk you through the procedure using the water body feature as an example.

You will have to repeat the same steps for streams and populated places.

<u>**Step 1.**</u>

Change datum to NAD27.

On the desktop, double click the TransNAD icon

Select all files by clicking ">>"
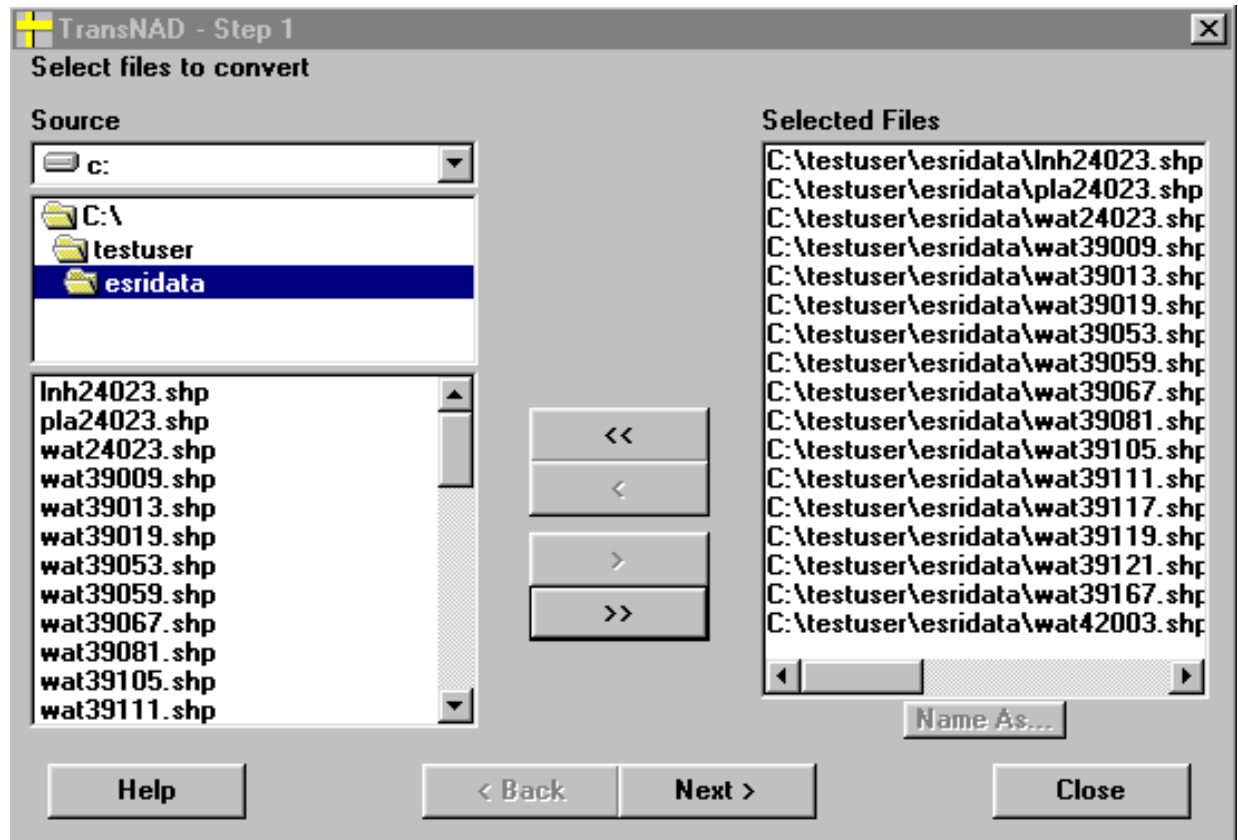
Click "Next"

Check that destination path is your esridata folder

Check radio button: **Convert NAD83 to NAD27**

Click "Next"

When prompted, click "Close"

Make View1 active

Delete all themes except Remainingalbdis.shp

Add Counties.shp to View1.

Change its polygon fill to transparent.
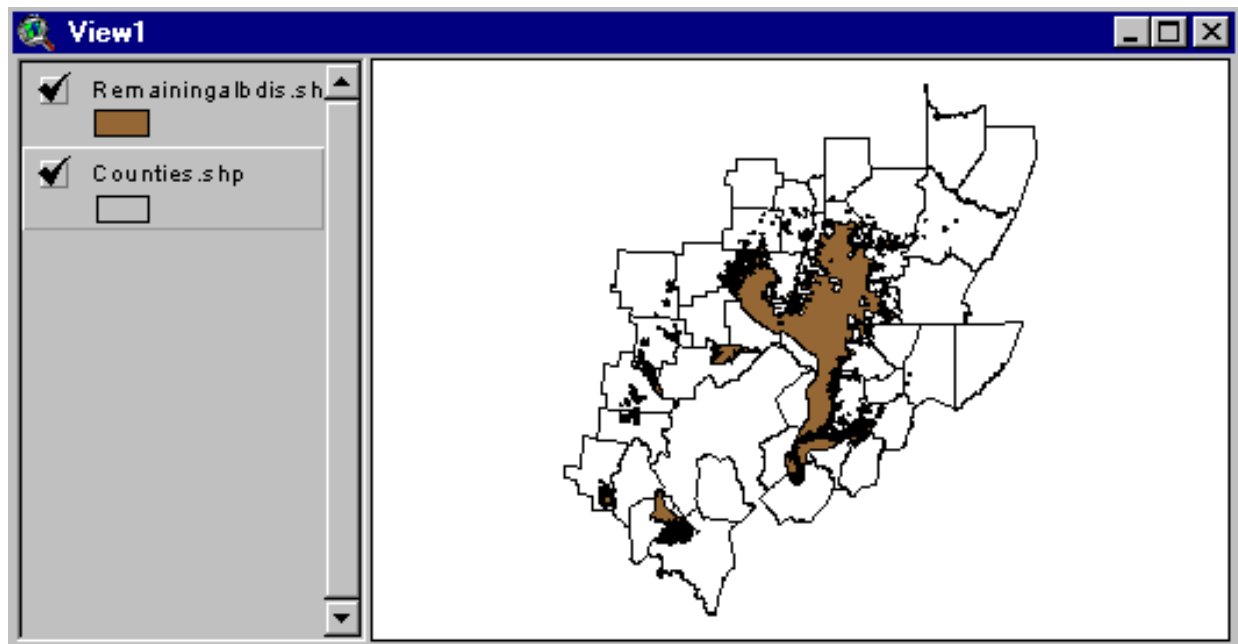
Step 2.

Merge all the water body themes into a single theme

Delete all themes in View2

Add all the **waterbody (i.e., wat....) Shapefiles** in your esridata folder to View2.
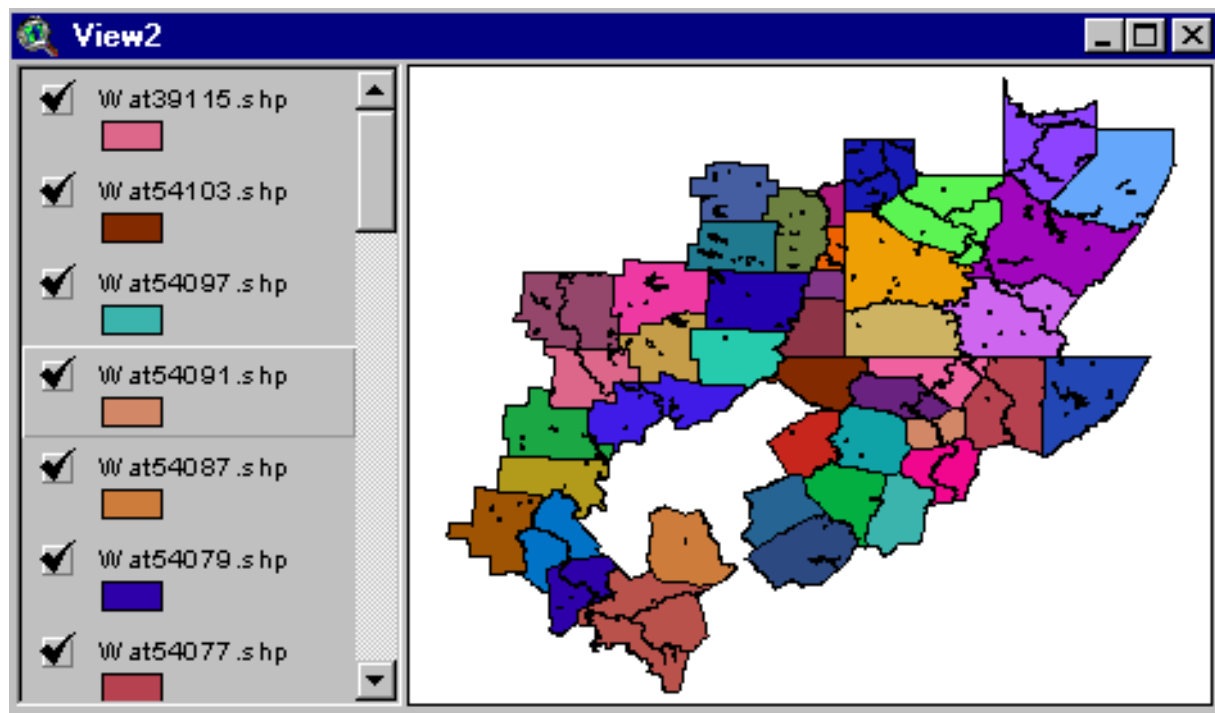
Open the Geoprocessing Wizard and select **Merge**
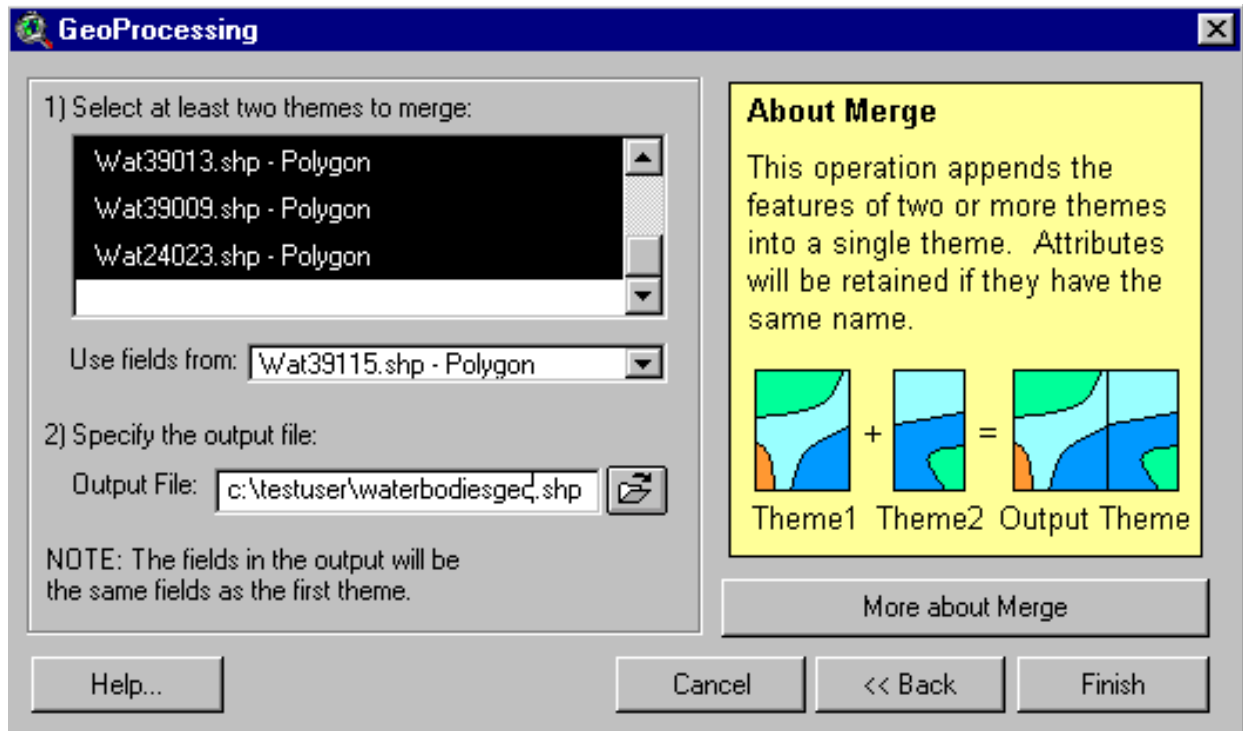
Select all the waterbody themes.

Name the output file: waterbodiesgeo

Click Finish

In View2, under the View Menu click Themes Off

Then in table of contents toggle display for Waterbodiesgeo.shp
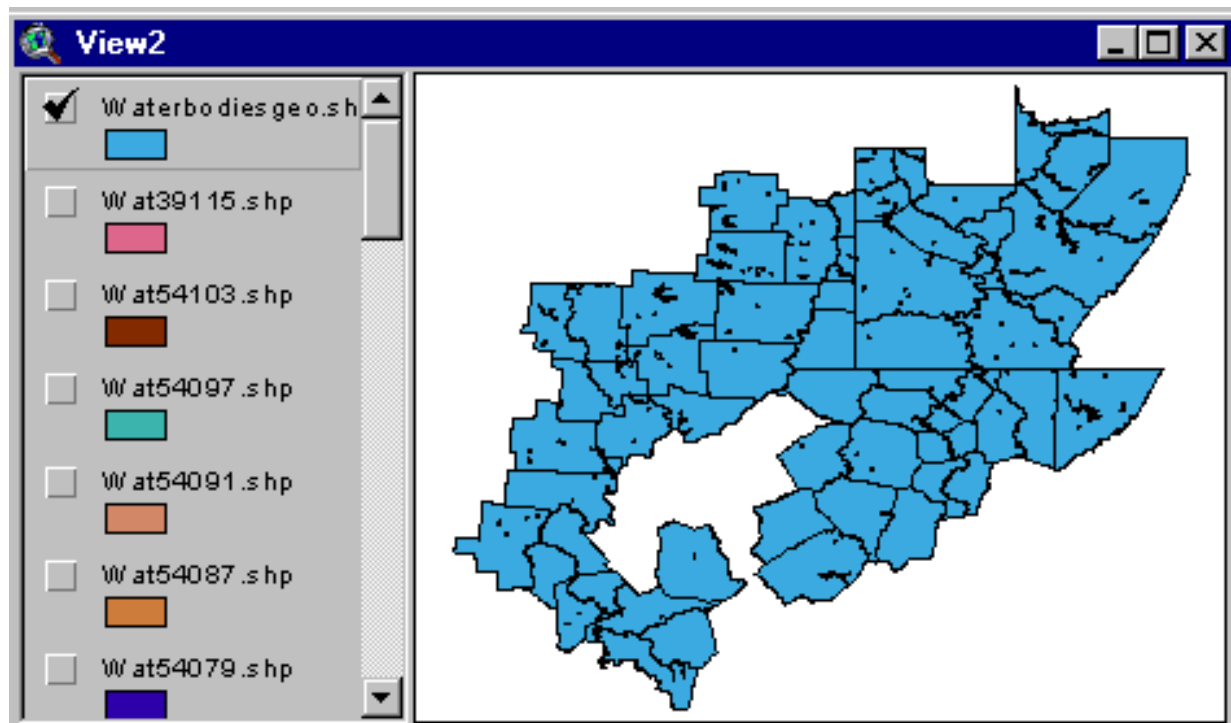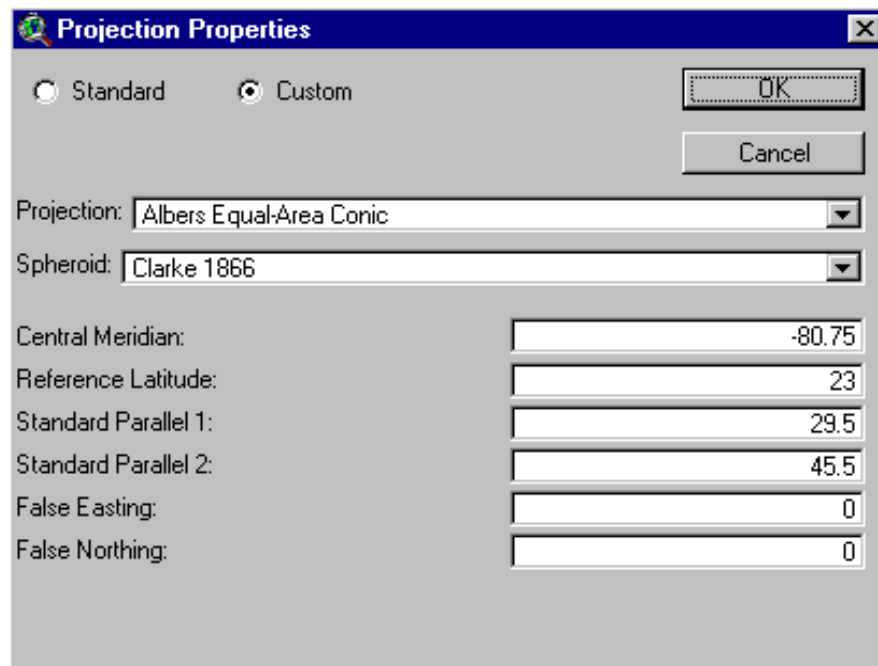
Step 3.

Reproject waterbodiesgeo to target projection

With Waterbodiesgeo.shp active, click the Projector button

Enter projection parameters

Projection Properties

○ Standard   ● Custom   OK

                                          Cancel

Projection: Albers Equal-Area Conic

Spheroid: Clarke 1866

Central Meridian:	-80.75
Reference Latitude:	23
Standard Parallel 1:	29.5
Standard Parallel 2:	45.5
False Easting:	0
False Northing:	0

Name new theme waterbodiesalb and add it to View1

Notice that Waterbodiesalb.shp and Counties.shp coincide. This is another check that all of the county files were successfully downloaded from the ArcData Online site.
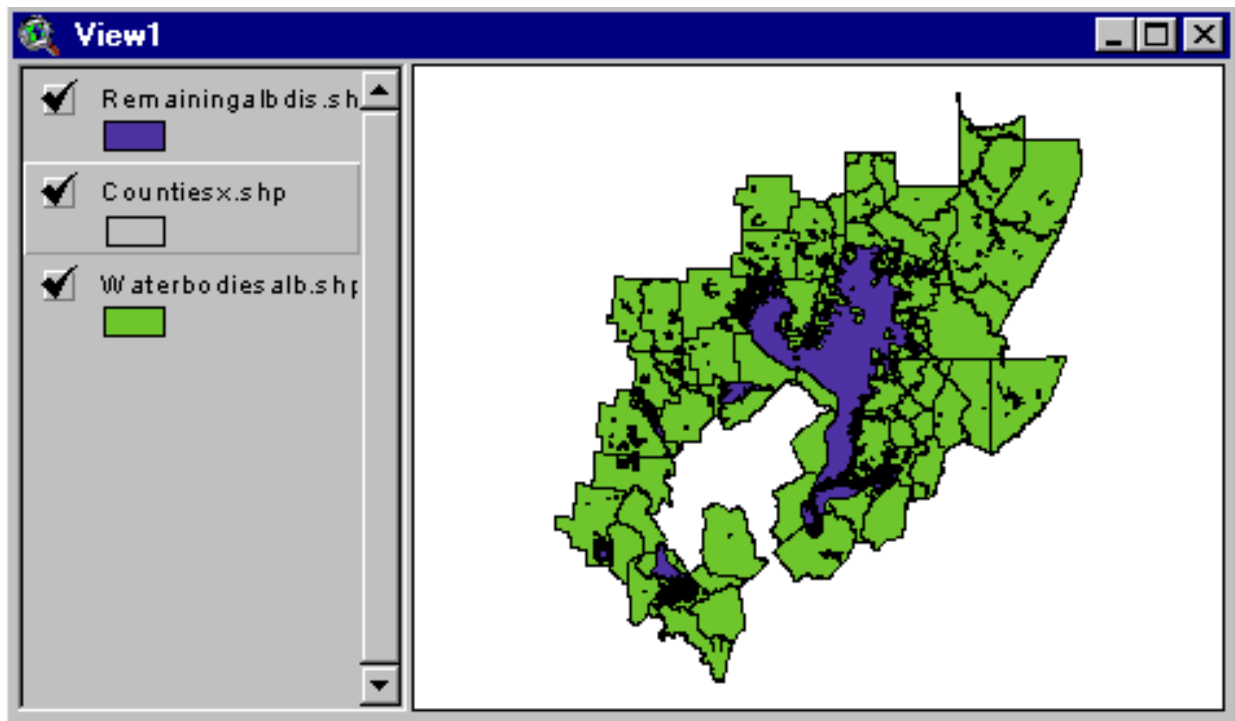
Step 4.

Convert waterbodiesalb to grid

Under the Analysis menu, click Properties and enter the following parameters:

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent `Same As Remainingalbdis.shp` ▼

Left `-133786.751214`   Top `1957465.962043`

Bottom `1705723.312625`   Right `136290.740718`

Analysis Cell Size `As Specified Below` ▼

Cell Size `16`   m

Number of Rows `15734`

Number of Columns `16880`

Analysis Mask `No Mask Set` ▼

OK   Cancel

Record the cell size, no. of rows, and no. of columns for future reference.

Make Waterbodiesalb.shp active.

Using query builder, build expression: water = 1

Click "New Set"

Under the theme menu, click "Convert to grid"

Name new theme: waterb

Pick "water' for cell value
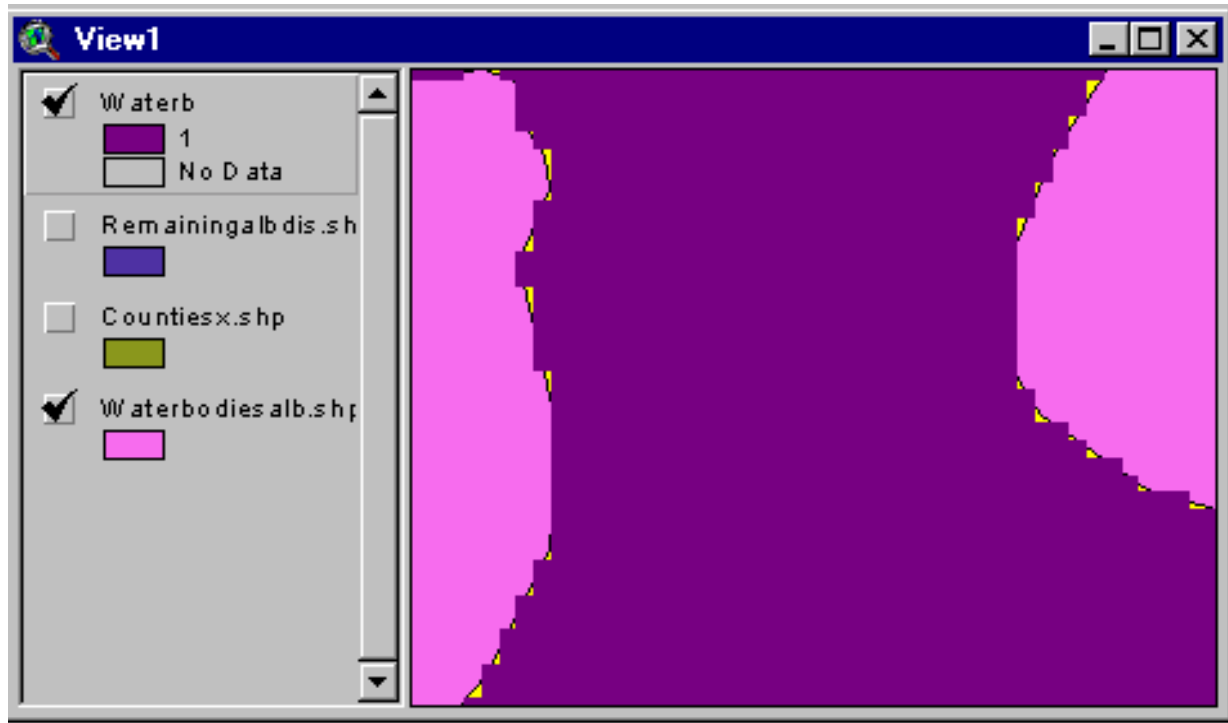
Add theme to View1

Display Waterb; turn off display for other themes

Waterb has waterbody polygons only. The county polygons were removed when we made new theme with water = 1.

Zoom and toggle on -- toggle off Waterbodiesalb.shp to see that the 2 coverages are close matches.

Step 5.

Expand the waterbody feature by 2 cell widths (= 100 feet)

Open the Map Calculator and enter the expand request:
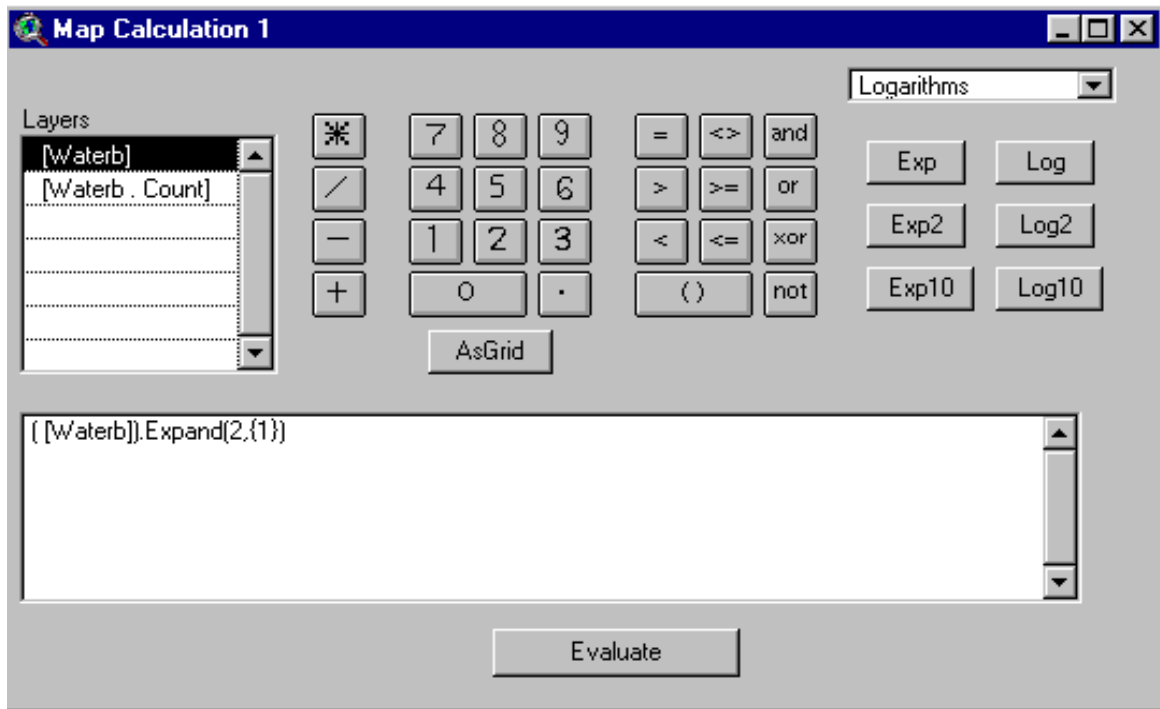
Put the new grid below Waterb in the table of contents. Toggle on its display. Zoom tight to see the buffer. Click the Theme Menu, then Properties and rename the buffered grid as waterbwbuf. Note: the new name appears in the Table of Contents in View 1. The new name is **not** permanent. At the end of the chapter, we will use the ArcView Data Source Manager to permanently rename grids that are retained.
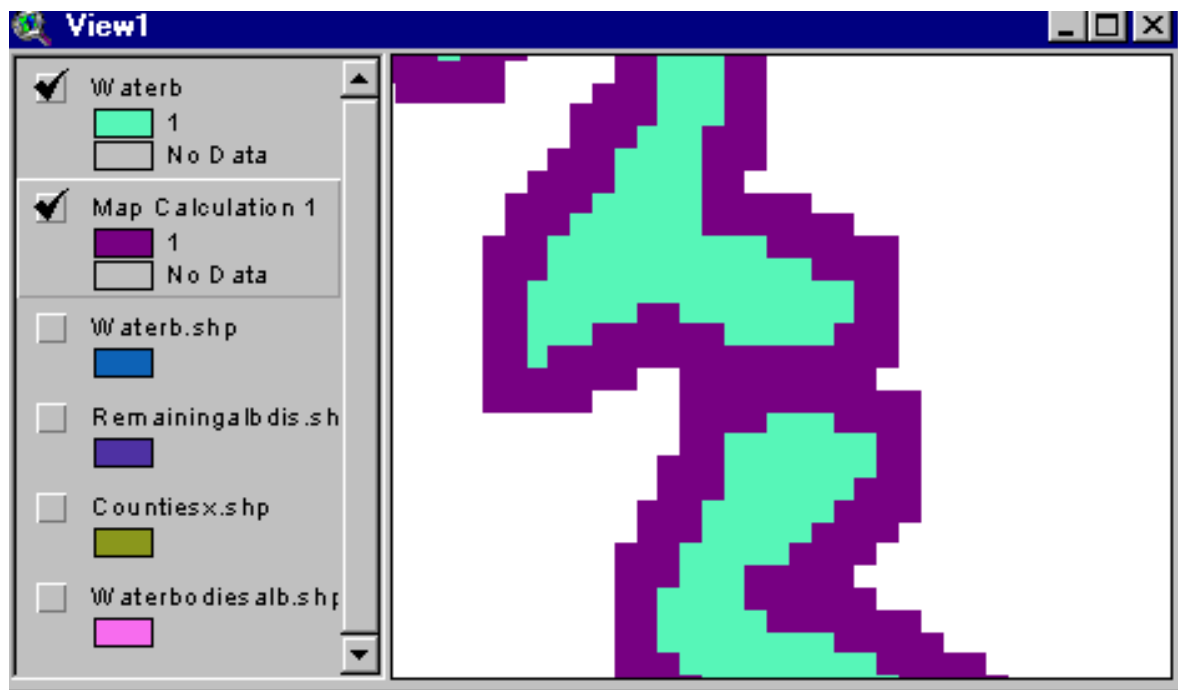
Save your ArcView project.

Step 6.

Use Rem16mcell as a mask. Reduce the extent of Waterbwbuf.

As a general rule, we want our coverages to be small rather than large. Small coverages speed processing.

Add Rem16mcell to View1.

Set Rem16mcell as a mask in the Analysis Properties window:

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent   Same As Rem16mcell

Left -155677.503175   Top 1970643.69375

Bottom 1693107.69375   Right 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size Current Value

Cell Size 16   m

Number of Rows 17346

Number of Columns 21718

Analysis Mask Rem16mcell

OK   Cancel

In Map Calculator evaluate this expression:
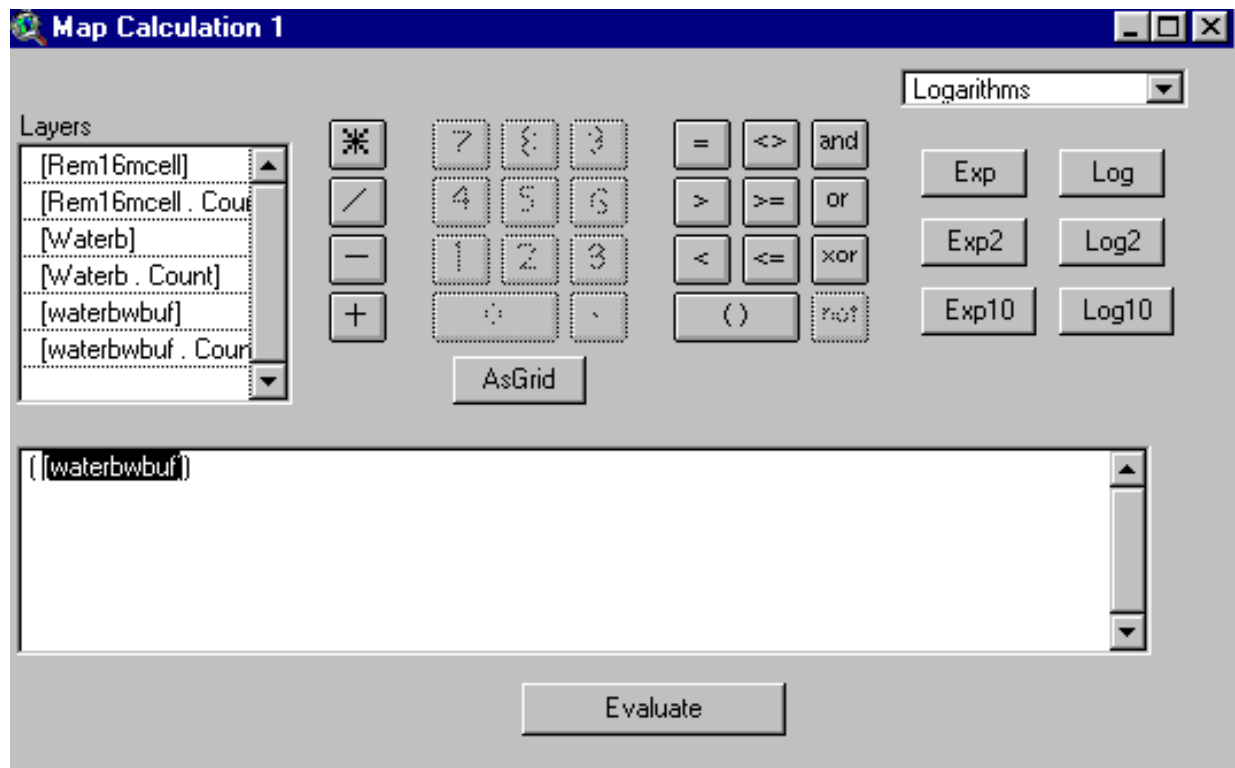
In the theme properties window, change name to "Water bodies with 100 foot buffer on remaining coal." Display the grid themes for water bodies (unbuffered), water bodies buffered, and remaining coal. You should be able to verify visually that water bodies and buffers are accounted for in remaining coal. Later we use "Water bodies with 100 foot buffer on remaining coal" along with other grids of restricted coal to assess available coal.
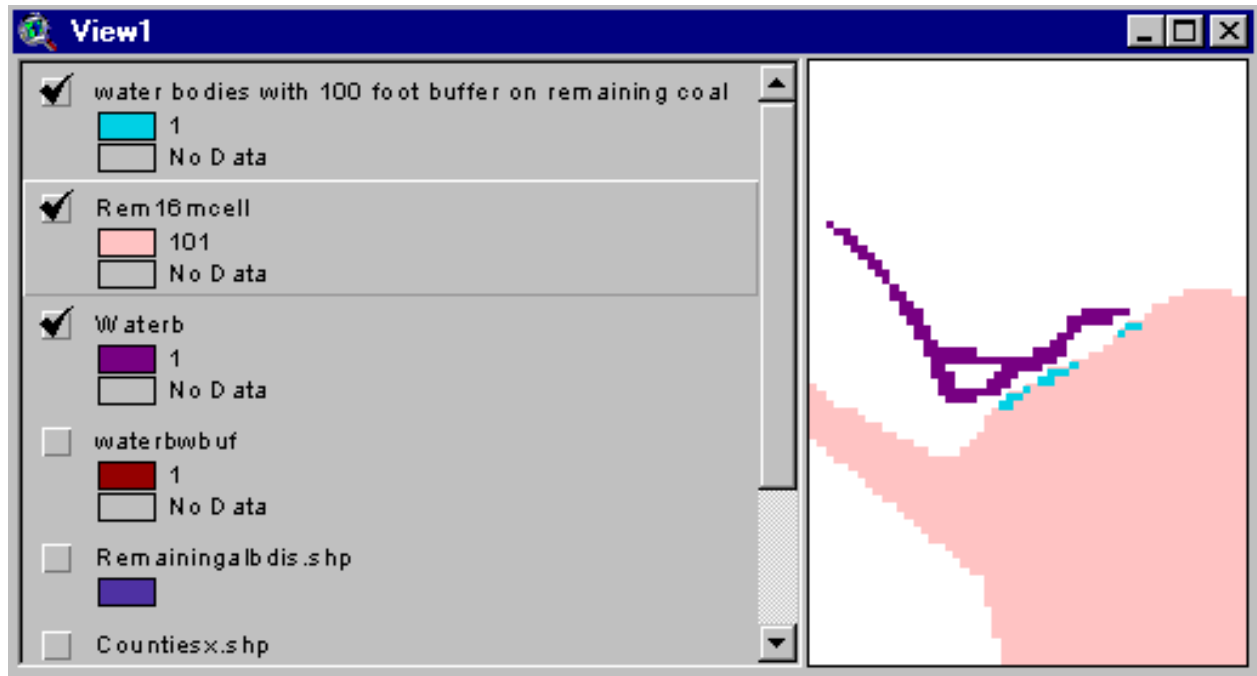
CAUTION!!!!

Spatial Analyst assigns default names. The options you exercise under the Analysis Menu send requests to Spatial Analyst and it returns a theme with a default name. The default names are the **names used for each grid theme by the operating system. When you open themes properties and rename the theme, that name becomes the new name in the table of contents. It does not become the name that the operating system has for the grid.**

Open the theme properties window for "Water bodies with 100 foot buffer on remaining coal"
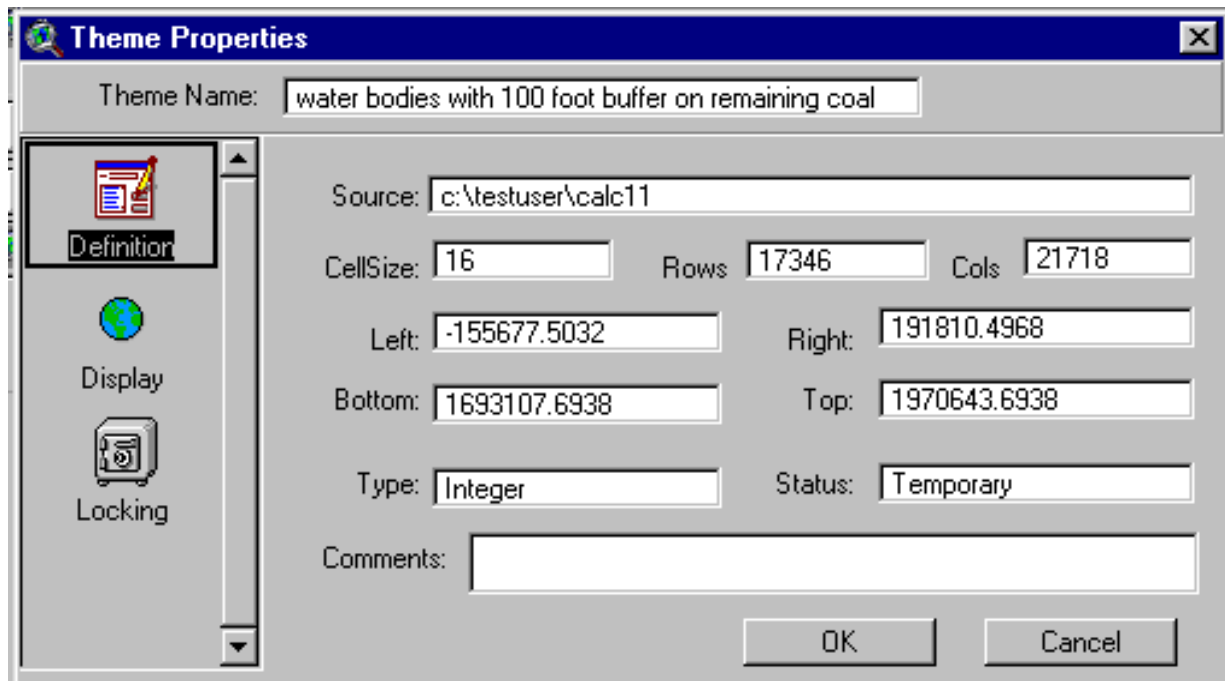
When the theme is removed from the View, the Theme Name is <u>not</u> retained. When you reload the theme, you will have to be able to identify it by the name in <u>Source</u>. In the example above, the grid theme (water bodies with 100 foot buffer on remaining coal) is known to the operating system as: c:\testuser\calc11. Windows Explorer and ArcView's add theme windows only will know the theme as <u>calc11.</u>

<u>Bottom Line:</u> As you create coverages, keep a running list of the source names. Later we will want to pull these coverages into a new project and to rename them. At that time, we will need to know the name that the operating system has for the coverages.

At the end of this chapter, we will use the Spatial Analyst data source manager to rename the coverages to names that will help us identify the coverages.

<u>But for the time being, keep a running list of source names.</u> If you forget, it may be nearly impossible later to tell which of the default-named coverages correspond with the buffered and clipped coverages we create in this chapter.

Note: Here are some additional instructions that help you understand how ArcView names new grids and how you set the parameter values for the Expand request.

Experienced ArcView users can skip this material and go to page 3 -33.

ArcView Grid Names

When you choose Map Calculator under the Analysis Menu and submit a request, you are creating a new grid.

ArcView will give the new grid a default name in the **Table of Contents (TOC):**

Recall the Table of Contents is the area to the left in the View Window where your coverages are listed and identified.

The default TOC name will be Map Calculation #, where # is 1 if there are no other Map Calculation themes or # is the next higher number from any current Map Calculation # shown in the TOC, or # can be any available # starting with 1 if grids have been removed or renamed.

You can change the TOC name by clicking on the Theme menu, then Properties.

In the Properties dialogue window, the new name is entered in the Theme Name box.

The new name will appear in the TOC.

However, the name which ArcView uses to track the data at the level of the operating system, is the name shown in the Source window (in Theme Properties).

ArcView applies a default naming system. Grids created by Map Calculator are named calc#, where # starts at 1 and builds up or fills in depending upon the numbering of calc grids that exist in the working directory.

Bottom line: There is no correspondence between the TOC name and the Source name. However, by opening Properties under the Theme menu, you will be able to see the names that are assigned.

Thus on page 3-29, ArcView named the waterbuffer grid as calc11 because, at the time, that was the next available # for the calc series (obviously other calc grids had been placed in the working directory prior to the water buffering calculation).

Expand Request

The Expand request has this format:

.Expand(# of cells, {list of unique feature types in the Value Field})

"# of cells" expands features by that #

List of features identifies all features that will be expanded

The following is an example of the expansion for Streams:

At the completion of Step 3, the shapefile streamsalb contains over 17,000 records and the following attributes in its table:

Record_id
Cfcc
Name

Sort the field Cfcc in ascending order to verify that there are 5 unique Cfcc codes.

In Step 4 convert streamsalb to grid:

Make streamsalb active

Under theme menu, select "Convert to Grid"

Select Cfcc as the field for Cell Values

Open the attribute field and note that there are 5 values, 1-5, in the Value field

In Step 5 enter this request in Map Calculator:

gridname.Expand(2,{1,2,3,4,5})

The gridname would be Nwgrd# probably with # = 1, if you use the ArcView default.

An alternative approach:

Prior to Step 4, edit the table for streamsalb

- Add a NewField (e.g. index)

- Use Calculator to make index = 1

When you run step 4,

Select index as the field for Cell Values

In Step 5 enter this request in Map Calculator

Gridname.Expand(2,{1})

The alternate approach is the easier of the two methods.

The alternate method can be applied to all the other themes that are expanded to include a buffer.

The 6 steps we have just worked through give us the coverage for water bodies. That coverage is a grid (at 16 meters on a side), buffered to 100 feet, and clipped to the area of remaining coal.

Repeat these steps for:

> Streams
>
> > You expand by **2 cells (100 feet) to account for the required buffer.**
>
> Populated Places
>
> > By checking boundaries against road networks, I found that the boundaries for populated places ordinarily include a large space (more than a 300 foot buffer) between the perimeter structures and the populated place boundary. Therefore, in the Pittsburgh assessment, I did not add any additional buffer to the Populated Places boundaries.   Assuming the same outcome for your assessment, when processing Populated Places, you would bypass **Step 5.**

At the end of all that processing, you will have coverages for

> Water Bodies
>
> Streams
>
> Populated Places

as grids

> 16 meters on a side

with appropriate buffers

> Water Bodies (100 feet)
>
> Stream (100 feet)
>
> Populated Places

and clipped to the area of

> Remaining Coal

CAUTION!!!!!

When you finish Step 6 for Streams, open the Theme Properties Window and record the Source path and theme name for the buffered and clipped theme..

When you finish Step 6 for Populated Places, open the Theme Properties Window and record the Source path and theme name for the buffered and clipped theme.

Coverages and Buffers for Parks, Urbanized Areas, and Interstate Highways

Next, we make coverages, with buffers on remaining coal, for

> **Parks**
>
> **Urbanized Areas**
>
> **Interstate Highways**

The initial coverage for each of these coverages is found on CD 2, ESRI Data & Maps.

This guide walks you through the steps for making a coverage for Interstate Highways.

Coverages for Parks and Urbanized Areas are made by repeating the steps we follow for Interstate Highways.

The initial coverage is a national U.S. coverage.

Step 1.

Copy the Interstate Highway coverage to your project folder.

After placing CD2 in your drive, use Windows Explorer, navigate to the interstate coverage, and copy it to your project folder.
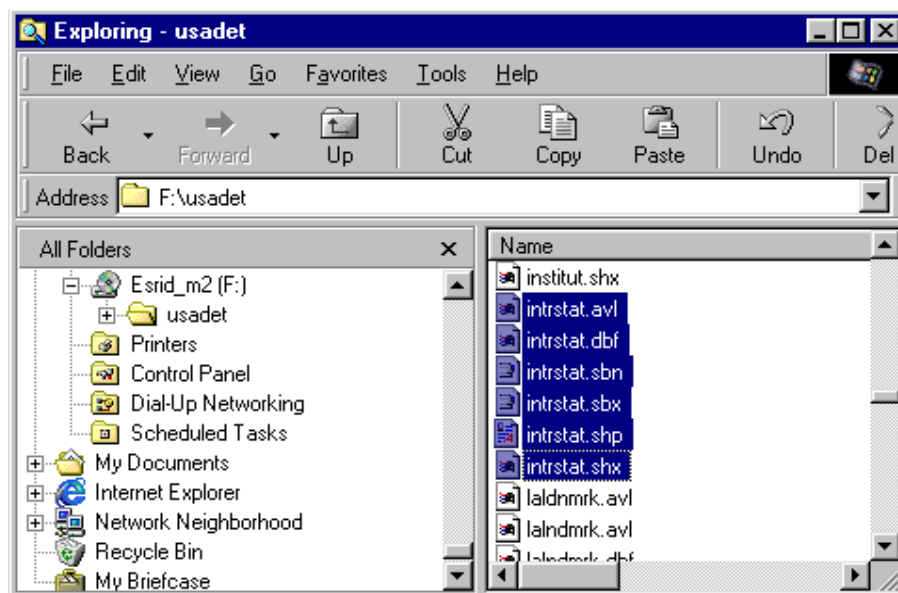
Step 2.

Convert to NAD27 if needed.

According to the metadata, the interstate highway coverage is NAD27. Since NAD27 is the datum of choice, we do not need to make a conversion.

Step 3.

Project to target projection.

Delete all themes from View1 except Rem16mcell.

Delete all themes from View2.

Add intrstat to View 2.

Toggle on its display.

Use select tool to capture conterminous US interstates.

Convert to shapefile and name the coverage: hi.

Add hi to View2.

Delete intrstat.

According to metadata, hi is unprojected in decimal degrees.

Open View Properties and set Map Units to decimal degrees.

Make hi active.

Project to target projection by clicking on Projector Button.

Name the reprojected coverage: Hialb.

Add Hialb to View1.

Toggle on its display.
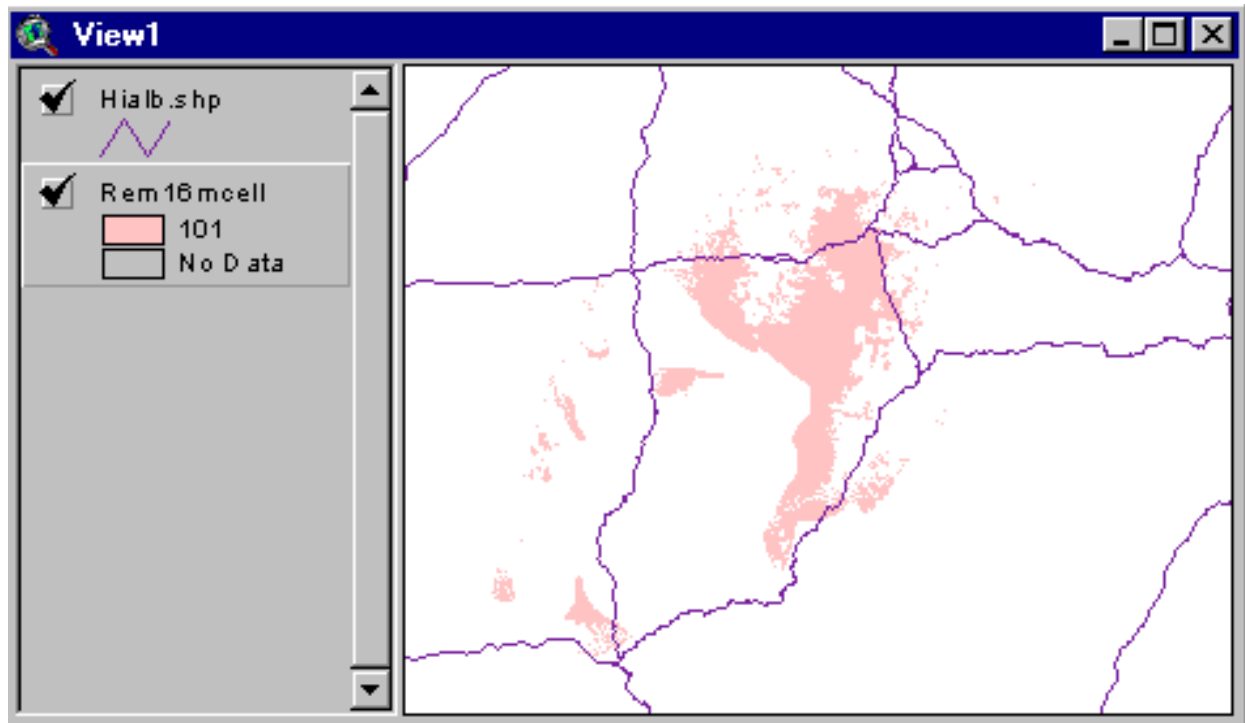
Step 4.

Clip the reprojected coverage using Counties.shp.

The purpose of this step is to reduce the size of the coverage before we convert to grid and add buffers, processes which are compute intensive and would take a long time if we did not reduce the size of our coverage.

Add Counties.shp to View1.

Open the Geoprocessing Wizard.

Select Clip.

Make Hialb the theme to be clipped.

Make Counties the overlay polygon.

The new theme is named Hialbclip.

Step 5.

Convert to grid.

Make Rem16mcell active.

In the Analysis Properties window, enter these settings:

(Note: the extent settings are determined by the Rem16mcell grid and, as such, are specific to the Pittsburgh coal bed. You would use a comparable coverage for the bed you are assessing.)

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent Same As Rem16mcell ▼

Left -155677.503175   **Top** 1970643.69375

Bottom 1693107.69375   **Right** 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size Current Value ▼

Cell Size 16   m

Number of Rows 17346

Number of Columns 21718

Analysis Mask No Mask Set ▼

OK   Cancel

Make Hialbclip.shp active.

Under the theme menu, click Convert to Grid.

Name the new grid hialb.

Select Route_num as the field for cell values.

Add it to View1.

Toggle on its display. Open Legend Editor by double clicking on symbol in Table of Contents

In legend editor, set Legend Type = Unique Value and Values Field = Value
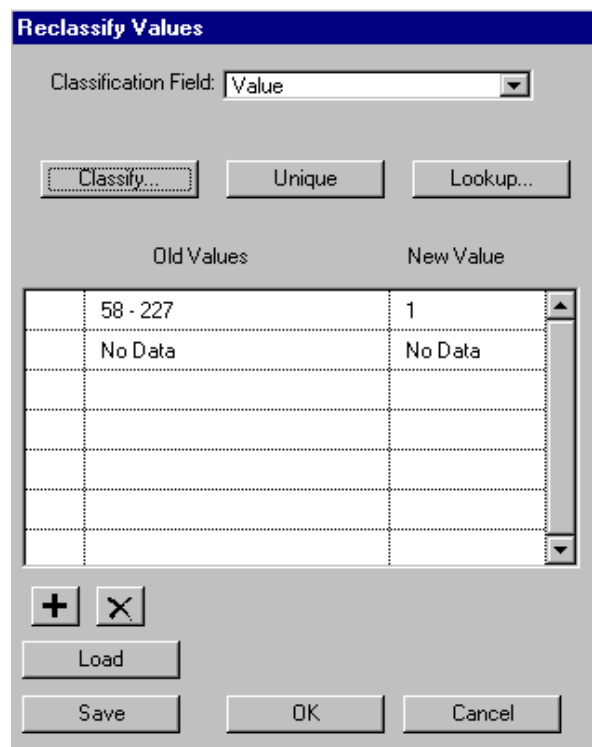
Step 6.

Reclassify to a single unique value.

We need to reclassify to a single index so that the buffer expand request can operate on a single-valued list.

Make the Hialb grid active.

Under the Analysis Menu, Reclassify on Value with classes = 1:

Reclassify Values		
Classification Field: Value		
Classify...	Unique	Lookup...
Old Values		New Value
58 - 227		1
No Data		No Data

+ ×

Load

Save | OK | Cancel

Step 7.

Add buffer.

The hialb grid coverage is 1 cell wide or 50 feet wide. We have to make a reasonable estimate of the total width of an interstate from the outside right-of-way lines which can include wide median and shoulder areas in rural stretches. For the Pittsburgh assessment, I added an 8 cell buffer. This buffer is 300 feet on each side of the initial cell plus 100 feet for the buffer required by the mining regulations.

Keep the same settings as set above for Analysis Properties. These settings will put a buffer around interstates in the large area containing remaining coal. We want "overkill" to make sure that buffers on parts of the interstate outside remaining coal, which overlap remaining coal, are included in the analysis.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this expression:
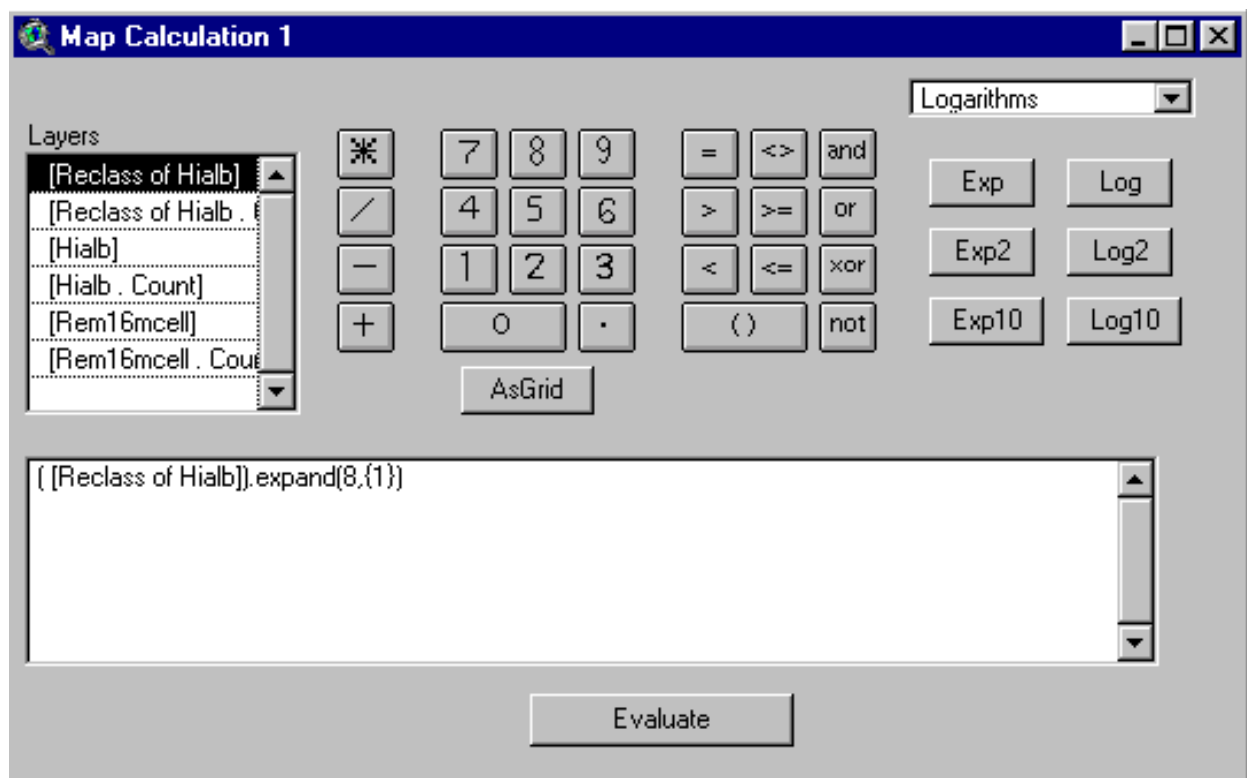
Step 8.

Clip the buffered coverage to the area containing remaining coal.

Open Analysis Properties and set the Mask to: Rem16mcell.

Open the Map Calculator and evaluate this request:
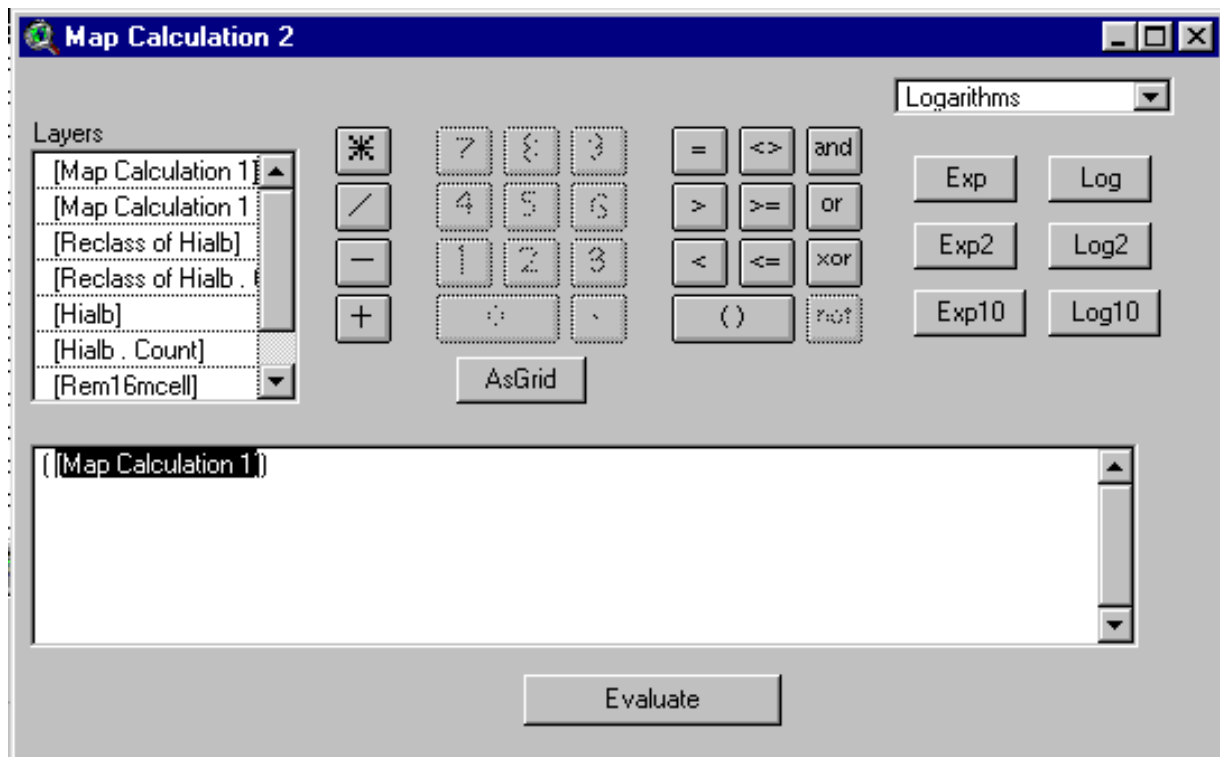
This request will clip Hialb to the area containing remaining coal.

Rename the new theme: Interstate Highways Remaining Coal 8 Cell Buffer.

Toggle on its display.

Zoom to an area where you can see buffers extending onto coal from stretches of the interstate that are not on remaining coal.
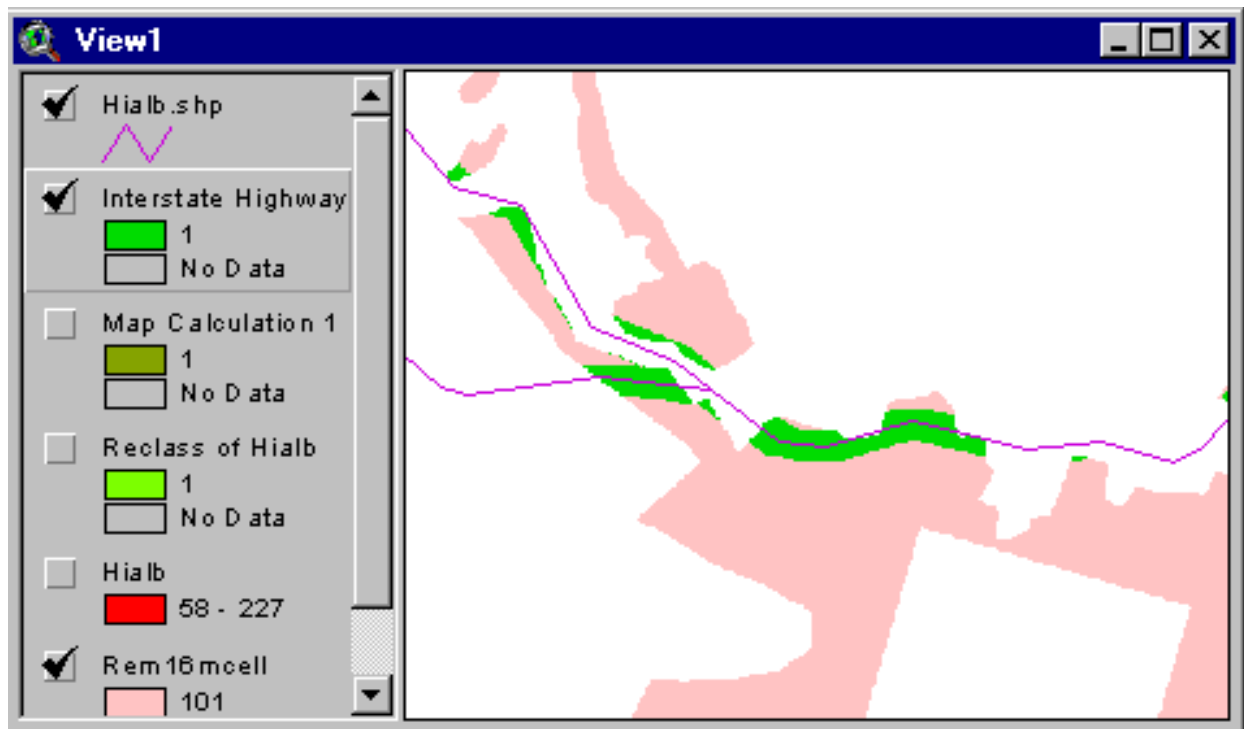
We now have completed the steps for creating a buffered coverage of interstates on remaining coal.

CAUTION!!!!

Open the Theme Properties window for Interstate Highways Remaining Coal 8 Cell Buffer and record the source path and name.

Return to Step 1 and follow the same sequence for

Parks (expand by 6 cells = 300 feet) &

Urbanized Areas

Note: Similar to Populated Places, the boundaries of Urbanized Areas were checked against road networks. It appears that most of the time there is more than 0.1 miles of open space between the boundary and the outer perimeter of the road network. Therefore, in the Pittsburgh assessment, I did not add an additional 300 foot buffer to Urbanized Area boundaries. I.e., I did not apply Step 7. I recommend you skip Step 7 when you process

Urbanized Areas for your assessment.

The metadata for Parks does not contain the datum. GDT provided the Parks coverage. I called GDT to obtain the datum, NAD83.

If you attempt to convert Parks from NAD83 to NAD27, TransNAD generates an "overflow" problem and will not finish the conversion.

An overflow means that the data exceeds the dimensions allowed by the TransNAD software.

I overcame this problem by using the select tool to select parks in the Eastern U.S. When I ran TransNAD on the smaller coverage it worked fine.

Also, for some of the coverages you may not have to do every step. For example, for Parks it is not necessary to do Step 5. The parks coverage (after conversion to grid) has 2 unique value codes: 1, 2. Use the Legend Editor to select unique values for the "value" field. Just enter both codes in the list when you make the Expand request.

Lesson: Be flexible and thoughtful as you work your way through the assessment.

CAUTION!!!!

When you complete Step 8 to create a buffered and clipped grid for Parks, open the Theme Properties window and record the source path and name.

When you complete Step 8 to create a buffered and clipped grid for Urbanized Areas, open the Theme Properties window and record the source path and name.

At this stage, we have completed the preparation of 6 buffered restriction coverages.

We have recorded the default names of the grid coverages for each restriction. An example list is:

Restriction Coverage	Path
Water Bodies	c:\testuser\calc11
Streams	c:\testuser\rclss3
Populated Places	c:\testuser\calc14
Interstate Highways	c:\testuser\calc6
Parks	c:\testuser\calc8
Urbanized Areas	c:\testuser\calc9

Open a new view window, add your restriction grid themes, and display them to confirm that
your records are up to date.
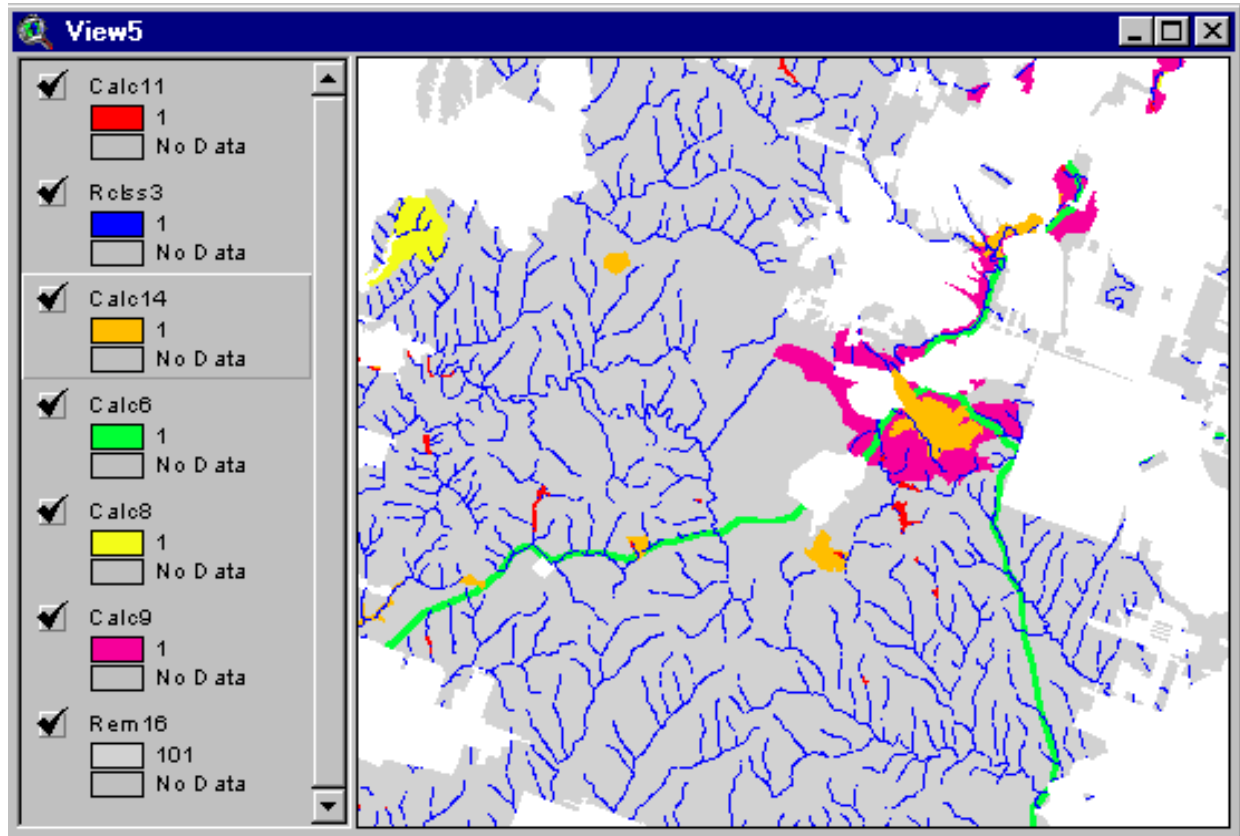
Coverage and Buffers for Oil and Gas Wells

In this section, we process oil and gas well data to create a grid showing associated areas restricted to coal mining.

The basic data are point locations for wells in the eastern U.S. available from me. Send e-mail to wwatson@usgs.gov to obtain a copy of the data. For other regions, contact Emil Attanasi at attanasi@usgs.gov.

Delete all data from View2.

In the Project Manager Window add these tables (for the Eastern U.S.):

      - wells65.txt
      - wells65over.txt
      - wells130over.txt

In View2, under the view menu, use "Add Event Theme" and cycle through the 3 data files to load point coverages into View2:
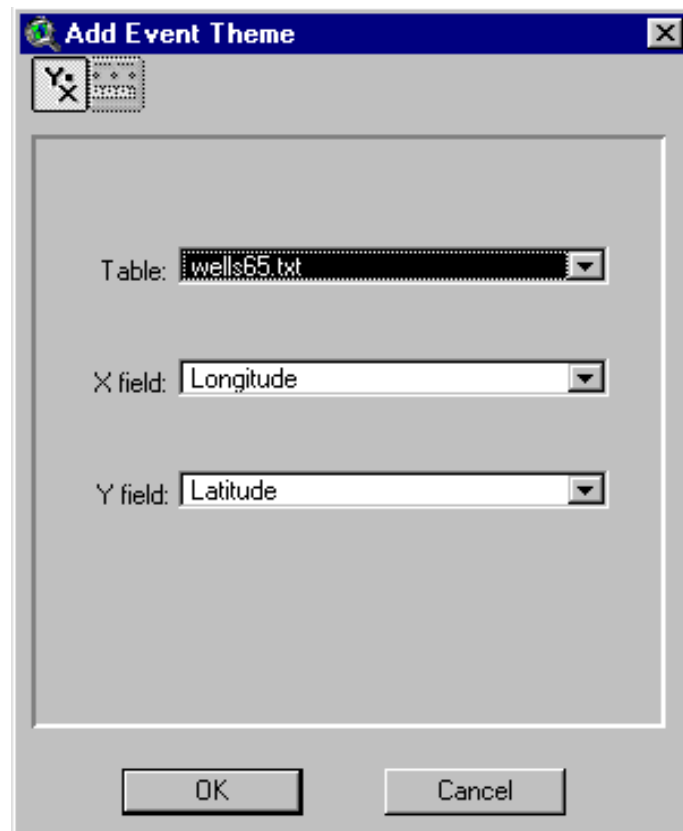
Display the 3 well themes in View2:
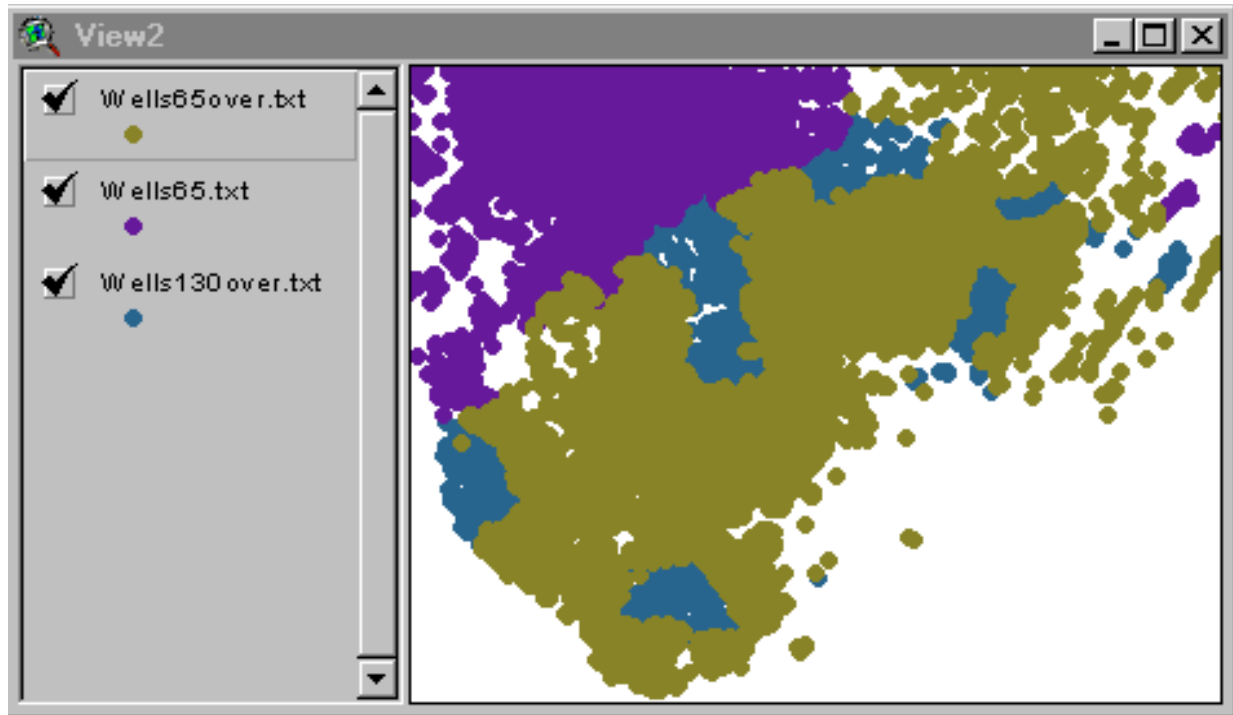
Use the Geoprocessing Wizard to merge the 3 themes into a single theme named Wells.shp.

Delete Wells65.txt, Wells65over.txt, and Wells130over.txt.

Add Counties.shp to View2.

In View Properties, change map units to meters.

Make Counties.shp active and reproject it to unprojected decimal degrees.

Name the new shapefile: Countiesgeo.shp.

Add it to View2.

In View Properties, change map units to decimal degrees.

Display Wells.shp and Countiesgeo.shp.
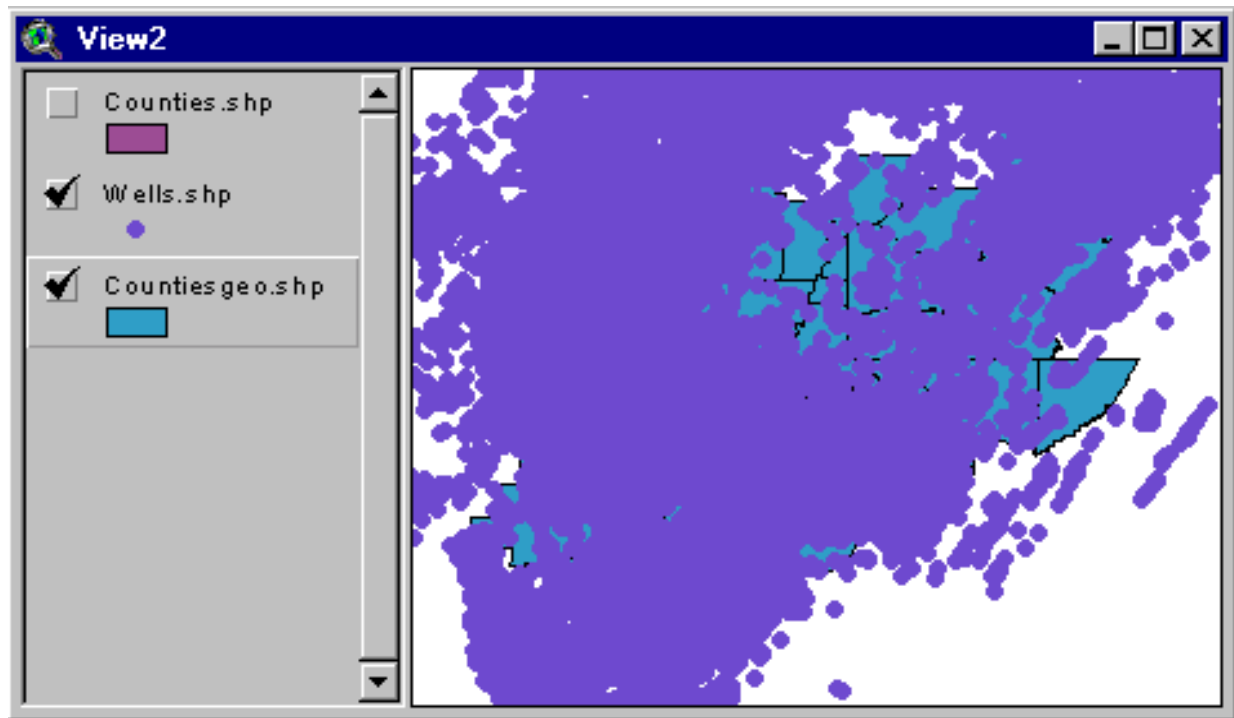
Delete all the themes from View1.

Make View2 active.

Use the Geoprocessing Wizard to Clip Wells.shp using Countiesgeo.shp.

Name the new theme: Wellsclip.shp.

Delete Wells.shp and Counties.shp from View2.

Display Countiesgeo.shp and Wellsclip.shp.
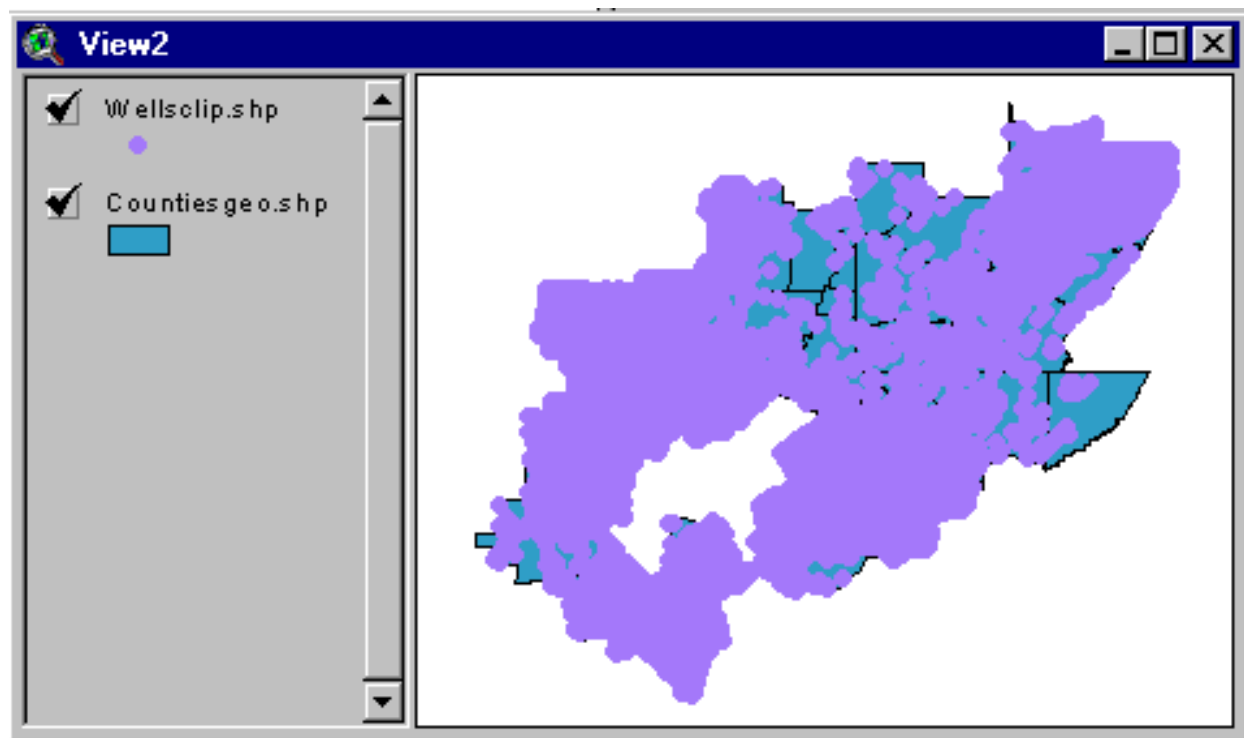
Make Wellsclip.shp Active.

Click Projector Button and project to target projection.

Name the projected theme: Wellsalb.shp.

In View Properties, change Map Units to meters.

Add Counties.shp to View2.

Add the grid coverage, Rem16mcell to View2.

Set the following values in Analysis Properties:

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent	Same As Rem16mcell

Left -155677.503175   Top 1970643.69375

Bottom 1693107.69375   Right 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size As Specified Below

Cell Size 16   m

Number of Rows 17346

Number of Columns 21718

Analysis Mask Rem16mcell

OK   Cancel

Display Counties.shp and Wellsalb.shp.
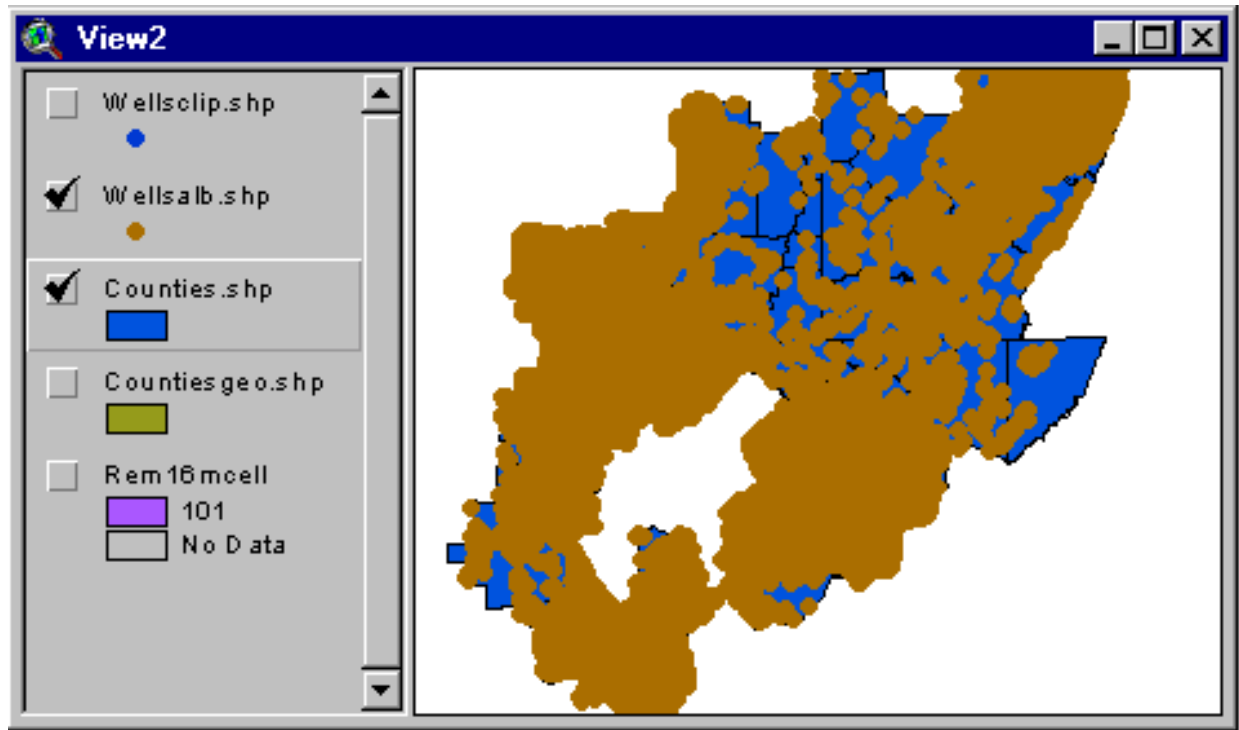
Make Wellsalb.shp active.

Under Theme Menu, click "Convert to Grid."

Select "Finclass" as field for cell values.

Name the new grid theme: Wells.

Add it to View 1.

Make View1 active.

Check Analysis Properties and change Analysis Mask = No Mask Set.

In Map Calculator, add a 200 foot buffer by evaluating the following request:

Map Calculation 1

Layers
```
[Wells]
[Wells . Count]
```

Logarithms

Calculator buttons: `*` `7` `8` `9` `=` `<>` `and` `Exp` `Log`
`/` `4` `5` `6` `>` `>=` `or` `Exp2` `Log2`
`-` `1` `2` `3` `<` `<=` `xor` `Exp10` `Log10`
`+` `0` `.` `( )` `not`
`AsGrid`

```
( [Wells]).Expand(4, {1,2,4,5,7})
```

Evaluate
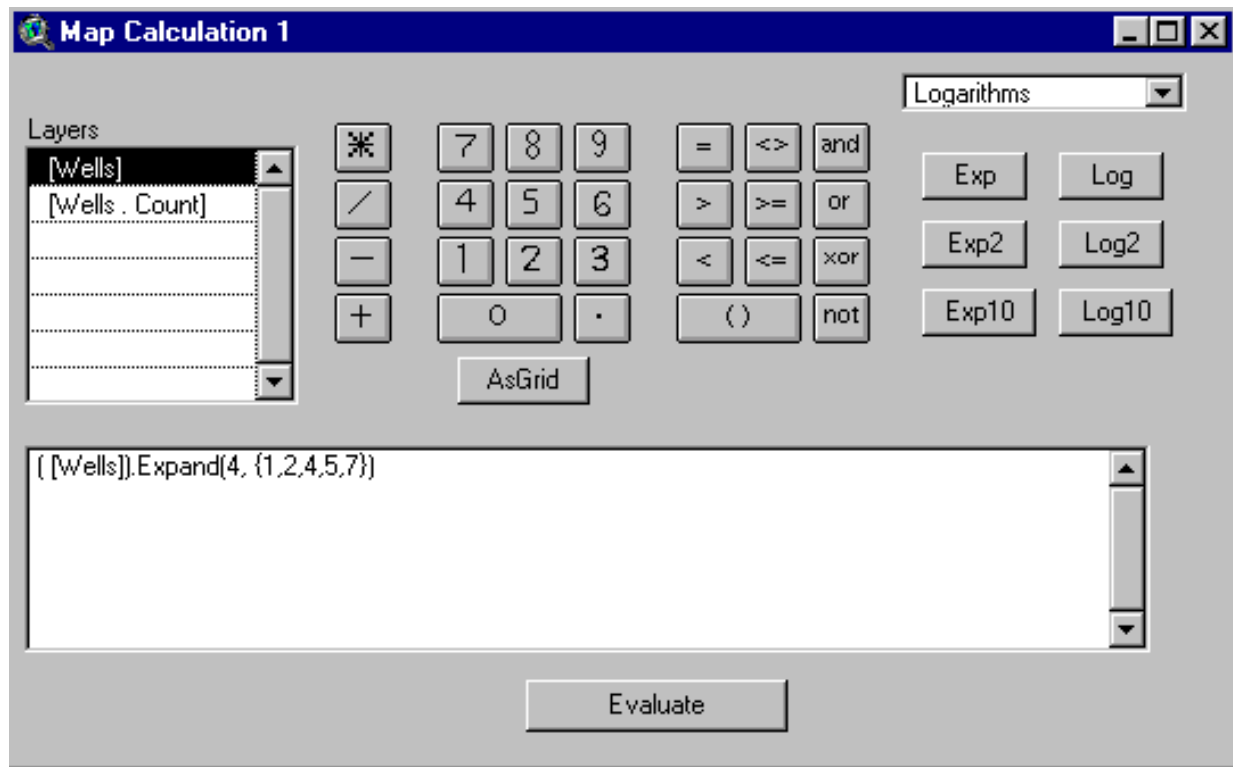
Zoom and display the buffered grid:

View1

```
Map Calculation 1
    1
    2
    4
    5
    7
    No Data

Wells
    1
    2
    4
    5
    7
    No Data
```
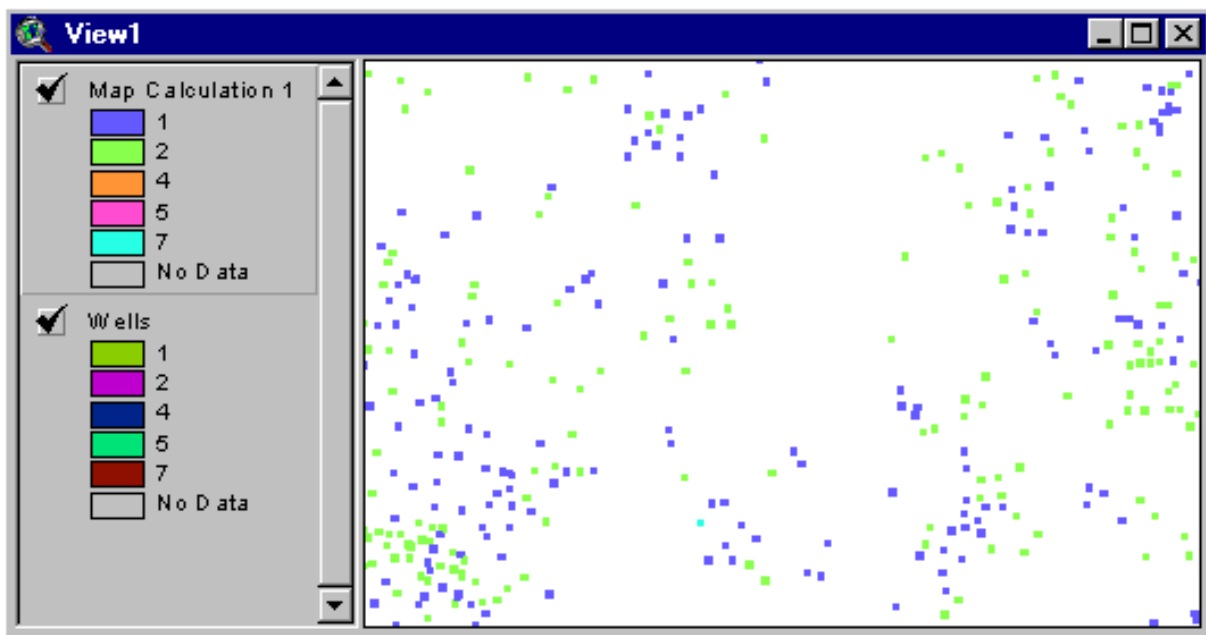
Add the grid coverage, Rem16mcell to View1.

Set the following values in Analysis Properties:

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent   Same As Rem16mcell

Left -155677.503175   Top 1970643.69375

Bottom 1693107.69375   Right 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size   As Specified Below

Cell Size   16   m

Number of Rows   17346

Number of Columns 21718

Analysis Mask   Rem16mcell

OK   Cancel

Evaluate this request in Map Calculator:
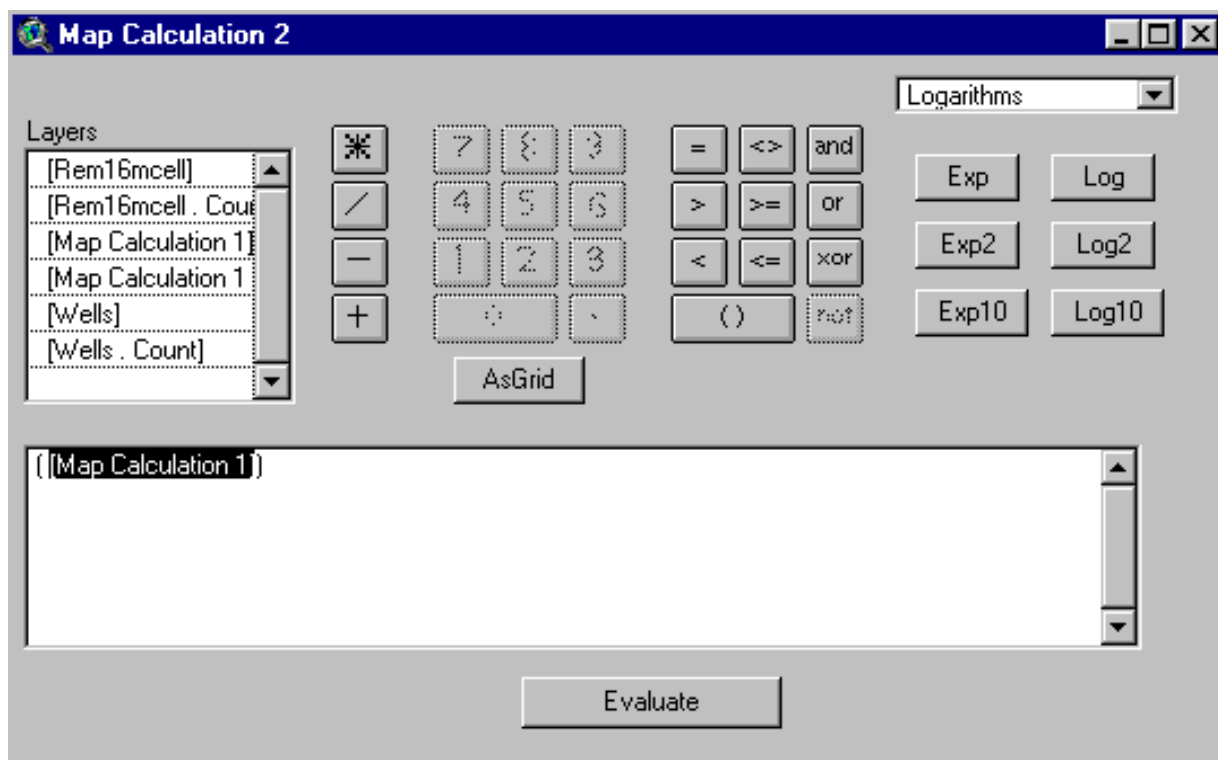
Reclassify Map Calculation 2 using 1 class on value:

Reclassify Values

Classification Field: Value

[Classify...]   [Unique]   [Lookup...]

Old Values	New Value
1 - 7	1
No Data	No Data

[+] [X]

[Load]

[Save]   [OK]   [Cancel]

The Reclass of Map Calculation 2 grid is the final grid. It has oil and gas wells with a 200 foot buffer located in the area of remaining coal.

Make sure you record the default name given by ArcView to this grid (e.g., c:\testuser\rclss5). Add it to your list of final grids.

Theme Properties

Theme Name: Reclass of Map Calculation 2

Definition

Source: c:\testuser\rclss5

CellSize: 16   Rows: 17346   Cols: 21718

Left: -155677.5032   Right: 191810.4968

Bottom: 1693107.6938   Top: 1970643.6938

Type: Integer   Status: Temporary

Comments:

Display

Locking

OK   Cancel

Display Rem16mcell and the Well grid:
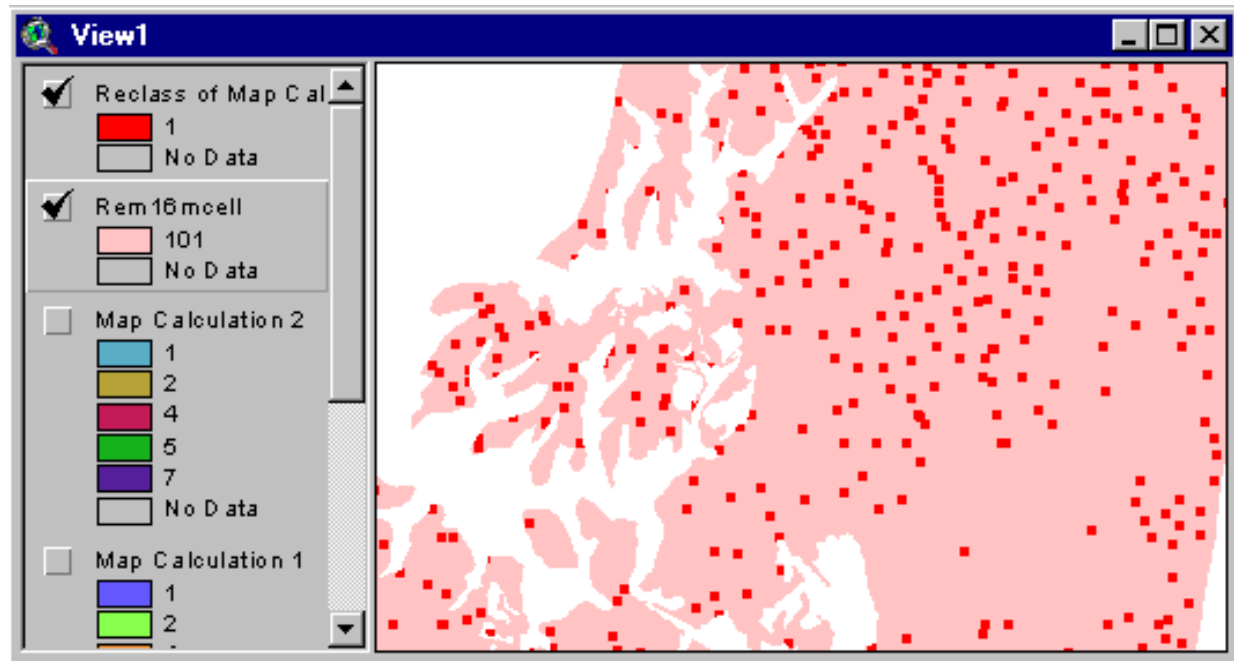
Coverage and Buffers for Pipelines

In this section, we process pipeline data to create a grid showing associated areas restricted to coal mining.

James Tobin, EIA, has compiled natural gas pipelines for the conterminous U.S. The original data are in*.mif format (MapInfo Interchange Format). I have a complete set of the Mif files. I have merged individual pipeline coverages into a single coverage for the eastern U.S. I also projected the eastern pipeline coverage to the target projection used for the Pittsburgh assessment.

Contact me to obtain the eastern file and the individual *.Mif files. In effect, we have a complete coverage of natural gas pipelines for the U.S.

ArcView will convert *.mif files to shapefile format.

We are still searching (Fall 1999) for a petroleum pipeline coverage. If anybody knows of such a coverage, please contact me (wwatson@usgs.gov) .

Delete all the themes from View1 and View2.

Add the projected pipeline shapefile, **Ngpipelinesappalalb.shp**, to View1.

Add Counties.shp to View1.

Display both themes.
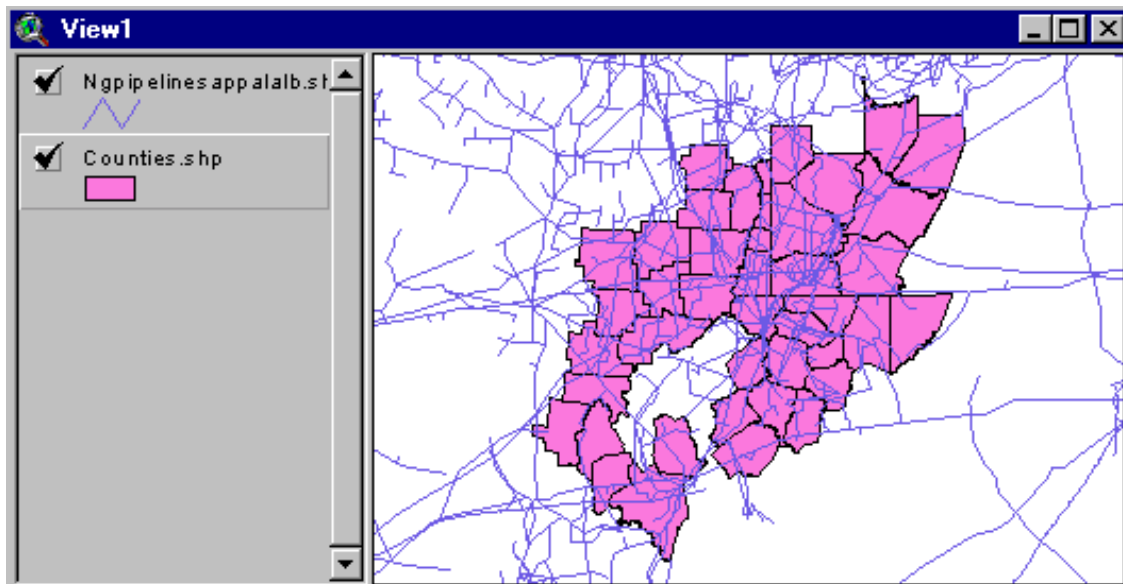
Use the Geoprocessing Wizard to clip Ngpipelinesappalalab.shp using Counties.shp.

Name the new theme: Pipeclip.

Add Rem16mcell to View1.

In Analysis Properties, enter these settings:

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent   Same As Rem16mcell

Left -155677.503175   Top 1970643.69375

Bottom 1693107.69375   Right 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size Current Value

Cell Size 16   m

Number of Rows 17346

Number of Columns 21718

Analysis Mask No Mask Set

OK   Cancel

Make Pipeclip.shp active.

Under Theme Menu, click "Convert to Grid."

Name new grid: Pipecounty.

Select "State" as field for cell values.

Make the Pipecounty grid active.

Under the Analysis Menu, Reclassify using Classification Field: Values and Classify Number of Classes = 1.

Make Reclass of Pipecounty active.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
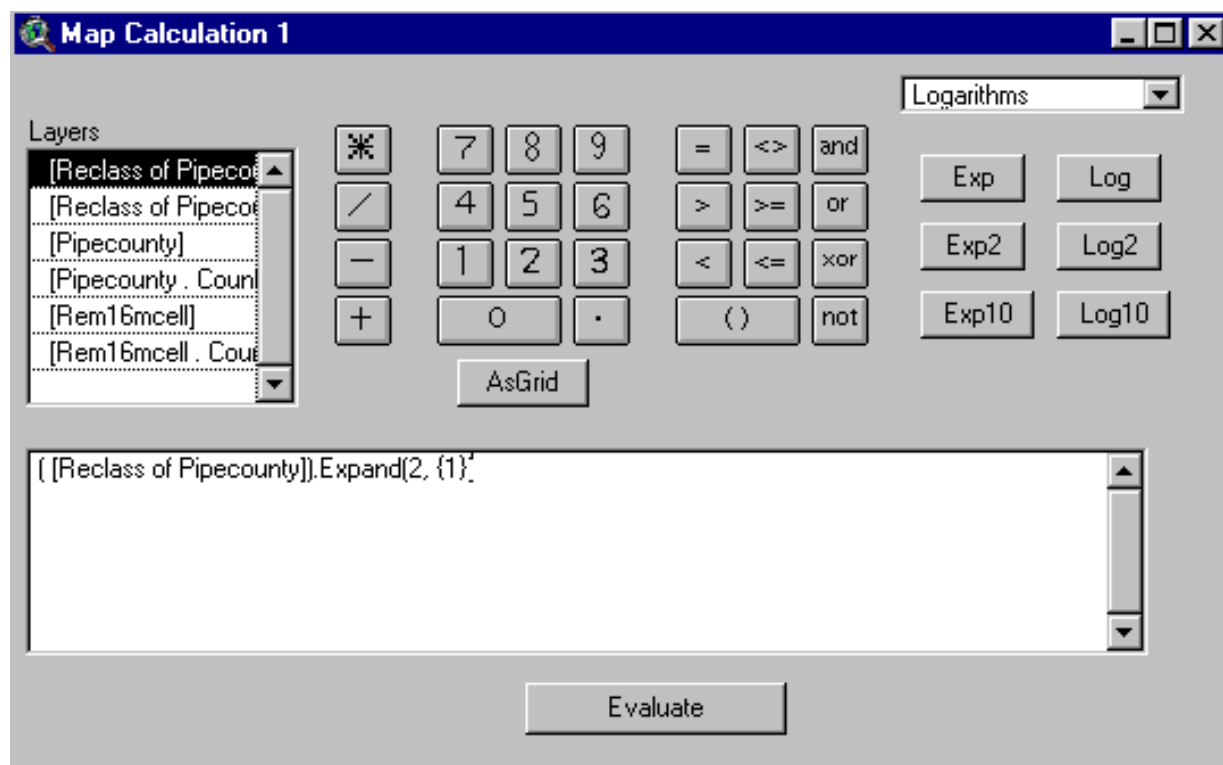
Add grid Rem16mcell to View1.

In Analysis Properties, enter these settings:

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent | Same As Rem16mcell

Left -155677.503175 | Top 1970643.69375

Bottom 1693107.69375 | Right 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size | As Specified Below

Cell Size 16 | m

Number of Rows 17346

Number of Columns 21718

Analysis Mask | Rem16mcell

OK | Cancel

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
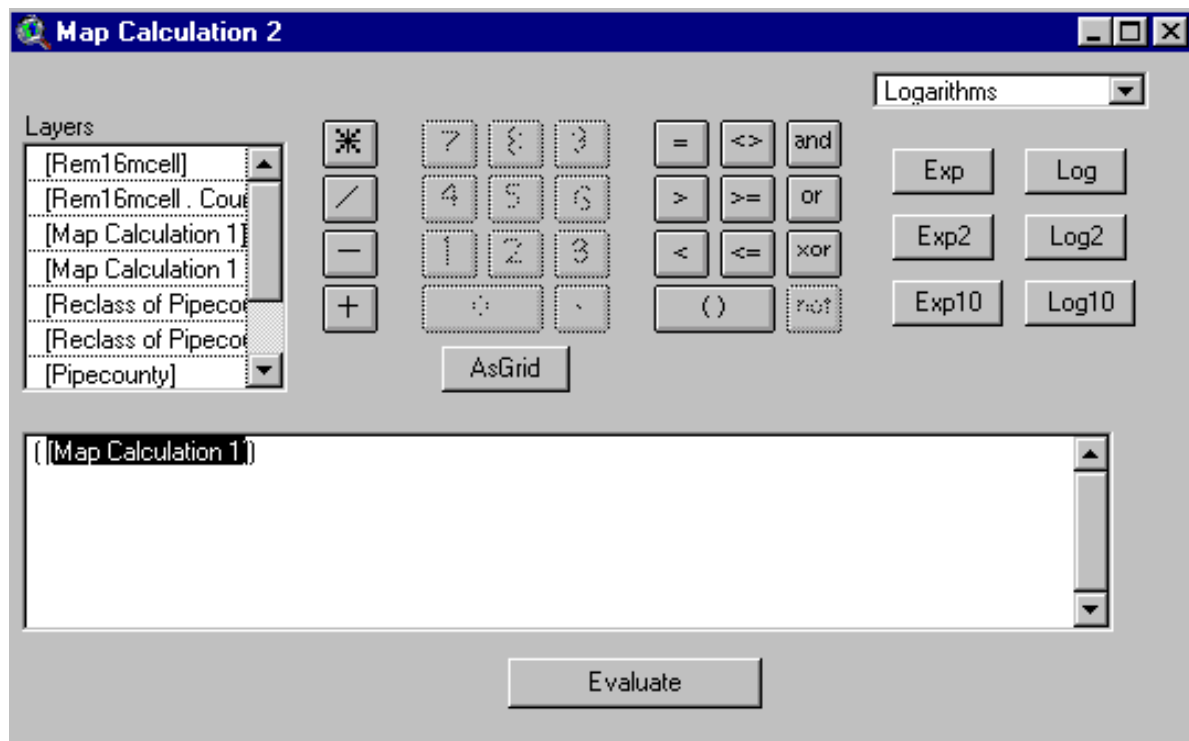
The new grid, Map Calculation 2, has pipelines with a 100 foot buffer in areas with remaining coal:
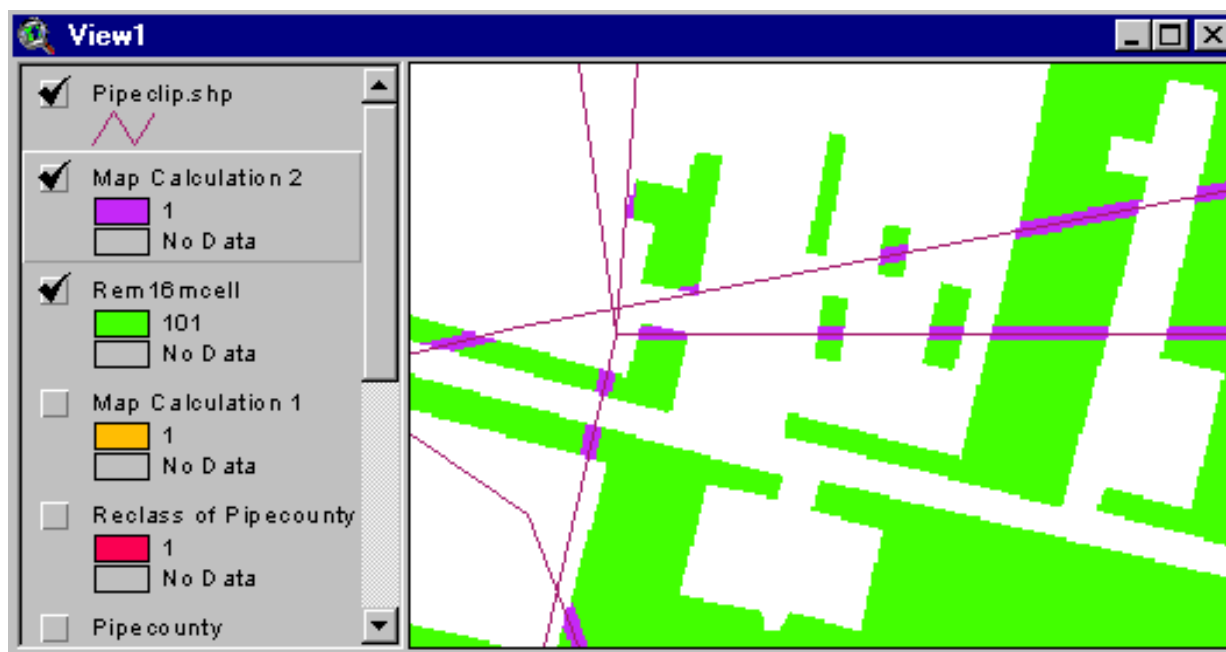
Open Theme Properties for Map Calculation 2 and record the ArcView default name (e.g., c:\testuser\calc18) on your list of final coverages.
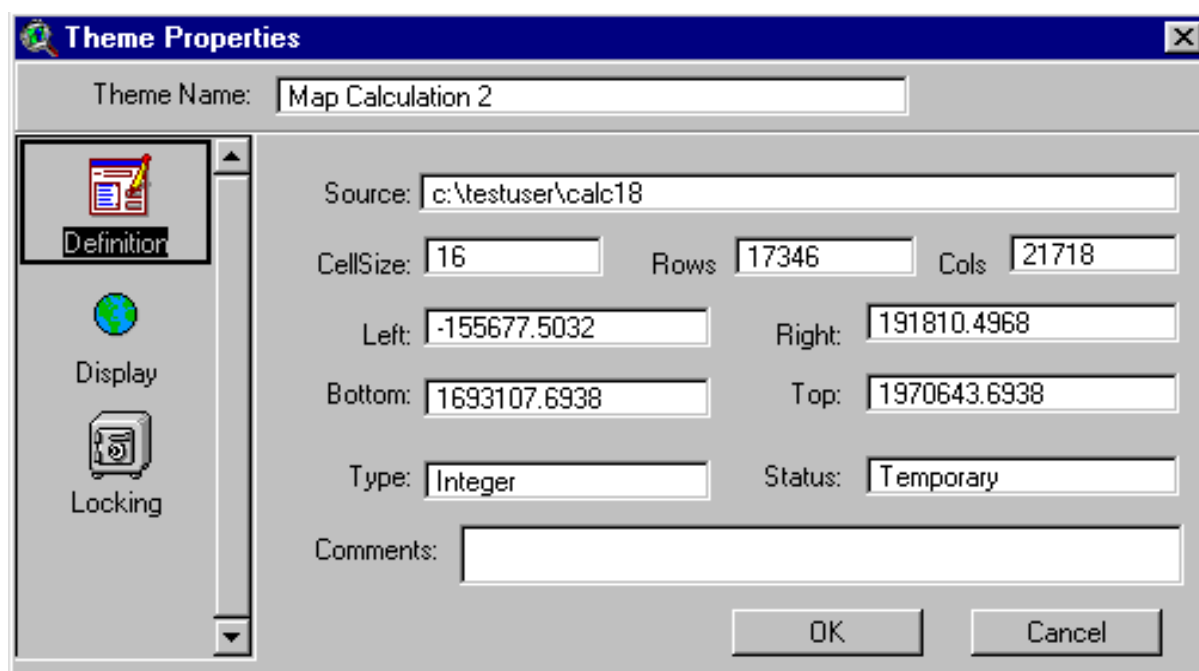
Taking Stock

1. We now have created 8 coverages for features where coal mining is restricted. Each coverage is

       - a grid coverage with 16 meter cells

       - expanded to include an appropriate buffer

       - masked to the area with remaining coal

2. We now can update our list of default names for the 8 coverages, for example:

Restriction Coverage	Path
Water Bodies	c:\testuser\calc11
Streams	c:\testuser\rclss3
Populated Places	c:\testuser\calc14
Interstate Highways	c:\testuser\calc6
Parks	c:\testuser\calc8
Urbanized Areas	c:\testuser\calc9
Wells	c:\testuser\rclss5
Pipelines	c:\testuser\calc18

3. Remaining tasks:

Task 1: The cells where the feature and its buffer are located carry a value of 1. The other cells in the coverages have a <u>null</u> value. This classification is useful for some purposes. However, when we want to pull out the restricted cells to estimate available coal, null in any coverage will produce a null in the available coverage. To overcome this problem, we will change the null cells to zero cells and create a new set of 0-1 grids.

Task 2: The default coverage names are not particularly convenient. We will use the Spatial Analyst File Manager to rename our 1,null grids and our 1,0 grids to more recognizable names. This will make it easier in subsequent analysis to find and add coverages.

Task 3: Once our grids are renamed, we will delete all the working grids created in the analysis to this point. This will free hard disk space and eliminate files with names which will not be recognizable after you have finished with the assessment. We will use the File Manager in Spatial Analyst to delete the files. **Note: Windows Explorer or other operating system procedures should not be used to rename and delete grids. You can use Windows Explorer to rename the folder for a grid. But this would break the links with the Info Folder and make the grid unusable. The ArcView Data Source Manager keeps the Info link intact.**

Task 1

Create 0-1 grids.

Delete all the themes in View1.

Add the 8 final feature coverages to View1.
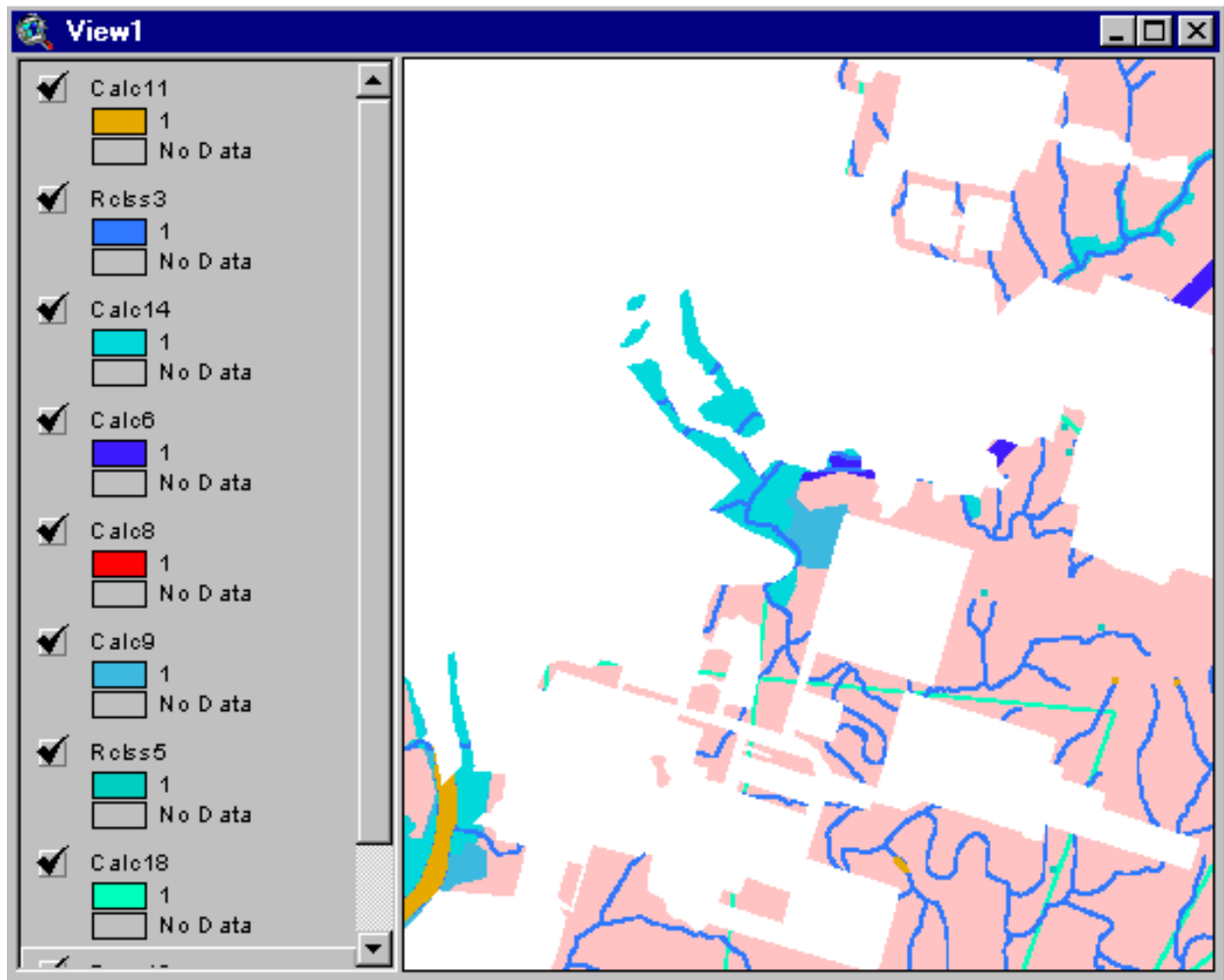
In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
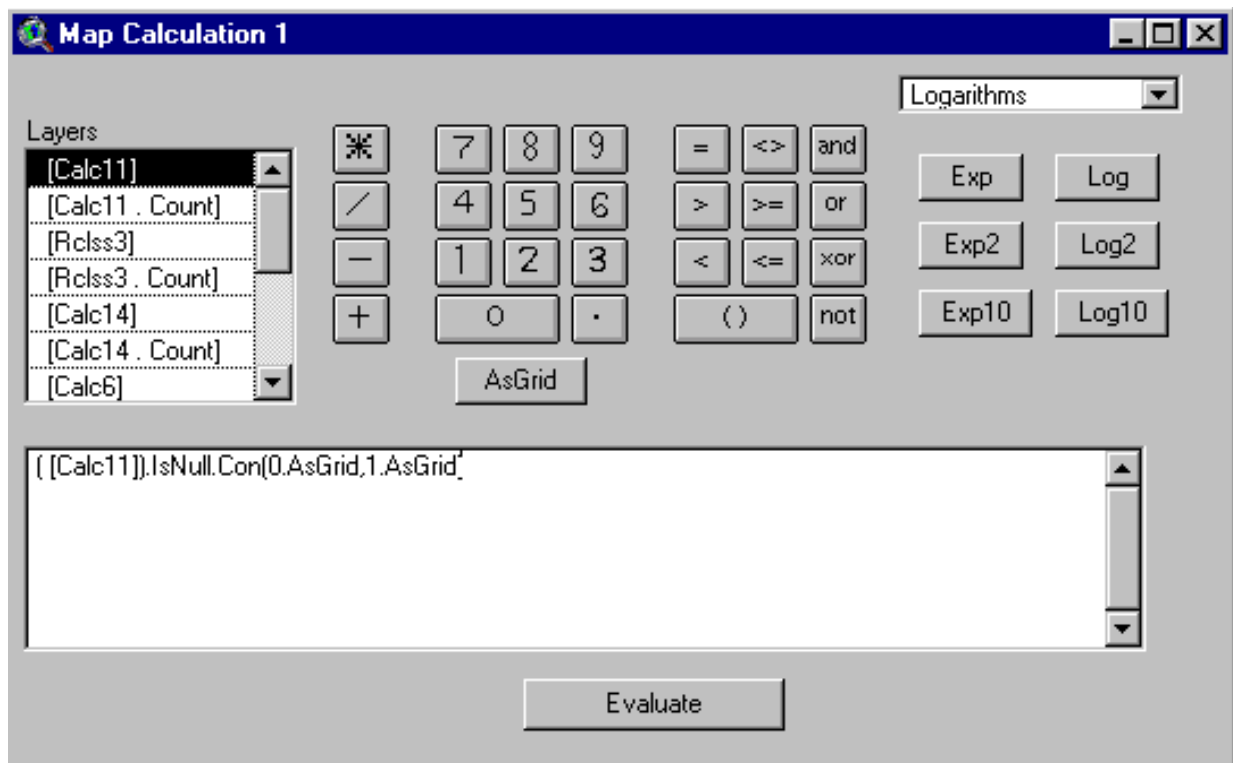
Record the default name of the new 0,1 grid. I.e., open Theme Properties and record the "Source" name.

Save your project.

Repeat the same request for the other seven grids.

After each new request runs, SAVE YOUR PROJECT.

In each case, record the ArcView default name (i.e., "Source" name in Theme Properties). The source names for an example are:

Restriction Coverage	Path	Path for New 0-1 Grid
Water Bodies	c:\testuser\calc11	c:\testuser\calc19
Streams	c:\testuser\rclss3	c:\testuser\calc20
Populated Places	c:\testuser\calc14	c:\testuser\calc21
Interstate Highways	c:\testuser\calc6	c:\testuser\calc22
Parks	c:\testuser\calc8	c:\testuser\calc23
Urbanized Areas	c:\testuser\calc9	c:\testuser\calc24
Wells	c:\testuser\rclss5	c:\testuser\cacl25
Pipelines	c:\testuser\calc18	c:\testuser\calc26

Task 2

Rename grids to more convenient names.

Save the current project.

Start a new project.

Open a new view.

Toggle on the Spatial analyst Extension.

Under File Menu, click "Manage Data Sources" to access the Source Manager:
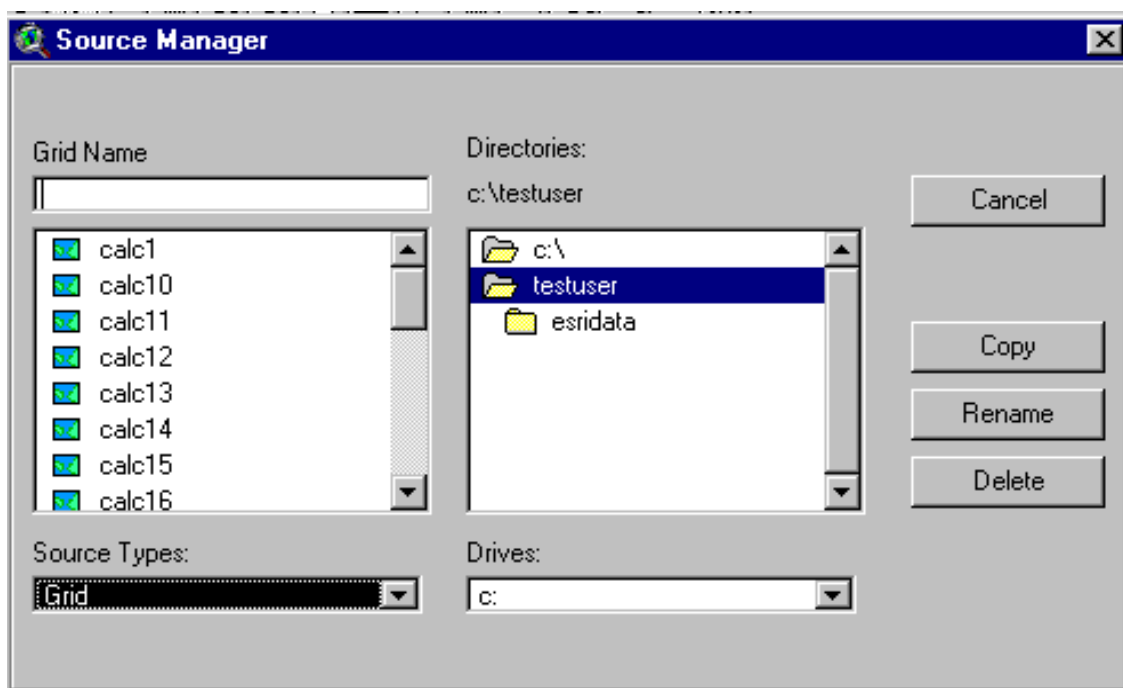
Then rename the initial 0-null grids with the following names:

(You would, of course, use your project path when you rename the grids

Restriction Coverage	Original Names	New Name
Water Bodies	c:\testuser\calc11	c:\testuser\waternull
Streams	c:\testuser\rclss3	c:\testuser\streamsnull
Populated Places	c:\testuser\calc14	c:\testuser\placesnull
Interstate Highways	c:\testuser\calc6	c:\testuser\interstanull
Parks	c:\testuser\calc8	c:\testuser\parksnull
Urbanized Areas	c:\testuser\calc9	c:\testuser\urbanareanull
Wells	c:\testuser\rclss5	c:\testuser\wellsnull
Pipelines	c:\testuser\calc18	c:\testuser\pipelinesnull

Next rename the grids that have 0's and 1's with the following names:

Restriction Coverage	Initial Name, 0-1 Grid	New Name, 0-1 Grid
Water Bodies	c:\testuser\calc19	c:\testuser\waterzero
Streams	c:\testuser\calc20	c:\testuser\streamszero
Populated Places	c:\testuser\calc21	c:\testuser\placeszero
Interstate Highways	c:\testuser\calc22	c:\testuser\interstazero
Parks	c:\testuser\calc23	c:\testuser\parkszero
Urbanized Areas	c:\testuser\calc24	c:\testuser\urbanareazero
Wells	c:\testuser\cacl25	c:\testuser\wellszero
Pipelines	c:\testuser\calc26	c:\testuser\pipelineszero

Task 3

Remove working grids.

We have just renamed all of the "final" grids we need for our assessment.

It is likely that there are still some working grids in your project folder.

Use Spatial Analyst Source Manger to remove working grids.

Working grids that remain will have names that start with "calc", "grid", and "rclss."

Delete them.

Congratulations you have finished **Chapter 3!!!!**

You have the coverages you will need to pull out **restricted areas** when we estimate **available** coal in Chapter 5.

Chapter 4.

COAL COVERAGES

Purpose: In this Chapter, we add coal coverages including mined out, thickness, partings, and elevation at top of bed. We add a Digital Elevation Model (DEM) and use it to estimate overburden. Coverages for <u>slope</u> restrictions are created. We reduce the coverage of remaining coal by a safety barrier around mined out area.   Ordinarily, coal must be at least 12 inches thick to be mined by any method. We create a "net" coverage that reduces the extent of remaining coal both by the safety barrier and by coal with thickness less than 12 inches.

U.S. Geological Circular 891 defines 14 inches as the cutoff for classifying coal as a resource. Industry practice for specific regions and specific coal beds sometimes has other thickness cutoffs. In the case of the Pittsburgh coal bed, the thickness cutoff is set at 12 inches to accord with industry practice.

Overview: Coverages resulting from the basic geologic assessment include the extent of original coal, remaining coal, and mined-out coal; coal thickness; and coal bed elevation (top of the bed). These coverages are projected to the target projection and converted to a grid coverage. The bed elevation and DEM coverages are used to determine an overburden coverage. A coverage of remaining coal minus a 50 foot buffer in mined-out areas and minus the area where coal is less than 12 inches in thickness is created. Coverages for slope restrictions to mining are created from the DEM and the bed elevation coverages.

Add Coal Coverages from Basic Geologic Assessment
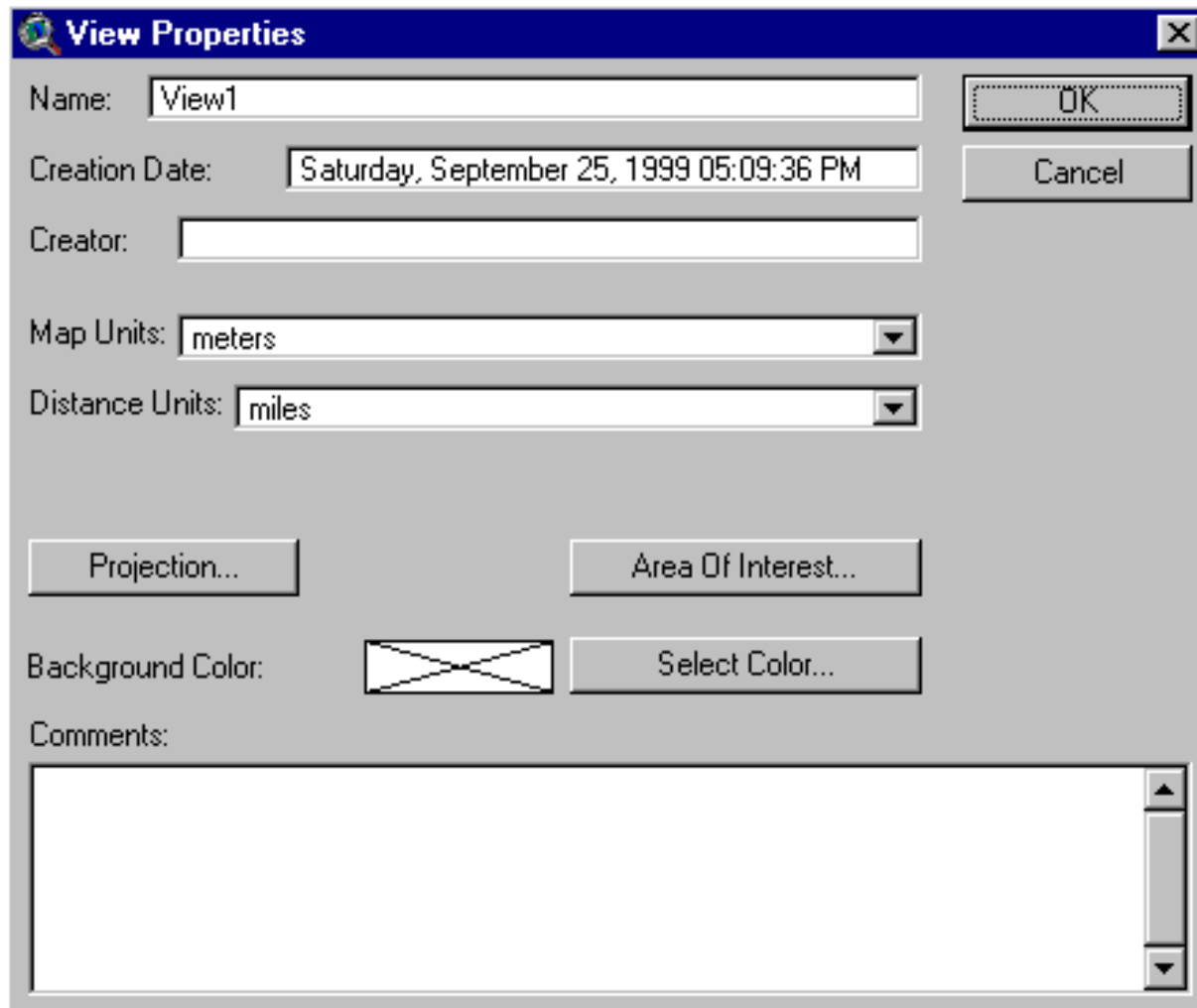
Open a new ArcView project

Add a View Window. Do not add any themes.

Under the File Menu, set Working Directory to your project path.

Open View Properties and enter these settings:

View Properties

Name:	View1
Creation Date:	Saturday, September 25, 1999 05:09:36 PM
Creator:	
Map Units:	meters
Distance Units:	miles

Projection...   Area Of Interest...

Background Color: Select Color...

Comments:

OK   Cancel
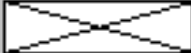
Add Coverage Showing Extent of Mined-Out Coal

In View 1, add the base geologic coverage of areas that are mined out. The polygon vector coverage named C9024bill contains mined out areas in the case of the Pittsburgh assessment. This coverage is in an Albers Equal-Area projection with parameters as shown on p. 2-2. C9024bill has attribute field "Mine." Polygons of mined out areas carry a value for Mine = 102 and thick_ob_cat <> 999. (See discussion p. 2-4.) As an example, C9024bill is added to View1. You would add a corresponding coverage to View1 of your project.
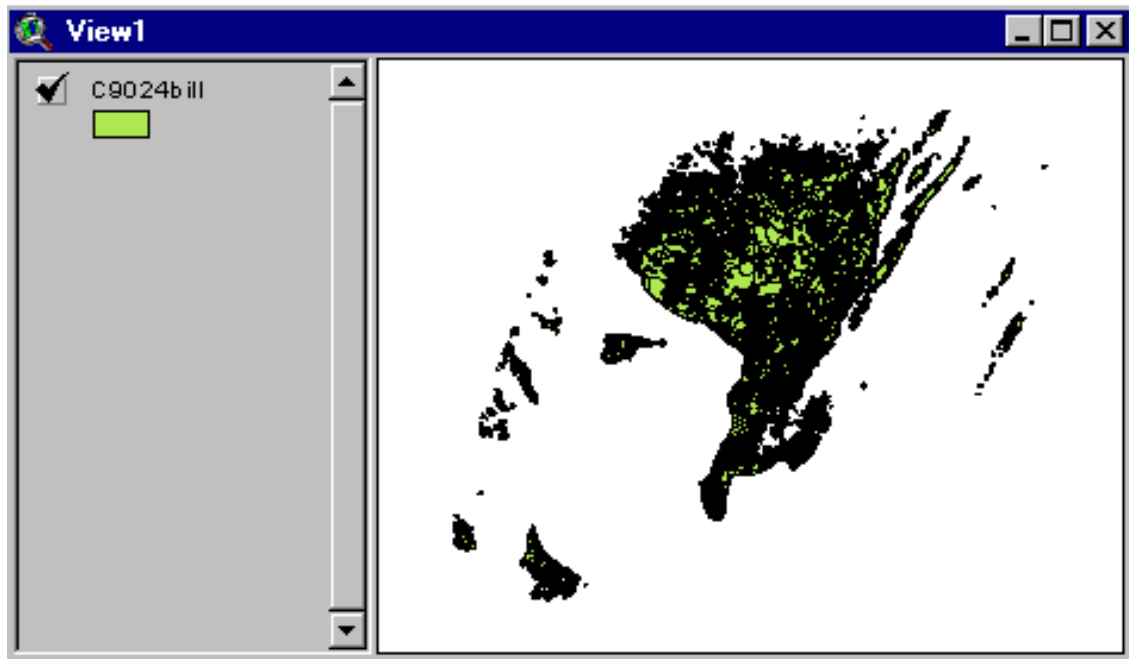
Make C9024bill active.

Click the Query Builder (looks like hammer) and enter the following expression:
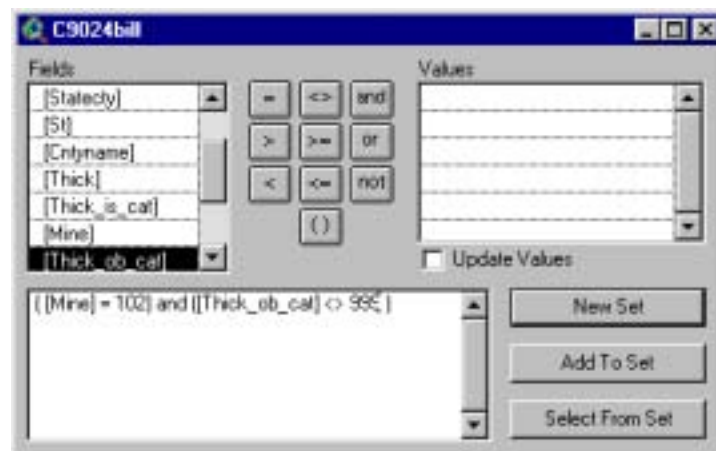
Click "New Set."

Under the Theme Menu, click "Convert to Shapefile."

Name the new shapefile: c:\your project path\mo.

Add it to View1.

Toggle on the display for Mo.shp:
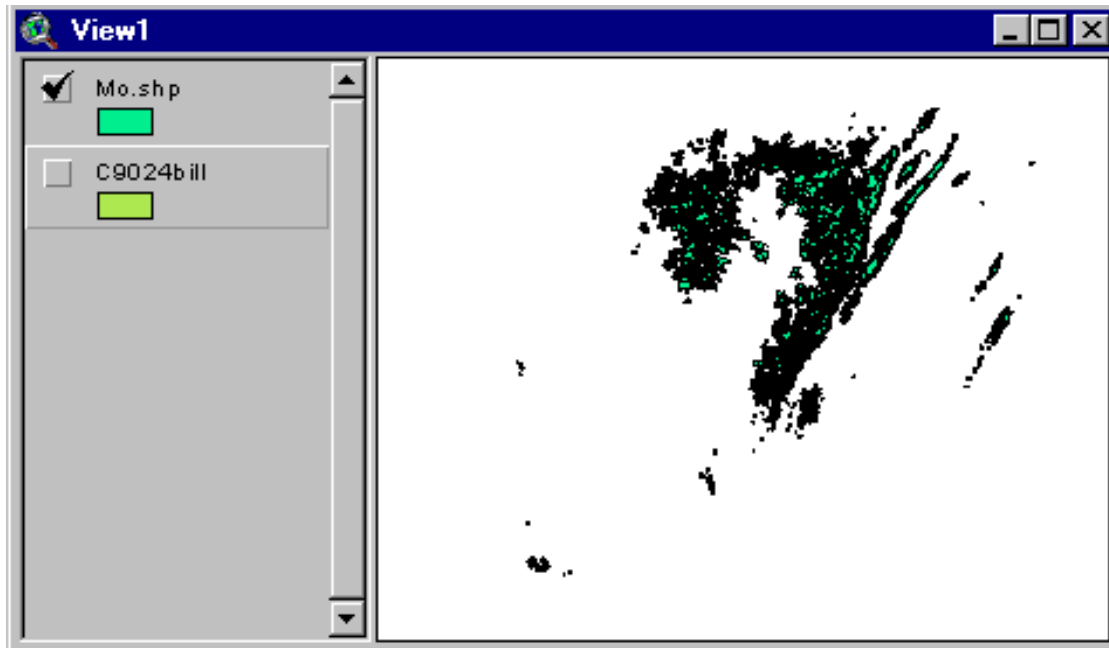
Make Mo Active.

Add grid, Rem16mcell, to View1.

Under the Analysis Menu, open Analysis Properties and enter these settings:

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent: Same As Rem16mcell

Left: -155677.503175   Top: 1970643.69375

Bottom: 1693107.69375   Right: 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size: Current Value

Cell Size: 16   m

Number of Rows: 17346

Number of Columns: 21718

Analysis Mask: No Mask Set

OK   Cancel

We use Rem16mcell as the analysis extent to insure that the grids for mined out coal are exactly in line with the remaining coal.

Under the Theme Menu, Click "Convert to Grid."

Name the grid: c:\your project path\mo16.

Select "Mine" as the field for cell values.

Add Mo16 to View1.

Toggle on the display for Mo16 and Rem16mcell.

Zoom in and toggle displays to convince yourself that mo16 abuts perimeter cells in Rem16mcell:
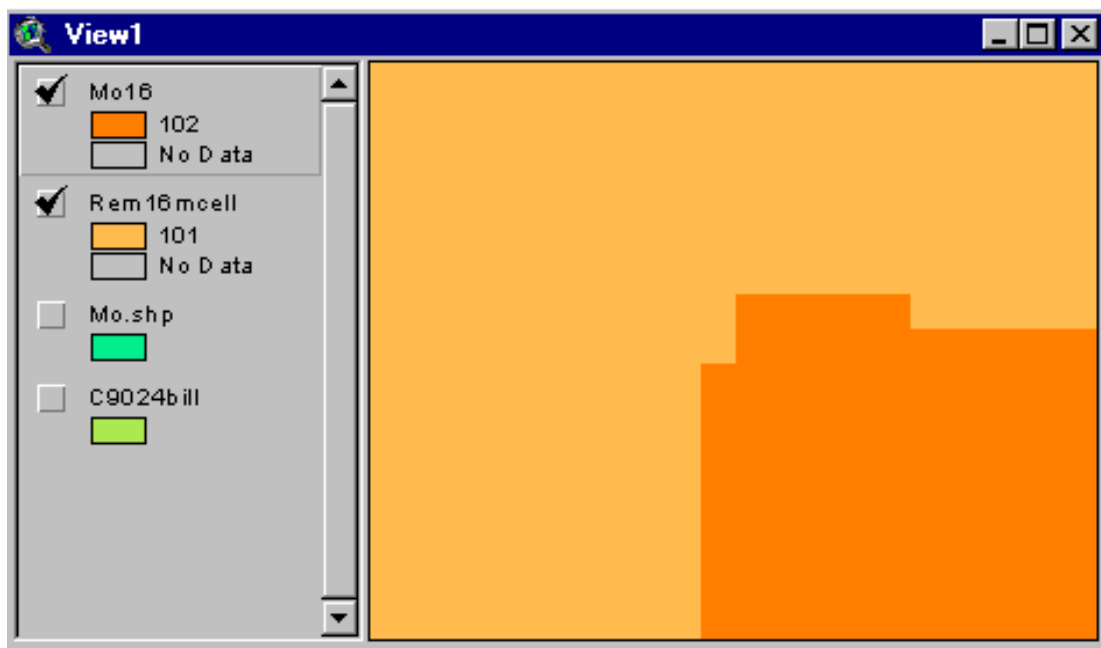
Create Coverage of Safety Barrier for Mined-Out Coal

Next, we expand Mo16 by 1 cell (= 50 feet) to add safety buffer or area where new mining must stop to prevent cave ins and other hazardous conditions. 50 foot barrier is standard practice.

Open Map Calculator and enter the following expression:
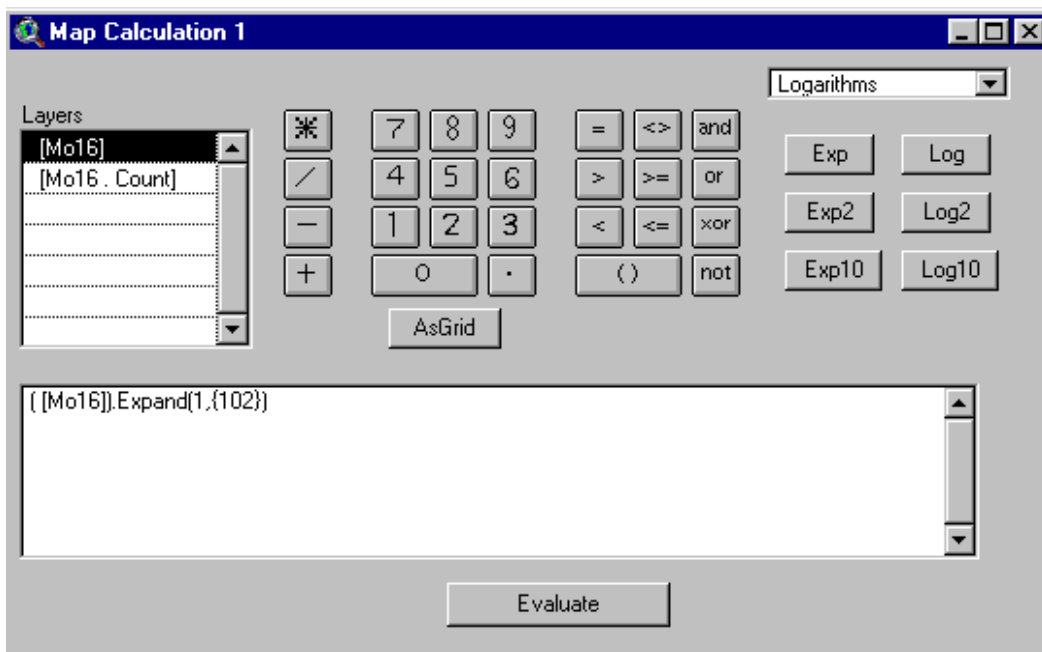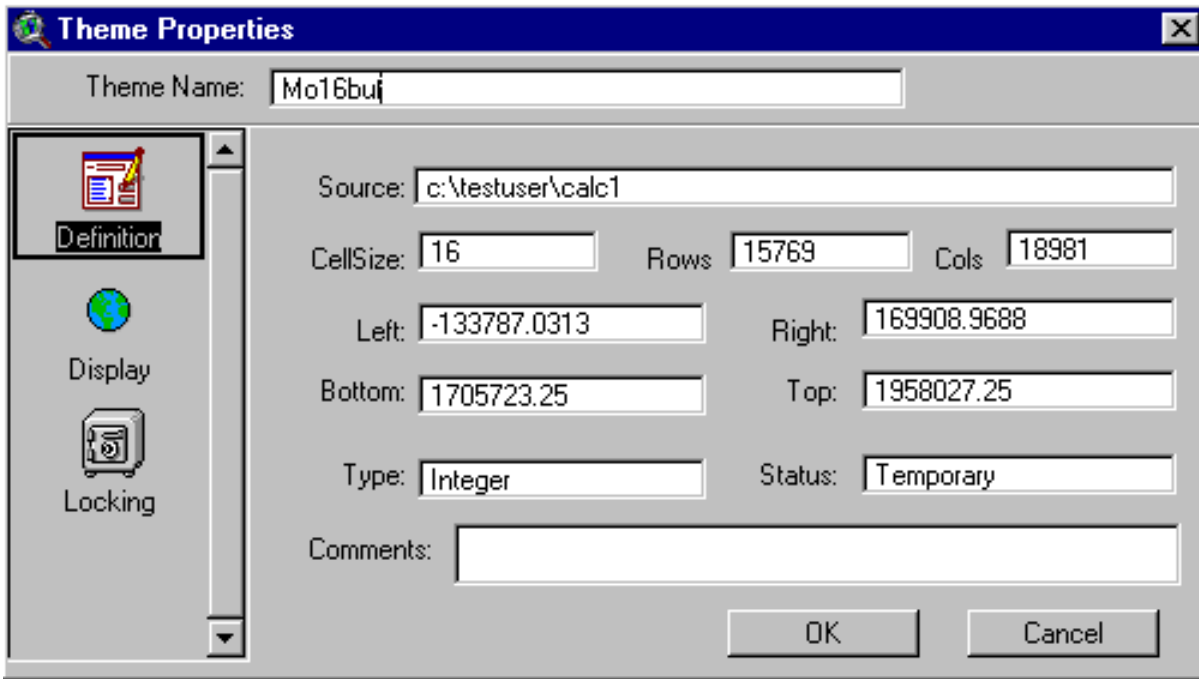
Make Map Calculation 1 active.

Open Theme Properties, and change the Theme Name to: Mo16buf (see next page).

Record the default path and name that appear in the "**Source**" window, e.g., c:\testuser\calc1.

You are now beginning to build a running list of default names that you will change later to names that are more recognizable and convenient.

As before, it is important to record the default names as you move through the processing to efficiently track project data.

Theme Properties

Theme Name: Mo16buf

Definition

Display

Locking

Source: c:\testuser\calc1

CellSize: 16   Rows: 15769   Cols: 18981

Left: -133787.0313   Right: 169908.9688

Bottom: 1705723.25   Top: 1958027.25

Type: Integer   Status: Temporary

Comments:

OK   Cancel

In the table of contents, move Mo16 above Mo16buf; display Mo16, Mo16buf, and Rem16mcell;, and zoom to see that Mobuf16 is a 1 cell expansion of Mo16:
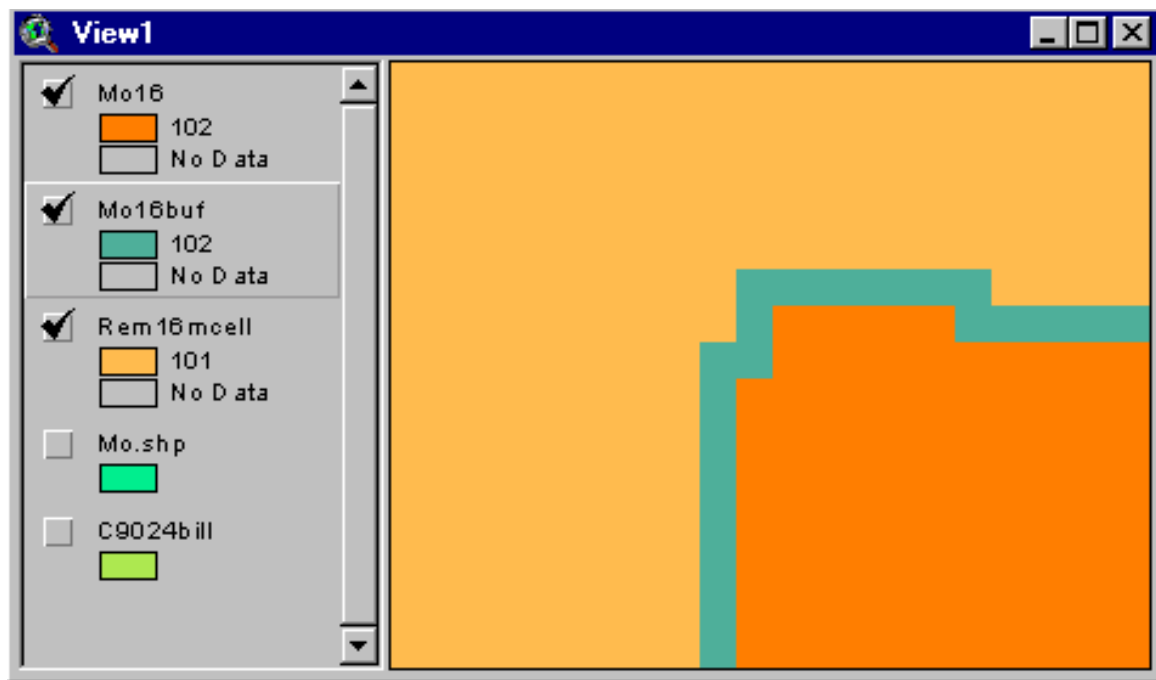
Next, we intersect Mo16buf and Rem16mcell as the 1st step to obtain a safety buffer around remaining coal. In Map Calculator, evaluate this expression:
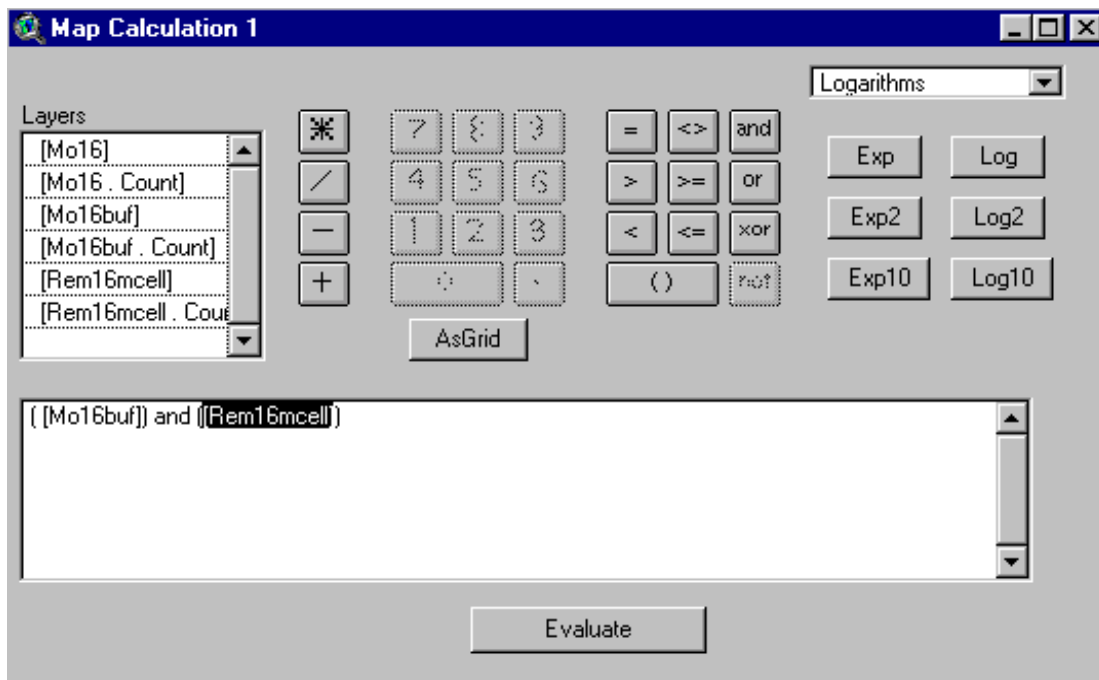
This step captures the part of the safety buffer around the mined out area that extends only into remaining coal.

In Theme Properties, rename the theme: safetybuffer.

Turn off the display for Mobuf16 and turn on the display for safetybuffer. It should be 1 cell in width and should extend into remaining coal only when remaining coal is adjacent to a mined out area.
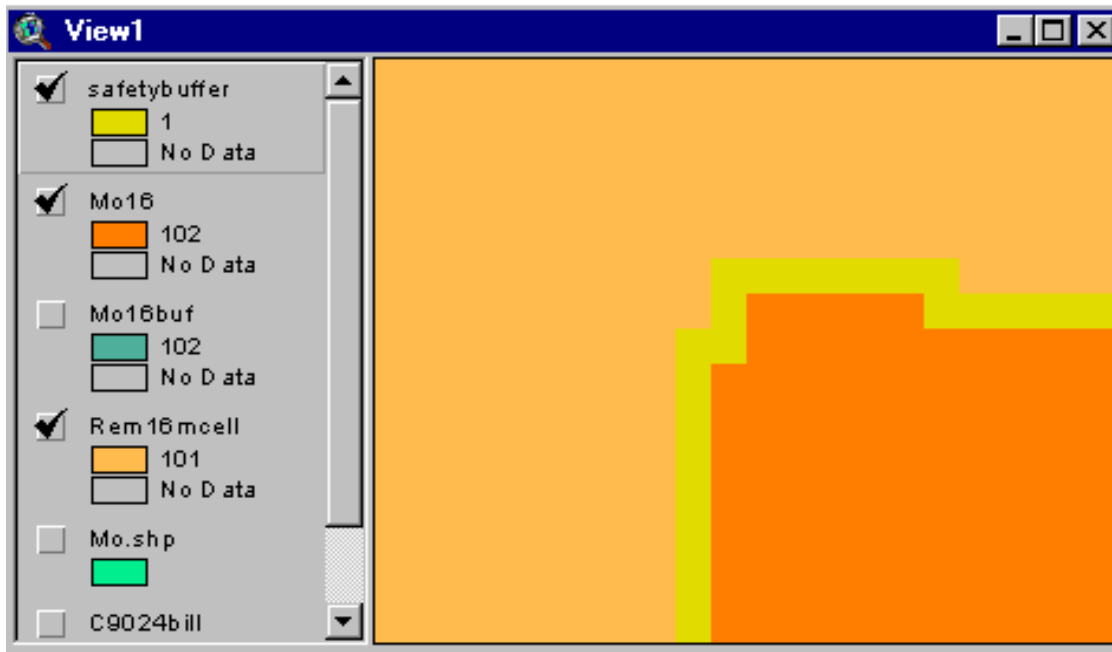
Check other parts of the coverages to convince yourself that the safetybuffer occurs only when mined out and remaining coal abut.
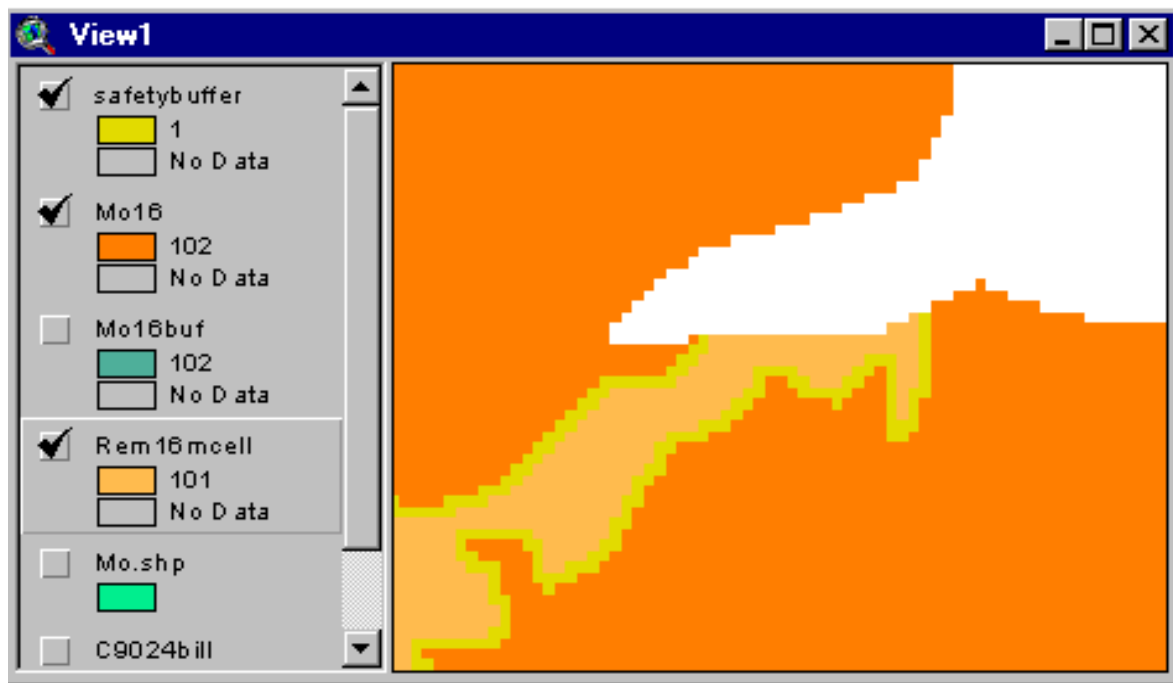
The 2nd step is to shrink Rem16mcell by the safety buffer to create a coverage of remaining coal net of the safety buffer.

But before we undertake the 2nd step, we need to convert the safetybuffer coverage to a 0-1 coverage to prevent incorrect null values in the 2nd step.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this expression
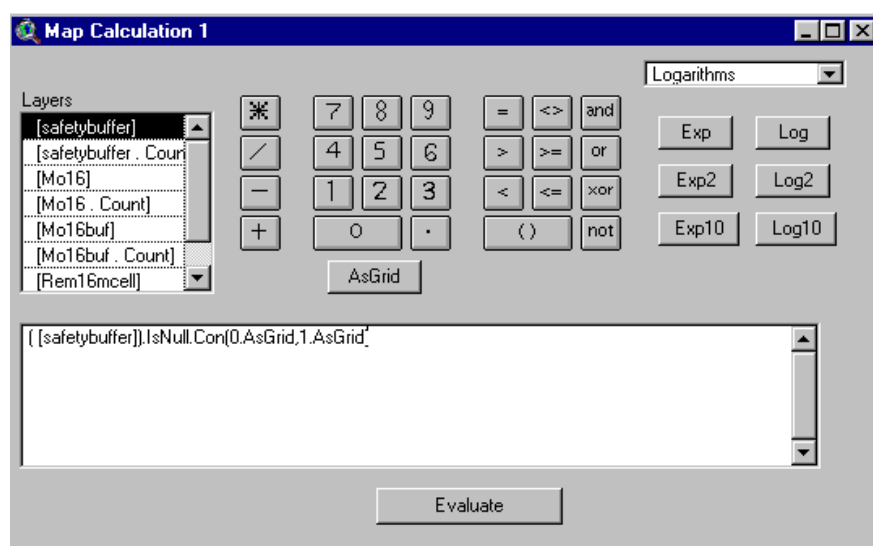
In Theme Properties, name the new grid: safetybuffer01.

Now for the 2nd step.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this expression:

(([Rem16mcell]) and (not ([safetybuffer01])) = 0).SetNull(1.AsGrid)
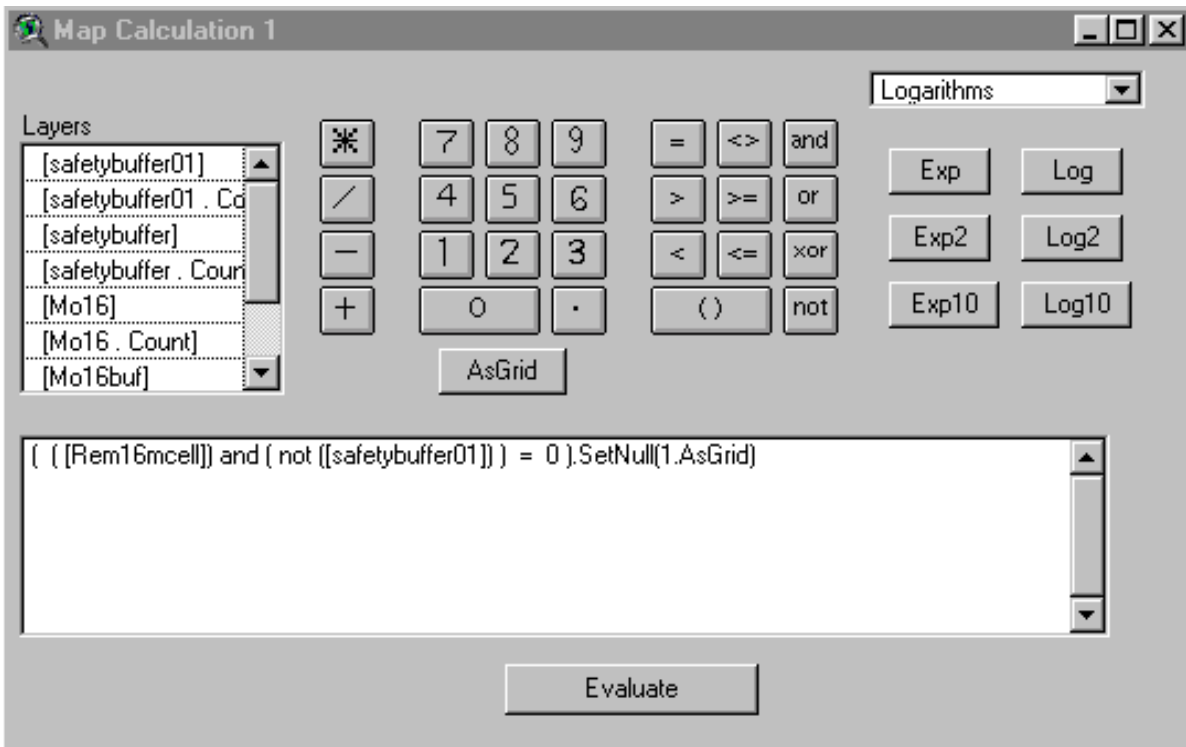
In Theme Properties, name the new grid: Rem16buf.

Record the default path and name that appear in the "**Source**" window, e.g., c:\testuser\calc5. You will use this list later to rename coverages. These are coverages that we need to carry forward to subsequent analysis.

Toggle on the display for Rem16buf.

Rem16buf is the area of remaining coal (i.e., grid Rem16mcell) reduced by 1 cell to represent the 50 foot safety barrier. The reduction only occurs when Rem16mcell is adjacent to mined out coal.
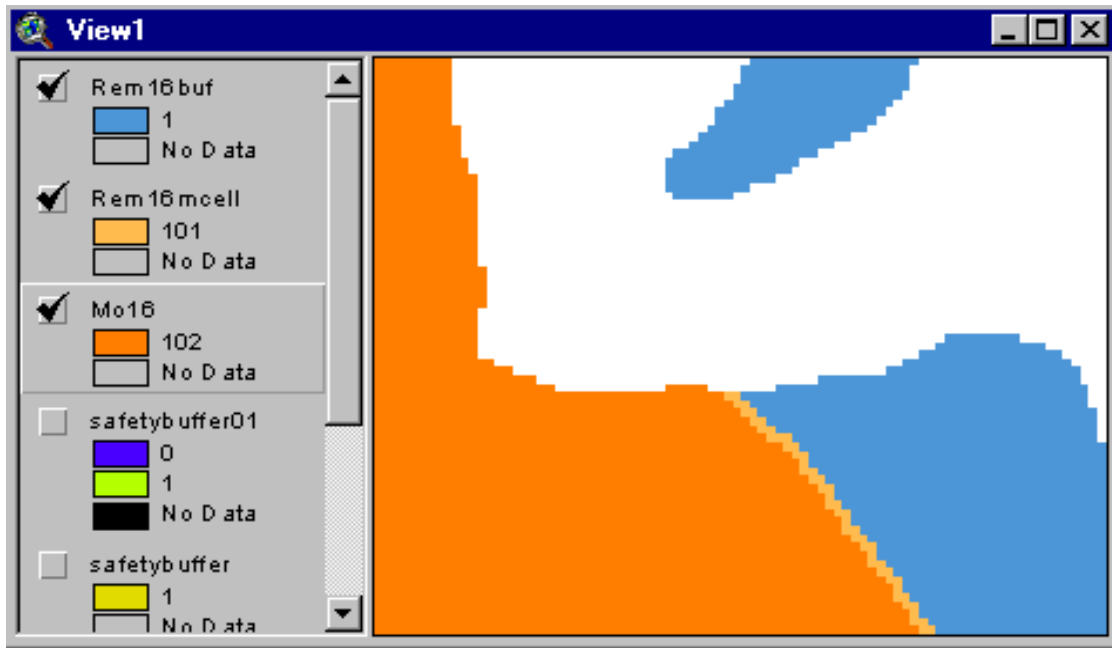
Check various parts of the coverages to convince yourself that Rembuf16 is remaining coal reduced by the safety buffer (= 1 cell), only when mined out and remaining coal abut.

Create Coal Thickness Layer

Our next task is to add the thickness coverage from the coal assessment. We then convert the thickness to a grid, 16 meters on a side, and clip it to the area with remaining coal. Using the thickness layer, we create a new layer of tonsbycell. This tonsbycell layer is used later to calculate total coal tons in various categories.

In the Pittsburgh assessment, the primary thickness layer, available in ARC export format, is named ev_24iso.e00. The export file was imported into ArcView using Import71. The new coverage is called ev_24iso. In your project, you would be processing a comparable thickness file. This user's guide uses ev_24iso as its sample thickness coverage.

Ev_24iso is a grid coverage of thickness measured in feet extending over the original extent of the Pittsburgh coal bed. It was created in Earth Vision and has a cell size of 300 meters on a side. Ev_24iso is in the target projection.

Add ev_24iso to View1 and toggle on its display:
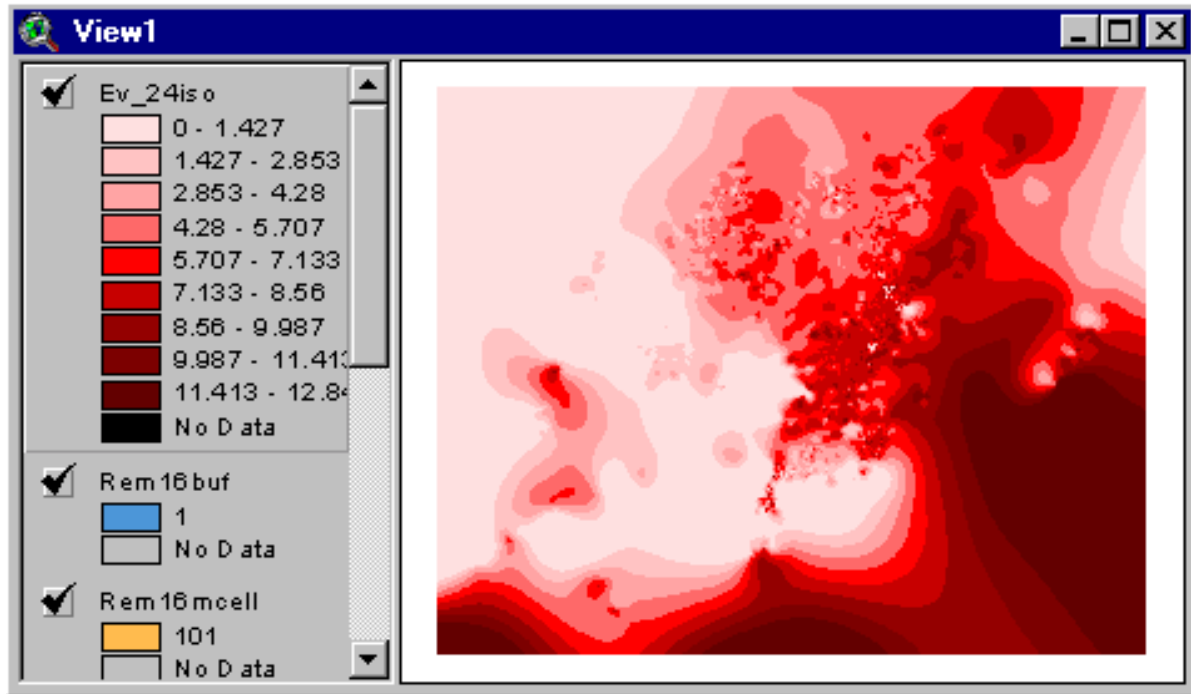
Under the Analysis Menu, open Properties and verify these settings:

The settings in Analysis Properties insure 2 outcomes: (1) the thickness grid will have cells with a dimension of 16 meters on a side and (2) the thickness grid will cover the area of remaining coal. The latter condition is met by setting the Analysis Mask to Rem16mcell.

We now create a new thickness grid with thickness measured in inches. We convert the grid to an integer thickness grid to speed ArcView operations.

Under the Analysis Menu, open Map Calculator and evaluate this expression:
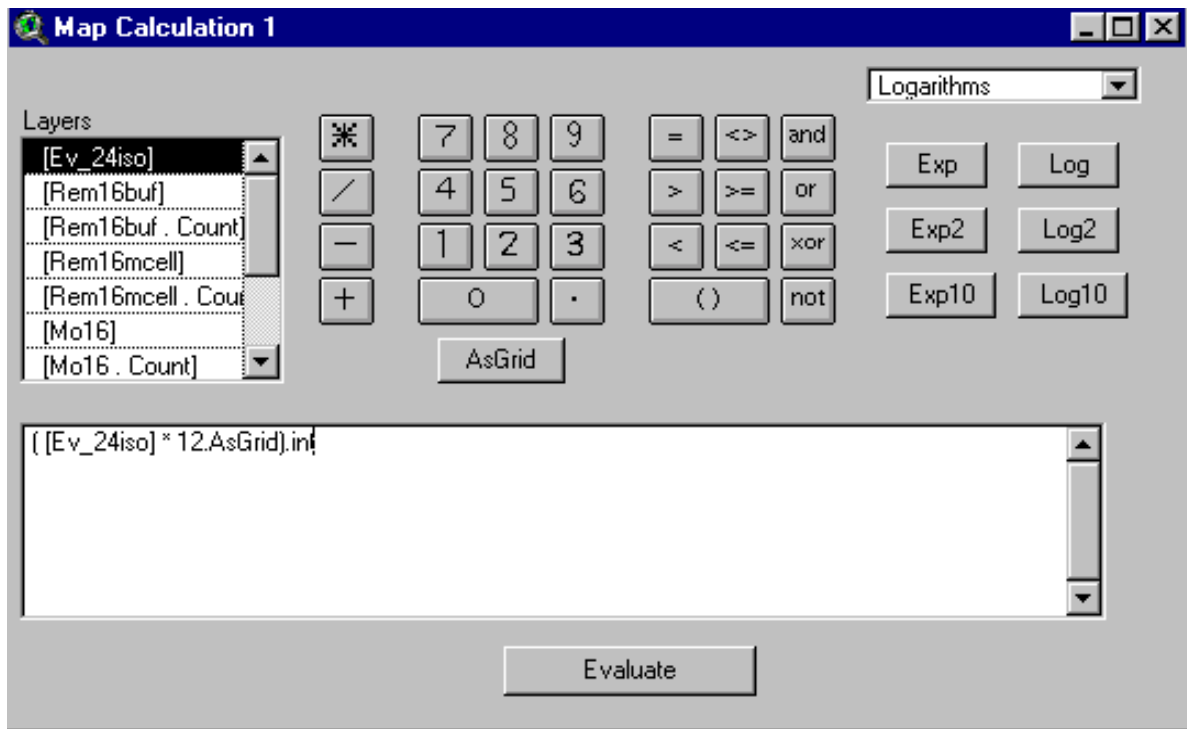
Name the new thickness cover: thk16.

Add its source path and name to your list of grids to retain and rename. This user's guide has "c:\testuser" as the project path. The source name given by ArcView to thk16 in this sample case is c:\testuser\calc6, found in the theme properties window as the **Source.** You would, of course, note and record the source name for your thickness coverage.
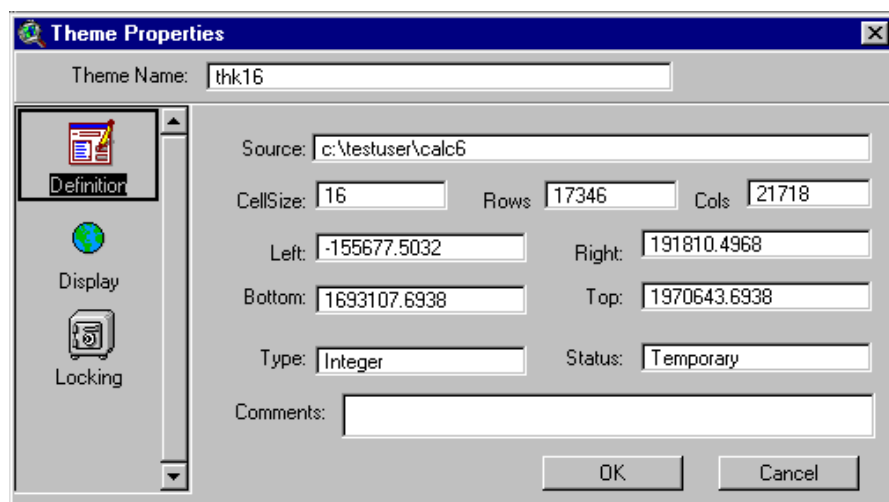
Save your project.

Toggle off the display for all themes.

Toggle on the display for thk16.
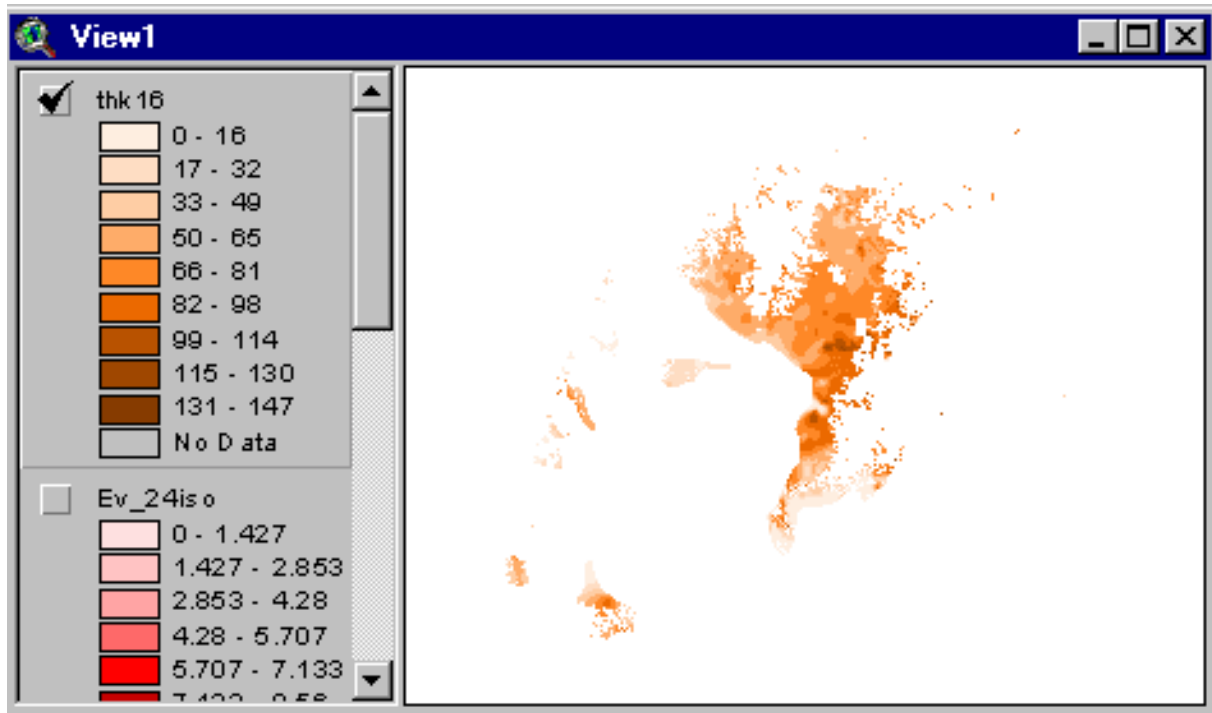
Create Layer of Tons of Coal (in each cell)

Next, we calculate the tons of coal in each cell in the thk16 coverage. This will provide a layer against which we can run a Summarize request (under the Analysis Menu) in order to calculate the total tons of coal in various coverages of interest.

First, some arithmetic:

We assume that the density of coal is 1800 tons per acre-foot of thickness (a standard density for Eastern coal used in the Pittsburgh assessment)

In units of tons per square meter-inch of thickness, density is 0.037083 tons

Each cell in thk16 is 16 meters on a side. Therefore the coal **per cell** is 9.493 tons per inch of thickness (= 16 x 16 x 0.037083).

To calculate tons of coal per cell, we multiply 9.493 by the thickness (measured in inches) in each cell.

Open Map Calculator and evaluate this expression:
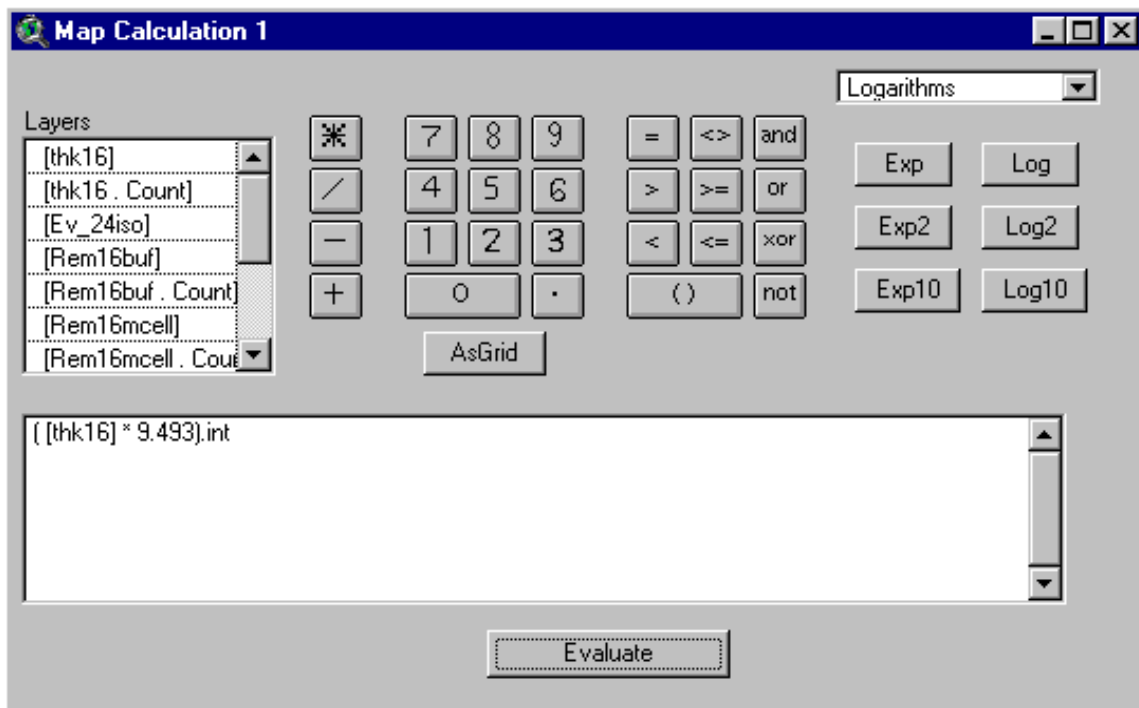
Name the new grid: tonsbycell.

Record its **Source** on your list of coverages to retain and rename.

Create Layer of Bed Elevations

Next, we add a structure contour theme or a theme that has elevation for the bed at the top of the bed. For the Pittsburgh assessment this theme was put into Arc export format and named ev_24sc.e00. Ev_24sc.e00 was imported into ArcView using the Import71 utility. The elevation theme was named ev_24sc. You would, of course, process a similar file for your project. The User's Guide uses ev_24sc as the sample bed elevation theme.

Add ev_24sc to View1.

Toggle on the display for ev_24sc:
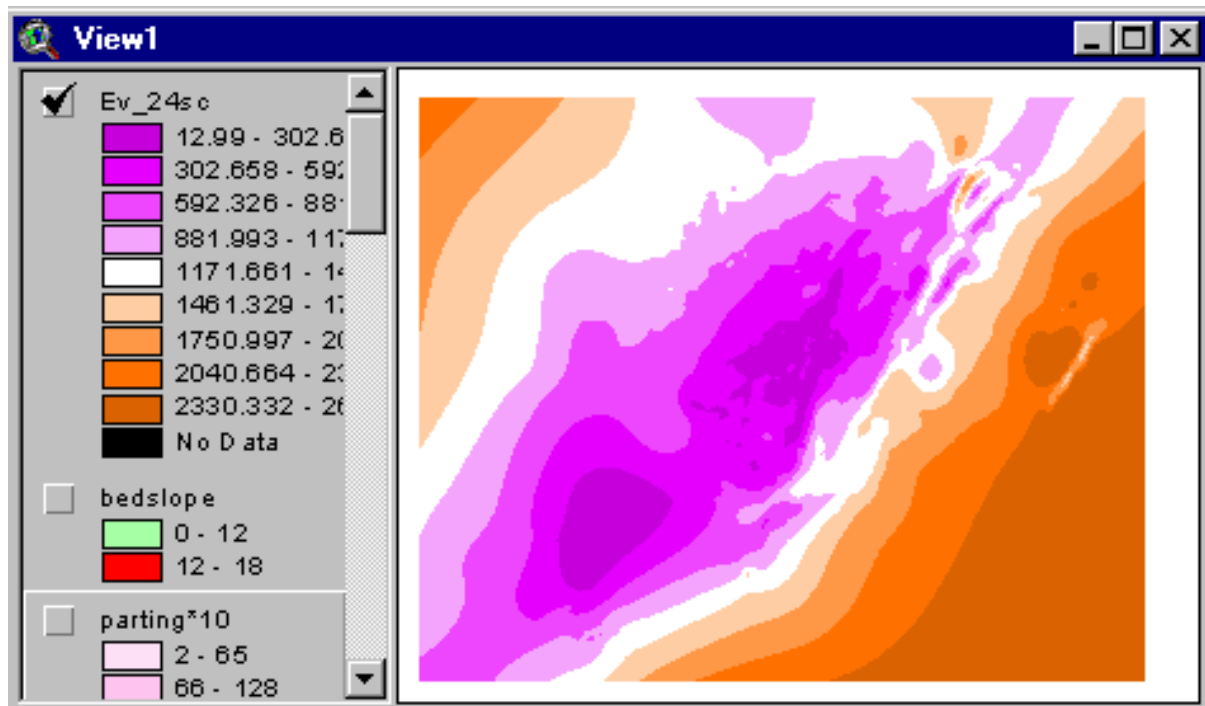
The units for bed elevation are feet.

Add DEM Layer

For the Pittsburgh assessment, John Tully merged a series of DEM covers to create a mosaiced coverage of surface elevation for the Central and Northern Appalachian basins. This cover is named Pittdem. Pittdem is projected in the target projection. Pittdem is a grid with cell size of 100 meters on a side. You would, of course, use a comparable surface elevation theme in your project. This User's Guide uses Pittdem as the sample surface elevation coverage.

Contact me (wwatson@usgs.gov) to obtain a copy of Pittdem for your project if you are assessing coal in the Appalachian basin.

Add Pittdem to View1. The units for surface elevation (as documented in the prj.adf file) are feet.
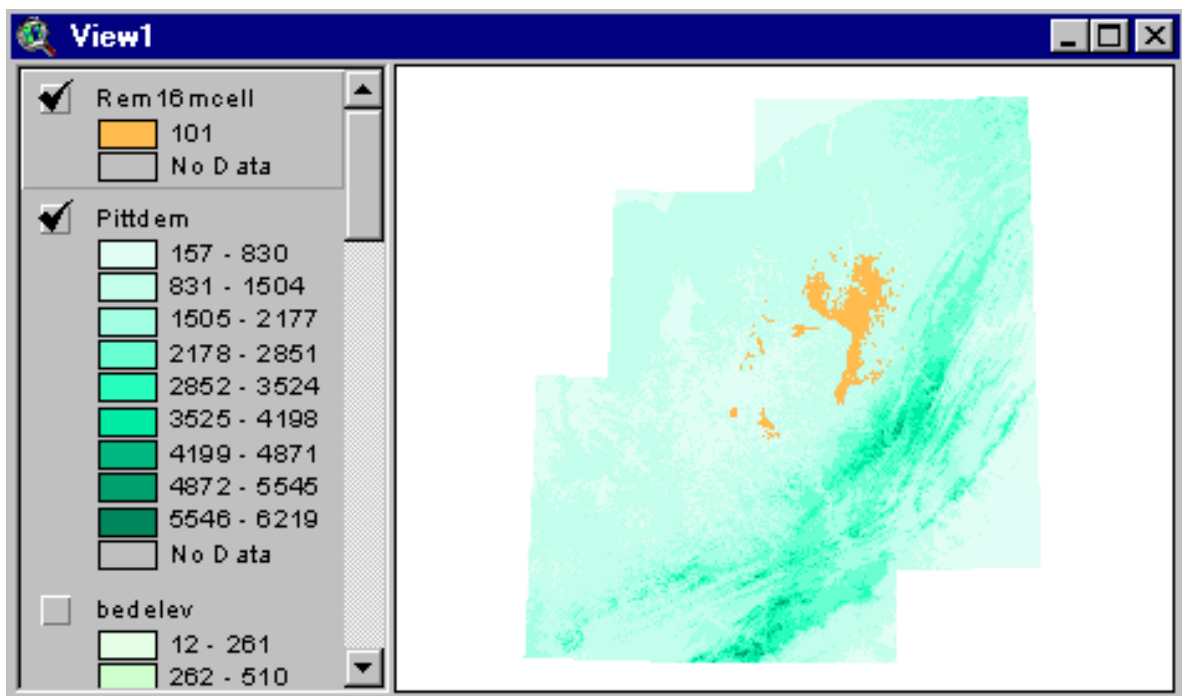
Create Layer of Partings

The final set of geologic data is a coverage containing **parting material** in the coal bed. Mining costs are affected by the amount of parting material. In the Pittsburgh assessment, partings were included on the record for drill holes. These sample point measurements of partings were processed in Earth Vision to obtain a grid coverage of partings with a 300 meter cell size. The partings data are named ptg024.asc. The format is ascii raster. The data set was imported into ArcView using:

> Under File Menu
>> Import Data Source
>>> Import File type: ASCII Raster
>> Name the grid: Parting
>
> In message box, when queried:
>
>> Cell values as integers?
>
>> Click "No"

You, of course, would process a comparable file for your project. This user's guide uses Parting as the sample coverage for partings.
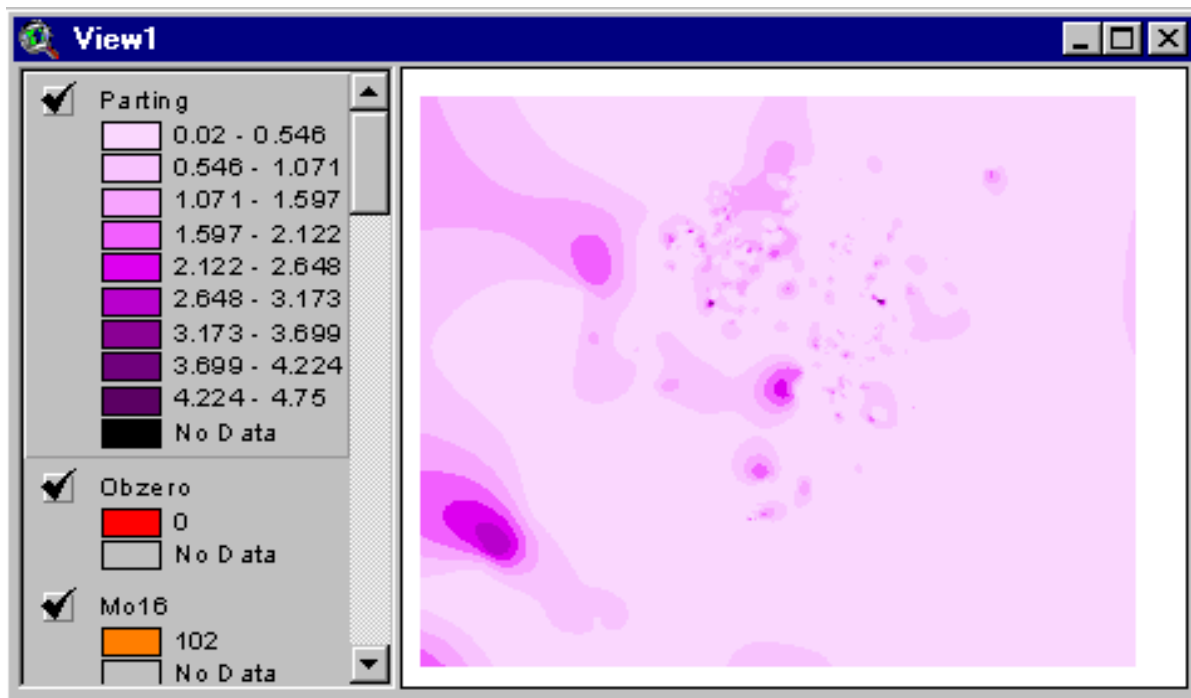
The parting material is measured in feet in the Parting coverage. We convert the feet to inches*10, truncate to create an integer grid, and resample to 16 meter cell size.

Check Analysis Properties for these settings:

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent	Same As Rem16mcell
Left	-155677.503175
Top	1970643.69375
Bottom	1693107.69375
Right	191810.496825
Analysis Cell Size	Current Value
Cell Size	16 m
Number of Rows	17346
Number of Columns	21718
Analysis Mask	Rem16mcell

OK   Cancel

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
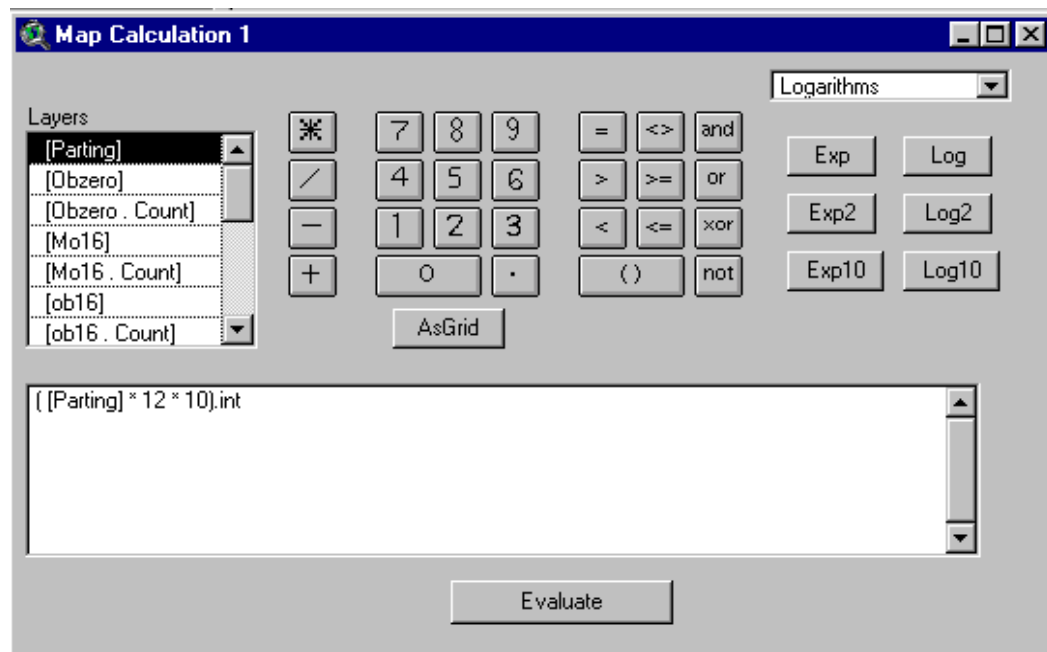
Name the new coverage: parting*10
Record its **Source** name in the list of coverages to retain and rename.
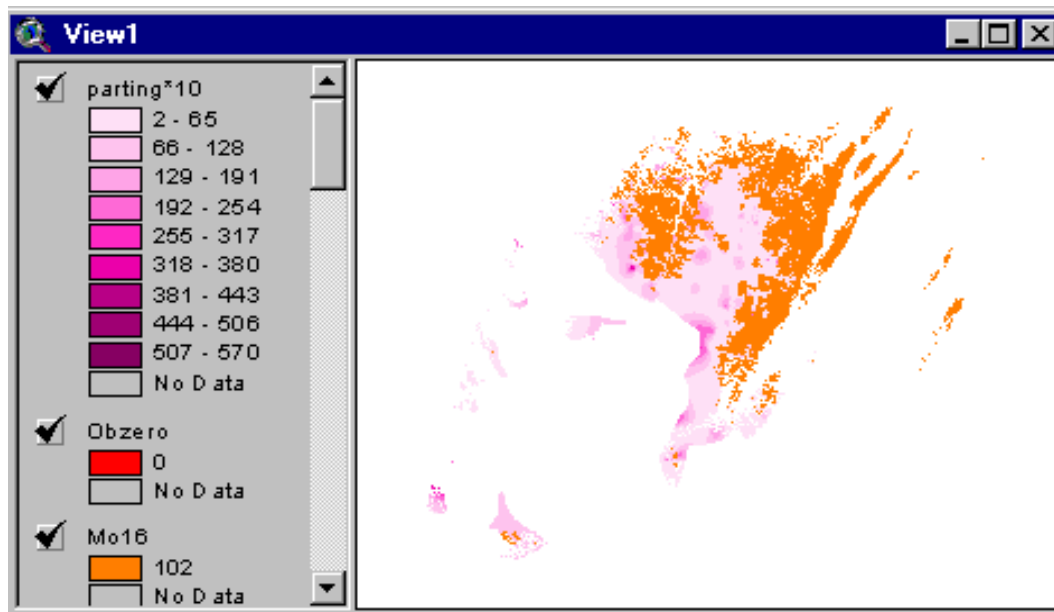
Taking Stock

1. We have completed the processing of the basic geologic data sets:

Description	Theme Name	Source
Mined Out 16m cell, Plus Safety Buffer	mo16buf	c:\testuser\calc2
Remaining 16m cell, Net of Safety Buffer	rem16buf	c:\testuser\calc5
Coal thickness 16m cell, in inches	thk16	c:\testuser\calc6
Tons of coal in each cell, 16 m cell	tonsbycell	c:\testuser\calc7
Partings 16 m cell, in inches*10	parting*10	c:\testuser\calc11

We have added coverage of basic geologic data:

ev_24sc   Bed elevation (top of bed), 300 meter cells, units=feet
pittdem   Surface elevation, 100 meter cells, units=feet

2. We have 2 remaining tasks:

Task 1:

Create a coverage of the bed elevation <u>slope</u>. This coverage will be used to keep underground coal mining out of areas where slopes exceed 12 degrees.
Create a coverage of the surface elevation <u>slope</u>. This coverage will be used to keep surface coal mining out of areas where slopes exceed 32 degrees.
Create a coverage of overburden.

Both of the slope restrictions are standard practice. Their application keeps mining out of areas where conditions are too much at variance with normal conditions. Mining machinery is designed to work efficiently under normal operating conditions. When conditions are outside the normal range, mining machinery usually does not perform very well.

To calculate overburden, we use the primary data at its coarsest resolution (300 meters). Our estimates of overburden retain a resolution of 300 meters. Overburden is obtained by subtracting bed elevation from surface elevation.

Task 2:

Create a coverage to delineate areas that cannot be mined under any mining methods because coal is too thin. Coal with thickness less than 12 inches cannot be mined by any mining method..

Task 1. Create a Coverage of the Bed Elevation Slope.

We calculate slope at the level of resolution of the original data. In the case of bed elevation (from which we derive slope), our original data, ev_24sc, has 300 meter cells.

We derive slope from ev_24sc. Therefore, our slope estimates have 300 meter resolution.

Then we resample the new grid (i.e., slope from ev_24sc) to 16 meter cells, in effect dividing up each 300 meter cell into a smaller number of cells, each carrying the data of the 300 meter slope calculation. The resample to 16 meters is done to have compatibility with other coverages.

Open Analysis Properties and enter these settings:

Make ev_24sc, the active theme.

Under the Surface Menu, click "Derive Slope"

The new theme is given default name: Slope of ev_24sc

Open Analysis Properties and enter these settings:

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent Same As Rem16mcell

Left -155677.503175   Top 1970643.69375

Bottom 1693107.69375   Right 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size Current Value

Cell Size 16   m

Number of Rows 17346

Number of Columns 21718

Analysis Mask Rem16mcell

OK   Cancel

Open Map Calculator and evaluate this request:
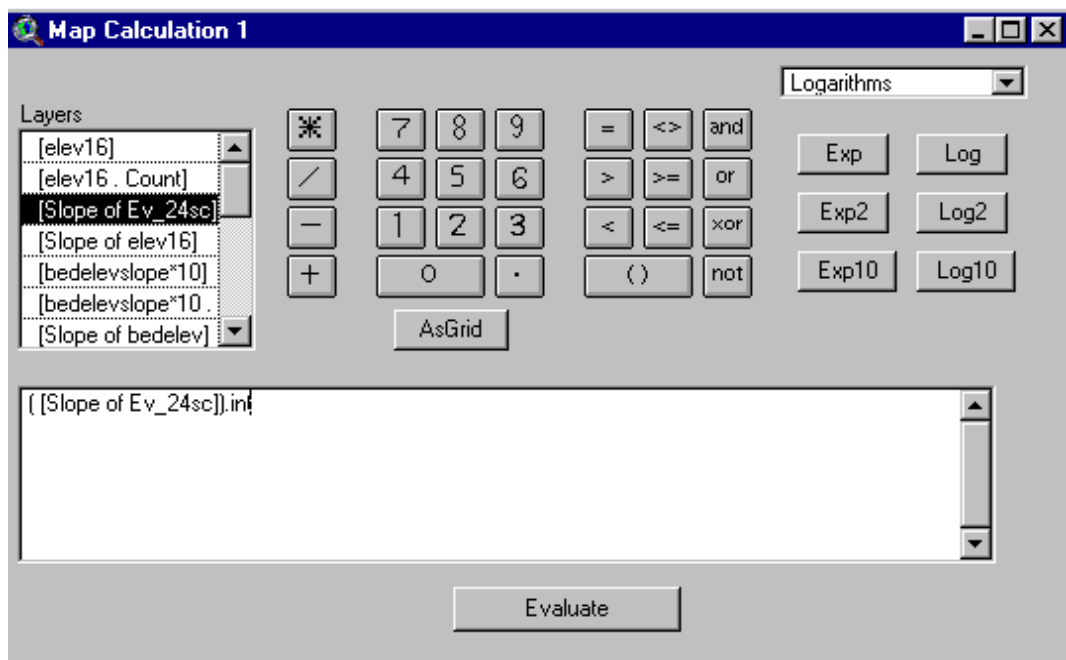
Open the Legend Editor for Map Calculation 1 and **apply** these settings:
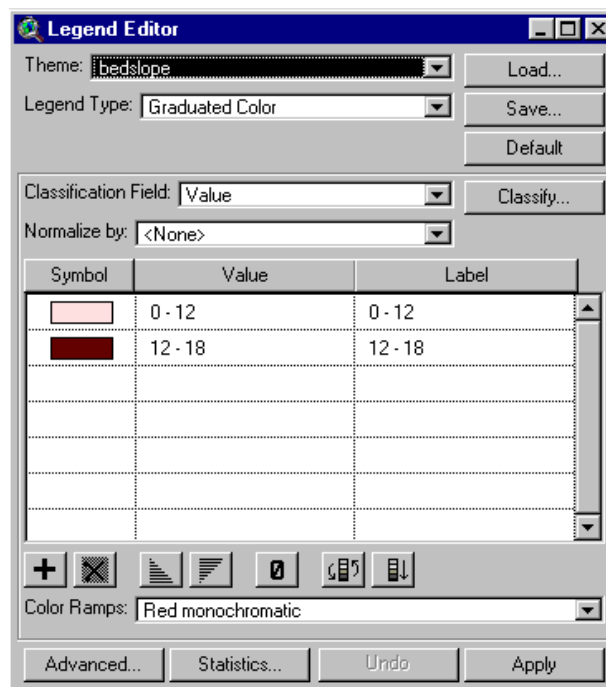
In Theme Properties, name the new grid: bedslope

Record its **Source** name in the list of coverages to retain and rename.
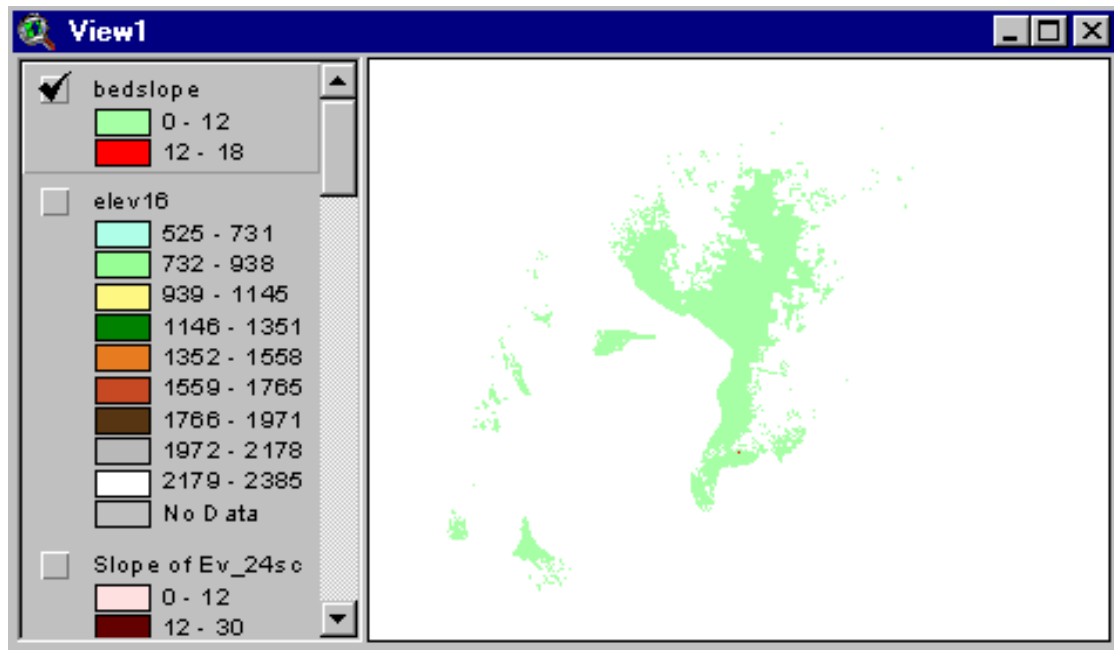
There are only a few areas where the bedslope exceeds 12 degrees.

NOTE: We have resampled from 300 meter cells to 16 meter cells. The Slope of Ev_24sc had Analysis Properties set for a 300 meter cell size. If you check its Theme Properties, you will see that it does have a cell size of 300 meters.

Our next step was to change Slope of Ev_24sc to an integer grid. Prior to making that request, we changed Analysis Properties to a 16 meter cell size. Then we issued an "int" request in Map Calculator on Slope of Ev_24sc to create Bedslope. If you check Theme Properties for Bedslope, you will see that it does have a cell size of 16 meters.

Important Point: When the "int" request is evaluated, Spatial Analyst resamples from a 300 meter cell to a 16 meter cell using the NEAREST NEIGHBOR method. The NEAREST NEIGHBOR method matches the output cell center to the nearest input cell center and assigns the input cell value to the output cell.

NEAREST NEIGHBOR is the default when resampling occurs as a result of map algebra.

NEAREST NEIGHBOR is an appropriate method to resample from a coarse grid (300 meters) to a finer grid (16 meters). In comparison, the BILINEAR or CUBIC method would assign the average of the closest cell values from the 300 meter coverage. In this case, many 16 meter cells carved out of 300 meter cells would carry different values than they did (implicitly) as parts of 300 meter cells. This assignment would be erroneous.

In conclusion, NEAREST NEIGHBOR is the correct method to resample from a large cell to a small cell. We apply NEAREST NEIGHBOR by setting the cell size in Analysis Properties to the size we desire. Then when a request is evaluated in Map Calculator, Spatial Analyst uses NEAREST NEIGHBOR as the default resampling method.

We apply this procedure for these cases:

- To create a grid of bed slopes, 16 meter cells, starting from 300 meter cells

- To create a grid of surface slopes, 16 meter cells, starting from 100 meter cells

- To create a grid of overburden thicknesses, 16 meter cells, starting from 300 meter cells.
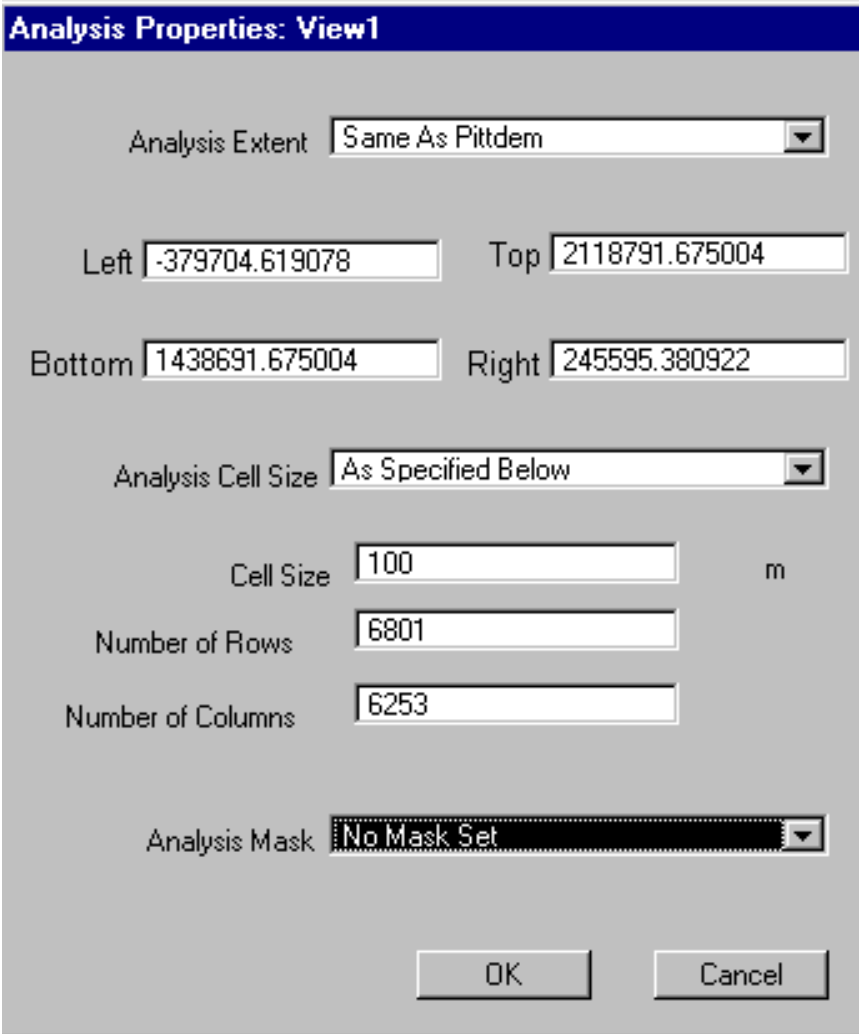
Create a Coverage of the Surface Elevation Slope

We calculate slope at the level of resolution of the original data. In the case of slope elevation (from which we derive slope), our original data, Pittdem, has 100 meter cells.

We derive slope from Pittdem. Therefore, our surface slope estimates have 100 meter resolution.

Then we resample to 16 meter cells, in effect dividing up each 100 meter cell into a smaller number of cells, each carrying the data of the 100 meter slope calculation. The resample to 16 meters is done to have compatibility with other coverages.

Open Analysis Properties and enter these settings:

Under the Surface Menu, click "Derive Slope"

The new theme is given default name: Slope of Pittdem

Open Analysis Properties and enter these settings:

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent Same As Rem16mcell

Left -155677.503175   Top 1970643.69375

Bottom 1693107.69375   Right 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size Current Value

Cell Size 16   m

Number of Rows 17346

Number of Columns 21718

Analysis Mask Rem16mcell

OK   Cancel

Open Map Calculator and evaluate this request:
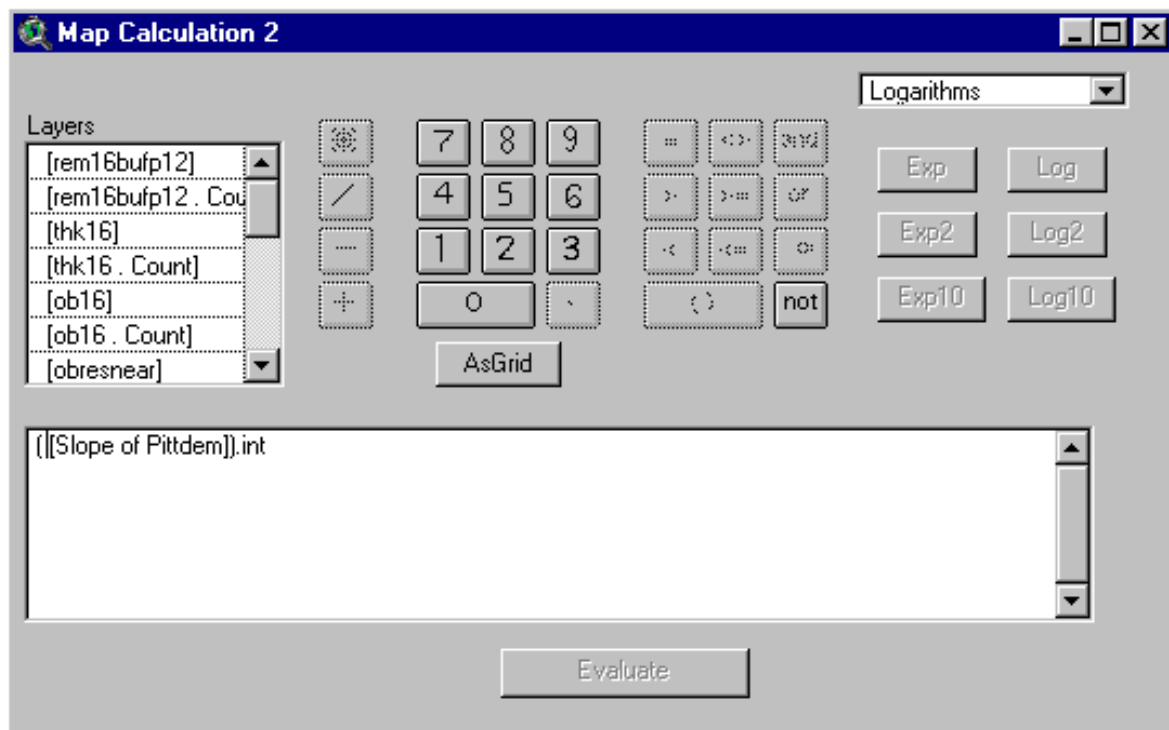
Open the Legend Editor and enter these settings:
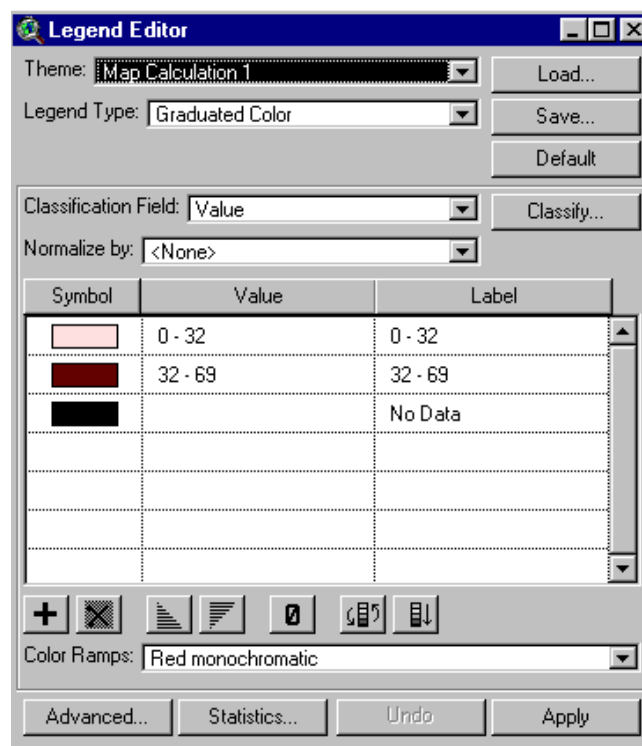
In Theme Properties, name the new grid: surfslope.

Record its **Source** name in the list of coverages to retain and rename.
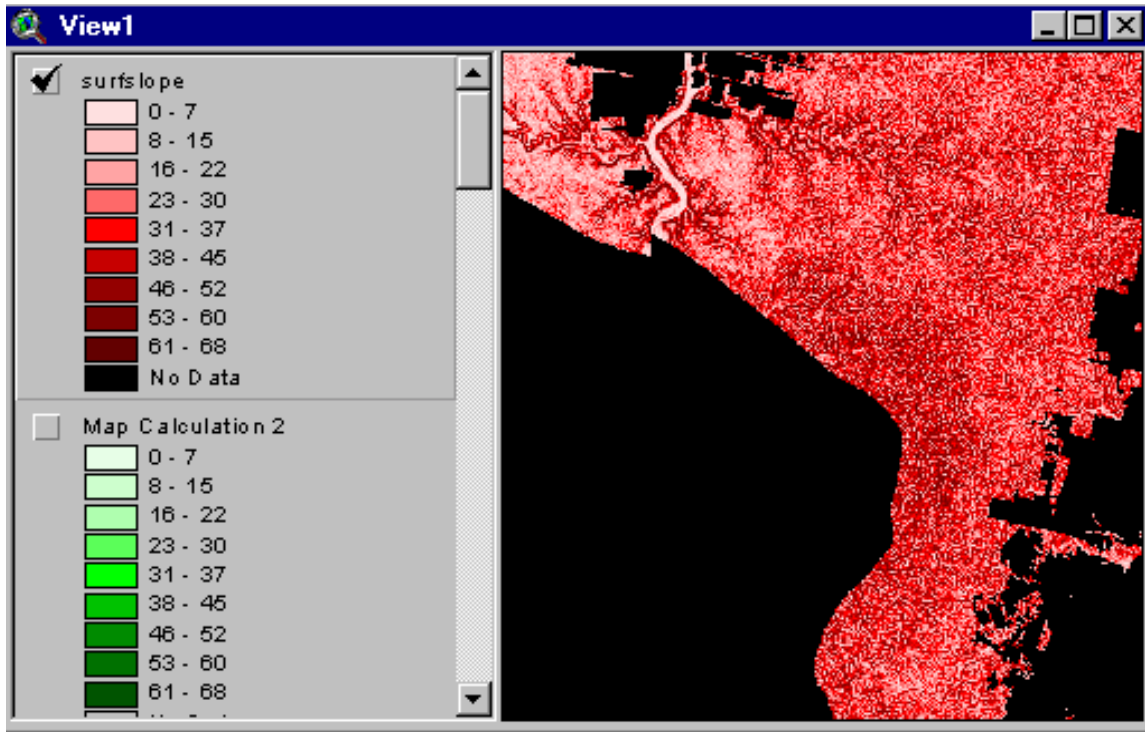
There appear to be a large number of cells with slope greater than 32 degrees. A slope greater than 32 degrees is a constraint to surface mining. Suitability for surface mining also is determined on the basis of overburden and thickness criteria (as evaluated later).

Create a Coverage of Overburden

We have already added the two coverages needed to estimate overburden: the elevation of the surface (Pittdem) and the elevation of the bed (ev_24sc). Pittdem has a resolution of 100 meters; ev_24sc has a resolution of 300 meters.

Resample Pittdem to 300 meters.

Open Analysis Properties and enter these settings:

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
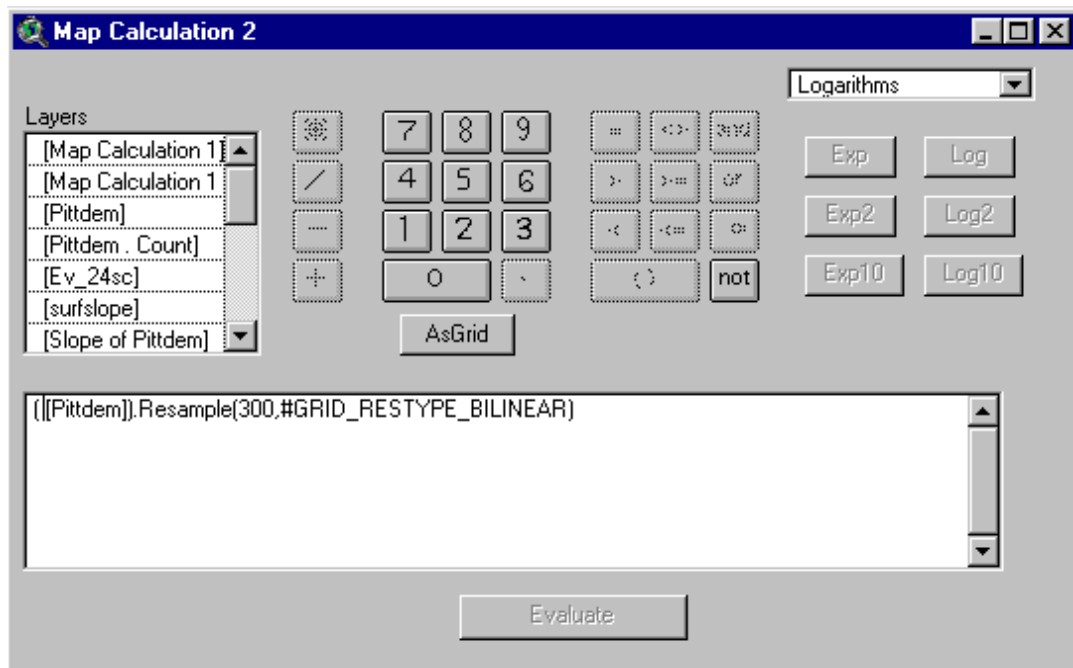
Note: We are resampling from a small cell size (100 meters) to a large cell size (300 meter). Thus, the BILINEAR method is appropriate. Each 300 meter cell has the average value of the 4 closest 100 meter cells. The default method, NEAREST NEIGHBOR, would be less accurate.

In Theme Properties, rename the new grid: pittdem300.

Toggle on the display for pittdem300:
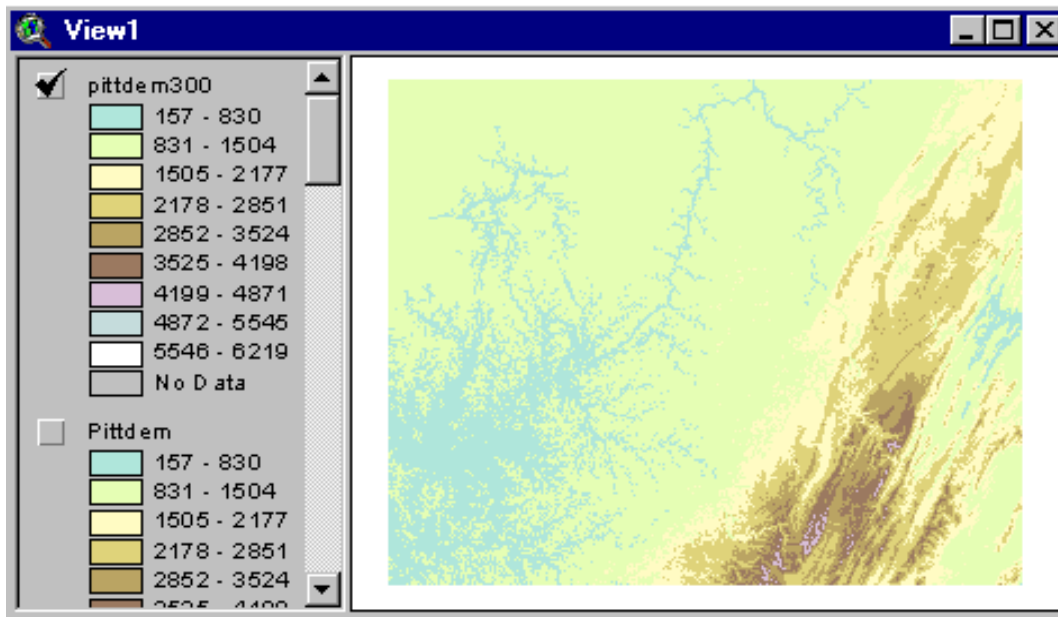
In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
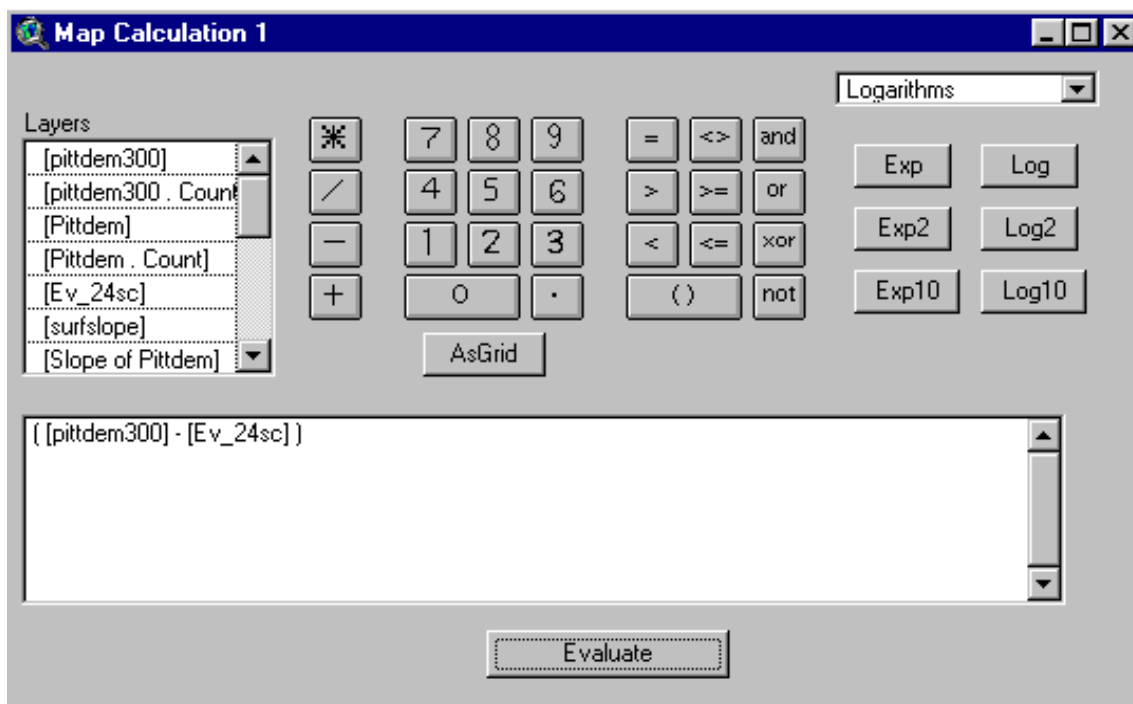
Resample to 16 meters.

In Analysis Properties, enter these settings:
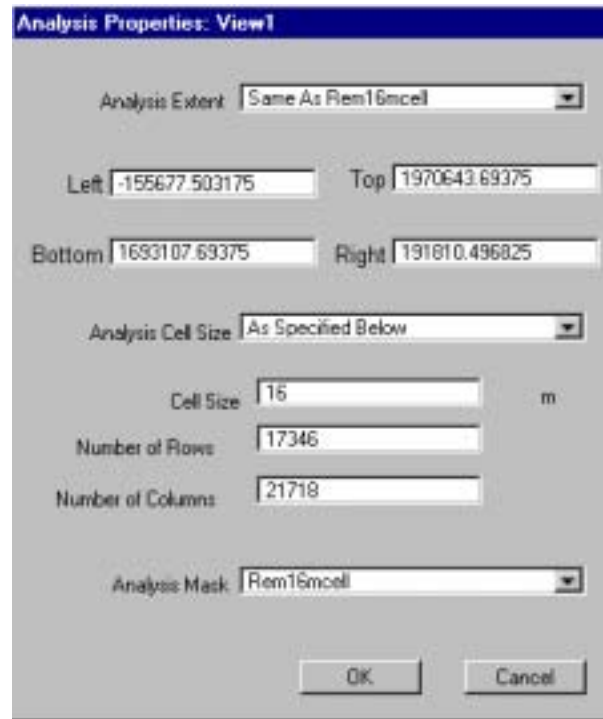
In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
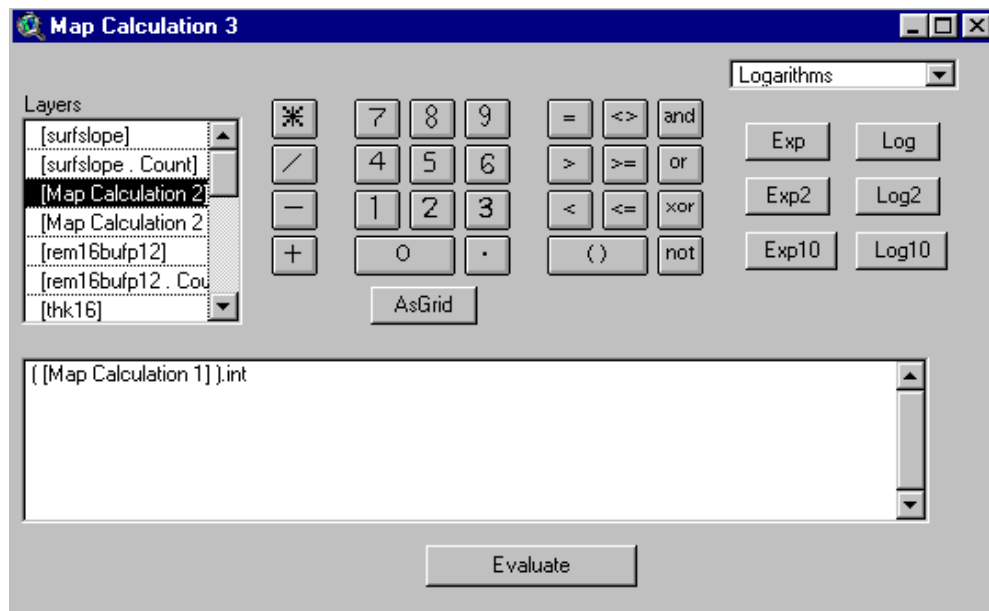
Notice: In Analysis Properties, we set:

      - Analysis Extent to Rem16mcell

      - Cell size to 16 meters &

      - Analysis Mask to "No Mask Set"

In Map Calculator, we resampled to a 16 meter cell size using the NEAREST method. NEAREST assigns the value from the nearest 300 meter cell to each 16 meter cell being evaluated. Had we used BILINEAR or CUBIC, we would have assigned the average of nearest 300 meter cells. Since we are adding cells, NEAREST is the correct choice.

Name the new grid: obresnear.

Toggle on the display for obresnear:
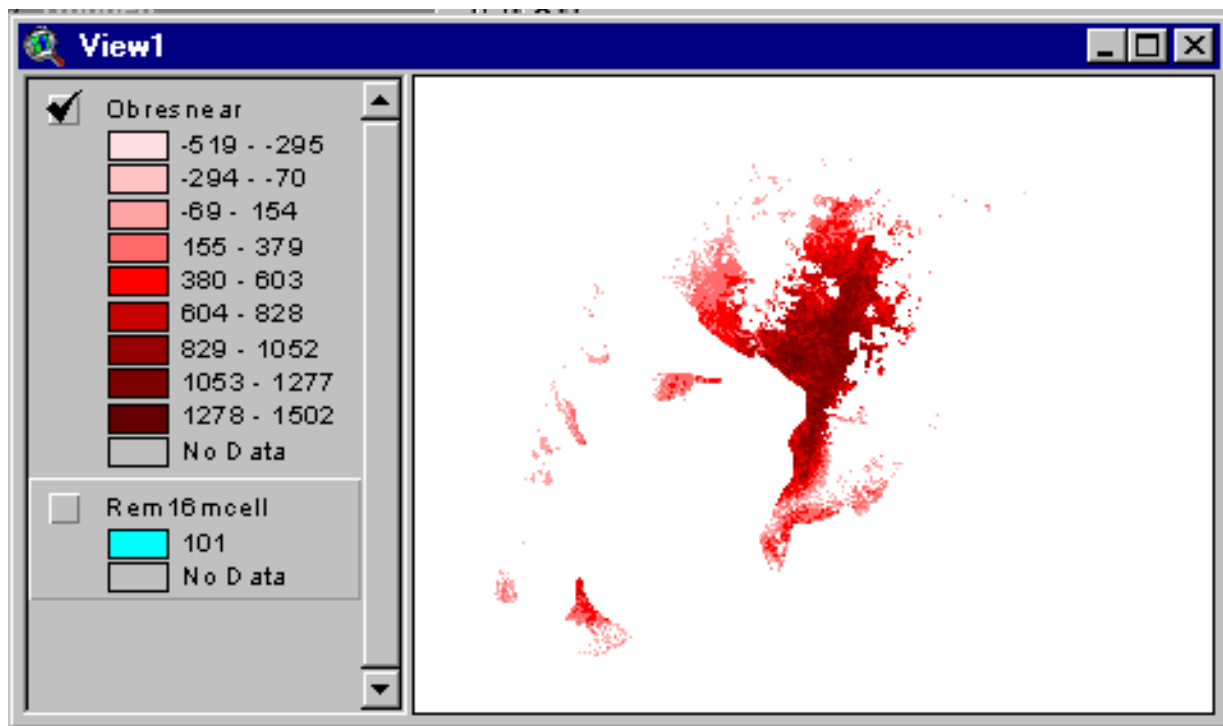
Notice, obresnear has overburden estimates that are <u>negative.</u> This result can occur because the 2 coverages used to estimate overburden are approximations to true elevations. Thus, at the fringes of remaining coal, the elevation of the bed can be above the elevation of the surface. Recall, also, that the resolution of our data is 300 meters. A coarse resolution can contribute to illogical outcomes. We correct by (1) checking to see if the zero values are at the outskirts of Rem16mcell. If they are, then (2) we change the negative overburden values to zero.

Open the legend editor for obresnear and enter these settings:

Legend Editor

Theme:	obresnear	▼	Load...
Legend Type:	Graduated Color	▼	Save...
			Default

| Classification Field: | Value | ▼ | Classify... |
| Normalize by: | <None> | ▼ | |

Symbol	Value	Label
🟥	-519 - 0	-519 - 0
⬜	0 - 1502	0 - 1502
⬜		No Data

Color Ramps: Red monochromatic ▼

| Advanced... | Statistics... | Undo | Apply |

You, of course, would have ranges on the 2 classes that are appropriate for your assessment. The two classes divide values into the class below zero and the class above zero.

Zoom in View1 to see where the red negative overburden values are located.
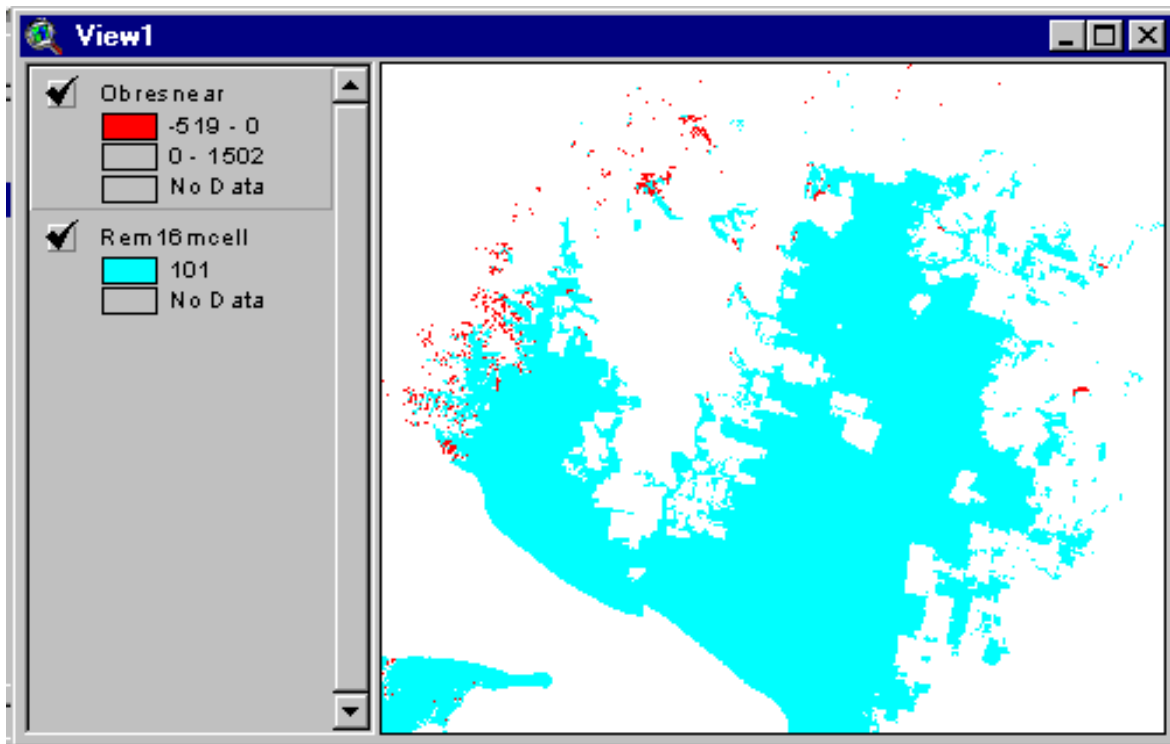
In the Pittsburgh assessment, the negative values are located on the fringes of the remaining coal. We now change these negative values to zero. On balance, this adjustment might put too much coal in the zero category. However, later the coal will be considered for surface mining. An overburden ratio of 20 to 1 is the technical limit for coal to be surface mineable. Thus, as long as the reclassification does not pick up coal deeper than about 100 feet, there will be little impact on our assessment. Because the cells adjusted to zero are on the fringe of remaining coal, it appears that there is little chance of incorrect assignment.

We proceed now to assign zero to the cells with negative overburden estimates.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
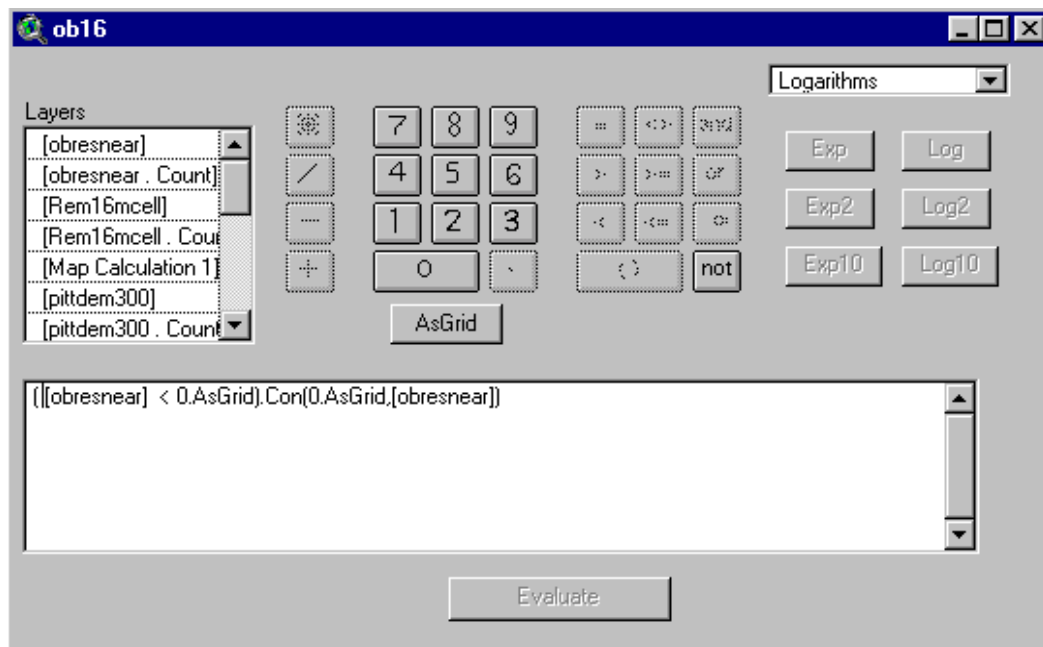
Name the new grid: ob16.

Toggle on the display for ob16:
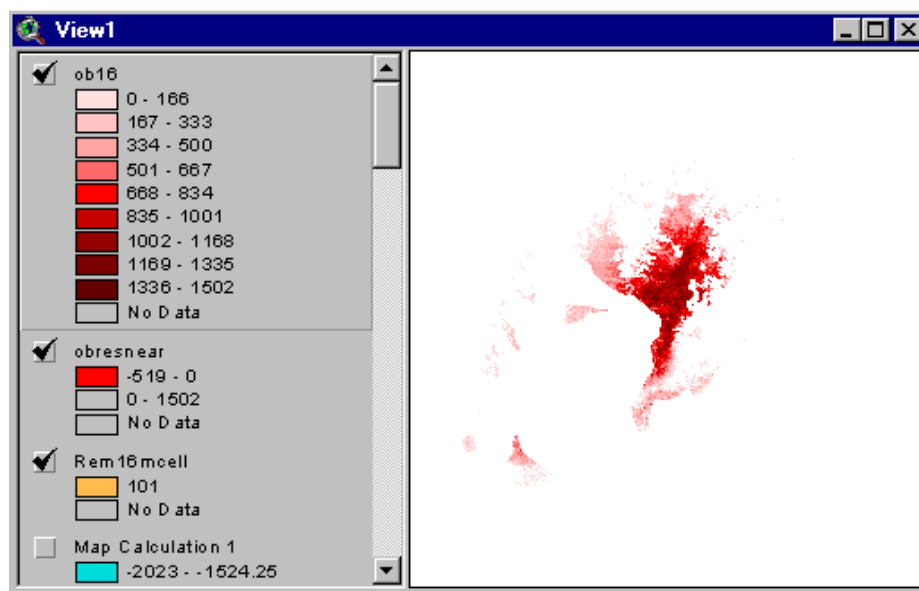
Record its **Source** name in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Task 2. Create a coverage of remaining coal that excludes coal with thickness less than 12 inches.

Coal with thickness less than 12 inches cannot be economically mined by any mining method.

In Analysis Properties, set Mask to Rem16buf:

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent   Current Value

Left   -155677.503175   Top   1970643.69375

Bottom   1693107.69375   Right   191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size   Current Value

Cell Size   16   m

Number of Rows   17346

Number of Columns   21718

Analysis Mask   Rem16buf

OK   Cancel

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
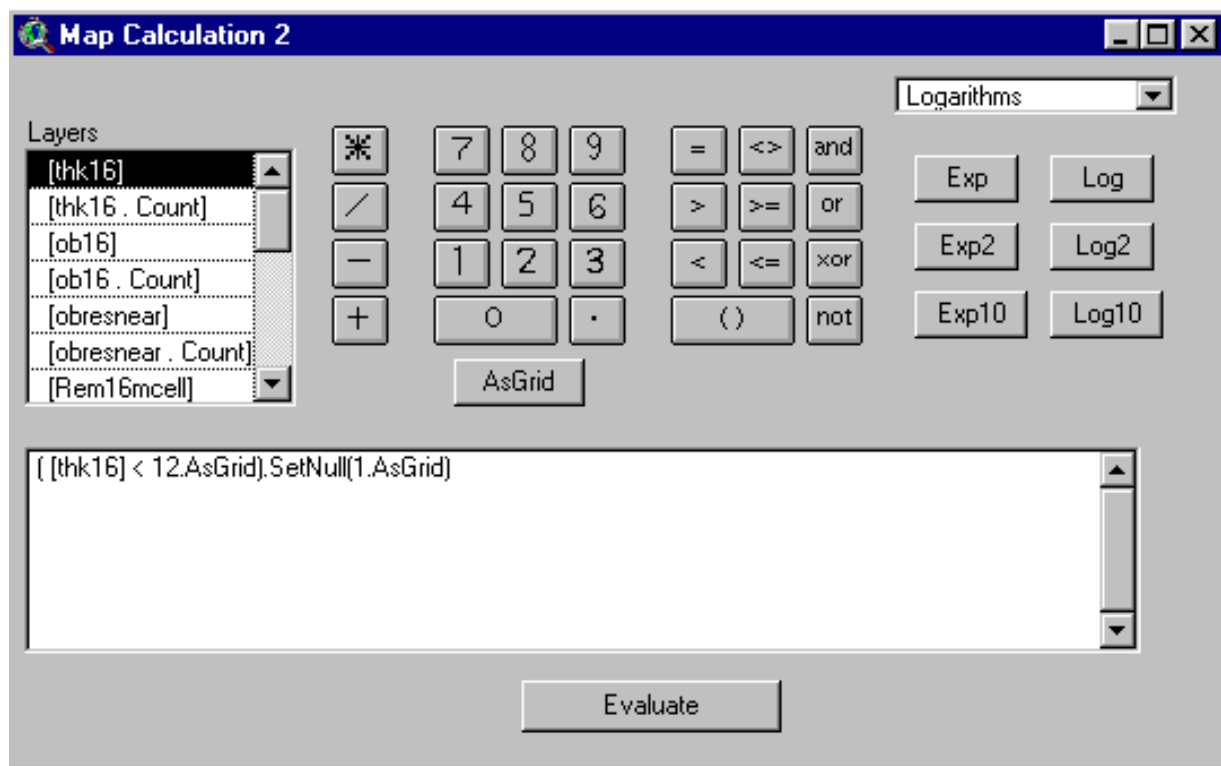
Name the new grid: rem16bufp12.

Record its **Source** name in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Toggle on the display for rem16bufp12:
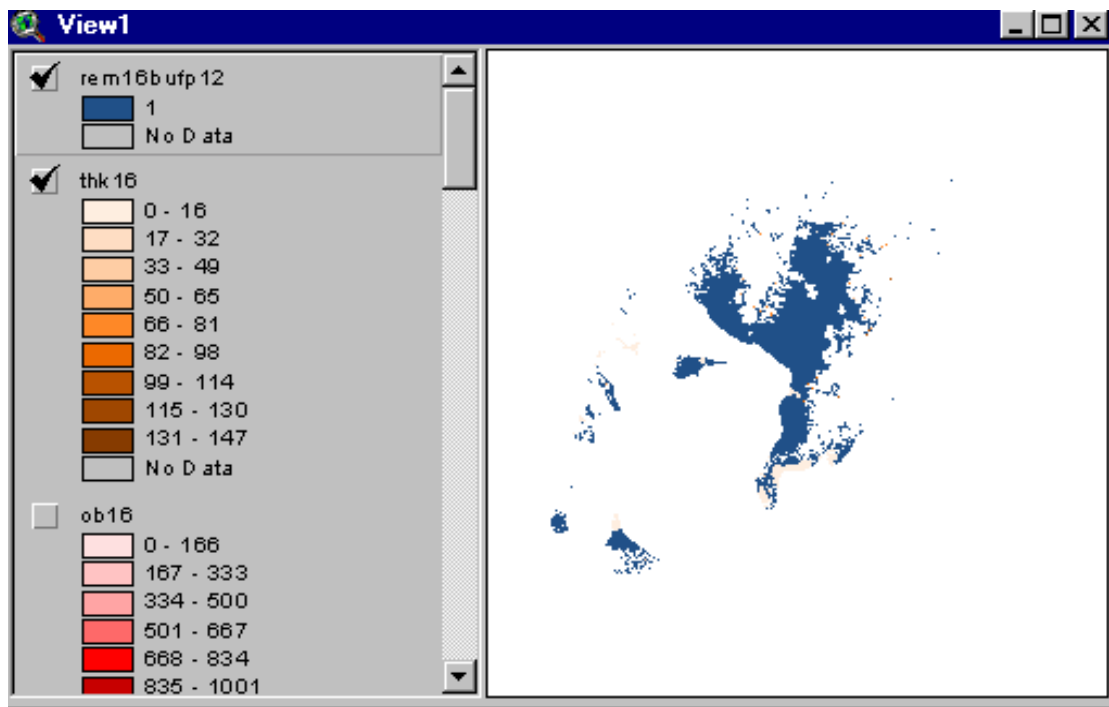
We now proceed to consolidate information about our coverages and eliminate all unneeded coverages.

We now can update our list of **Source** names for retained coverages, for example:

Coverage	Description	Path
Mo16buf	Mined Out 16 m cell, 50 ft Buffer added	c:\testuser\calc2
Rem16buf	Remaining 16 m cell, 50 ft Buffer removed where Remaining abuts mined out	c:\testuser\calc5
Thk16	Thickness in inches, 16 m Cell	c:\testuser\calc6
Tonsbycell	Tons for remaining, 16m Cell	c:\testuser\calc7
Parting*10	Parting in inches x 10, in Inches, 16 m cell	c:\testuser\calc11
Ob16	Overburden for remaining In feet, 16 m cell	c:\testuser\calc1
Rem16bufp12	Remaining 16 m cell, 50 ft Buffer removed, coal less Than 12 inches thick removed	c:\testuser\calc19
Obresnear	Overburden 16 m cell, Includes estimates of negative Overburden	c:\testuser\calc12
Pittdem300	Surface elevation, 300 meter Cells	c:\testuser\calc16
Surfslope	Slope of Surface, 16 m cell	c:\testuser\calc20
Bedslope	Slope of Bed, 16 m cell	c:\testuser\calc13
Safetybuffer01	50 foot buffer in areas where Mined out abuts remaining	c:\testuser\calc4
Safetybuffer	50 foot buffer1 & null	c:\testuser\calc3

Rename grids to more convenient names
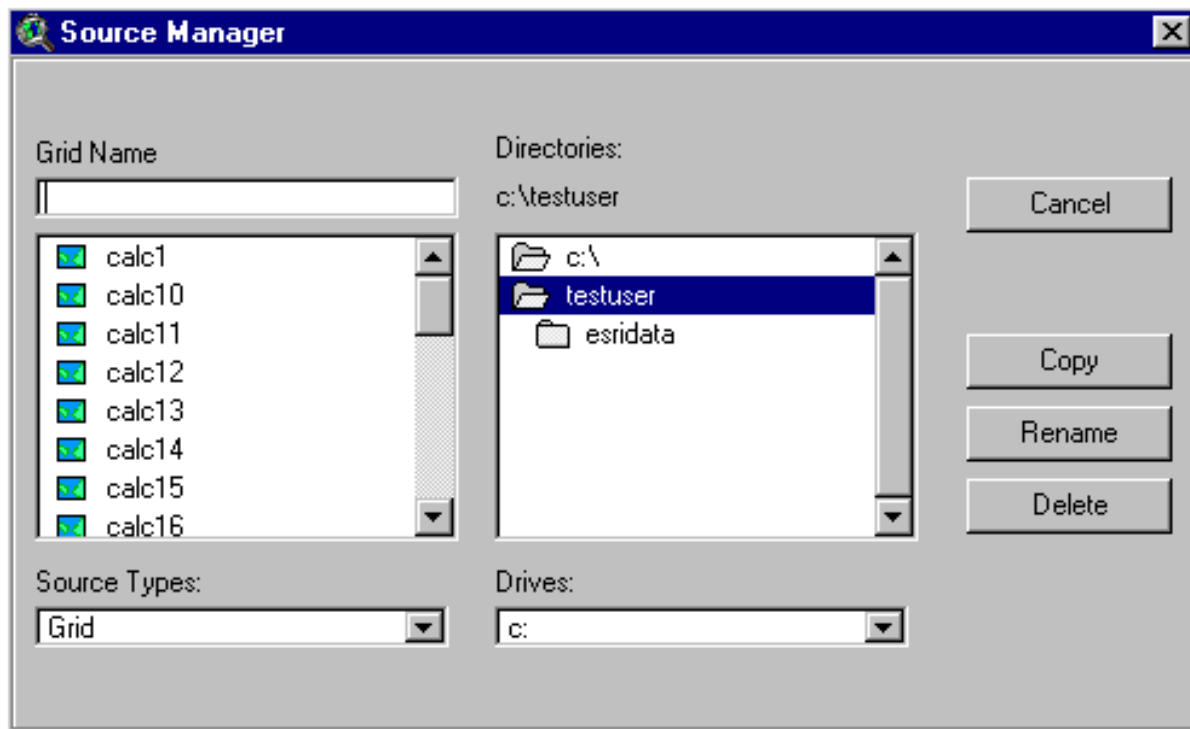
Save the current project.

Start a new project.

Open a new view.

Toggle on the Spatial Analyst Extension.

Under File Menu, click "Manage Data Sources" to access the Source Manager:

Then rename the initial grids with the following names:

(You would, of course, use your project path when you rename the grids.)

Coverage	Original Names	New Name
Mined Out	c:\testuser\calc2	c:\testuser\mo16buf
Remaining	c:\testuser\calc5	c:\testuser\rem16buf
Coal Thickness	c:\testuser\calc6	c:\testuser\thk16
Tons by Cell	c:\testuser\calc7	c:\testuser\tonsbycell
Parting * 10	c:\testuser\calc11	c:\testuser\parting10
Overburden	c:\testuser\calc1	c:\testuser\ob16
Remaining, buffer removed, coal less than 12 inches removed	c:\testuser\calc19	c:\testuser\rem16bufp12
Overburden with negative values	c:\testuser\calc12	c:\testuser\obresnear
Surface Elevation, 300 m cells	c:\testuser\calc16	c:\testuser\pittdem300
Surface slope	c:\testuser\calc20	c:\testuser\surfslope
Bed slope	c:\testuser\calc13	c:\testuser\bedslope
Safety Buffer 0-1 coverage	c:\testuser\calc4	c:\testuser\safetybuf01
Safety Buffer 1-Null	c:\testuser\calc3	c:\testuser\safetybuf

Remove working grids.

We have just renamed all of the "final" grids we need for our assessment.

It is likely that there are still some working grids in your project folder.

Use Spatial Analyst Source Manger to remove working grids.

Working grids that remain will have names that start with "calc", "grid", and "rclss."

Delete them.

Congratulations you have finished **Chapter 4!!!!**

You have the coal coverages you will need to estimate **available** coal in Chapter 5.

Chapter 5.

COAL AVAILABILITY

Purpose: In this Chapter, we remove restricted coal from remaining coal in order to estimate available coal.

Overview: The coverages for areas restricted to coal (estimated in Chapter 3) are combined with coal coverages (estimated in Chapter 4) to determine available coal. We estimate coal in each of the restricted areas, in safety buffers, and in thickness less than 12 inches. These estimates are subtracted from the coal in the original Pittsburgh to estimate available coal. The succeeding chapters (6 through 9) will estimate available coal after accounting for technical restrictions as coal is allocated to mining technology. These technical restrictions account for a further reduction in available coal (beyond the levels reported in Chapter 4). Therefore, the estimates of available coal developed in this chapter represent an overestimate of available coal but are useful as a first cut at availability. The conventional availability studies (mainly for an area the size of a USGS topographic quadrangle) stop at this point. The final estimates of available coal that account for technical restrictions due to mining method are discussed in Chapter 10.

Estimate original coal in the Pittsburgh bed.

Open a new ArcView project.

Add a View Window. Do not add any themes.

Under the File Menu, set Working Directory to your project path.
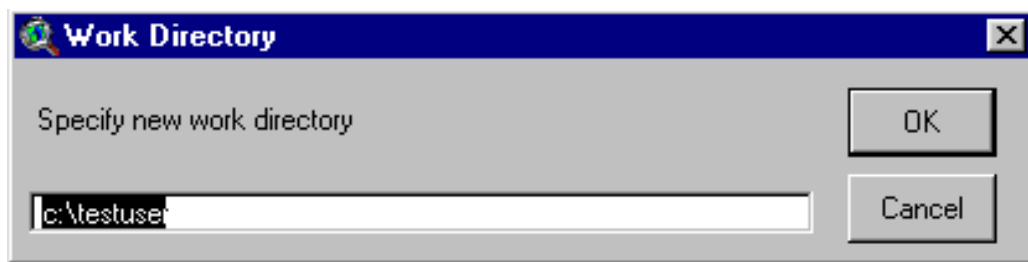
Open View Properties and enter these settings:

In View 1, add the base geologic coverage. The polygon vector coverage named C9024bill contains the extent of orginal coal in the case of the Pittsburgh assessment.   C9024bill is added to View1. You would add a corresponding coverage to View1 of your project.

Add grid, Rem16mcell, to View1.

Under the Analysis Menu, open Analysis Properties and enter these settings:

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent Same As Rem16mcell ▼

Left -155677.503175   Top 1970643.69375

Bottom 1693107.69375   Right 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size As Specified Below ▼

Cell Size 16   m

Number of Rows 17346

Number of Columns 21718

Analysis Mask Rem16mcell ▼

[OK]   [Cancel]
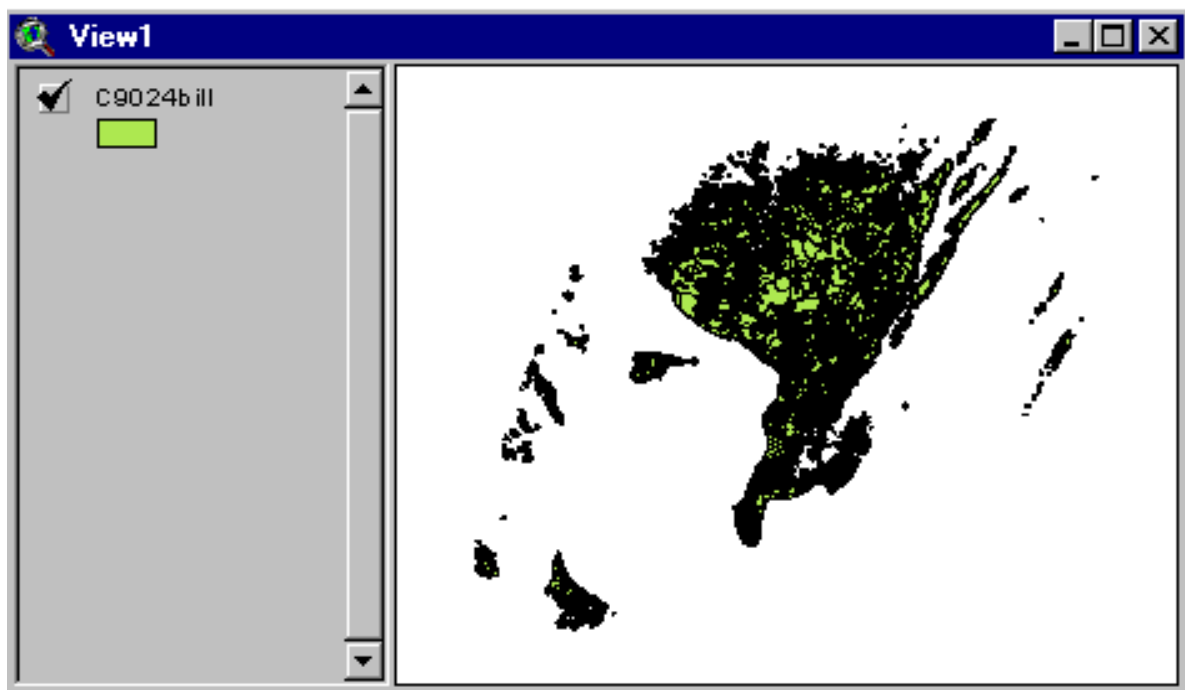
We use Rem16mcell as the analysis extent to insure that the grids for original coal are
exactly in line with the remaining coal.

The coverage, c9024bill, contains interior no coal polygons. See discussion, p 2-4.

We query c9024bill to select original coal with the interior no coal polygons removed:

```
┌──────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┐
│ 🔍 C9024bill                                              _ □ ✕        │
├──────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┤
│ Fields                                      Values                     │
│ ┌────────────────────┬──┐   ┌──┐ ┌───┐ ┌───┐  ┌────────────────────┬──┐│
│ │ [Statecty]         │▲ │   │ =│ │<> │ │and│  │                    │▲ ││
│ │ [St]               │  │   └──┘ └───┘ └───┘  │                    │  ││
│ │ [Cntyname]         │  │   ┌──┐ ┌───┐ ┌───┐  │                    │  ││
│ │ [Thick]            │  │   │ >│ │>= │ │or │  │                    │  ││
│ │ [Thick_is_cat]     │  │   └──┘ └───┘ └───┘  │                    │  ││
│ │ [Mine]             │  │   ┌──┐ ┌───┐ ┌───┐  │                    │  ││
│ │ [Thick_ob_cat]     │▼ │   │ <│ │<= │ │not│  │                    │▼ ││
│ └────────────────────┴──┘   └──┘ └───┘ └───┘  └────────────────────┴──┘│
│                                  ┌────┐        ☐ Update Values        │
│                                  │ () │                                │
│                                  └────┘                                │
│ ┌──────────────────────────────────────┬──┐  ┌──────────────────────┐ │
│ │ [( [Mine] = 101) or ([Mine] = 102 )] and│▲ │  │      New Set         │ │
│ │ [[Thick_ob_cat] <> 999] |            │  │  └──────────────────────┘ │
│ │                                      │  │  ┌──────────────────────┐ │
│ │                                      │  │  │     Add To Set       │ │
│ │                                      │  │  └──────────────────────┘ │
│ │                                      │▼ │  ┌──────────────────────┐ │
│ └──────────────────────────────────────┴──┘  │    Select From Set   │ │
│                                               └──────────────────────┘ │
└──────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```
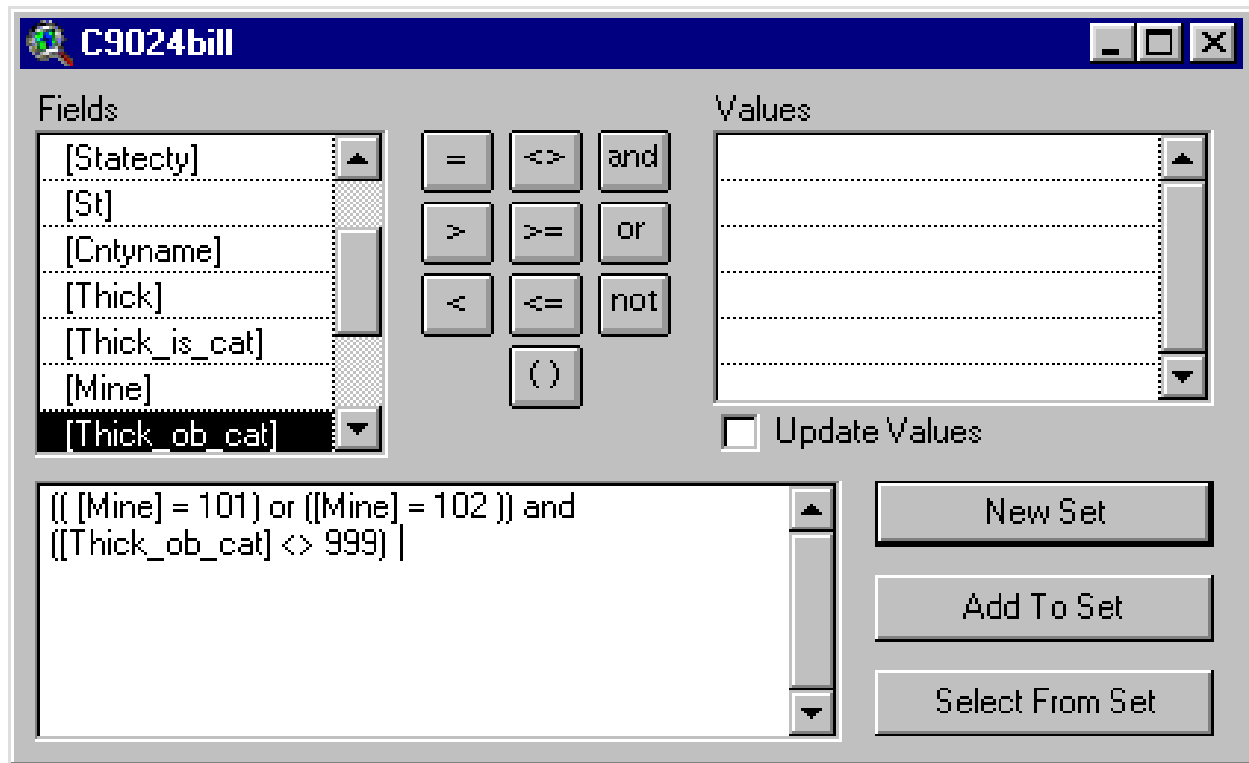
Under the Theme Menu, Click "Convert to Grid."

Name the grid: c:\your project path\pittorig.

Select "mine" as field for cell values.

Add pittorig to View1:
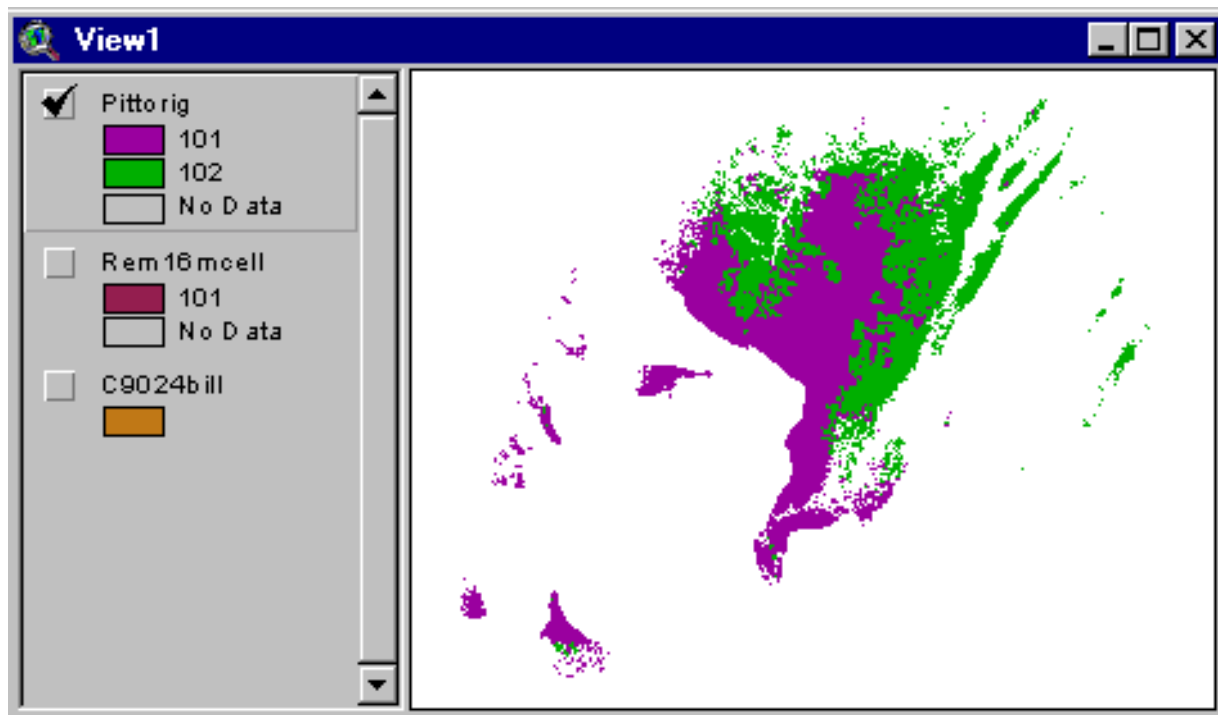
Create a Layer of Coal Thicknesses for the Original Pittsburgh Coal Bed

In the Pittsburgh assessment, the primary thickness layer, available in ARC export format, is named ev_24iso.e00. The export file was imported into ArcView using Import71. The new coverage is called ev_24iso. In your project, you would be processing a comparable thickness file. This user's guide uses ev_24iso as its sample thickness coverage.

Ev_24iso is a grid coverage of thickness measured in feet extending over the original extent of the Pittsburgh coal bed. It was created in Earth Vision and has a cell size of 300 meters on a side. Ev_24iso is in the target projection.

Add ev_24iso to View1 and toggle on its display.

In Analysis Properties, enter these settings:

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent | Same As Rem16mcell ▾

Left | -155677.503175   Top | 1970643.69375

Bottom | 1693107.69375   Right | 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size | Current Value ▾

Cell Size | 16 | m

Number of Rows | 17346

Number of Columns | 21718

Analysis Mask | Pittorig ▾

OK   Cancel

The settings in Analysis Properties insure 2 outcomes: (1) the thickness grid will have cells with a dimension of 16 meters on a side and (2) the thickness grid will cover the area of original Pittsburgh coal. The latter condition is met by setting the Analysis Mask to Pittorig.

We now create a new thickness grid with thickness measured in inches. We convert the grid to an integer thickness grid to speed ArcView operations.

Under the Analysis Menu, open Map Calculator and evaluate this expression:
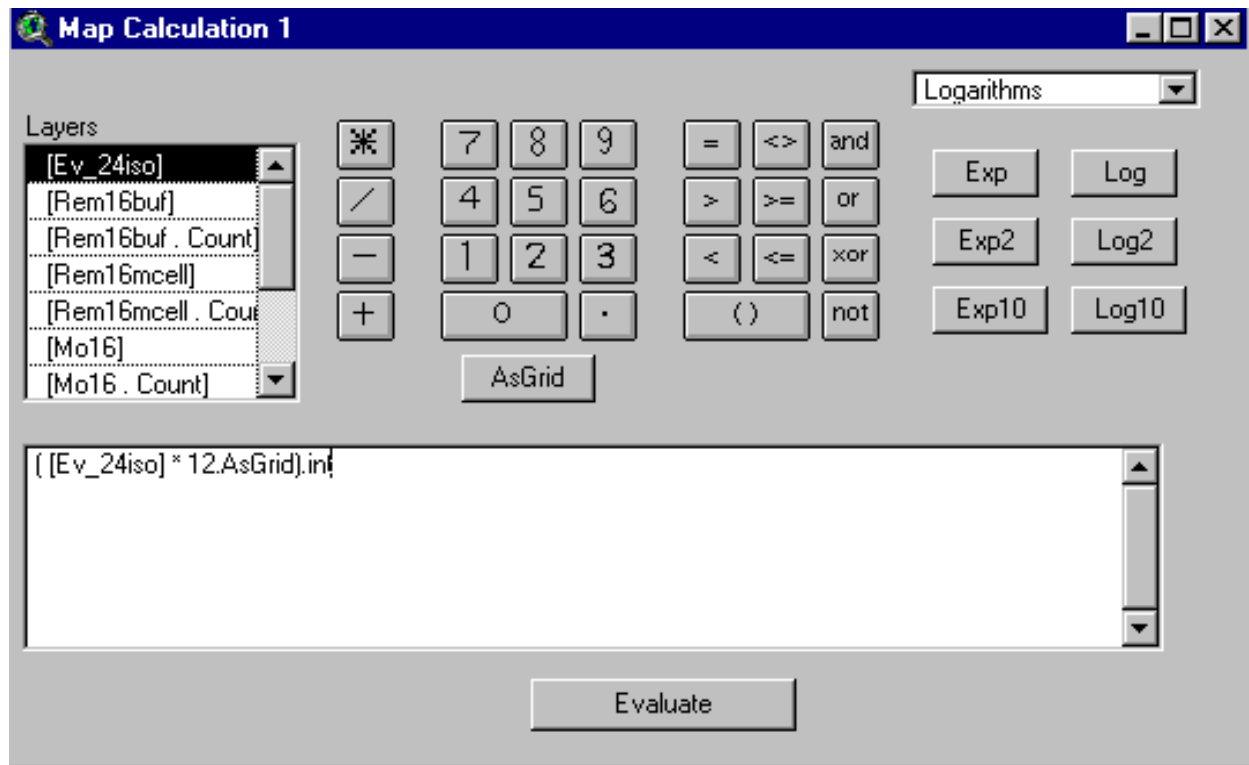
Name the new thickness cover: thk16all.

Add its source path and name to your list of grids to retain and rename.

This user's guide has "c:\testuser" as the project path.

The source name given by ArcView to thk16all in this sample case is c:\testuser\calc1, found in the **Theme Properties** window as the **Source file:**
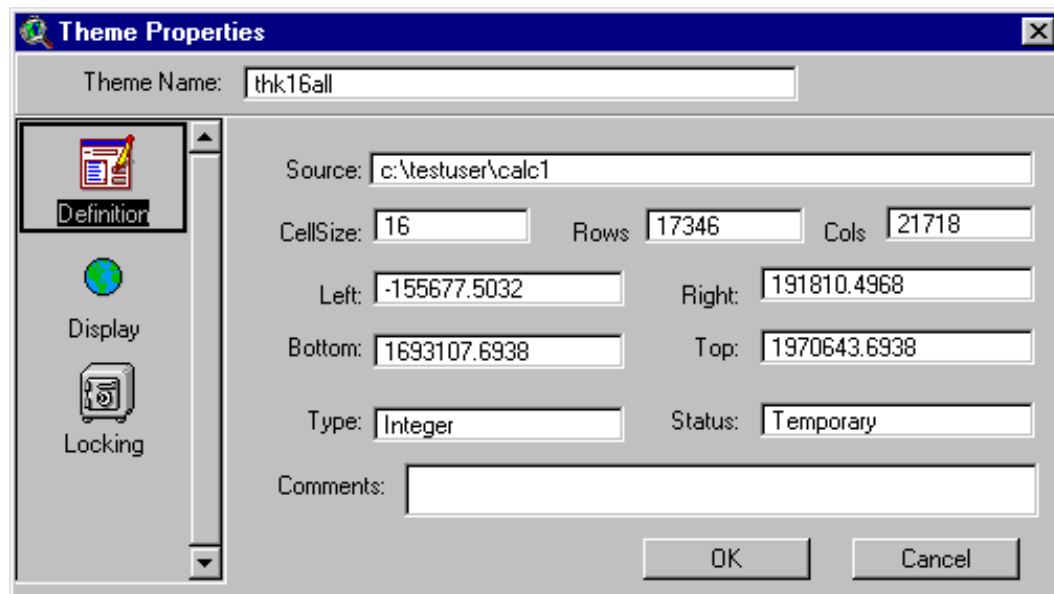
Save your project.

Toggle off the display for all themes.

Toggle on the display for thk16all:

.
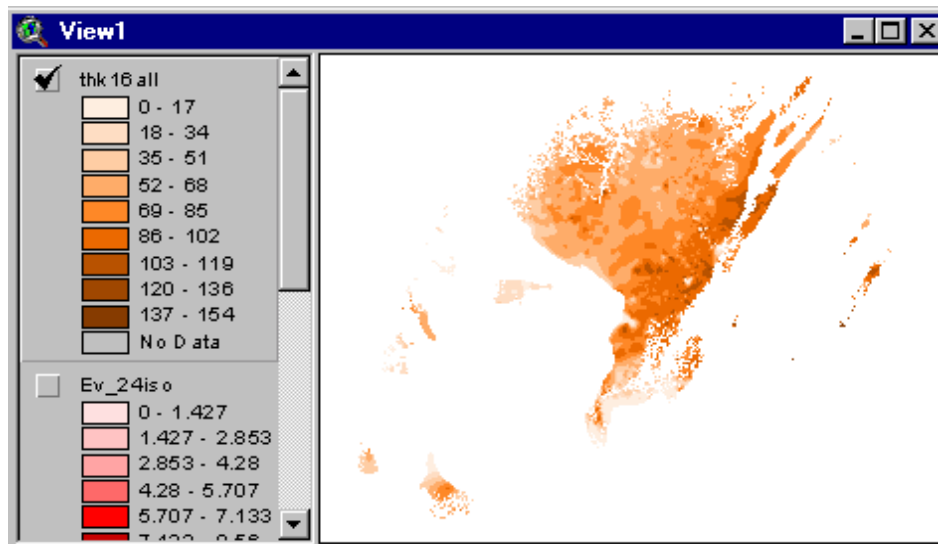
Estimates of tonnage: original Pittsburgh coal bed, remaining Pittsburgh coal bed, coal in safety barriers, coal with thickness < 12 inches

Next, we calculate the tons of coal in each cell in the thk16all coverage. This will provide a layer against which we can run a Summarize request (under the Analysis Menu) in order to calculate the total tons of coal.

Open Map Calculator and evaluate this expression:
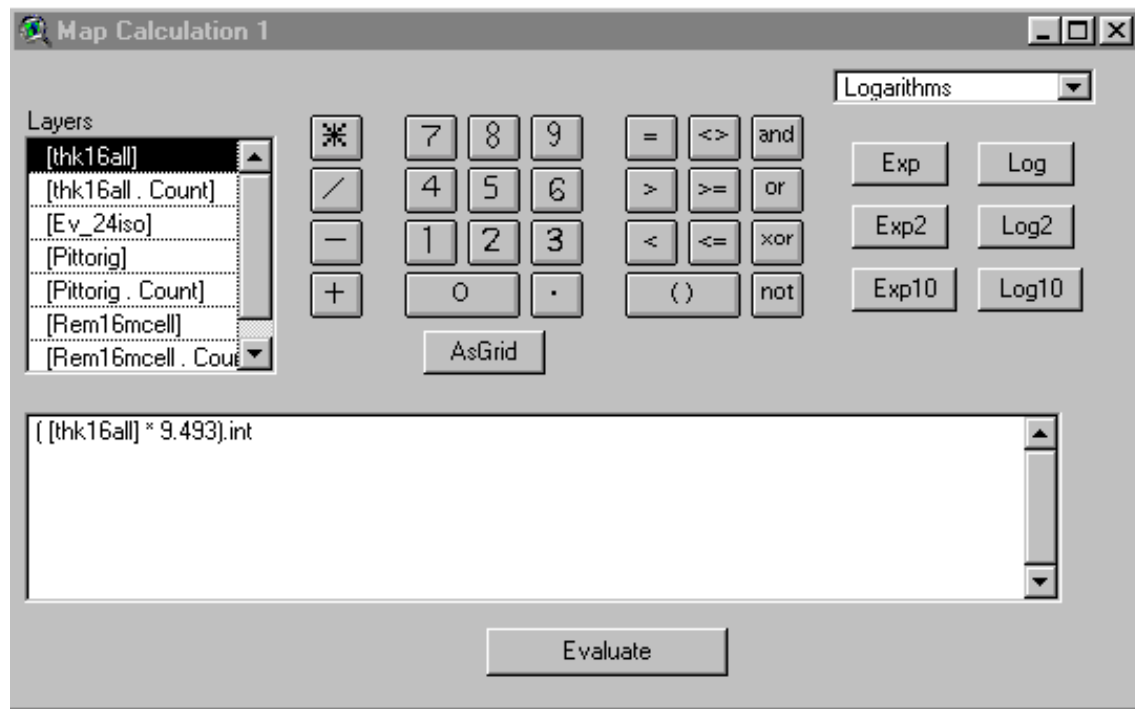
Name the new grid: tonsbycellall.

Record its **Source** on your list of coverages to retain and rename.

Make Pittorig the active theme.
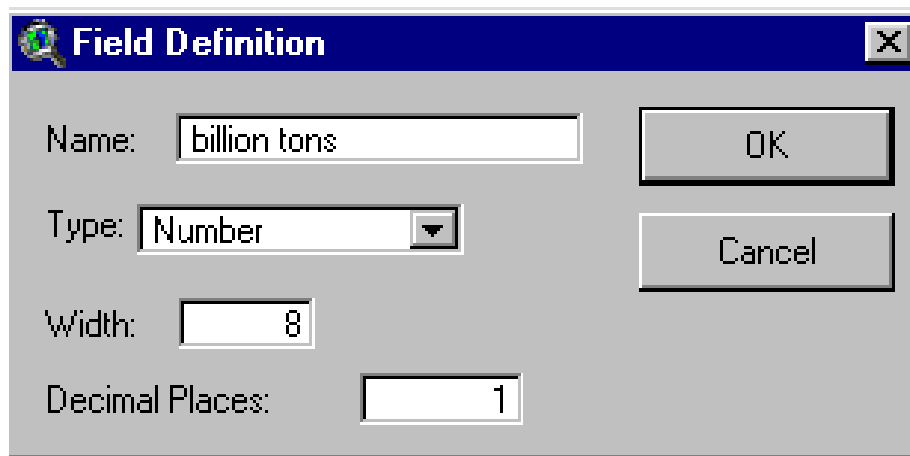
Under the Analysis Menu, click "Summarize Zones."

Select tonsbycellall as the summarizing theme.

When queried about chart, click "cancel."
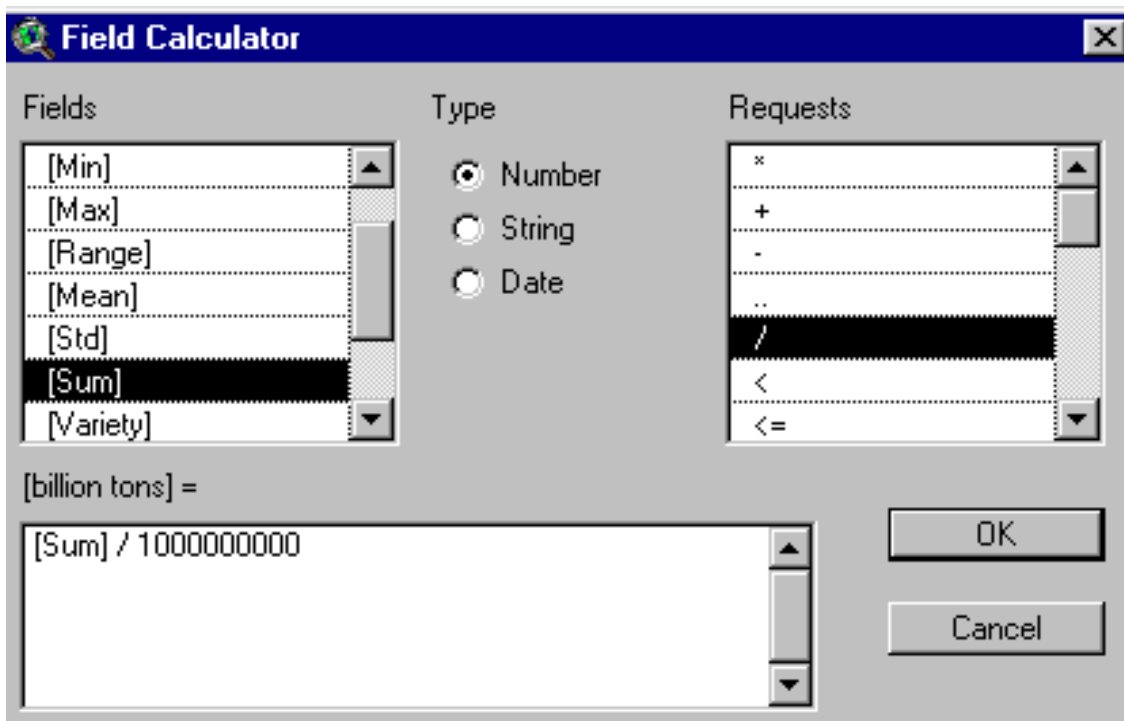
With table active, under the Table Menu click "Start Editing."

Under the Edit Menu, click "Add Field" and enter these settings:

Field Definition

Name: billion tons

Type: Number

Width: 8

Decimal Places: 1

OK

Cancel

Open the Field Calculator (looks like calculator) and enter these settings:

Field Calculator

Fields:
[Min]
[Max]
[Range]
[Mean]
[Std]
[Sum]
[Variety]

Type:
⦿ Number
○ String
○ Date

Requests:
×
+
-
..
/
<
<=

[billion tons] =

[Sum] / 1000000000

OK

Cancel

Under the Table Menu, click "Stop Editing."

Save Edits?:   Yes.

The entry in the table in row: "Value = 101" is the remaining coal: 15.790 billion tons.

The entry in the table in row: "Value = 102" is mined out coal: 17.622 billion tons.

The original coal in the Pittsburgh bed is the sum of remaining and mined out: 33.4 billion tons.

With the table "Stats of tonsbycellall within zones of Pittorig" active, under the File Menu:

Click "Export"

Select "dbase"
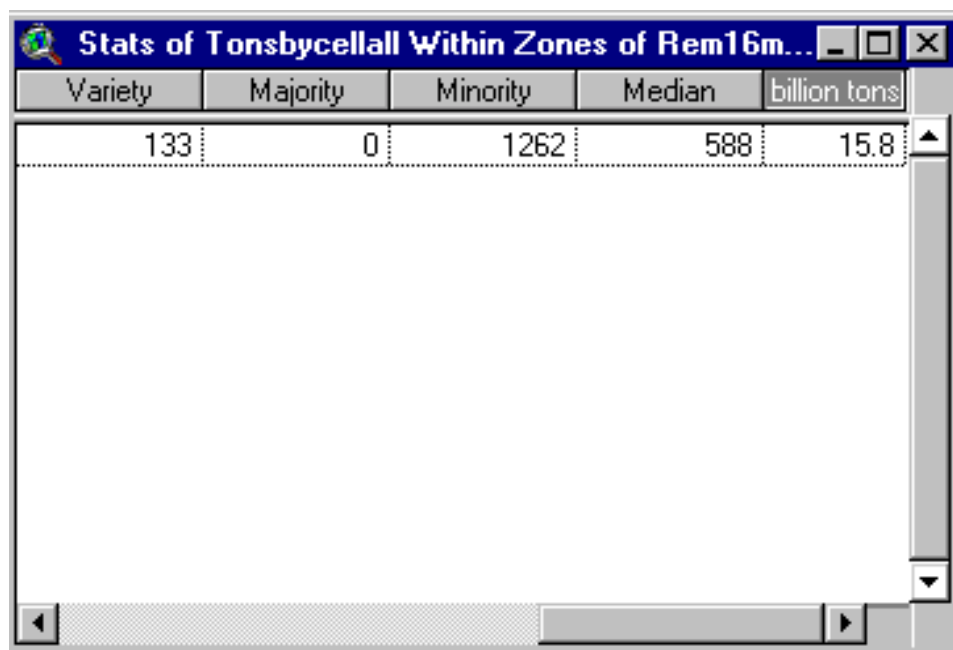
Save table in your project directory: c:\testuser\tonsall.

Next, we proceed with some calculations as a check on our assessment methods.

Make Rem16mcell active.

Under the Analysis Menu, click "Summarize Zones."

Proceed as above to estimate billion tons of coal:

Variety	Majority	Minority	Median	billion tons
133	0	1262	588	15.8

We have agreement. Some duplicate estimates are a good way to check your work.

Next, we estimate coal in the 50 foot barriers around mined out coal.

Add these themes to View1:

- Tonsbycell

- Rem16buf

- Rem16bufp12

- Safetybuf

In Analysis Properties, enter these settings:
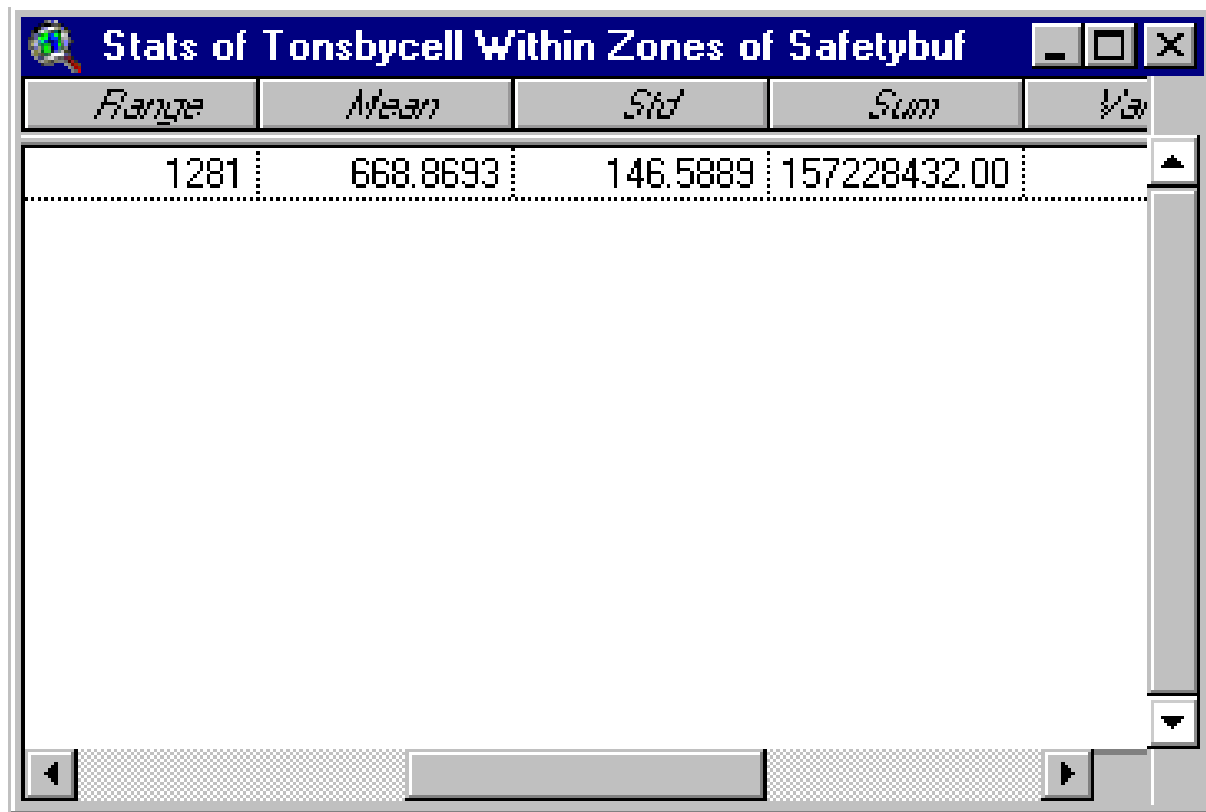
Make Safetybuf active.

Under the Analysis Menu, click "Summarize Zones" and select Tonsbycell as the summarizing theme.

Proceed (as above) to obtain the "Stats" table:

Range	Mean	Std	Sum	Va
1281	668.8693	146.5889	157228432.00	
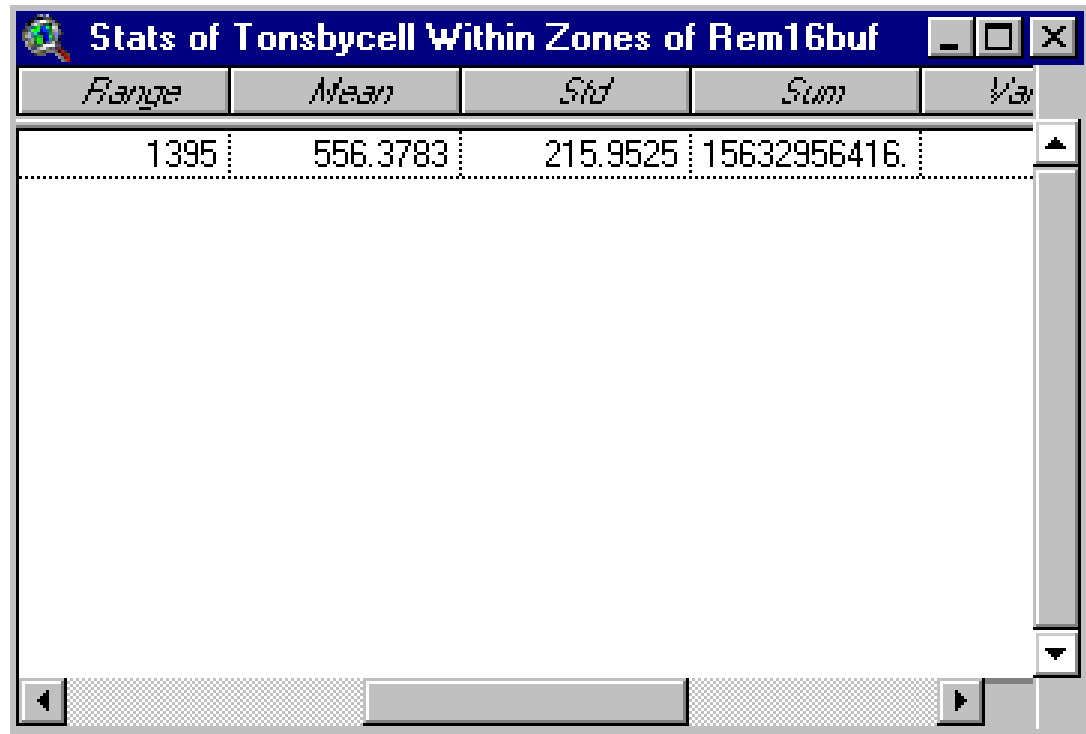
We estimate that 157.2 million tons (recorded in Sum column above) are in the 50 foot buffer around mined out areas abutting remaining coal.

With Tonsbycell as the summarizing theme, calculate coal tons in

       - Rem16buf &

       - Rem16bufp12

Make Rembuf16 active and run Summarize Zones:
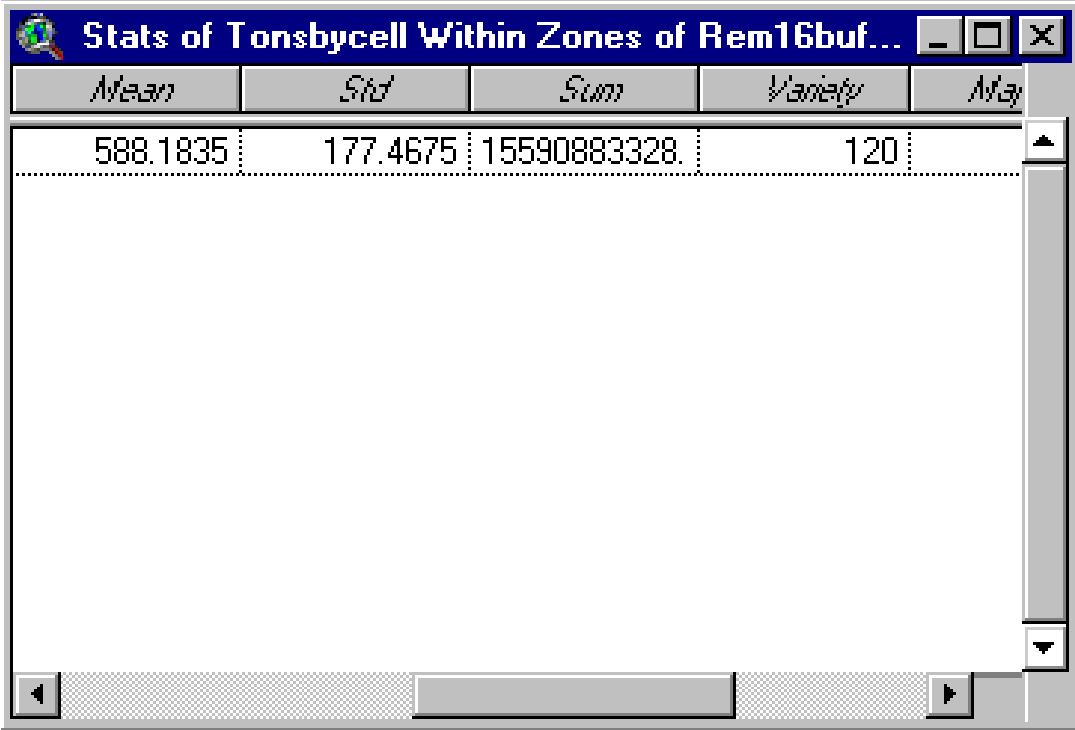
Range	Mean	Std	Sum	Va
1395	556.3783	215.9525	15632956416.	

From Stats of Rem16mcell we estimated total remaining coal as 15,790,184,448 billion tons.

As immediately above, we estimate remaining coal reduced by safety buffer as 15,632,956,416 billion tons.

The difference, 157,228,030 tons, is a check estimate of coal in the safety buffer. This 2nd estimate of coal in safety buffer agrees with the direct estimate made above.

Make Rem16bufp12 active and run Summarize Zones:

Mean	Std	Sum	Variety	Ma
588.1835	177.4675	15590883328.	120	

We subtract the tons in Rem16bufp12 (under Sum) from the tons in Rem16buf to obtain an estimate of tons with thickness less than 12 inches:

> 42.1 million tons

The tonnage in Rem16bufp12 is the remaining in-ground tonnage that is available for mining. This tonnage is estimated to be: 15.59 billion tons.

The amount of coal that could actually be mined will be less than this amount. There will be reductions due to set asides for protected features, set asides because of technical constraints to specific mining methods, and set asides because some coal is fragmented making its tonnage too small for economical operations.

We proceed now to estimate the amount of coal in protected areas. The other reductions are dealt with in subsequent chapters in this guide.

Estimate coal set aside by social and environmental restrictions

Add these themes (developed in Chapter 3) to View1:

      - Waterzero

      - Streamszero

      - Interstazero

      - Parkszero

      - Urbanareazero

      - Wellszero

      - Pipelineszero

      - Placesszero

In Analysis Properties enter these settings:

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent: Same As Rem16mcell

Left: -155677.503175   Top: 1970643.69375

Bottom: 1693107.69375   Right: 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size: Current Value

Cell Size: 16   m

Number of Rows: 17346

Number of Columns: 21718

Analysis Mask: Rem16bufp12

OK   Cancel

Hereafter, for many calculations, we use Rem16bufp12 as the Analysis Mask. Rem16bufp12 is remaining coal reduced by a 50 foot safety buffer and by coal whose thickness is less than 12 inches.

We have 8 restriction categories and buffers on restricted areas. Most of the buffers are applicable to <u>surface mining.</u> In some cases, e.g. parks and the buffer around parks of 300 feet, <u>underground</u> mining operations can come up to the park boundary and not violate Federal and State law as long as ancillary surface facilities (such as roads and ventilation systems) are not placed in the 300 foot buffer. Thus, in the case of <u>underground mining</u>, we will assume that the coal up to the park boundary is available for mining. In fact, <u>underground</u> mining could extend under park land and not violate legal protections. But, we do not try to take into account any such practices. Analysis to do so would be much more detailed than the regional assessments performed by the USGS.

To sum up on this point: in this chapter we make some overall estimates of the coal in various restriction categories. Here we estimate tonnage for the coal in the restricted area and in its buffer. Later, in the chapters on specific mining technology, we will adjust our method to account for constraints as they might apply to specific mining methods.

Another issue is overlap. Restriction coverages overlap other restriction coverages. To avoid double counting, we estimate restricted coal across all restriction coverages, counting the overlapped coal only once. Then, to estimate restricted coal for each restriction category, we estimate coal in the area for each individual restriction category. We follow a hierarchy of restriction categories in order to avoid double-counting coal restricted by more than one category.

Estimate the coal in all restriction coverages (including appropriate buffers) by unioning the coverages. This estimate will count restricted coal only one time in the cases where there is overlap. Use the 0-1 coverages. The 0-1 coverages treat the 0 cells as false and the 1 cells as true.

In map calculator, evaluate this request:
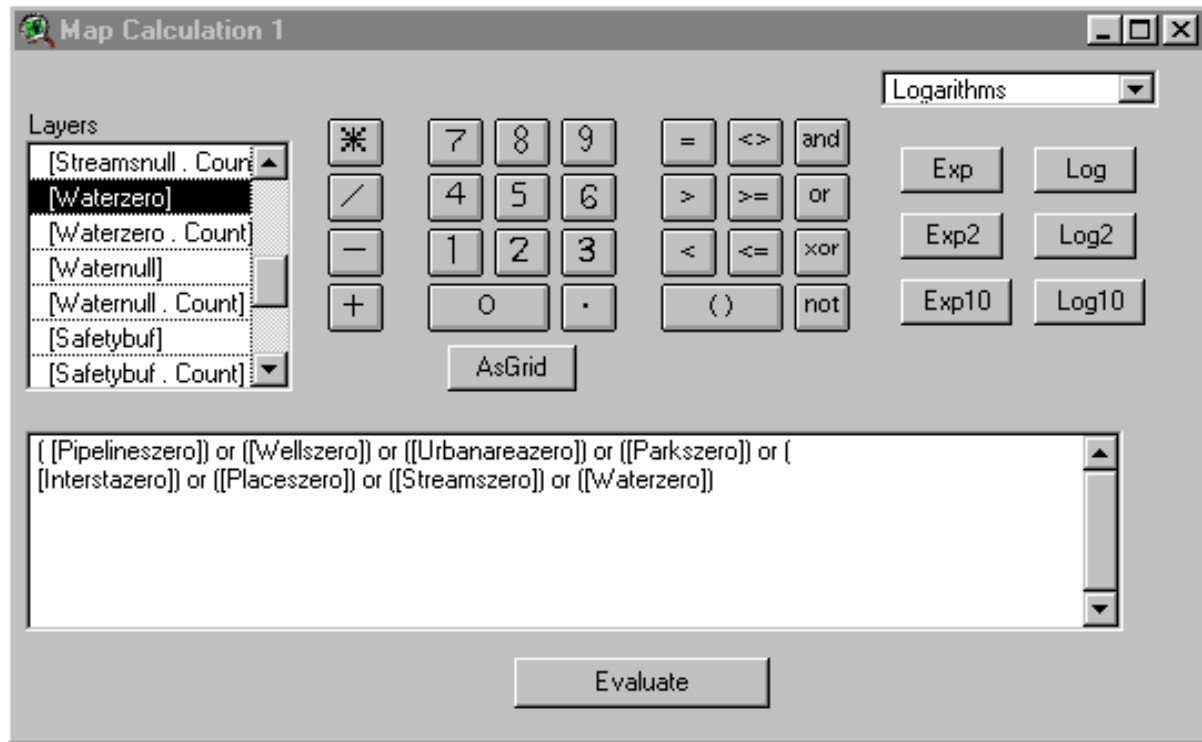
Name the new grid: Union8restr.

Toggle on its display.

Record its **Source** name in the list of coverages to be retained and renamed.
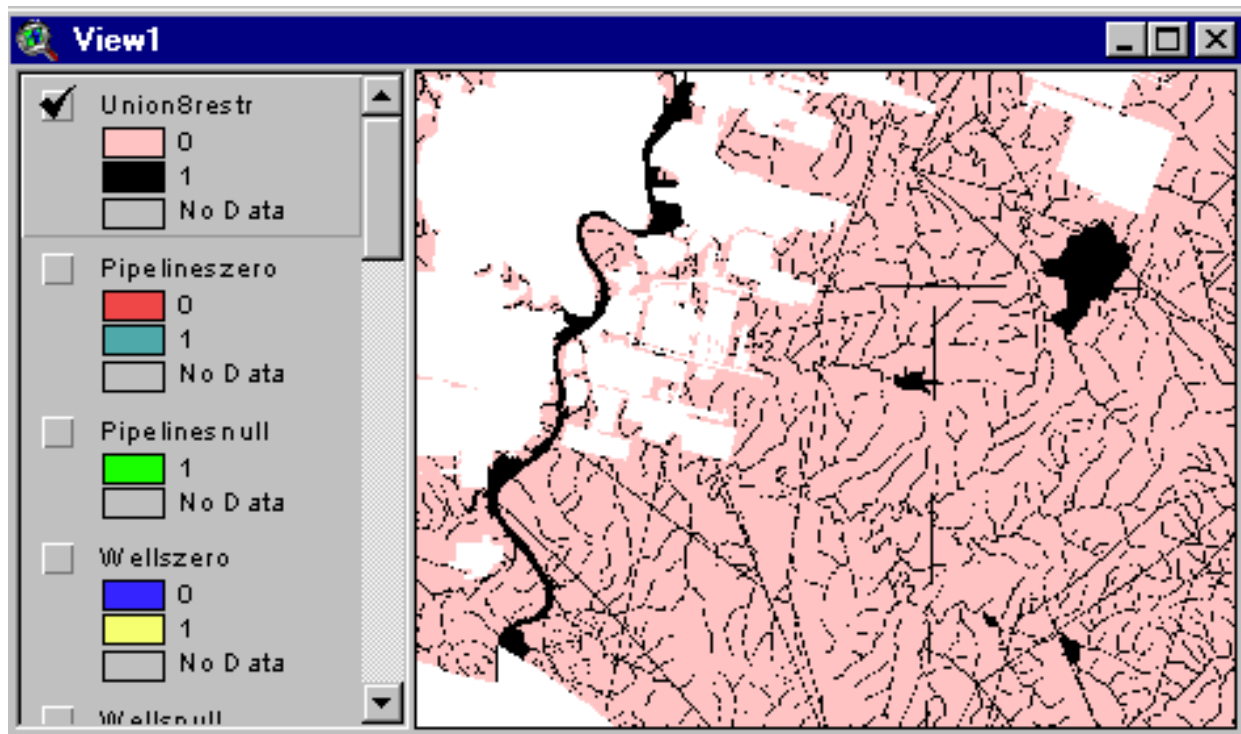
Make Union8restr8 active.

Under the Analysis Menu, click "Summarize Zones."

Use tonsbycell as the summarizing theme:

Range	Mean	Std	Sum	Va
1282	586.4880	178.8133	13325275136.	
1130	598.3574	168.8093	2265608704.0	

5 - 22

The second line (value=1) of the Stats table, contains the estimate of tonnage in all restricted categories absent double counting: 2.265 billion tons.

Estimate Coal Tonnage in Each Restriction Category

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
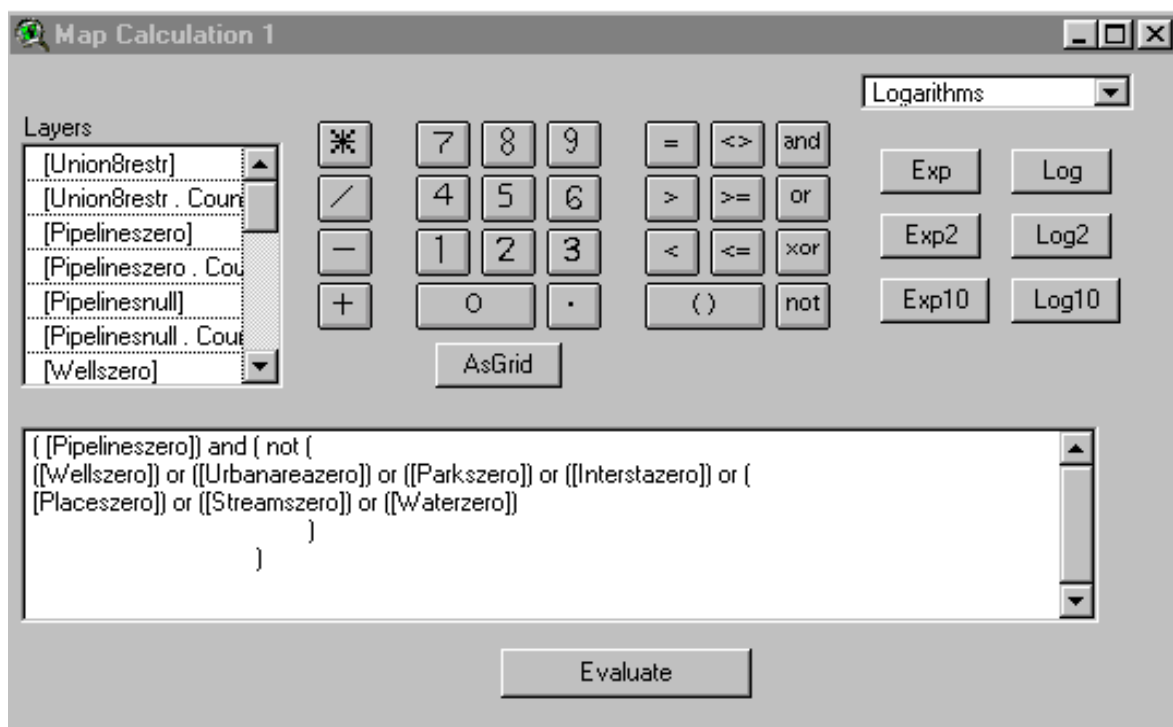
- Make Map Calculation 1 active.

- Under the Analysis Menu, click "Summarize Zones."

- Make tonsbycell the summarizing theme.

- Record the tonnage from the Stats table.

- Save the Stats table.

- Repeat for each restriction coverage.

We are following this Hierarchy:

Pipelines
Wells
UrbanArea
Parks
Interstate Highways
Populated Places
Streams
Water Bodies

Pipelines have lowest priority. The expression in Map Calculator for Pipelines includes only the area with pipelines exclusive of overlap with any of the other restriction coverages.

To make the estimate for Wells (the next coverage in our list), we:

Make Map Calculation 1 active

Under Theme Menu, click "Edit Theme Expression"

In Map Calculator, replace Pipelines with Wells and eliminate Wells from the "not" list:

Proceed in like manner to analyze each restriction coverage.

In each case, we replace the left side (of "and") coverage with the coverage next on our hierarchy.

Also, we remove the coverage being processed from the "not" expression.

Don't forget to save the table from "Summarize Zones."
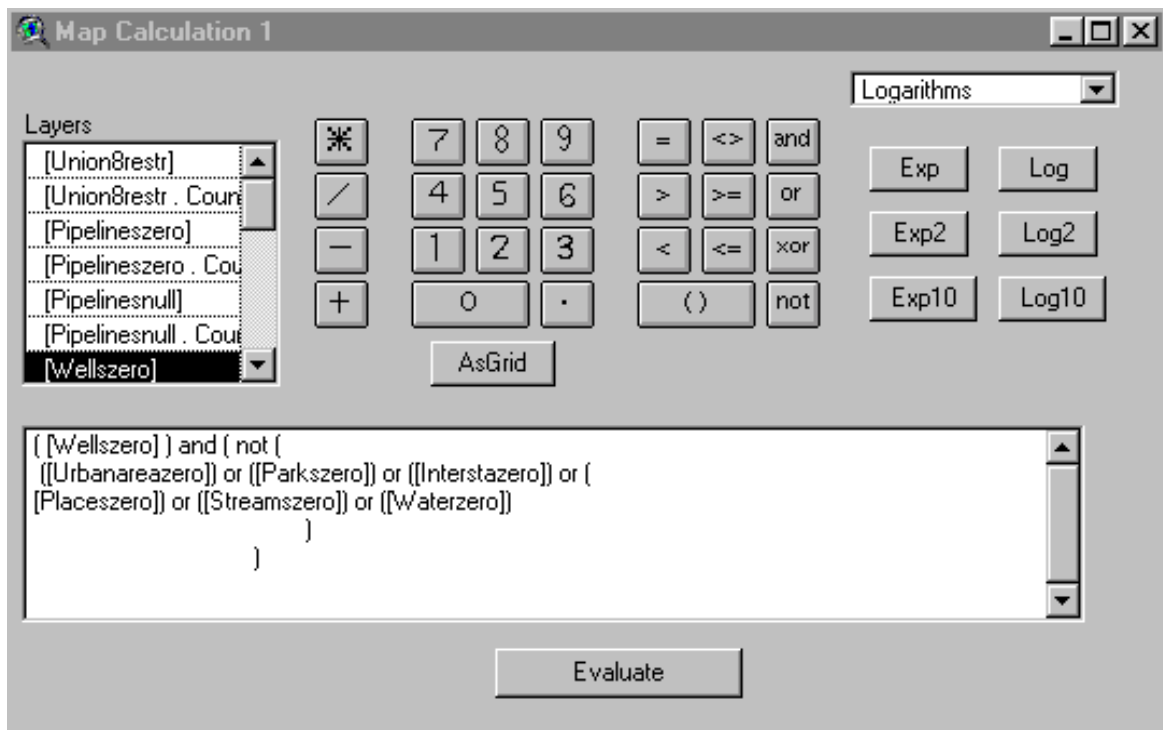
Estimates which are mutually exclusive are:

Pipelines	324,512,800
Wells	110,873,784
UrbanArea	91,123,616
Parks	91,576,648
Interstate Highways	73,989,264
Populated Places	171,027,968
Streams	1,320,278,400
Water Bodies	82,226,152
Total	2,265,608,632

The Total agrees with the composite exclusive estimate made above.

Important Point: For any hierarchy of coverages, we can use the above weeding process to estimate mutually exclusive tonnage in each restriction coverage.

Additional steps to complete coal availability are:

- Remove all restriction coverages from Rem16bufp12.

- Reclassify Thk16 into classes consistent with Circular 891.

- Reclassify Ob16 into classes consistent with Circular 891.

- Add drillhole locations.

- Find distance from drillholes.

- Reclassify Distance into classes consistent with Circular 891.

- Set up a hierarchy of categories of Reliability, Thickness, & Overburden.

- In Map Calculator, evaluate the area for each category and assign a unique cell value to each coverage.

- Sum all coverages.

- Summarize using Tonsbycell.

Due to constraints on data access, we are not able to add the drillhole locations for the Pittsburgh.

However, all of these additional steps are illustrated in Appendix A, attached to this guide. The data used in Appendix A is sample data.

This guide, including Appendix A, provides a comprehensive illustration of how to use Spatial Analyst to obtain estimates for a Coal Availability study as applied to a large region made up of 100's of quadrangles.

A well-thought out hierarchy or framework, as illustrated in Appendix A, is a procedure to generate the estimates. Beyond the GIS analysis, there is a need to place the estimates into a table with proper labels and title.

Visual Basic (VB) can be used to produce a final table. All of the estimates from the GIS will appear in a *.dbf table according to a fixed format. Code can be written in VB to read that table and drop the estimates into an Excel spreadsheet which populates a final table with appropriate labels.

Rename grids to more convenient names

Save the current project.

Start a new project.

Open a new view.

Toggle on the Spatial analyst Extension.

Under File Menu, click "Manage Data Sources" to access the Source Manager:
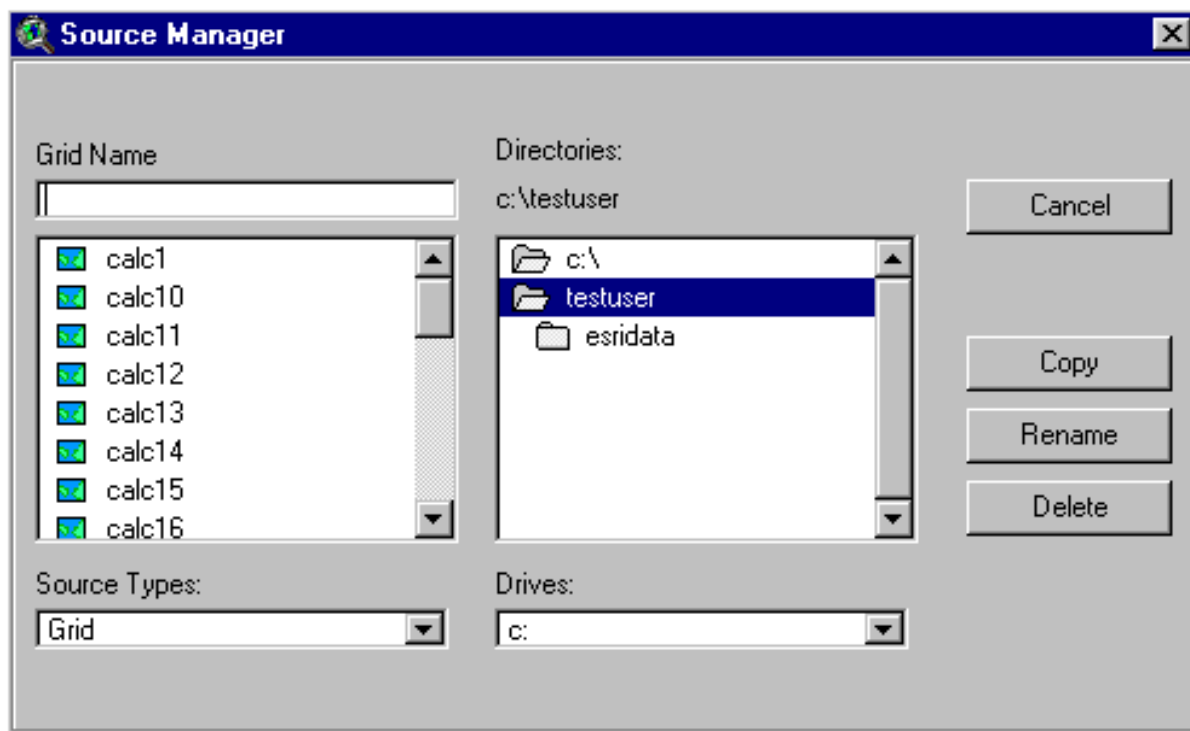
Then rename the initial grids with the following names:

(You would, of course, use your project path when you rename the grids.)

Coverage	Original Names	New Name
Coal Thickness, Original		
Pittsburgh	c:\testuser\calc1	c:\testuser\thk16all
Tons by Cell, Original		
Pittsburgh	c:\testuser\calc2	c:\testuser\tonsbycellall
Union of 8 Restriction		
Coverages	c:\testuser\calc3	c:\testuser\union8restr

Congratulations you have finished **Chapter 5!!!!**

Chapter 6.

COAL AVAILABILITY BY MINING TECHNOLOGY
SURFACE MINING

Purpose: In this Chapter, we estimate coal available for prospective mining by surface mining methods and by thickness within the surface mining method.

Overview: We estimate the amount of coal available for strip contour and small area surface mines.   Coal can be surface mined when its stripping ratio is equal to or less than 20 to 1 and when the surface slope is equal to or less than 32 degrees. We apply both of these criteria to determine the extent of prospective surface mineable coal.

Mining costs are affected by coal thickness. Generally, thicker coal has a lower cost per ton compared to thin coal. When mine costing is applied to the assessed coal, we use different configurations that vary according both to mining method and coal thickness. To have the correct breakouts, our assessment in this chapter separates out the coal according to the various categories of mining method and coal thickness.

Then criteria to define coal resource blocks are applied. These criteria require that the area have enough coal overall to support a minimum-size mine and when small coal blocks are separated, the separation distance be no greater than about 2 miles. We apply these criteria to delineate mineable coal resource blocks.

The coal in restricted areas (including buffers) is then removed from the coal in each of the coal resource blocks.

We test to see if the total coal in the coal resource blocks (reduced by the coal in restricted areas) is adequate for the smallest mine size. If not, the coal is removed from consideration but is included in later analysis to form coal blocks for underground mining.

Open a new ArcView project.

Add a View Window. Do not add any themes.

Under the File Menu, set Working Directory to your project path.

Open View Properties and enter these settings:

Under the File Menu

Click Extensions

Toggle on Geoprocessing

Toggle on Spatial Analyst

Apply technical restrictions for slope and stripping ratio.

In View1, add
> ob16,
> Rem16mcell,
> Rem16bufp12,
> surfslope,
> Thk16,
> tonsbycell, and
> union8restr:
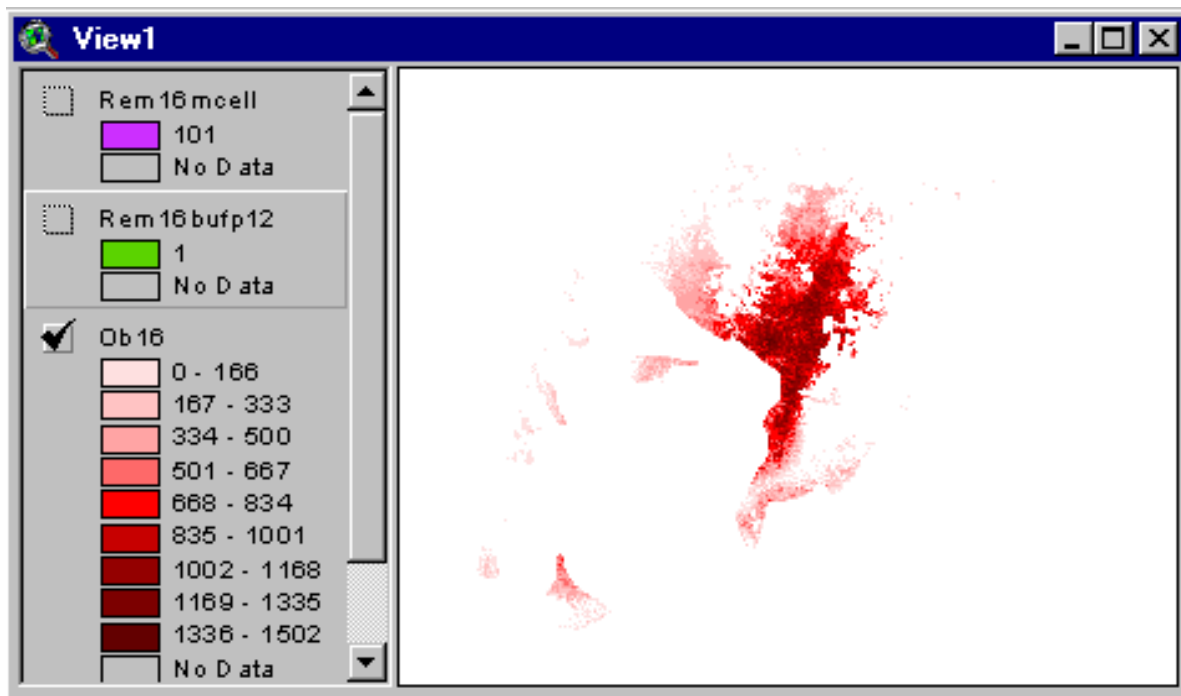
Recall, Rem16bufp12 is remaining coal reduced by a 50 foot safety buffer and by the area where coal has a thickness less than 12 inches.

In Analysis Properties, enter these settings:

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent   Same As Rem16mcell

Left -155677.503175   Top 1970643.69375

Bottom 1693107.69375   Right 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size As Specified Below

Cell Size 16   m

Number of Rows 17346

Number of Columns 21718

Analysis Mask Rem16bufp12

OK   Cancel

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
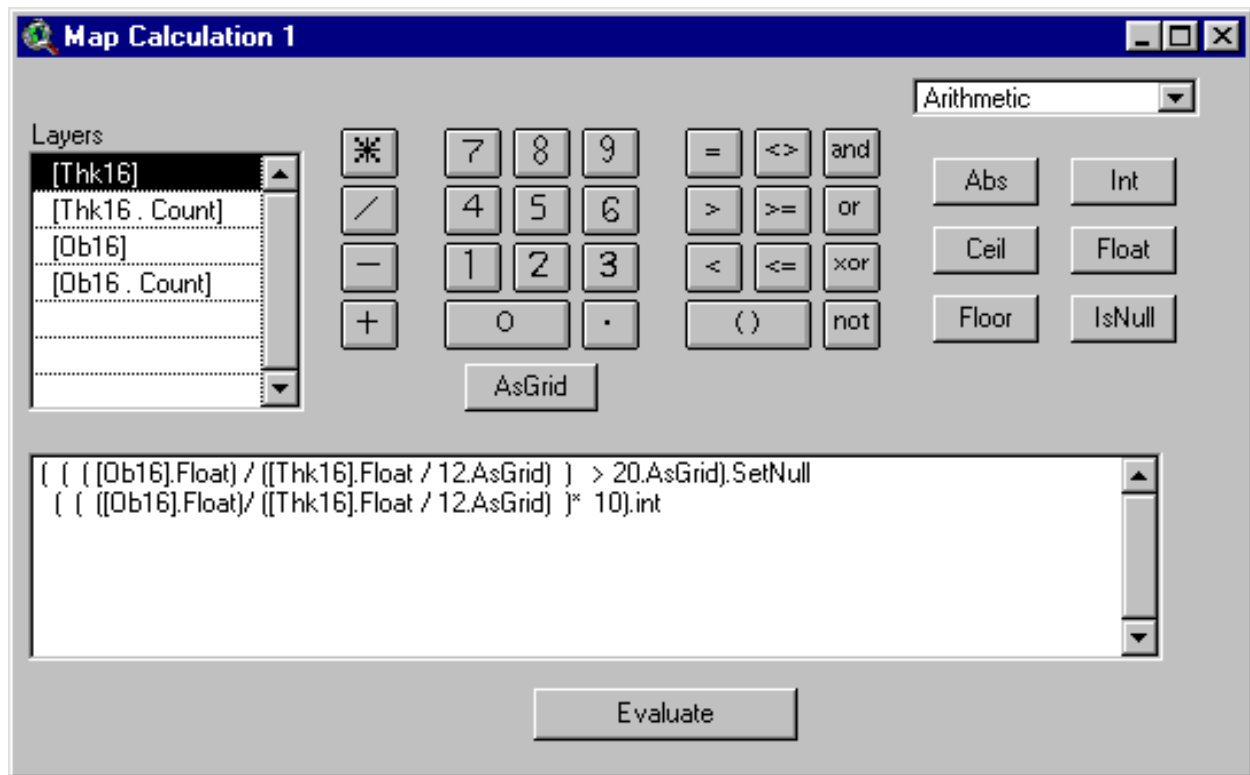
Make Map Calculation 1 active.

Open Theme Properties, and change the Theme Name to: stripratio*10.

Record the default path and name that appear in the "**Source**" window, e.g., c:\testuser\calc1.

You are now beginning to build a running list of default names that you will change later to names that are more recognizable and convenient.

As before, it is important to record the default names as you move through the processing to efficiently track project data.

We now determine coal that meets technical criteria for surface mining.

This is coal with a stripping ratio equal to or less than 20 to 1, and surface slope equal to or less than 32 degrees

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
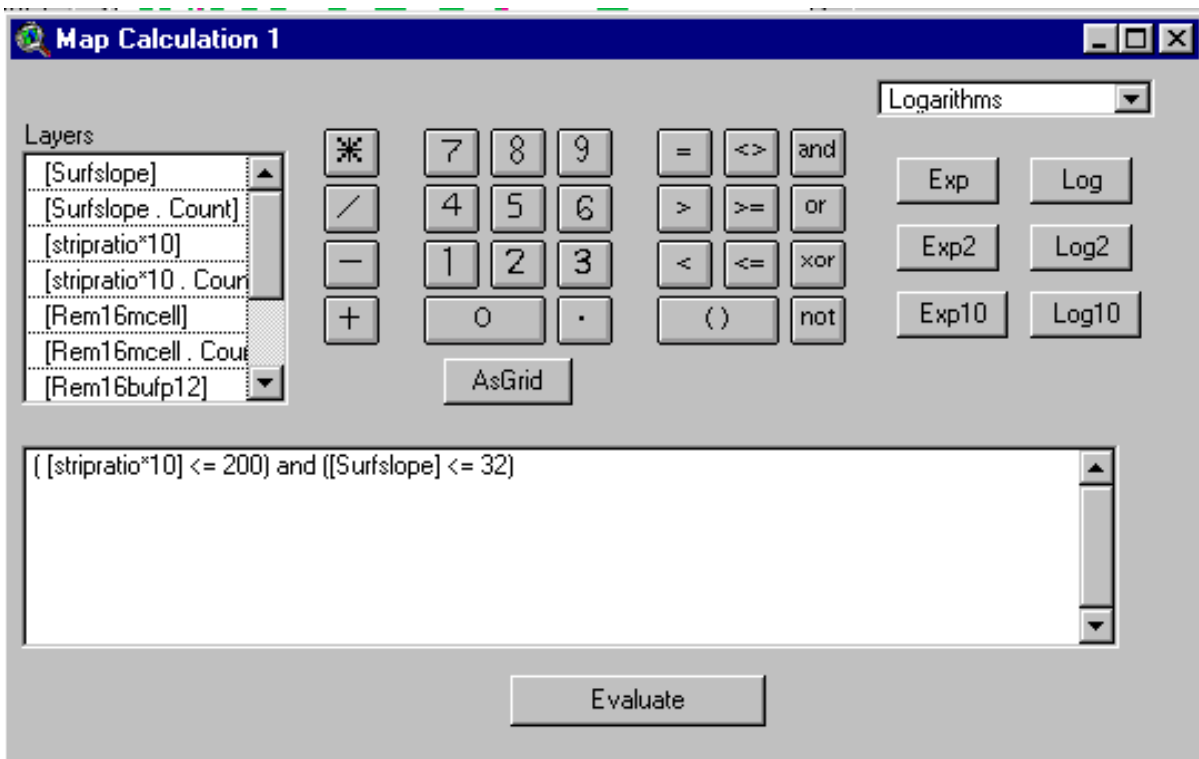
Name the new grid: surf01.

Record its **Source** on your list of coverages to retain and rename.

Determine Surface Mineable Coal by Thickness Category

Before assessing coal for minimum economic size, we need to break out the prospective surface mineable coal into thickness categories.

Why?: Because we want to know within thickness categories, whether there is enough coal for viable mining operations.

We consider the following breakouts which mimic the breakouts in COALVAL:

<u>Mining Method</u>   <u>Coal Thickness</u>

Contour Strip (CS)   12 -36 inches
Contour Strip (CS)   > 36   Inches

We proceed now to break Surf01 into the two thickness categories.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
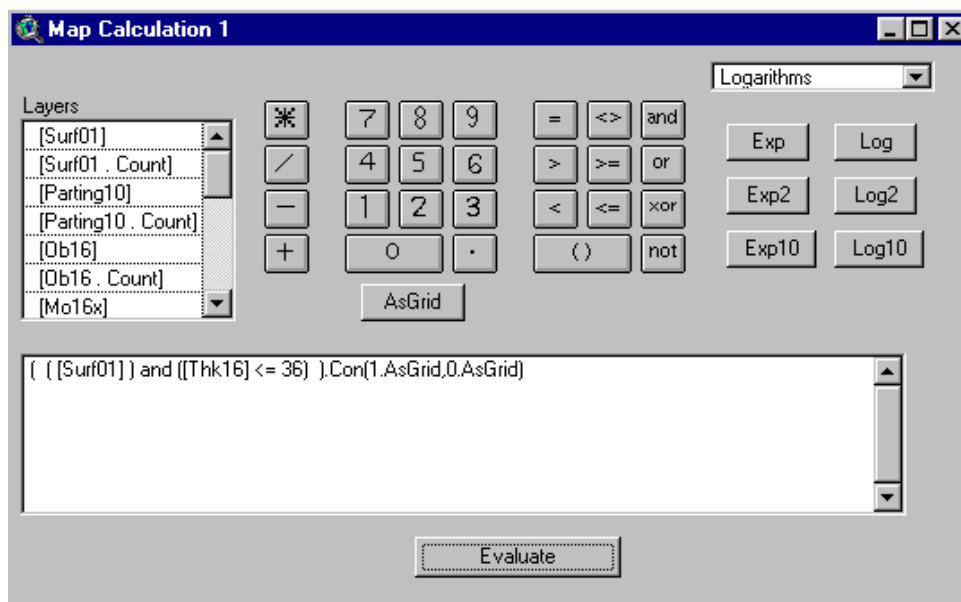
The new grid has default name: Map Calculation 1.

In Theme Properties, rename Map Calculation 1 to: surf01le36.

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Make surf01le36 active.

In the Legend Editor, change the polygon symbol for the cells with 0 value to transparent:

Legend Editor

Theme: surf01le36

Legend Type: Unique Value

Load...
Save...
Default

Values Field: Value

Symbol	Value	Label	Count
	0	0	2115482
	1	1	234181
		No Data	

Color Schemes: Bountiful Harvest

Advanced... Statistics... Undo Apply
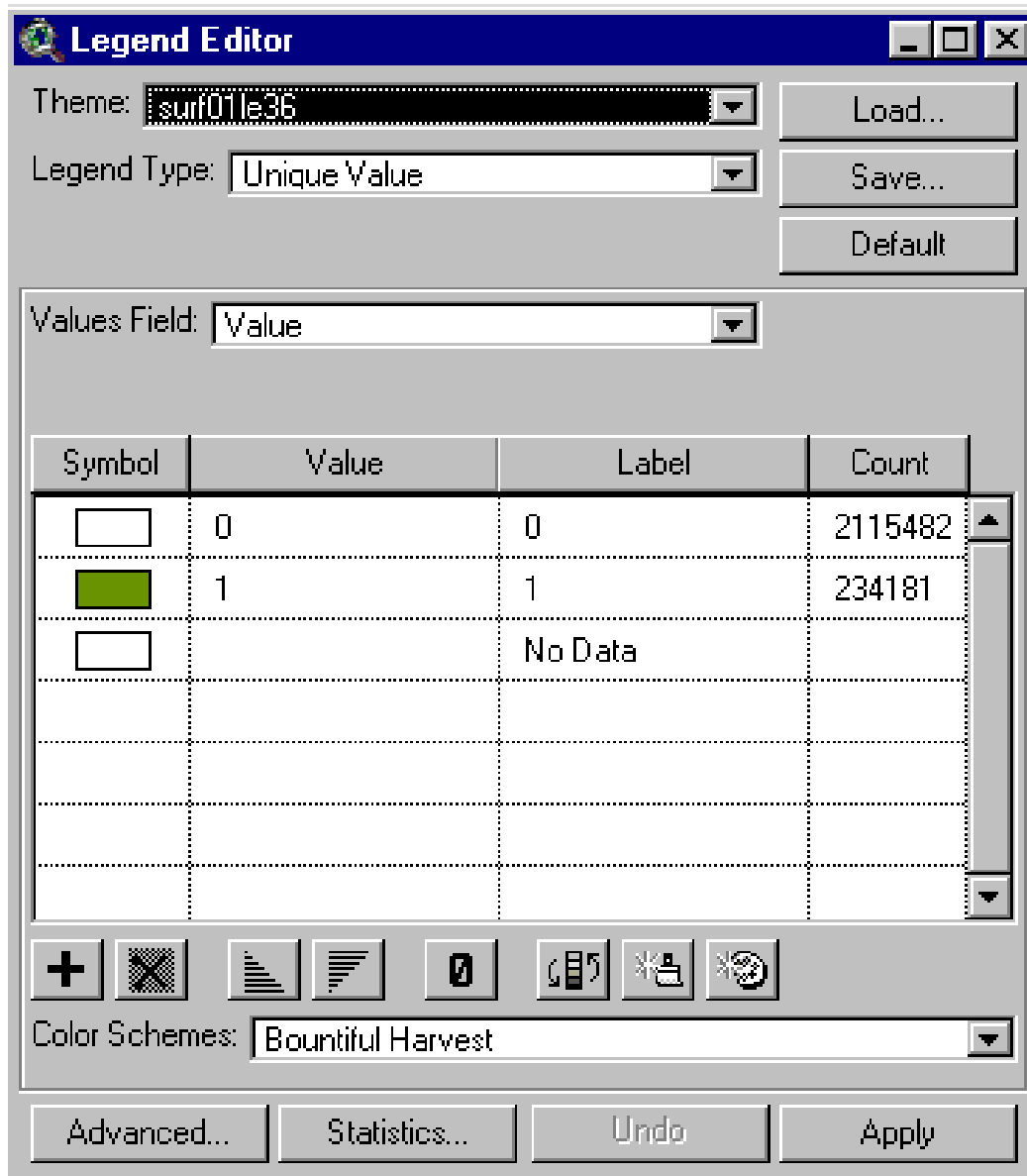
Next, we turn the 0 cells in surf01le36 to null to obtain a coverage of coal that meets technical criteria for surface mining and has thickness less than or equal to 36 inches.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
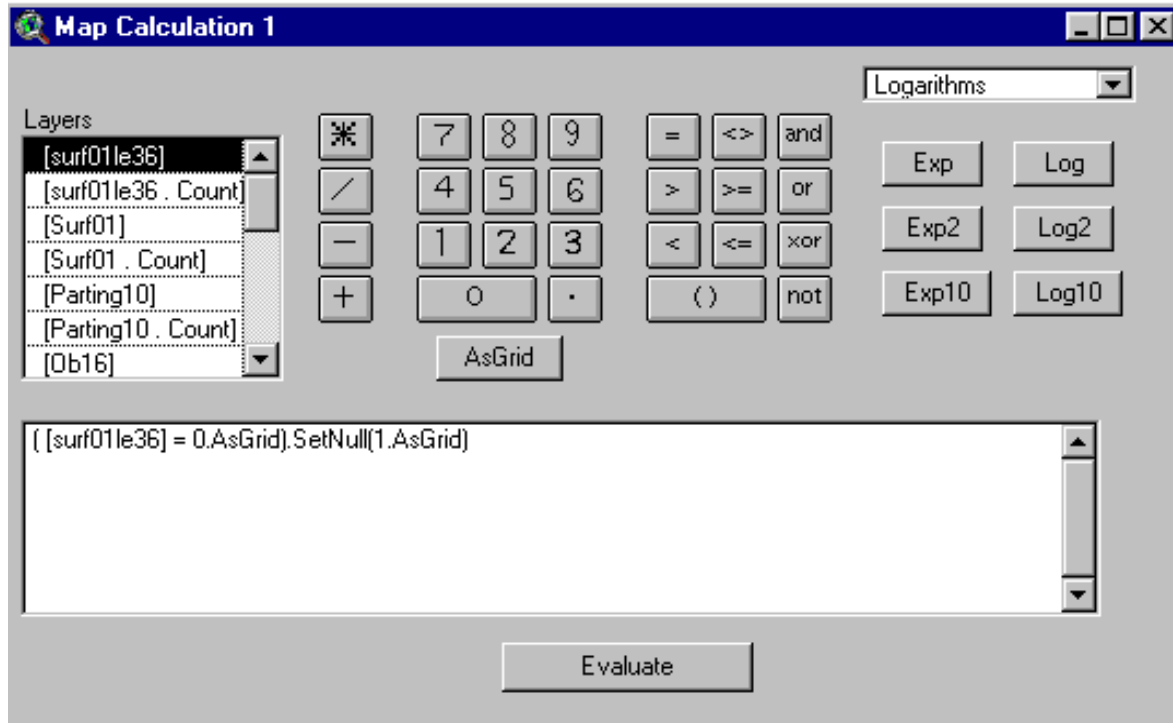
Name the new grid: surfle36null.

Record its **source** on the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Toggle on the display for surfle36null and zoom to area with strippable coal:
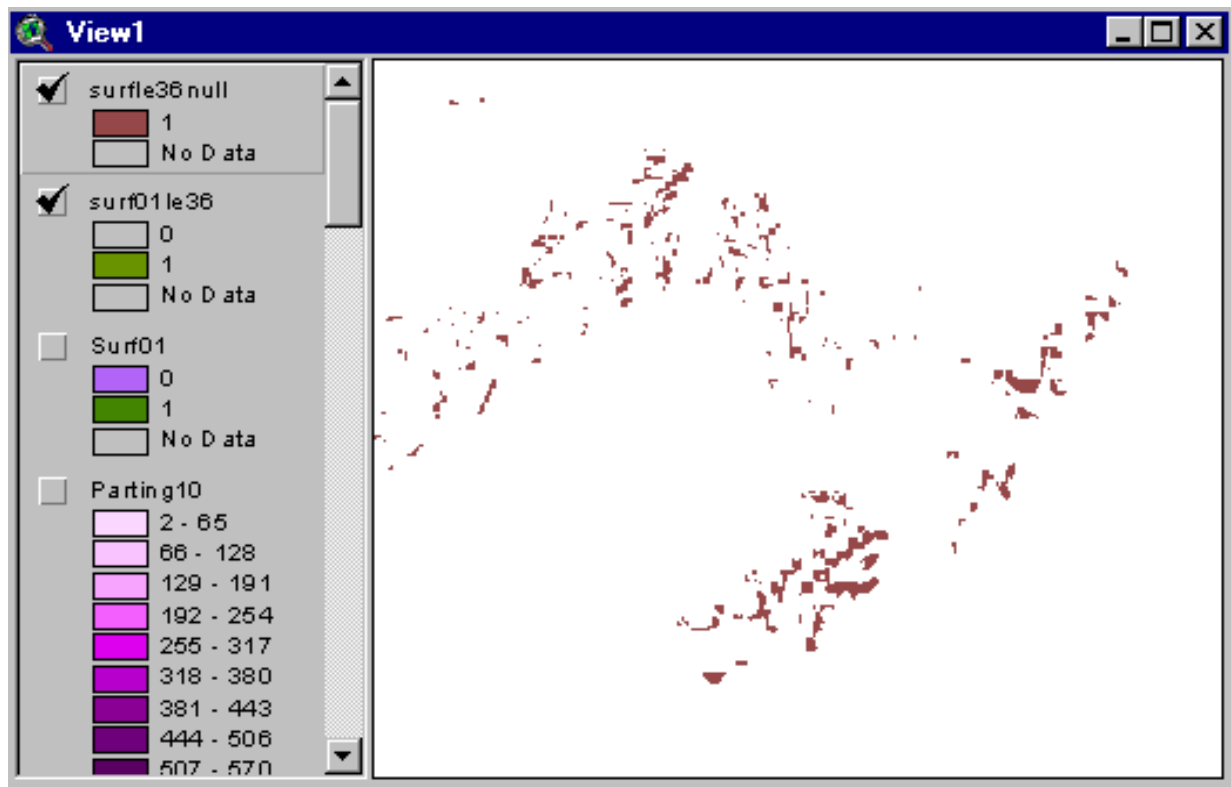
Add Restriction Coverages and Remove Coal in Restricted Areas

Next, we add restriction coverages and pull restricted areas out of surfle36null.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
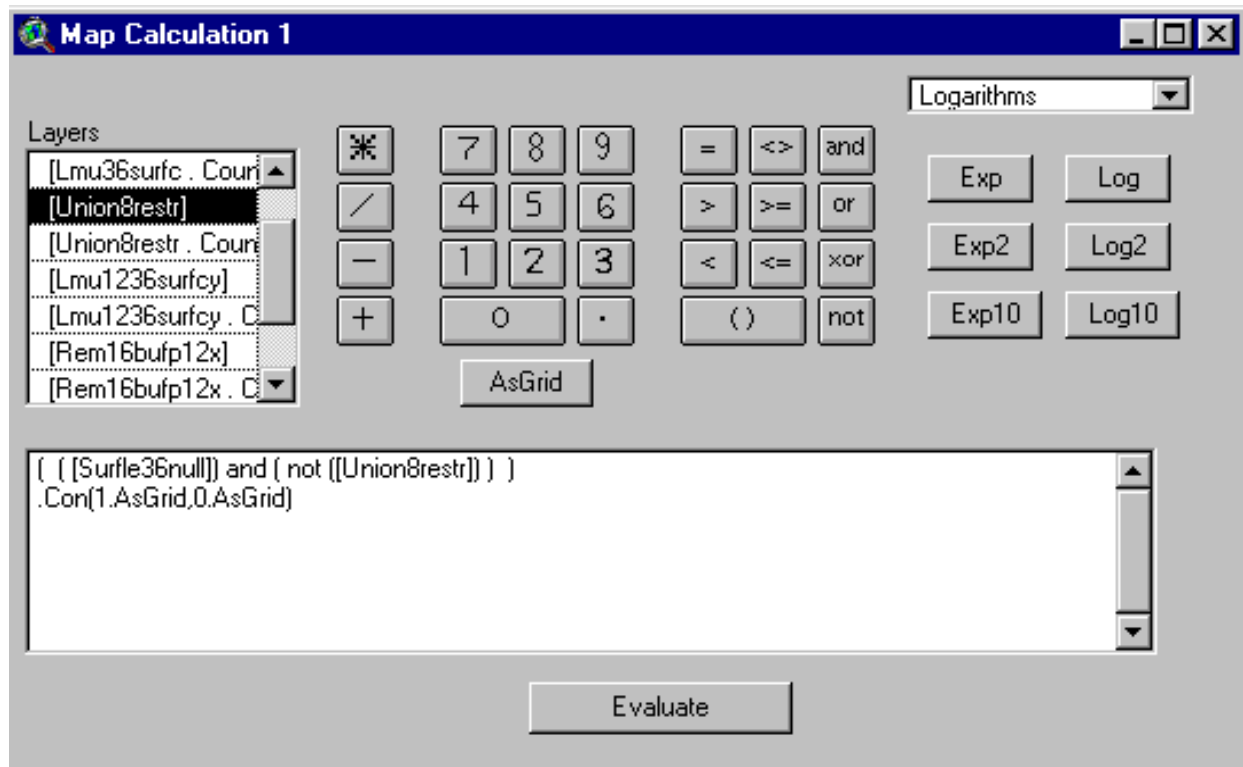
Rename the new grid: surfle36net.

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Next, we turn the 0 cells in surfle36net to null to narrow the coverage to cells with surface mineable coal and thickness less than or equal to 36 inches.

In map calculator, evaluate this request:
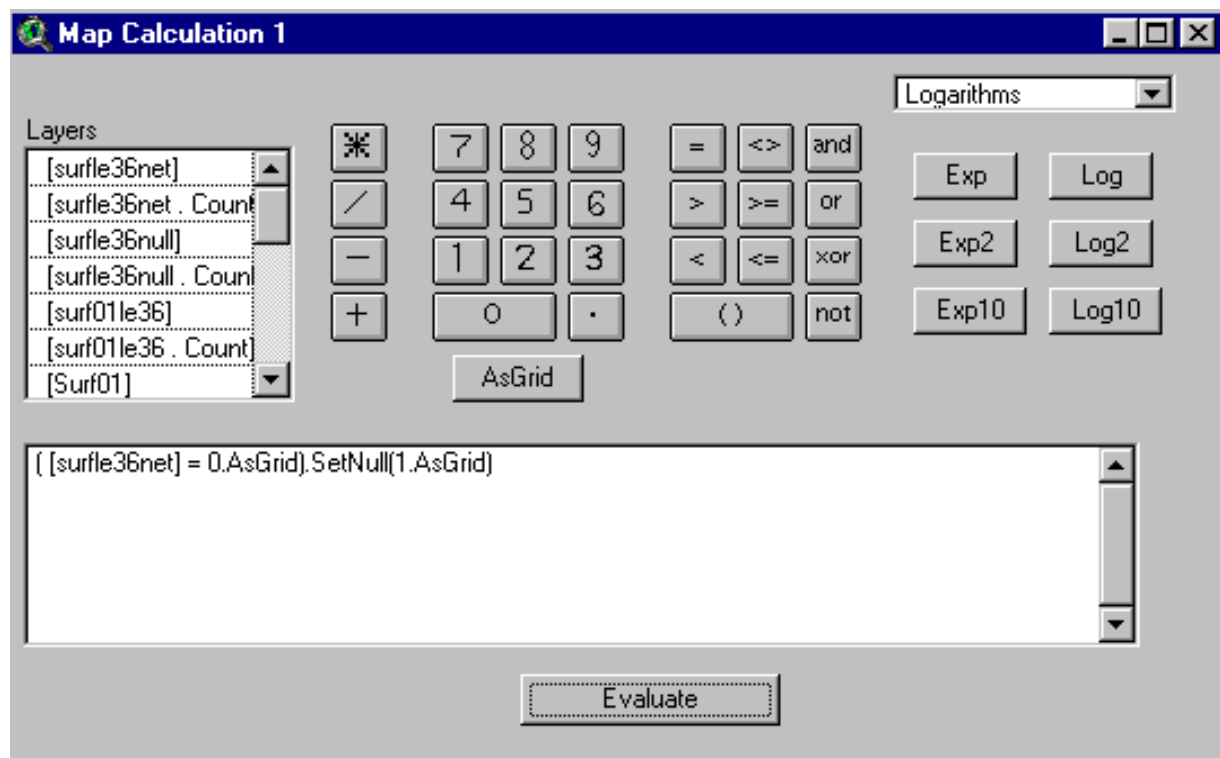
Rename the new grid: surfle36netx.

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Toggle on the display for surfle36netx and zoom to the south central area where you see coal.
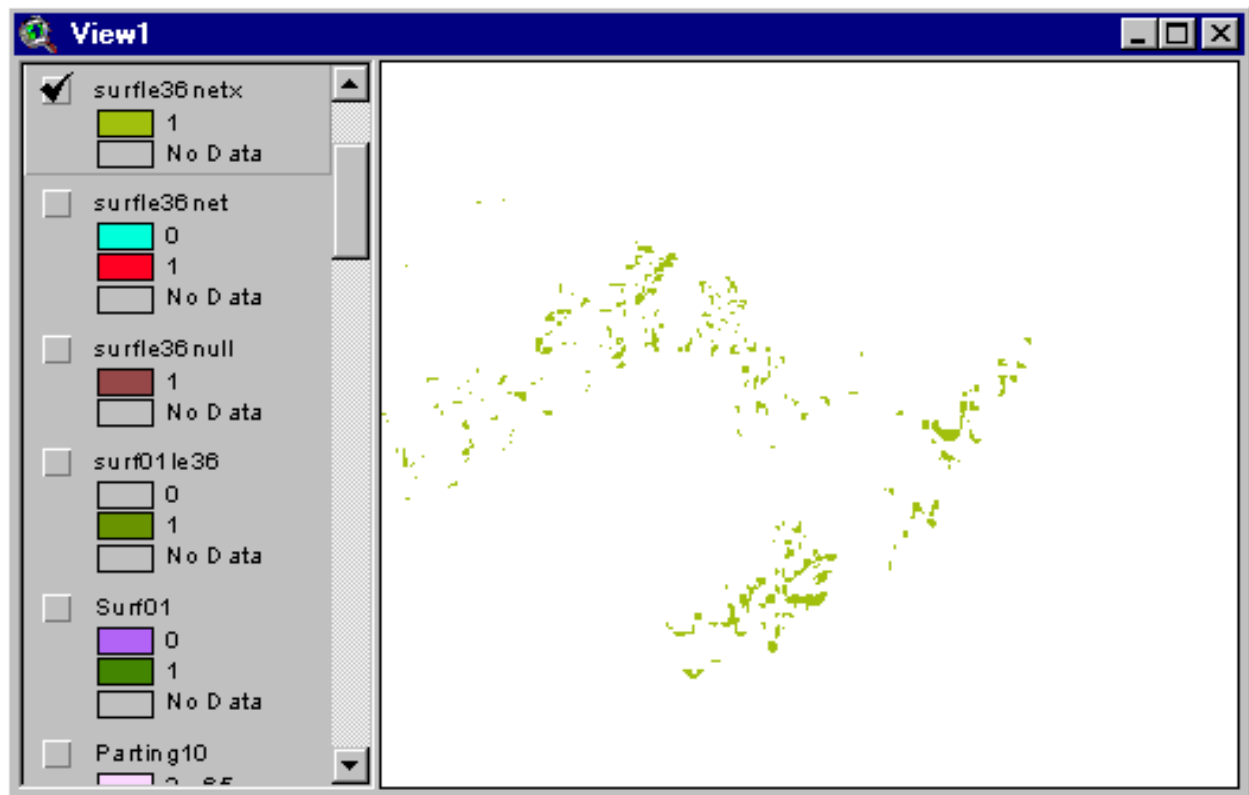
Convert Cells with Available Coal to Regions of Contiguous Coal

To help determine whether coal tonnage is large enough for a minimum sized mine, we will run RegionGroup on Surf1e36netx.

RegionGroup will assign unique region numbers to all cells that are contiguous.

Using the identify tool we can click on blocks and see the number of cells in the block.

Note this is the cell count for the # of cells **after** the restricted areas are pulled out.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:

Map Calculation 1

Logarithms

Layers
[surfle36netx]
[surfle36netx . Cour
[surfle36net]
[surfle36net . Coun
[surfle36null]
[surfle36null . Coun
[surf01le36]

AsGrid

([surfle36netx]).RegionGroup(false,true,nil)

Evaluate
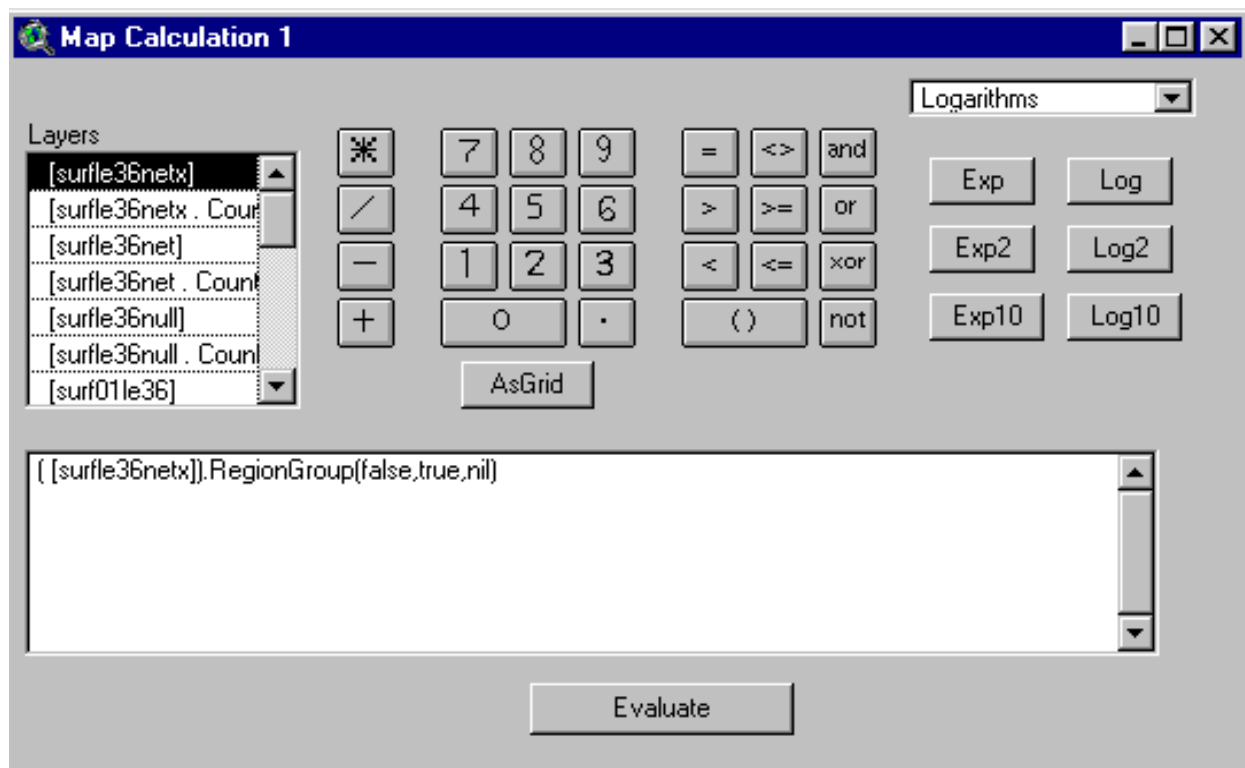
Name the new grid: surfle36reg.

Record its **source** on the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Add a Scale Bar, 2 Miles in Length

Make View1 Active.

Set scale to 24000.

Under Draw Tool, select straight line tool.

Draw a line with length = 2 miles.

In the Symbol window, set its Size to 4.

Zoom to previous extent:
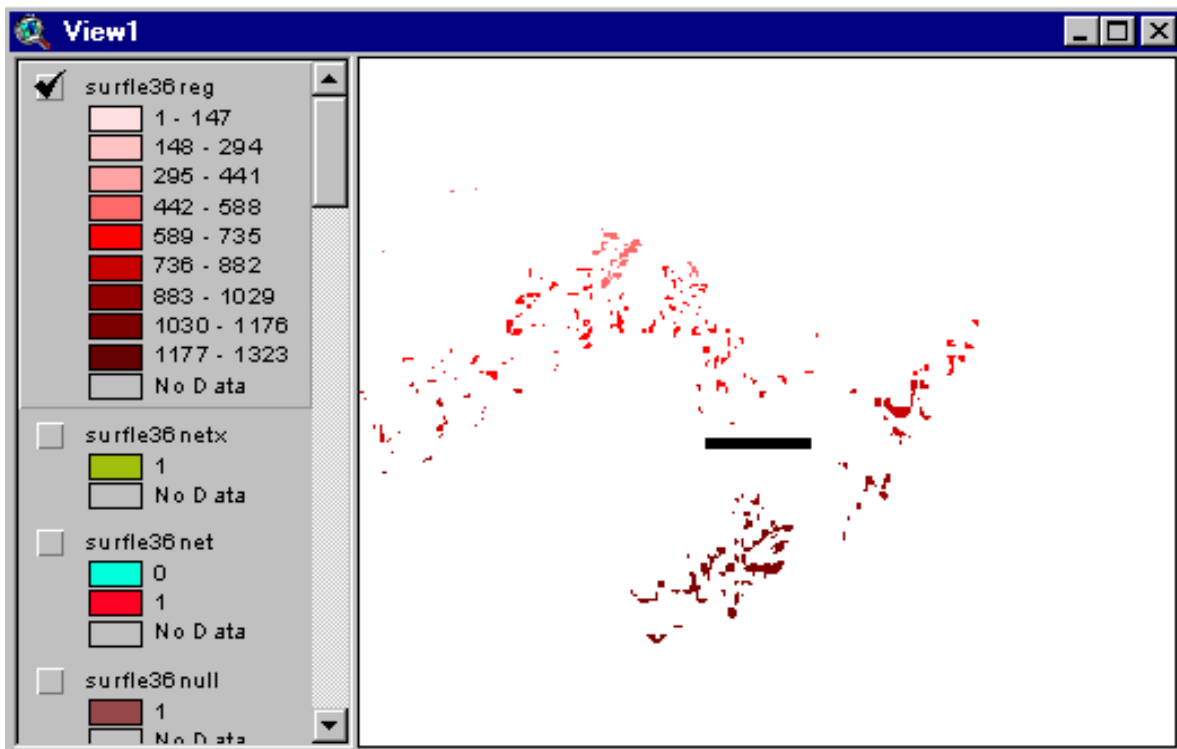
Convert to Polygon Shapefile

Next, we convert **surfle36reg** to a polygon using AsPolygonFTab. This request allows us to turn off weeding so that the polygons in the coverage look like the original grids.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
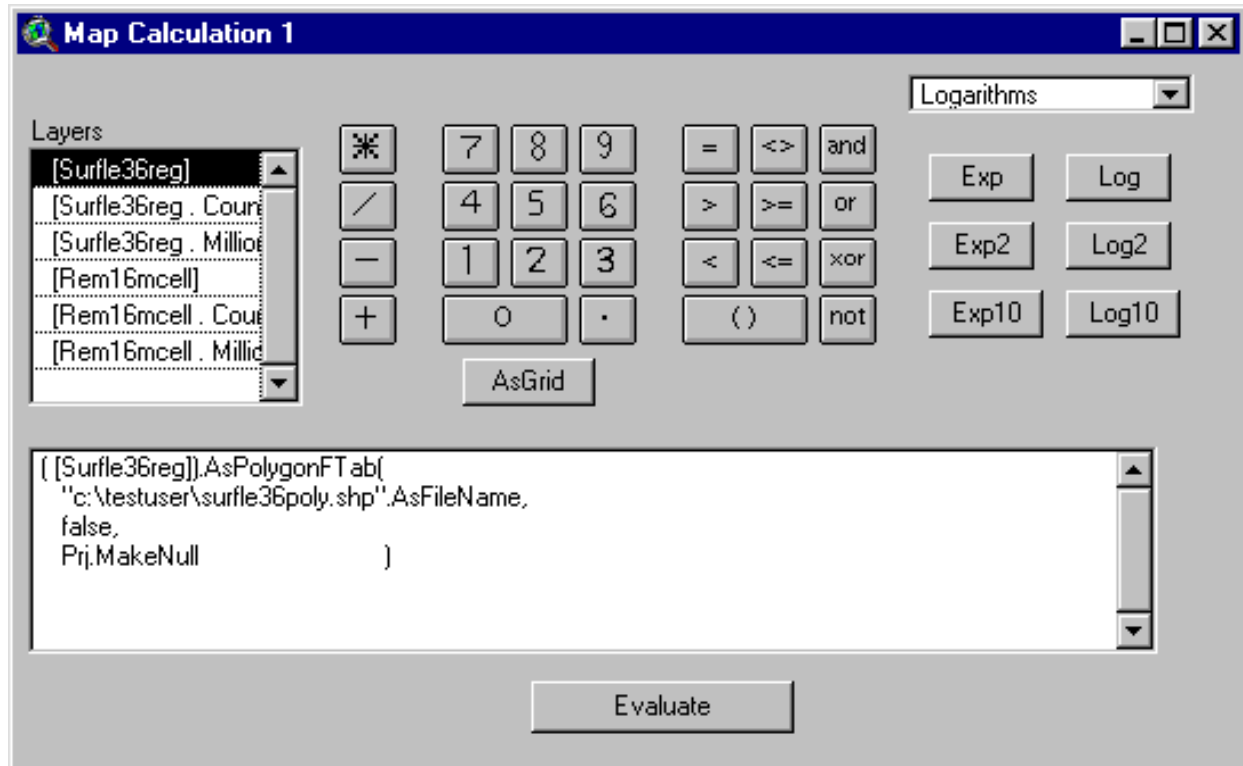
Ignore any error messages.

Add surfle36poly to View1.

Toggle on its display.

Zoom and check to see that it replicates the grid coverage, surfle36reg.

We are developing a method that will be applied to other thickness categories.

To this point, we have prepared the layers we need to begin assessing whether there is sufficient coal for viable mining operations:

Step 1: We identified the cells with surface mineable coal with thickness less than or equal to 36 inches.

> **surf01le36**

Step 2: We assigned all the zero cells a null value so that only coal is identified in the coverage.

> **surfle36null**

Step 3: We removed the coal that fell in restricted areas.

> **surfle36net**

Step 4: We assigned all the zero cells a null value so that available coal only is identified in the coverage.

> **surfle36netx**

Step 5: We converted cells with available coal into regions.

> **surfle36reg**

Step 6: We converted the region cell coverage into a polygon coverage. We want to draw a polygon around clustered coal when it appears that there might be enough coal to support a viable mining operation. We need the polygon coverage in order to select the coal in our bounding polygon.

> **surfle36poly**

Step 7: We have added a 2-mile measure line to View1. Coal that is grouped into mineable coal resource blocks should be (approximately) no more than 2 miles from other coal in the unit. We use the measure line as a comparison distance for visually determining whether the coal included in a coal resource block has separation distances no more than 2 miles.

Identify Areas with Clustered Coal

The next step is visually inspect **surfle36poly** to identify areas with clustered coal. In each area, we draw a polygon around the coal, pulling in coal that has separation distances no greater than 2 miles approximately.

There is a cluster of coal in the east central part of **surfle36poly.**

Zoom to the east central part of **surfle36poly**:
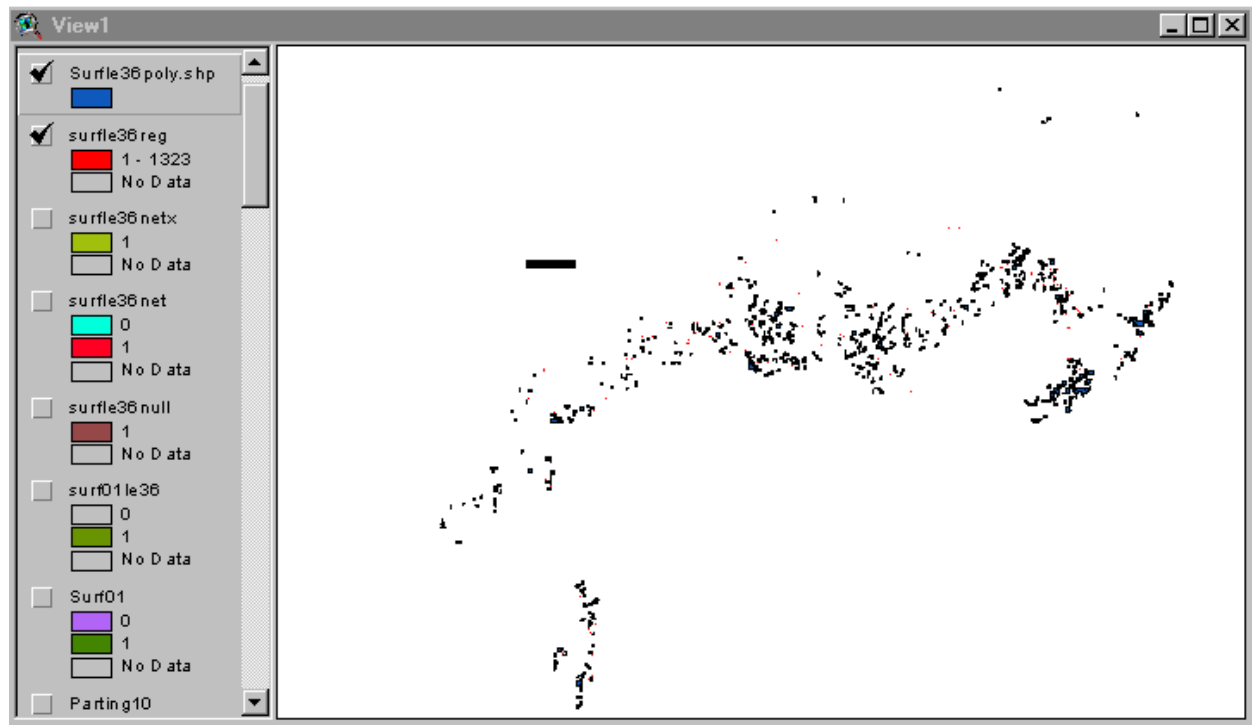
In the Legend Editor, reclassify Ob16 into 2 classes:

        0 - 3 of overburden as a filled polygon

        3 feet and above as a **<u>hollow polygon</u>**

This classification of Ob16 helps us identify the approximate cropline of the coal.

When coal outcrops, then strip contour mining is the appropriate mining method.

When the remaining coal is interior to the original cropline, then small area surface mining is the appropriate mining method.

Place Ob16 above Surfle36poly.shp in the Table of Contents.

Toggle on the display for Ob16.

Visually check to see if the remaining coal in the cluster is outcropping or is interior to the original outcrop.

[Second time through, CS>36, flip to p. 6-49 and follow instructions to delineate blocks suitable for small area surface mines.]

In addition to our inspection of Ob16 we also can use the remaining grid, Rem16mcell, to investigate whether the coal comes to the cropline or is back from the cropline:
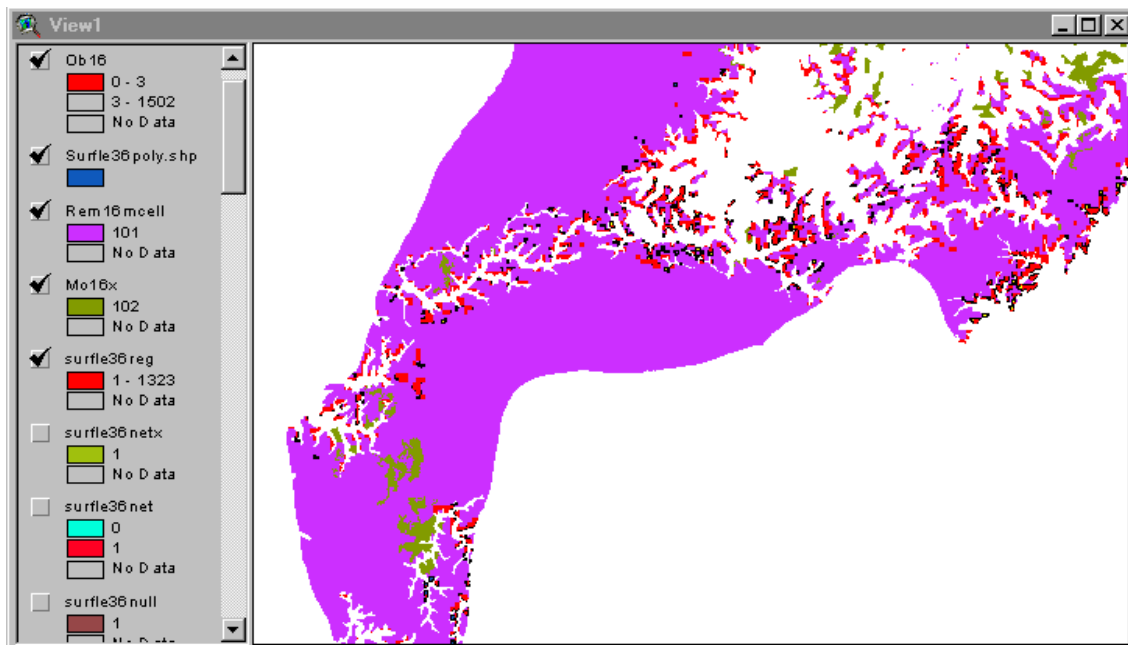
Draw a Polygon Around the Clustered Coal

With the polygon draw tool, draw a polygon around the clustered coal:
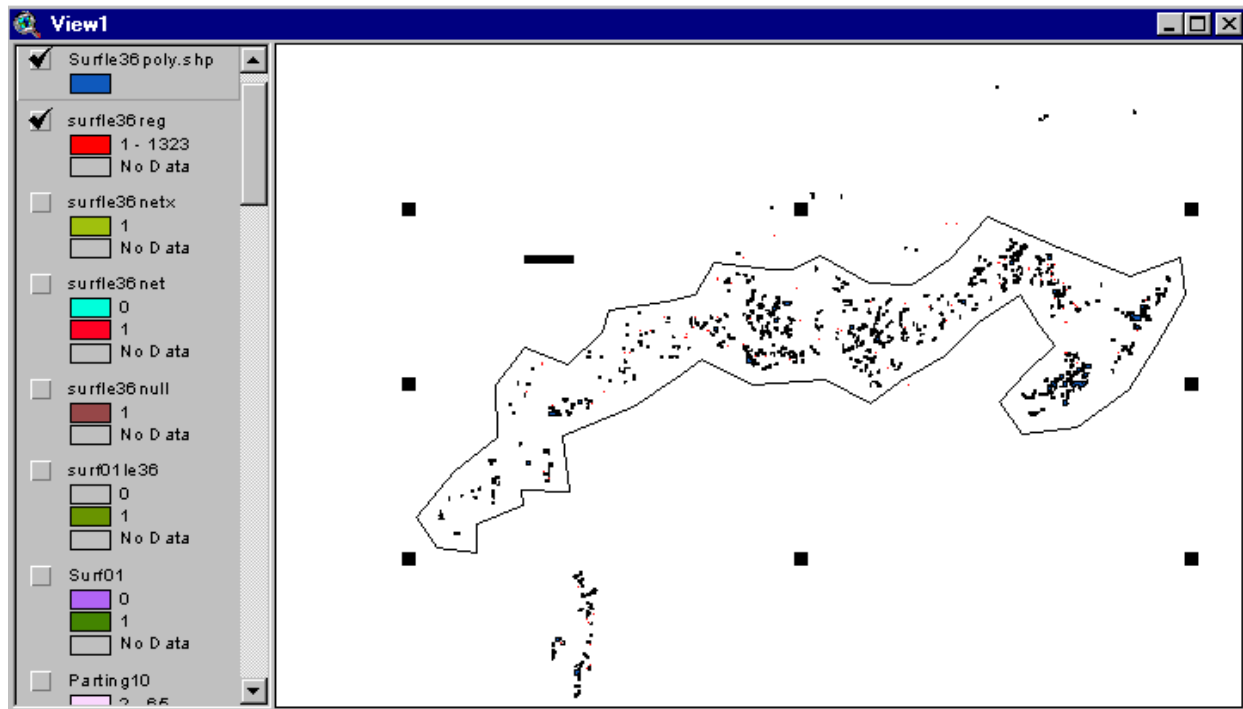
Next, we calculate the amount of coal in the potential mining block (sometimes referred to as a logical mining unit or lmu).

Make **surfle36poly.shp** active.

Click the "Select Features Using Graphic" button

Under Theme Menu, click "Convert to Grid"

Name the new grid Lmutest1.

Select "Gridcode" as the field for cell values.

Select "No" when queried to join feature attributes to grid.

Add grid to View1.

Next, we establish some benchmarks for determining whether there is enough coal in the LMU.

The following table contains estimates of the minimum sized mining operation, developed from data in COALVAL:

Small Area Surface Mine

Thickness (Inches)	Pure Coal/Yr (tons)	Recovery Rate (%)	Mine Life (Yrs)	Coal for Minimum-Sized Mine (tons)
>12 (SR <20/1)	1,333,942	0.93	5	7,171,732

Contour Strip Mine

Thickness	Pure Coal/Yr	Recovery Rate	Mine Life	Coal for Minimum-Sized Mine
12 - 36	711,976	0.78	5	4,563,949
>36	921,744	0.93	5	4,955,611

Mining costs are scale dependent.

Larger mines have lower costs per ton.

Mine size for each mining technology depends upon coal thickness, as indicated in the table.

Currently, we are analyzing LMU's in the 12 to 36 inch thickness range, for contour strip mining.

We need to know the approximate number of cells required for a minimum size mine.

To obtain a ballpark estimate, we assume further that the coal is 30 inches thick (set by the 12 to 36 inch range we are analyzing).

Earlier, we derived a factor for converting 16 meter cells into tons of coal: 9.493
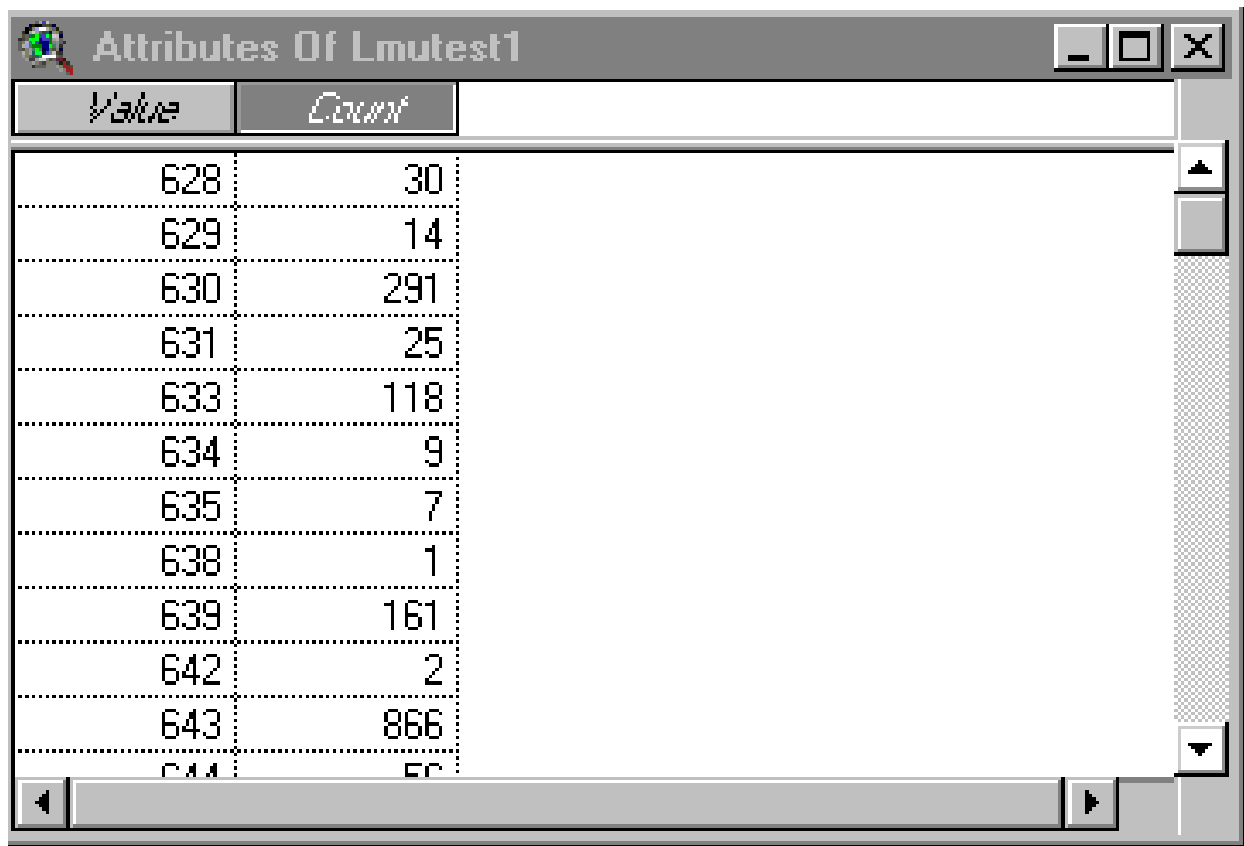
Thus for a minimum size mine we need this number of cells (ballpark):

$$4,563,949/(30*9.5) = 16,014$$

Make Lmutest1 active.

Open the table for Lmutest1.

Make the Count Field Active:

Value	Count
628	30
629	14
630	291
631	25
633	118
634	9
635	7
638	1
639	161
642	2
643	866

Under the Field Menu, click "Statistics"

Examine the number for "Sum" to see whether it exceeds 16,014 (total cell count)

Statistics for Count field

```
Sum: 62319
Count: 718
Mean: 87
Maximum: 1850
Minimum: 1
Range: 1849
Variance: 31652
Standard Deviation: 178
```

OK
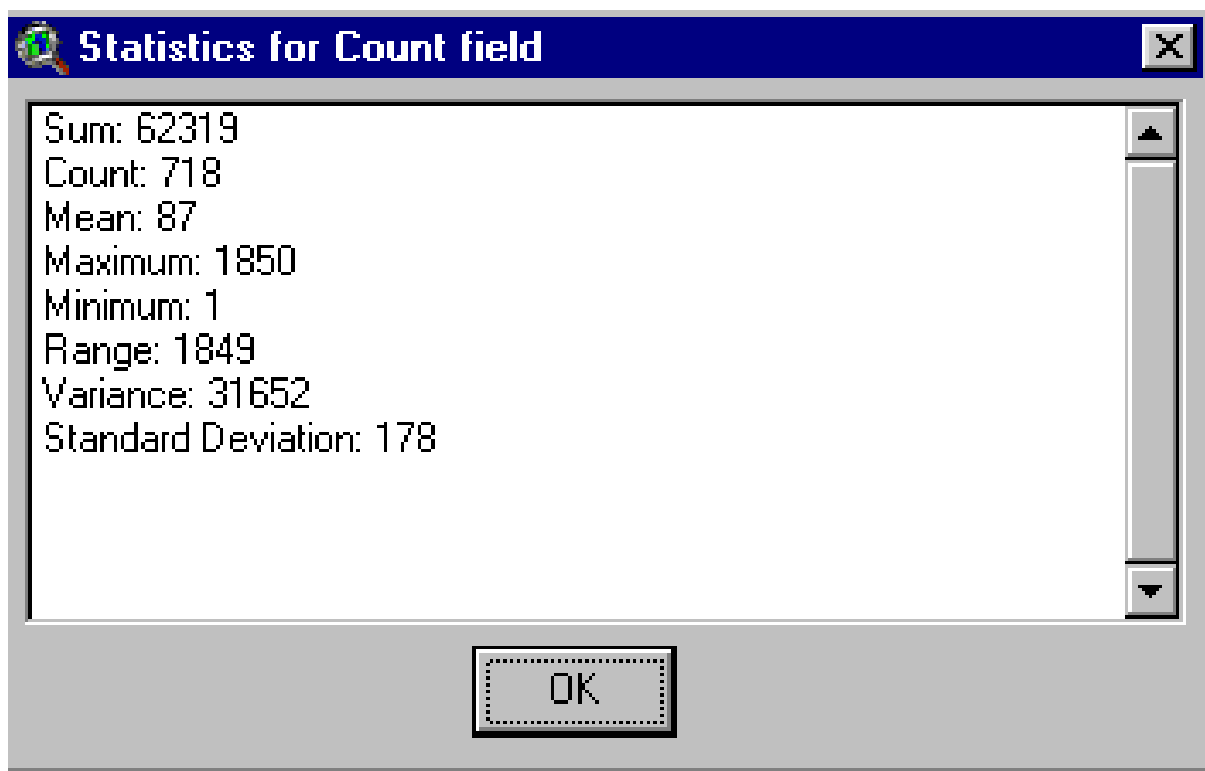
The sum, 62,319, exceeds 16,014 by a lot. The area designated as an LMU has enough coal to support several mining operations.

Later, we create a new theme with the LMU boundaries.

The existing boundary is a graphic not a shapefile.

After all LMU boundaries are added, we will run a script to convert the graphic boundaries to a shapefile.

We proceed now to download and add a script to convert a graphic to a shapefile.

Add Button to Convert Graphic to Shapefile

Log onto: www.esri.com.

Click "ArcScripts" (on left side).

Choose "ArcView3.x" under Primary Software.

Download script: Graphics.Graphics2Shapes.

Unzip it and Save it to: C:\Esri\AV_GIS30\ARCVIEW\Samples\scripts.

The script is named: view.gra2shp.ave.

We now add a script to our project.

In Project Manager, click the "Script Icon."

Click "New."

Under the Script Menu, click "Load Text File."

Scroll to C:\Esri\AV_GIS30\ARCVIEW\Samples\scripts.

Select: view.gra2shp.ave.

Click the Compile Button (looks like check mark).

Make Project Manager Window active.

Under the Project Menu, click "Customize."

> Type: View

> Category: Buttons

In middle of Customize Dialog Window, move slider all the way to right.

Click in the window above the slider, just to the left of the last button.

Then click "New", to the left and below the slider.

In the bottom half of the Customize Dialog Window, we set properties for our new button.

Double Click "Click" (the first property in the table in the bottom half of the window).

In the window that opens, Scroll to "Script1."

Click "OK."

Double Click "Help."

In the window that opens, type:

   Converts Selected Graphics to Shapefile

   Click "OK"

Double Click "Icon."

In the Window that opens, click the "G."

Click "OK."
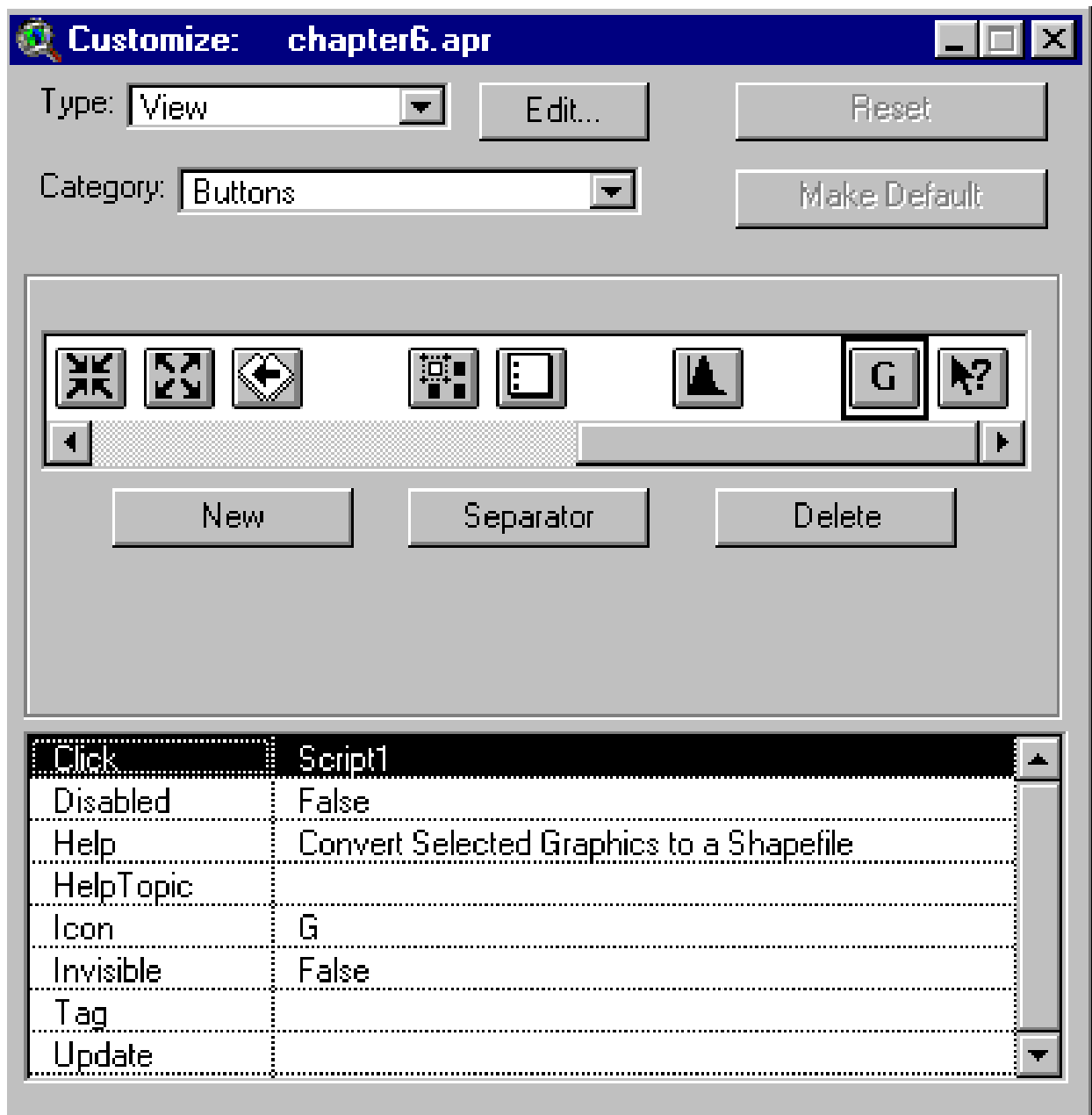
At this point, the Customize Dialog Window has these settings:

Click the X (upper right corner) to close the customize dialog window.

Make the view window active.

The new G button is added to the button bar.

We proceed to analyze other clusters of coal, checking to see if they have enough coal for a viable mining operation.

At this point, we develop a method that we apply repeatedly to delineate LMU's.

Procedure to Identify and Delineate Coal Resource Blocks with Enough Coal for Viable Mining Operations

Step 7:

1. Move the 2-mile measure line into the vicinity of the next cluster.

2. Use Ob16 and Rem16mcell to check whether coal is appropriate for strip contour mining or small area surface mining.

3. Using the polygon draw tool, draw a polygon around the "within-2-mile" clustered coal.

4. Make Surfle36poly.shp active.

5. Click on the "Select Features Using Graphic" button to select coal polygons inside the LMU boundary.

6. Under the Theme Menu, click "Convert to Grid."

        Select gridcode as the field for the cell value

        When queried "Join feature attribute to grid", click "No"

        When queried "Add grid", click "Yes"

7. Open the table for the new grid.

8. Make the "Count" field active.

9. Under the Field Menu, click "Statistics."

10. Compare the total cell count against 16,014.

11 If the cell count is close to 16,014, then under the Analysis Menu, click "Summarize Zones."

12. Select "tonsbycell" as the summarizing grid.

13. In the "Stats" table, make the "Sum" field active.

14. Under the Field Menu, click "Statistics."

15. Compare the Sum total (tons of coal summed for all cells) against 4,563,949.

16. If LMU is found to have enough coal (either by cell count test or by ton test), then keep the graphic boundary on View1.

17. When the LMU does not have enough coal (either by cell count test or by ton test), then select the graphic with the select tool and delete it. The graphic is selected when it has handles.

18. Return to step 1 and continue until all clusters of coal have been evaluated.

19. When all LMU's have been delineated, use the Pointer (with the shift key down) to select all the graphic boundaries. As we select each graphic boundary, handles will display encompassing the boundary.

20. Click the "G" button and save the boundary shapefile.

21. Name the new shapefile: lmustrip1236.

22. After the boundaries shapefile is created, use the Pointer (with the shift key down) to select all the **graphic** boundaries. Click the "delete" key to delete the **graphic** boundaries.

We will look at one more example application of the procedure.

Another cluster of coal is to the northwest of the first LMU:
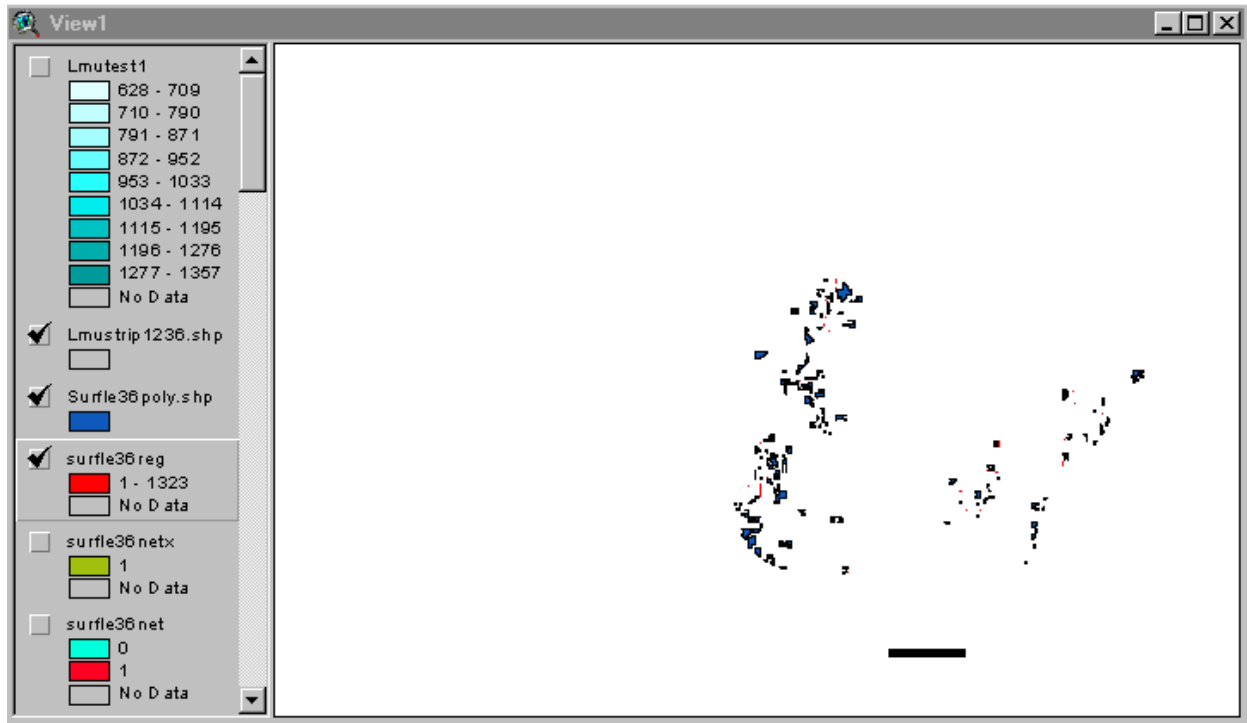
2. We turn Ob16 and Rem16mcell on to check whether the coal is appropriate for strip contour mining or small area surface mining. Much of the coal comes to the cropline and, therefore, we should add it to our coverage of areas for strip contour mining:
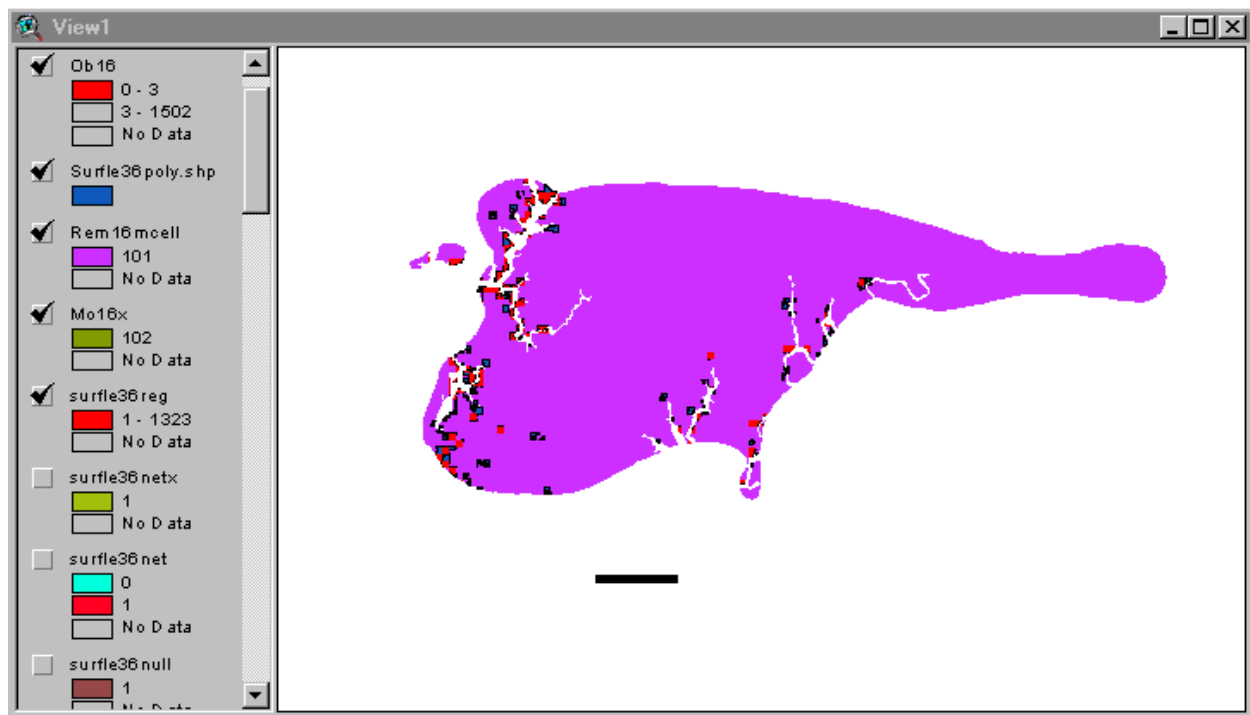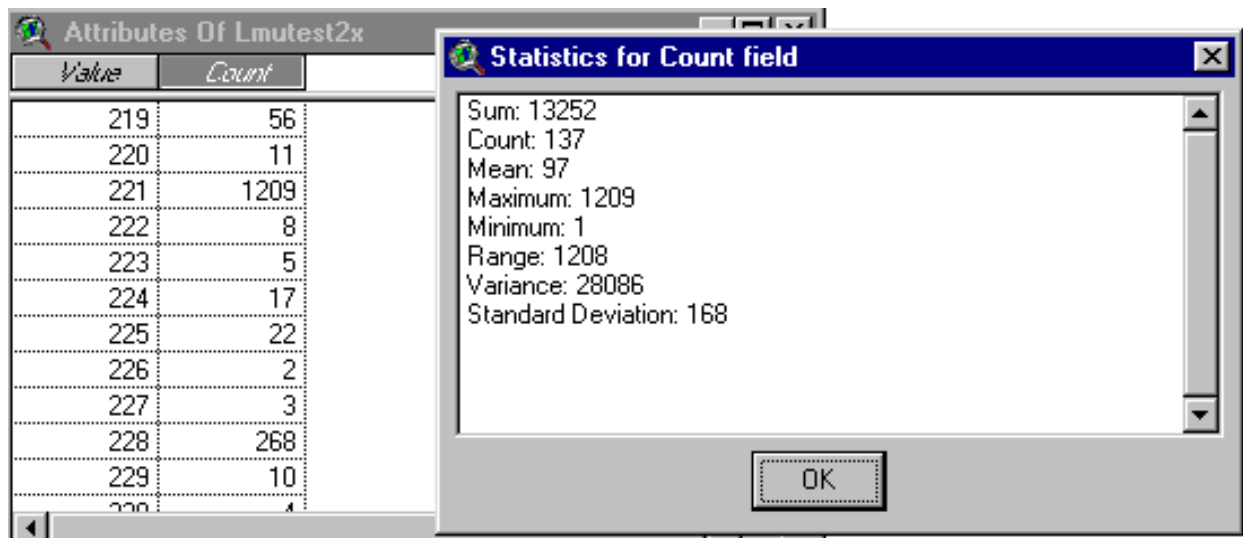
Next, we use the polygon draw tool to draw a polygon around the clustered coal:
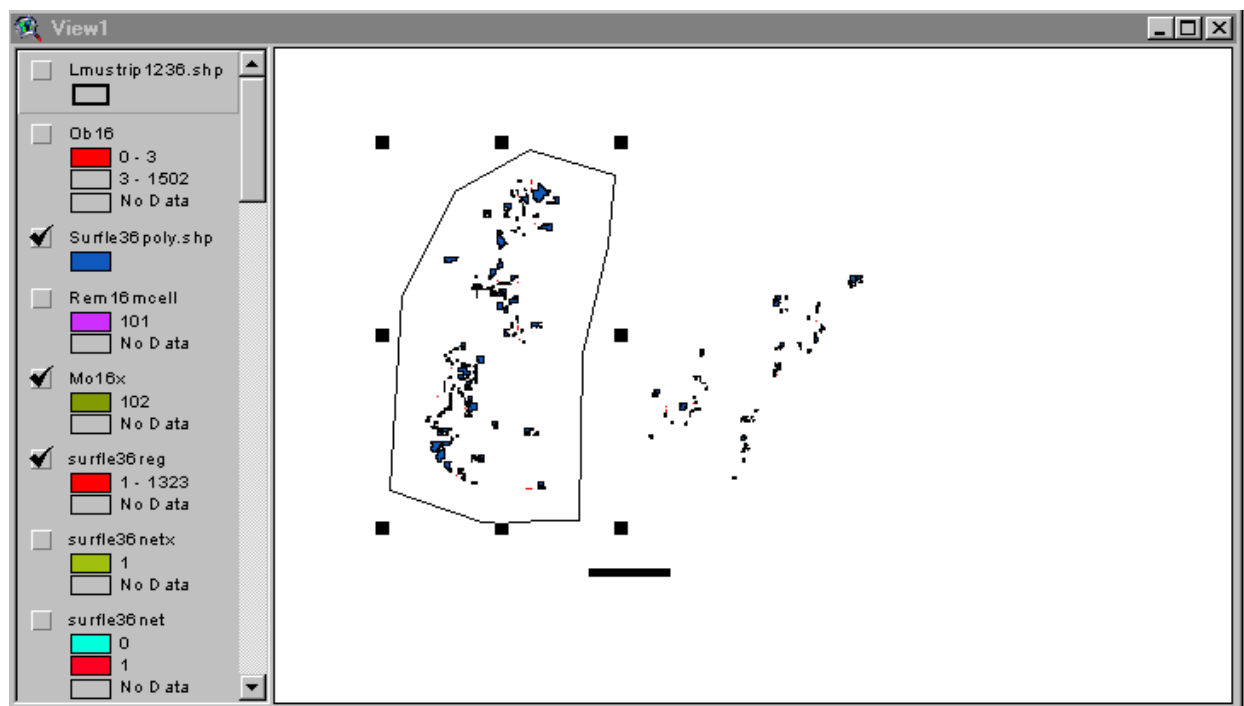
We now apply steps 3-10 under **Step 7** (as outlined above).

At step 10 we find that the cell count is about 13,000 cells:

Attributes Of Lmutest2x		Statistics for Count field

Attributes Of Lmutest2x

Value	Count
219	56
220	11
221	1209
222	8
223	5
224	17
225	22
226	2
227	3
228	268
229	10

Statistics for Count field

Sum: 13252
Count: 137
Mean: 97
Maximum: 1209
Minimum: 1
Range: 1208
Variance: 28086
Standard Deviation: 168

OK

 Thus, the coal is this potential LMU is not of sufficient tonnage to support a minimum sized mine.

We stop our evaluation of this cluster and go on to the next cluster.

We repeat **Step 7** until all clusters have been analyzed.

For the Pittsburgh, we find 2 clusters with enough coal for strip contour mining with coal thickness between 12 and 36 inches:
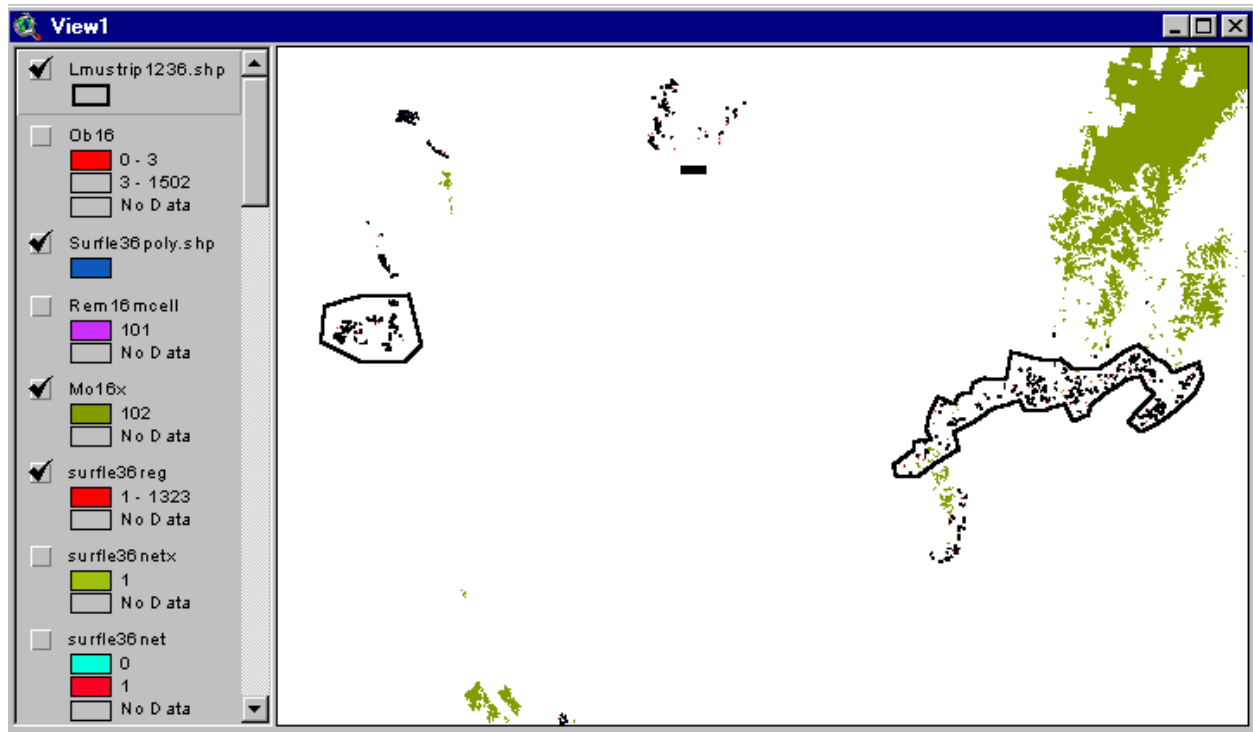
Eight Steps to Add Attributes to Coal Coverage

We have 8 additional steps to complete to estimate attributes for the coverage of coal with thickness between 12 and 36 inches, allocated to strip contour mining:
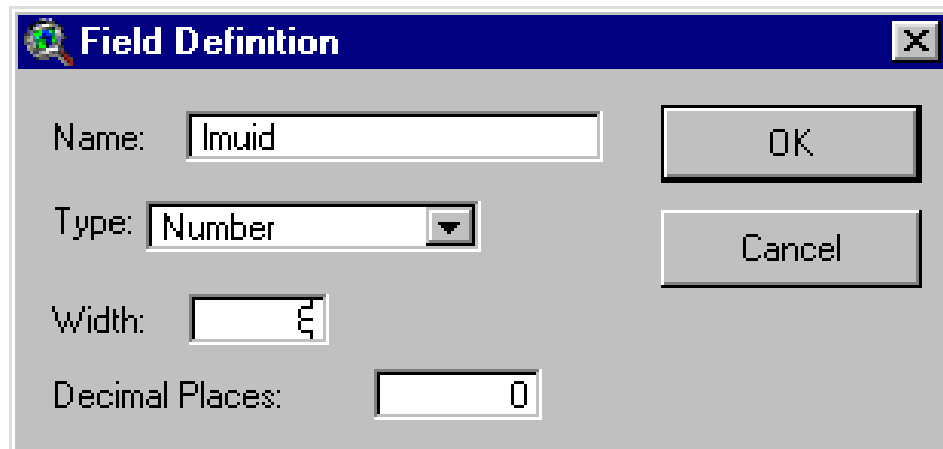
> **Step 8**: Add an Lmuid to the attribute table of coverage **Lmustrip1236.shp.**

Make the table for Lmustrip1236.shp active.

Under the Table Menu, click "Start Editing."

Under the Edit Menu, click "Add Field."

In Field Definition, enter these settings:

Use the edit tool to add index numbers starting with 1.

Delete the field named Id.

Stop Editing.

Save edits.

Attributes of Lmustrip1236.shp

Shape	Inuid
Polygon	1
Polygon	2

Step 9: Convert Lmustrip1236.shp to a grid so that we can use it as a mask.

Make Lmustrip1236.shp active.

Under Theme Menu, click "Convert to Grid."

Name the new grid: **Lmu1236surfc.**

Step 10: Create a coverage of 12 to 36 inch cells inside LMU boundaries that includes coal available for mining and restricted coal.

Open Analysis Properties and **Set Mask to Lmu1236surfc:**

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent Current Value

Left -155677.503175   Top 1970643.69375

Bottom 1693107.69375   Right 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size Current Value

Cell Size 16   m

Number of Rows 17346

Number of Columns 21718

Analysis Mask Lmu1236surfc

OK   Cancel

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
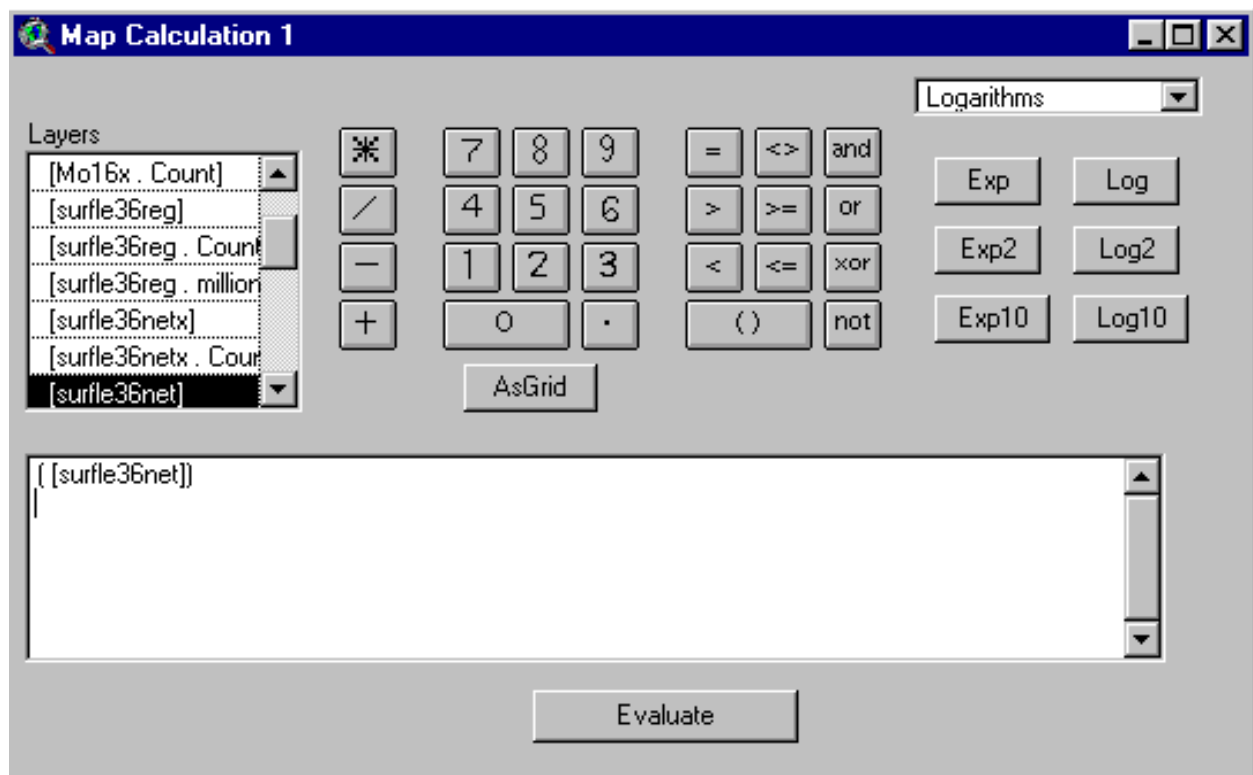
Name the new grid: **Lmu1236surfcx**.

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Lmu1236surfcx has restricted coal (value = 0) and available coal (value = 1) for the 2 areas where we designated LMU's. The LMU's are for strip contour mining on coal 12 to 36 inches thick.

Step 11: Convert **Lmu1236surfcx** to a shapefile.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
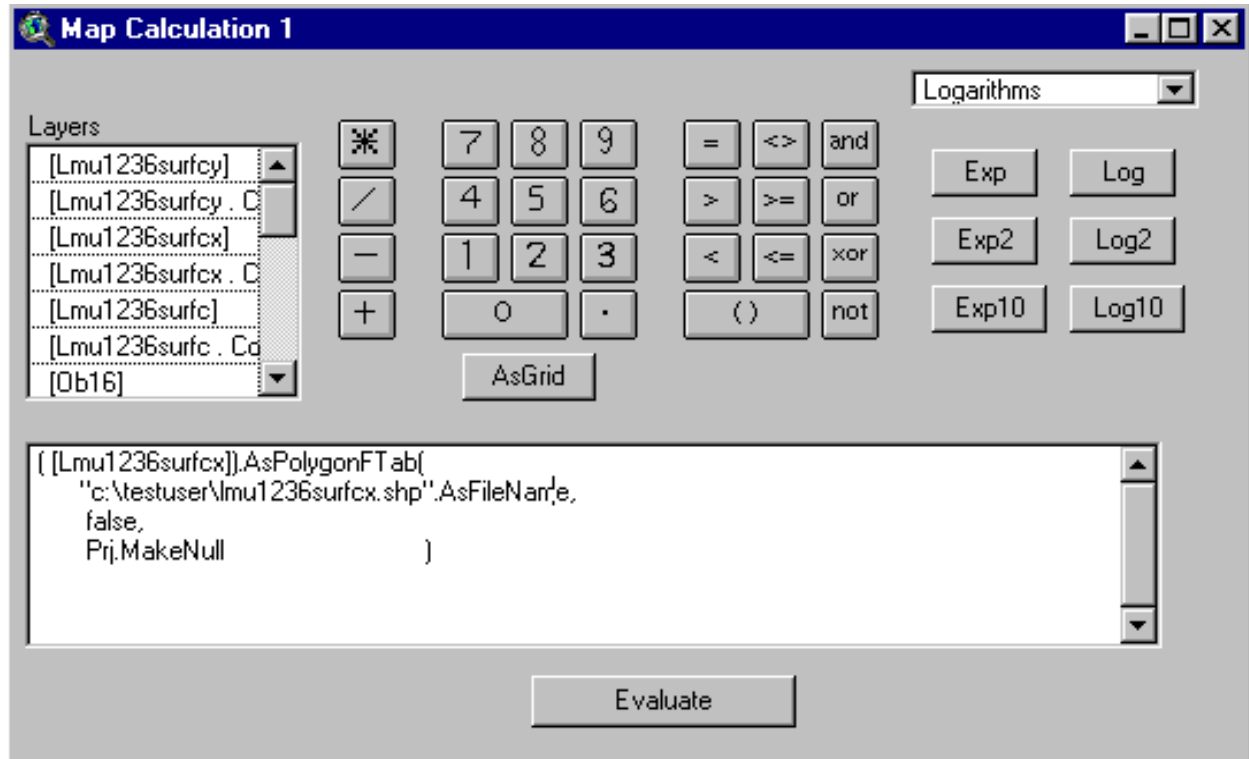
The name of the new shapefile is **Lmu1236surfcx.shp**.

Add Lmu1236surfcx.shp to View1.

Step 12: Intersect **Lmu1236surfcx.shp** with **Lmustrip1236.shp** to form a new shapefile that identifies coal by **Lmuid.**

Under the View Menu, click "Geoprocessing Wizard"

   Click radio button: **Intersect two themes**

   And enter these settings:
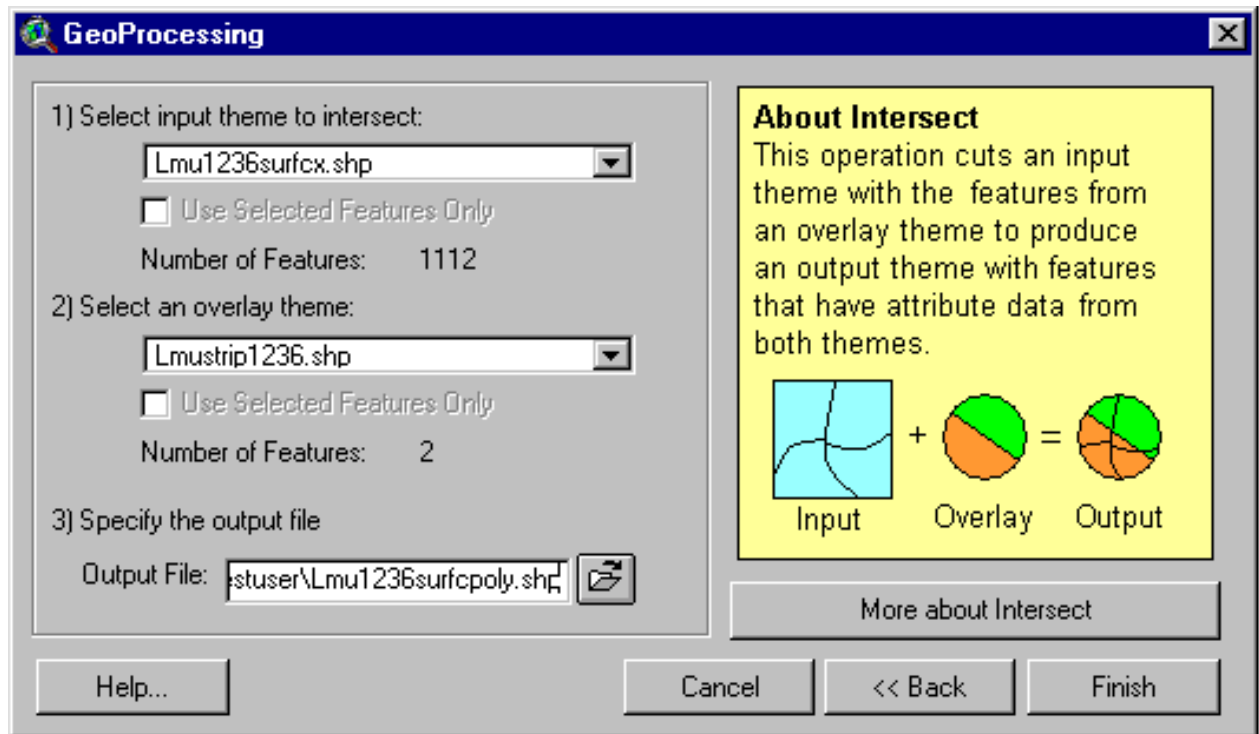
Name the new shapefile: **Lmu1236surfcpoly.shp.**

Step 13: Convert **Lmu1236surfcpoly** to a grid and select **Lmuid** as the field for the cell values in order to index coal by Lmuid.

Make **Lmu1236surfcpoly** active.

Under the Theme Menu, Click "Convert to Grid."

Name the new grid: **Lmu1236surfcy.**

Select "Lmuid" as the field for cell values.

When queried "Join feature attributes to grid" click "No."

When queried "Add grid to theme as view" click "Yes."

Step 14: Remove the restricted coal from the lmu's in **Lmu1236surfcy.**

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
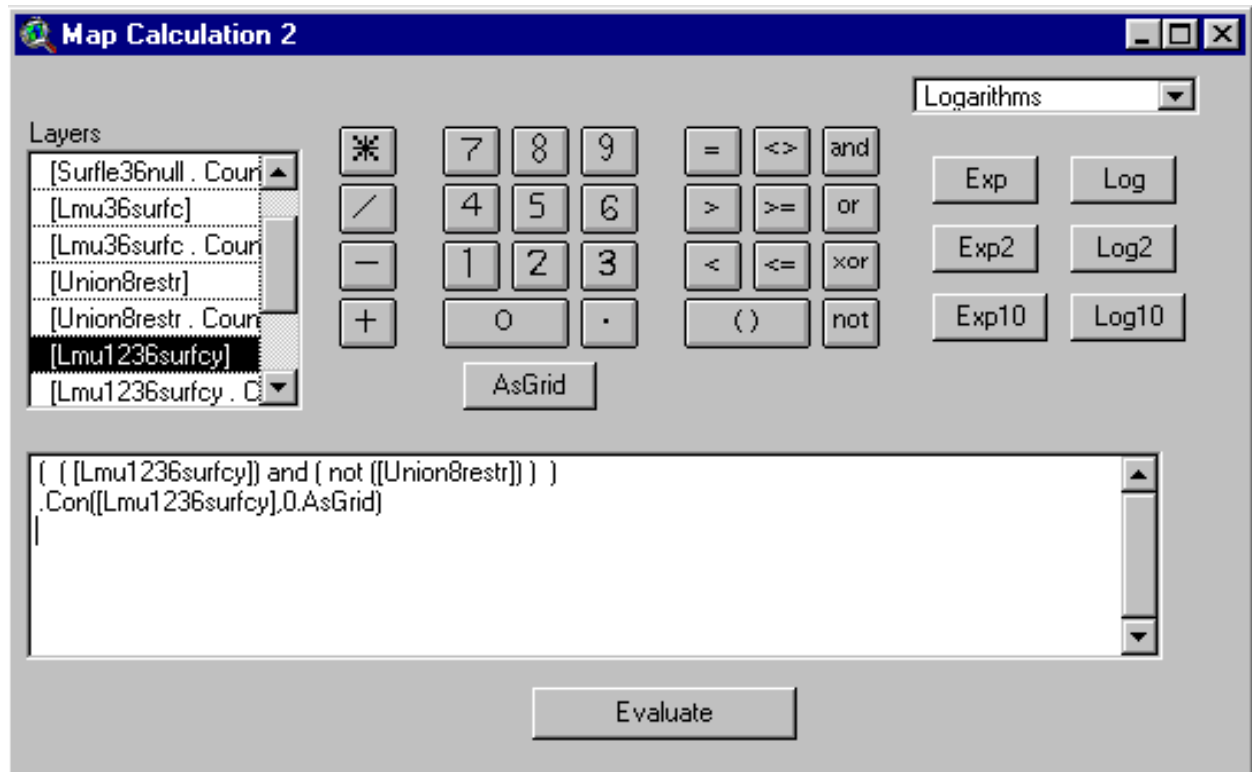
Name the new grid: **Lmu1236surfcz**.

Record the **source** for lmu1236surfcz in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Toggle on the display for lmu1236surfcz.

Zoom into an lmu to see coal and restrictions to coal (value = 0).
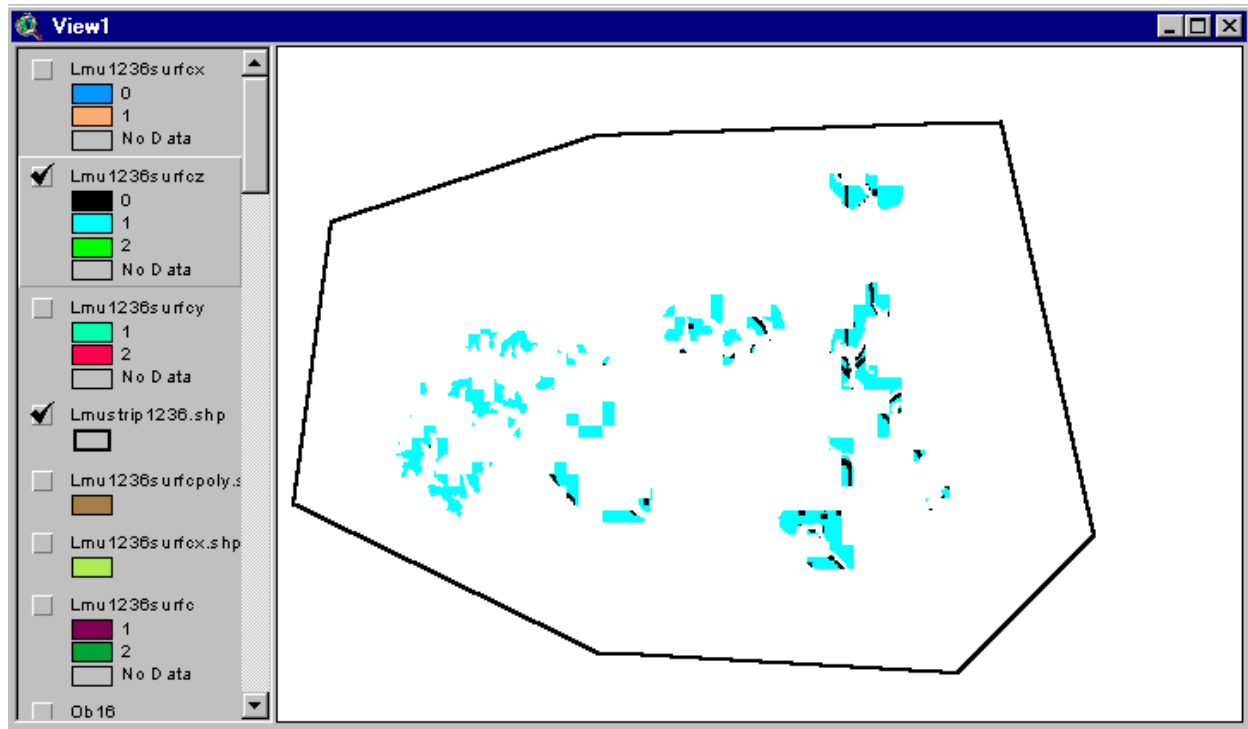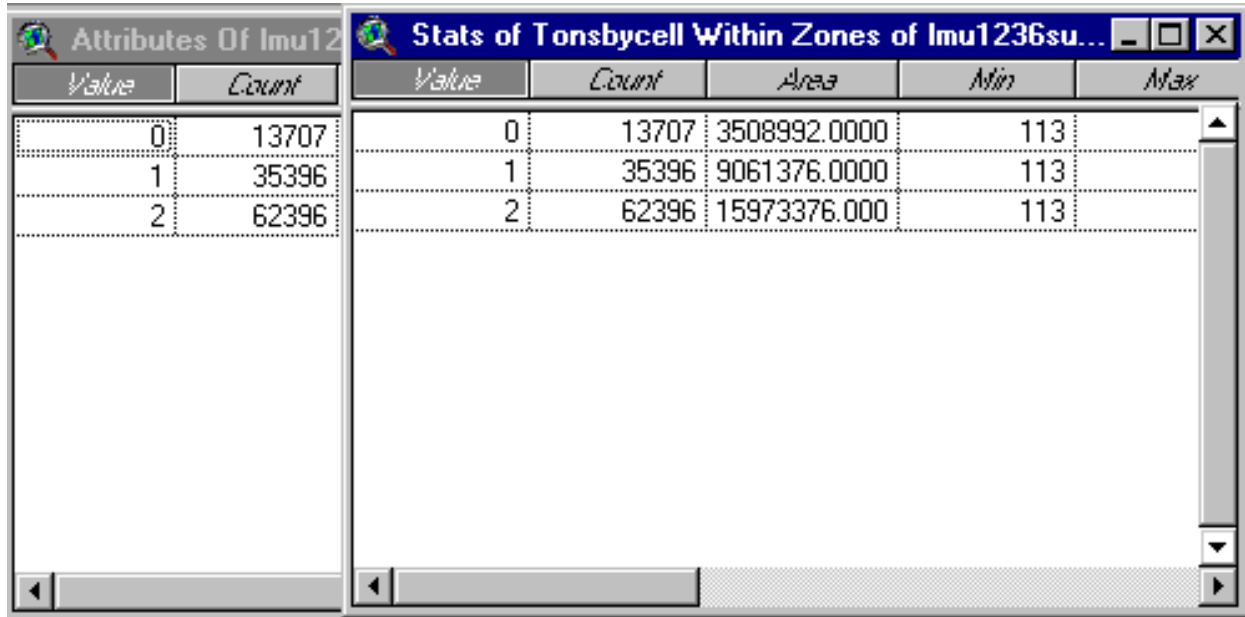
Step 15: Calculate the tons of coal in each Lmu and add that field to **Lmu1236surfcz**.

Make Lmu1236surfcz active.

Under the Analysis Menu, click "Summarize Zones."

Use tonsbycell as the summarizing theme.

Open the "Stats" table and the Lmu1236surfcz table:

Attributes Of lmu12		Stats of Tonsbycell Within Zones of lmu1236su...				
Value	Count	Value	Count	Area	Min	Max
0	13707	0	13707	3508992.0000	113	
1	35396	1	35396	9061376.0000	113	
2	62396	2	62396	15973376.000	113	
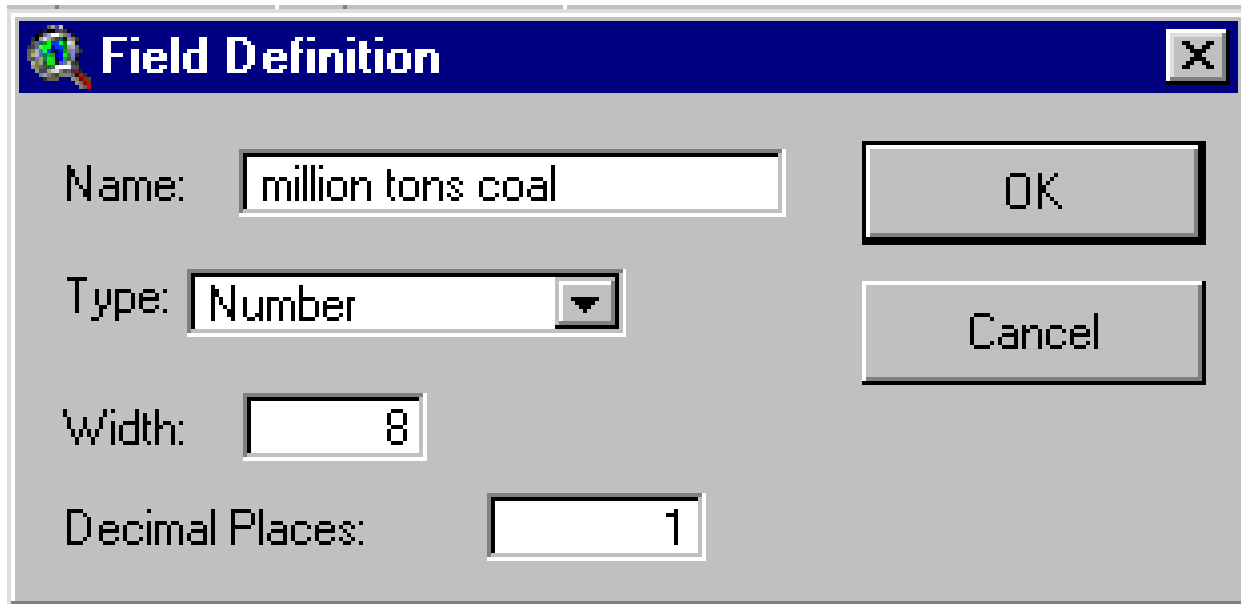
Join the "Stats" table to the "Lmu1236surfcz" table.

Use "Value" as the join field.

Make Attributes of Lmu1236surfcz active.

Start Editing.

Add Field:
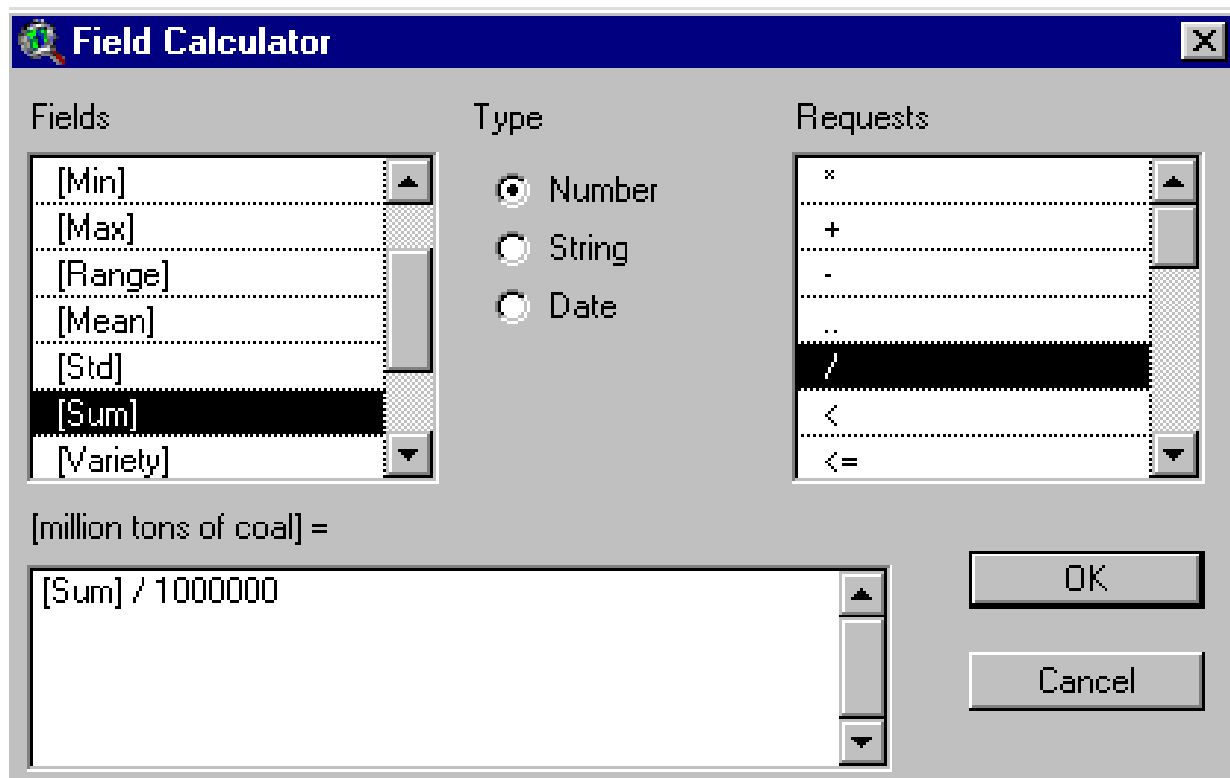
In Field Calculator, enter these settings:

Under Table Menu

      Click "Remove All Joins"

      Click "Stop Editing"

The resulting table has these fields:

Value	Count	million tons coal
0	13707	3.3
1	35396	7.0
2	62396	15.4

Next, we recycle through for the 2nd Contour Strip (CS > 36) thickness mining method and through any small area surface mines that have coal thickness > 36 inches.

Reset Analysis Properties to:

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent Same As Rem16mcell ▼

Left -155677.503175   Top 1970643.69375

Bottom 1693107.69375   Right 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size Current Value ▼

Cell Size 16   m

Number of Rows 17346

Number of Columns 21718

Analysis Mask Rem16bufp12 ▼

OK   Cancel

Please note:

Small area surface mining is conducted when coal does <u>not outcrop</u> but otherwise meets the technical conditions for surface mining such as a 20 to 1 ratio for overburden to coal, and surface slope less than or equal to 32 degrees. Examination of the <u>CS 12 to 36 inch</u> delineated resources shows that <u>in that case</u> the delineated blocks outcrop and therefore they can be mined by conventional contour strip methods.

In contrast to CS 12-36, three blocks of surface mineable coal >36 inches in thickness have only a small extent of outcrop. By examining the location of the 3 blocks relative to the outcrop, we will see that for the most part the coal does not outcrop. Consequently, small area surface mining is the mining method that would be used to extract the coal.

In assessing the surface mineable coal with thickness > 36 inches, we will simultaneously delineate blocks for contour strip and small area surface mines.

The instructions on p. 6-49 through 6-52 are the special steps to delineate the blocks of coal for small area surface mines.

You will need to flip back and forth from the material starting on p. 6-8 and the material starting on p. 6-49.

<u>The first time you are required to flip ahead is when you reach p. 6-19. Make sure you flip to p. 6-49 and follow instructions from that page until you are told to flip back</u>.

Identify Coal for Mining by CS > 36 and in Small Area Surface Mines

The procedure is straightforward.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
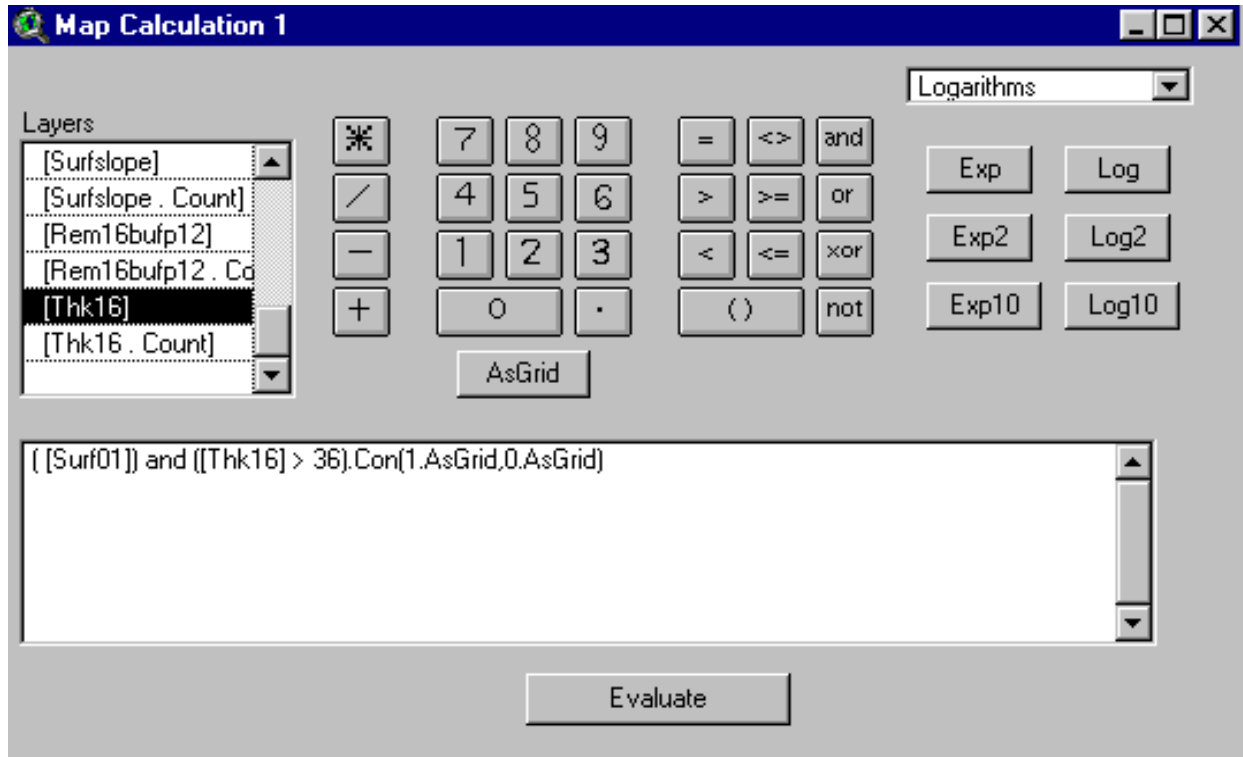
In Theme Properties, rename Map Calculation 1 to : surf01gt36

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

In the case of surface mineable coal with thickness greater than 36 inches, the remaining Pittsburgh bed has some coal which does not extend to the outcrop.

The appropriate mining method for this coal is Small Area Surface Mining.

Other blocks of coal with thickness greater than 36 inches are suitable for conventional contour strip mining.

Name the new coverages using "gt36" in place of "le36". To assess CS > 36 and small area surface mines, return to page 6-8 and complete all the steps through page 6-19. On p. 6-19, you are instructed to flip back to p. 6-49.

When we arrive at page 6-19 (following the procedure for the coal above 36 inches), we investigate the northern rim of the Pittsburgh.

By displaying the Remaining and the Mined Out below the Surface coal greater than 36 inches in thickness, we can see three areas suitable for Small Area Surface Mines:
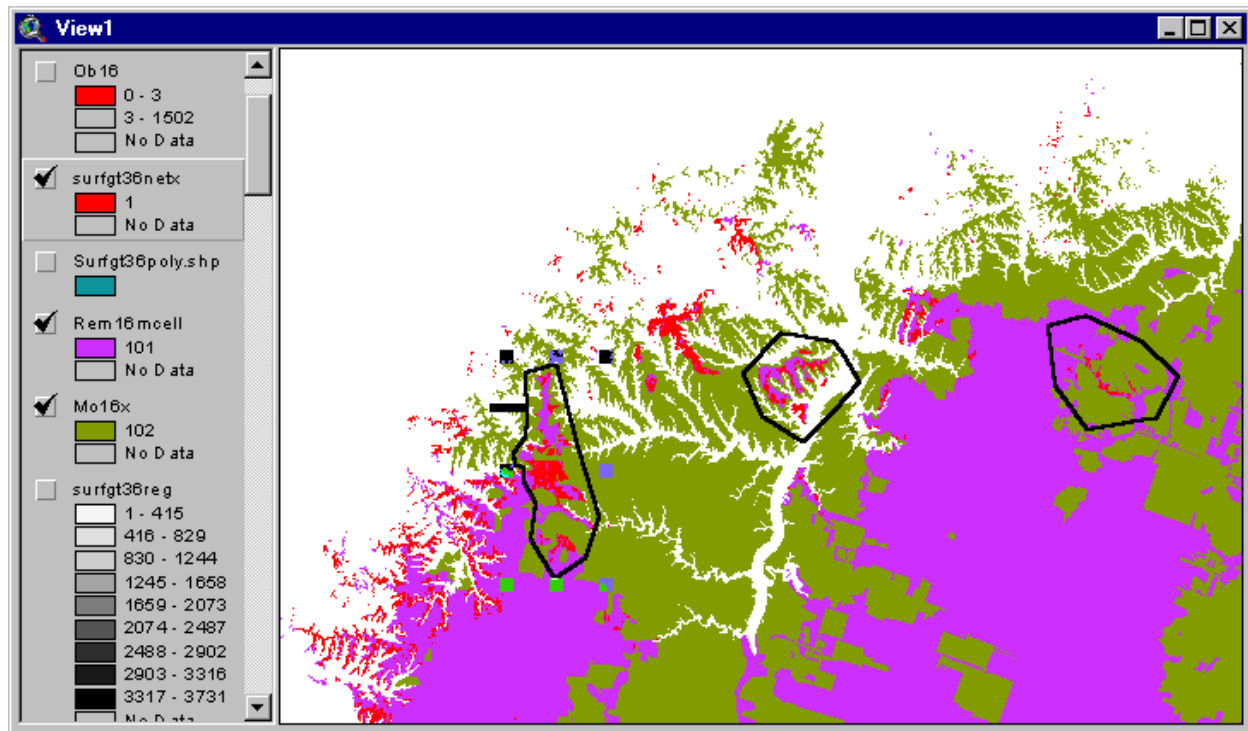
A zoomed view of the middle block appears below.

The two lightest areas have remaining coal. The lighter area has coal that meets technical requirements for surface mining.

Most of the coal is under significant overburden, which can be seen by toggling on the ob16 grid.
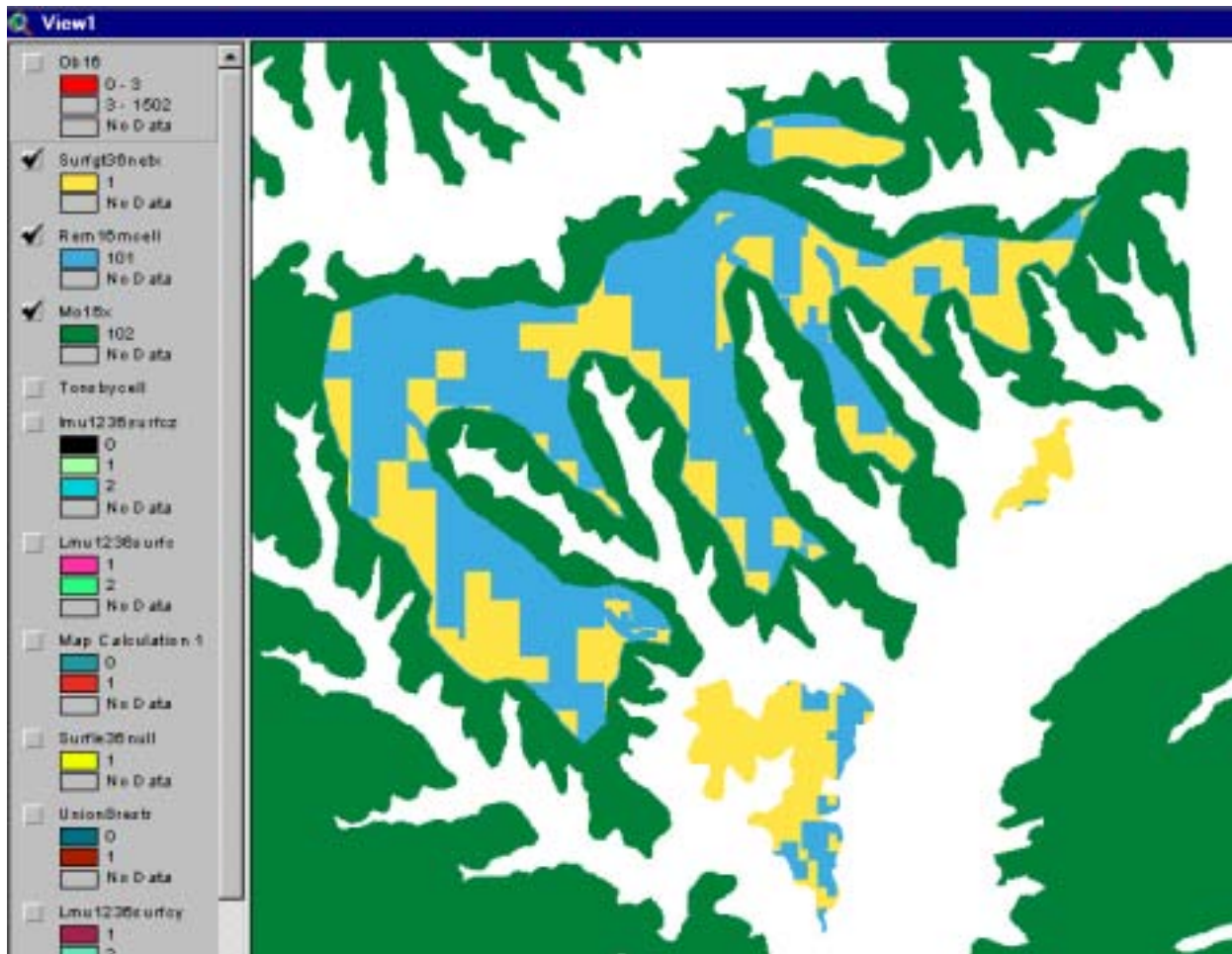
We recalculate the threshold # of cells for a viable small area surface mine:

7,171,732/(50*9.5) = 15,098

We now continue starting with Step 7 on p. 6-28.

For this segment, we are estimating coal for Small Area Surface Mines.

We apply Step 7 until all 3 clusters have been analyzed.
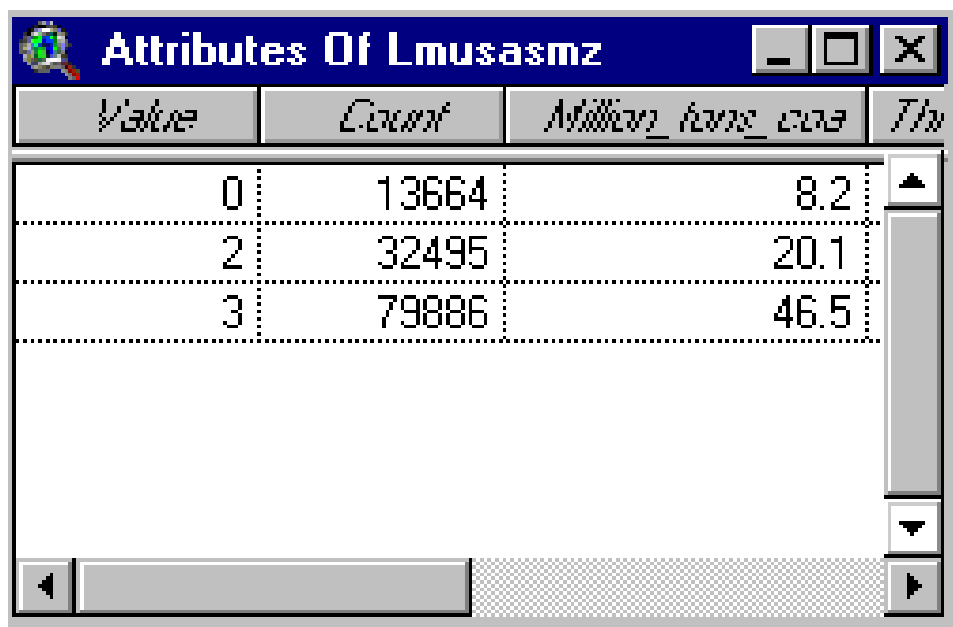
The cluster to the right does not have enough coal for a minimum size small area surface mine.

Next, we complete steps 8 thru 15, p. 6-34 through 6-45.

At the end of those steps we have a new grid for small area surface mines:

lmusasmz

The final table with tons for each LMU or block is:

Value	Count	Million_tons_coa	Th
0	13664	8.2	
2	32495	20.1	
3	79886	46.5	

Next, we return to **Step 7 (page 6-28)** and analyze the coal in the greater than 36 inch category, not assigned to Small Area Surface Mines.

This coal is tested to see if it has enough coal to support a minimum sized strip contour mine with coal greater than 36 inches in thickness.
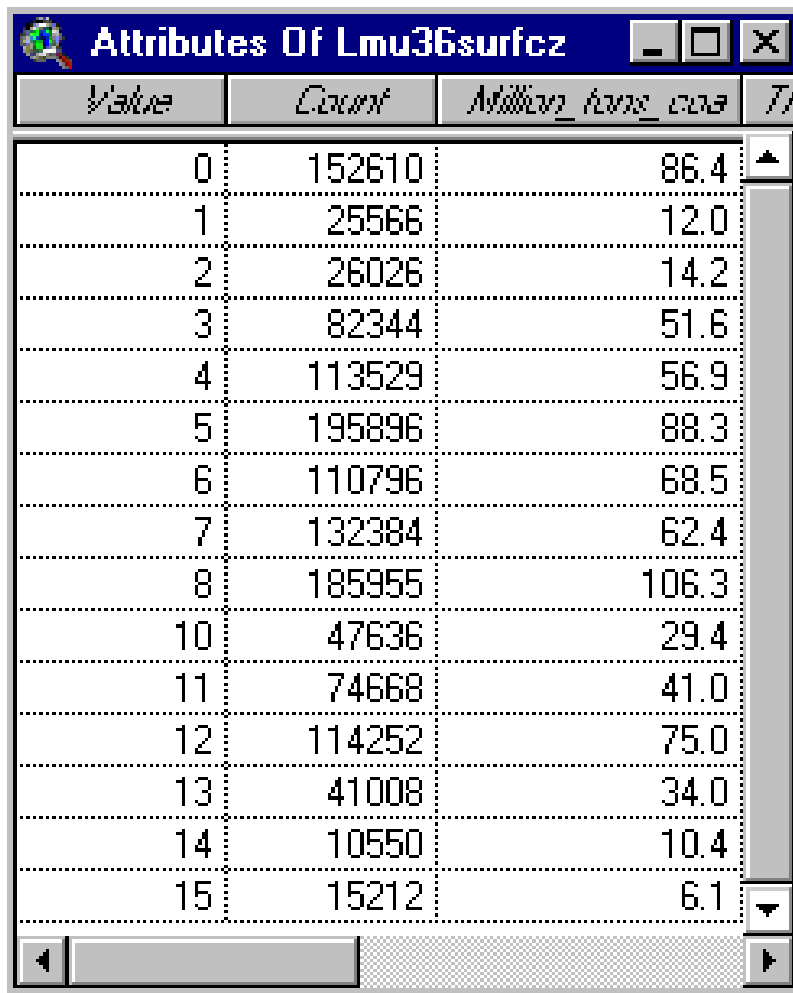
The threshold cell count for including an LMU is:

4,955,611/(60*9.5) = 8,694 cells

For the Pittsburgh bed, we delineate 14 LMU's for strip contour mining on coal with thickness greater than 36 inches:
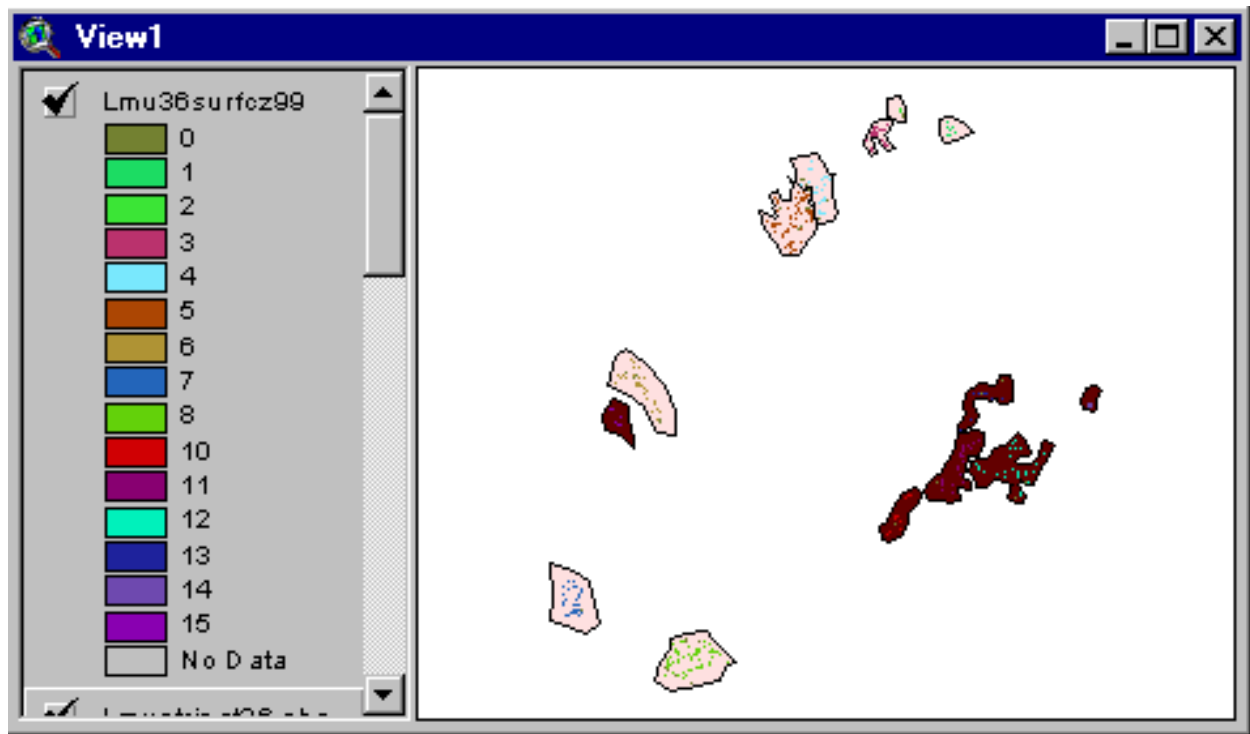
The table (end of **Step 15)** for Strip contour mining operations on coal with thickness greater than 36 inches has these entries:

Value	Count	Million_tons_coa	T/
0	152610	86.4	
1	25566	12.0	
2	26026	14.2	
3	82344	51.6	
4	113529	56.9	
5	195896	88.3	
6	110796	68.5	
7	132384	62.4	
8	185955	106.3	
10	47636	29.4	
11	74668	41.0	
12	114252	75.0	
13	41008	34.0	
14	10550	10.4	
15	15212	6.1	

The row, for value = 0, is the coal in the restricted areas.

The total tonnage in restricted areas is 86.4 million tons.

The other rows are for LMU's where the coal is available for strip contour mining on coal with thickness greater than 36 inches.

The "million tons coal" field contains the estimate of available tons in each LMU.

Ordinarily, the "final" table will have available tons above the threshold minimum LMU tons.

The threshold may not be met if we "accept" an LMU on the basis of its cell count.

Any LMU that does not meet the tonnage threshold should be removed from the final coverage.

In Map Calculator, build a request that includes only LMU's with tonnage above the threshold.

Run other steps to recover information for the final set of LMU's.

Best strategy: When evaluating LMU's (first stage), run "Summarize Zones" to calculate tons when cell count looks low. We also would be checking the thickness grid to help us determine marginal LMU's.

Example clean-up requests follow on pages 6-53 through 6-58.

The grid coverages name, Surflmugrid, is a placeholder used to illustrate the clean-up procedure.

You would substitute the name of the grid being revised, for example, lmu36surfcz.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
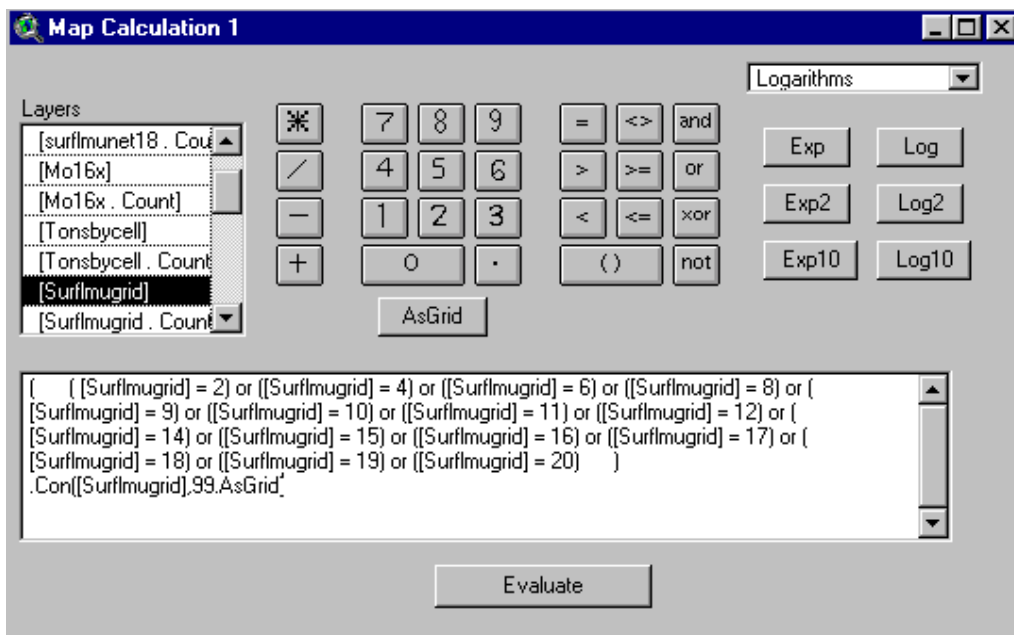
The new grid (with values of 2, 4, 6, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, &99) has default name: Map Calculation 1

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
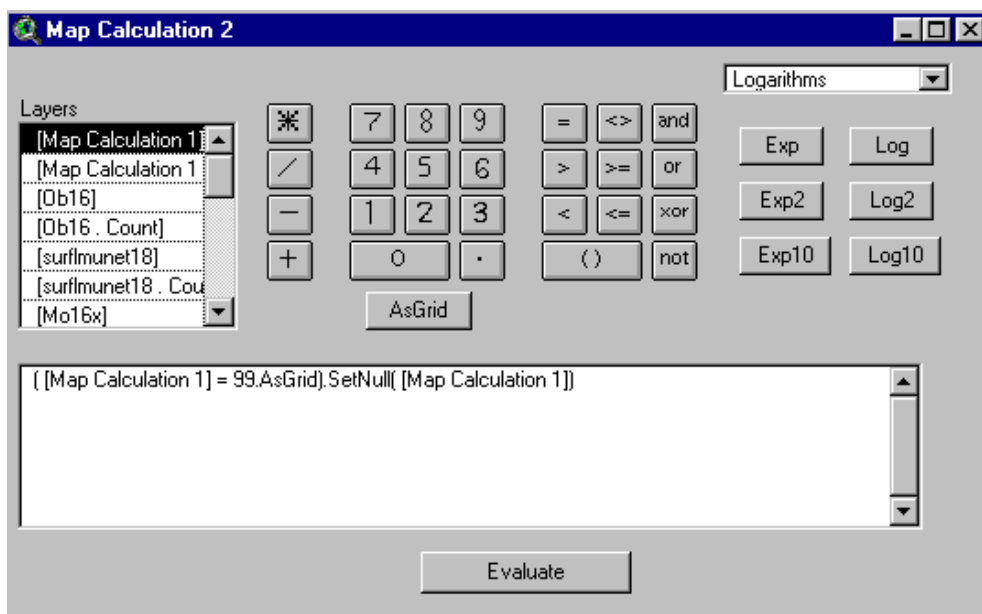
The new grid has default name: Map Calculation 2

We proceed now to pull out the restricted areas from Map Calculation 2

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
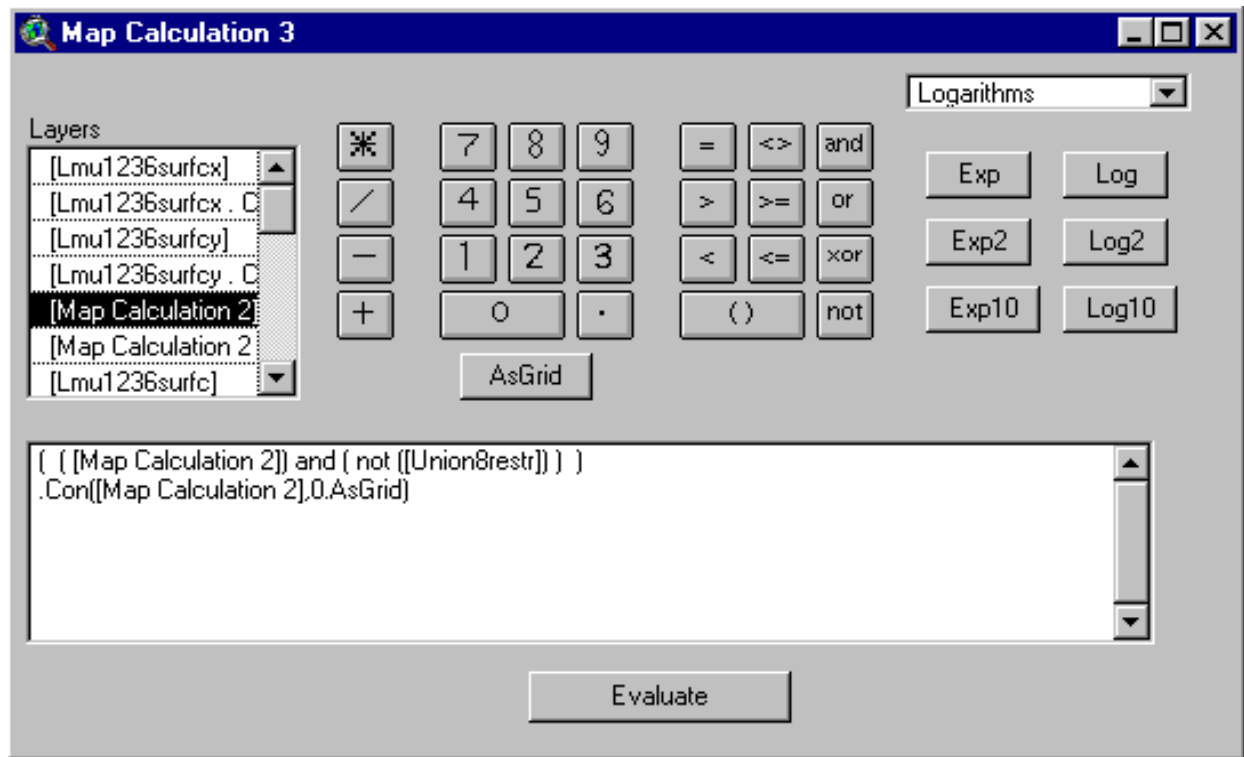
Name the new grid: Lmu36xnet

Record the **source** for Lmu36xnet in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Delete Map Calculation 1 & Map Calculation 2

Save your project.

Make Lmu36xnet active.

Under the Analysis Menu, click "Summarize Zones."

Use tonsbycell as the summarizing theme.

Open the "Stats" table and the Lmu36xnet table:

Join the "Stats" table to the "Lmu36xnet" table.
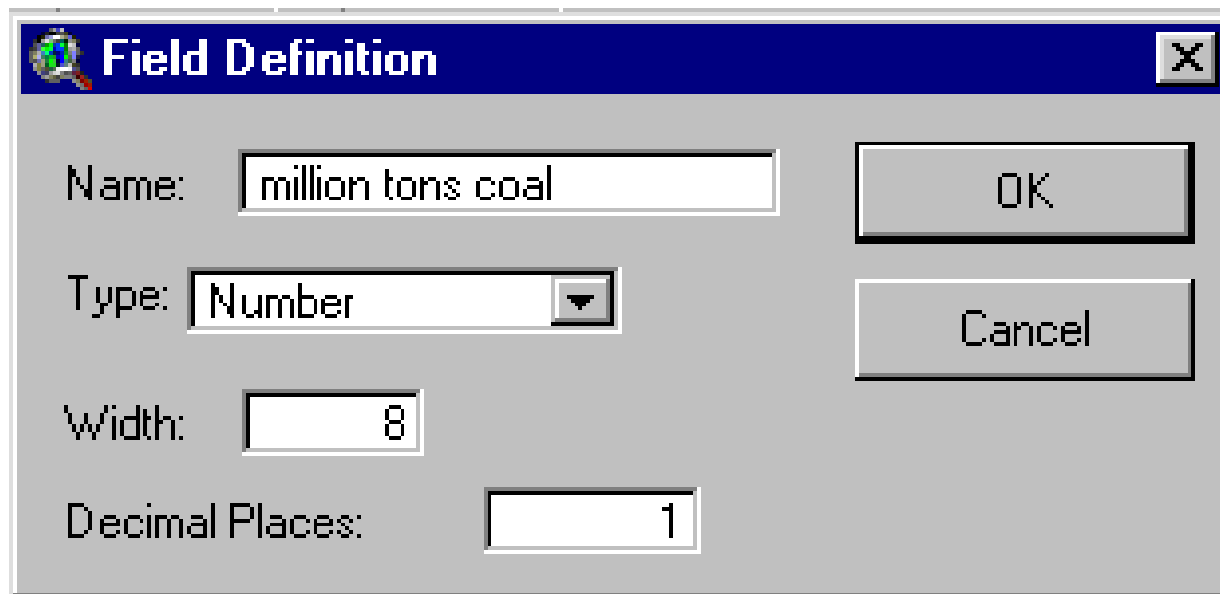
Attributes Of Stripcontnet		
Value	Count	
0	180455	
2	29738	
4	26185	
6	208327	
8	127419	
9	22900	
10	35396	
11	137186	
12	200537	
14	56356	
15	90158	
16	27126	

Stats of Tonsbycell Within Zones of Stripcontnet				
Value	Count	Area	Min	Max
0	180455	46196480.000	113	1
2	29738	7612928.0000	208	
4	26185	6703360.0000	531	
6	208327	53331712.000	123	
8	127419	32619264.000	113	
9	22900	5862400.0000	199	
10	35396	9061376.0000	113	
11	137186	35119616.000	256	
12	200537	51337472.000	341	
14	56356	14427136.000	113	1
15	90158	23080448.000	113	
16	27126	6946016.0000	113	

Use "Value" as the join field.

Make Attributes of Lmu36xnet active.

Start Editing.
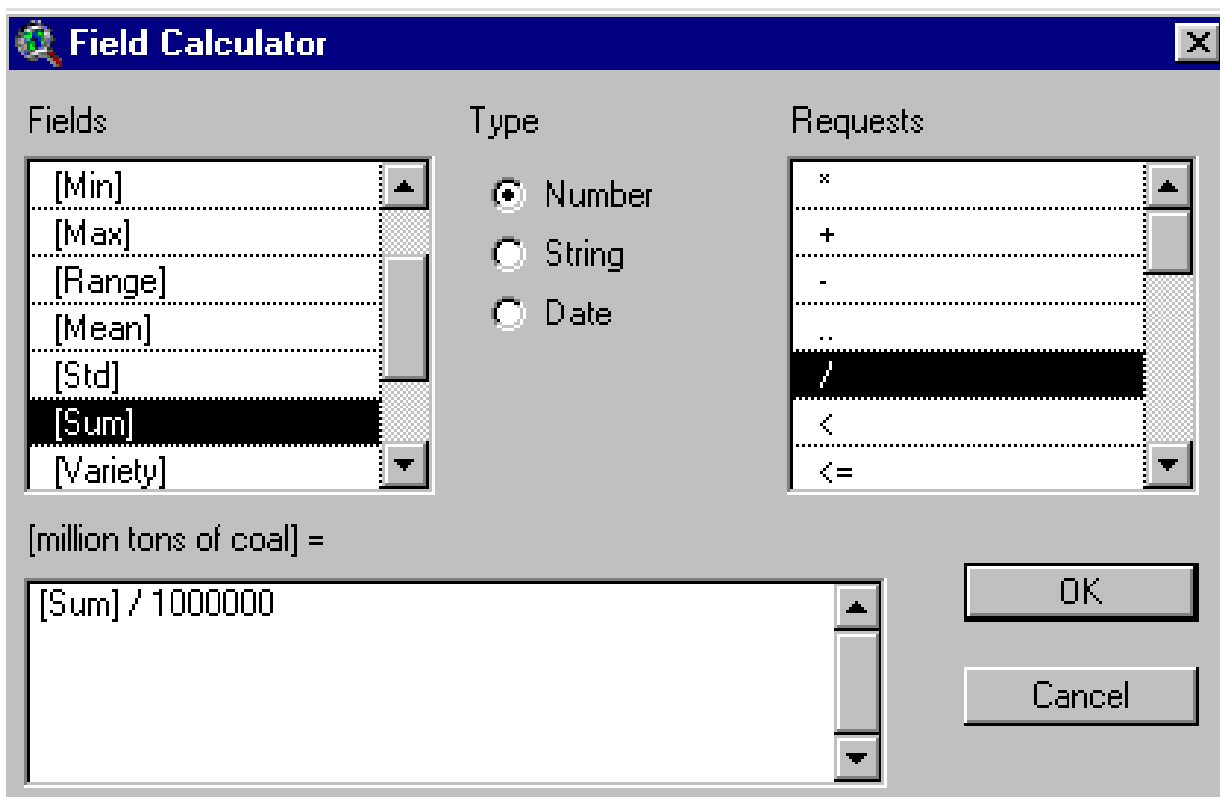
Add Field:

In the Field Calculator, enter this expression:

Add Estimates of Coal Characteristics to Summary Table

Taking stock:

    1. We have delineated logical mining units (LMU's) potentially suitable for surface mining. Each LMU meets these criteria:

        Coal thickness 12 inches or greater

        Stripping ratio of 20/1 or less

        Surface slope equal to or less than 32 degrees

        Distance between coal blocks equal to or less than 2 miles &

        Total coal in each LMU of sufficient amount to support a minimum-sized mining operation after coal in restricted areas is removed

    2. We found two LMU's suitable for Small Area Surface Mining

    3. We found two LMU's suitable for Contour Strip mining on coal with thickness between 12 and 36 inches

    4. We found fourteen LMU's suitable for Contour Strip mining on coal with thickness greater than 36 inches

    5. We have a table for the Small Area Surface Mining LMU's containing tons (excluding coal in restricted areas) for each LMU.

    6. We have a table for the Contour Strip mining LMU's containing tons (excluding coal in restricted areas) for the 2 LMU's with coal thickness between 12 and 36 inches

    7. We have a table for the Contour Strip mining LMU's containing tons (excluding coal in restricted areas) for the 14 LMU's with coal thickness greater than 36 inches

Remaining Tasks:

    Task 1: Add the average coal thickness to the tables

    Task 2: Add the average overburden to the tables

    Task 3: Add the average partings to the tables

    Task 4: Add the average coal sulfur content to the tables

    Task 5: Add the average coal btu to the tables

These data are needed in the Discounted Cash Flow Costing Model (DCFCM) to estimate coal resource cost curves.

We must set the analysis mask to Rem16bufp12 so that the analysis area is large enough to make estimates in all LMU's.

In Analysis Properties, enter these settings:

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent [Same As Rem16mcell ▼]

Left [-155677.503175]   Top [1970643.69375]

Bottom [1693107.69375]   Right [191810.496825]

Analysis Cell Size [Current Value ▼]

Cell Size [16]   m

Number of Rows [17346]

Number of Columns [21718]

Analysis Mask [Rem16bufp12 ▼]

[OK]   [Cancel]
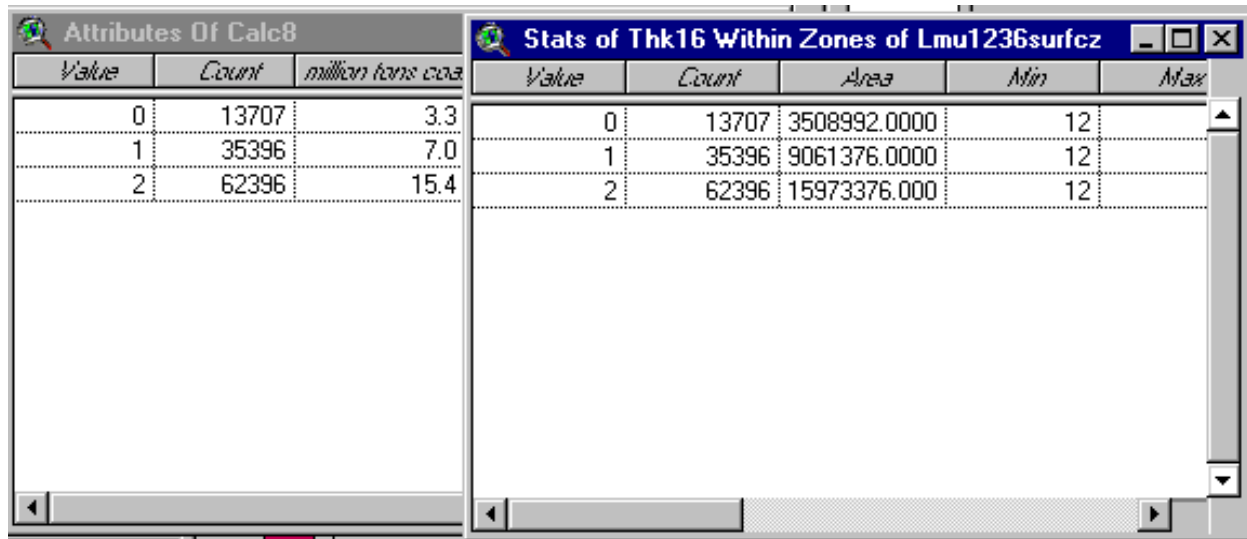
Task 1   Add the average coal thickness to the tables

Make **Lmu1236surfcz** active.

Under the Analysis Menu, click "Summarize Zones."

Use thk16 as the summarizing theme.

Open the "Stats" table and the Lmu1236surfcz table:

Attributes Of Calc8				Stats of Thk16 Within Zones of Lmu1236surfcz				
Value	*Count*	*million tons coa*		*Value*	*Count*	*Area*	*Min*	*Max*
0	13707	3.3		0	13707	3508992.0000	12	
1	35396	7.0		1	35396	9061376.0000	12	
2	62396	15.4		2	62396	15973376.000	12	

Join the "Stats" table to the "Lmu1236surfcz" table.
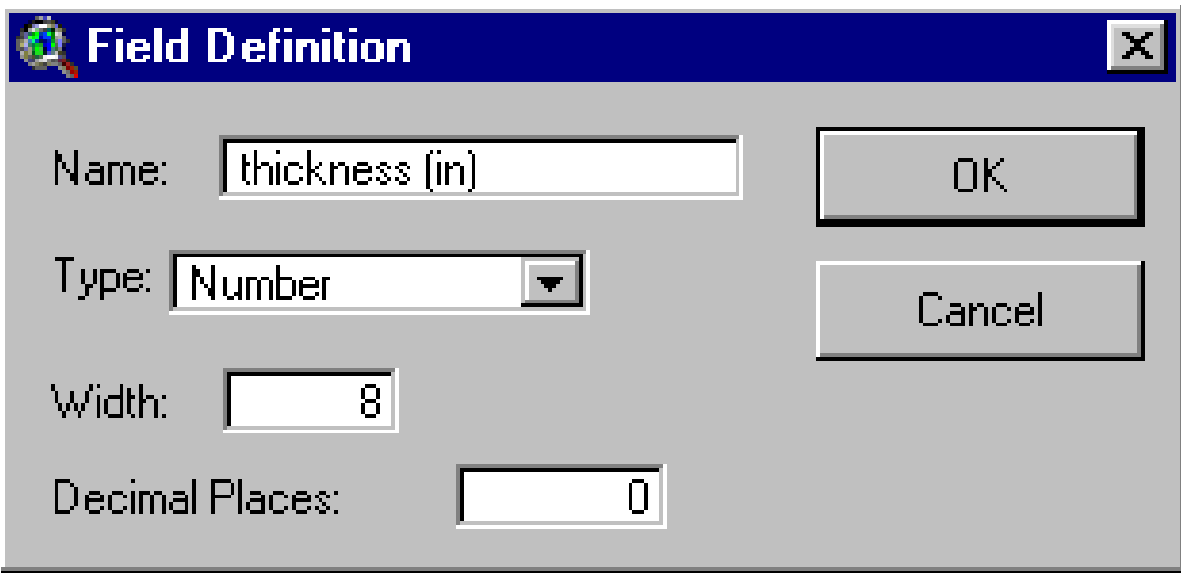
Use "Value" as the join field.

Make Attributes of Lmu1236surfcz active.

Under Table Menu, click "Start Editing."

Under the Edit Menu, click "Add Field."

In Field Definition, enter these settings:

Field Definition

Name: thickness (in)

Type: Number
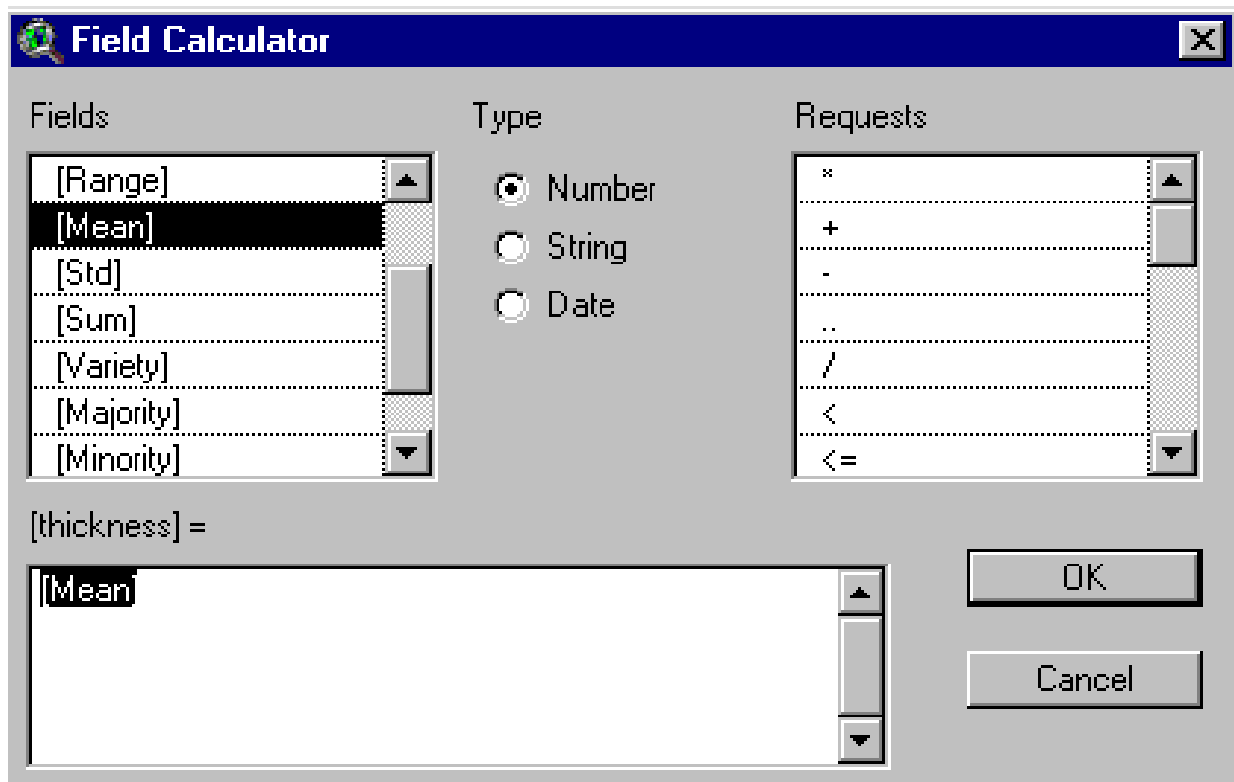
Width: 8

Decimal Places: 0

OK

Cancel

In Field Calculator, evaluate this expression:

Field Calculator

Fields

[Range]
[Mean]
[Std]
[Sum]
[Variety]
[Majority]
[Minority]

Type

- Number
- String
- Date

Requests

x
+
-
..
/
<
<=

[thickness] =

[Mean]

OK

Cancel

Under Table Menu

    Click "Remove Joins"

    Click "Stop Editing"

The resulting table has these fields:

Value	Count	Million_tons_coa	Thickness_(in)	Ov
0	13707	3.3	26	
1	35396	7.0	21	
2	62396	15.4	26	

Attributes Of Lmu1236surfcz

The row, for value = 0, is the average coal thickness in the restricted areas.

The other rows are for LMU's where the coal is suitable for strip contour mines on coal with thickness between 12 and 36 inches.
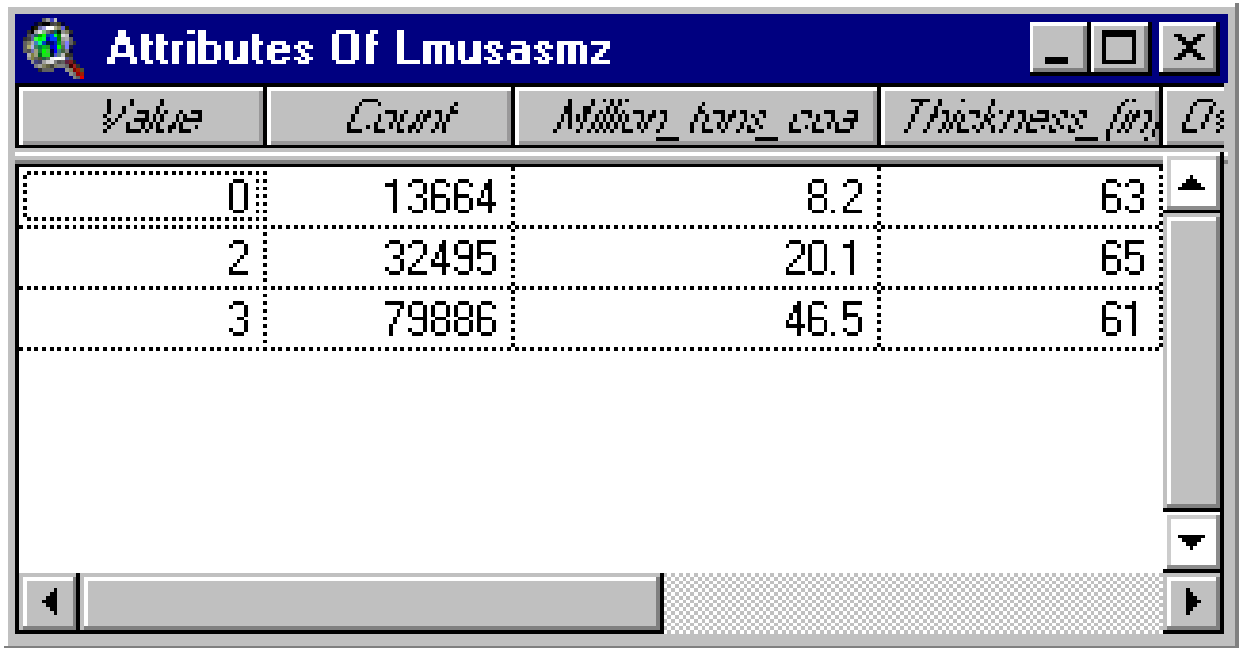
The "thickness (inches)" field contains the estimate of average coal thickness in inches in each LMU.

We apply the same procedure to the other 2 available coal coverages:

Lmusasmz

Lmu36surfcz

The estimates are shown in the two following tables:

Attributes Of Lmusasmz

Value	Count	Million_tons_coa	Thickness_(in)	O:
0	13664	8.2	63	
2	32495	20.1	65	
3	79886	46.5	61	

Attributes Of Lmu36surfcz

Value	Count	Million_tons_coa	Thickness_[in]	Os
0	152610	86.4	60	
1	25566	12.0	50	
2	26026	14.2	58	
3	82344	51.6	66	
4	113529	56.9	53	
5	195896	88.3	48	
6	110796	68.5	65	
7	132384	62.4	50	
8	185955	106.3	60	
10	47636	29.4	65	
11	74668	41.0	58	
12	114252	75.0	69	
13	41008	34.0	87	
14	10550	10.4	104	
15	15212	6.1	42	

<u>Method A</u> (Adding Coal Characteristics Estimates)

For the remaining tasks, **2 through 5** we add additional coal characteristics to the coverages of coal by mining technology.

The method is the same as the one applied above, e. g., the steps starting at the top of page 6-61 and ending at the top of 6-64.

Rather than repeat the steps over and over, the method is briefly outlined here:

_____

Method A

**Adding Data on Coal Characteristics to the
Coverages of Coal by Mining Technology**

1. **Make the coverage active.**

2. **Under the Analysis Menu, click "Summarize Zones."**

3. **As the summarizing coverage, select the coverage for the coal characteristic.**

4. **Add "Stats" table and the "Attributes" table to the ArcView Window.**

5. **Join the "Stats" table to the "Attributes" table.**

6. **Make the "Attributes" table active.**

7. **Under the Table Menu, click "Start Editing."**

8. **Under the Edit Menu, click "Add Field."**

9. **In Field Definition, set Name, Width, and Decimal Places**.

10. **In Field Calculator, build expression to populate the field for the characteristic.**

11. **Under the Table Menu, click "Remove All Joins."**

12. **Under the Table Menu, click "Stop Editing."**

13. **Save edits.**

14. **Save project.**

_____

[Note: Field Definitions and Field Calculator expressions are found starting at p. 6-84. You will perform operations to complete tables many times. The pages starting at p. 6-84 can be used as a guide.]

Task 2

Add the average overburden to the tables.

Use ob16 (units =feet) as the summarizing theme.

Apply **Method A.**

Task 3

Add the average partings to the tables.

Add Parting10 to View1.

Use parting10 as the summarizing theme.

In this case, our expression in the Field Calculator is:

Parting10 = Mean/10

Apply **Method A.**

Create Coverages of Estimated Values for Sulfur and Heat Content

In order to carry out task 4, we add a grid coverage of sulfur values to View1. In the case of the Pittsburgh assessment, geostatistics were applied to determine a 5 way classification of sulfur values. A paper describing the sulfur analysis is available from wwatson@usgs.gov

The coverage used in this assessment is developed from 1017 sulfur values interpolated using IDW, power 1.

Go to project window and open a new view window: View2.

Add sulfur points to View2.

In this user's guide, the sample point coverage is called goodpoints.shp.

Under the File Menu, toggle on the Projector Extension.

Reproject goodpoints to the target projection.

In this user's guide, the reprojected coverage is named: goodpointsalb.shp.

Add Rem16mcell to View2.

In Analysis Properties, enter these settings:

Analysis Properties: View2

Analysis Extent	Same As Rem16mcell

Left	-155677.503175	Top	1970643.69375
Bottom	1693107.69375	Right	191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size: Current Value

Cell Size	96	m
Number of Rows	2891	
Number of Columns	3620	

Analysis Mask: No Mask Set
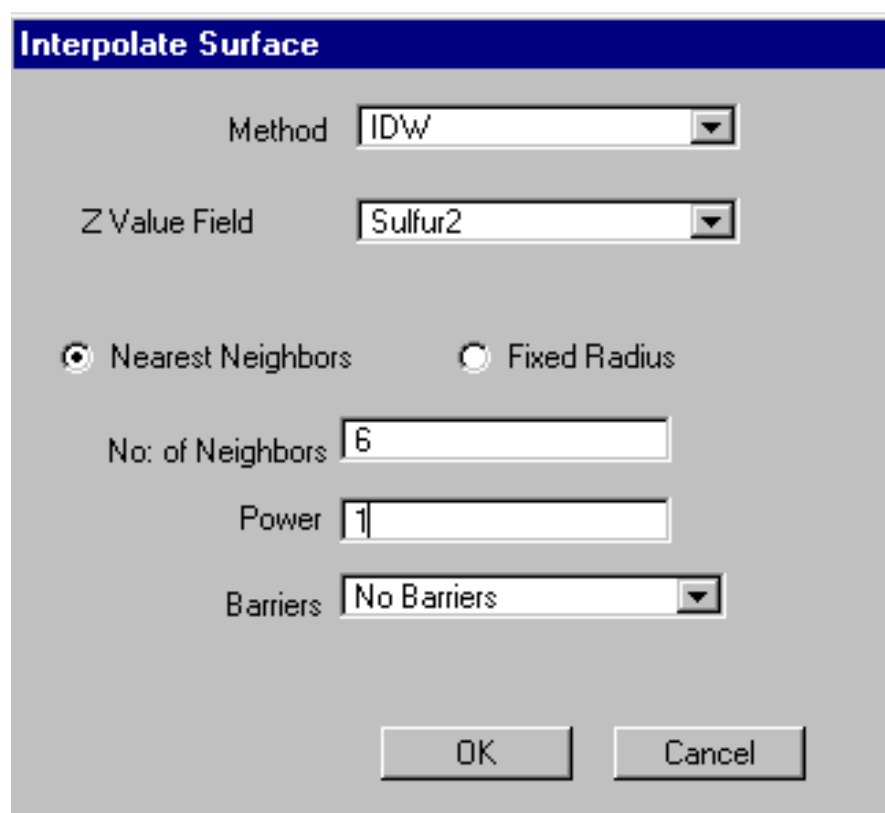
OK   Cancel

Notice Cell Size at 96 meters, which is an even multiple of our basic 16 m grid.

Make goodpointsalb active.

Under the Surface Menu, click "Interpolate Grid."

In Interpolate Surface, enter these settings:

Notice in the Z Value Field, we select the Sulfur Field.

Interpolating over the large area of the Pittsburgh takes about 15 minutes.

Owing to the odd shape and clustered sample data, we set No. of Neighbors at 6 and Power at 1.

This gives a somewhat generalized sulfur surface which is supported by the statistical analysis cited above.

Name the new grid: Sulfur96.

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Add Sulfur96 to View1.

Resample to 16 meter to speed up processing.

In Analysis Properties, enter these settings:

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
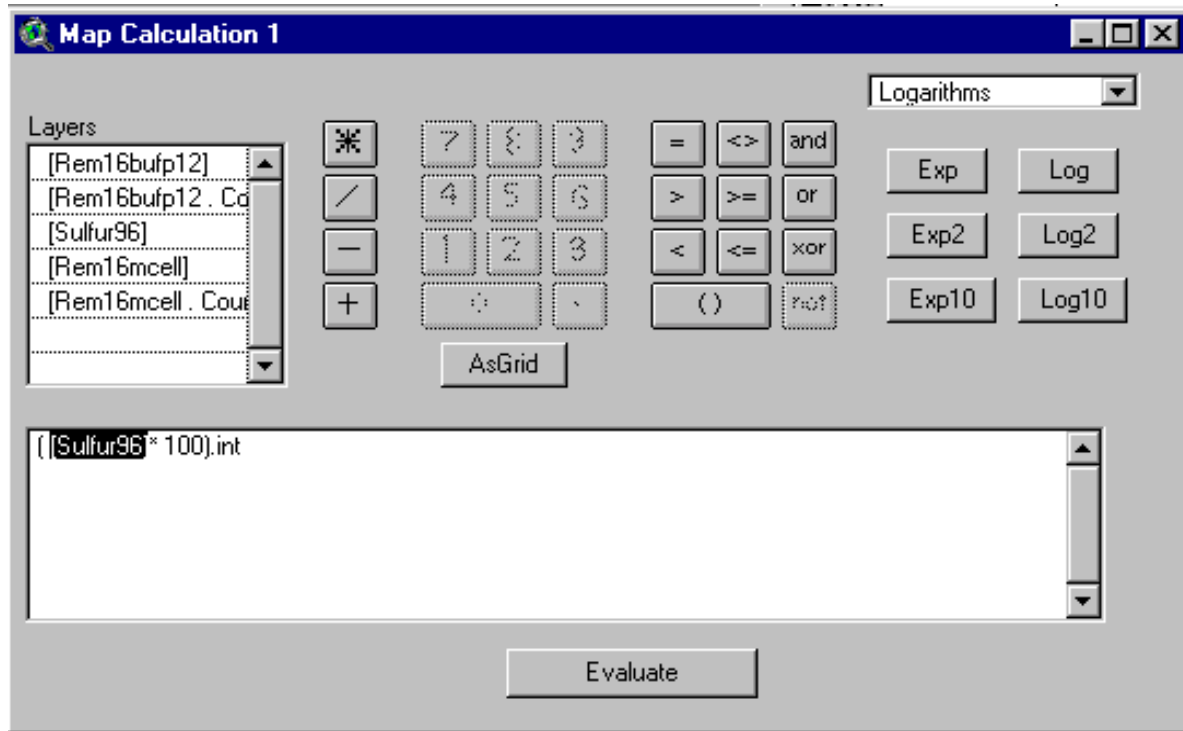
Rename the grid to : Sulfur100.

Task 4

Add the average sulfur content to the tables .

Select Sulfur100 as the summarizing theme.

In the Field Calculator, we divide the Mean by 100 to obtain average sulfur content.

Apply **Method A**.

Next, we create a grid of calorific values (btu/lb) for coal.

Make Goodpointsalb.shp active.

In View2, enter these settings in query builder:
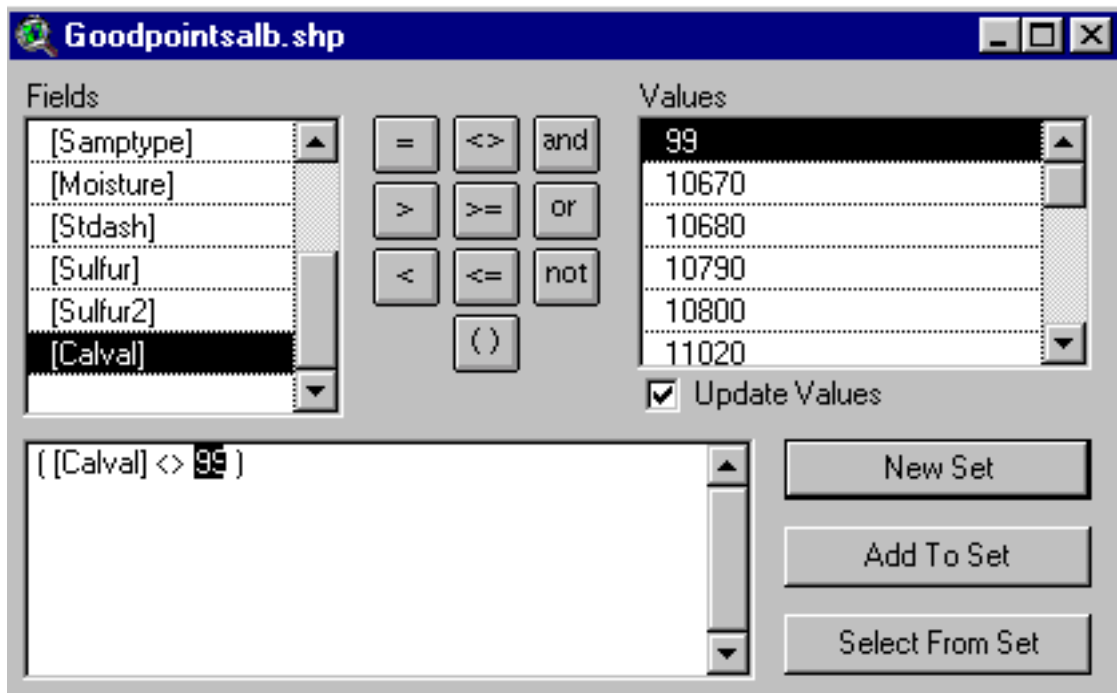
Click "New Set."

Under Theme Menu, click "Convert to Shapefile."

Name the new shapefile: btu.

Add it to View2.

In Analysis Properties, enter these settings:

Analysis Properties: View2

Analysis Extent [Same As Rem16mcell ▼]

Left [-155677.503175]   Top [1970643.69375]

Bottom [1693107.69375]   Right [191810.496825]

Analysis Cell Size [Current Value ▼]

Cell Size [96]   m

Number of Rows [2891]

Number of Columns [3620]

Analysis Mask [No Mask Set ▼]
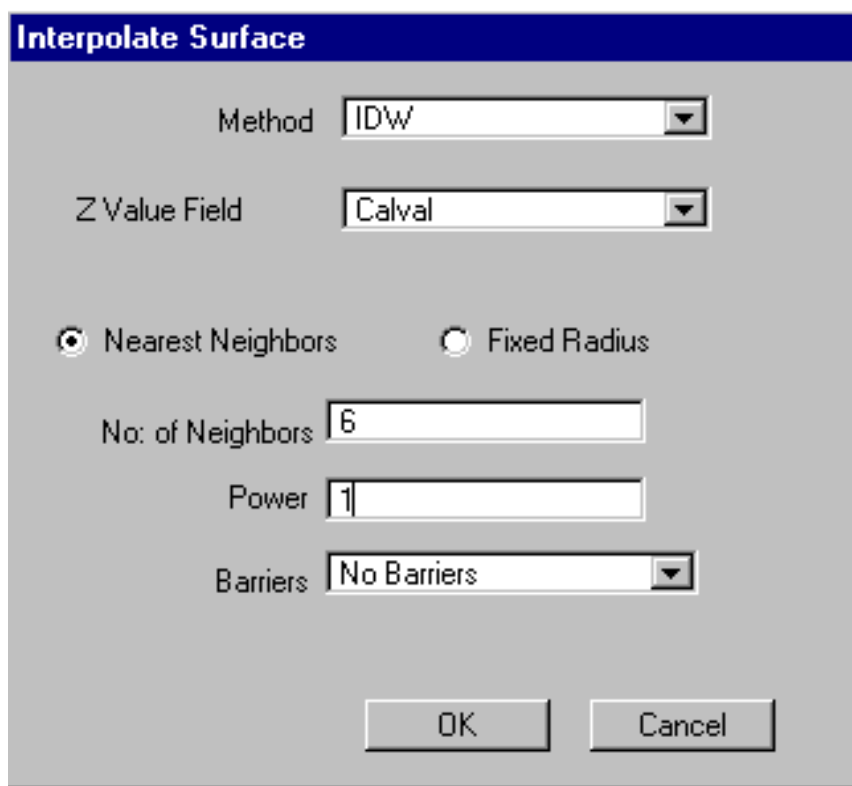
[OK]   [Cancel]

Notice Cell Size at 96 meters, which is an even multiple of our basic 16 m grid.

Make btu active.

Under the Surface Menu, click "Interpolate Grid."

In Interpolate Surface, enter these settings:

Interpolate Surface

Method   IDW

Z Value Field   Calval

⦿ Nearest Neighbors   ○ Fixed Radius

No: of Neighbors   6

Power   1

Barriers   No Barriers

OK   Cancel

Notice in the Z Value Field, we select the Calval Field.

Interpolating over the large area of the Pittsburgh takes about 15 minutes.

Owing to the odd shape and clustered sample data, we set No. of Neighbors at 6 and Power at 1.

This gives a somewhat generalized btu surface which is supported by the statistical analysis cited above.

Name the new grid: Btu96.

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Add Btu96 to View1.

Resample to 16 meter to speed up processing.

In Analysis Properties, make these settings:

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent: Same As Rem16mcell

Left: -155677.503175   Top: 1970643.69375

Bottom: 1693107.69375   Right: 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size: Current Value

Cell Size: 16   m
Number of Rows: 17346
Number of Columns: 21718

Analysis Mask: Rem16bufp12

OK   Cancel

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
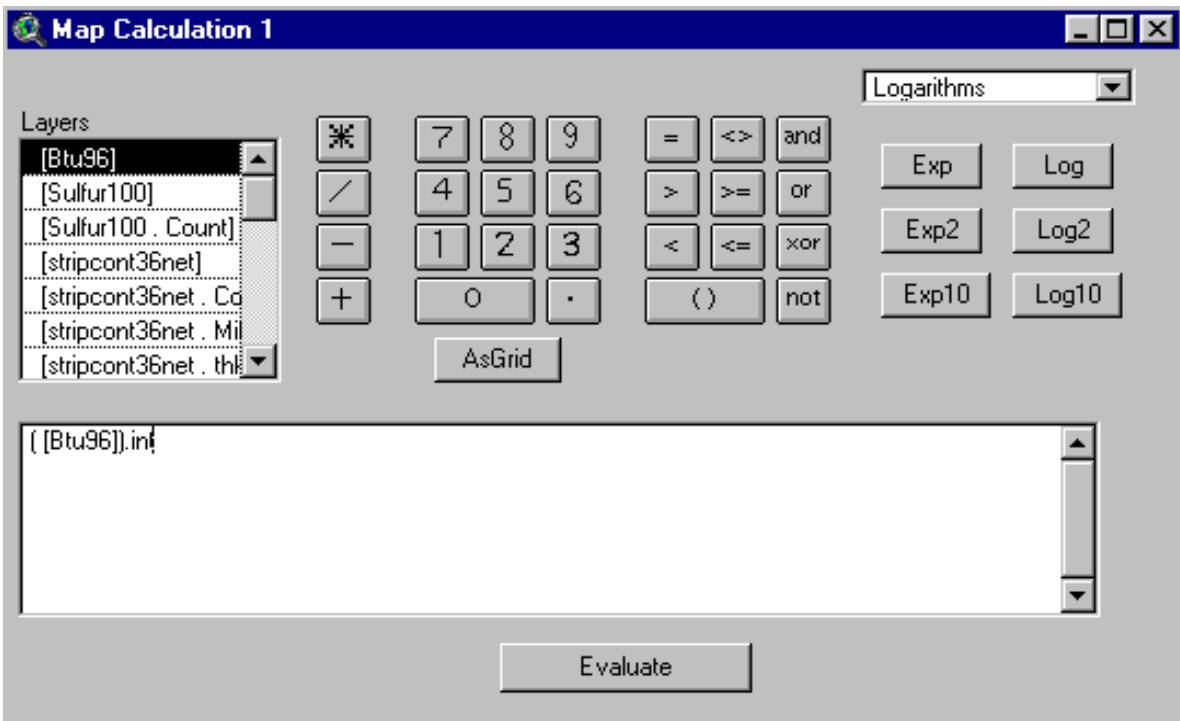
Name the grid: Btu16.

Task 5

Add the average btu value to the tables.

Select Btu16 as the summarizing theme.

Apply **Method A.**

The **Final** tables are shown below:

Attributes Of Lmu1236surfcz

Value	Count	Million_tons_coa	Thickness_(in)	Overburden_(ft)	Partings_(in)	Sulfur_(%)	Btu/lb
0	13707	3.3	26	9.5	3.5	3.56	13166
1	35396	7.0	21	11.4	4.8	3.60	12502
2	62396	15.4	26	6.1	3.0	3.66	13285

Attributes Of Lmu36surfcz

Value	Count	Million_tons_coa	Thickness_(in)	Overburden_(ft)	Paring_(in)	Sulfur_(%)	Btu/lb
0	152610	86.4	60	28	5.7	3.31	12839
1	25566	12.0	50	25	1.7	2.44	13075
2	26026	14.2	58	2	11.8	2.88	12488
3	82344	51.6	66	32	13.7	2.84	12363
4	113529	56.9	53	24	6.5	4.41	12260
5	195896	88.3	48	22	4.0	3.88	12206
6	110796	68.5	65	32	3.8	3.56	12437
7	132384	62.4	50	25	16.4	3.84	12274
8	185955	106.3	60	28	8.3	1.78	13477
10	47636	29.4	65	42	3.5	2.49	13382
11	74668	41.0	58	28	2.5	3.66	13390
12	114252	75.0	69	26	2.8	3.35	13406
13	41008	34.0	87	59	2.5	2.66	13607
14	10550	10.4	104	9	1.9	1.89	13134
15	15212	6.1	42	18	3.9	2.74	11890

6 - 77

Value	Count	Million_tons_coa	Thickness_[in]	Overburden_[ft]	Parting_[in]	Sulfur_[%]	Btu/lb
0	13664	8.2	63	66	6.7	3.12	12478
2	32495	20.1	65	51	15.0	3.07	12899
3	79886	46.5	61	56	4.3	3.04	12280

Add and record the available coal for the 3 surface mining technologies.

Make the table for **Lmu1236surfcz** active.

Make "million tons coal" field active.

Use the Select Tool. Hold the shift key down. Select all records except the "Zero" record.

Recall the "Zero" record is coal in restricted areas.

Under the Field Menu, click "Statistics."

Record the sum.

Click the "Select None" button to remove highlighting from table.

Repeat this procedure for **Lmu36surfcz and Lmusasmz.**

The totals for the Pittsburgh assessment are:

Mining Technology	Million Tons Available Coal	Million Tons Restricted Coal
Small Area Surface Mine (>36 inch thickness)	66.6	8.2
Strip Contour Mines (12-36 inch thickness)	22.4	3.3
Strip Contour Mines (>36 inch thickness)	656.1	86.4

Rename grids to more convenient names.

Save the current project.

Start a new project.

Open a new view.

Toggle on the Spatial analyst Extension.

Under File Menu, click "Manage Data Sources" to access the Source Manager:

Then rename the initial grids with the following names:

(You would, of course, use your project path when you rename the grids.)

Coverage	Original Names	New Name
Stripping Ratio*10 as grid		
Surface Mineable Coal	c:\testuser\calc2	c:\testuser\stripratio10
Surface Mineable Coal as		
a 0-1 grid	c:\testuser\calc3	c:\testuser\surf01
Surface Mineable Coal as		
a 1-null grid	c:\testuser\calc4	c:\testuser\surf1null
Surface Mineable Coal net		
of Restricted Coal	c:\testuser\calc6	c:\testuser\surfnetrestr1
Surface Mineable Coal le 36		
inch. as a 0-1 grid	c:\testuser\calc1	c:\testuser\surf01le36
Surface Mineable Coal le 36		
inch. as a 1-null grid	c:\testuser\calc2	c:\testuser\surfle36null
Surface Mineable Coal le 36		
inch. net of restri, 0-1 grid	c:\testuser\calc3	c:\testuser\surfle36net
Surface Mineable Coal le 36		
inch. net of restri, 1-null grid	c:\testuser\calc4	c:\testuser\surfle36netx
Surface Mineable Coal le 36		
inch. as coal regions	c:\testuser\calc5	c:\testuser\surfle36reg
LMU's 12-36 inch coal, aggregate		
available & restricted	c:\testuser\calc6	c:\testuser\lmu1236surfcx
LMU's 12-36 inch coal, available		
by LMU & restricted	c:\testuser\calc8	c:\testuser\lmu1236surfcz
Surface Mineable Coal gt 36		
inch. as a 0-1 grid	c:\testuser\calc9	c:\testuser\surf01gt36
Surface Mineable Coal gt 36		
inch. as a 1-null grid	c:\testuser\calc10	c:\testuser\surfgt36null
Surface Mineable Coal gt 36		
inch. net of restri, 0-1 grid	c:\testuser\calc11	c:\testuser\surfgt36net
Surface Mineable Coal gt 36		
inch. net of restri, 1-null grid	c:\testuser\calc12	c:\testuser\surfgt36netx
Surface Mineable Coal gt 36		
inch. as coal regions	c:\testuser\calc13	c:\testuser\surfgt36reg
LMU's gt 36 inch coal, aggregate		
available & restricted	c:\testuser\calc7	c:\testuser\lmu36surfcx
LMU's gt 36 inch coal, available		
by LMU & restricted	c:\testuser\calc16	c:\testuser\lmu36surfcz

LMU's small area coal, aggregate available & restricted	c:\testuser\calc14	c:\testuser\lmusasmx
LMU's small area coal, available by LMU & restricted	c:\testuser\calc15	c:\testuser\lmusasmz
Sulfur Grid 96 meters	c:\testsuer\sface1	c:\testuser\sulfur96
Sulfur Grid * 100 16 meters	c:\testuser\calc26	c:\testuser\sulfur100
Btu Grid 96 meters	c:\testuser\sface2	c:\testuser\btu96
Btu Grid 16 meters	c:\testuser\calc27	c:\testuser\btu16

Congratulations!!!!
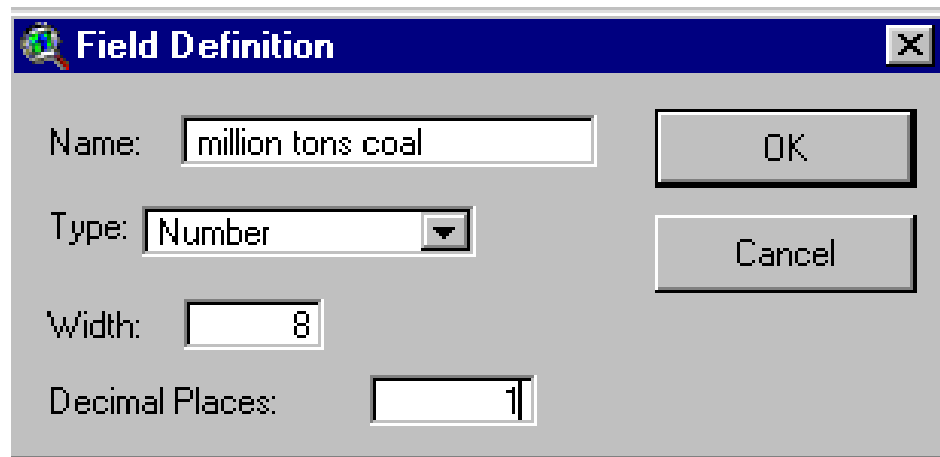
You have finished Chapter 6.

You have completed a detailed analysis of coal available for surface mining.

During this exercise, we used the full suite of tools available in GIS.

Pat yourself on the back.

Tons of Coal

Field Definition

Name: million tons coal

Type: Number

Width: 8

Decimal Places: 1

OK

Cancel

Field Calculator

Fields

[Sum]
[Variety]
[Majority]
[Minority]
[Median]
[million tons coal]

Type

● Number
○ String
○ Date

Requests

×
+
-
..
/
<
<=
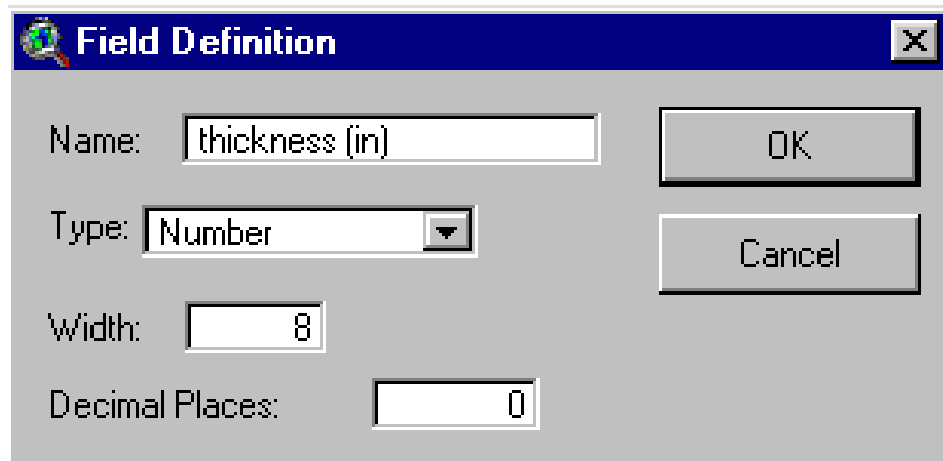
[million tons coal] =

[Sum] / 1000000

OK

Cancel

Thickness

Field Definition

Name: thickness (in)

Type: Number

Width: 8

Decimal Places: 0

[OK]   [Cancel]

Field Calculator

Fields
[Mean]
[Std]
[Sum]
[Variety]
[Majority]
[Minority]
[Median]

Type
○ Number
○ String
○ Date

Requests
×
+
-
..
/
<
<=

[thickness (in)] =

[Mean]

[OK]   [Cancel]

Overburden

Field Definition

Name: overburden (ft)

Type: Number

Width: 8

Decimal Places: 0

OK

Cancel

Field Calculator

Fields
- [Mean]
- [Std]
- [Sum]
- [Variety]
- [Majority]
- [Minority]
- [Median]

Type
- ● Number
- ○ String
- ○ Date

Requests
- ×
- +
- -
- ..
- /
- <
- <=

[overburden (ft)] =

[Mean]

OK

Cancel

Parting

Sulfur

Field Definition

Name: sulfur (%)

Type: Number

Width: 8

Decimal Places: 2

[OK] [Cancel]

Field Calculator

Fields
- [Range]
- [Mean]
- [Std]
- [Sum]
- [Variety]
- [Majority]
- [Minority]

Type
- ◉ Number
- ○ String
- ○ Date

Requests
- ×
- +
- -
- ..
- /
- <
- <=

[sulfur (%)] =

[Mean] / 100

[OK] [Cancel]

Btu

Field Definition

Name: btu/lb

Type: Number

Width: 8

Decimal Places: 0

OK   Cancel

Field Calculator

Fields
- [Range]
- [Mean]
- [Std]
- [Sum]
- [Variety]
- [Majority]
- [Minority]

Type
- ◉ Number
- ○ String
- ○ Date

Requests
- ×
- +
- -
- ..
- /
- <
- <=

[btu/lb] =

[Mean]

OK   Cancel

Chapter 7.

COAL AVAILABILITY BY MINING TECHNOLOGY
AUGER MINING

Purpose: In this Chapter, we estimate coal available for prospective mining by auger mining methods and by thickness within the auger method.

Overview: We estimate the amount of coal available for auger mining. Coal is auger mined starting from the point where strip contour mining stops. We assume that auger mining can remove coal that is within 50 feet of the point where surface mining stops.   Coal can be surface mined when its stripping ratio is equal to or less than 20 to 1 and when the surface slope is equal to or less than 32 degrees. We apply both of these criteria to determine the extent of prospective surface mineable coal.

Mining costs are affected by coal thickness. Generally, thicker coal has a lower cost per ton compared to thin coal. When mine costing is applied to the assessed coal, we use different configurations that vary according to coal thickness. To have the correct breakouts, our assessment in this chapter separates out the coal for auger removal into two thickness categories: 12 to 36 inch thick coal and > 36 inch thick coal.

The coal in areas where social and environmental restrictions apply is then removed from the coal targeted for auger removal. Next, we check to see if there is enough coal to support a minimum-size mining operation.

Open a new ArcView project.

Add a View Window. Do not add any themes.

Under the File Menu, set Working Directory to your project path.

Representative Mine Sizes by Mining Technology and Coal Thickness

Mining Technology	Coal Thickness (inches)	Pure Coal Handled (tons/year)	Recovery Rate (decimal)	Mine Life (years)	Minimum-Size Resource Block (tons)	Maximum-Size Resource Block (tons)
Contour Strip	12-36	711,976	0.78	5	4,563,949	13,700,000
Contour Strip	>36	921,744	0.93	5	4,955,613	14,900,000
Small Area Surface	12+	1,333,942	0.93	5	7,171,731	21,500,000
Auger	12-36	71,017	0.3	5	1,183,617	3,600,000
Auger	>36	150,427	0.3	5	2,507,117	7,500,000
Longwall	42-72	4,129,614	0.73	10	56,570,055	169,700,000
Longwall	72-96	5,761,744	0.73	10	78,928,000	236,800,000
Longwall	96+	5,301,150	0.75	10	70,682,000	212,000,000
Continuous Underground	24-42	839,754	0.62	10	13,544,419	40,600,000
Continuous Underground	42-72	1,283,774	0.65	10	19,750,369	59,300,000
Continuous Underground	72-96	1,760,962	0.68	10	25,896,500	77,700,000
Continuous Underground	96+	2,090,376	0.71	10	29,441,915	88,300,000

Table 7-1. Representative Mine Configurations for the Pittsburgh Coal Bed. (Coal thickness, pure coal handled, and recovery rate from COALVAL, revised by T. Rohrbacher, 2000.)

Pure Coal Handled is Run of Mine without Parting and Dilution
Minimum-Size Block is a Logical Mining Unit (LMU)
Maximum-Size Block is a generalized block of coal for assessment purposes.

Blocks by mining technology and thickness categories are sized between the minimum and maximum size. The objective is to approach the maximum size when that is possible. A mining block has <u>contiguous coal</u> for underground operations and <u>closely-spaced coal</u> for surface operations. All coal will be cut up by areas where social and environmental restrictions apply. Also, some areas with underground coal and with surface coal may end before coal quantities approach the maximum-size resource block. Because of these various constraints, coal resource blocks will range between the minimum and maximum resource block sizes. In any case, to be considered in the analysis for mining, a coal resource block has to have the minimum size listed in Table 7-1.

The coal resource assessment method outlined in this Guide recognizes these constraints:
- Geologic data available through the National Coal Resource Assessment (NCRA)are not sufficiently detailed to support mine-scale analysis.
- The methods (as applied to NCRA data) provide as assessment that has validity at a regional scale.
- Analysis at a more detailed scale would require additional dense data, which often are not available to public agencies such as the U.S. Geological Survey.
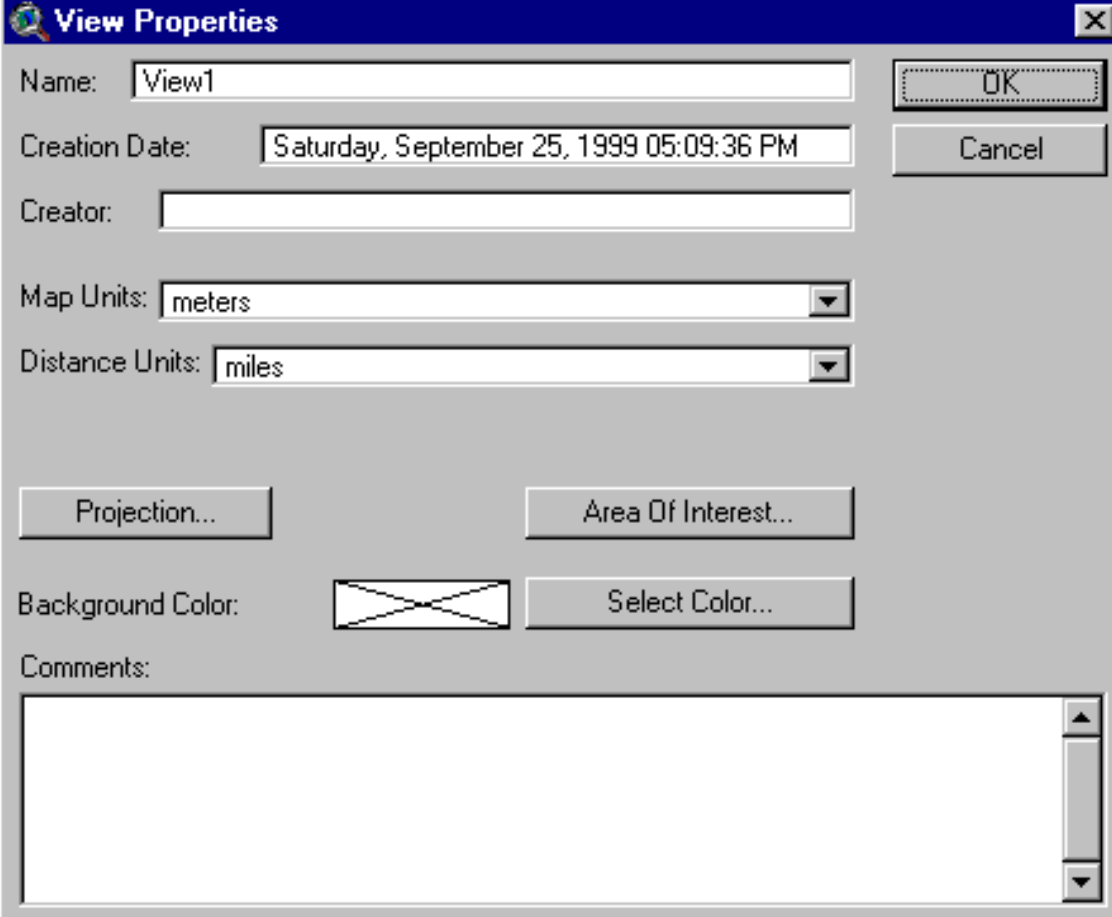
Table 7-1 reports "Pure Coal Handled" based upon mine configurations developed in COALVAL, which is a cost engineering model of coal mining operations. We need pure coal because the assessment undertaken via this Guide is for pure coal. By pure coal, we mean coal only, rather than a composite of coal, parting, and dilution material (from mine roofs and floors).

The NCRA is based upon estimates from drill cores, outcrops, and channel samples. The coal thickness from the various data sources is for coal only. We, of course, also have data (for the Pittsburgh coal bed) on partings and we use that data to obtain a parting estimate. Parting is material, ranging from several inches up to several feet in thickness, interspersed within a coal bed. Parting has some heat content, usually less than half the value of pure coal.

COALVAL spreadsheets report the pure coal component of the mine configurations. Also, COALVAL spreadsheets report dilution and the total amount of material handled in a mining operation. In table 7-1, we use the pure coal component from COALVAL to guide our GIS assessment of pure coal.

Open View Properties and enter these settings:


```
┌─────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┐
│ 🔍 View Properties                                              [X]  │
├─────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┤
│  Name:  │View1                                    │    ┌──────────┐  │
│                                                        │    OK    │  │
│  Creation Date:   │Saturday, September 25, 1999 05:09:36 PM│        │
│                                                        ┌──────────┐  │
│  Creator:  │                                    │      │  Cancel  │  │
│                                                                      │
│  Map Units: │meters                              ▼│                 │
│                                                                      │
│  Distance Units: │miles                           ▼│                │
│                                                                      │
│                                                                      │
│  ┌──────────────┐                  ┌──────────────────┐             │
│  │ Projection...│                  │ Area Of Interest...│           │
│  └──────────────┘                  └──────────────────┘             │
│                                                                      │
│  Background Color:    ┌────────┐   ┌──────────────────┐             │
│                       │   ╳    │   │  Select Color... │             │
│                       └────────┘   └──────────────────┘             │
│  Comments:                                                          │
│  ┌───────────────────────────────────────────────────┐ ▲          │
│  │                                                   │             │
│  │                                                   │             │
│  │                                                   │ ▼          │
│  └───────────────────────────────────────────────────┘            │
└─────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────────┘
```

Under the **File Menu**

Click Extensions

Toggle on Spatial Analyst

In View 1 add these **grid** themes:

      rem16bufp12
      lmu1236surfcz
      lmu36surfcz
      lmusasmz
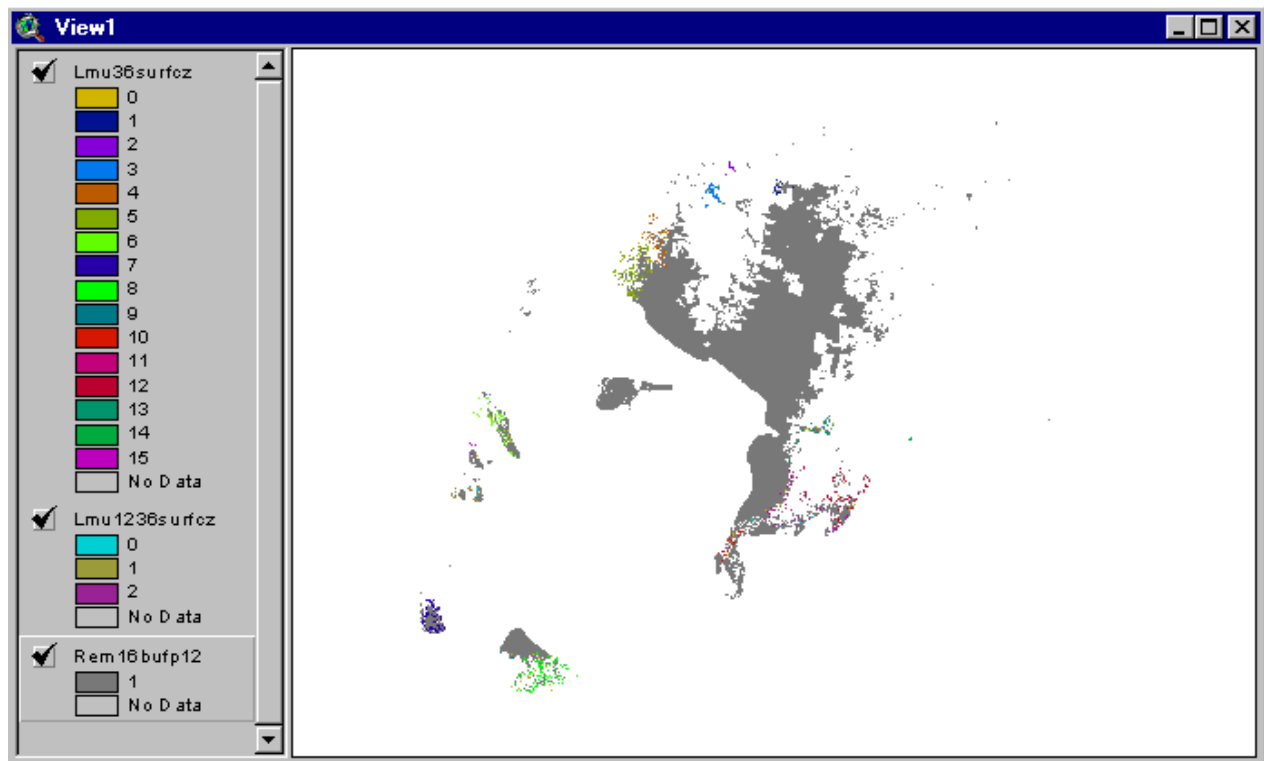
Update the Remaining Coal Layer by Removing Coal Allocated to Surface Mining

Our first task is to remove from remaining coal (Rem15bufp12) any coal already allocated to surface mining:

Lmu1236surfcz (with includes coal in restricted areas identified by cell value = 0)

Lmu36surfcz (which includes coal in restricted areas identified by cell value = 0)

Lmusasmz (which includes coal in restricted areas identified by cell value = 0)

We take out the cells with coal and the restricted cells. The resulting layer has coal that remains available for auger mining.

This layer can serve as a mask for determining coal assigned to auger for coal in the 12 to 36 inch thickness category (i.e., our first category of augered coal).

The 0 cells in each layer are changed to non-zero (=9 or 99) and the null values are changed to 0.

Note: For some calculations, it is necessary to have the 0 cells carry a value other than 0. When cells have a zero value, they will be evaluated "false" in a logical condition preceding a request in a Map Calculator expression. When we don't want that to happen, then it is necessary to reclassify the grid and assign another value such as 9 or 99. A non-zero value (such as 9 or 99) will be evaluated "true" in a logical condition preceding a request in a Map Calculator expression. However, you have to be careful when you change the 0 value. Within a given grid, a value = 9 may already be assigned to a group of cells. Then, if you changed the 0 cells to 9 they would be grouped with the original 9-cells in the reclassified grid. Ordinarily we do not want this to occur.

Before evaluating an expression that requires the 0-cells to be reclassified (so they evaluate "true"), you should open the coverage table and sort on Value in descending order. If the highest value is a 1-digit number less than 9, then 9 can be used in the reclassify request. Similarly, if the highest value is a 2-digit number less than 99, then 99 can be used, and so on. In the pages ahead, some of the time you will see 9 used for the 0-cells, at other times 99 will be used for the 0-cells, and still at other times 999 will be used for the 0-cells. The objective is to keep the 0-cells in a unique new value category. Using a higher number, for example 99 rather than 9 (when 9 may do), is a conservative approach that will have the same outcome as using 9.

Currently, the layer, Lmu1236surfcz, is classified as follows:
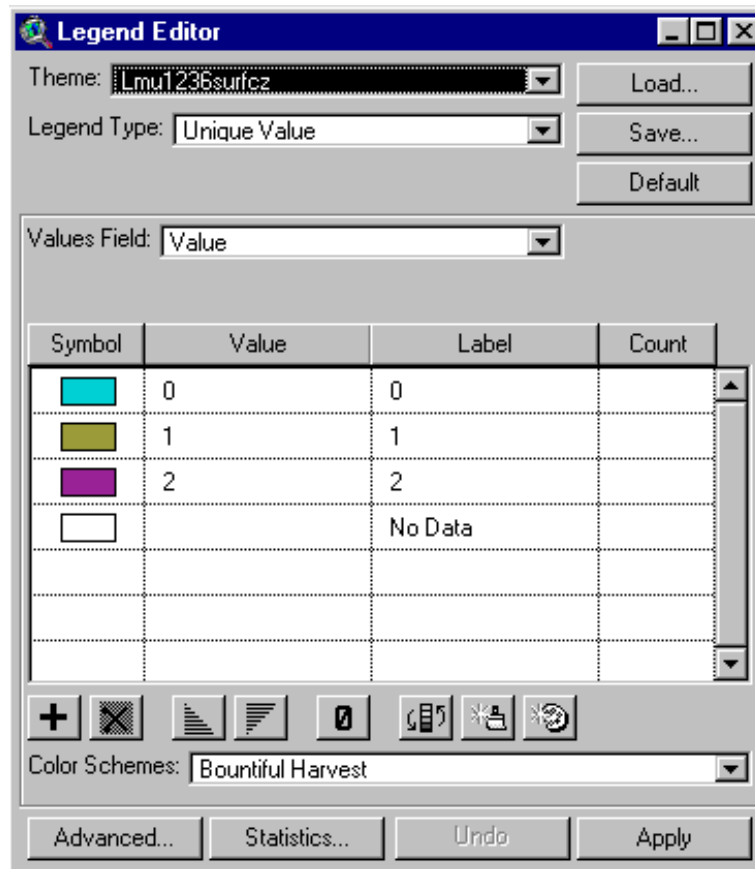
Cells with value=0 indicate restricted coal.

Cells with value=1 indicate available coal in coal resource block #1.

Cells with value=2 indicate available coal in coal resource block #2.

We reclassify Lmu1236surfcz as follows:

Reclassify Values

Classification Field: Value ▾

[Classify...]   [Unique]   [Lookup...]

Old Values	New Value
0	9
1	1
2	2
No Data	0

[+] [×]

[Load]

[Save]   [OK]   [Cancel]
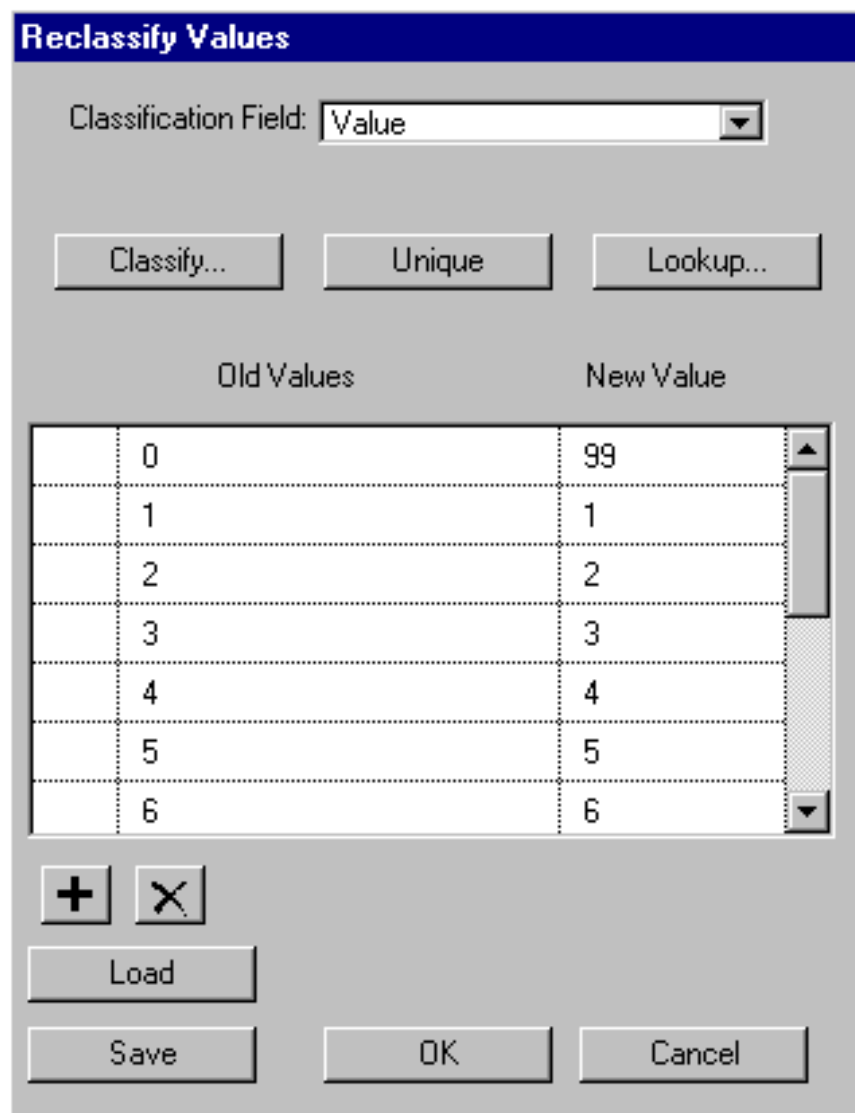
When you enter 0 in the New Value field, don't forget to press the enter key before you click OK.

We reclassify Lmu36surfcz as follows:

     0 cells to 99
     1-15 cells no change
     null cells to 0

Reclassify Values

Classification Field: Value

[Classify...] [Unique] [Lookup...]
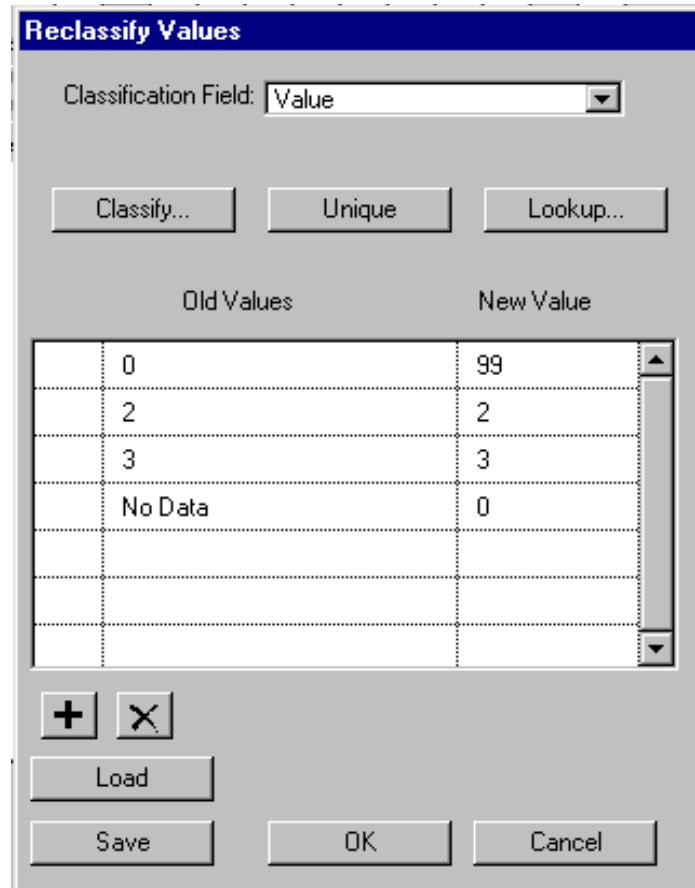
Old Values	New Value
0	99
1	1
2	2
3	3
4	4
5	5
6	6

[+] [X]

[Load]

[Save] [OK] [Cancel]

We reclassify Lmusasmz as follows:

> 0 cells to 99
> 1-3 cells no change
> null cells to 0

Reclassify Values

Classification Field: Value

| Classify... | Unique | Lookup... |

Old Values	New Value
0	99
2	2
3	3
No Data	0

+ **✕**

Load
Save   OK   Cancel

Next, we remove coal already allocated to surface mining from layer Rem16bufp12. This is step one to build a mask so that coal targeted for auger mining is not on coal already allocated to surface mining.

In Analysis Properties, enter these settings:

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent | Same As Rem16bufp12

Left | -155677.503175   Top | 1970643.69375

Bottom | 1693107.69375   Right | 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size | As Specified Below

Cell Size | 16   m

Number of Rows | 17346

Number of Columns | 21718

Analysis Mask | No Mask Set

OK   Cancel

In Map Calculator, evaluate this expression:
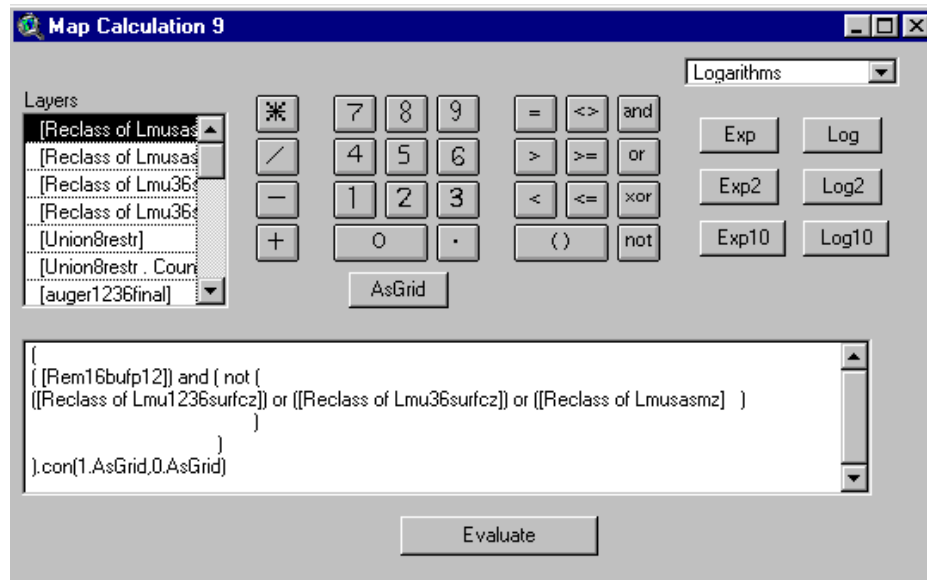
Map Calculation 9

Layers:
[Reclass of Lmusas
[Reclass of Lmusas
[Reclass of Lmu36s
[Reclass of Lmu36s
[Union8restr]
[Union8restr . Cour
[auger1236final]

Logarithms

```
(
( [Rem16bufp12]) and ( not (
([Reclass of Lmu1236surfcz]) or ([Reclass of Lmu36surfcz]) or ([Reclass of Lmusasmz]  )
                                 )
                          )
).con(1.AsGrid,0.AsGrid)
```

Evaluate

The second step is to change cells with 0 to null.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this expression:

Map Calculation 10

Layers:
[Map Calculation 9]
[Map Calculation 9]
[Reclass of Lmusas
[Reclass of Lmusas
[Reclass of Lmu36s
[Reclass of Lmu36s
[Union8restr]

Logarithms

```
( [Map Calculation 9] = 0).SetNull(1.AsGrid)
```

Evaluate

7 - 12
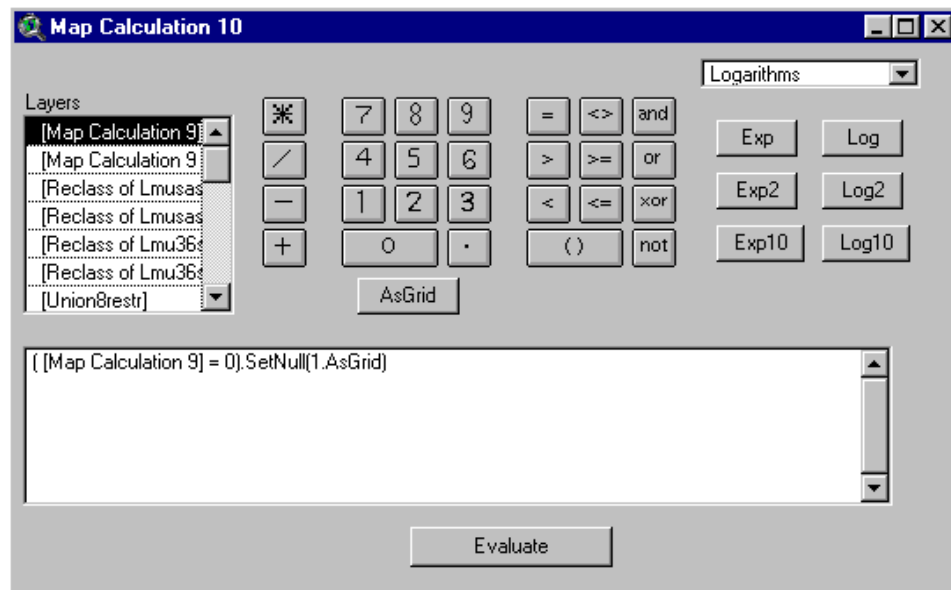
The layer, Map Calculation 10, has all the cells with

> Remaining coal equal to or greater than 12 inches in thickness

> Coal in safety barriers around mined-out coal removed, and

> Coal allocated to surface mining removed

In theme properties, rename the new grid: remsurfout.

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Remsurfout will be used as a mask to keep coal for auger mining out of cells that are restricted.

Auger Mining in the 50 foot zone around Contour Strip Mines on Coal, 12 to 36 inches in Thickness

The next step is to expand Lmu1236surfcz by 1 cell. The 1 cell expansion (16 meters or approximately 50 feet in width) is the area where auger mining would take place. Auger mining starts at the contour strip highwall and can extend into the 50+ feet of coal beyond the highwall. We use a 16 meter expansion as an approximation.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
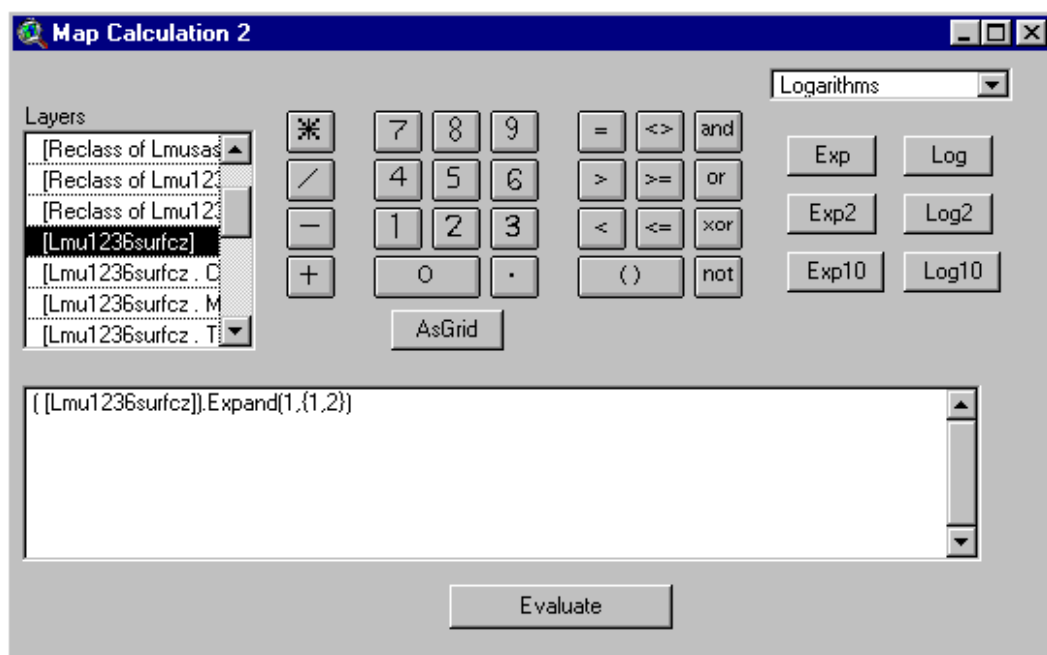
The layer, Map Calculation 4, expands Lmu1236surfcz by 1 cell. The expansion can extend into the areas that are restricted and into areas that do not have remaining coal.

[Note: The expand request applies a 1 cell expansion to cell regions that have Value = 1 and Value = 2. These are the cells that make up the area that is assigned for contour strip mining on coal with thicknesses between 12 and 36 inches.]

We correct the initial expansion (to eliminate expansion into restricted areas and areas without coal) by setting a mask and evaluating Map Calculation 4 with the mask in place.

Under the Analysis Menu:

Click Properties

Change the Mask to

Remsurfout

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
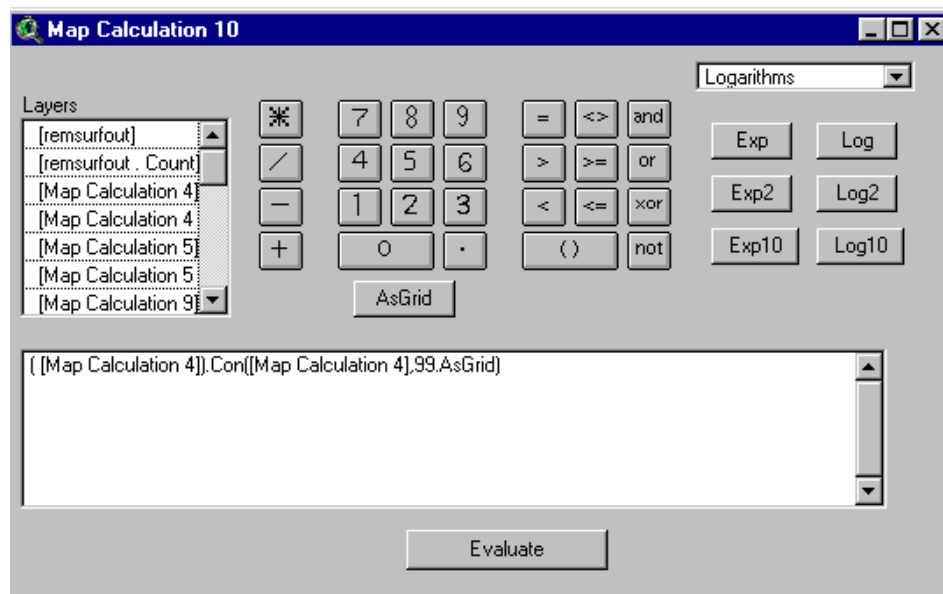
The layer, Remsurfout, is the area of remaining coal.

The layer, Lmu1236surfcz, is the area with contour strippable coal, 12 to 36 inches in thickness.

The layer, Map Calculation 10, a 16 m expansion of Lmu1236surfcz, is the area with coal for auger mining. Note that there is no expansion into restricted areas or into areas where there is no remaining coal.
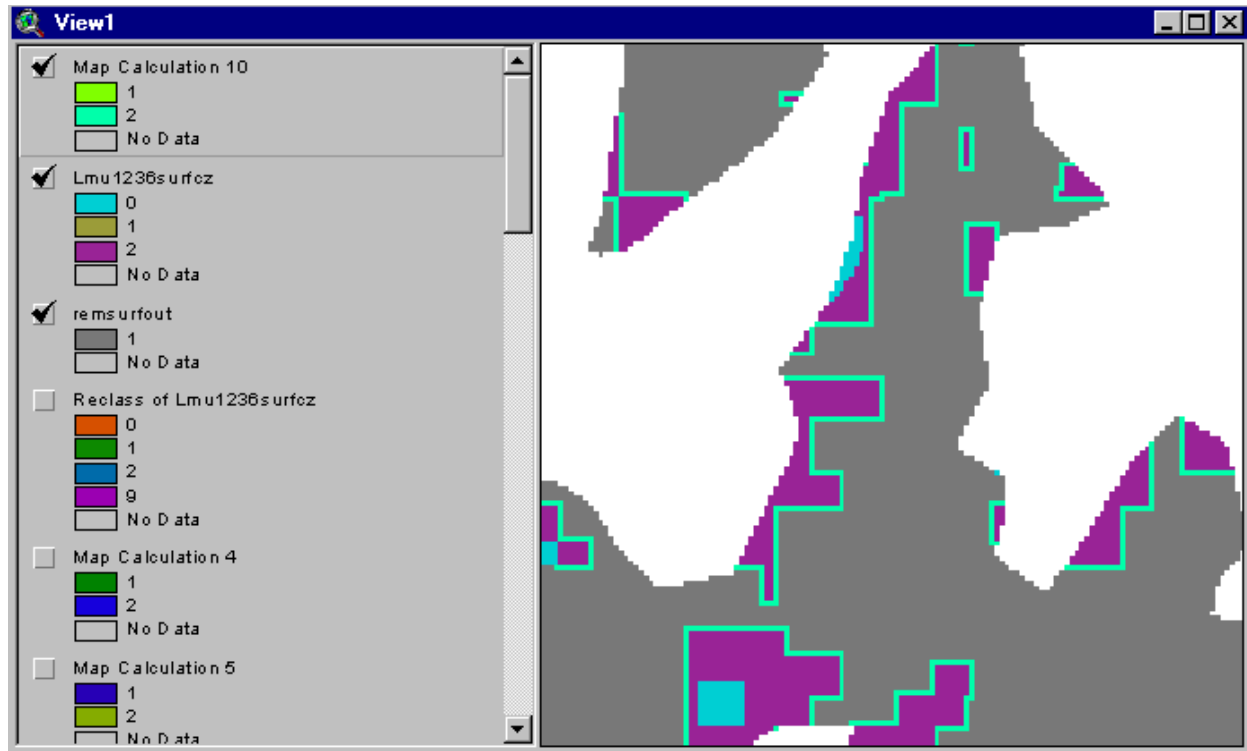
In chapter 5, we made a grid, union8restr, which has 8 categories of restrictions.

Add union8restr to View1.

Toggle on the display for union8restr

Union8restr has restricted areas for the entire Pittsburgh bed.

Up to this point, we have accounted only for restrictions to the coal allocated to surface mining.

We now remove any coal classified for auger mining that might extend into other restricted areas.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
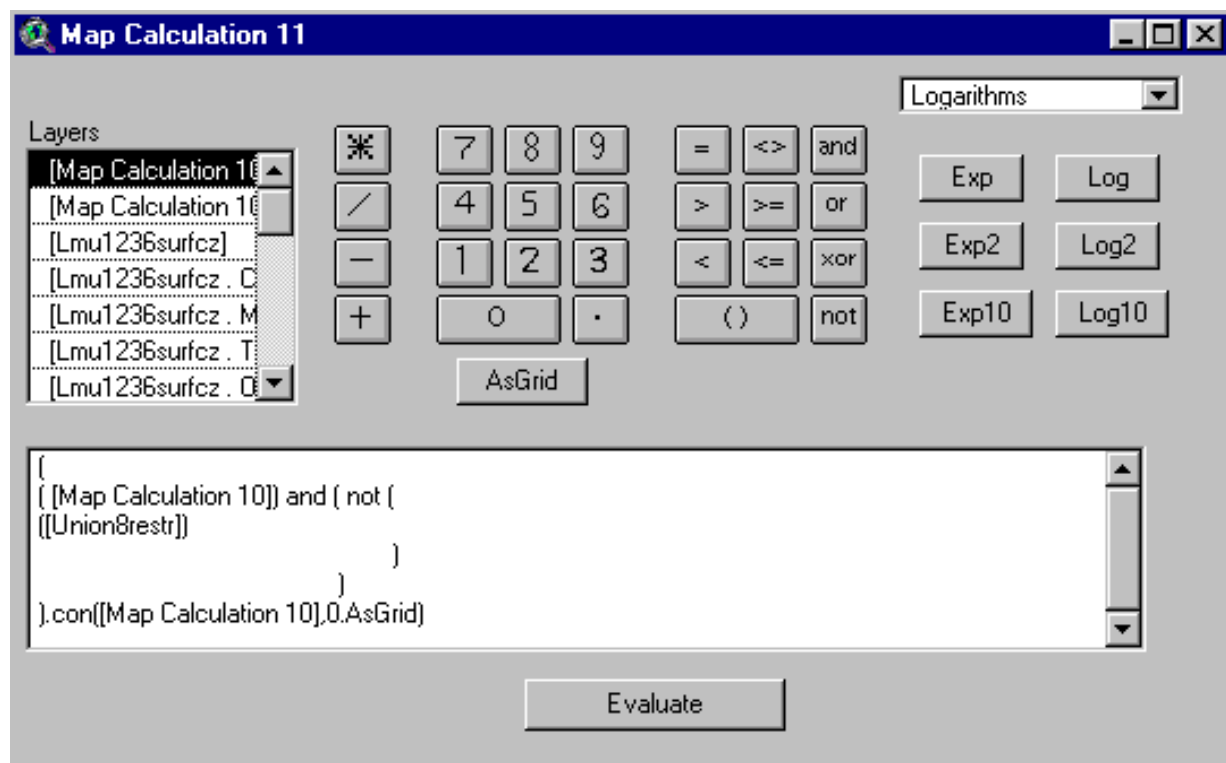
In theme properties, rename the new grid: auger1236.

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Next, we check to see if the coal in the auger resource blocks (1 and 2) in coverage auger1236 have enough tons to support a minimum-size mining operation.

Add tonsbycell to View1.

Use **Method A** (p. 6-66 & p. 6-84) to calculate the tons in auger1236:

Value	Count	Million_tons_coal
0	520	0.1
1	2889	0.6
2	19307	4.9

The minimum size resource block for an auger mine (12 to 36 inch thick coal) is 1.18 million tons (table 7-1, page 7-2). Coal resource block #1 has 0.6 million tons; resource block #2 has 4.9 million tons. Coal resource block #1 does not have enough tons for a viable operation.

Remove resource block #1 from auger1236.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
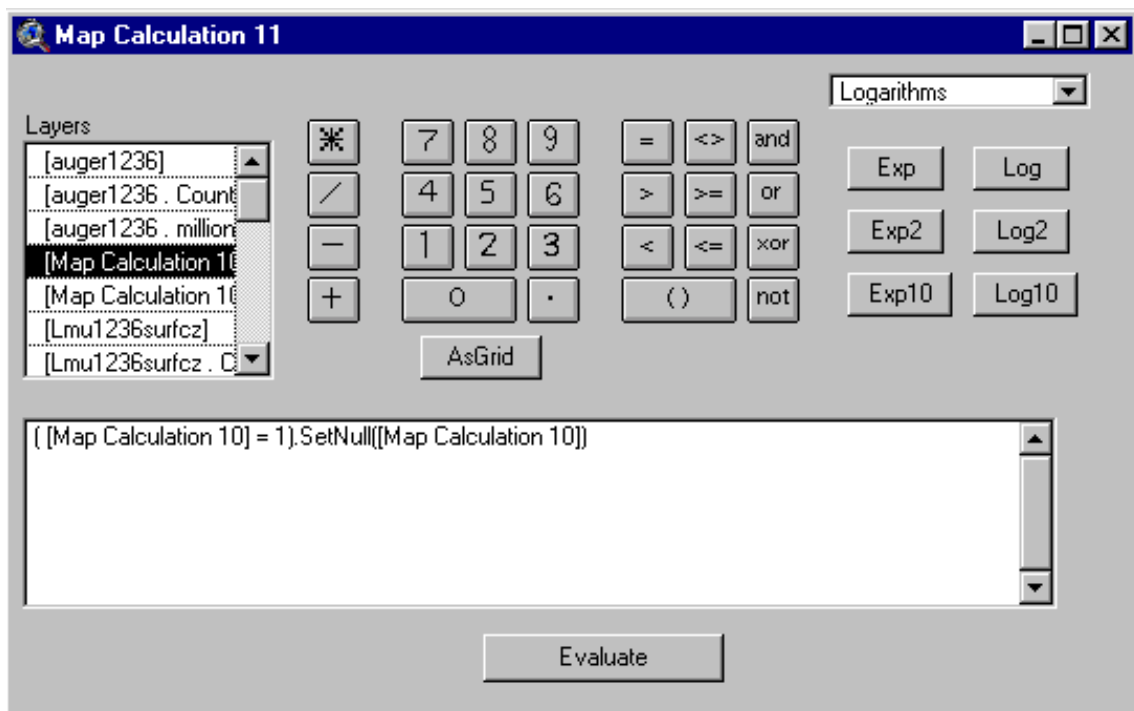
The layer, Map Calculation 10, has cells for coal resource block #2, coded as 2. The cells for resource block #2 include coal in restricted areas. The other cells in the coverage are coded as null including coal resource block #1 which does not meet minimum tonnage limits.

Next, we break out the cells in the coverage for coal resource block #2 that are restricted.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
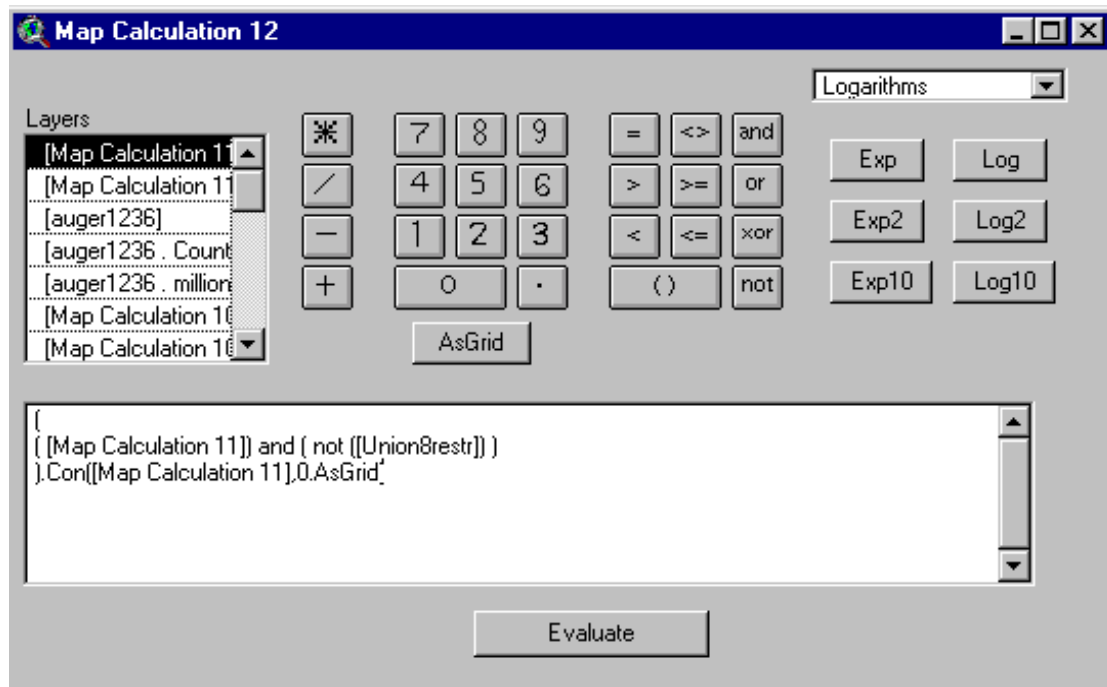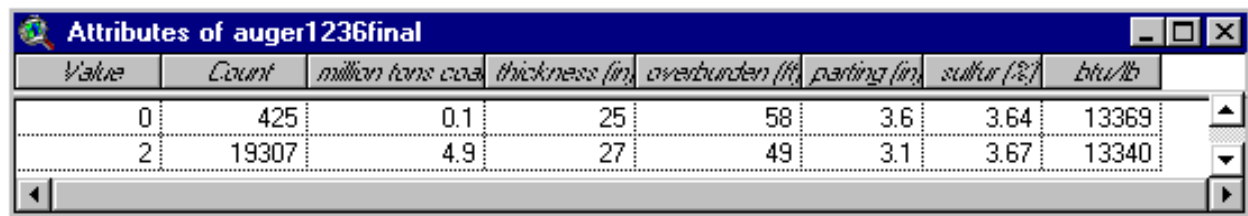
In Theme Properties, rename the new grid: auger1236final.

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Add these grids to View1:

       thk16
       ob16
       parting10
       sulfur100
       btu16

Use **Method A** (p. 6-66 & pp. 6-84 through 6-89) to add tons, thickness, overburden, partings, sulfur and btu/lb to the attribute table for theme, auger1236final:

Attributes of auger1236final

Value	Count	million tons coal	thickness (in)	overburden (ft)	parting (in)	sulfur (%)	btu/lb
0	425	0.1	25	58	3.6	3.64	13369
2	19307	4.9	27	49	3.1	3.67	13340

7 - 21

Next, we add a 1 cell (16 m) safety barrier to the area with auger mining.

Update the Layer of Remaining Coal by Removing Coal Allocated to Auger Mining, Coal with 12 to 36 Inches in Thickness

We begin by removing coal allocated to auger mining on coal 12 to 36 inches thick from remaining coal.

Under **Analysis Menu:**

Click Properties

Change Mask to

Rem16bufp12
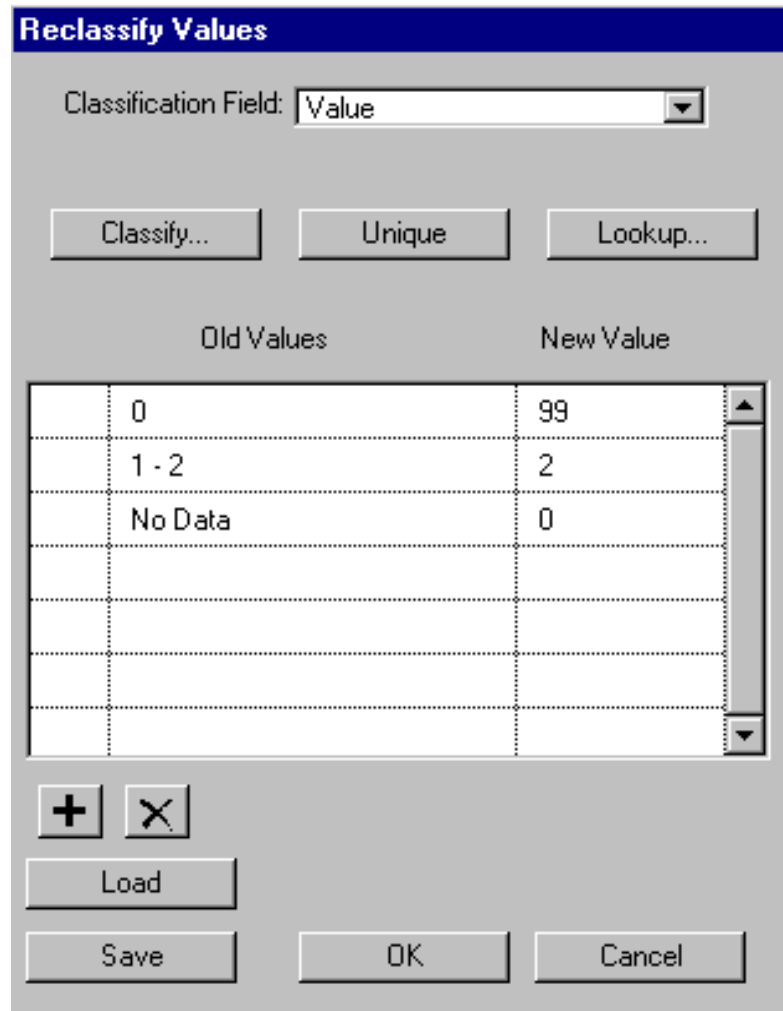
Reclassify Auger1236final as follows:

0 cells to 99
2 cell no change
null cells to 0

Reclassify Values

Classification Field: Value

Classify...   Unique   Lookup...

Old Values	New Value
0	99
1 - 2	2
No Data	0

+ **X**

Load

Save   OK   Cancel

Next, we remove coal already allocated to auger1236 from layer Remsurfout. This is step one to build a mask so that coal targeted for the barrier to auger mining is not on coal that has already been allocated.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this expression:
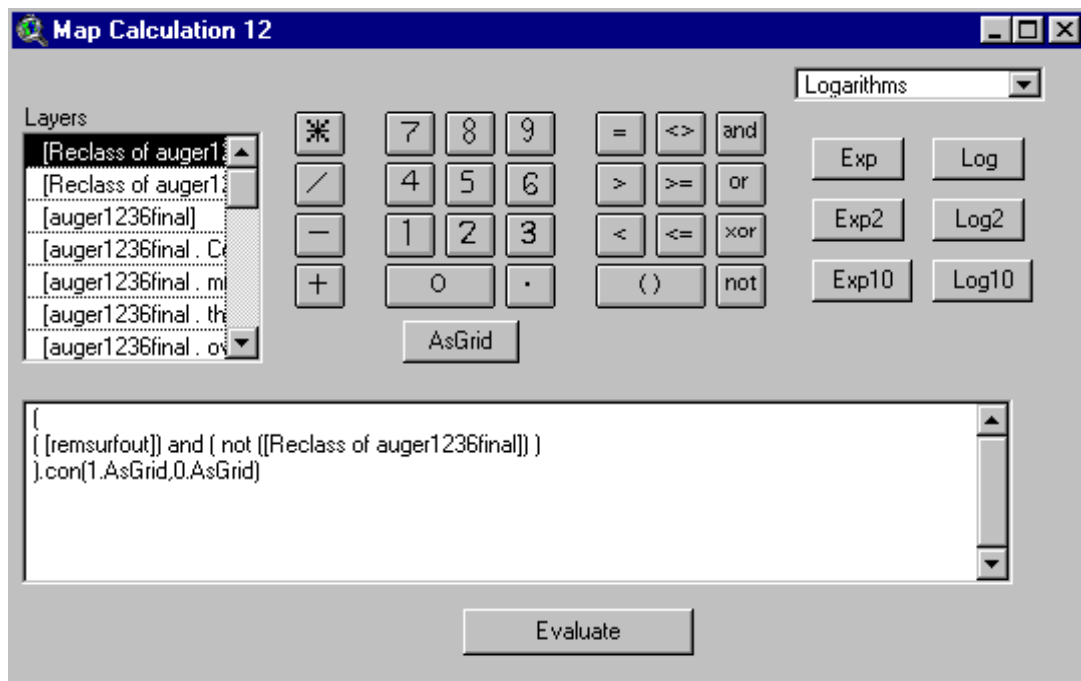
The second step is to change cells with 0 to null.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
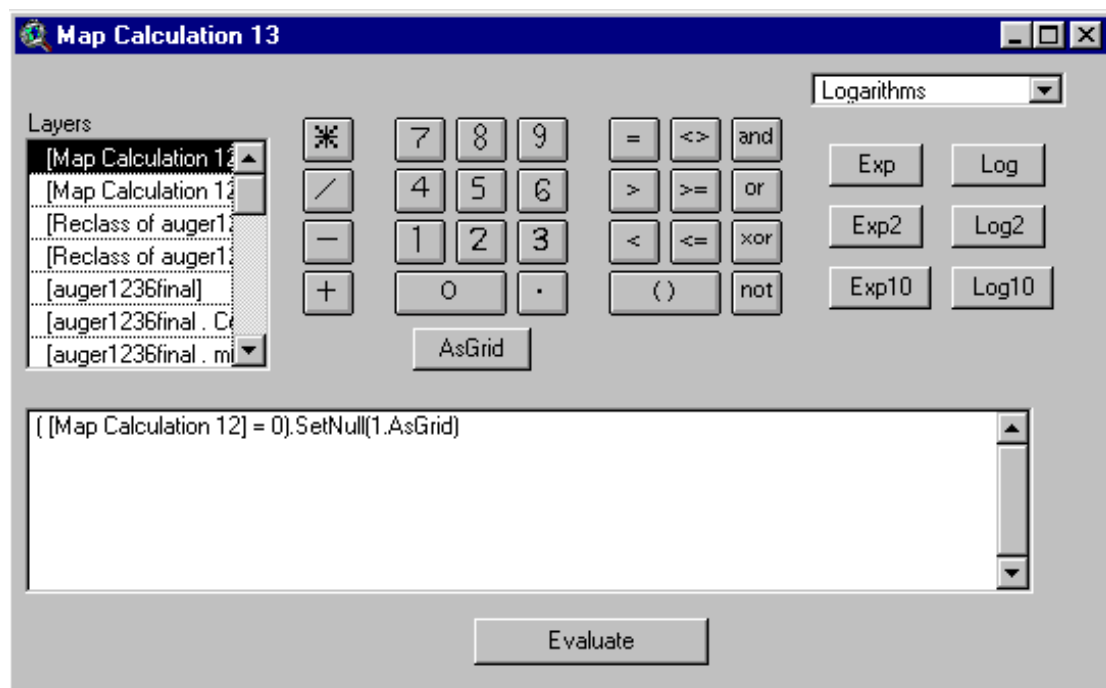
The layer, Map Calculation 13, has all the cells with

> Remaining coal equal to or greater than 12 inches in thickness
>
> Coal in safety barriers around mined-out coal removed
>
> Coal allocated to surface mining removed, and
>
> Coal allocated to auger mining (12 to 36 inch coal) removed.

In theme properties, rename the new grid: remsurfaug1236out.

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Remsurfaug1236out will be used as a mask to keep coal for auger mining safety barriers out of cells that are restricted.

Safety Barrier (50 feet) Around Area with Auger Mining, Coal 12 to 36 Inches in Thickness

The next step is to expand auger1236final by 1 cell. The 1 cell expansion is 16 meters or approximately 50 feet in width.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
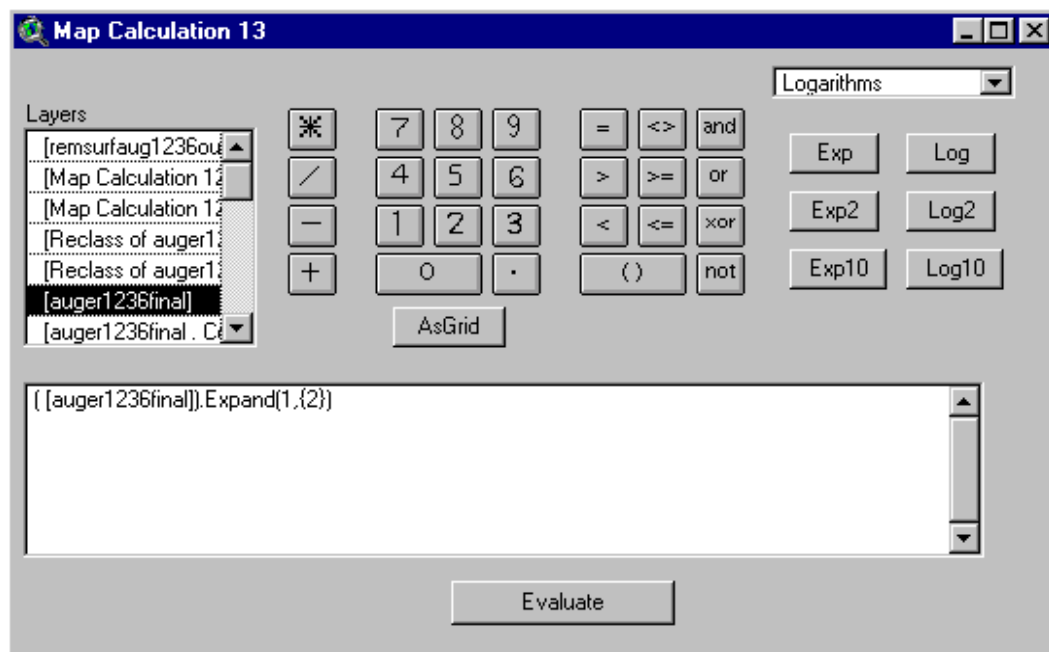
The layer, Map Calculation 13 is a 1 cell expansion of auger1236final. The expansion can extend into the areas that are restricted and into areas that do not have remaining coal.

We correct the initial expansion (to eliminate expansion into restricted areas and areas without coal) by setting a mask and evaluating Map Calculation 13 with the mask in place.

Under the Analysis Menu:

    Click Properties

    Change the Analysis Mask to

        Remsurfaug1236out

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
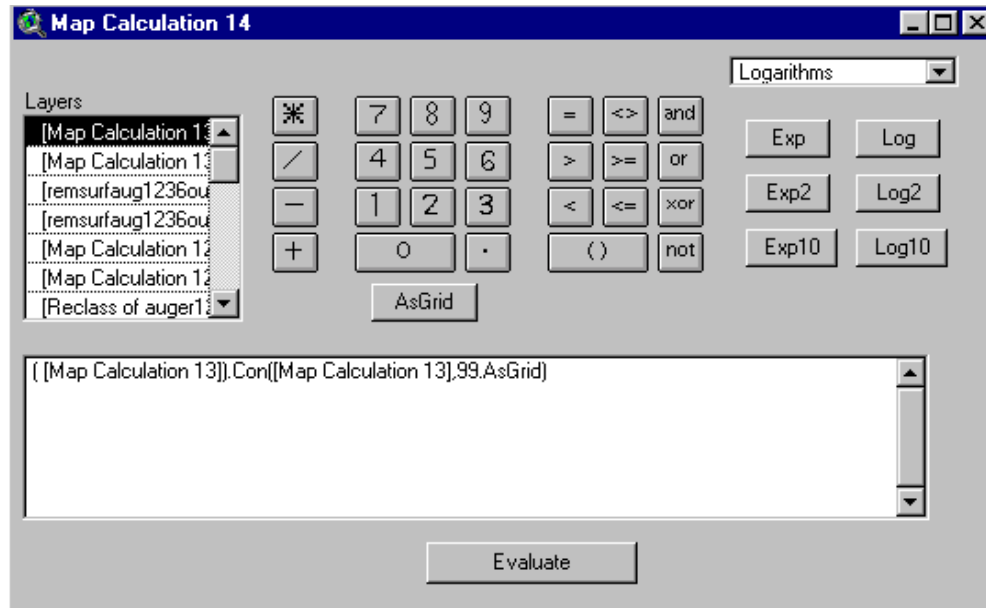
The layer, Remsurfaug1236out, is the area of remaining coal.

The layer, auger1236final, is the area where coal is augered.

The layer, Map Calculation 14, a 16 m expansion of auger1236final, is the area with coal for the safety barrier for auger mining. Note that there is no expansion into restricted areas or into areas where there is no remaining coal.

We now remove any coal in the safety barrier for auger mining that might extend into other restricted areas.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:

Map Calculation 15

Logarithms

Layers

[Map Calculation 14
[Map Calculation 14
[auger1236final]
[auger1236final . C
[auger1236final . m
[auger1236final . th
[auger1236final . ov

```
(
( [Map Calculation 14]) and ( not (
[[Union8restr] )
                          )
                 )
).con([Map Calculation 14],0.AsGrid)
```
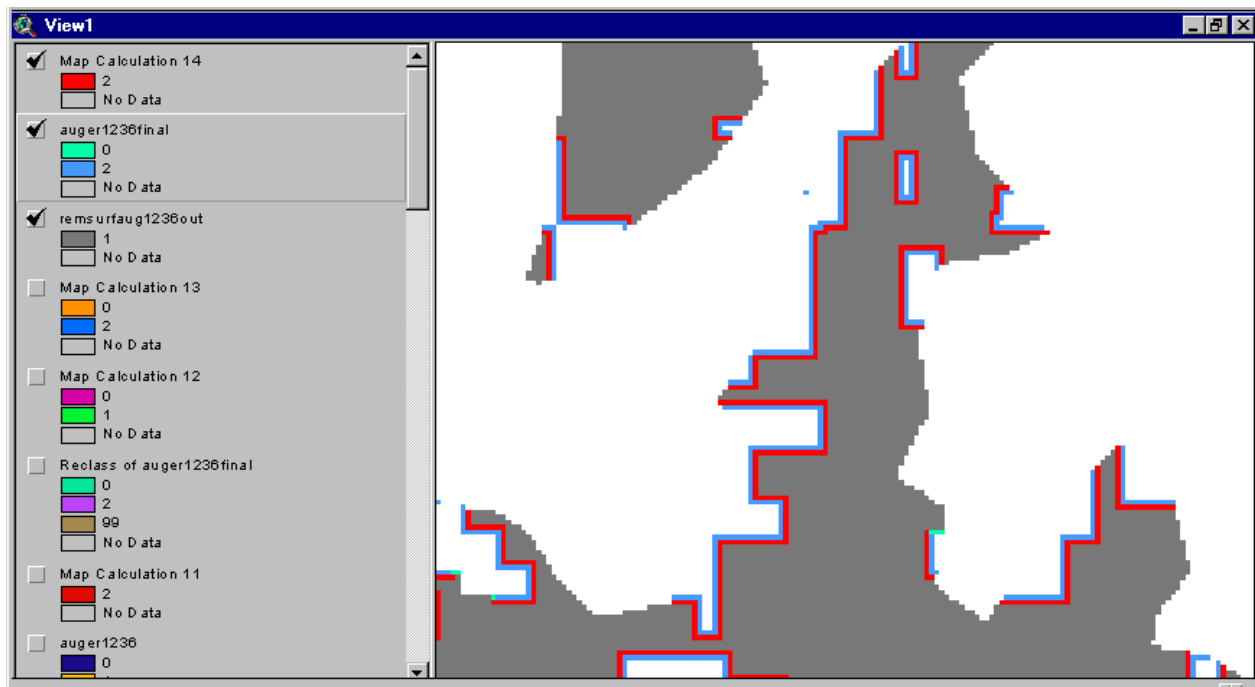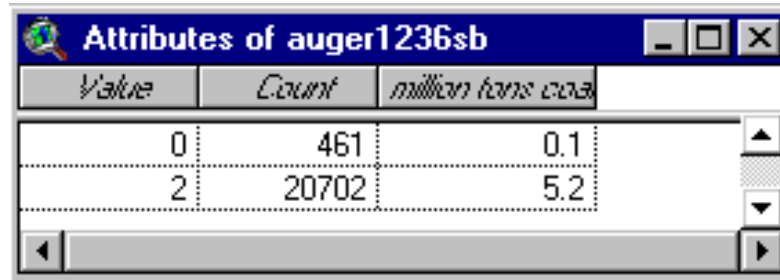
Evaluate
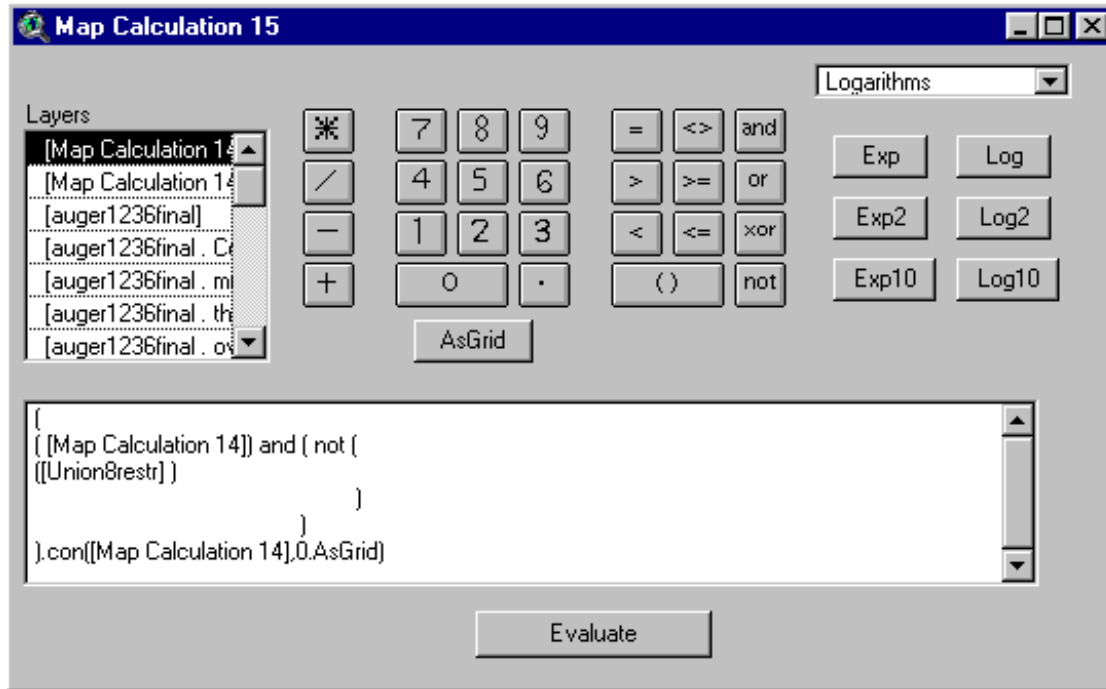
In theme properties, rename Map Calculation 15 as: auger1236sb (sb for safety barrier).

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Use **Method A** (page 6-66 & pp. 6-84 through 6-89) to calculate the tons in auger1236sb:

Value	Count	million tons coal
0	461	0.1
2	20702	5.2

Attributes of auger1236sb

We proceed, now, to process the layer for surface mineable coal 36 inches and greater in thickness (Lmu36surfcz). The objective is to extract additional coal by auger mining and to add a 50 foot safety buffer to the area that is mined by auger.

Coal in the safety barrier around contour strip mines (12 to 36 inches in thickness) is the latest coal tonnage calculated by the model.

The layer for this coal is called **auger1236sb.**
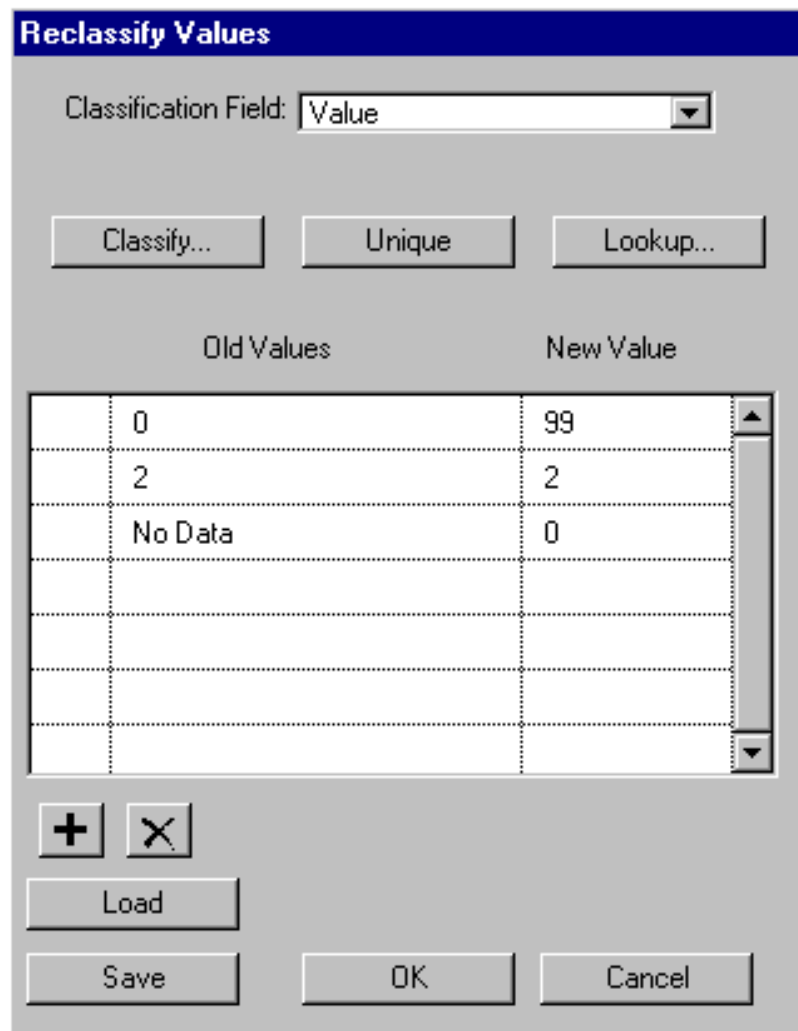
Update the Layer of Remaining Coal by Removing Coal Allocated to the Safety Barrier around Auger Mining, Coal with 12 to 36 Inches in Thickness

We update the remaining coal layer by removing auger1236sb from the latest updated remaining coal layer.

Currently, the latest updated remaining coal layer is

Remsurfaug1236out

Step 1: We reclassify auger1236sb following the procedure on p 7-10:

Reclassify Values

Classification Field: Value

[Classify...] [Unique] [Lookup...]

Old Values	New Value
0	99
2	2
No Data	0

[+] [×]

[Load]

[Save] [OK] [Cancel]

Step 2: We remove the reclassified coal from **Remsurfaug1236out**, following the 2 step procedure on p 7-10.

Map Calculation 15

Logarithms

Layers
[Reclass of auger1]
[Reclass of auger1]
[auger1236sb]
[auger1236sb . Cou]
[auger1236sb . milli]
[Map Calculation 1]
[Map Calculation 1]

米 / − +
7 8 9
4 5 6
1 2 3
0 ·

= <> and
> >= or
< <= xor
( ) not

AsGrid

Exp   Log
Exp2   Log2
Exp10 Log10

```
(
( [remsurfaug1236out]) and ( not (
([Reclass of auger1236sb] )
                              )
                         )
).Con(1.AsGrid,0.AsGrid)
```

Evaluate

Map Calculation 16

Logarithms

Layers
[Map Calculation 15]
[Map Calculation 15]
[Reclass of auger1]
[Reclass of auger1]
[auger1236sb]
[auger1236sb . Cou]
[auger1236sb . milli]

米 / − +
7 8 9
4 5 6
1 2 3
0 ·

= <> and
> >= or
< <= xor
( ) not

AsGrid

Exp   Log
Exp2   Log2
Exp10 Log10

```
( [Map Calculation 15] = 0).SetNull(1.AsGrid
```

Evaluate

Step 3: We rename the new grid: remaug1236+sb.

And record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Auger Mining in the 50 foot zone around Contour Strip Mines on Coal, > 36 inches in Thickness

Next, we change the Analysis Extent so that layer Lmu36surfcz can be expanded.

Under the Analysis Menu click

Properties

Change Analysis Mask to

Rem16bufp12

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent   Current Value

Left -155677.503175   Top 1970643.69375

Bottom 1693107.69375   Right 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size   Current Value

Cell Size   16   m

Number of Rows   17346

Number of Columns   21718

Analysis Mask   Rem16bufp12

OK   Cancel

Step 4: We expand Lmu36surfcz by 1 cell by following the procedure at bottom of page 7-13.
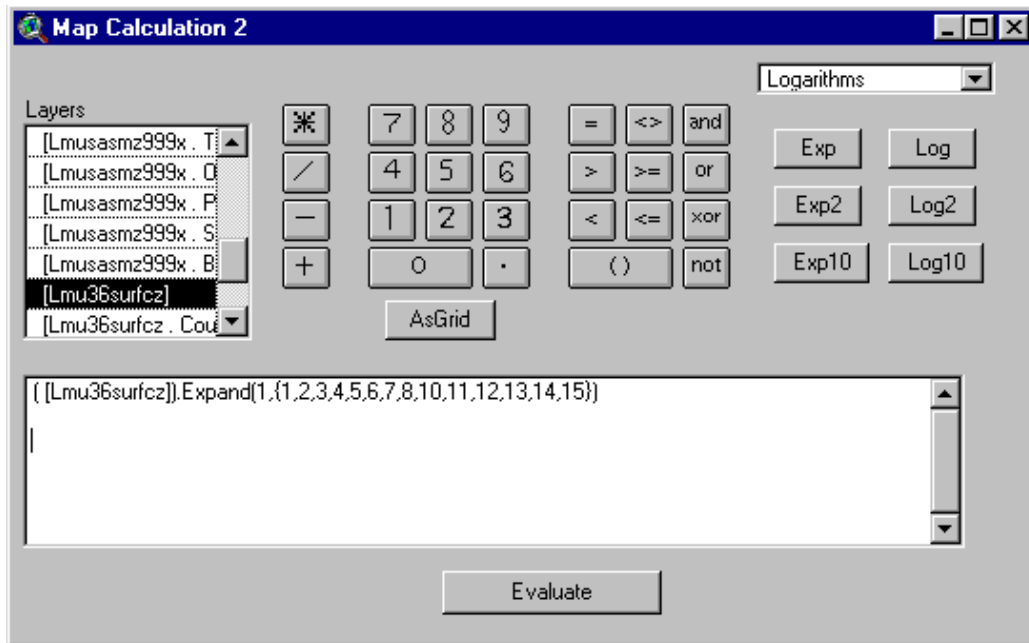
We change the Analysis Extent to clip the expand.

Under the Analysis Menu click:

Properties

Change Analysis Mask to

Remaug1236+sb

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent [Current Value ▼]

Left [-155677.503175]   Top [1970643.69375]

Bottom [1693107.69375]   Right [191810.496825]

Analysis Cell Size [Current Value ▼]

Cell Size [16]   m

Number of Rows [17346]

Number of Columns [21718]

Analysis Mask [remaug1236+sb ▼]

[OK]   [Cancel]

In Map Calculator, we evaluate this request:
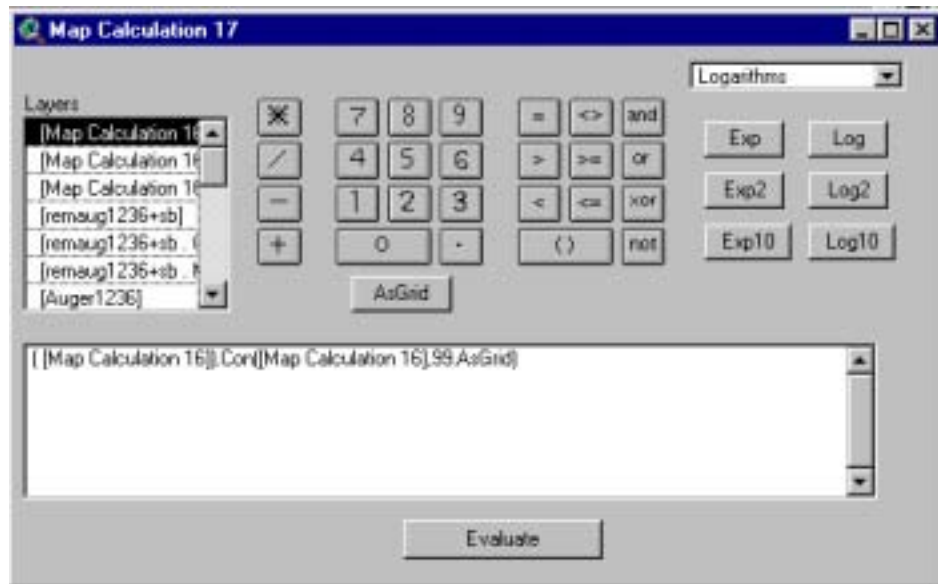
Next, we remove any coal classified for auger mining that might extend into other restricted areas.
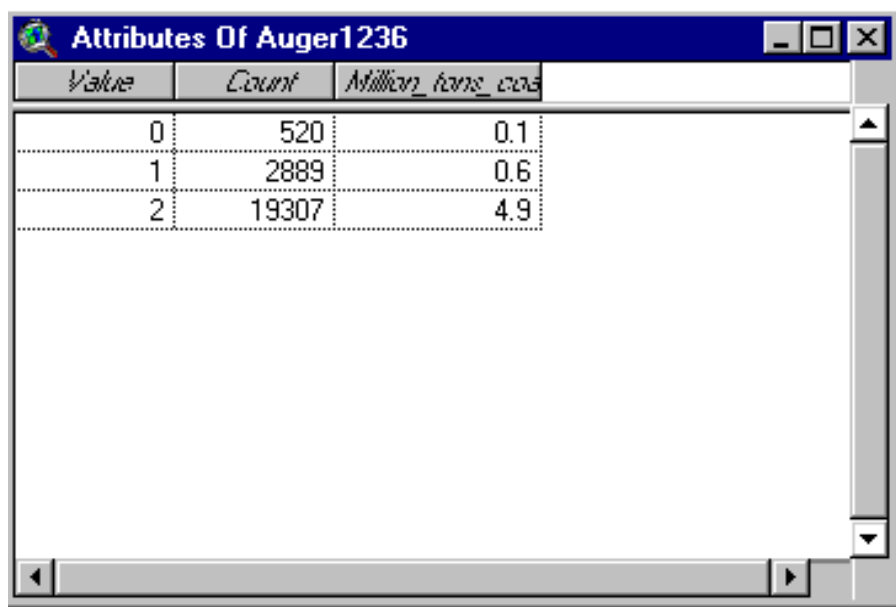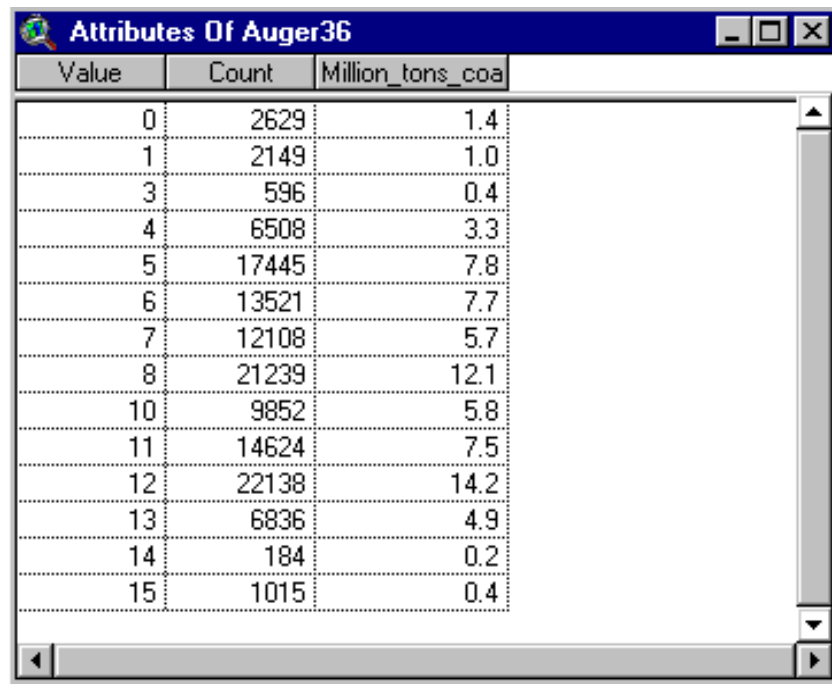
In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
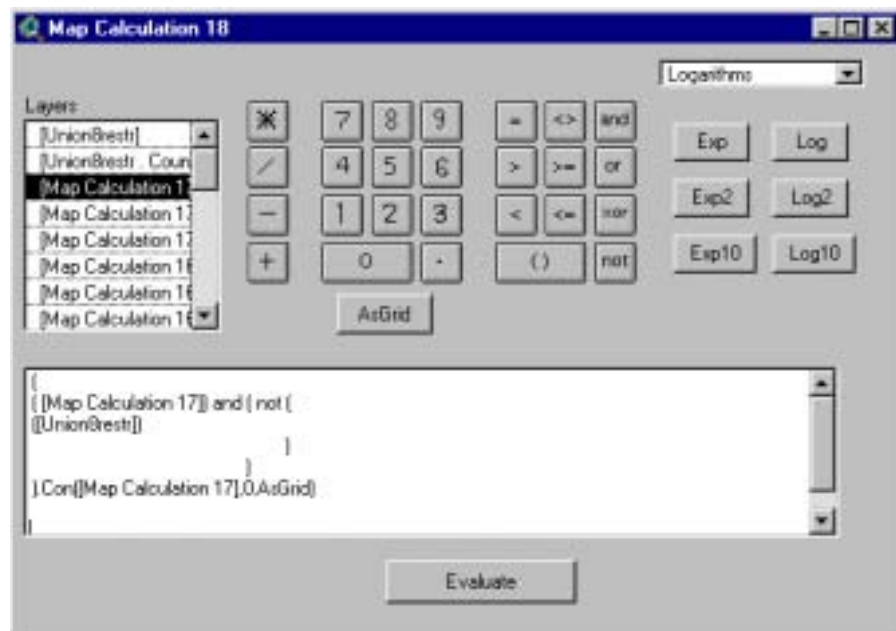
Then we rename Map Calculation 18 as: auger36.

And record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Next, we use **Method A** (p. 6-66 & 6-84) to calculate the tons in the auger mines:

Value	Count	Million_tons_coa
0	2629	1.4
1	2149	1.0
3	596	0.4
4	6508	3.3
5	17445	7.8
6	13521	7.7
7	12108	5.7
8	21239	12.1
10	9852	5.8
11	14624	7.5
12	22138	14.2
13	6836	4.9
14	184	0.2
15	1015	0.4

According to Table 7-1, p. 7-2, the minimum-size coal resource block is 2.5 million tons.

Thus, we have to remove blocks 1, 3, 14, and 15.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
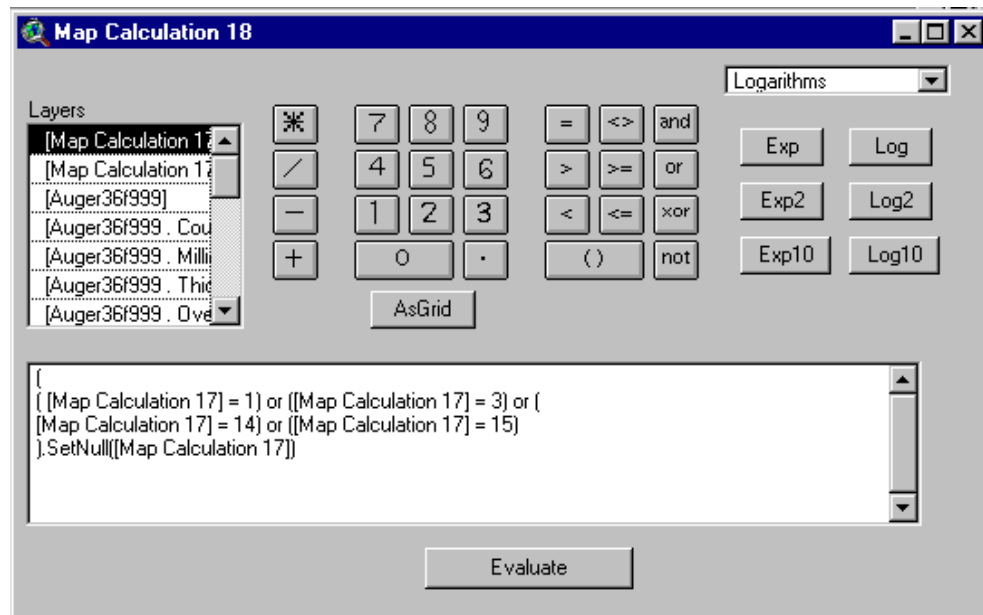
Next, we remove the cells that are restricted.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
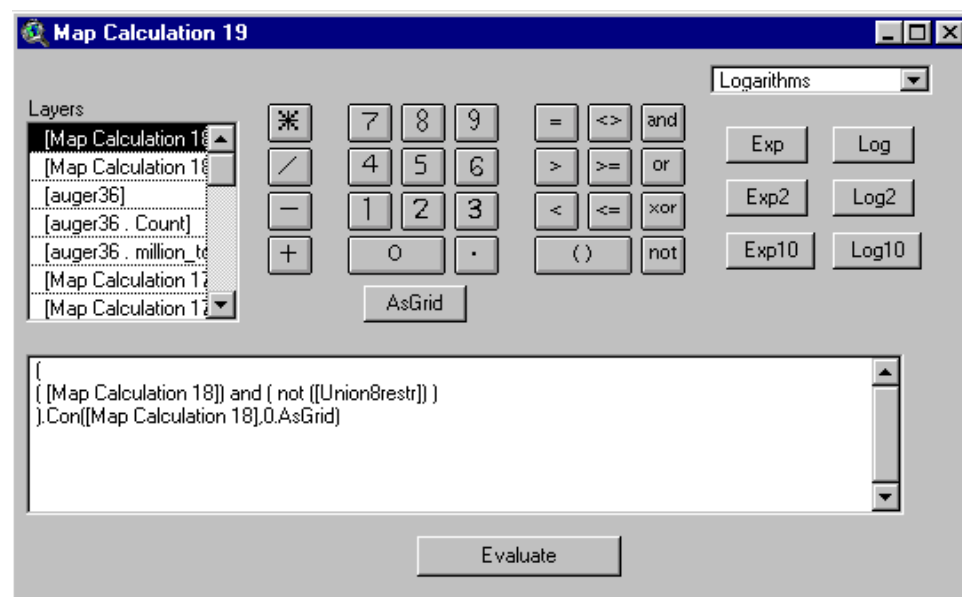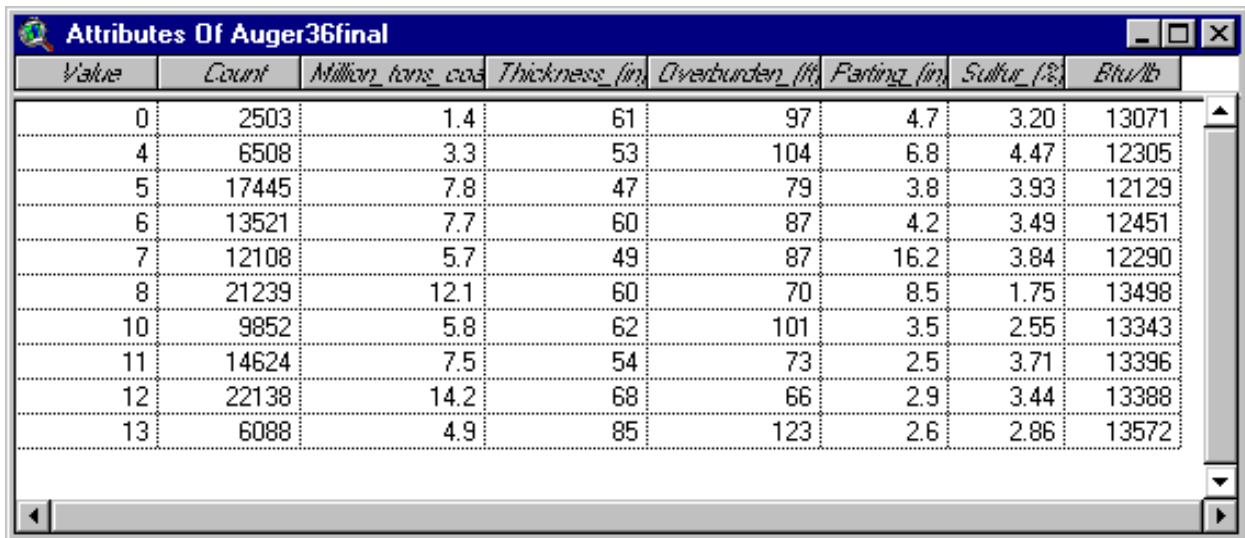
In Theme Properties, rename the Map Calculation 19: auger36final

Record its **source** in the list of coverage to retain and rename.

Next, we use **Method A** (p. 6-66 & pp. 6-84 through 6-89) to calculate:

    tons
    thickness
    overburden
    parting
    sulfur
    btu/lb

Attributes Of Auger36final

Value	Count	Million_tons_coal	Thickness_(in)	Overburden_(ft)	Parting_(in)	Sulfur_(%)	Btu/lb
0	2503	1.4	61	97	4.7	3.20	13071
4	6508	3.3	53	104	6.8	4.47	12305
5	17445	7.8	47	79	3.8	3.93	12129
6	13521	7.7	60	87	4.2	3.49	12451
7	12108	5.7	49	87	16.2	3.84	12290
8	21239	12.1	60	70	8.5	1.75	13498
10	9852	5.8	62	101	3.5	2.55	13343
11	14624	7.5	54	73	2.5	3.71	13396
12	22138	14.2	68	66	2.9	3.44	13388
13	6088	4.9	85	123	2.6	2.86	13572

Next, we add a 1 cell (16 m) safety barrier to the area with auger mining.

Update the Layer of Remaining Coal by Removing Coal Allocated to Auger Mining, Coal > 36 Inches in Thickness
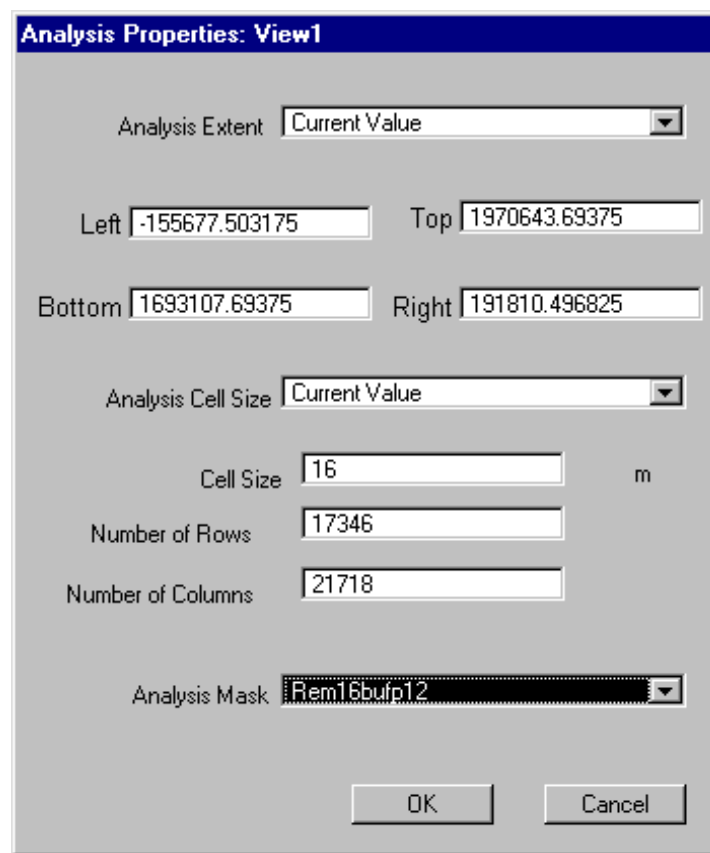
We begin by removing coal allocated to auger mining (on coal 36 inches or greater in thickness) from latest updated layer of remaining coal.

Under the Analysis Menu

    Click Properties

    Change Analysis Mask to

        Rem16bufp12

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent   Current Value

Left -155677.503175   Top 1970643.69375

Bottom 1693107.69375   Right 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size   Current Value

Cell Size 16   m

Number of Rows 17346

Number of Columns 21718

Analysis Mask   Rem16bufp12

OK   Cancel

Reclassify auger36final as follows:

Null cells are reclassified to 0 (not shown above).

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
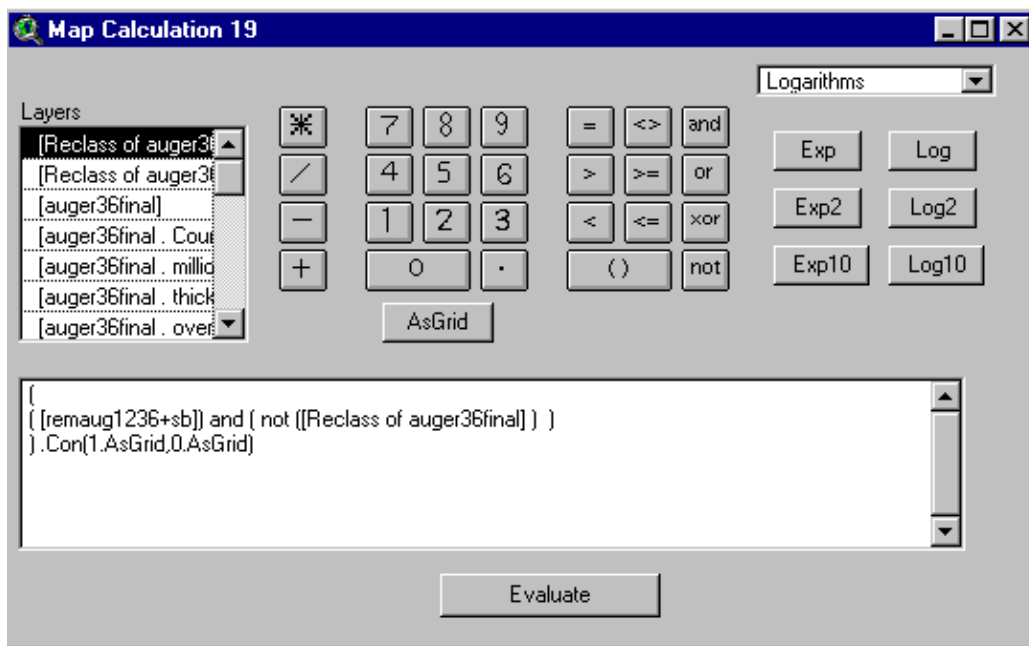
The second step is to change cells with 0 to null

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
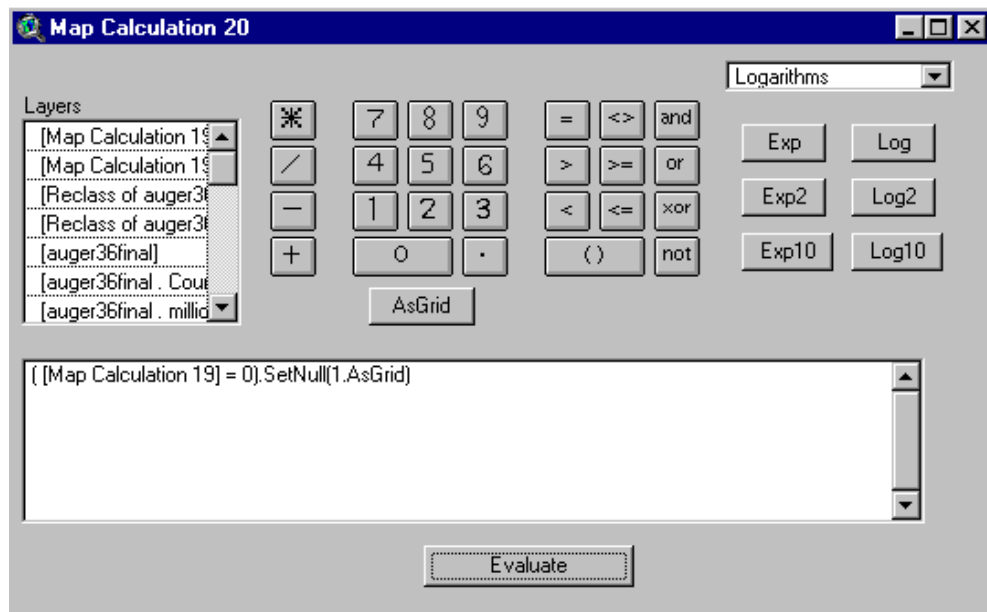
In Theme Properties, rename Map Calculation 20: remaug36.

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Safety Barrier (50 feet) Around Area with Auger Mining, Coal > 36 Inches in Thickness

The next step is to expand auger36final by 1 cell (for safety barrier).

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
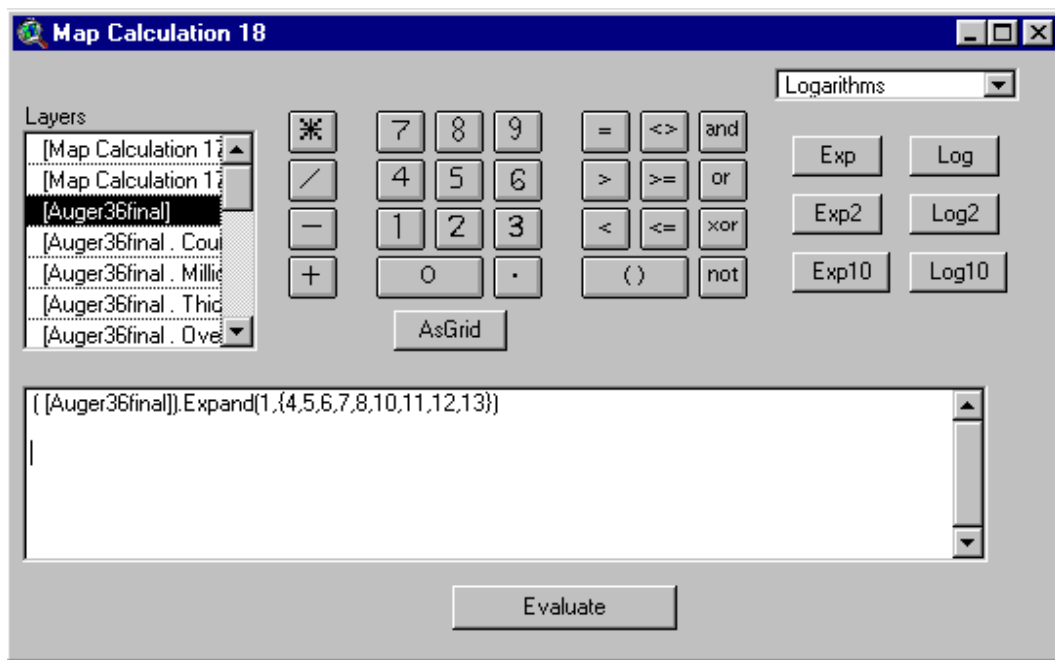
The layer, Map Calculation 20 is a 1 cell expansion of auger36final. The expansion can extend into the areas that are restricted and into areas that do not have remaining coal.

We correct the initial expansion (to eliminate expansion into restricted areas and areas without coal) by setting a mask and evaluating Map Calculation 20 with the mask in place.

Under the Analysis Menu

 Click Properties

 Change the Analysis Mask to

  Remaug36

Analysis Properties: View1	
Analysis Extent	Current Value
Left	-155677.503175
Top	1970643.69375
Bottom	1693107.69375
Right	191810.496825
Analysis Cell Size	Current Value
Cell Size	16 m
Number of Rows	17346
Number of Columns	21718
Analysis Mask	remaug36

OK Cancel

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:

Map Calculation 21

Logarithms ▼

Layers
[Map Calculation 20
[Map Calculation 20
[remaug36]
[remaug36 . Count]
[Map Calculation 19
[Map Calculation 19
[Reclass of auger36

✻ | 7 | 8 | 9 | = | <> | and
/ | 4 | 5 | 6 | > | >= | or
− | 1 | 2 | 3 | < | <= | xor
+ | 0 | · | ( ) | not

AsGrid

Exp | Log
Exp2 | Log2
Exp10 | Log10

([Map Calculation 20]).Con([Map Calculation 20],99.AsGrid)
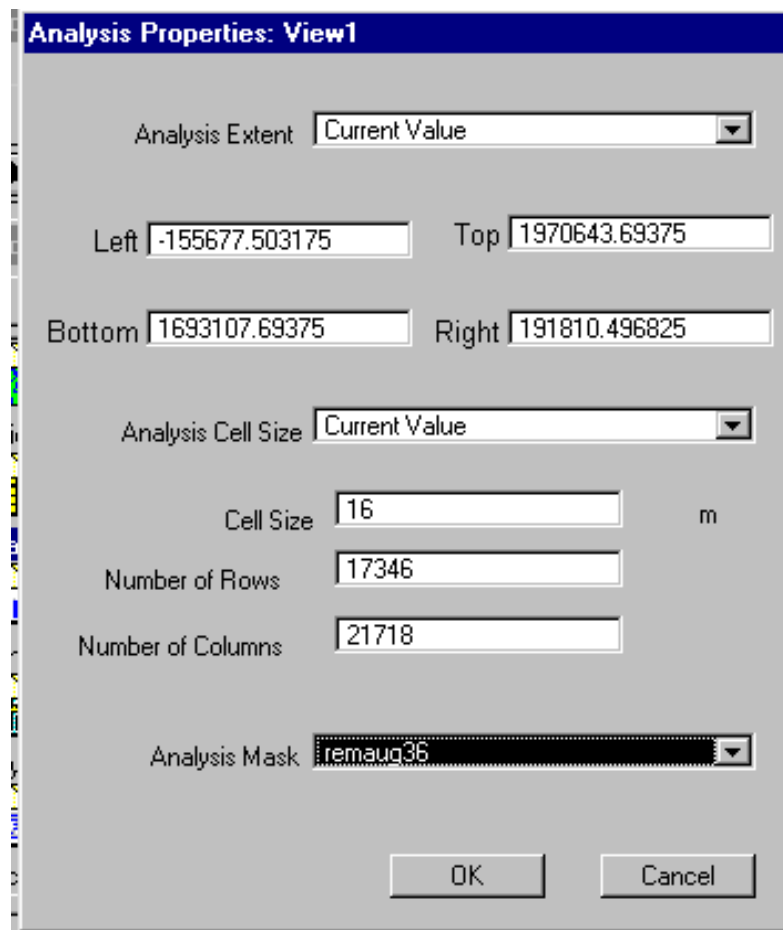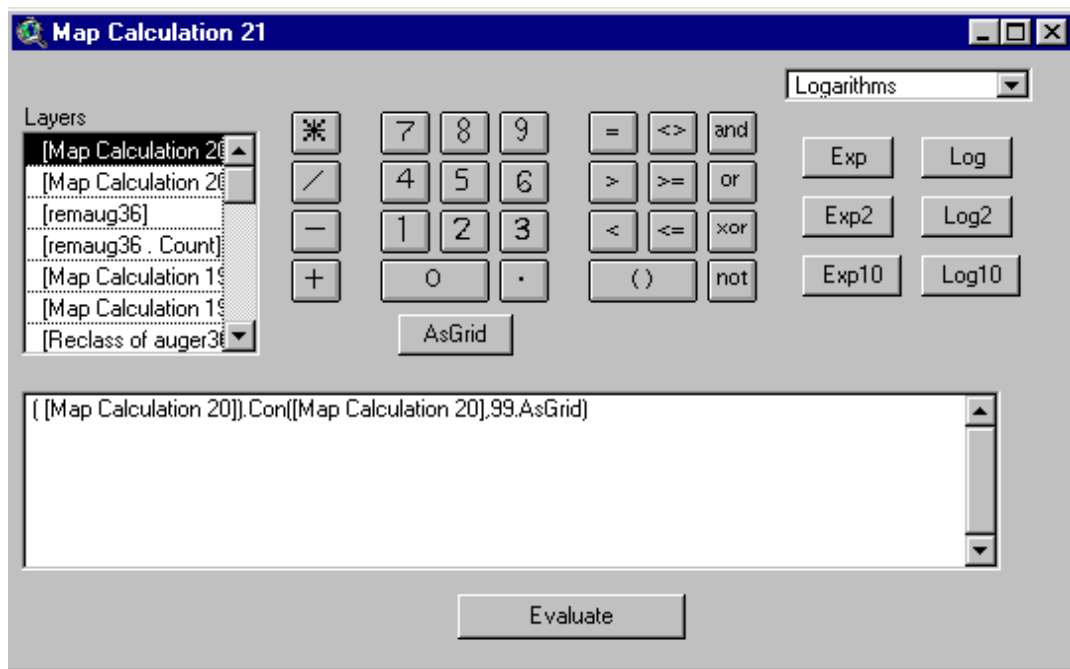
Evaluate

We now remove any coal in the safety barrier for auger mining that might extend into other restricted areas.
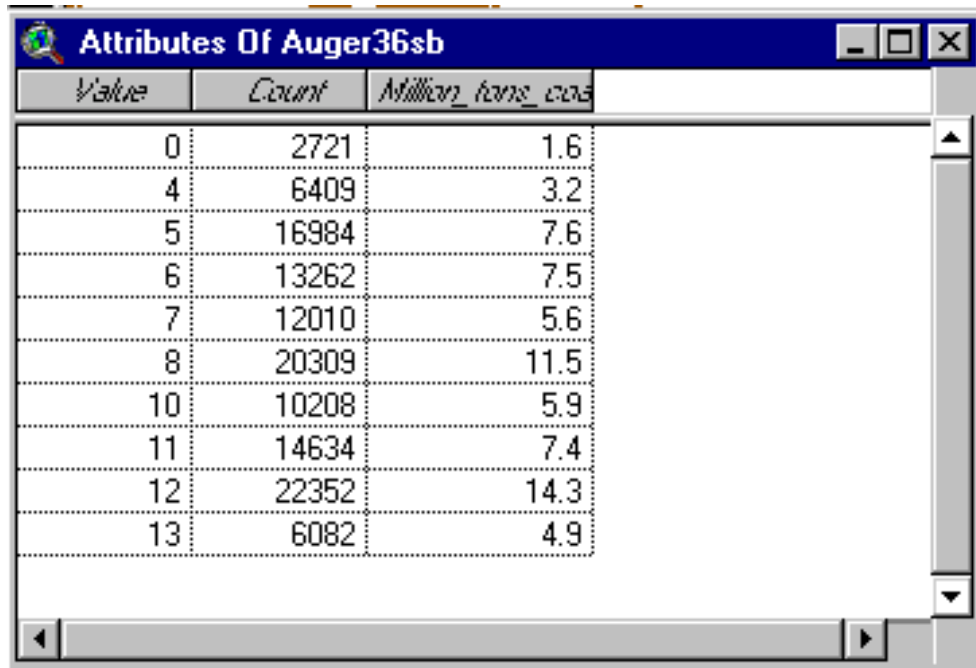
In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
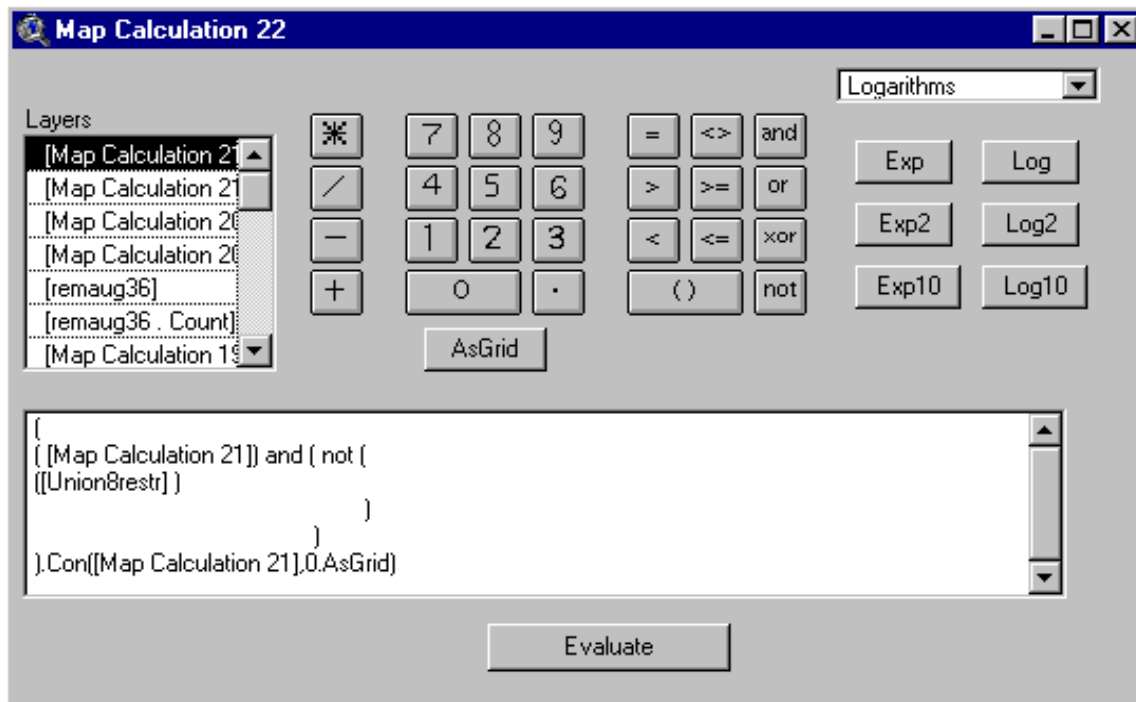
In Theme Properties, rename Map Calculation 22: auger36sb (sb for safety barrier).

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Use **Method A** (p. 6-66 and 6-84) to calculate the tons in auger36sb:

Value	Count	Million_tons_coa
0	2721	1.6
4	6409	3.2
5	16984	7.6
6	13262	7.5
7	12010	5.6
8	20309	11.5
10	10208	5.9
11	14634	7.4
12	22352	14.3
13	6082	4.9

Coal in the safety barrier around contour strip mines (36 inches and greater in thickness) is the latest coal tonnage calculated by the model.

The layer for this coal is called **auger36sb.**
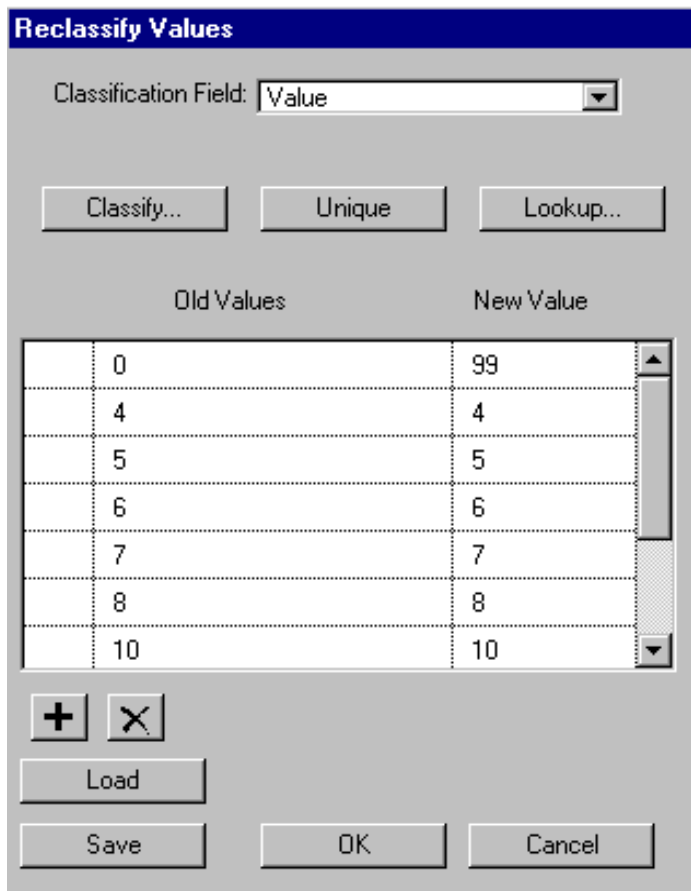
Update the Layer of Remaining Coal by Removing Coal Allocated to Safety Barriers Around Auger Mining, Coal > 36 Inches in Thickness

We update the remaining coal layer by removing this coal from the latest updated remaining coal layer.

Currently, the latest updated remaining coal layer is

Remaug36

We reclassify **auger36sb** following the procedure on p 7-10:

Reclassify Values

Classification Field: | Value | ▼

| Classify... | Unique | Lookup... |

Old Values	New Value
0	99
4	4
5	5
6	6
7	7
8	8
10	10

+ **×**

| Load |
| Save | OK | Cancel |

The cells with No Data (i.e., null cells) are changed to 0 (not shown).

Next, we remove the reclassified coal from **Remaug36**, following the 2 step procedure on p 7-10.

Map Calculation 22

Logarithms

Layers:
- [Reclass of auger36
- [Reclass of auger36
- [auger36sb]
- [auger36sb . Count]
- [auger36sb . million]
- [Map Calculation 21
- [Map Calculation 21

Buttons: ✳ 7 8 9 = <> and / 4 5 6 > >= or − 1 2 3 < <= xor + 0 . ( ) not AsGrid

Exp Log
Exp2 Log2
Exp10 Log10

```
(
( [remaug36]) and ( not (
([Reclass of auger36sb] )
                        )
                )
[).Con(1.AsGrid,0.AsGrid)
```

Evaluate

Map Calculation 23

Logarithms

Layers:
- [Map Calculation 22
- [Map Calculation 22
- [Auger36sb999]
- [Auger36sb999 . Co
- [Auger36sb999 . Mi
- [remaug36]
- [remaug36 . Count]

Buttons: ✳ 7 8 9 = <> and / 4 5 6 > >= or − 1 2 3 < <= xor + 0 . ( ) not AsGrid

Exp Log
Exp2 Log2
Exp10 Log10

```
( [Map Calculation 22] = 0).SetNull(1.AsGrid)
```

Evaluate

In Theme Properties, we rename Map Calculation 23: **remaug36+sb**

And record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Safety Barrier (50 feet) Around Remaining Area with Surface Mining

Next, we place a safety barrier around all the remaining areas that have been surface mined, but not extended by auger mining. These include:

Lmu1236surfcz	Block 1
Lmu36surfcz	Block 1
Lmu36surfcz	Block 2
Lmu36surfcz	Block 3
Lmu36surfcz	Block 14
Lmu36surfcz	Block 15
Lmusasmz	Block 2
Lmusasmz	Block 3

Under the Analysis Menu click:
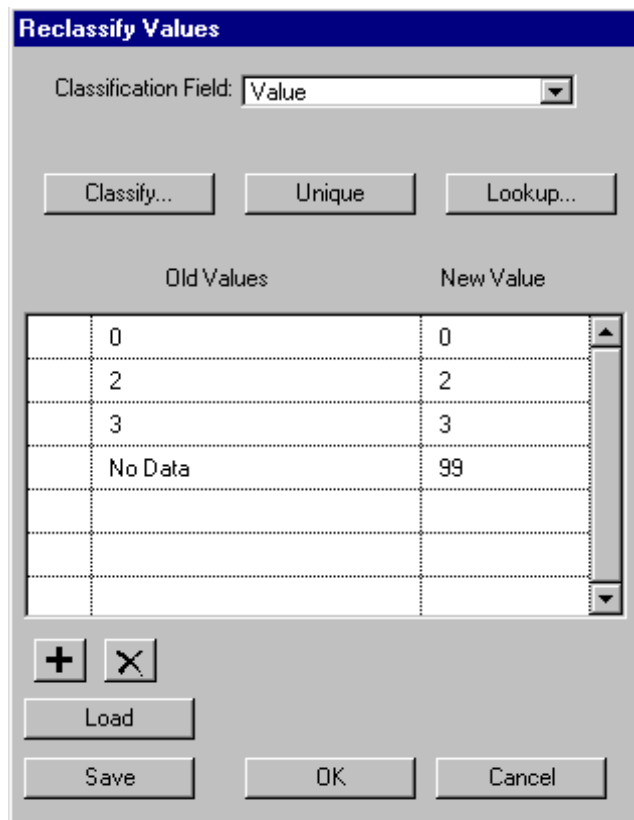
    Properties

    Change Analysis Mask to

        Rem16bufp12

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent [Current Value]

Left [-155677.503175]   Top [1970643.69375]

Bottom [1693107.69375]   Right [191810.496825]

Analysis Cell Size [Current Value]

Cell Size [16]   m

Number of Rows [17346]

Number of Columns [21718]

Analysis Mask [Rem16bufp12]

[OK]   [Cancel]

We then create layer that has all of the blocks listed above.

In order to build the composite layer, we first turn the null values in each of the separate layers to 99. Without this step, the union would evaluate null.

Reclassify Lmusasmz as follows:

We then use the reclassified layers (nulls set equal to 99) in Map Calculator to evaluate this request:
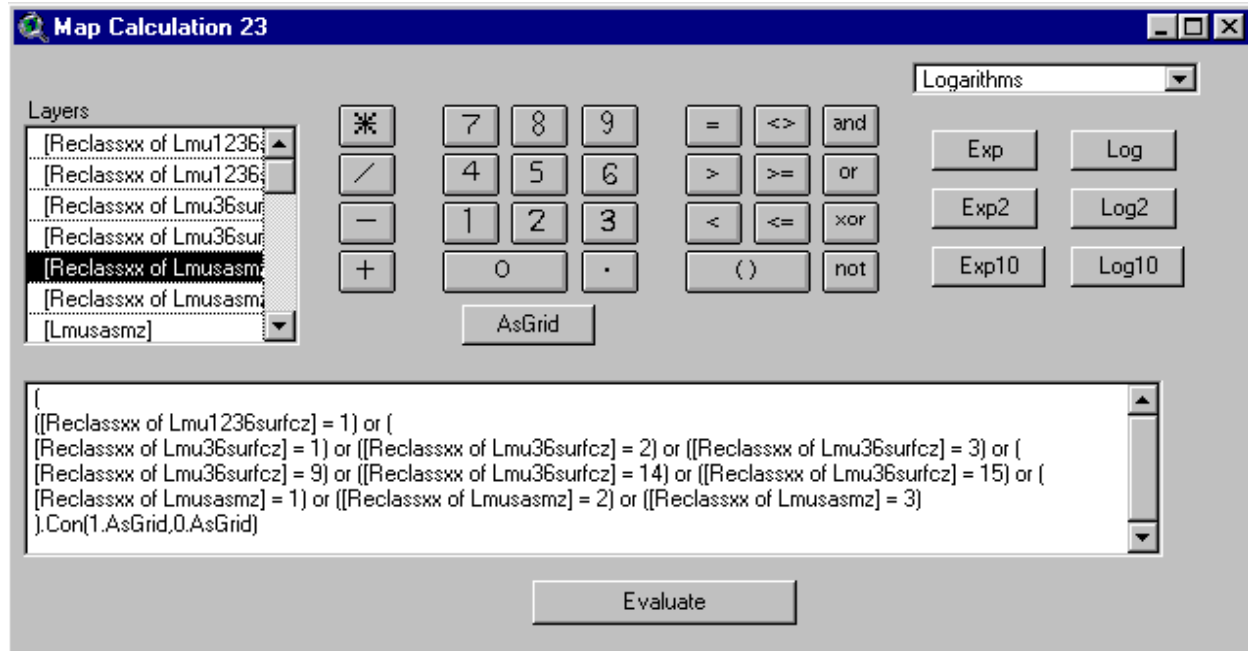
We expand Map Calculation 23 by 1 cell (to add safety barrier):
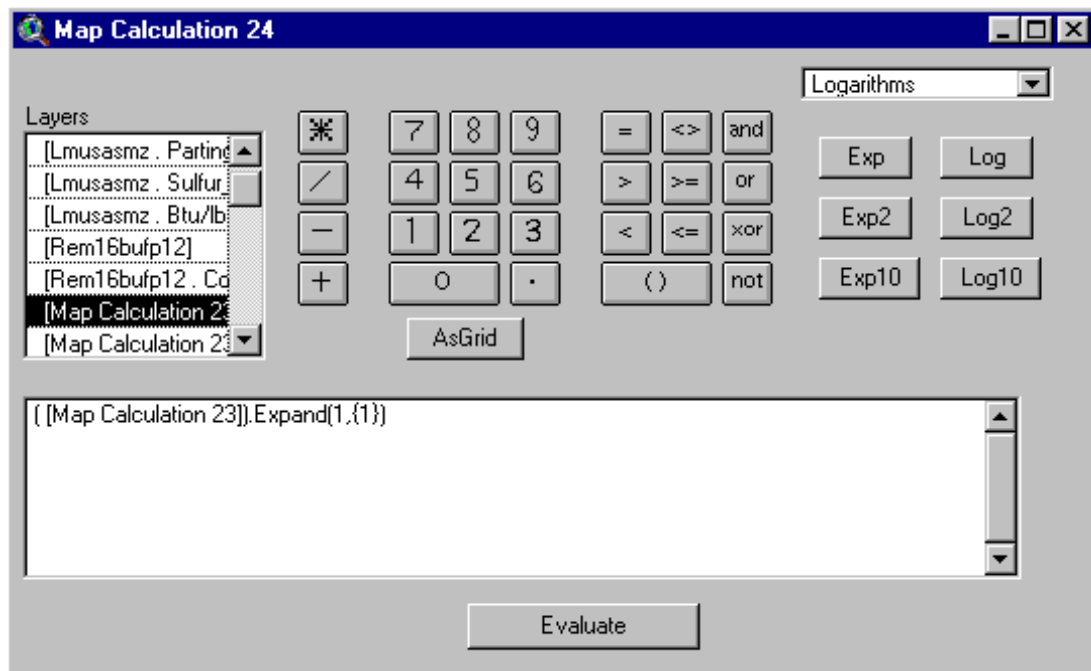
Under the Analysis Menu click:

Properties

Change Analysis Mask to

Remaug36+sb

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
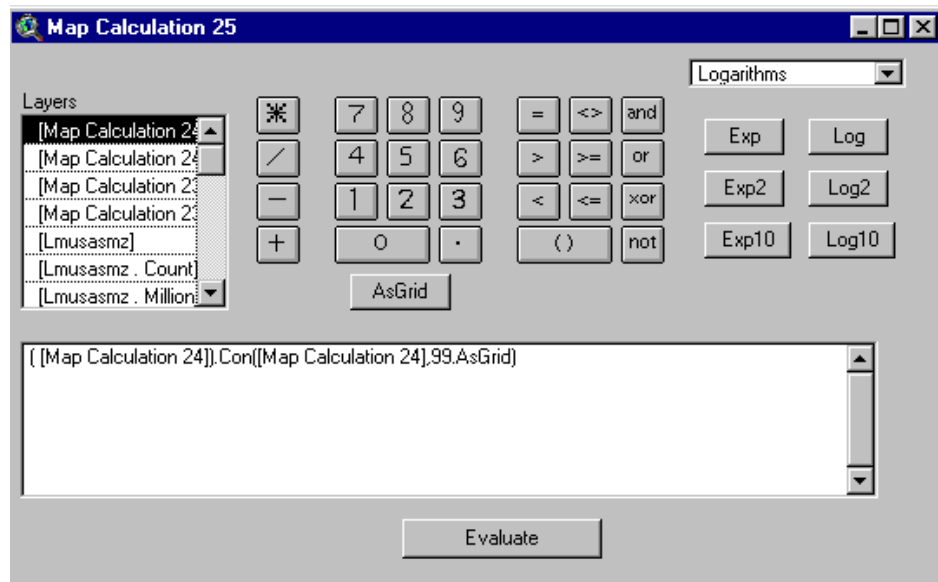
Turn cells with 99 to null. The remaining non-zero cells are cells in the safety buffer:
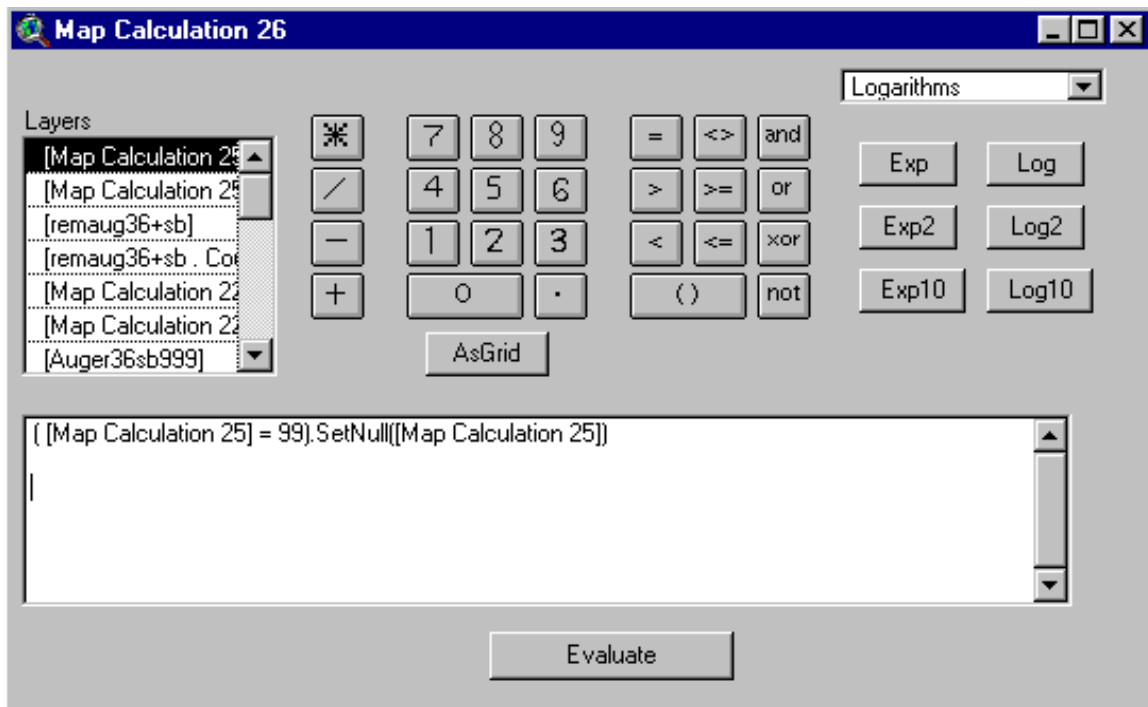
Next, we remove any coal initially placed in safety barriers already classified as restricted.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
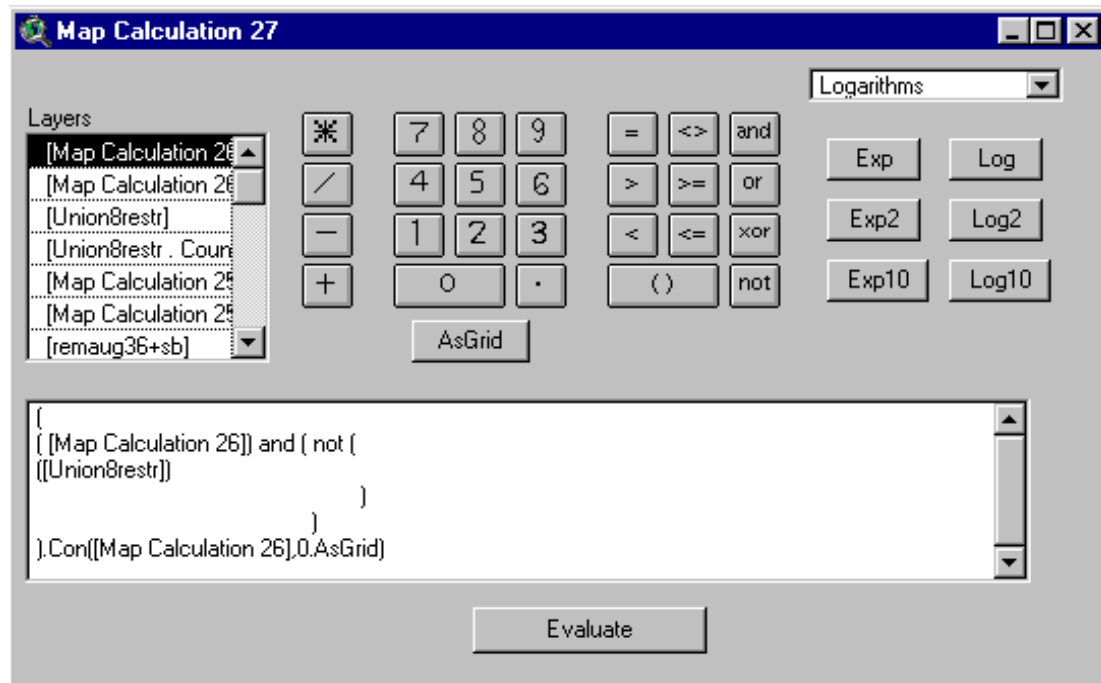
In Theme Properties, we rename Map Calculation 27 as: **surfothersb**

And record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

We use **Method A** (p. 6-66 and 6-84) to calculate the tons in surfothersb:

Update the Layer of Remaining Coal by Removing Coal Allocated to Safety Barriers Around Other Surface Mining

Next, we update remaining coal by removing surfothersb from remaug36+sb.

Under the Analysis Menu click:

Properties

Change Analysis Mask to

Rem16bufp12
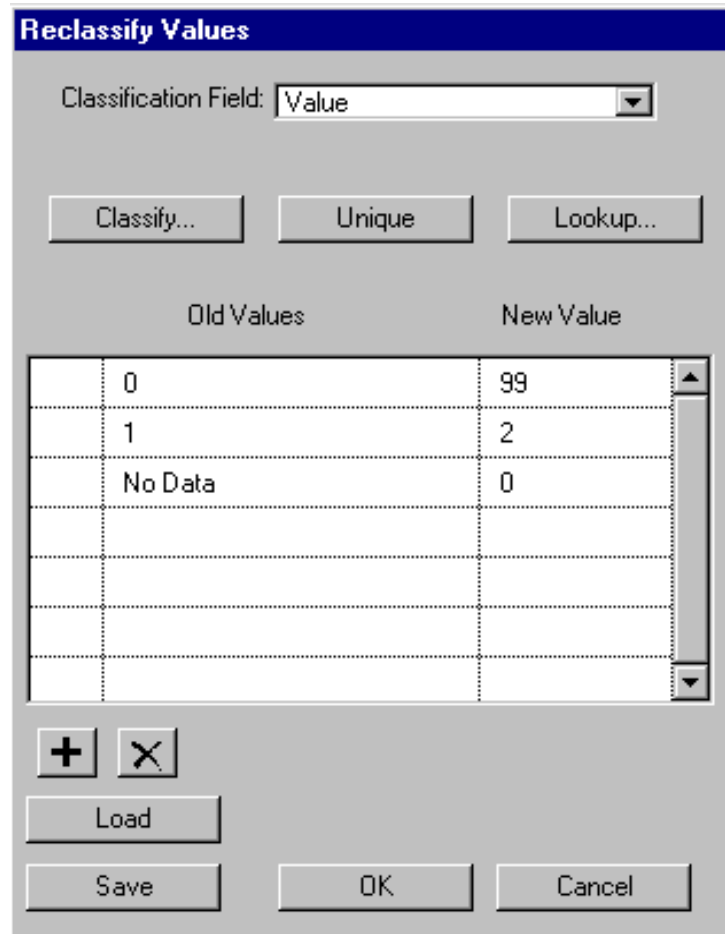
Reclassify surfothersb as follows:

Reclassify Values

Classification Field: Value

Classify...   Unique   Lookup...

Old Values	New Value
0	99
1	2
No Data	0

+ **✕**

Load

Save   OK   Cancel

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:

Map Calculation 27

Layers:
[Reclass of surfothe
[Reclass of surfothe
[remaug36+sb]
[remaug36+sb . Co
[surfothersb]
[surfothersb . Coun
[surfothersb . million

Logarithms

```
(
( [remaug36+sb]) and ( not ([Reclass of surfothersb]) )
).Con(1.AsGrid,0.AsGrid)
```
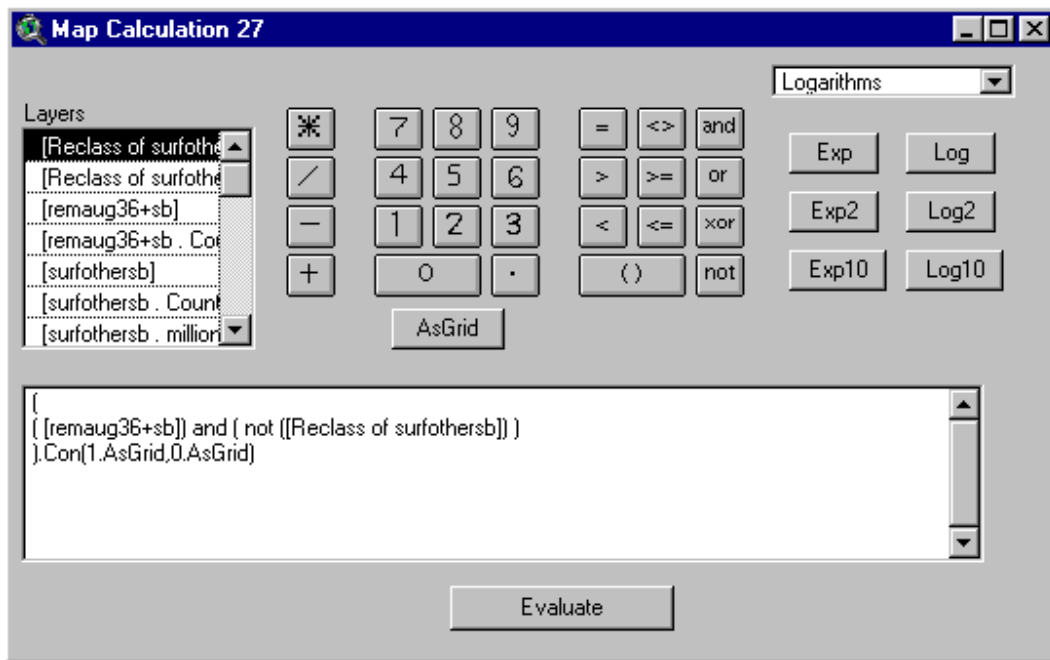
Evaluate

Next, we change cells with 0 to null.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:

Map Calculation 28

Layers:
[Surfothsbstp1]
[Surfothsbstp1 . Co
[Surfothsbstp1 . Mil
[Surfothsbstp2]
[Surfothsbstp2 . Co
[Surfothsbstp2 . Mil
[Map Calculation 2

Logarithms

```
( [Map Calculation 27] = 0).SetNull(1.AsGrid)
```

Evaluate
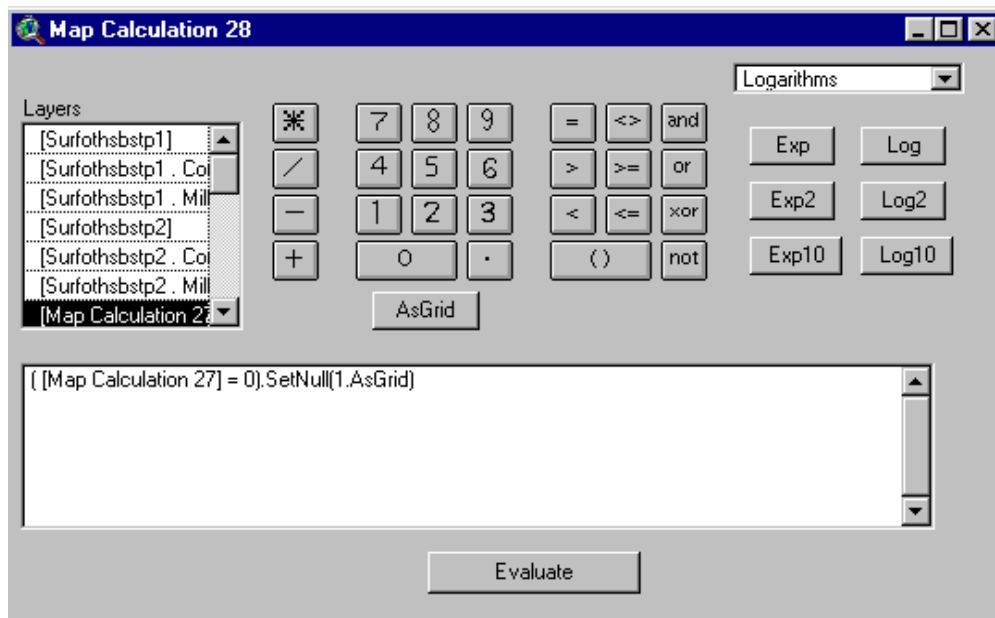
In Theme Properties, we rename Map Calculation 28 as: **remsurfall**

And record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Summary of Results

Next, we summarize results to this point:

Tons of Coal Available for Mining		
Category	**million tons**	**million tons include coal in restricted areas**
Contour Strip 12-36 inch thickness	22.4	25.7
Contour Strip >36 inch thickness	656.1	742.5
Small Area Surface Mines	66.6	74.8
Auger Mines 12-36 inch thickness	4.9	5.0
Auger Mines >36 inch thickness	69.0	70.4
Total	819.0	918.4

Tons of Coal in Safety Barriers		
Category	**million tons**	**million tons includes coal in restricted areas**
Auger Mines 12-36 inch thickness	5.2	5.3
Auger Mines >36 inch thickness	67.9	69.5
Other Surface Mining	6.0	6.1
Total	79.1	80.9

The third column in the tables adds coal in restricted areas.

The method used to update the remaining coal layer accounts for the restricted coal and the coal allocated to each category.

The restricted coal is just in the area where coal is allocated for mining.

Logically, all of the coal assigned to surface mining and associated safety buffers should be the same amount that is subtracted from the remaining layer.

At the start of the assignment by mining technology, the remaining layer, Rem16bufp12, had 15,590.9 million tons of coal.

The final (to this point) updated remaining layer, remsurfall, has 14,591.3 million tons of coal.

The difference in the remaining coal layers is 999.6 million tons.

The sum of coal allocated (adding the 3rd column total above) is 999.3 million tons.

The 2 tallies agree.

It looks like our methods are working correctly.

A summary of estimates, starting from Rem16mcell (remaining, chapter 5), is:

Remaining (rem16mcell)	15790.2
Safety barriers (mined-out coal)	157.2
Remaining (rem16buf)	15633.0
Coal <12 inches in thickness	42.1
Remaining (rem16bufp12)	15590.9
Coal allocated to surface mining	918.4
Surface mining safety barriers	80.9
Remaining (remsurfall)	14591.3

Rename grids to more convenient names

Save the current project.

Start a new project.

Open a new view.

Toggle on the Spatial analyst Extension.

Under File Menu, click "Manage Data Sources" to access the Source Manager:
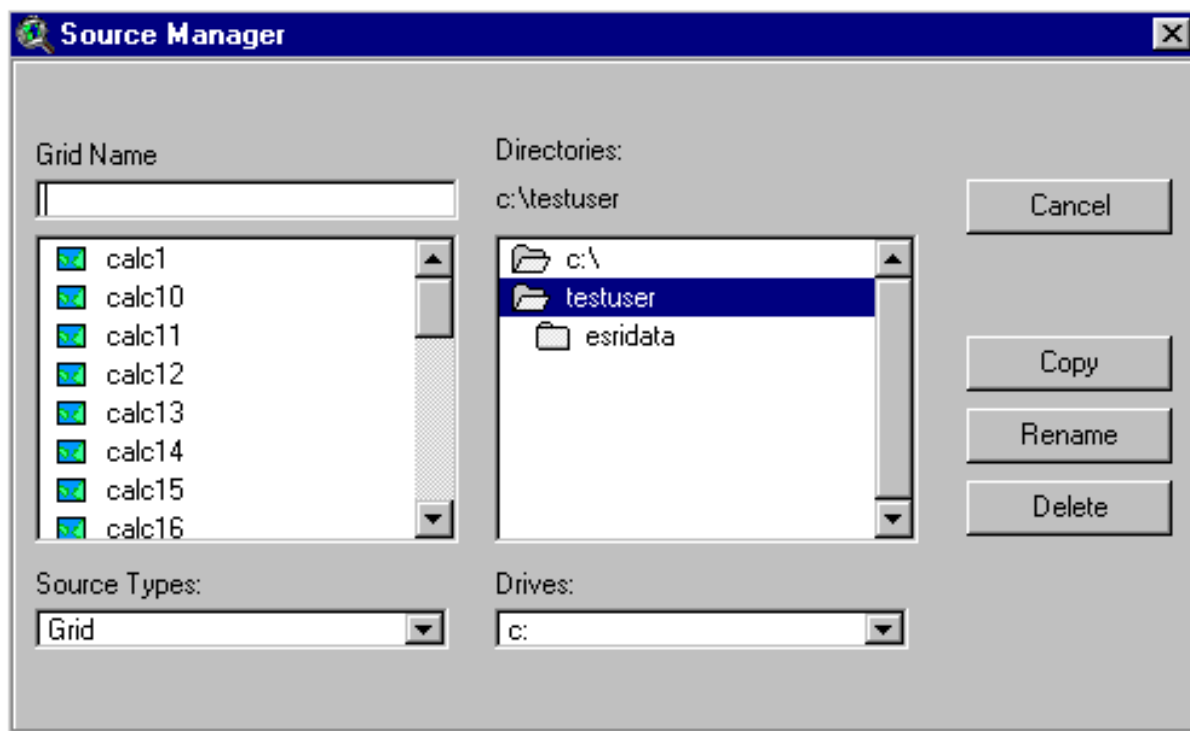
Then rename the initial grids with the following names:

(You would, of course, use your project path when you rename the grids.)

Coverage	Original Names	New Name
remaining coal layer, coal from all contour strip and sasm mining operations removed from rem16bufp12	c:\testuser\calc22	c:\testuser\remsurfout
auger coal (12 to 36 inches in thickness) against all of the contour strip mines	c:\testuser\calc24	c:\testuser\auger1236
auger coal (12 to 36 inches in thickness) at or above min-imum-size resource block	c:\testuser\calc26	c:\testuser\auger1236f
updated remaining coal layer auger1236 coal removed from remsurfout	c:\testuser\calc28	c:\testuser\remaug1236
coal in safety barrier around auger mines on coal 12 to 36 inches in thickness	c:\testuser\calc31	c:\testuser\auger1236sb
updated remaining coal layer coal in safety barriers (auger 12-36 inch thickness) removed from remsurfaug1236out	c:\testuser\calc33	c:\testuser\remaug1236sb
auger coal (>36 inches in thickness) against all of the >36 in. contour strip mines	c:\testuser\calc36	c:\testuser\auger36
auger coal (>36 inches in thickness) at or above min-imum-size resource block	c:\testuser\calc38	c:\testuser\auger36f
updated remaining coal layer auger 36 coal removed from remaug1236+sb	c:\testuser\calc39	c:\testuser\remaug36
coal in safety barrier around auger mines on coal >36 inches in thickness	c:\testuser\calc42	c:\testuser\auger36sb
updated remaining coal layer coal in safety barriers (auger >36 inch thickness) removed from remaug36	c:\testuser\calc44	c:\testuser\remaug36sb

coal in safety barrier around
  other surface mines (where
  there are no auger operations)   c:\testuser\calc50   c:\testuser\surfothersb
updated remaining coal layer
  coal in safety barriers (other
  surface mines) removed
  from remaug36+sb   c:\testuser\calc52   c:\testuser\remsurfall

Congratulations!!!!

You have finished Chapter 7.

You have completed a detailed analysis of coal available for auger mining.

Our methods are on track to produce consistent estimates.

Chapter 8.

COAL AVAILABILITY BY MINING TECHNOLOGY
LONGWALL MINING

Purpose: In this Chapter, we estimate coal available for prospective mining by longwall mining methods and by thickness within the longwall mining method.

Overview: We estimate the amount of coal available for longwall mines.   Coal can be longwall mined when its thickness is equal to or greater than 42 inches, overburden equal to or greater than 300 feet, and bed slope is equal to or less than 12 degrees. We apply these criteria to determine the extent of prospective longwall mineable coal.

Longwall mining costs are affected by coal thickness. Generally, thicker coal has a lower cost per ton compared to thin coal. When mine costing is applied to the assessed coal, we use different configurations that vary according to coal thickness. To have the correct breakouts, our assessment in this chapter separates out the coal according to coal thickness categories.

Next we determine whether contiguous blocks have enough coal to support a minimum-size mine. To help that process, a square grid is superimposed on top of the coal targeted for longwall mining. The superimposed grid has an orientation of about 18 degrees to the northwest similar to historic Pittsburgh longwall mines. That orientation follows rock fractures that aid extraction. To assess longwall mining on coal 42 to 72 inches thick, we allow each cell or resource block to have up to 170 million tons of coal when it is completely filled in with coal. However, blocks with large amounts of restricted coal and blocks that are cutoff at the edge of the Pittsburgh bed have smaller amounts of coal. When the coal is contiguous, the blocks with smaller tonnages are combined to form a consolidated coal resource block. Alternate blocking sizes are set for the maximum resource block for other thicknesses.

The coal in restricted areas is then removed from the coal in each of the resource blocks. We test to see if each coal resource block has enough coal to support a minimum-size mine. If not, the coal is removed from consideration but is included in later analysis to form coal blocks for room and pillar underground mines using continuous miners.

Longwall mining is the lowest cost underground method. Much of the Pittsburgh coal bed has characteristics suitable for longwall mining (large volumes, uniform thickness, slowly changing bed elevation, and satisfactory depth of overburden). We attempt to assign as much of the remaining Pittsburgh coal (outside the surface mineable areas) as possible to the longwall method.

Open a new ArcView project.

Add a View Window. Do not add any themes.

Under the File Menu, set Working Directory to your project path.
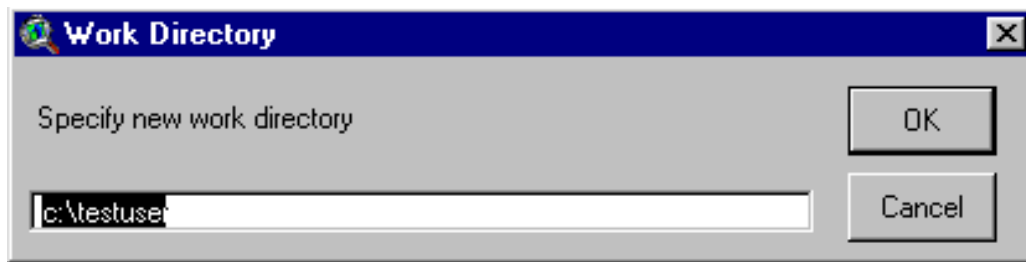
Open View Properties and enter these settings:
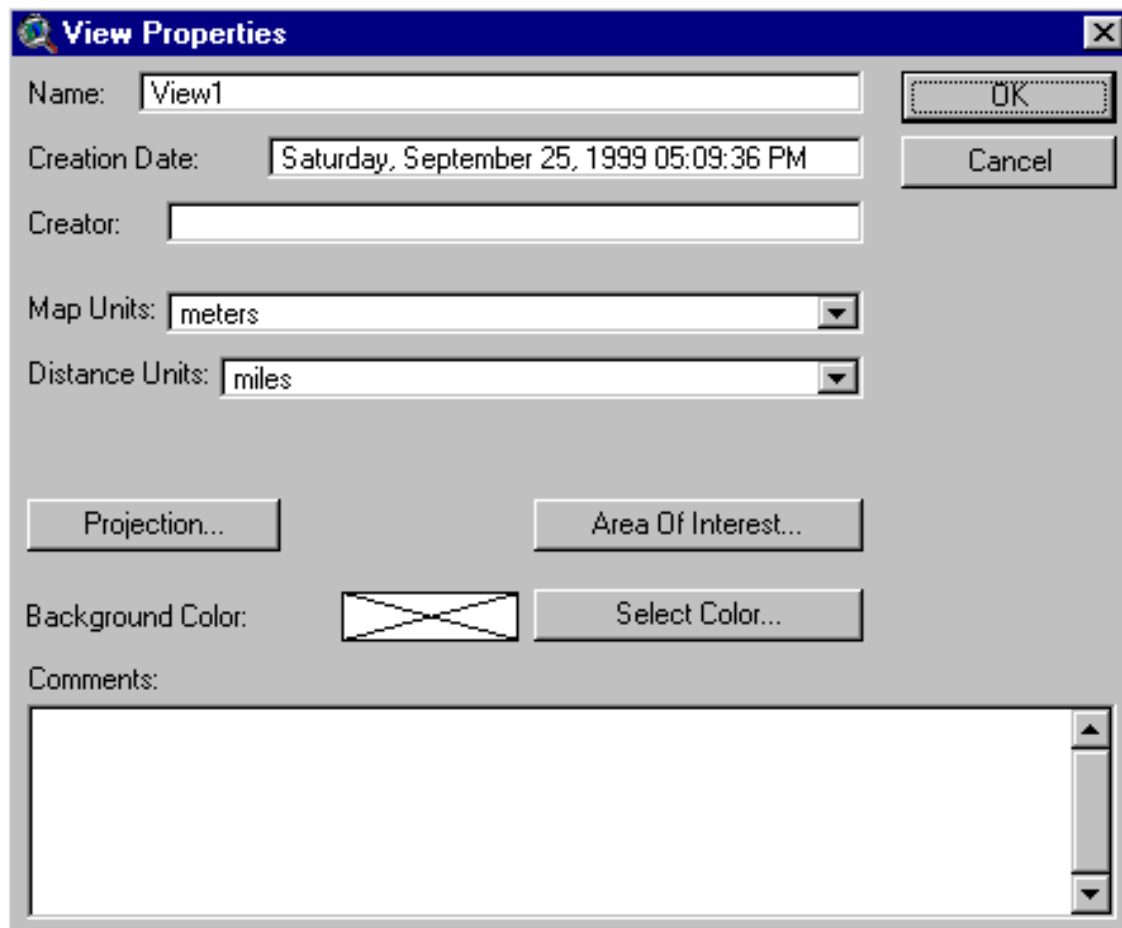
Under the File Menu

    Click Extensions

    Toggle on

        Geoprocessing

        Spatial Analyst
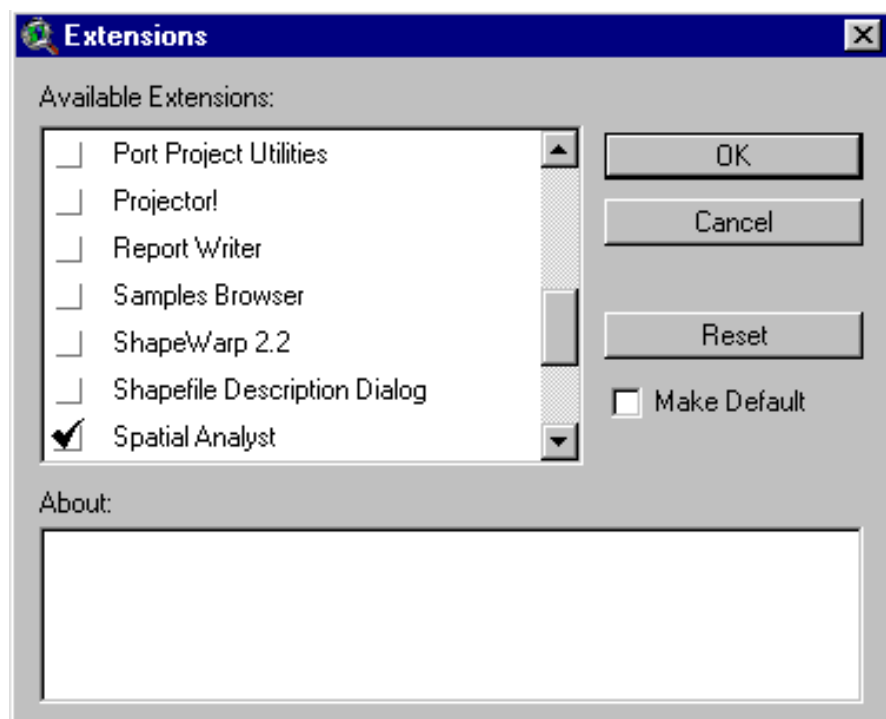
Apply technical restrictions for minimum thickness, overburden thickness, and slope.

In View1, add bedslope, ob16, Rem16mcell, Rem16bufp12, remsurfall, and Thk16:
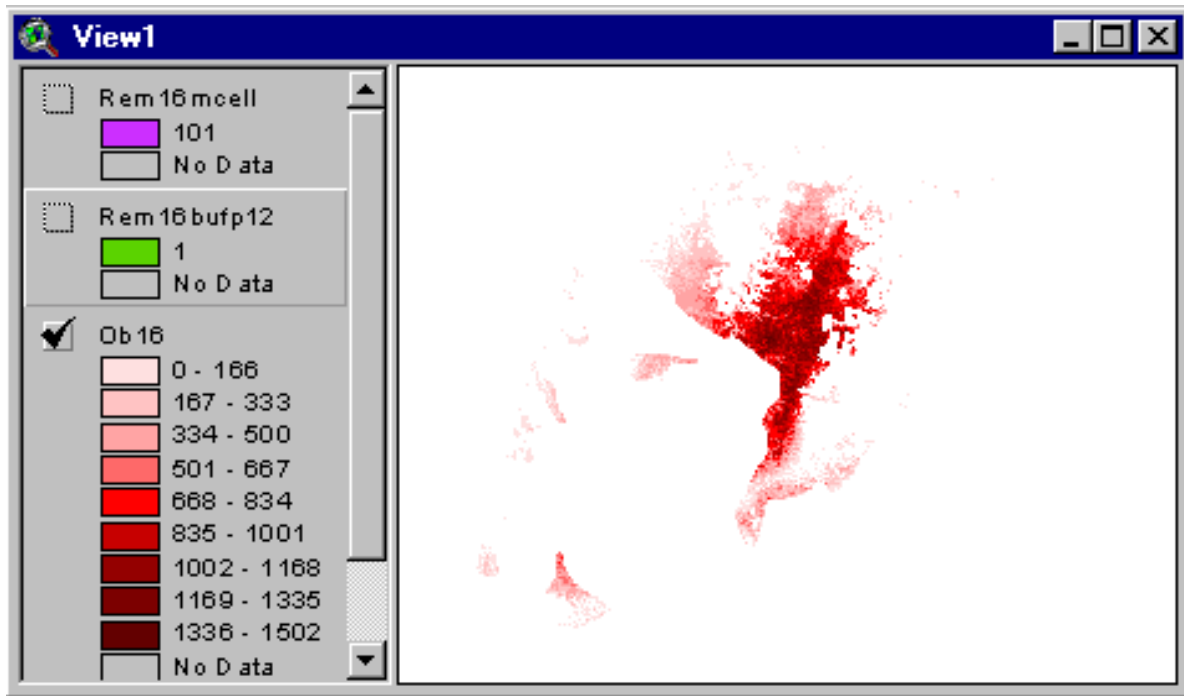
Recall, Rem16bufp12 is remaining coal reduced by a 50 foot safety buffer and by the area where coal has a thickness less than 12 inches.

In Analysis Properties, enter these settings:

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent	Same As Rem16bufp12

Left: -155677.503175 Top: 1970643.69375

Bottom: 1693107.69375 Right: 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size: As Specified Below

Cell Size: 16 m

Number of Rows: 17346

Number of Columns: 21718

Analysis Mask: Remsurfall

OK   Cancel

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
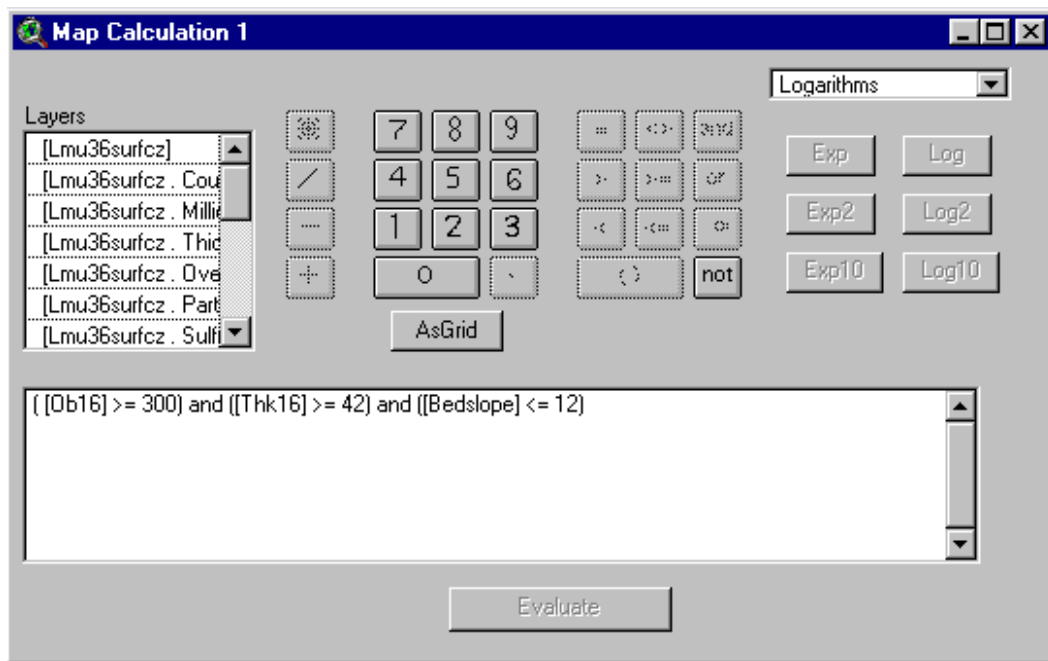
In Theme Properties, rename Map Calculation 1 as: longwall01.

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Change the 0 values to null to create a longwall analysis mask:
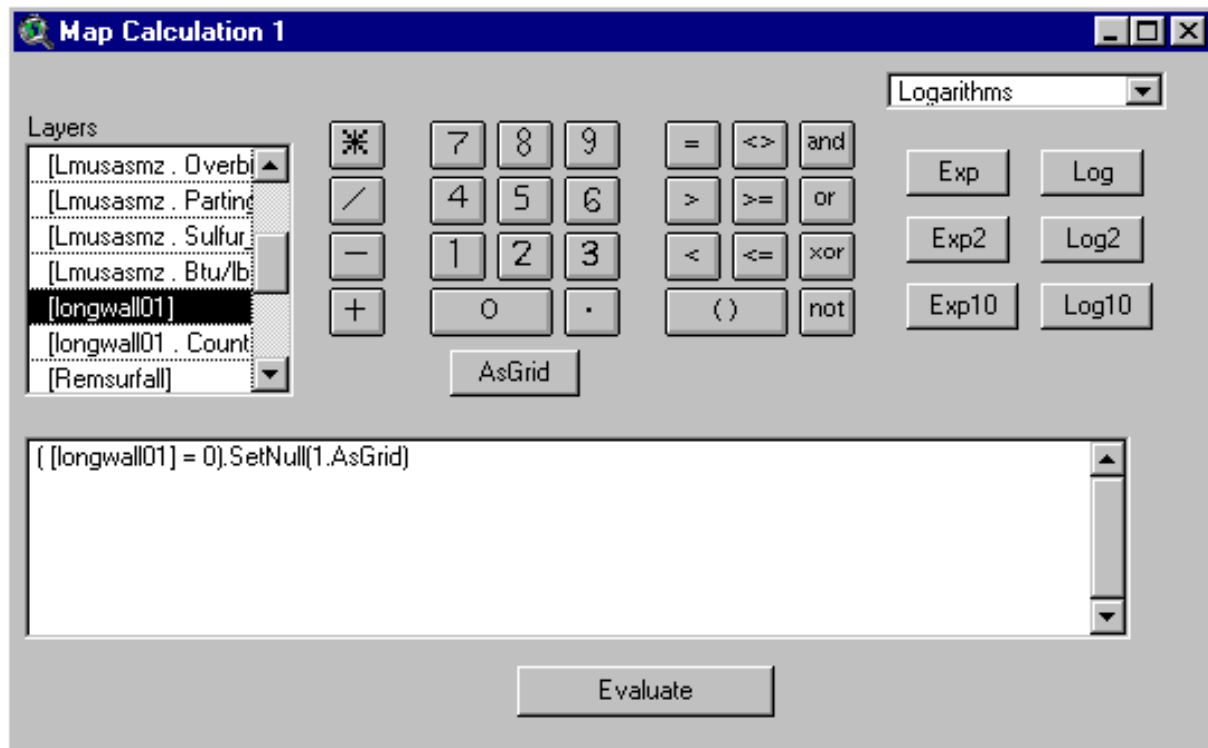
In Theme Properties, rename Map Calculation 1 as: longwall1null.

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Longwall1null is the area of the Pittsburgh coal bed that meets mineability criteria for longwall mining:
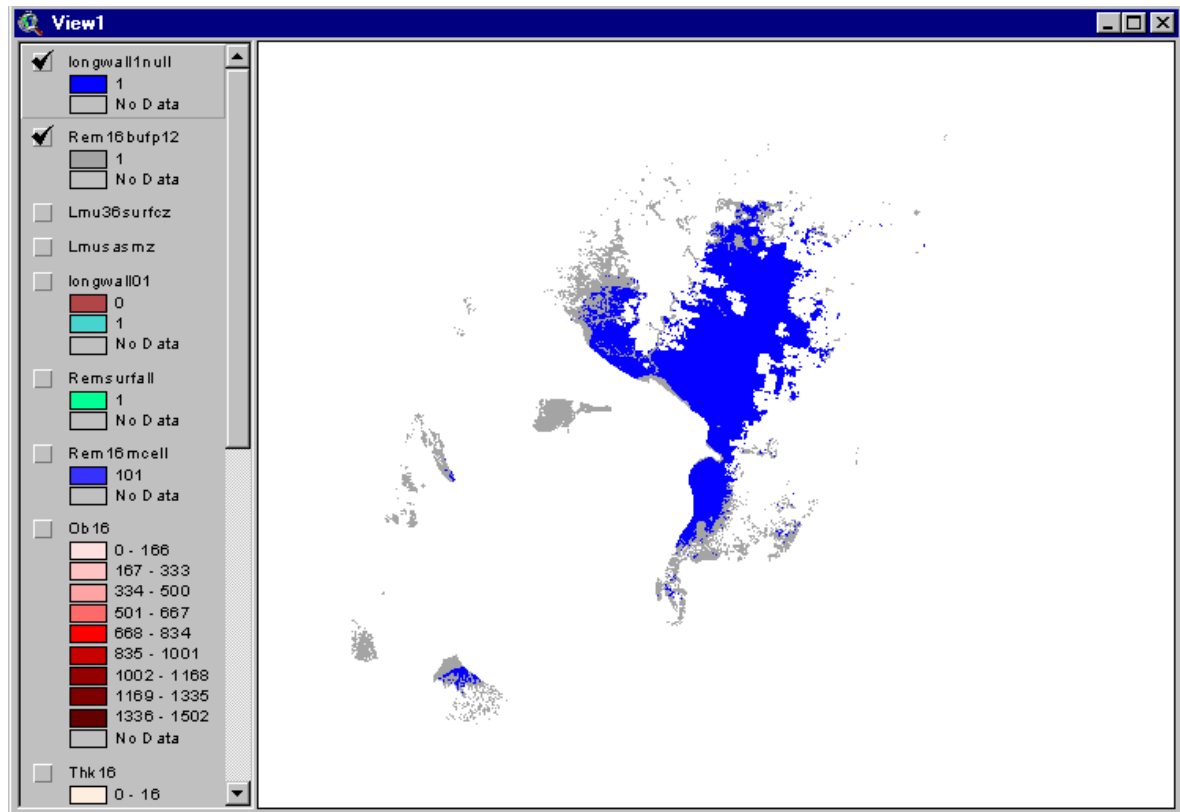
Create Coverage of Longwall Mineable Coal, 42 to 72 Inches Thick

Before assessing coal for minimum economic size, we need to break out the prospective longwall mineable coal into thickness categories.

Why?: Because we want to know within thickness categories, whether there is enough coal for viable mining operations.

We consider the following breakouts which mimic the breakouts in COALVAL:

Mining Method	Coal Thickness
Longwall	42-72 inches
Longwall	72-96 inches
Longwall	> 96 inches

We proceed now to break Longwall01 into the 42-72 inch thickness category.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
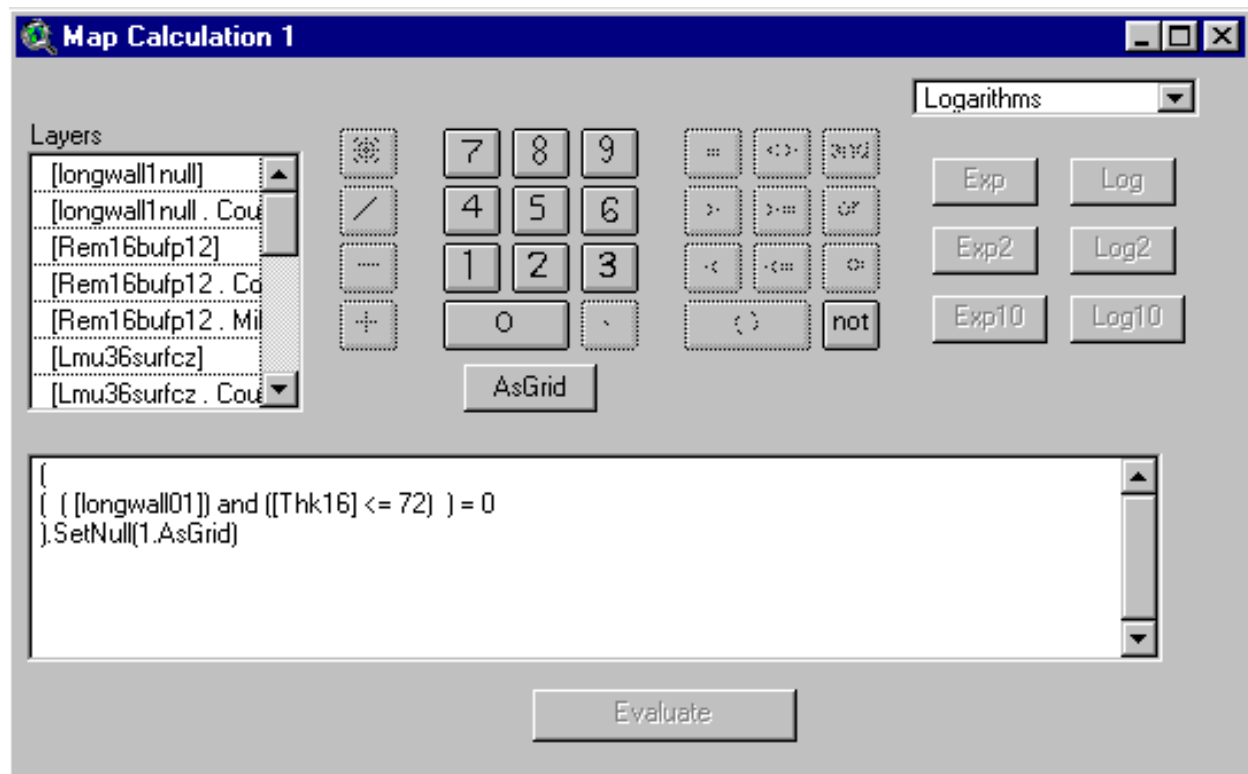
In Theme Properties, rename Map Calculation 1 as: lw4272null.

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.
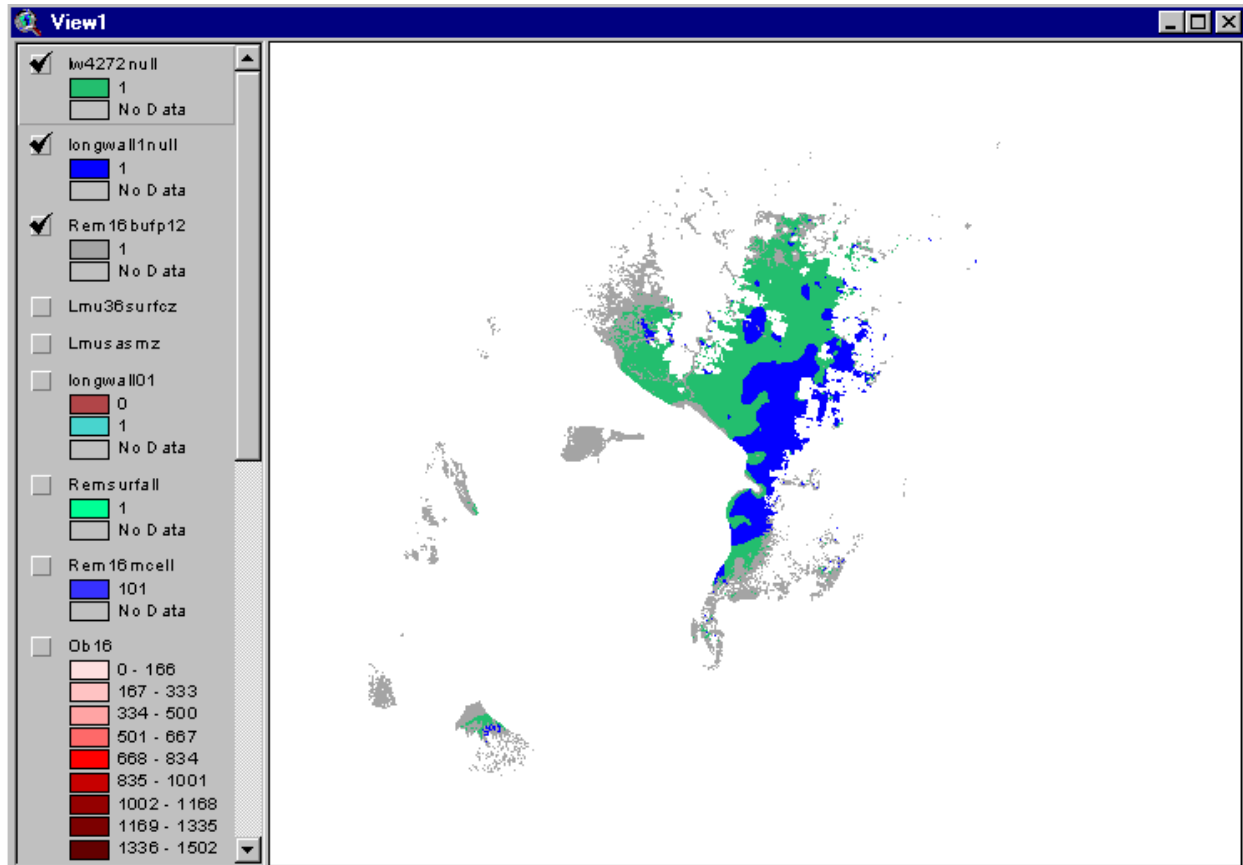
Download 2 Scripts from the ESRI ArcScripts Site: ShapeWarp 2.2, and Connect the Dots

Next, we make the grid to superimpose on the longwall layer.

First, we need to download 2 scripts from www.esri.com.

Attach to www.esri.com.

Click "ArcScripts" (lower left side of window).

In window that opens, under Primary Software select "ArcView 3.x"

Scroll to "ShapeWarp 2.2"

Click on "ShapeWarp 2.2"

Complete Download procedure.

Save file to

              c:\temp   (At this point, you are downloading a Zip file)

Use the back button to return to the screen that lists the scripts.

Scroll to "Connect the Dots"

Click on "Connect the Dots"

Complete Download procedure.

Save file to

>   c\esri\av_gis30\arcview\ext32

Use Winzip or comparable utility:

>   In Windows Explorer, Scroll to c:\temp\shapewarp.zip.

>   Double click on shapewarp.zip.

>   Extract the file to

>   c:\esri\av_gis30\arcview\ext32

Save your ArcView project (e.g., as c:\testuser\chapter8.apr).

Important Note: We now digress from assessment work to make a grid. We will use the grid to break the coal into blocks of the size listed in table 7-1, p. 7-2. After the grid is built, <u>we will reopen the chapter8 project.</u>

Open a new ArcView project.

>   When prompted to add data, respond "No"

>   Under File Menu

>>   Click Extensions

>>   Toggle on

>>>   Connect the Dots

>>>   Geoprocessing

>>>   ShapeWarp 2.2

>>>   Spatial Analyst

Notice that Connect the Dots adds a new button that has a star as its icon, located on the right-hand side of the button bar.

Important note: Do not set map units in View Properties. Gridmaker (applied below) only works when View is unprojected.

Add Graphics-to-Shapefile Button to View Window

In chapter 6, we downloaded script: **view.gra2shp.ave**.

It should be residing in c:\esri\av_gis30\arcview\samples\scripts.

We proceed to add (1) **view.gra2shp.ave** and (2) **grdmakerrev.ave** as buttons to our project.

Add view.gra2shp.ave:

      Make the Project window active.

      In Project Manger, click the "Script Icon"

      Click "new"

      Under the Script Menu, click "Load Text File"

      Scroll to c:\esri\av_gis30\arcview\samples\scripts.

      Select: view.gra2shp.ave.

      Click the Compile Button (looks like check mark).

      Make the **View1** window active.

      Double-click on any open space on the button bar (near top of screen):

            <u>The Customize Dialog Window opens</u>

      Set Category to: **Buttons**.

      In middle of Customize Dialog Window, move slider all the way to the right.

      Click in the window above the slider, just to the left of the last button.

      Then click "New", to the left and below the slider.

      In the bottom half of the Customize Dialog Window, we set properties for our new button.

      Double Click "Click" (the first property in the table in the bottom half of the window).

In the window that opens, Scroll to "Script1"

Click "OK"

Double Click "Help"

In the window that opens, type:

> Converts Selected Graphics to Shapefile//Converts Selected Graphics to Shapefile

> Click "OK"

Double Click "Icon"

In the window that opens, scroll to and click the "G"

Click "OK"
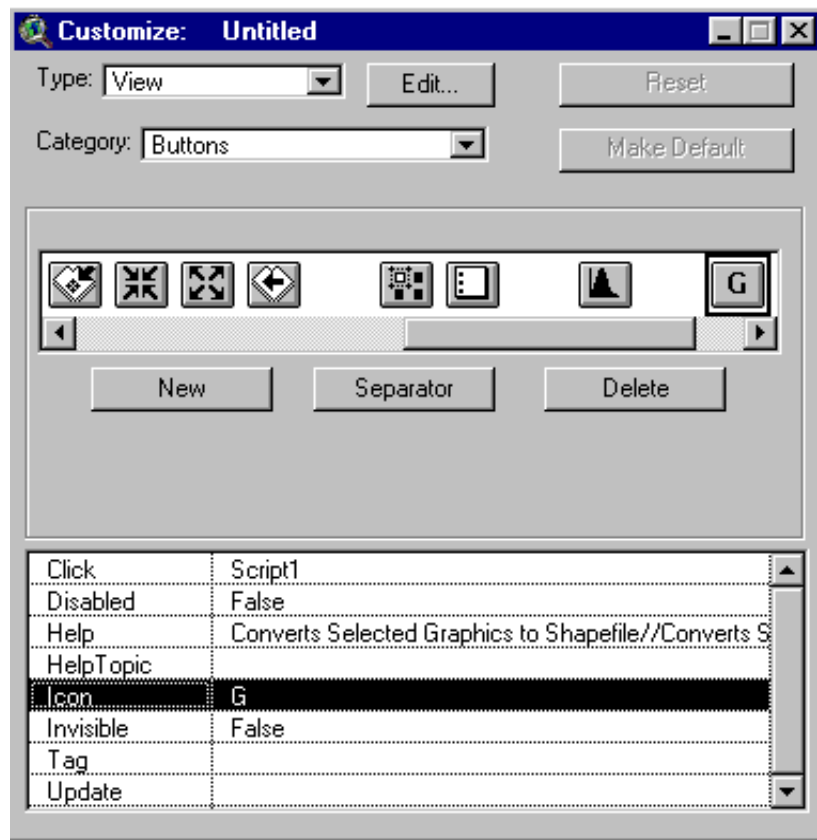
At this point, the Customize Dialog Window has these settings:

Click the X (upper right corner) to close the Customize Dialog Window.

Make the View Window active.

The new G button is added to the button bar.

Add Gridmaker Button to View Window

Add : **grdmakerrev.ave**

This avenue script was built from a similar script in the ESRI scripts folder. It builds a grid that accurately matches positions provided by the user.

The script is on **3.25 inch diskette that accompanies this Guide.**

Make the Project window active.

In Project Manger, click the "Script Icon"

Click "new."

Under the Script Menu, click "Load Text File"

Place diskette in A drive and scroll to it in Windows Explorer.

Select: **grdmakerrev.ave**.

Click the Compile Button (looks like check mark).

Make the **View1** window active.

Double-click on any open space on the button bar (near top of screen).

The Customize Dialog Window opens.

Set Category to: **Buttons.**

In middle of Customize Dialog Window, move slider all the way to the right.

Click in the window above the slider, just to the left of the last button.

Then click "New", to the left and below the slider.

In the bottom half of the Customize Dialog Window, we set properties for our new button.

Double Click "Click" (the first property in the table in the bottom half of the window).

In the window that opens, Scroll to "Script2"

Click "OK"

Double Click "Help"

In the window that opens, type:

> Builds Grid to User Specs//Requires left longitude, bottom latitude, horizontal span, vertical span, # of rows, and # of columns
> Click "OK"

Double Click "Icon"

In the window that opens, scroll to and click the "Frame Table" icon.

Click "OK"

At this point, the Customize Dialog Window has these settings:
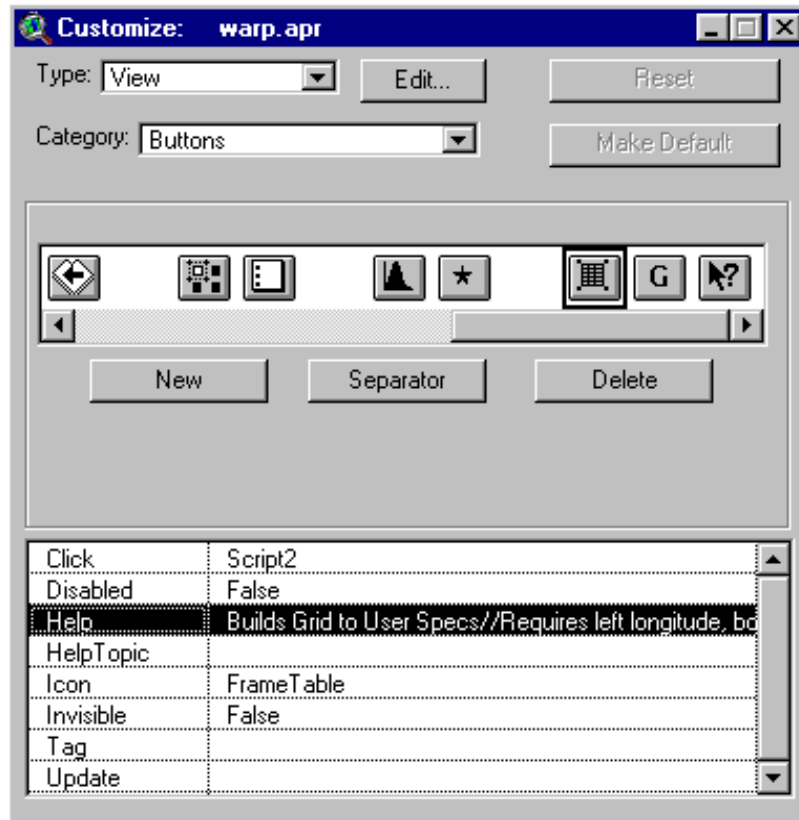
Click the X (upper right corner) to close the Customize Dialog Window.

Make the View Window active.

The new FrameTable button is added to the **button bar** (2rd level all the way to the right).

Save your project as

  c:\testuser\warp.prj

You can use this project as a starting point to build and warp other grids.

It is very important that you save the project now.

The steps that follow will remove the extra buttons that you have added to the View window.

Do not resave under name warp.apr beyond this point. The current configuration is the starting point for further applications of the grid build and warp process.

Create Grid to Delineate Coal Resource Blocks

Add this grid to View1:

        Rem16bufp12

        Toggle on its display

        Position the cursor near the top of the remaining coal

        Record the latitude reading from the upper right of the window

        The units are meters

        We will use 2,000,000. You may notice that a latitude of 2,000,000 is a position above the location of the highest coal. Our final grid (illustrated by the rotated grid below) will slope up to the left starting at 2,000,000 and that should be sufficient to overlay the remaining coal.
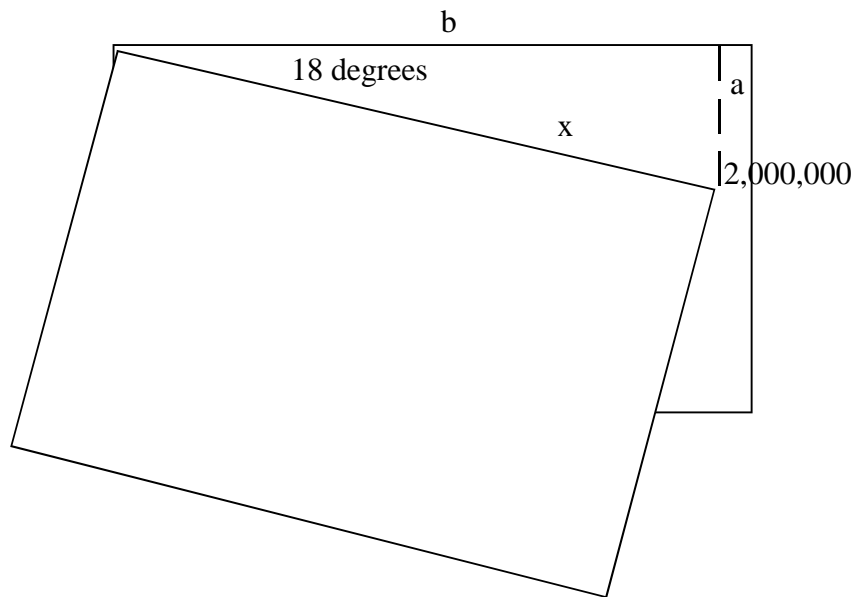
a is the vertical distance from the new right corner to the top edge of the initial rectangular grid.

b is the horizontal distance from the old upper left corner to the point where the vertical dashed line intersects the top edge of the initial rectangular grid.

8 - 18

x is the length of the top edge of both the initial rectangular grid and the rotated grid.

From trigonometry:

$$\sin(18) = a/x \quad \text{or } a = x \text{ times } \sin(18)$$

$$\cos(18) = b/x \quad \text{or } b = x \text{ times } \cos(18)$$

In View1, position cursor on left side of window and record the longitude:

-188,000 meters

In View1, note that a wide horizontal span across the remaining coal gets us to a longitude of approximately 250,000 meters.

We want our grid to be made of cells that contain approximately 170 million tons of coal. We are analyzing longwall at thicknesses between 42 and 72 inches. The maximum coal resource block (7th column table 7-1, p. 7-2) is about 170,000,000 tons. Later, when we analyze interior safety barriers, we want a coal resource grid that more accurately reflects actual mine size. To obtain that grid, we will repeat the procedure described below, but use a coal resource block = 57 million tons (6th column table 7-1, p. 7-2, longwall 42-72).

We know: 0.445 x thickness (in feet) x area in square meters = tons of coal.

Using 170 million tons as the target, 4.75 feet (midpoint between 42 and 72 inches) as coal thickness, and solving for the side of a square cell (using the preceding equation) gives us 8,969 meters on a side for a cell in the grid:

cell length (meters) = sqrt(tons of coal/(density factor x thickness) or, as example,

cell length (meters) = sqrt(170,000,000/(0.445 x 4.75) = 8,969

The horizontal span between -188,000 meters and 250,000 meters is 438,000 meters.

Dividing by 8,969 meters per cell and rounding up to the nearest whole # gives us 49 cells or columns in the grid.

This calculation also, gives us the longitude for the northeast corner of the original rectangular grid as 251,481 meters with a span of 439,481 meters.

The longitude for the initial rectangular grid (at the upper edge) is calculated by solving for **a** and adding **a** to 2,000,000:

$$\sin(18) \text{ times } 439{,}481 + 2{,}000{,}000 = 2{,}135{,}807$$

Thus, the coordinate pair for the northeast corner is (251,481   2,135,807)

From latitude readings in View1, a generous span starts with a latitude of 1,634,000, which is below the bottom of the coal, and ends with a latitude of 2,135,822 beyond the top of the coal. The top reading is the latitude calculated immediately above.

The overall vertical span is the difference or 501,807.

We divide by 8,969 and round to the nearest whole number to calculate the # of rows in the superimposed grid:

56 rows

We adjust to obtain the final lower latitude by multiplying 8,959 times 56 and subtracting from 2,135,807 to obtain the lower latitude as:

1,633,543

The important point in making these calculations is to have a rotated grid that covers the remaining coal. Thus, we establish the corner points for the original rectangular grid so that the rotated grid easily covers the area of the remaining coal. Later, by using the clip request, we will discard the parts of the grid outside the area of the remaining coal. Thus, starting with a grid that is large has no penalty.

The grid with cells containing 170 million tons of coal (when a cell is completely filled in with coal) provides a starting point for allocating coal to longwall operations. The final allocation will be to coal resource blocks of many different sizes as determined by restrictions.

An angle of 18 degrees is used to rotate the grid. This angle is about the average orientation of historic longwall mines. The historic mines were oriented along this angle in order to take advantage of rock fractures that aided extraction.

The **northwest** point of an initial rectangular grid is to be positioned (in meters) at:

-188,000 longitude and 2,135,807 latitude

The horizontal span is set at 49 x 8,969 or 439,481 meters (49 columns).

The vertical span is set at 56 x 8,969 or 502,264 meters (56 rows).

These values allow us to determine the position of the other corners of an initial rectangular grid:

Corner Position	Longitude (meters)	Latitude (meters)
Northwest	-188,000	2,135,807
Northeast	251,481	2,135,807
Southeast	251,481	1,633,543
Southwest	-188,000	1,633,543

Using sin, cos, and trigonometry, we can calculate the corner positions for the grid when it is rotated by 18 degrees down from the northwest corner.

We use an Excel spreadsheet to do this:

Microsoft Excel - minegrid.xls

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

Arial   10   **B** *I* U

K2 = =INT(((B25-B24)/J2)+0.5)

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I
1	corner	from x	from y	to x	to y		technolog	aver bed thickness (feet)	length of the resource block in meters
2	northwest	-188000	2135807	-188000	2135807		lw4272	4.75	8968.042
3	northeast	251481	2135807	229971	2000000		lw7296	7	
4	southeast	251481	1633543	74763.2	1522318		lw96	8.6	
5	southwest	-188000	1633543	-343208	1658126		cm2442	2.75	
6	northwest			-188000	2135807		cm4272	4.75	
7							cm7296	7	
8							cm96	8.6	
9	Angle of rotation								
10	18								8968.042
11	horizontal span								
12	439481								
13	vertical span								
14	502264								
15	Enter tonnage in A16, Grid will be based upon this tonnage								
16	170000000								
17	Enter technology in cell A19 (select from lw4272, lw7296, lw96, cm2442, cm4272, cm7296, or cm96)								
18	**Note: type technology just as listed above with characters lowercase**								
19	lw4272								
20	Parameters for Pittsburgh are below, Change for other beds								
21	Density based upon 1800 tons/acre-ft in units of tons per square meter-foot, in cell A22								
22	0.445								
23	For rectangular grid, set values are as follows								
24	left long	-188000							
25	right long	250000							
26	bottom lat	1634000							
27	top rotated lat	2000000							
28									
29									

Minegrid.xls is on the diskette in the pocket of the Users Guide binder.

For a specific coal bed, you enter these parameters:

A24	left longitude
A25	right longitude
A26	bottom latitude
A27	top right <u>rotated</u> latitude
A10	angle of rotation
A22	coal density (in units of tons per meter squared-foot)

These parameter values (in blue type in the spreadsheet) have to be entered only once for a specific coal bed.

For a specific mining technology and coal thickness, you enter these parameters:

A16	target tonnage for block (from table 7-1, p. 7-2)
A19	technology/thickness label (see cell A17 in spreadsheet for choices)

These parameter values (with a green background in the spreadsheet) have to be entered for each technology and thickness category and each time the tonnage is changed.

The excel program will calculate the "to x" and "to y" values, and the horizontal and vertical spans.

The fifth coordinate pair should be the same as the first coordinate pair.
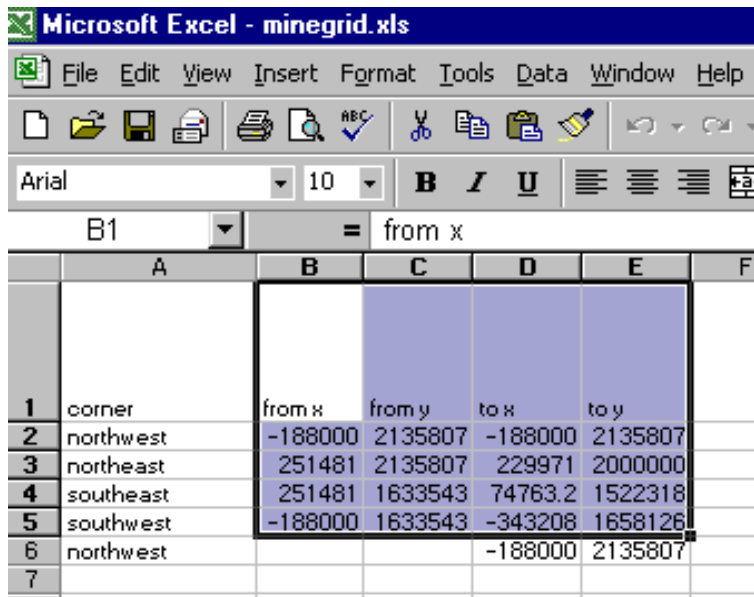
If not check for inconsistency in data values.

Make sure the data coincide with the <u>corners</u> as specified in column A of the spreadsheet.

After you calculate corner points for the rotated grid, copy them to a new workbook:

Open a new workbook in Excel.

Highlight the field names and the values for the 4 corner points:

Under the Edit Menu click

Copy

Open the new workbook.

Under the Edit Menu click

Paste Special

In the Paste Special dialogue window click:

Values
OK

Paste Special ? ☒

Paste
- ○ All
- ○ Formulas
- ⦿ Values
- ○ Formats
- ○ Comments
- ○ Validation
- ○ All except borders
- ○ Column widths

Operation
- ⦿ None
- ○ Add
- ○ Subtract
- ○ Multiply
- ○ Divide

☐ Skip blanks ☐ Transpose

[Paste Link] [OK] [Cancel]

Click on the A1 cell.

Save the spreadsheet as

C:\testuser\fromtopittlw.dbf   (Dbase IV format)

Close the new workbook.

Respond "yes" or "OK" or "save" to all Excel queries.

If necessary, make your Excel workbook (minegrid.xls) active

At the bottom of the worksheet, notice that there are 2 worksheets listed:

    calculate   (the worksheet that is open)
    gridmaker

Click gridmaker to open it:

	A	B	C
1	mining technology	lw4272	
2	tonnage	170000000	
3	Values for running gridmaker		
4	left longitude	-188000	
5	bottom latitude	1633543	
6	horizontal span	439481	
7	vertical span	502264	
8	rows	56	
9	columns	49	
10			

The gridmaker worksheet captures the values you will need later to run the grdmakerrev script in ArcView.

Click on the A1 cell

Under the file menu, click "Print"

You will use these printed values later when you run the grdmakerrev script.

Note: The minegrid.xls spreadsheet will be run many times to complete the assessment for a coal bed.

You will want to establish a system for naming the dbf files that you create.

The Users Guide uses fromtopittlw.dbf as a sample name in the section that follows.

An approach that anticipates repeated use, could use this system:

      blockgridlw4272.dbf   **grid built using column 7, table 7-1, p. 7-2**
      minegridlw4272.dbf   **grid built using column 6, table 7-1, p. 7-2**
      etc. for other technology/thickness combinations

<u>For some coal beds, the grids may not be rotated.</u>

<u>In those cases, you proceed to apply the grdmakerrev script to create a rectangular grid.</u>

<u>You would not apply the ShapeWarp extension, which rotates the grid.</u>

Open ArcView

In the Project Manager Window click

the Tables Icon

Click "Add"

Scroll to c:\testuser\fromtopittlw.dbf.

Click "OK"

In View1, under the View Menu
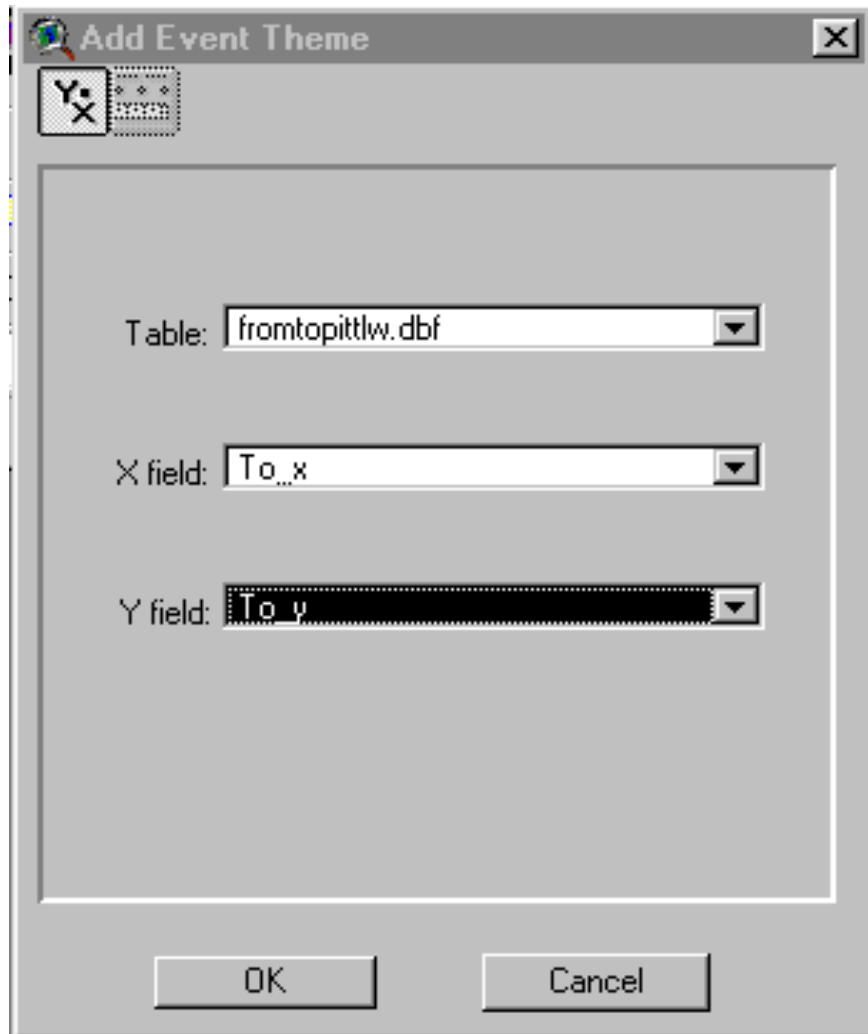
Click "Add Event Theme" and make these entries:

Click "OK"

Make the new theme active.

Toggle on its display.

Click on "Connect the Dots" [Button with "Star"]

Zoom to extent of active theme:
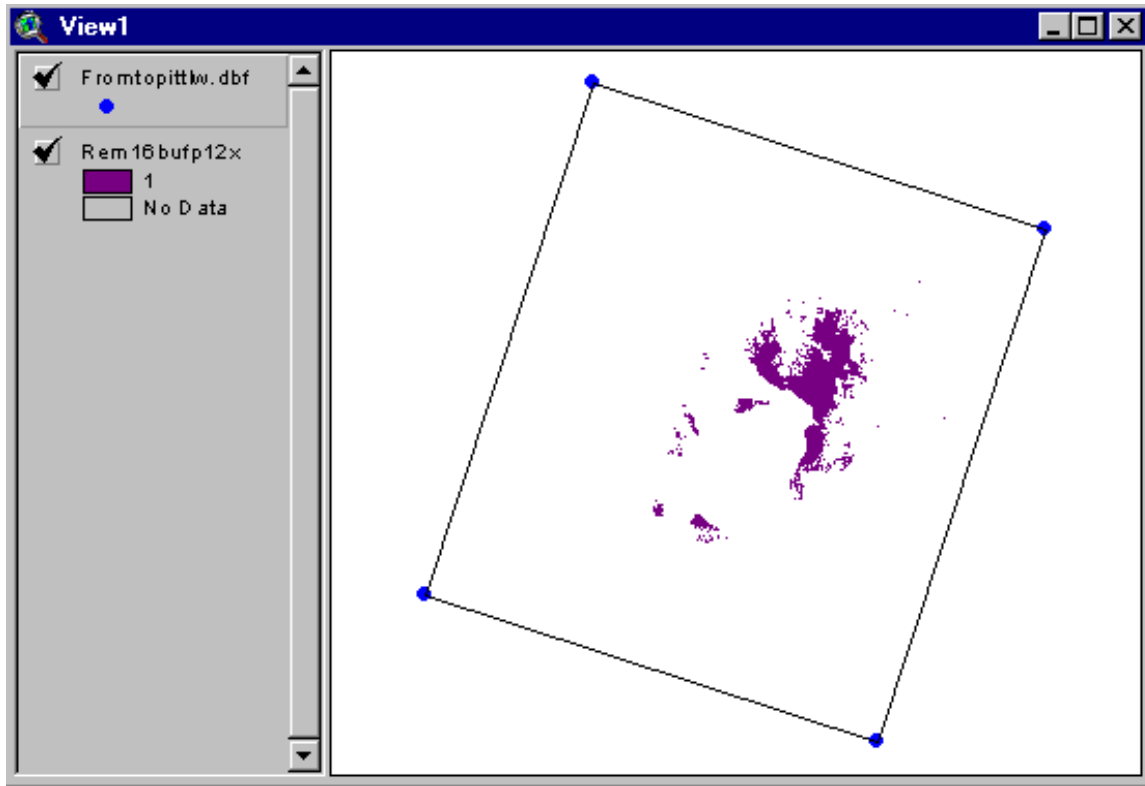
Click rotated rectangle to get its "handles"

Click the "G" Button.

Save the new shapefile as

>   c:\testuser\togridpittlw.shp

Make Fromtopittlw.dbf, active

Under the Edit menu click
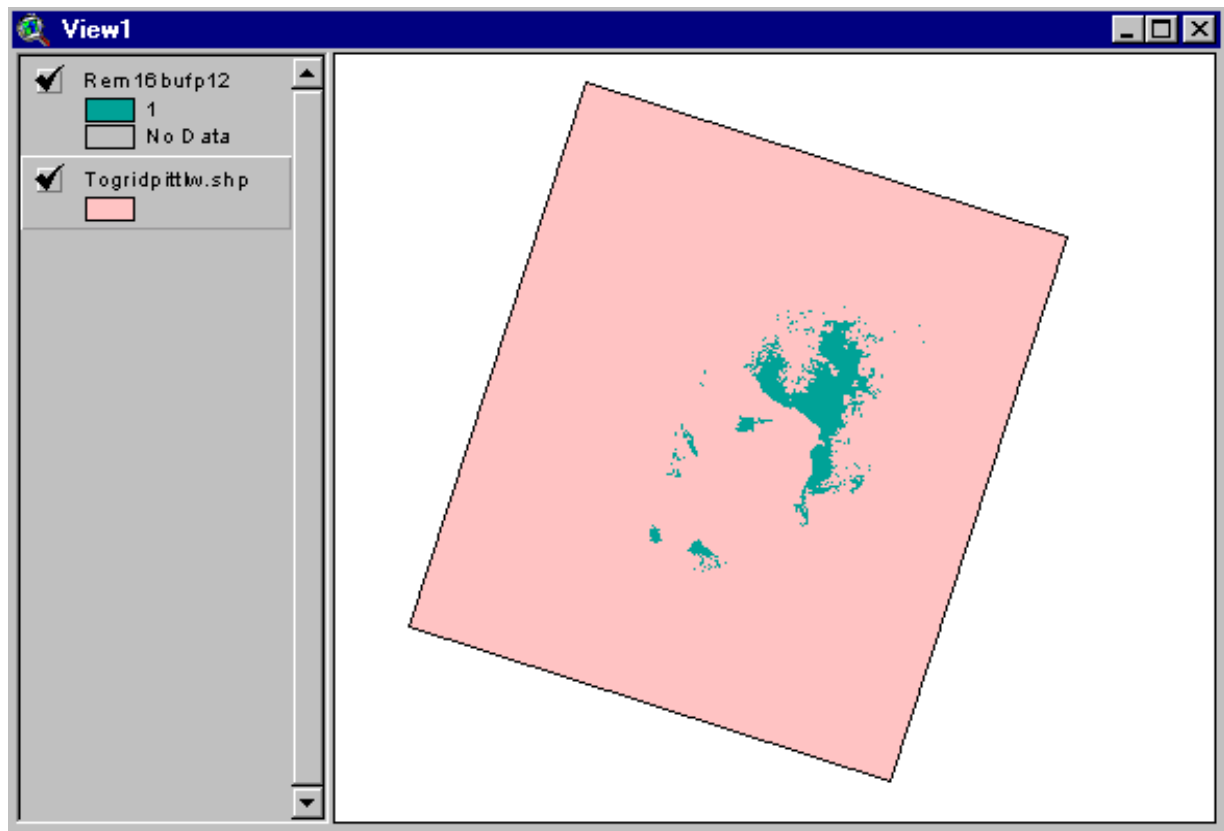
>   Delete Themes

>   Click "Yes"

Click on the rotated graphic to get its handles.

Press Delete

Click the Gridmaker Button (it looks like a grid on the right of the button bar)

You are prompted for 6 input parameters

If the default value is not correct in the Message box, then type the correct value

> **For <u>left longitude</u>**   **-188000**   **(No commas)**

> **For <u>bottom latitude</u>**   **1633502**

> **For <u>horizontal span</u>**   **439530**

> **For <u>vertical span</u>**   **502320**

> **For <u>rows</u>**   **56**

> **For <u>columns</u>**   **49**

(Obviously, the #'s you enter would be the appropriate values for the area where you are building a grid. The correct #'s for the Pittsburgh, longwall mining on 42 to 72 inch coal, are those above.)

Save the grid as

> c:\testuser\gridpittlw.shp

When you are prompted for Labels, click

> No

We are now ready to rotate gridpittlw

We will run ShapeWarp to rotate gridpittlw.

Our "from grid" is: **gridpittlw.shp**

Our "to grid" is: **togridpittlw.shp**

Our table of input data is: **fromtopittlw.dbf**

Our table of GCP's is: **coords1.dbf** (which we will create)

Delete all of the themes from ArcView.

Open the Project Manager Window.

Under the ShapeWarp Menu:

Click "Import Table"

Pick c:\testuser\fromtopittlw.dbf as the import table

Name c:\testuser\coords1.dbf as the GCP table

In the Pick Field Dialogue window match the field in the list to the query:

The new GCP table will display on your monitor:

Minimize the GCP table

Make the Project Manger Window active.

Click on the ShapeWarp "Diamond" icon.

In response to "Do you want to set the projection for the TO view?

        Click "No"

Pick the theme that you want to warp (i.e., rotate):

Pick the theme that has the rotated rectangle:

Pick the Themes for the TO View

Directory: c:\testuser

- surflmu.shp
- surfregionpoly.shp
- surfregionpoly2.shp
- testnewcounty.shp
- testsam1.shp
- theme1.shp
- togridpittlw.shp
- union1.shp

- c:\
- testuser
  - auger1236
  - auger1236f
  - auger1236sb
  - auger36
  - auger36f
  - auger36sb

OK

Cancel

○ Directories
○ Libraries

Data Source Types:
Feature Data Source

Drives:
c:

In response to the query about selecting a table

Click "Yes"

Would you like to use an existing table?

Yes   No

Select the coordinate table as

        c:\testuser\coords1.dbf

A window will open showing the TO and FROM rectangles. The 4 corner points will be used to guide the rotation:

Click the RMS icon on the ShapeWarp toolbar (looks like a calculator).

Select "First Order"

Click "OK"
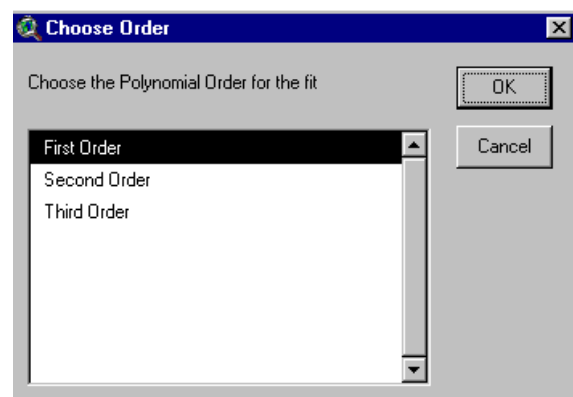
The RMS error should be very small.

On the ShapeWarp toolbar

Click "Go"

Save the rotated grid as

c:\testuser\gridfinalpittlw.shp

Respond "No" to query about report.

On the ShapeWarp toolbar

Click "Quit"

Close the project. Save the project as

c:\testuser\warplw4272.apr

DO NOT SAVE AS WARP.APR (RECALL WARP.APR IS YOUR TEMPLATE PROJECT)

Open project

c:\testuser\chapter8.apr

Add theme:

gridfinalpittlw.shp

In the Legend Editor:

Make the polygon fill for gridfinalpittlw.shp, transparent

Set size = 0.1 for the outline of gridfinalpittlw.shp

Maximize the View window.

Toggle on the display for all the themes.
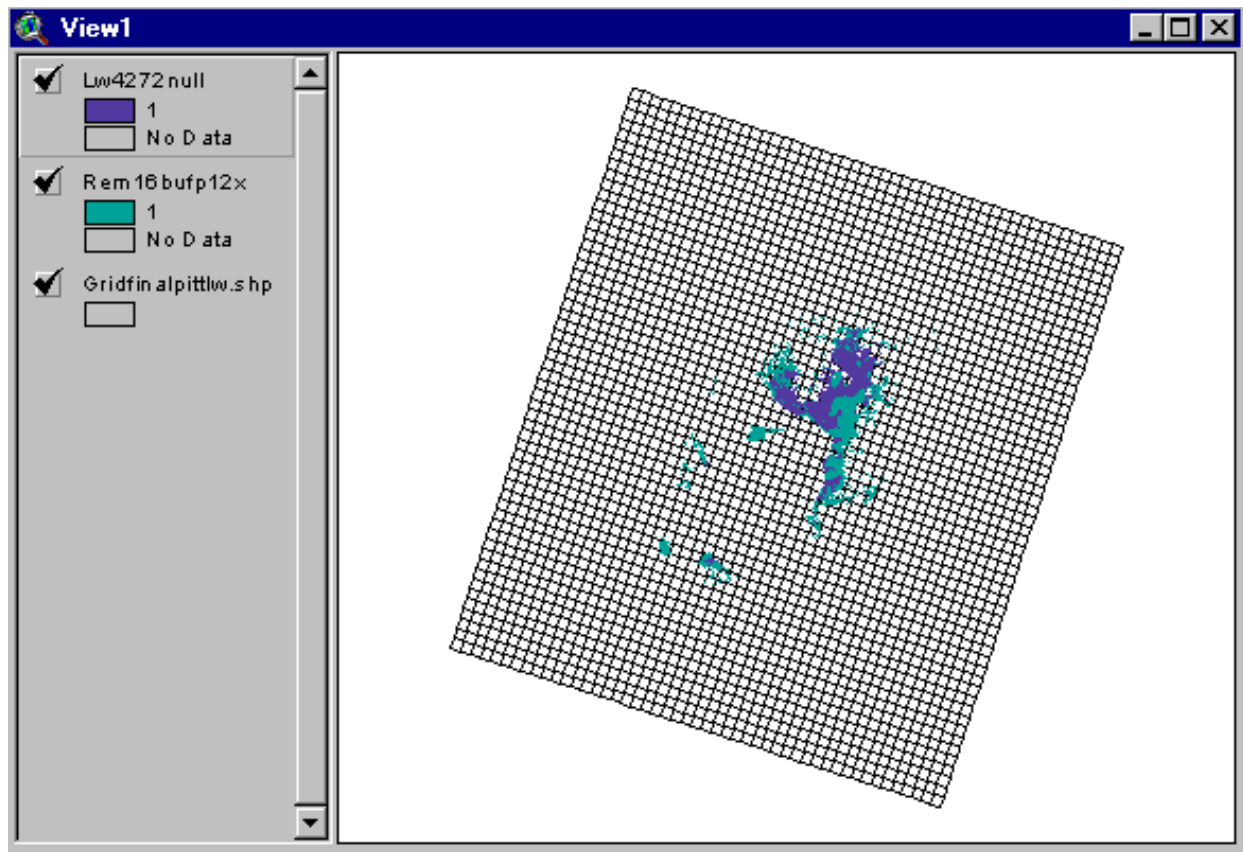
The grid covers the space occupied by the remaining Pittsburgh coal.

If you print the view window (using a postscript printer) you will see that it is very regular.

The grid may look jagged on the screen due to the screen resolution.

Add these themes:

>   waterzero
>   interstazero
>   parkszero
>   urbanareazero
>   wellszero
>   pipelineszero
>   placeszero
>   tonsbycell

Calculating Tons of Longwall Mineabl**e Coal, 42 to 72 Inches in Thickness**

Next, we identify all of the blocks (with no connection to other coal) in the Lw4272 layer that have fewer than 56.6 million tons of coal.

For coal at thickness in the 42 to 72 inch range, the minimum-size longwall mine is 56.6 million tons of coal resource (table 7-1, p. 7-2).

We eliminate these blocks from the Lw4272 layer.

Historic longwall mining occurred in areas with streams, but not in areas with large rivers and lakes. Thus, we apply these restrictions:

>   water bodies (lakes and large rivers)
>   interstate highways
>   parks
>   urban areas
>   oil and gas wells
>   pipelines
>   populated places

Streams are not applied. In chapter 10, we calculate the amount of coal in restrictions, accounting for the different treatments between surface and underground mining.

Restrictions for Underground Mining

Combine the 7 restriction layers into a single restriction layer.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:

The dialog box titled "union7restr" shows a Map Calculator with Layers list containing:
[Map Calculation 2], [Map Calculation 2], [Map Calculation 2], [Lw4272grid1], [Lw4272grid1 . Cou], [Lw4272grid1 . milli], [Union8restr]

Expression:
([Parkszero]) or ([Interstazero]) or ([Wellszero]) or ([Waterzero]) or ([Urbanareazero]) or ([Placeszero]) or ([Pipelineszero])

Rename the grid as: union7restr.

Add its **source** to the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Remove restricted areas from the area of Lw4272.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
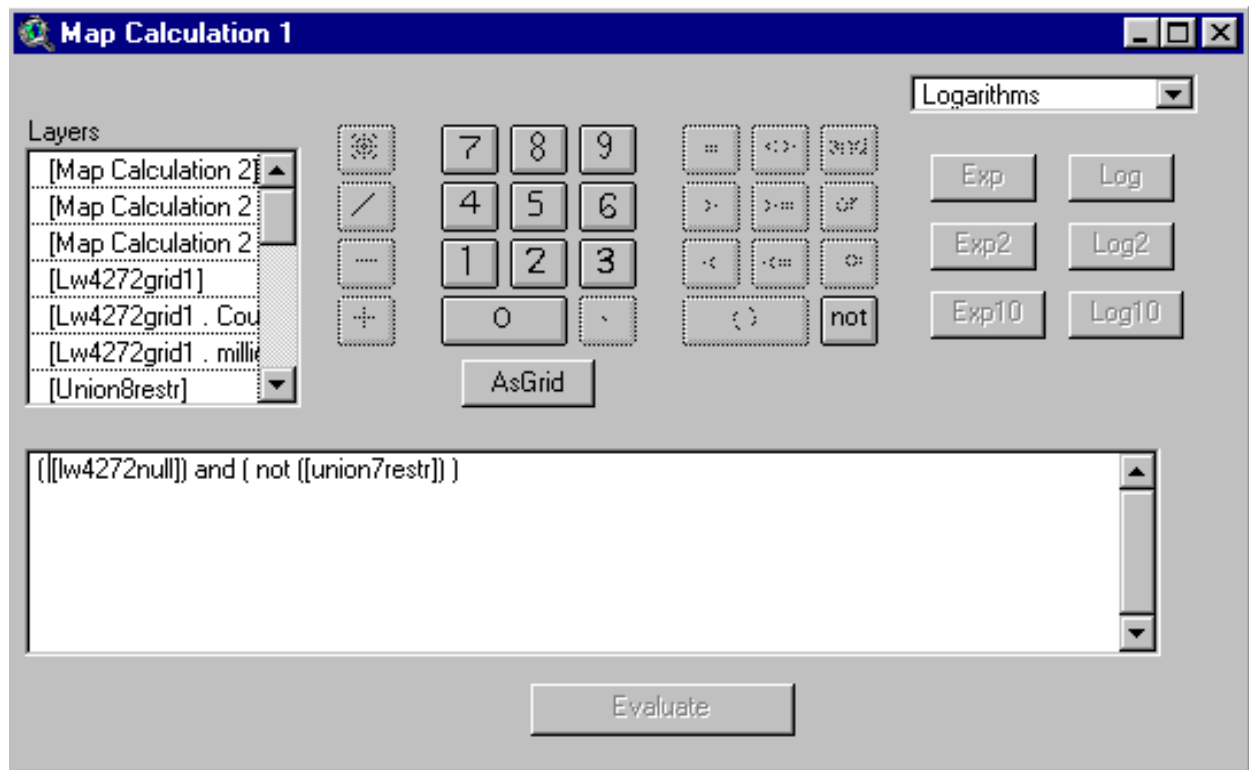
In Theme Properties, rename Map Calculation 1 as:

lw4272zero

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Group Contiguous Cells into Regions with a Unique Index Number

We now group contiguous cells into regions with a unique index number.

The new layer will contain coal that is unrestricted and coal that is restricted.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
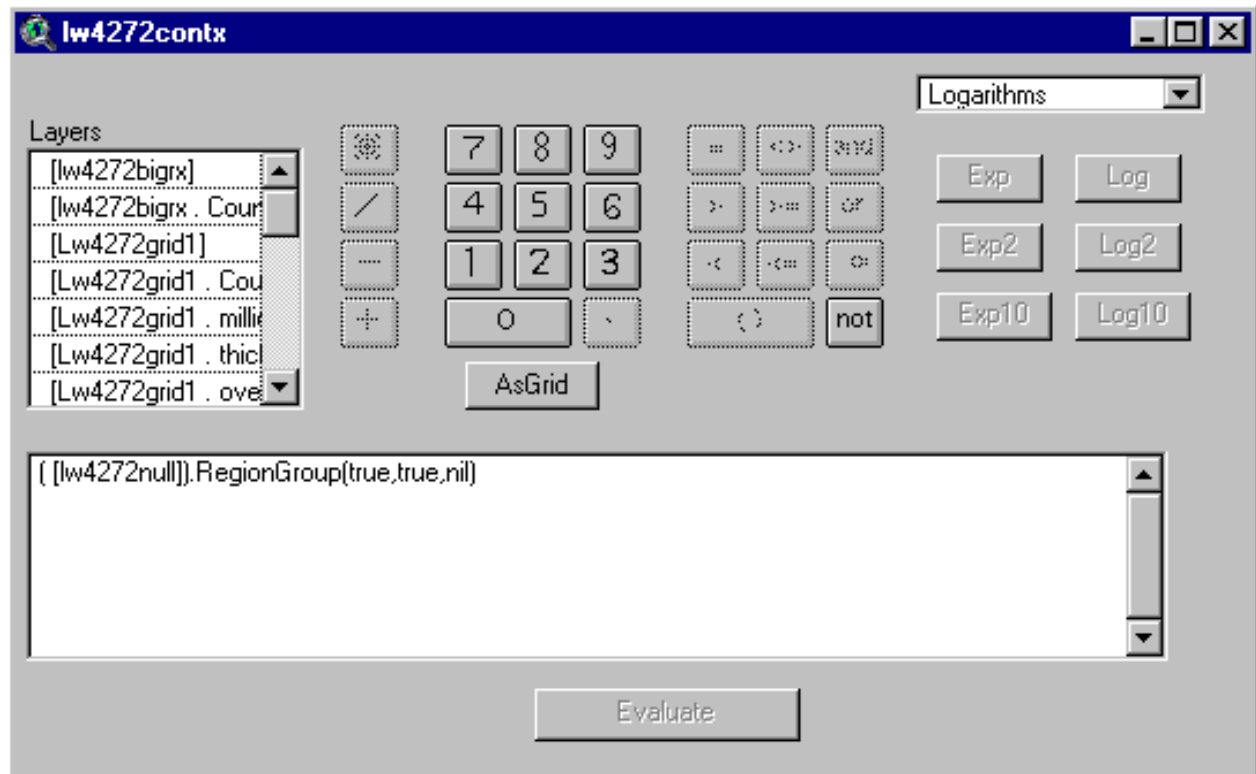
Notice that the first argument in RegionGroup is "true."

A true builds a region from orthogonal neighbors; diagonal neighbors are excluded.

In Theme Properties, rename the new grid as:

     lw4272contx

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Next, we estimate the tons of coal in restricted areas in each of the regions.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
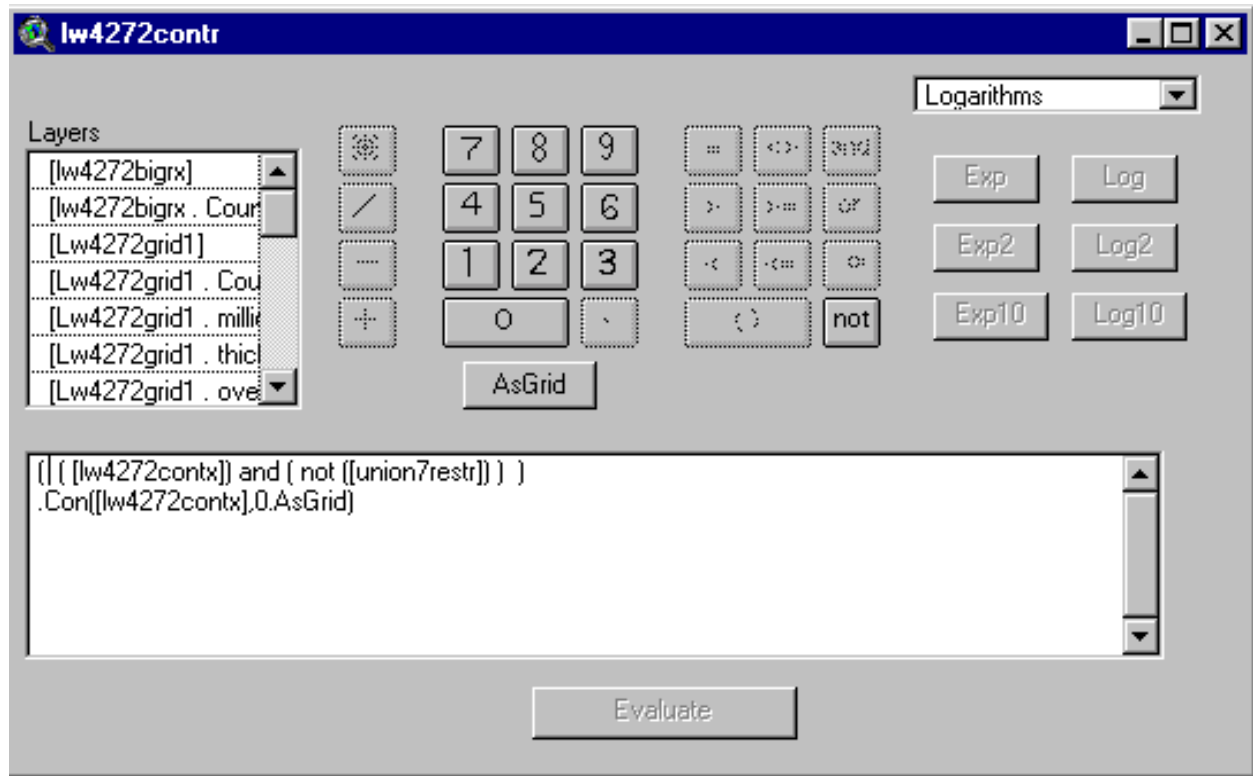
In Theme Properties, rename the new grid as:

　　　lw4272contr

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Identify Contiguous Blocks of Coal with Tonnage at or above Minimum Amount for Viable Mining Operation

Next, we identify all the contiguous block of coal that have total tonnage of at least 56.6 million tons (i.e., the minimum-size reserve block for a longwall mine, with coal 42-72 inches thick, table 7-1, p. 7-2).

Our procedure is to
     1. Use the Summarize request under the Analysis Menu to estimate the amount of coal in each block.
     2. Eliminate all blocks where tons are less than 56.6 million tons.

Step 1:
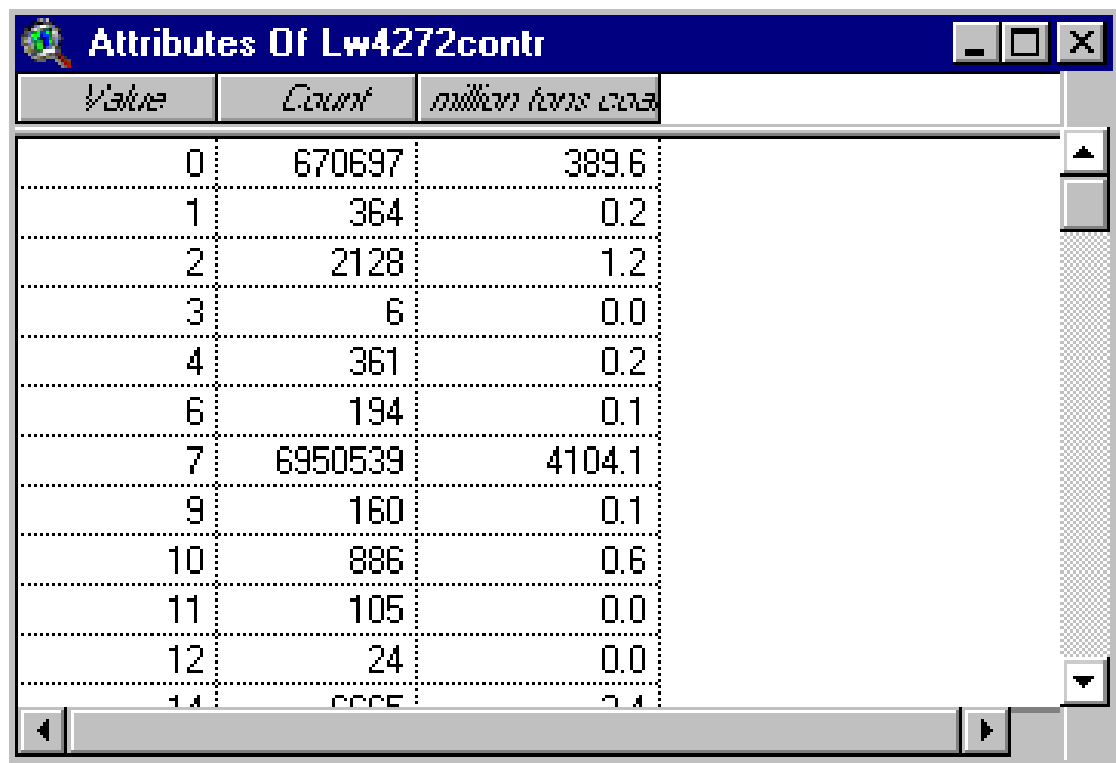
Make lw4272contr active

Under the Analysis Menu
     Click "Summarize"

     Use tonsbycell as the summarizing theme.

     Use Method A (pp. 6-66 and 6-84) to add million tons of coal to the table for lw4272contr:

Value	Count	million tons coal
0	670697	389.6
1	364	0.2
2	2128	1.2
3	6	0.0
4	361	0.2
6	194	0.1
7	6950539	4104.1
9	160	0.1
10	886	0.6
11	105	0.0
12	24	0.0

Step 2:

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
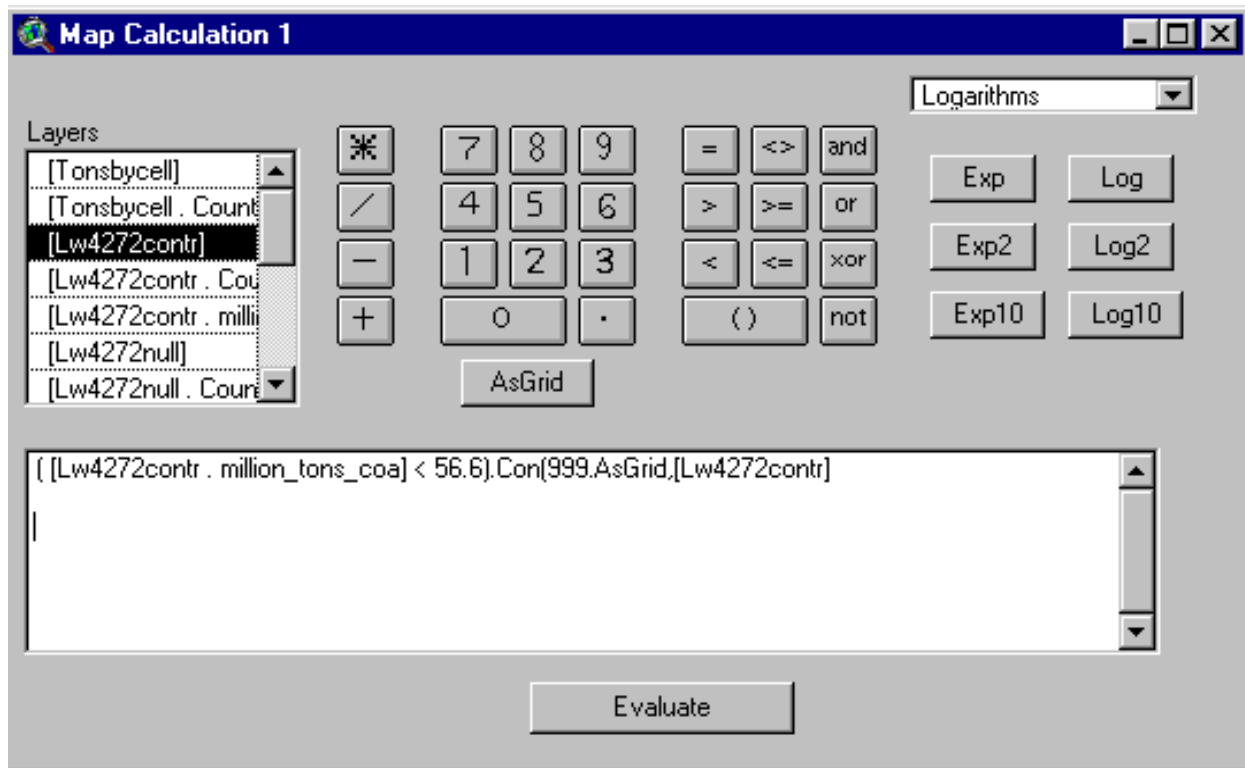
In theme Properties, rename the new grid as: lw4272bigr.

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

[Note: On the 3rd iteration (lw96), you need to enter a modified request to make the lw96bigr grid. The correct request is shown on p. 8-143. Jump to p. 8-143 and follow the instructions. Then jump back to p. 8-47 and proceed to complete the analysis of lw96.]

In the view below, the lighter colored areas are the small blocks of contiguous coal that are eliminated by imposing a tonnage cutoff of 56.6 million tons.

The areas in the intermediate shade are the locations of restricted coal.

The dark area contains coal potentially available for longwall mining.
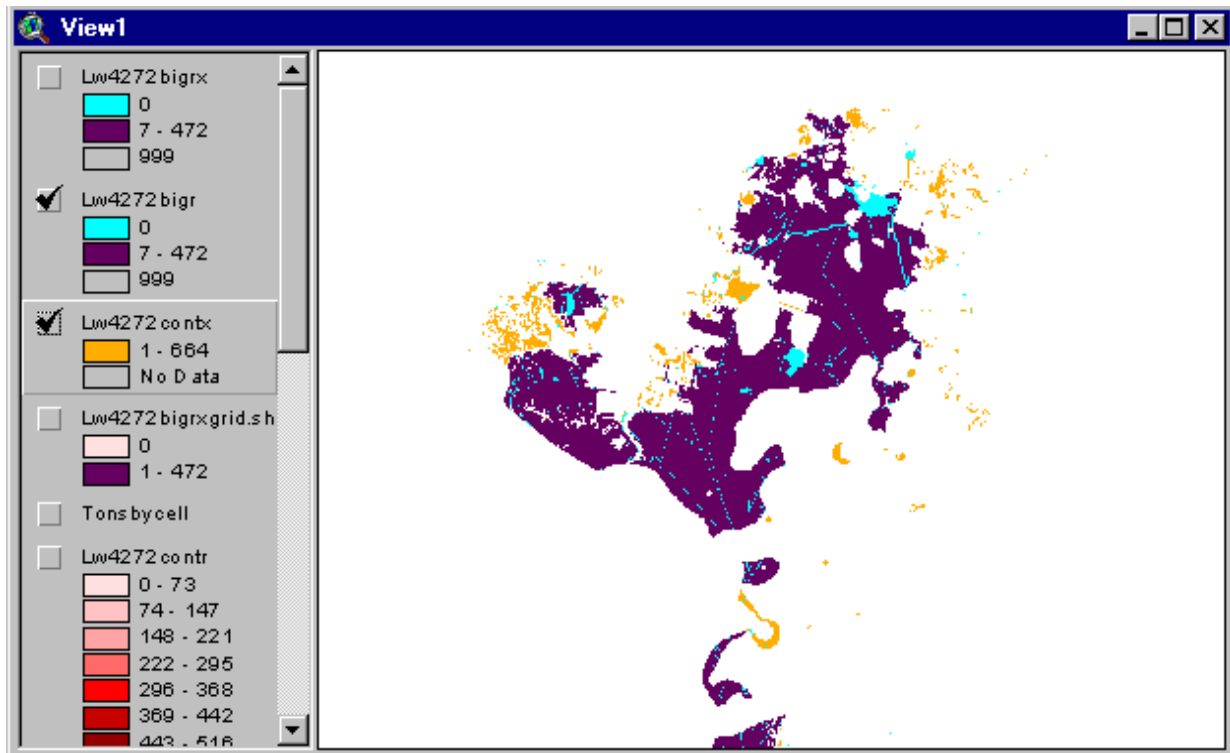
In lw4272bigr turn cells with a value of 999 to null.

The 999 cells are blocks of coal < 56.6 million tons.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
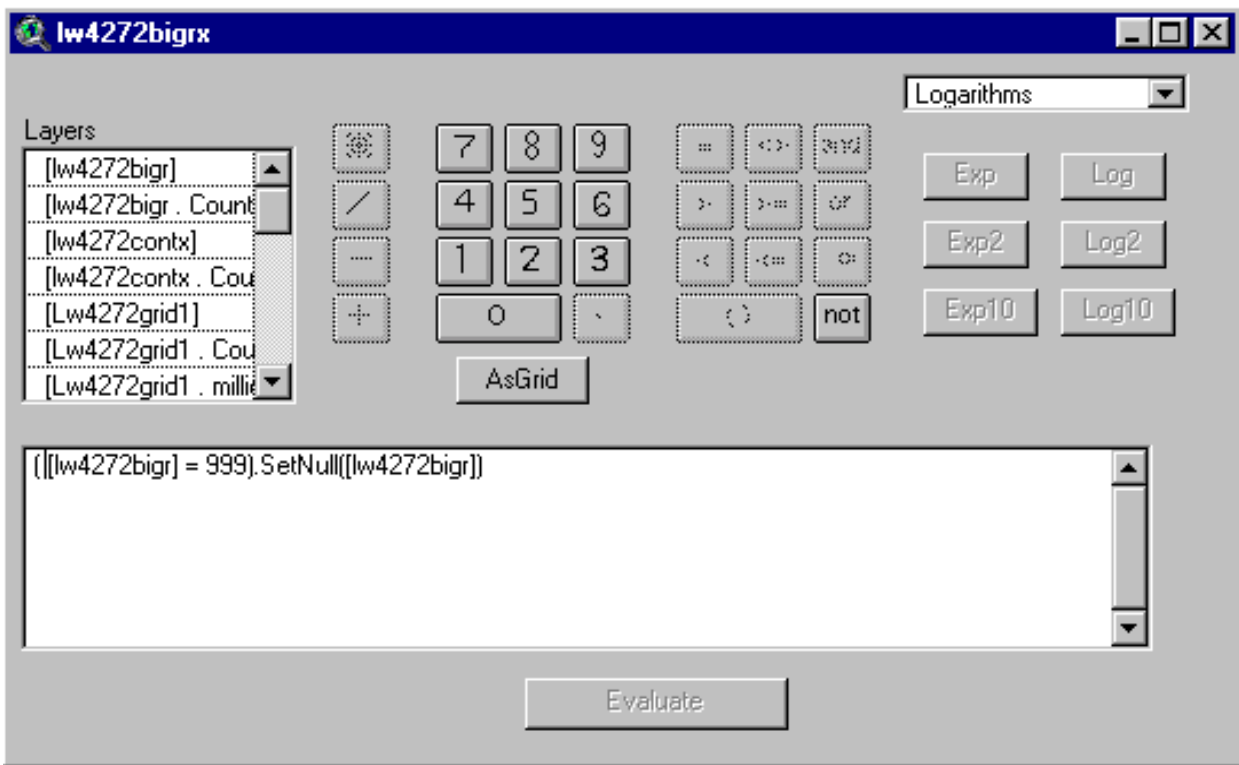
In Theme Properties, rename the new grid as:

     lw4272bigrx

Add its **source** to the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Convert lw4272bigrx to a shapefile.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
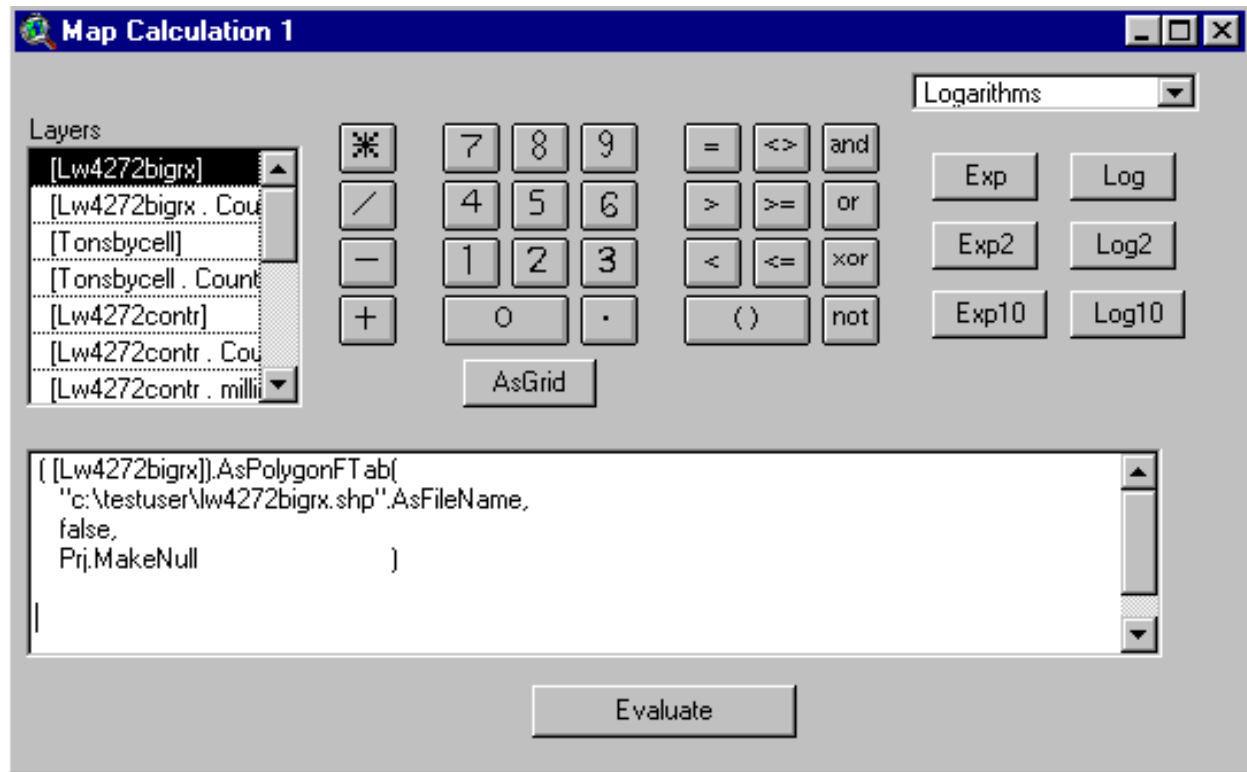
Ignore syntax error message.

Add lw4272bigrx.shp to View1:
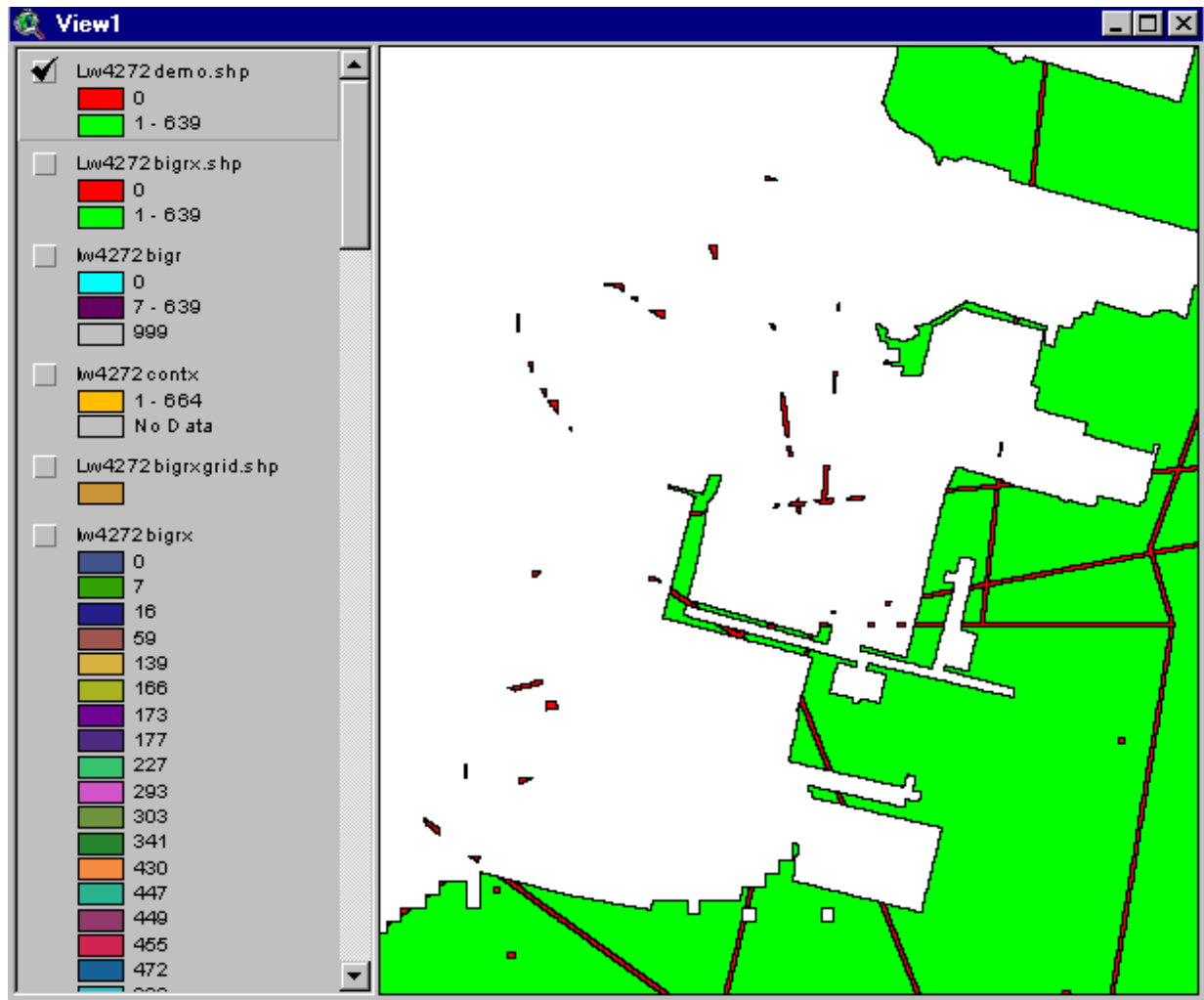
Cells with value 0 represent areas with restrictions.

Notice that there are fragments of restricted areas outside the area with coal for longwall mining.

The deleted coal blocks with less than 56.6 million tons of coal had areas with restrictions.

The coal area was deleted but the restriction area was not.

Use Theme Editing to Delete Restriction Fragments

We proceed now to delete the restriction fragments:

1. Zoom to area with fragments

2. Make lw4272bigrx.shp active

3. Under the Theme Menu

Click "Start Editing"

Notice that dashed line is put around the display toggle (in the table of contents)
for the lw4272bigrx.shp theme.

The dashed line indicates that the theme is in edit mode.

Use the select tool to draw out a box around some of the fragments.

Handles will be added to the selected fragments.

Press the delete key to eliminate these features from the theme.

Follow the edit procedure to delete the restriction fragments.

Use zoom and pan to position the theme in the view window.

Whenever possible use the pull out rectangle to select features.

Some of the features are small.

The pullout rectangle will be an efficient way to select the tiny features.
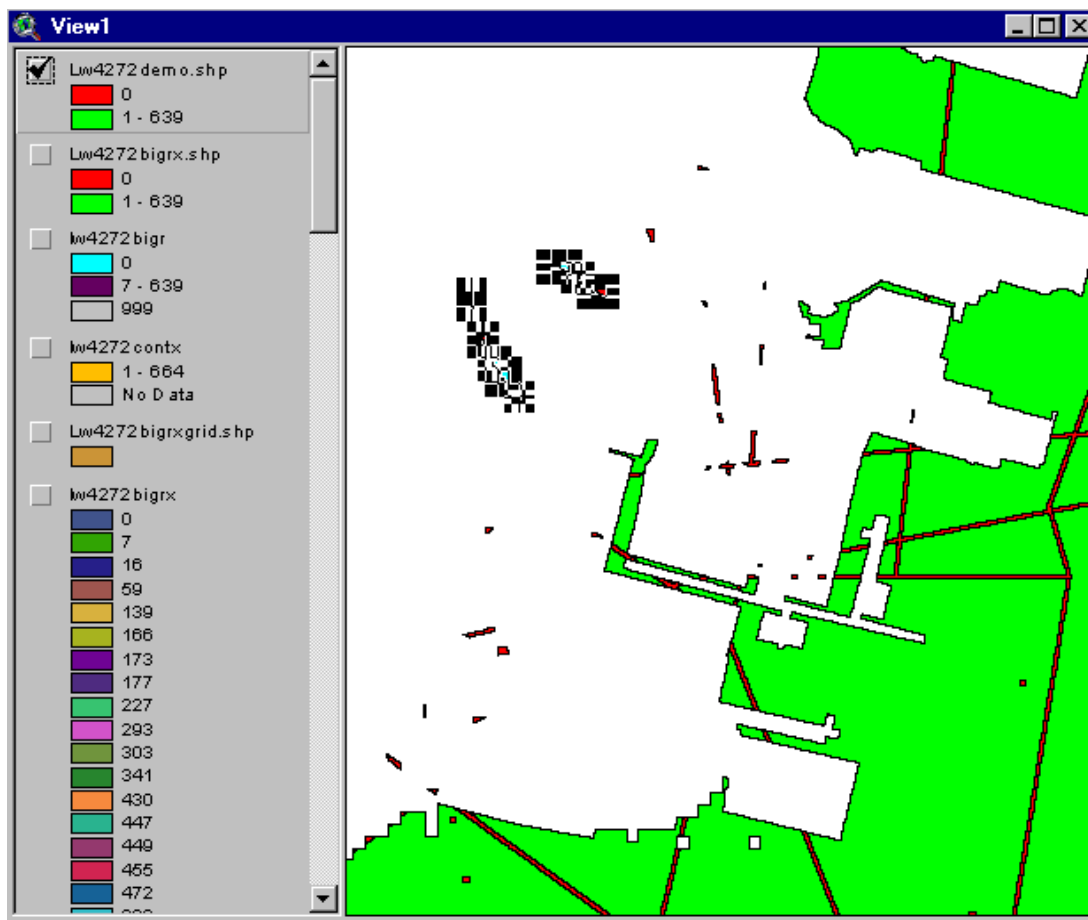
The editing process goes quickly; it will take about 15 to 30 minutes maximum.

Break the Coal Blocks Into Units That Are Approximately 170 Million Tons or Less

Next, we break the coal blocks into units that are approximately 170 million tons or less.

We superimpose the grid (constructed earlier) on lw4272bigrx.

We **intersect** gridfinalpittlw.shp using lw4272bigrx.shp as the overlay theme.

Under the view menu:
>   Click Geoprocessing Wizard

>   Select "**Intersect**"

>   Click "next"

>   As the #1 theme, select gridfinalpittlw.shp

>   As the #2 theme, select lw4272bigrx.shp

>   Set the output file to
>   c:\testuser\lw4272bigrxgrid.shp

>   Click "Finish"
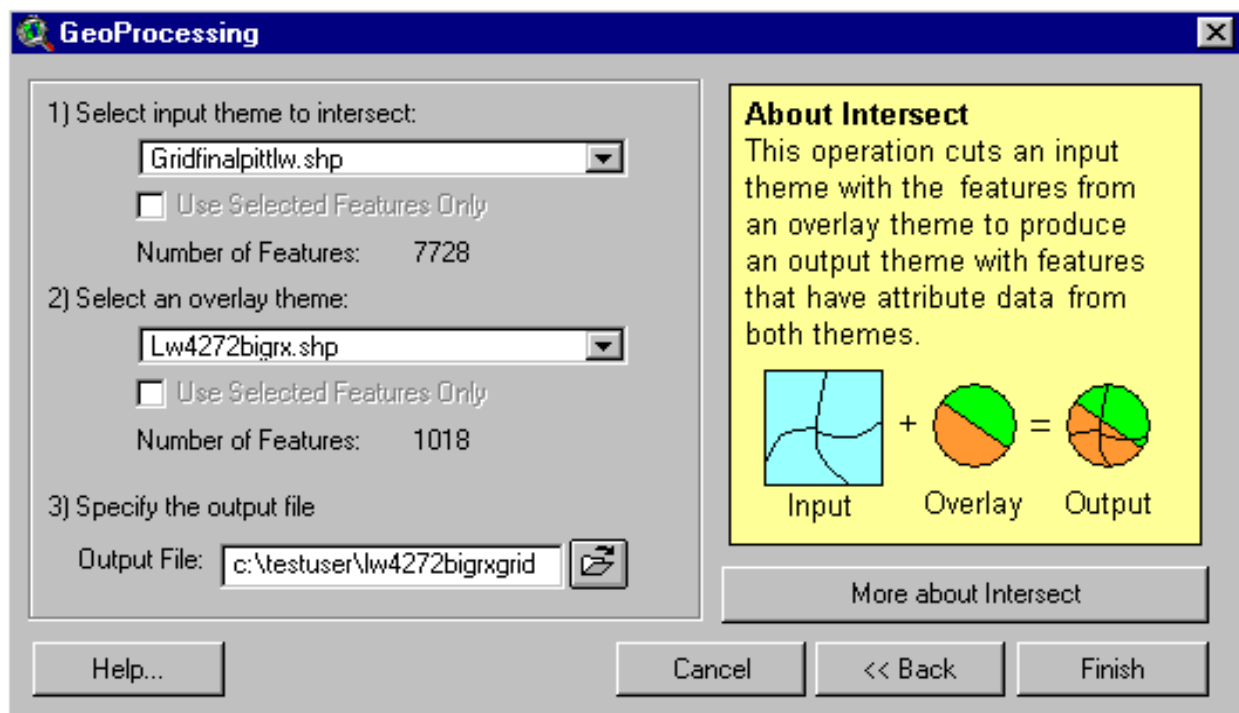
Toggle on the display for lw4272bigrxgrid.
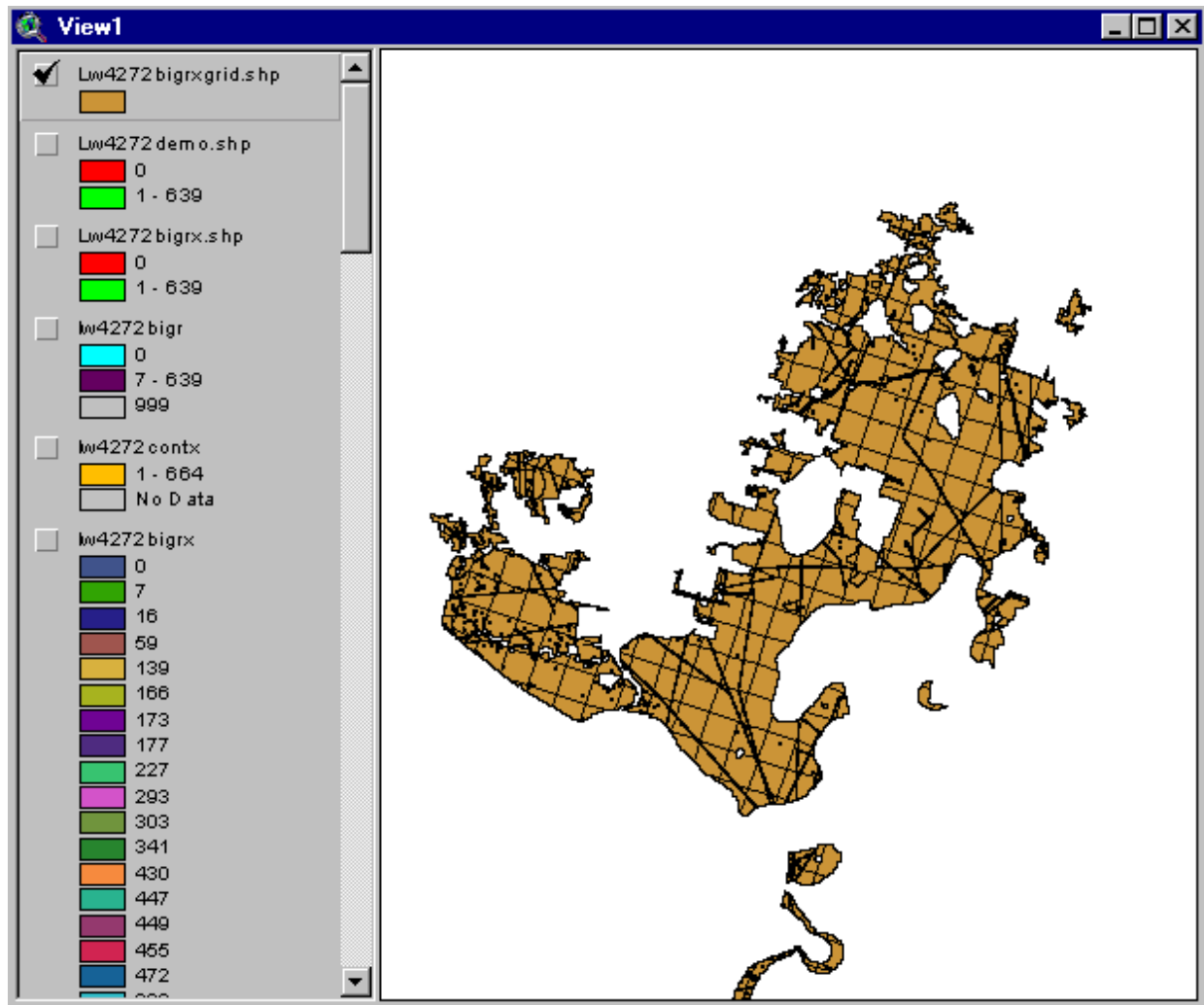
Open the table for lw4272bigrxgrid.

Notice that the same label applies, in some cases, to more than a single polygon.

This occurred because when gridfinalpittlw acted as a "cookie cutter" against lw4272bigrx, some of the cells that cut through lw4272bigrx enclosed areas **(within a given cell)** that were not contiguous in the lw4272bigrx layer.

Our next task is to edit lw4272bigrxgrid to arrive at a final set of coal resource blocks:

      1. Some blocks will have less than 56.6 million tons of coal but will be contiguous to other blocks. We want to combine small contiguous blocks to see if the combined unit has total tons of coal in excess of 56.6 million tons.

      2. Some areas contain a dense pattern of oil and gas wells. These areas are not suitable for longwall mining. We want to delete these areas.

      3. Our method is to use **vector** theme editing. Blocks will be unioned or split to accomplish steps 1 and 2. We will set **theme editing properties** for lw4272bigrxgrid in the Editing Properties dialogue box. When blocks are unioned, the tons of coal in the composite block will be the sum of tons in the separate blocks. When a block is split, the tons assigned to each part will be in proportion to area.

The block editing is done on a shapefile because in vector space we are able to perform, in effect, on the fly re-digitizing of the blocks. These kinds of operations ordinarily cannot be performed in grid space.

**   Assign a Unique ID to Each Coal Resource Block in the Vector Coverage of Available Coal**

We begin by assigning a unique id to each of the polygons in lw4272bigrxgrid.shp.

Make lw4272bigrxgrid.shp active.

Under the Edit Menu

      Click "Delete Themes"

      Click "Yes"

Start Excel

Open file

      c:\testuser\lw4272bigrxgrid.dbf

Under the Insert Menu

      Click "Worksheet"

In the new worksheet:

Enter "Blockid" in cell c1

Enter 1 in cell c2

Enter "=c2 + 1" in cell c3

Copy cell c3 to cells c4 through c1366

(You would, of course, run the id over the range appropriate for your theme, as determined by the total # of rows with entries under the Label Column)

Click on "C" at top of column

Under Edit Menu

Click "Copy"

Click on "A" at top of A Column

Under Edit Menu

Click "Paste Special"

Select "values"

Delete column C

Copy Columns A, B, and C (from worksheet lw4272bigrxgrid) to

Column B (in worksheet Sheet 1)

Click on cell a1

Close Excel

Save file as

C:\testuser\lw4272bigrxgrid.dbf

Respond "Yes" or "OK" to all queries

Add lw4272bigrxgrid to View1

Open its table and check to see that a new field, Blockid, is in the table.

Make lw4272bigrxgrid.shp active

Under the Analysis Menu

Click "Summarize Zones"

Pick "Blockid" as the field that defines zones

Select tonsbycell as the summarizing theme

Use Method A (pp. 6-66 and 6-84) to add a new field to the table for lw4272bigrxgrid.shp, containing the estimates of million tons of coal

Set width = 12

# of decimal places = 4

Make lw4272bigrxgrid.shp active.

Click Query Builder" (looks like hammer) and enter this expression:

Click "New Set"

Under Theme Menu

Click "Convert to Shapefile"

Save as c:\testuser\lw4272smallx"

Add lw4272smallx to View1

Change the polygon fill in lw4272smallx to yellow

Change the polygon fill in lw4272bigrxgrid to purple.

Toggle on display for both themes.
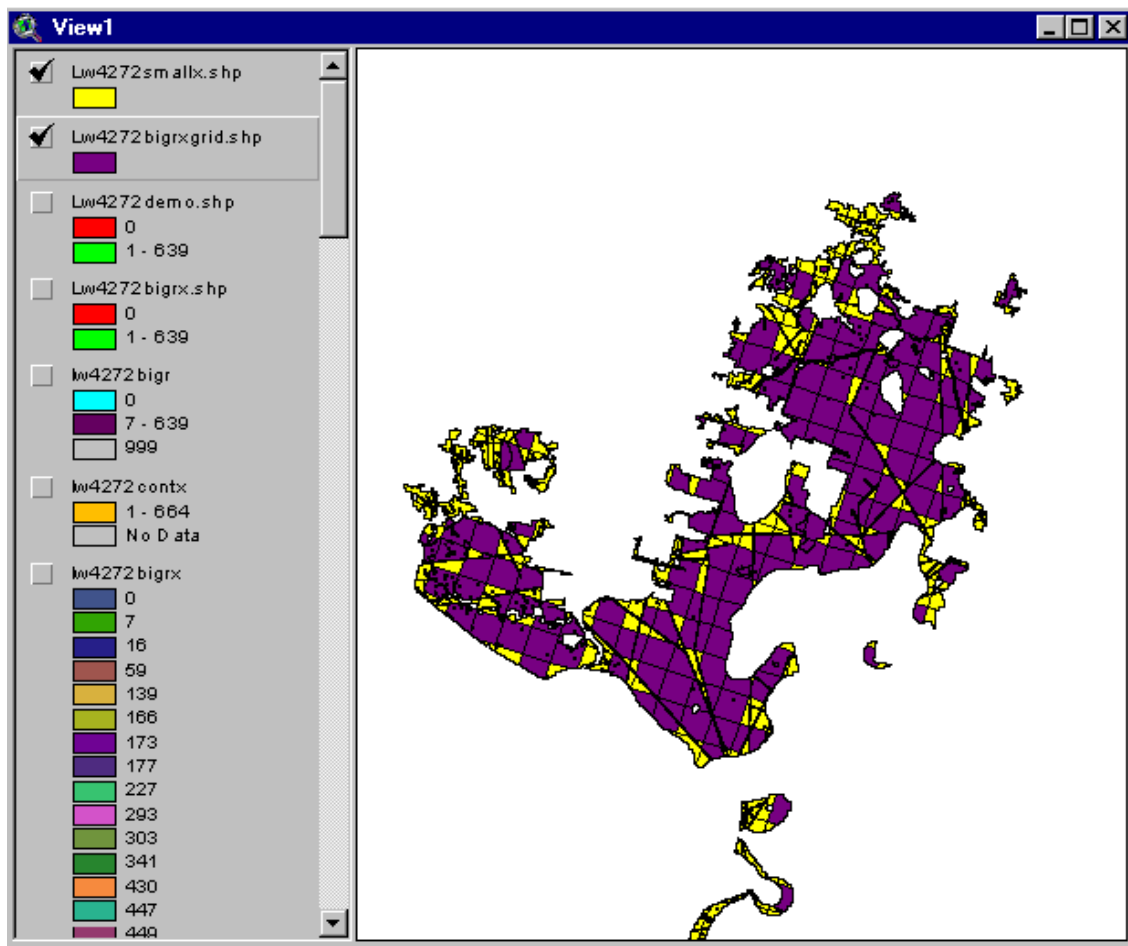
The areas in yellow have fewer than 56.6 million tons of coal.

We have to combine the yellow areas with other contiguous blocks.

If the consolidated blocks have more than 56.6 million tons of coal then those units are retained in the layer.

Otherwise, they are deleted from the layer.

We reclassify theme, lw4272bigrxgrid.shp, by entering these settings in the legend editor:
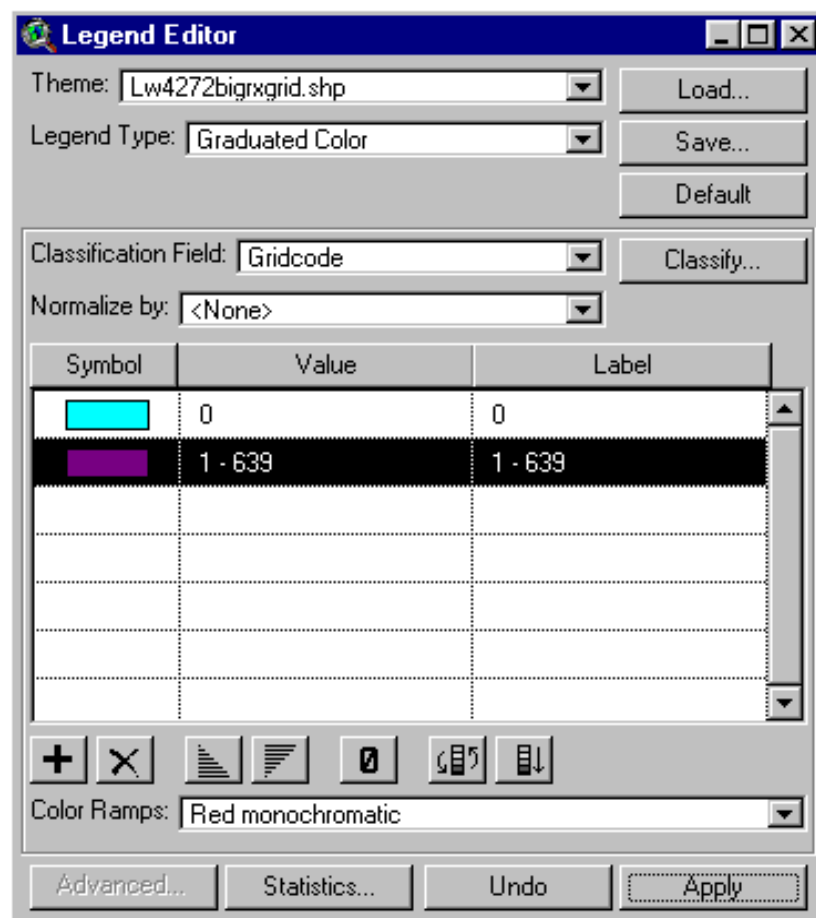
Areas in yellow have less than 56.6 million tons of coal.

These are the areas we are consolidating

The areas in the intermediate shade (blue) are restricted areas.

The two wide linear restrictions are interstate highways.

Because interstates are wide and no mining will occur beneath them, we treat the interstates as boundaries on the coal that can be blocked for longwall mining.

The other linear features are pipelines with a 100 foot buffer. Underground access and haulage lanes can be placed below pipelines. They are not treated as boundaries for blocking the coal.

The areas in the dark shade (purple) have more than 56.6 million tons of coal.
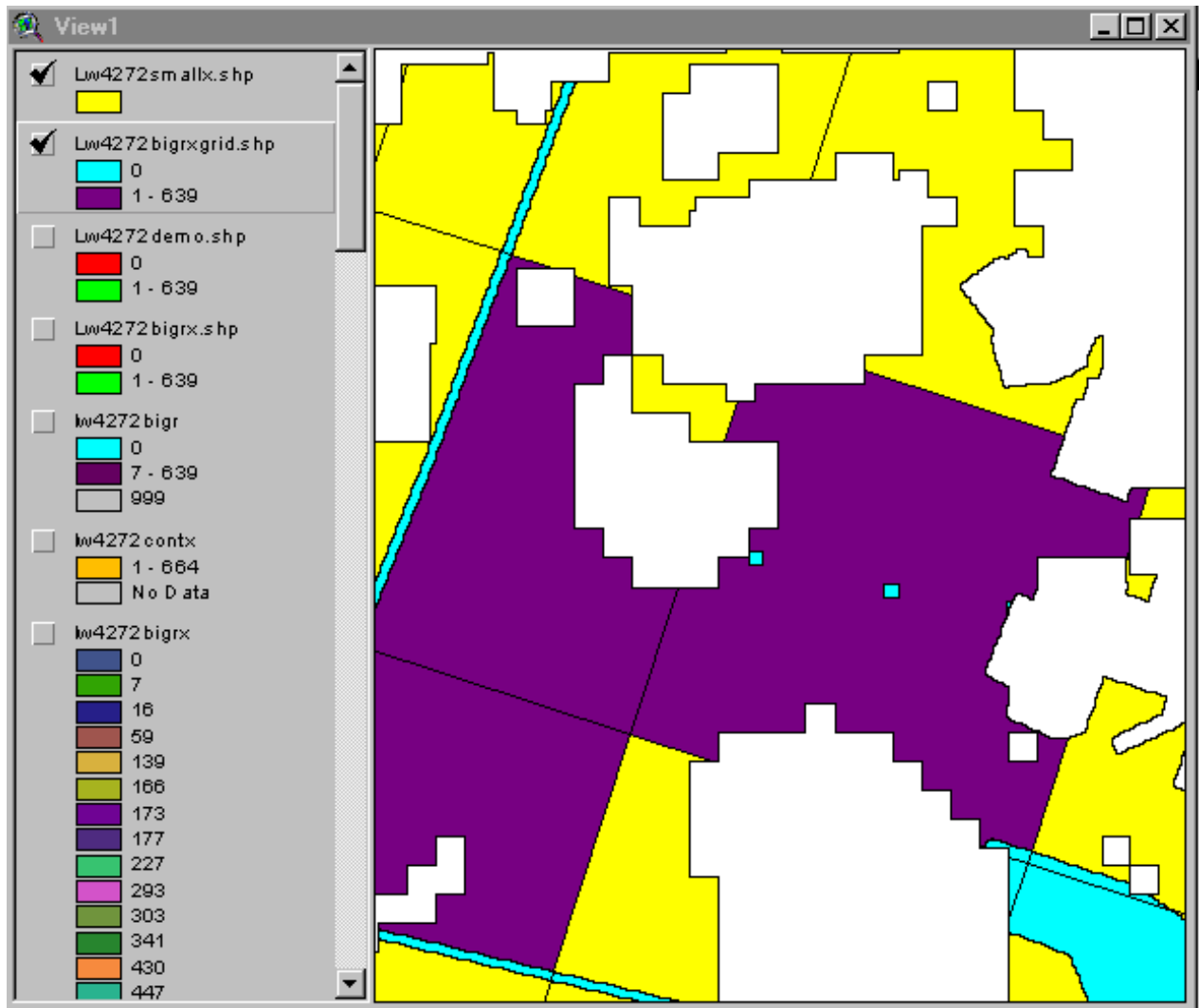
Use Theme Editing to Consolidate Coal into Coal Resource Blocks Following the Superimposed Grid Pattern

We use theme editing to make the consolidations.

Make lw4272bigrxgrid.shp active.

Under the Theme Menu

Click "Properties'

Click the Editing Icon on the lower left
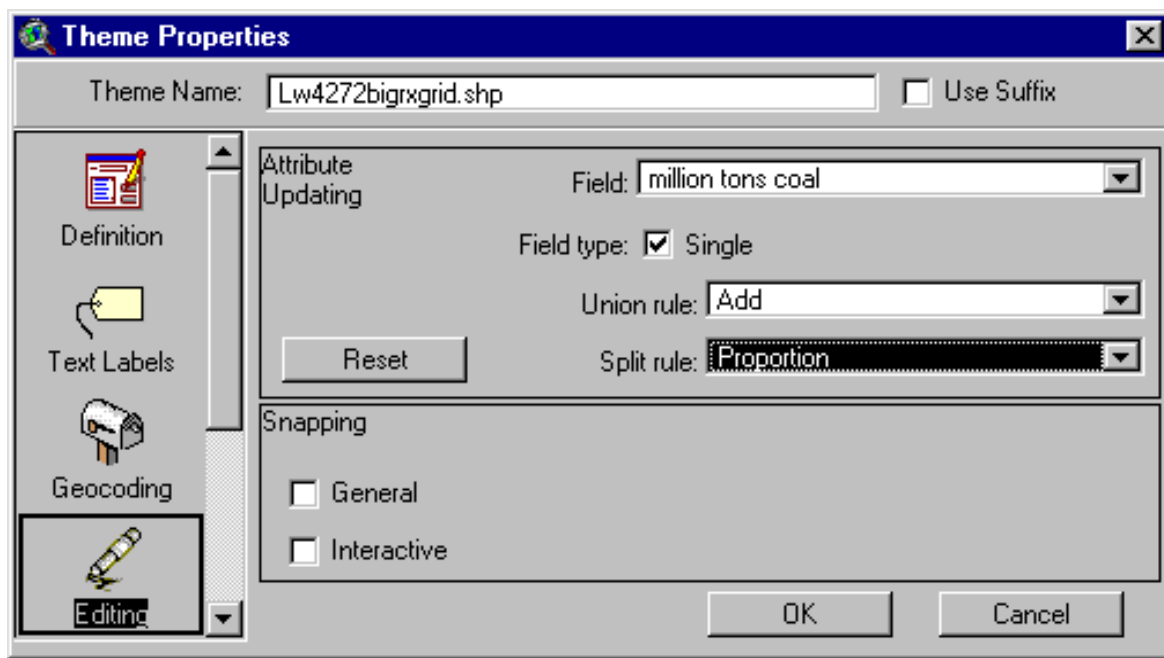
In the Dialogue Window:

Set field to: million tons coal

Set union Rule as: **Add**

Set Split Rule as: **Proportion**

Click "Ok"

Under the Theme Menu:

Click "Start Editing"

Notice that dashed line is put around the display toggle box of the lw4272bigrxgrid theme.

Whenever the dashed line is around the display box, you are in editing mode.

Zoom into the upper part of the theme where there are areas in yellow.

Remember, the purple areas have total coal over 56.6 million tons; the yellow areas have coal less than 56.6 million tons and have to be <u>unioned</u> with other areas, and the blue areas are restrictions.

Open the table for lw4272bigrxgrid and resize screen so that both the table and view can be seen in the view window:
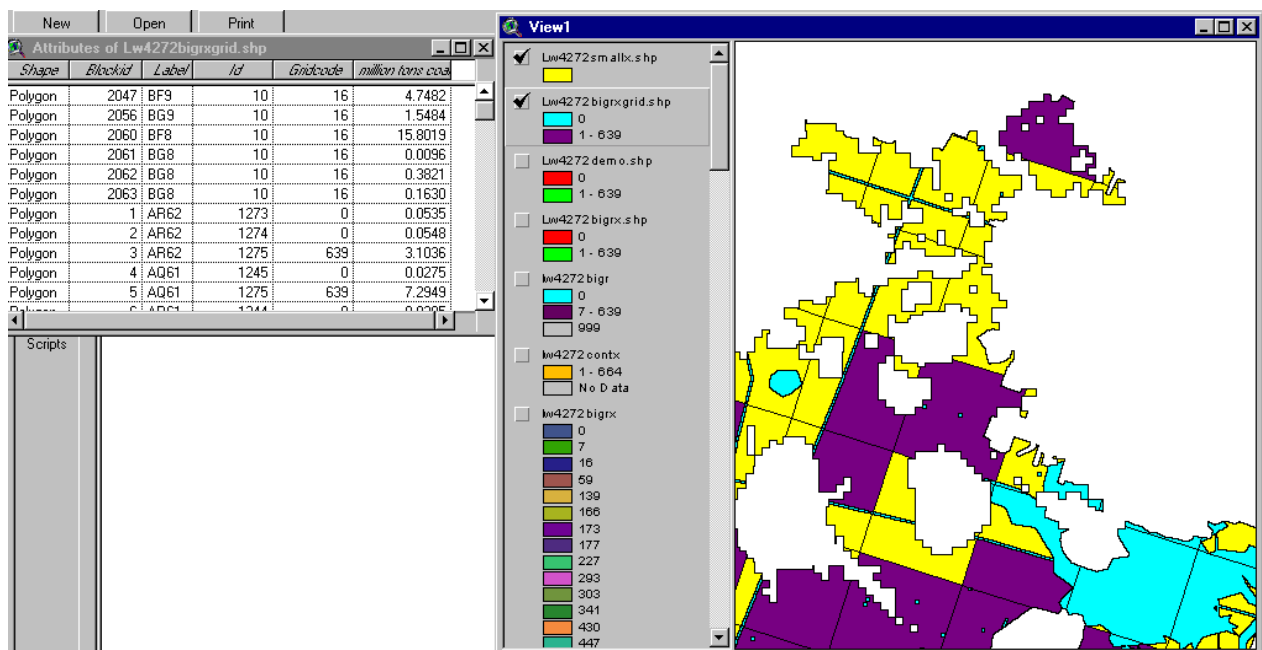
Toggle off the display for lw4272smallx.shp.

Start at the top of the theme to organize your consolidation.

Zoom the area at the top of the lw4272bigrxgrid.shp theme

After zooming, click on the pointer tool.

You are in editing mode, so that a click on the lw4272bigrx.shp theme area puts handles on the area.

Also, you can use the select tool to draw out a rectangle to place handles on multiple features.

Whenever an area is selected, its record in the open table is changed to yellow.

If you don't see the highlighted record, make the table active (by clicking on its title bar) and click on the promote button.

The procedure is to go back and forth from the view to the table, consolidating the small blocks with purple blocks or with other small blocks.

Longwall mines are configured as a series of panels, with dimensions on the order of 1000 feet across and 10,000 feet long.

For the Pittsburgh coal bed, longwall panels are normally oriented along the 18 degree axis and they have their length extending along that axis.

To determine whether a particular block is suitable for longwall mining, it is useful to use the measure tool to pull out a distance of 10,000 feet along the 18 degree direction.

Open View Properties and set distance units to feet.

The next graphic shows a zoomed view of the upper part of the theme and a line that extends across a 10,000 foot distance:
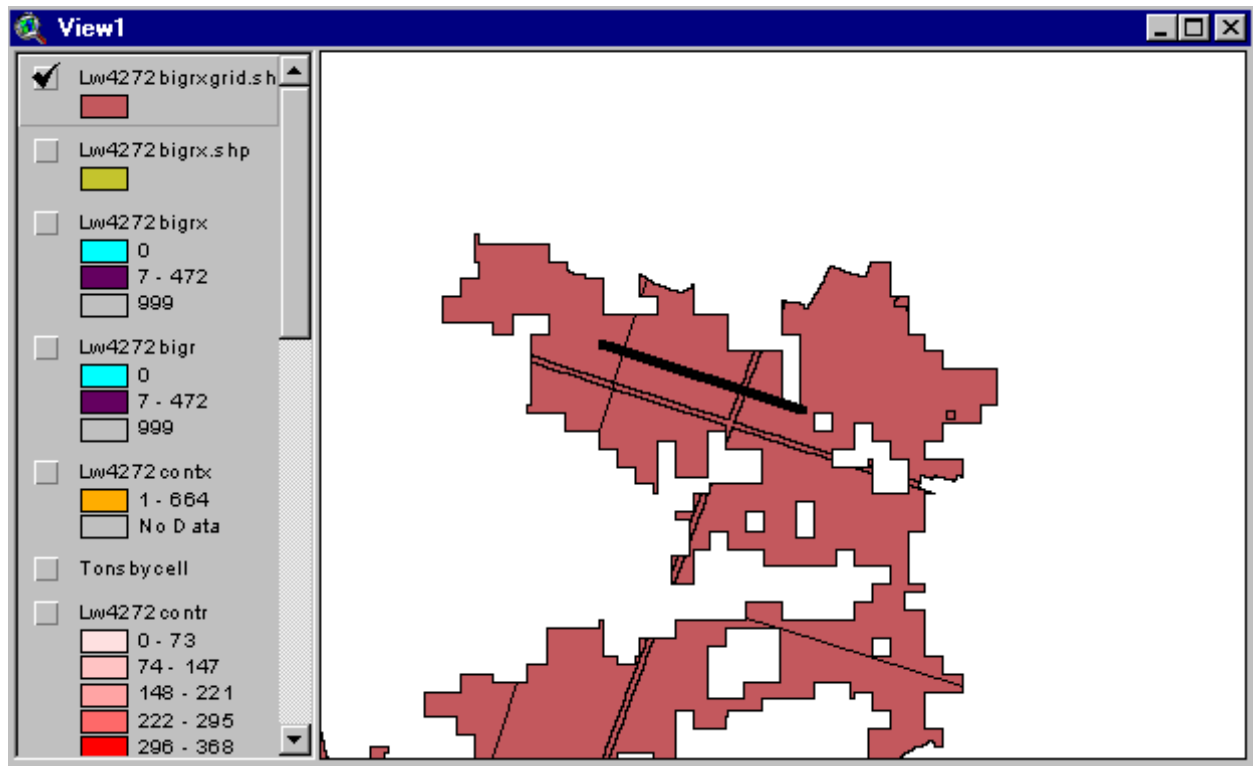
The area looks so far like it could accommodate a longwall mine since several large subareas are big enough for longwall panels.

We are not undertaking detailed mine planning. We include or exclude areas after limited assessment.

The lower-right, near-horizontal black line and the upper-left, near-vertical black line are the outline of a resource block with 170,000,000 tons. Of course, since the coal cuts off before extending to a full block, the coal in the upper section looks to be in the neighborhood of 60 million tons based on the area that shows coal present.

Also, note there is a narrow neck of coal connecting this upper section to the lower section. Longwall operations require contiguous coal. The area for a viable operation probably would end at the connecting neck.

Therefore, we use the polygon split tool to separate the upper section from the lower section

Click on the draw tool and hold down the mouse button.

The polygon split tool is second from bottom.

Slide mouse down to the split tool and release the mouse button to make the split tool active.

The cursor turns to crosshairs.

Position the cursor in the View window in the open space to the left of the neck and click the mouse.

Pull a line across the neck.

In the open space to the right of the neck, double click the mouse to split the polygon.

You will see handles around the new polygons and the new table records for the polygons:

Blockid	Label	Id	Gridcode	million tons coal
1356	AB16	17	0	0.0
1357	AB16	18	0	0.0
1358	AB16	19	0	0.0
1359	AB16	20	7	4.1
1360	AB16	21	7	0.1
1361	AB16	22	0	0.1
1362	AB16	23	7	0.0
1363	AB16	24	0	0.1
1365	AE16	40	0	0.0
1364	AB16	68	7	17.1
1364	AB16	68	7	17.1
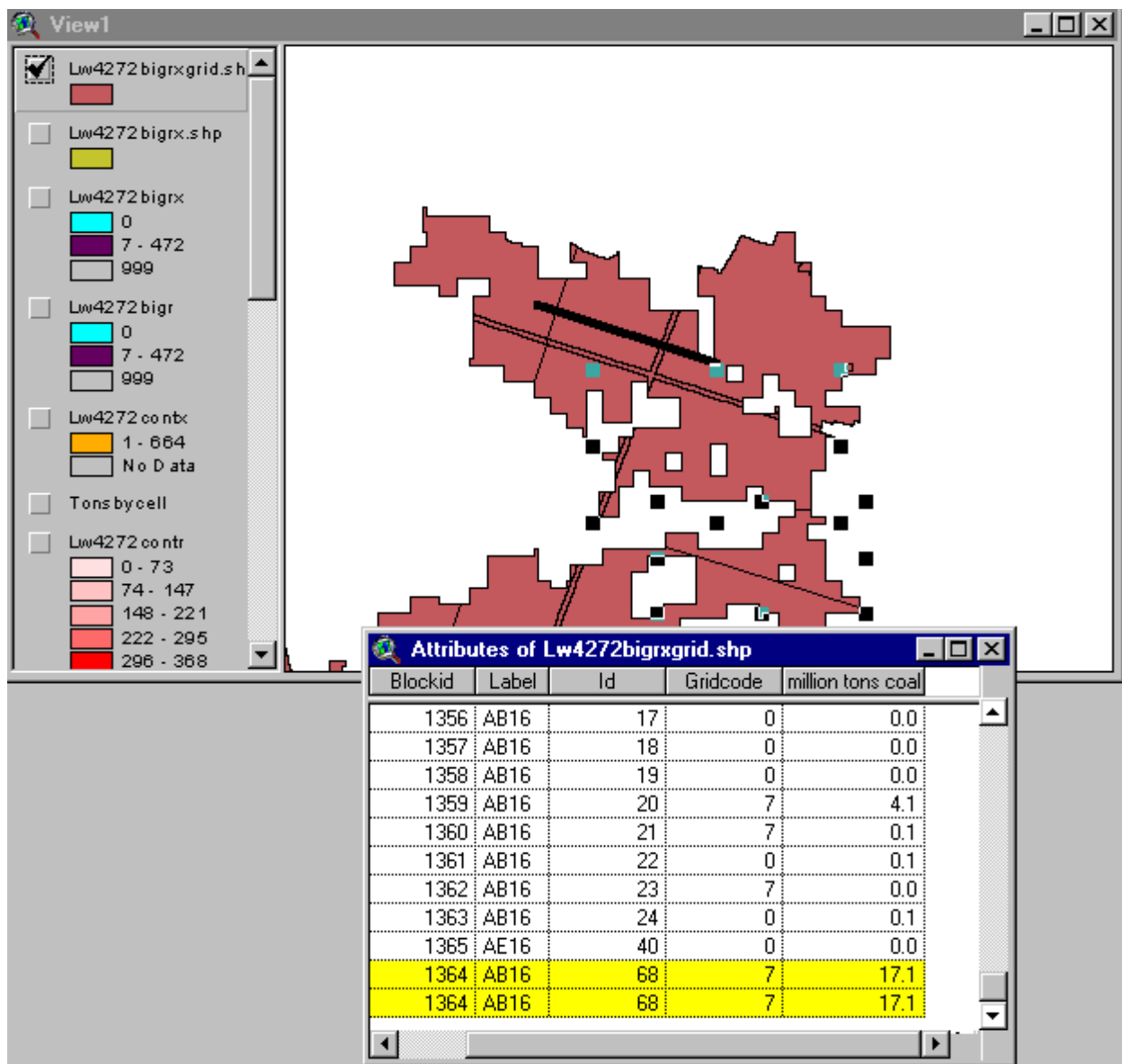
You are required to do many operations like this as you block the coal.

Use ArcView help to familiarize yourself with the theme editing tools.

We now use the select features tool to pull out a rectangle to capture the upper section.

First, under the Theme menu, we click "Stop Editing" and "Save Edits" to leave the editing mode.

Click the Select Features tool and pull out a rectangle to capture the upper section.

Note: you need to be in normal mode to have the features appear in the yellow highlight color. Highlighting helps you see the features you have selected.

Click the title bar in the Attribute table to make the table active

Click the Promote button to move all the records to the top of the table.

Note you have captured some restricted features (the ones that have gridcode=0):

8 - 70
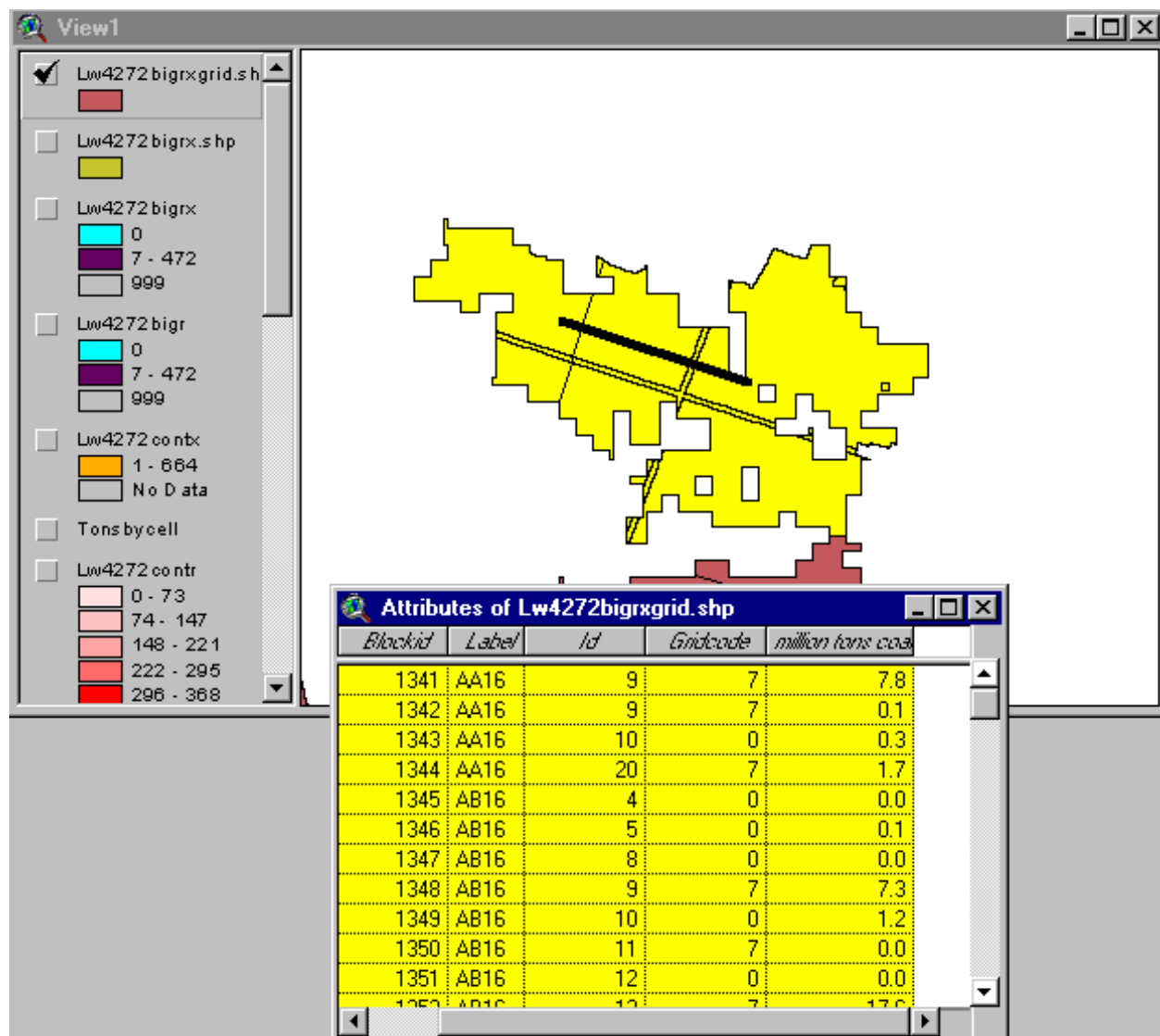
Procedure to eliminate restricted features:

    If necessary make table active by clicking on its title bar

    <u>Press and hold shift key down</u>
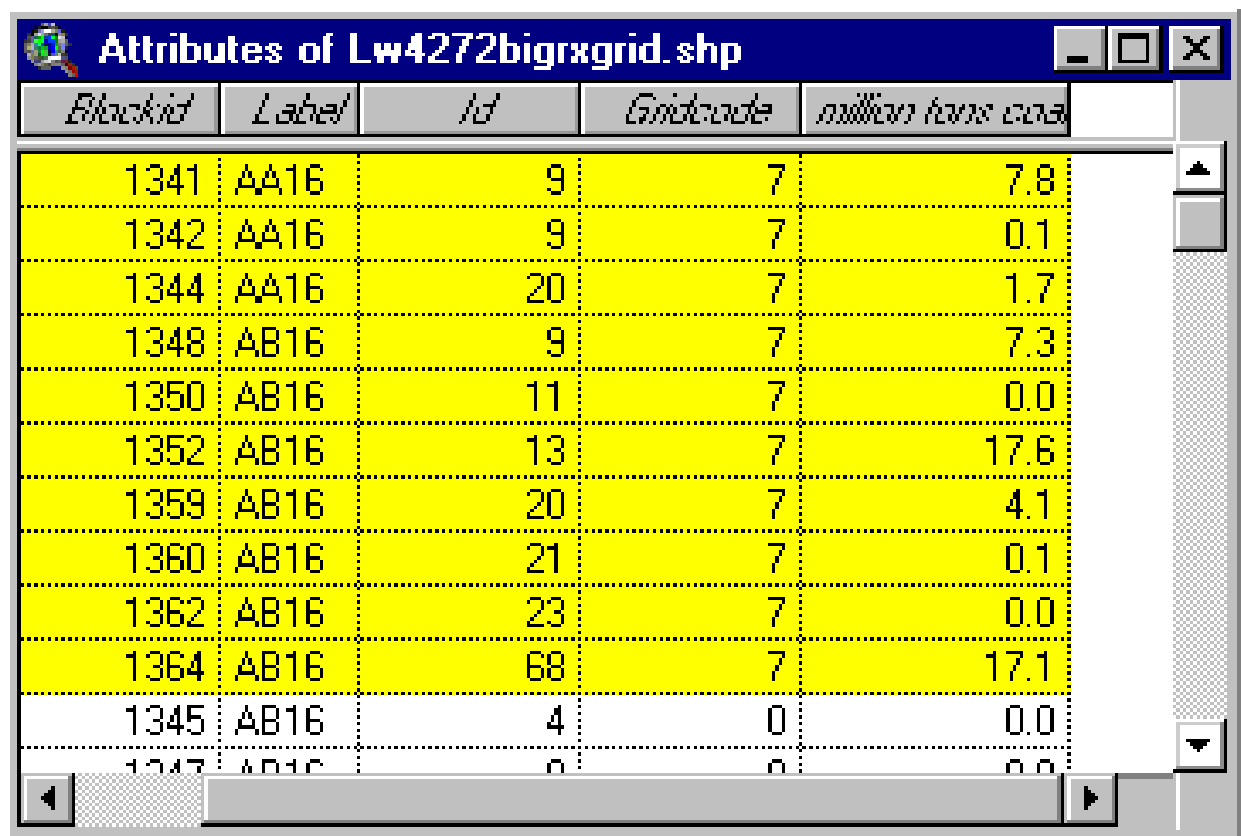
    Click record with Gridcode=0

    After click, highlighting will be removed from the record

    Click next record or sequence of records with Gridcode = 0.

    Periodically click Promote button to pull records to top of table

    Scroll down table if necessary to check all highlighted records

Attributes of Lw4272bigrxgrid.shp

Blockid	Label	Id	Gridcode	million tons coal
1341	AA16	9	7	7.8
1342	AA16	9	7	0.1
1344	AA16	20	7	1.7
1348	AB16	9	7	7.3
1350	AB16	11	7	0.0
1352	AB16	13	7	17.6
1359	AB16	20	7	4.1
1360	AB16	21	7	0.1
1362	AB16	23	7	0.0
1364	AB16	68	7	17.1
1345	AB16	4	0	0.0
1347	AB16	0	0	0.0

Click the View title bar to make the View active

Under the Theme Menu

Click "Start Editing"

Under the edit Menu

Click "Union Features"

The union will form a single polygon feature for all the selected features and make the tons equal to tons summed across all the individual smaller features:
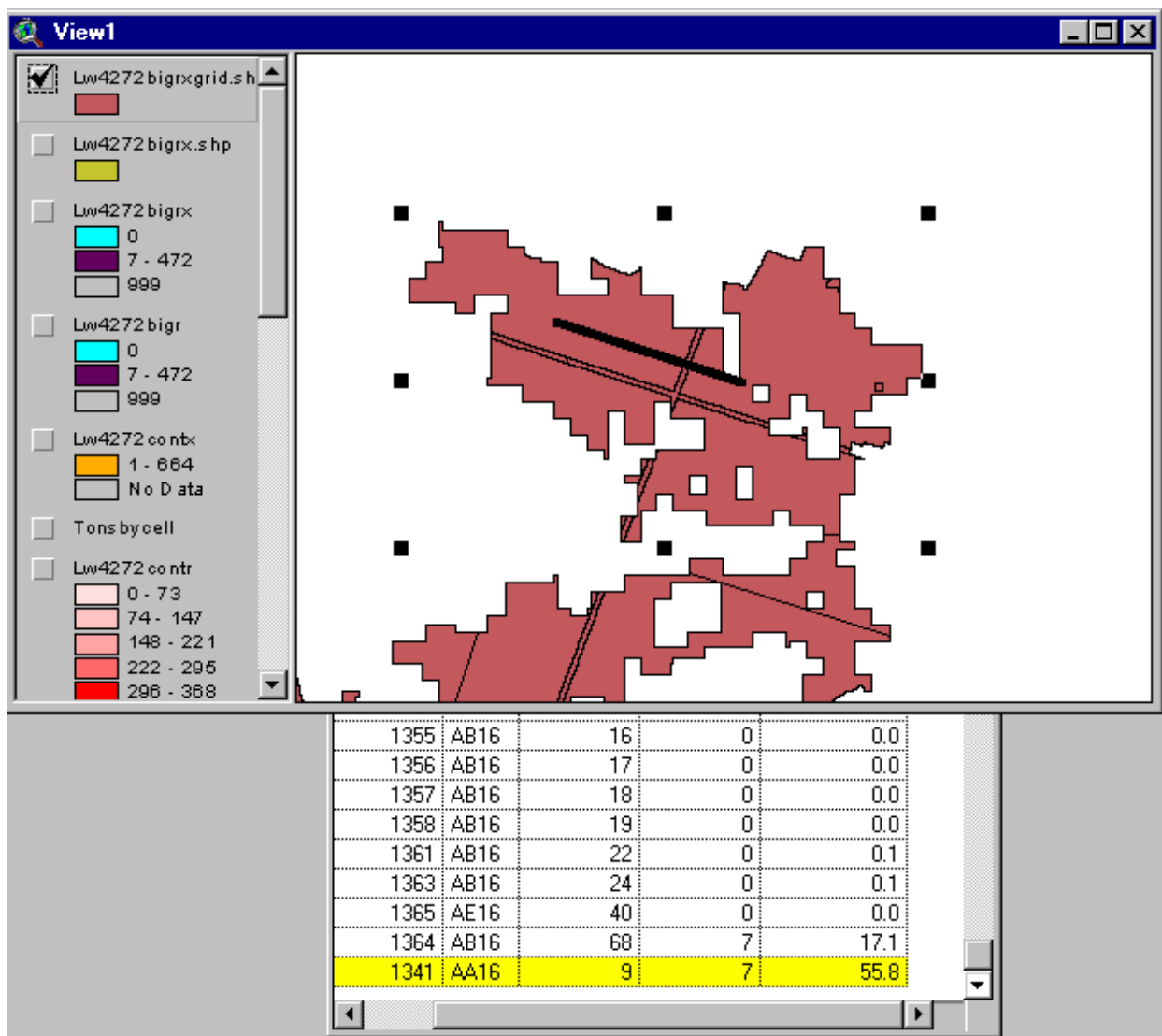
The consolidated block does not have enough coal to keep it as a longwall block.

Recall, the cutoff tonnage is 56.6.

Furthermore, the block is cut up in such a way that longwall panels cannot be placed on some parts.

We eliminate the block from lw4272bigrsgrid.shp:

      Under the Edit Menu

            Click "Delete Feature"

      Under the Theme Menu

            Click "Stop Editing"

            When queried to "Save Edits"

                Click "Yes"

The scattered features that remain in the view are restricted areas that were selected out of the upper section.

We selected out these restricted features to obtain an estimate of the coal available for mining.

When the mineable coal was deleted, we left behind those restricted features.

To remove the restricted features:

      Under Theme Menu, click "Start Editing"

      Use the select tool to pull out a rectangle around the features

      Press the "Delete" key on the keyboard

      Continue until all features are deleted

      Under the Theme Menu, click "Stop Editing"

      When queried to "Save Edits", click "Yes"

We follow this method to consolidate other polygons.

The consolidation groups adjacent coal polygons.

It is assumed that coal mining companies will not conduct underground mining beneath interstate highways, populated places, and water bodies. Any damage to highways, populated places, or water bodies could be very costly.

Thus, the consolidation must pay particular attention to how these features impact the consolidation

The next view shows an area that is broken up by an interstate highway, a water body, and a populated place.

The yellow polygon with the handles is irregular and cannot be formed into the rectangular shape needed for longwall mining:
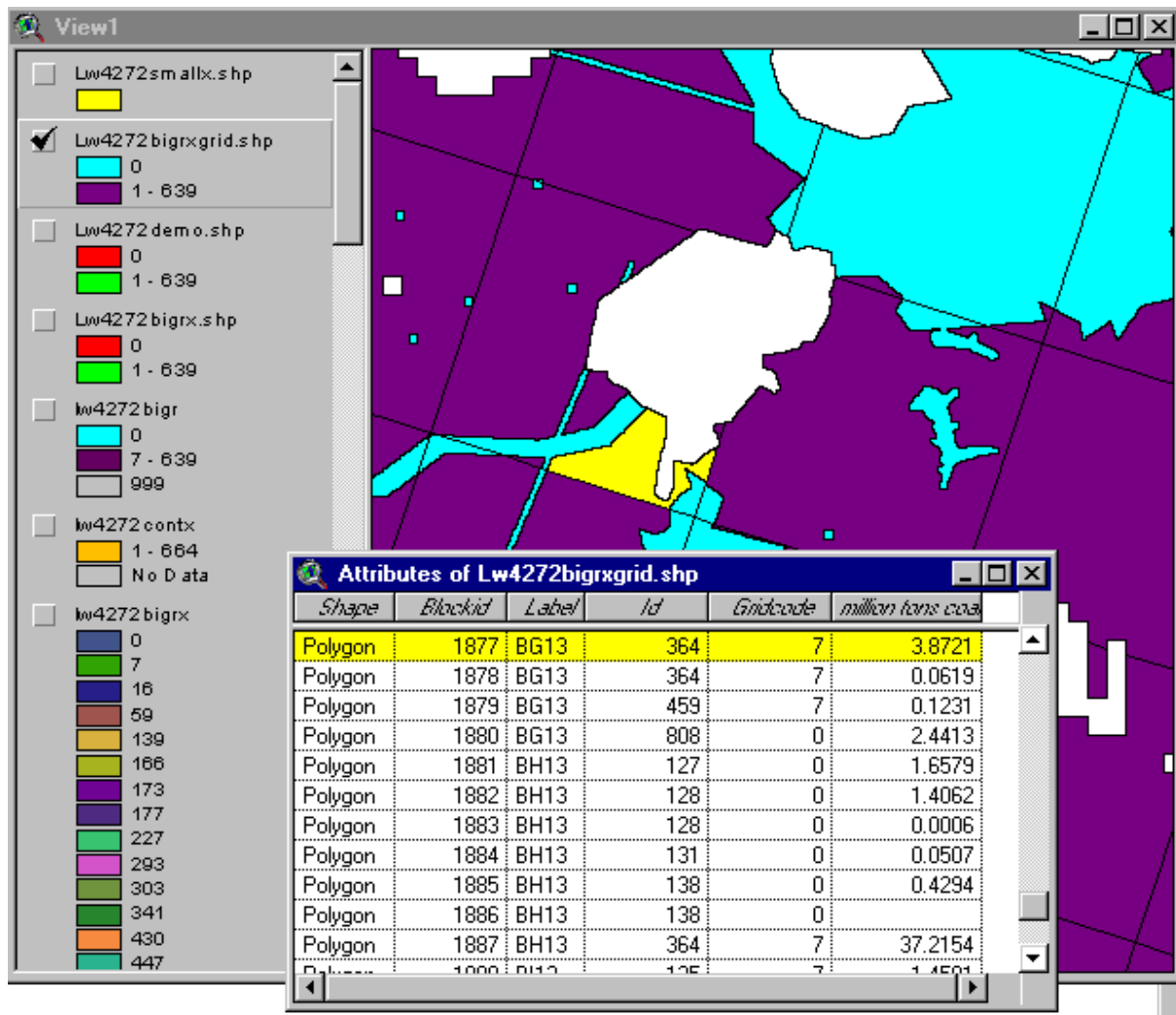
Under the Edit Menu:

Click "Delete Features"

The irregular area is removed from the layer allocated to longwall mining.

It is carried over to see if it can be consolidated with other coal for mining by an alternate method.

However, it is obvious that this coal (in the middle of the 42-72 inch area) will find no other contiguous coal and will never be allocated to mining.

It is an example of a fragmented coal block with too few tons to be considered for mining.

The next view show a purple polygon with a dense pattern of oil and gas wells at the top of the zoomed polygon. Each of the oil and gas polygons are 400 feet on a side. A panel for a longwall mine is about 1000 feet across and 10,000 feet long. Longwall panels would not fit in the area with the oil and gas wells.

We remove that area by:

1. Clicking on the "Polygon Split" tool (which is on the drop down list off the draw tool)

2. Clicking on the left of the polygon (in the white space)

3. Pulling out a line across the polygon

4. A single click enters a node and allows a change in direction

5. When we reach the other side of the polygon, we double click to complete the split
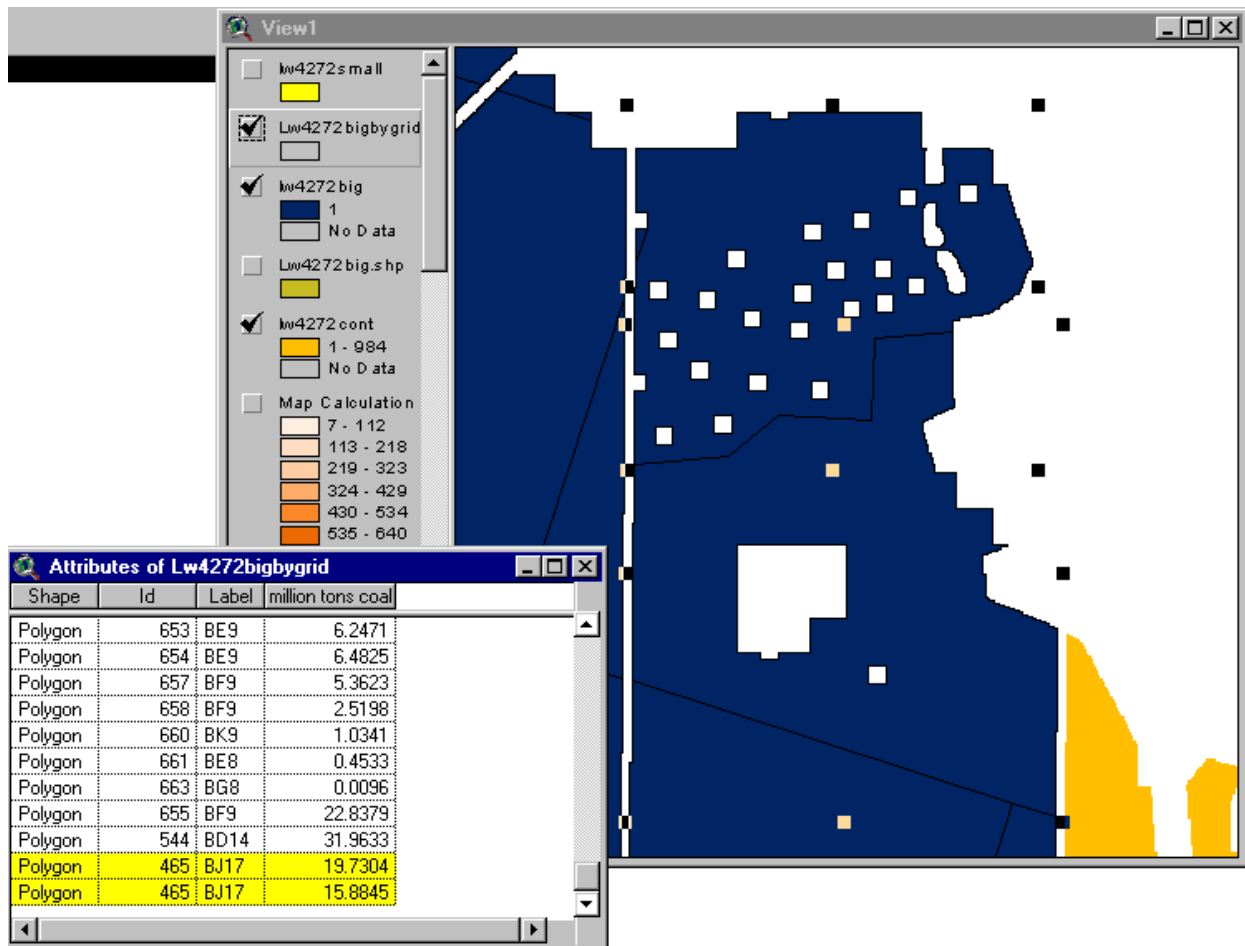
The split adds a record to the table.

The tons of coal are assigned to the 2 areas on the basis of area in the new polygons in proportion to the area of the original polygon (recall the split rule we set earlier).

Use the select or pointer tool to select the new polygon with the oil and gas wells.

Under the Edit Menu

       Click "Delete Features"
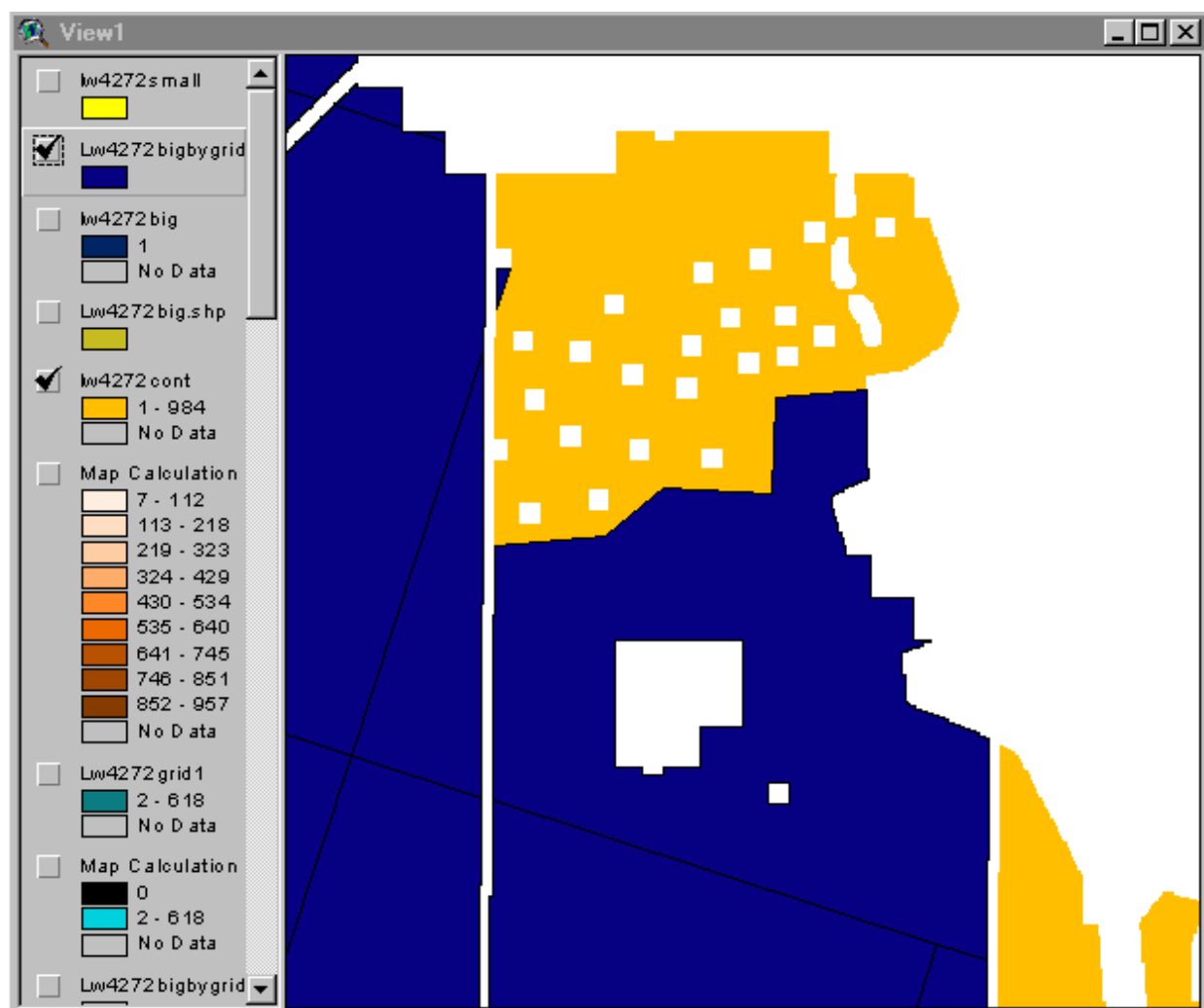
The above view shows that the area with oil and gas wells has been removed from lw4272bigrxgrid.

Remember to save your project periodically.

When we select a polygon, we see its record highlighted in the table and we see the tons of coal in the polygon. Furthermore, we want the consolidated polygons to follow the blocks set up by the superimposed grid. Therefore, we use the shift key and click to capture all the polygons to approximate the superimposed grid. Then in the table, we can use the promote button to see all the polygons that are selected and their tonnages. A quick mental addition tells us whether we have coal over 56.6 million tons. Also, we can deselect (hold shift key down) any records with a gridcode of 0. These records indicate an area with restrictions which we, of course, do not want to count as an area with available coal. When we click "Union features" under the edit menu, any boundary segments internal to the new polygon will be dissolved.

When polygons are deleted, the restricted areas (gridcode 0) remain in the layer. We want to continuously clean the layer by removing any restricted area fragments. We use the select tool (when the lw4272bigrxgrid layer is active) to draw out a rectangle around the isolated area. Then we click the delete key on the keyboard to eliminate the polygons. Sometimes it is necessary to click on individual polygons to select them (e.g., when they are in close proximity to features that we don't want to select).

Near the end of the process, you will find that lw4272bigrxgrid contains a number of very small coal slivers. By opening the table, selecting a record, and zooming to the selected feature, we can see the relationship of the slivers with adjoining polygons and consolidate the slivers. When the tons in remaining slivers are low (say 20,000 tons or less) a reasonable strategy is to delete those remaining areas from lw4272bigrxgrid.

Remember, any coal not allocated to lw4272 is carried forward to be consolidated for mining by alternate methods.

While tedious, by following the examples of this guide you should be able to work your way across the lw4272bigrxgrid theme and complete the consolidation in several hours.

In the case of the Pittsburgh coal bed, the total amount of coal in the lw4272bigrxgrid layer went from 6.1 billion tons to about 5 billion tons. Most of the reduction occurred because areas with dense clusters of oil and gas wells where found unsuitable for longwall mining. Some other areas had narrow runs of coal or areas where coal was highly irregular in its remaining occurrence. These areas were deleted from lw4272bigrxgrid.

The next view shows the final consolidated lw4272bigrxgrid layer:
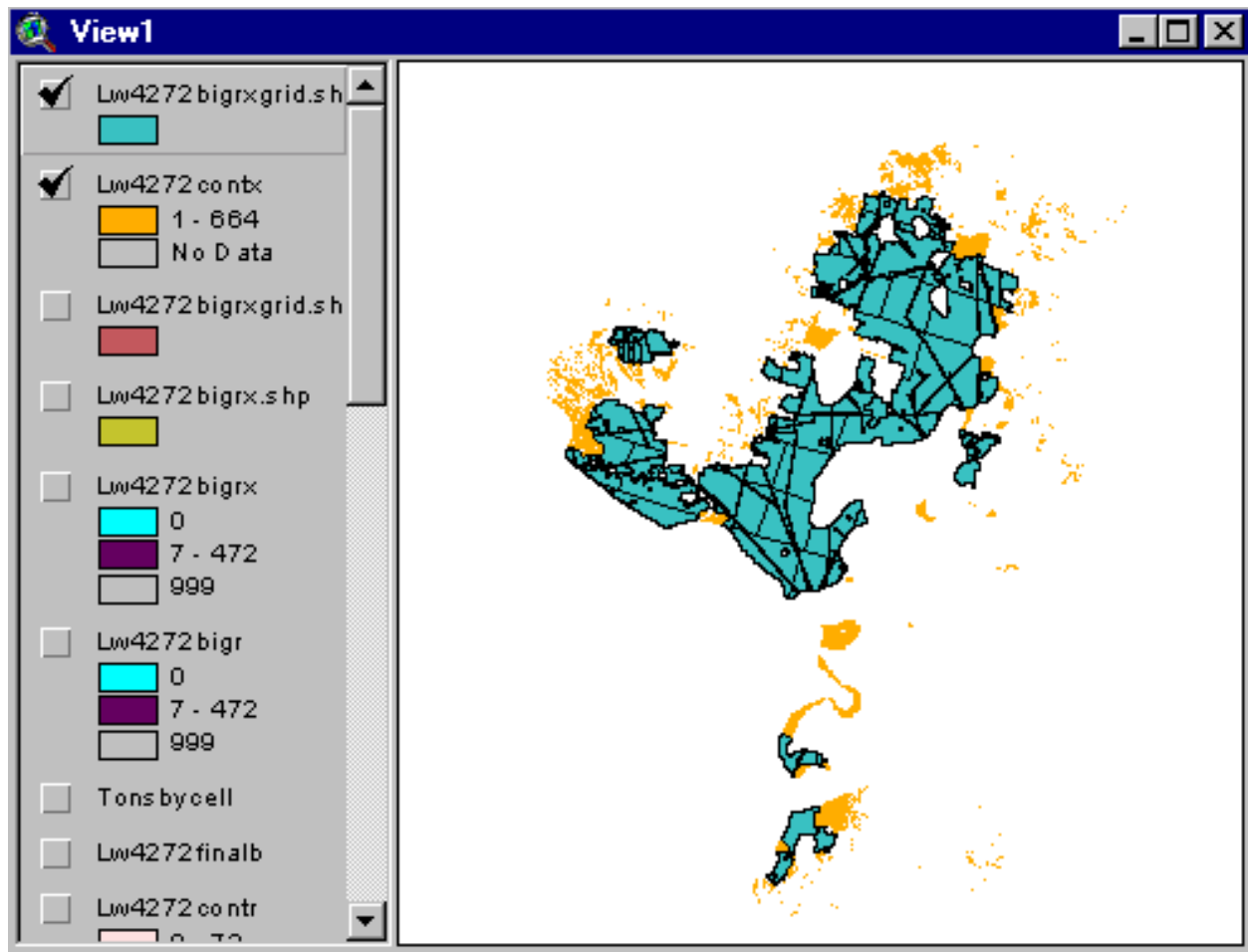
The dark area is the final lw4272bigrxgrid layer.

The lighter area shows the areas that were removed from the initial lw4272 layer.

Next, we convert lw4272bigrxgrid.shp to a grid theme.

Add a Unique Block ID to the Attribute Table of the Final Consolidated Coal Coverage

The consolidated coal blocks in lw4272bigrxgrid.shp may not carry a unique blockid. The consolidation process may have assigned the same blockid to more than a single coal block. When we convert lw4272bigrxgrid.shp to a grid coverage, we want each coal block to have a unique identifier in the grid coverage. In Excel we add a new id, blockid2, to insure that each block has a unique identifier.

In View1, make lw4272bigrxgrid.shp active.

Under the Edit Menu:

> Click "Delete Themes"

> Respond "Yes"

Open Excel

> Open lw4272bigrxgrid.dbf

> Insert a new worksheet

> In the new worksheet:

>> In column c1, enter "Blockid2"

>> In column c2, enter

>>> 1

>> In column c3, enter

>>> =c2+1

>> Copy c3 to all cells through c776 (or through cells appropriate for your coverage)

>> Click on the "C" at the top of the column

>> Under Edit menu, click "copy"

>> Click on the "A" at the top of the column

>> Under Edit menu, click "Paste Special"

In the dialog window

        Click on "Values" radial button

Delete the C column

Copy the 1ˢᵗ 5 columns on "lw4272bigrxgrid" to the B column on "Sheet 1"

Click on the a1 cell

Close Excel

Respond "Yes", "Save" or "OK" to all queries

In View1:

Add theme, lw4272bigrxgrid.shp

Open its table.

Notice new field, blockid2

We will use **blockid2** as the value field when we convert lw4272bigrxgrid.shp to a grid theme

Open Analysis Properties and enter these settings:

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent **Same As Rem16bufrp12**

Left -155677.503175   Top 1970643.69375

Bottom 1693107.69375   Right 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size Current Value

Cell Size 16   m

Number of Rows 17346

Number of Columns 21718

Analysis Mask No Mask Set

OK   Cancel

Under the Theme Menu:

Click "Convert to Grid"

Name the layer: c:\testuser\lw4272grida

When queried to pick field for cell values, select "blockid2"

When queried about "adding features" click "Yes"

Add lw4272grida to View1

Toggle on its display
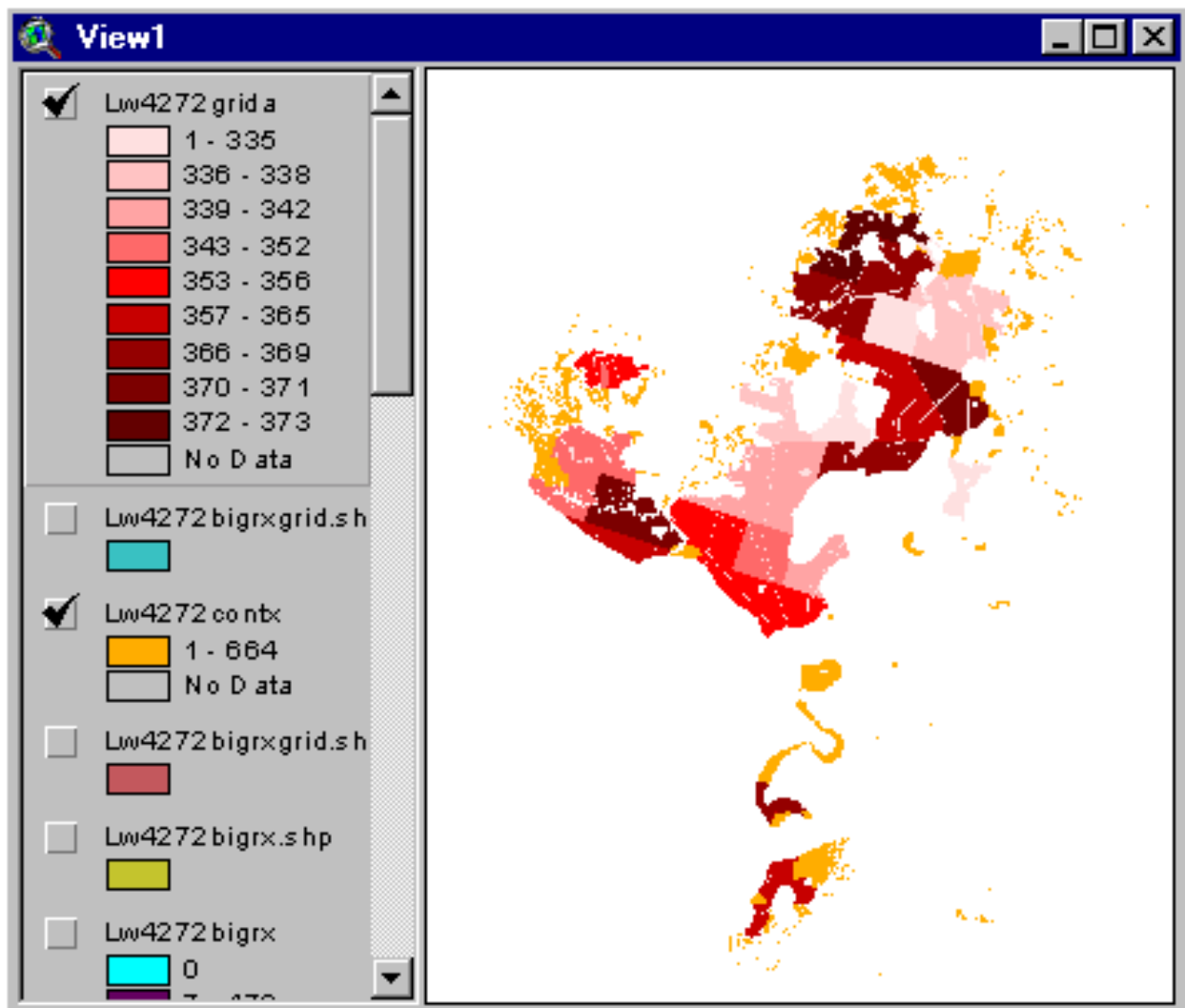
Cleanup to Generate a Final Consolidated Coal Coverage

Next, we do some cleanup to generate a final lw4272 grid.

During consolidation, because some features are small, areas that are restricted might have inadvertently been included in the blocks of mineable coal.

We correct the assignment in 3 steps:
1. In the lw4272grida layer, we reclassify all cells with gridcode=0 as cells with value=0

2. We set the Analysis Mask to this revised lw4272grida (called Map Calculation 5)

3. Any cells with zero in the layer from step 1 or any cells that are restrictions in union7restr are reclassified as cells with value=0

Step 3, in effect, takes any restrictions that were put into a mining block out of the block and correctly assigns that coal to the restriction category (value 0).

Step 1:
In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:

Step 2:

Under Analysis Menu

     Click "Properties"

     Enter these settings:

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent   Same As Rem16bufp12

Left -155677.503175   Top 1970643.69375

Bottom 1693107.69375   Right 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size   Current Value

Cell Size 16   m

Number of Rows 17346

Number of Columns 21718

Analysis Mask   Map Calculation 5

OK   Cancel

Step 3:

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
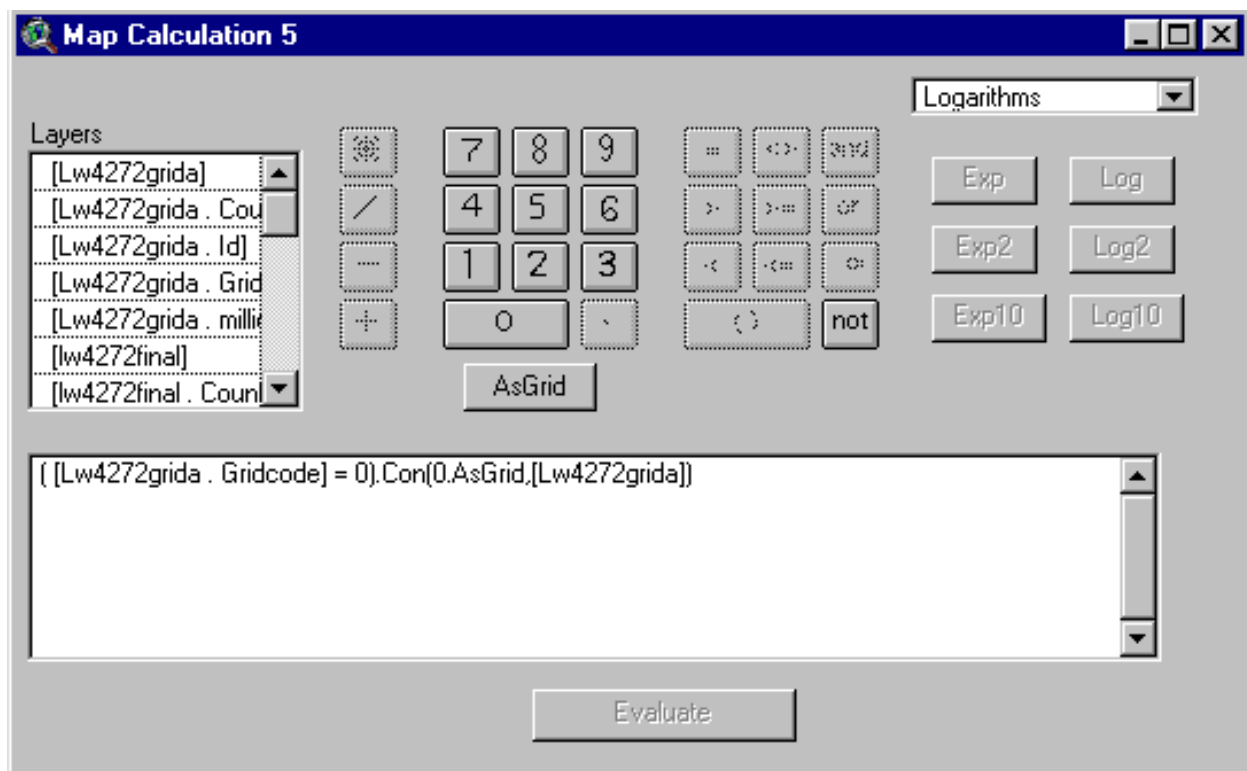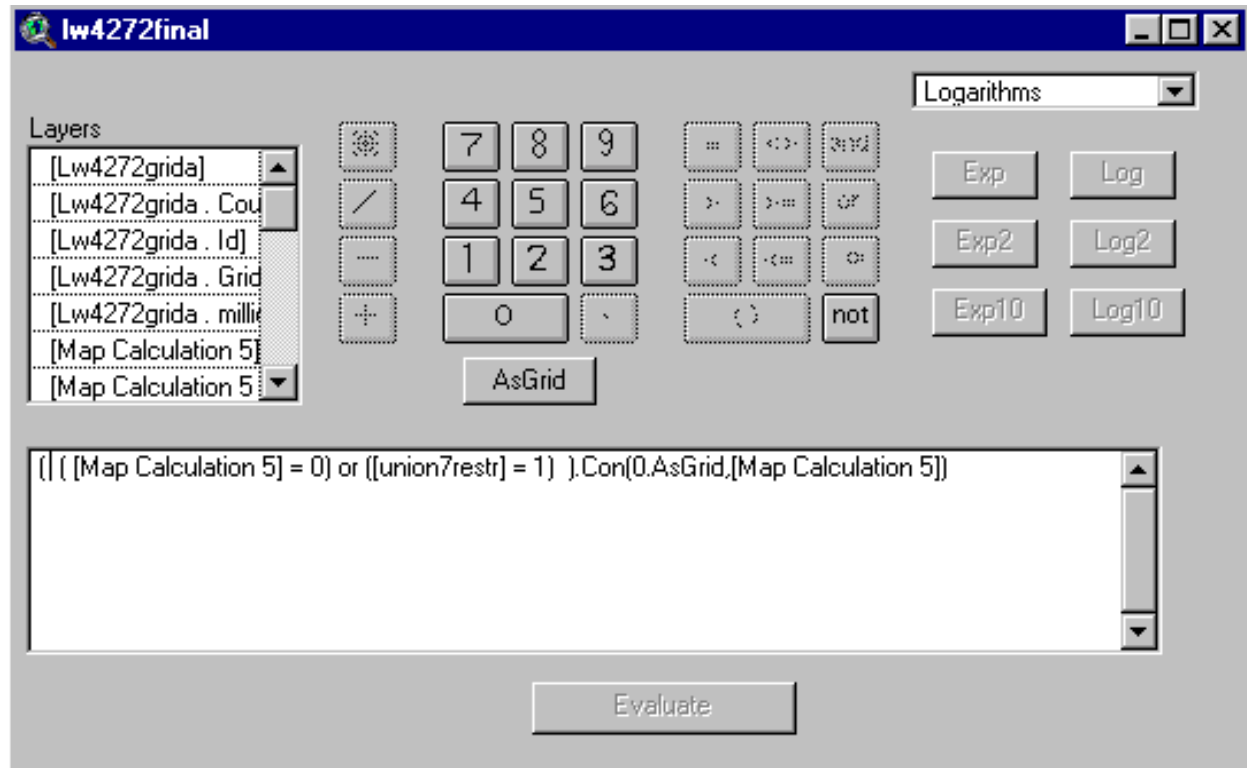
In Theme Properties, rename the new grid as:

> Lw4272final

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to rename and retain.

In Legend Editor, change its legend to 2 classes as indicated in the next display.

Toggle on its display:

The window shows a GIS application titled "View1" with a legend panel containing the following layers and values:

- **Lw4272final** (checked)
  - 0 (black)
  - 326 - 373 (teal)
- **Lw4272 grid a** (unchecked)
  - 1 - 335
  - 336 - 338
  - 339 - 342
  - 343 - 352
  - 353 - 356
  - 357 - 365
  - 366 - 369
  - 370 - 371
  - 372 - 373
  - No Data
- **Lw4272 bigrxgrid.sh** (unchecked)
- **Lw4272 contx** (checked)
  - 1 - 664
  - No Data
- **Lw4272 bigrxgrid.sh** (unchecked)
- **Lw4272 bigrx.shp** (unchecked)
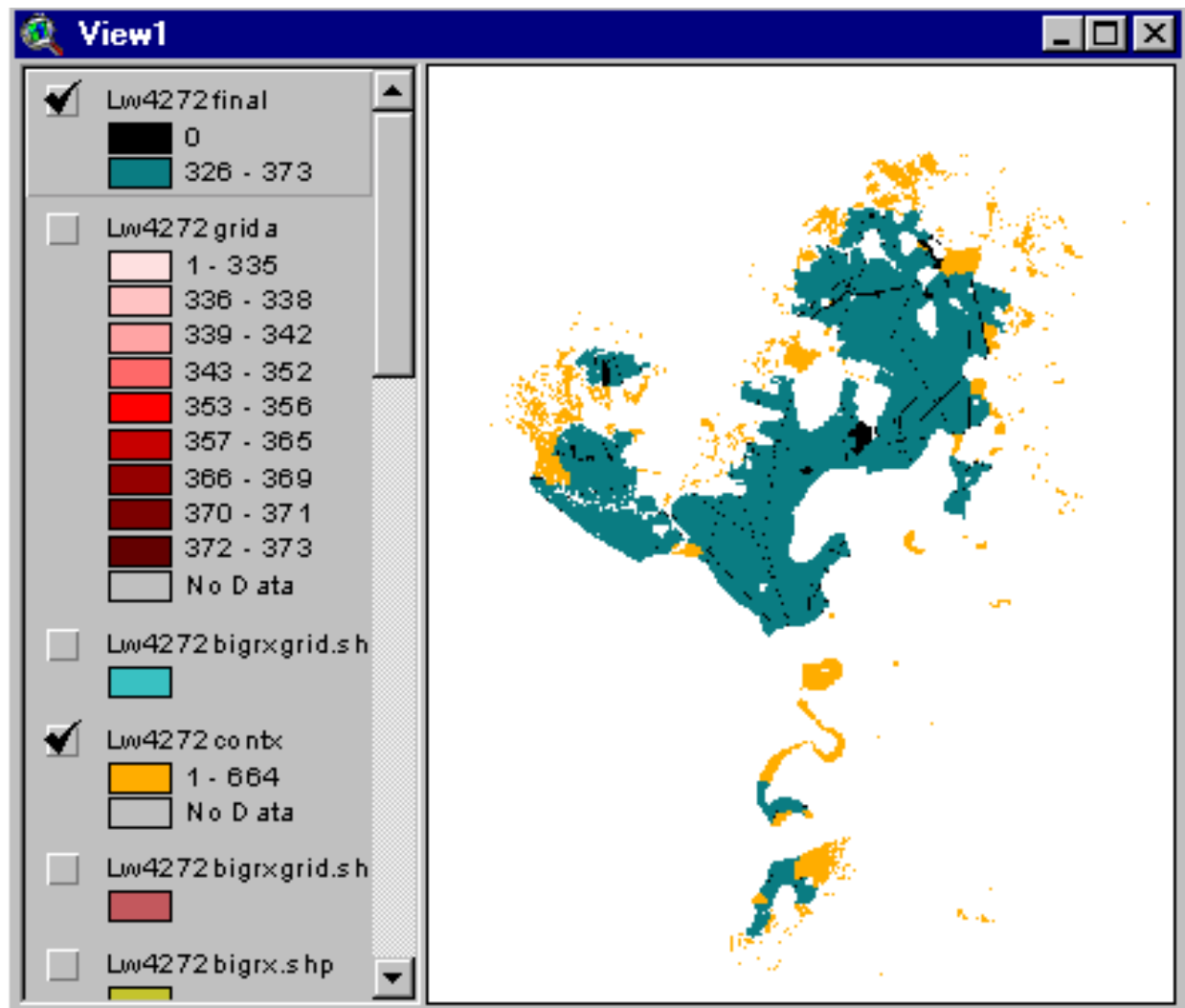
The dark areas (black) are areas that are restricted to coal mining.

The areas with intermediate shading (green) are the consolidated blocks of coal available for longwall mining, 42 to 72 inch thick coal.

The areas with light shading (gold) are the areas where coal was deleted as a result of the consolidation into longwall mineable blocks.

8 - 88

Update the Remaining Coal Coverage: Remove Final Consolidated Coal Coverage

Next, we update the remaining coal coverage by removing the coal (along with associated restricted areas) in lw4272final from the **latest remaining coal coverage**.

Note: As you repeat the calculations for each coal thickness category, the latest remaining coal coverage will be the one created in the previous iteration.

FIRST ITERATION (lw4272)

The first time you arrive here, you are working on lw4272, therefore the latest remaining coal coverage is:

        remsurfall

Add grid coverage, remsurfall, to View1

SECOND ITERATION (lw7296)

The second time you arrive here, you are working on lw7296, therefore the latest remaining coal coverage is:

        remlw4272sb

Add grid coverage, remlw4272sb, to View1

THIRD ITERATION (lw96)

The third time you arrive here, you are working on lw96, therefore the latest remaining coal coverage is:

        remlw7296sb

Add grid coverage, remlw7296sb, to View1

Open Analysis Properties, and change Analysis Mask to rem16bufp12:
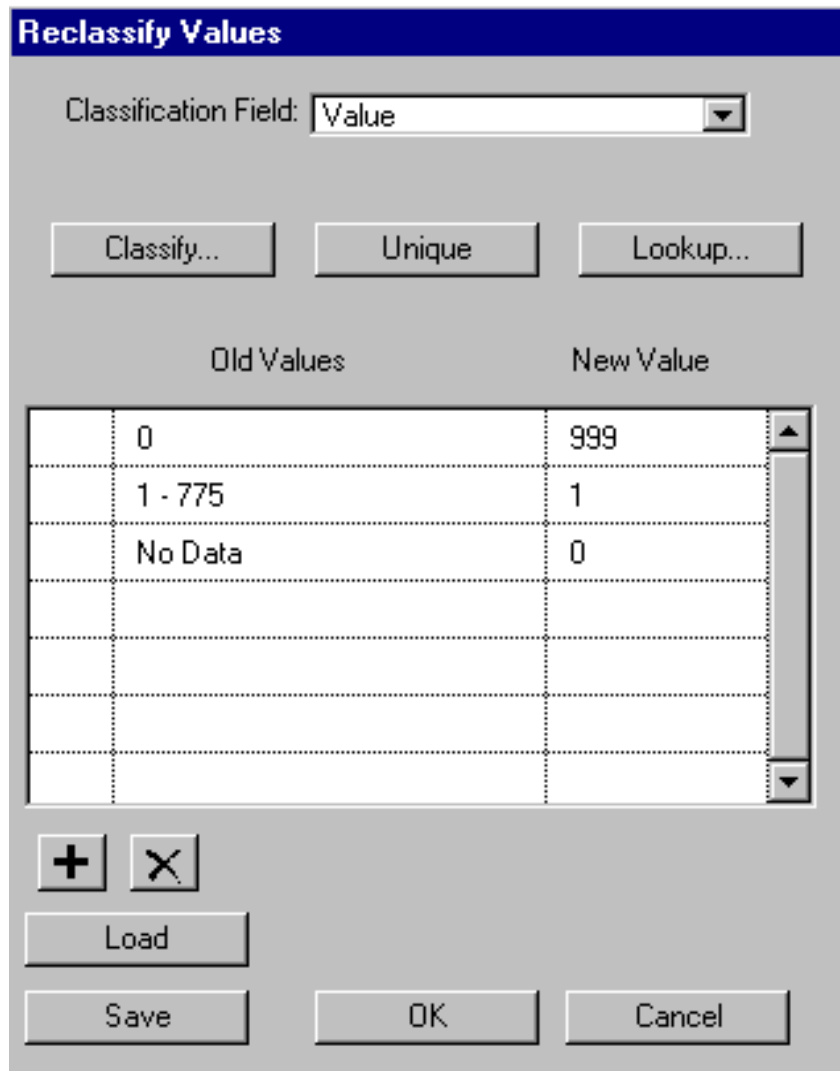
We reclassify lw4272final as follows:

Reclassify Values

Classification Field: Value

Old Values	New Value
0	999
1 - 775	1
No Data	0

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
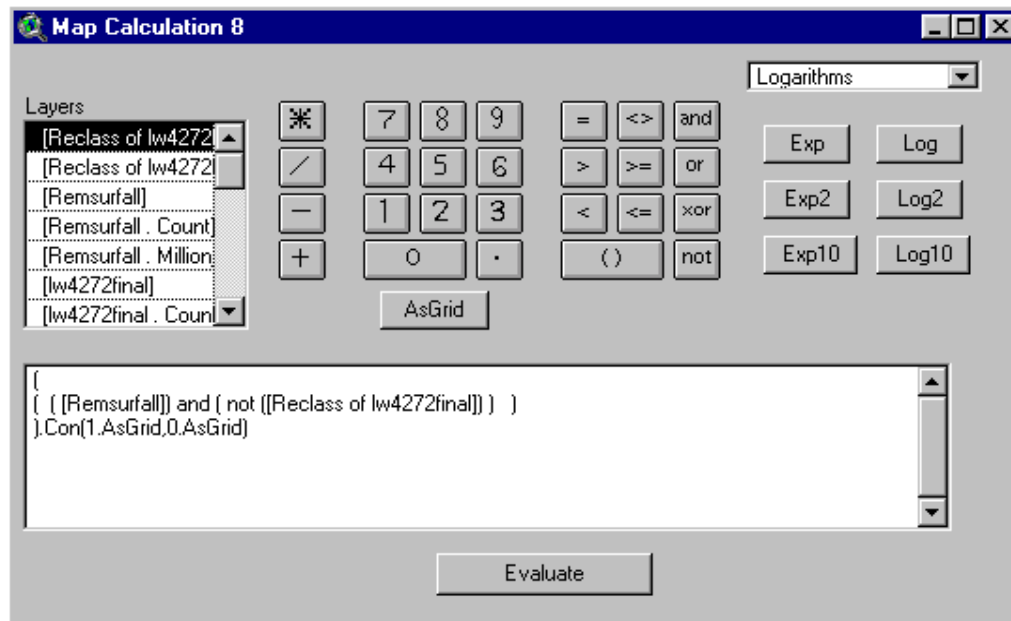
Notice that the 1ˢᵗ coverage in the expression above is the <u>latest remaining coal layer.</u>

Here again you have to substitute in, the correct 1ˢᵗ layer as you iterate:

FIRST ITERATION (lw4272)

The <u>first</u> time you arrive here, you are working on lw4272, therefore the 1ˢᵗ coverage in the expression is:

> **remsurfall**

SECOND ITERATION (lw7296)

The second time you arrive here, you are working on lw7296, therefore the 1ˢᵗ coverage in the expression is:

> **remlw4272sb**

THIRD ITERATION (lw96)

The <u>third</u> time you arrive here, you are working on lw96, therefore the 1ˢᵗ coverage in the expression is:

> **remlw7296sb**

The second step is to change cells with 0 to null

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
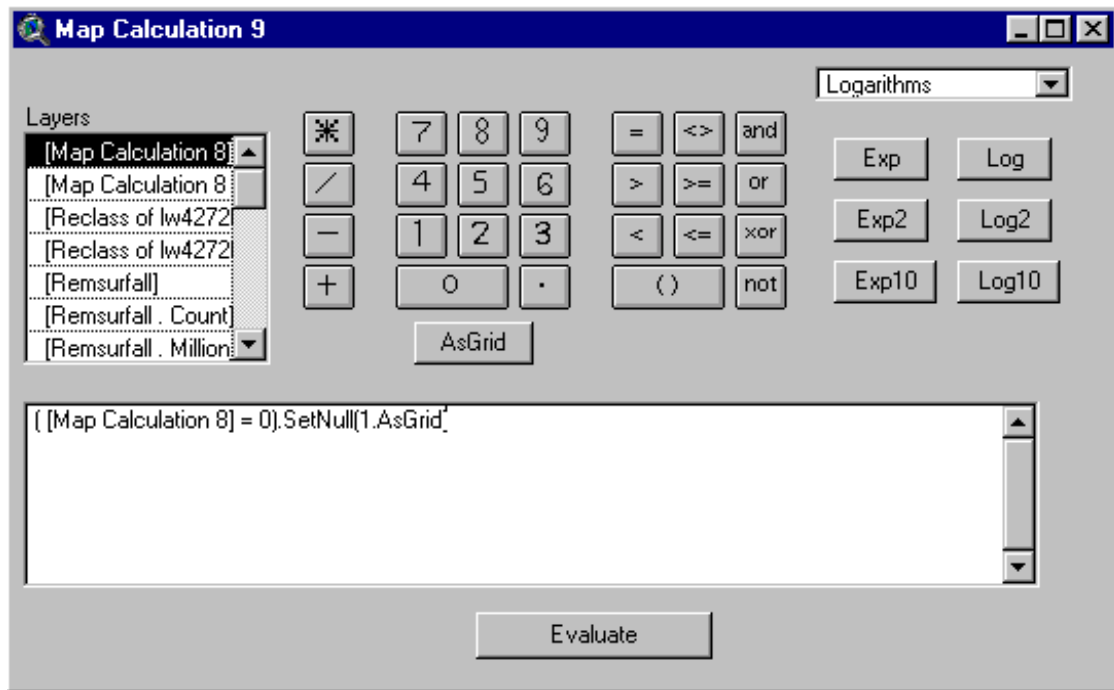
In Theme Properties, rename Map Calculation 9 as: **remlw4272**.

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Add a Safety Barrier

The next step is to expand lw4272final by 1 cell (for safety barrier).

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
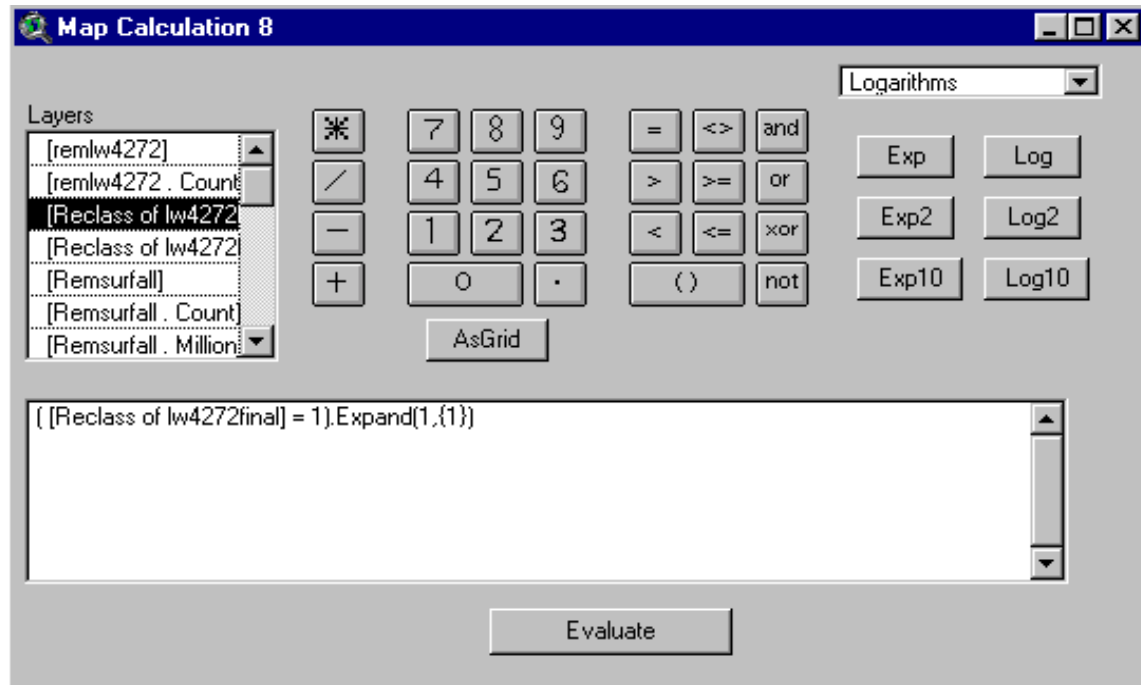
The layer, Map Calculation 8, is a 1 cell expansion of lw4272final. The expansion can extend into the areas that are restricted and into areas that do not have remaining coal.

We correct the initial expansion by setting a mask and evaluating Map Calculation 8 with the mask in place.

Note: Mask is the latest remaining coal layer. See next page for layer names to use on each of 3 iterations.

Under the Analysis Menu

Click properties

Change the analysis Mask to

Remlw4272 (**1st Iteration**)

FIRST ITERATION (lw4272)

The <u>first</u> time you arrive here, you are working on lw4272, therefore the latest remaining coal coverage (just created) is:

remlw4272

Set Analysis Mask = remlw4272

SECOND ITERATION (lw7296)

The second time you arrive here, you are working on lw7296, therefore the latest remaining coal coverage (just created) is:

remlw7296

Set Analysis Mask = remlw7296

THIRD ITERATION (lw96)

The <u>third</u> time you arrive here, you are working on lw96, therefore the latest remaining coal coverage (just created) is:

remlw96

Set Analysis Mask = remlw96

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
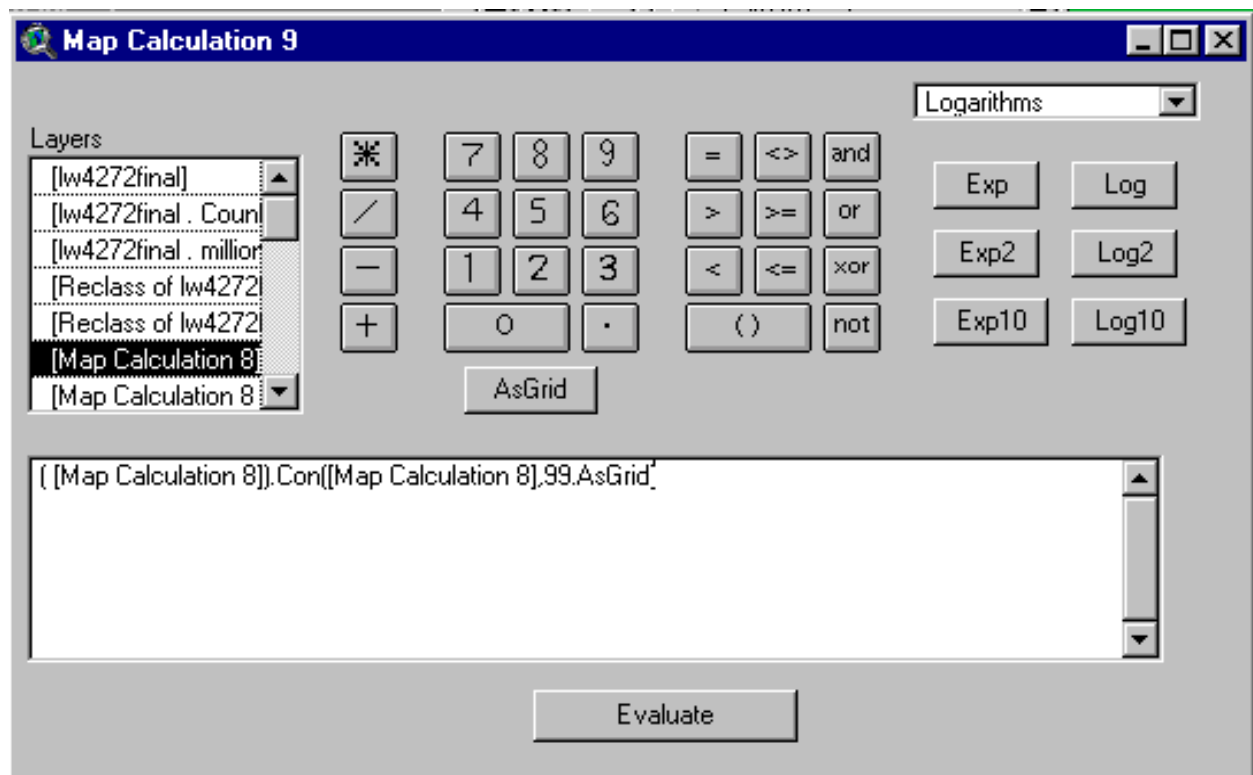
Change the cells with value = 99, to null.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
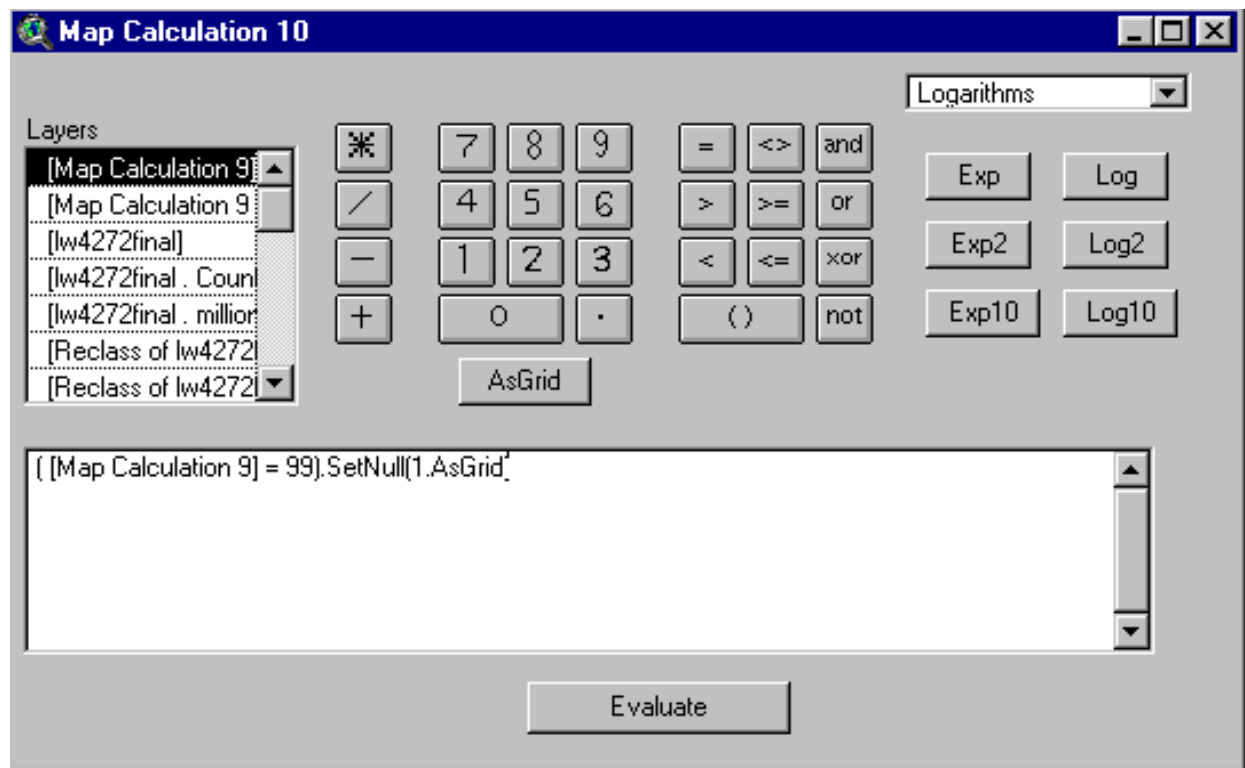
We now remove any coal in the safety barrier for lw4272 that might extend into other restricted areas.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
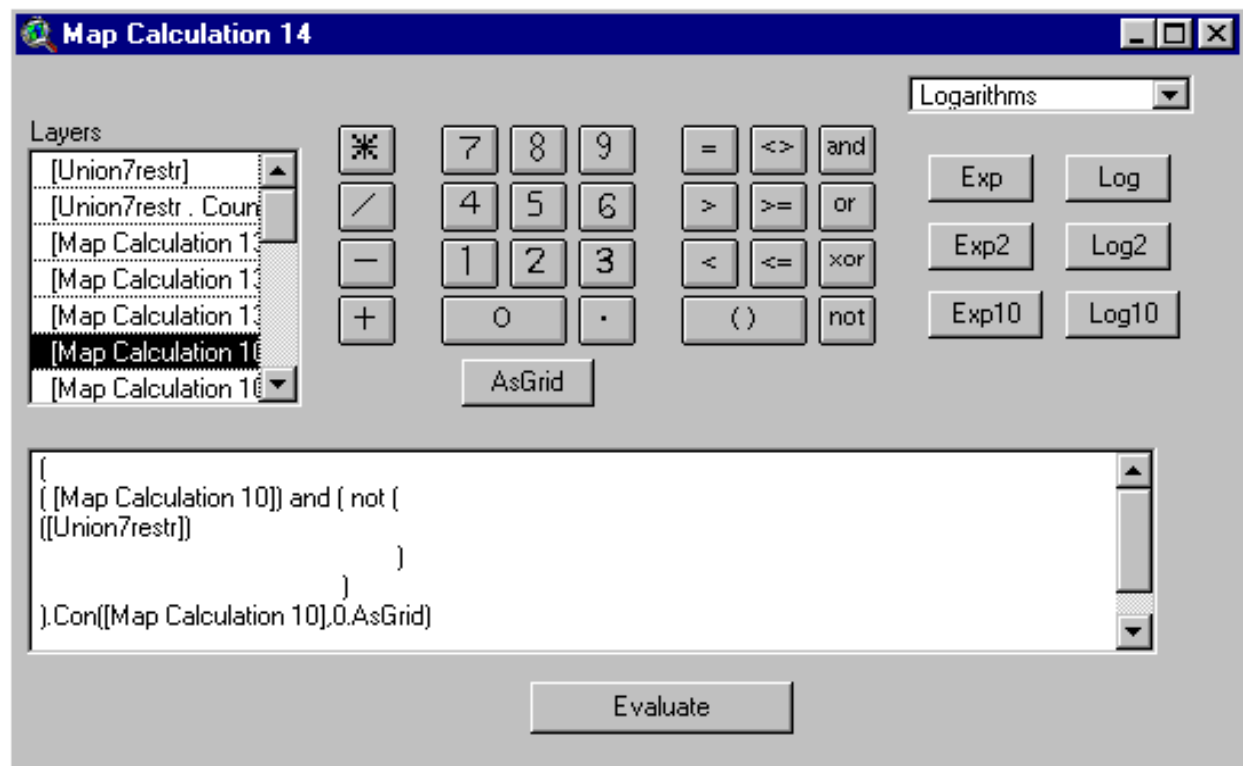
In Theme Properties, name Map Calculation 14 as:

lw4272sb (sb for safety barrier)

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to rename and retain.

Use **Method A** (pp. 6-66 and 6-84) to calculate the tons of coal in outside safety barriers:

Attributes Of Lw4272sb

Value	Count	Million_tons_coa
0	1702	1.0
1	53213	31.2

Next, we estimate coal in interior safety barriers.

In Analysis Properties, we set Analysis Mask to the latest remaining coal overage **from the latest complete iteration by mining technology and coal thickness..**

Note: As you repeat the calculations for each coal thickness category, the latest remaining coal coverage from the last complete iteration by mining technology and coal thickness will be the one created in the previous iteration.

FIRST ITERATION (lw4272)

The first time you arrive here, you are working on lw4272, therefore the latest remaining coal coverage (complete iteration) is:

remsurfall

In Analysis Properties, set Analysis Mask = remsurfall (see next page)

SECOND ITERATION (lw7296)

The second time you arrive here, you are working on lw7296, therefore the latest remaining coal coverage (complete iteration) is:

remlw4272sb

In Analysis Properties, set Analysis Mask = remlw4272sb (see next page)

THIRD ITERATION (lw96)

The third time you arrive here, you are working on lw96, therefore the latest remaining coal coverage (complete iteration) is:

remlw7296sb

In Analysis Properties, set Analysis Mask = remls7296sb (see next page)

Under the Analysis Menu, click

"Properties"

Change Analysis Mask to

remsurfall

Save your project.

It is very important that you save your project.

We proceed to open a new ArcView project (to build and rotate grid) and then return to the main project after that procedure is completed.

Superimpose Grid to Delineate Coal for Representative Mines

Important Note: We now digress from assessment work to make a grid. We will use the grid to break the coal into mine blocks of the size listed in table 7-1 (column 6), p. 7-2. After the grid is built, <u>we will reopen the chapter8 project.</u>

Open this ArcView Project (template for building and rotating grid):

      c:\testuser\warp.apr

We build a grid with dimensions close to those of actual mines.

We use the grid to represent the <u>interior</u> safety barriers between mines for a specific technology/thickness combination.

Open minegrid.xls in Excel.

Currently, we are working on lw4272.

<u>For tonnage (cell A16) we enter the minimum-size resource block (column 6) from table 7-1, p. 7-2:</u>

      57000000   (No commas)

      Press "Enter" on the keyboard

<u>For technology/thickness (cell A19) we enter the corresponding label:</u>

      lw4272

      Press "Enter" on the keyboard

File   Edit   View   Insert   Format   Tools   Data   Window   Help
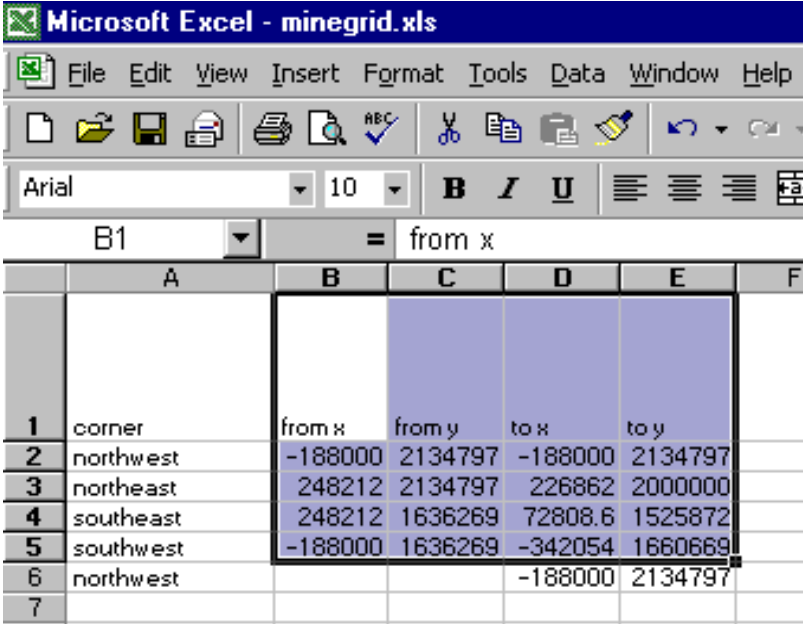
A17   =   Enter technology in cell A19 (select from lw4⋯

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	corner	from x	from y	to x	to y		technolog	aver l thickr (feet)
2	northwest	-188000	2134797	-188000	2134797		lw4272	
3	northeast	248212	2134797	226862	2000000		lw7296	
4	southeast	248212	1636269	72808.6	1525872		lw96	
5	southwest	-188000	1636269	-342054	1660669		cm2442	
6	northwest			-188000	2134797		cm4272	
7							cm7296	
8							cm96	
9	Angle of rotation							
10	18							
11	horizontal span							
12	436212							
13	vertical span							
14	498528							
15	Enter tonnage in A16, Grid will be based upon this tonnage							
16	57000000							
17	Enter technology in cell A19 (select from lw4272, lw7296, lw96, cm2442, cm4272, cm729							
18	**Note: type technology just as listed above with characters lowercase**							
19	lw4272							
20	Parameters for Pittsburgh are below, Change for other beds							
21	Density based upon 1800 tons/acre-ft in units of tons per square meter-foot, in cell A22							
22	0.445							
23	For rectangular grid, set values are as follows							
24	left long	-188000						
25	right long	250000						
26	bottom lat	1634000						
27	top rotated lat	2000000						
28								
29								

8 - 104

After you calculate corner points for the rotated grid, copy them to a new workbook:

    Open a new workbook in Excel.

Highlight the field names and the values for the 4 corner points:

Under the Edit Menu click

        Copy

Open the new workbook.

Under the Edit Menu click

        Paste Special

        In the Paste Special dialogue window click:

            Values
            OK

Click on the A1 cell.

Save the spreadsheet as

       C:\testuser\minegridlw4272.dbf   (Dbase IV format)

Close the new workbook.

Respond "yes" or "OK" or "save" to all Excel queries.

If necessary, make your Excel workbook (minegrid.xls) active

At the bottom of the worksheet, notice that there are 2 worksheets listed:

calculate (the worksheet that is open)
gridmaker

Click gridmaker to open it:

	A	B
1	mining technology	lw4272
2	tonnage	57000000
3	Values for running gridmaker	
4	left longitude	-188000
5	bottom latitude	1636269
6	horizontal span	436212
7	vertical span	498528
8	rows	96
9	columns	84
10		

The gridmaker worksheet captures the values you will need later to run the grdmakerrev script in ArcView.

Click on the A1 cell

Under the file menu, click "Print"

You will use these printed values later when you run the grdmakerrev script.

Open ArcView

In the Project Manager Window click

      the Tables Icon

Click "Add"

Scroll to c:\testuser\minegridlw4272.dbf.

Click "OK"

In View1, under the View Menu
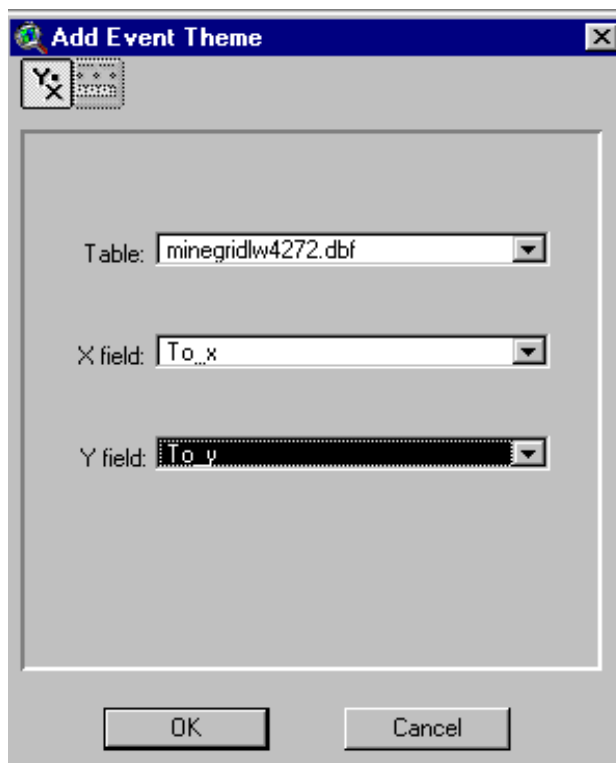
      Click "Add Event Theme" and make these entries:

Click "OK"

Make the new theme active.

Toggle on its display.

Click on "Connect the Dots" [Button with "Star"]

Zoom to extent of active theme:
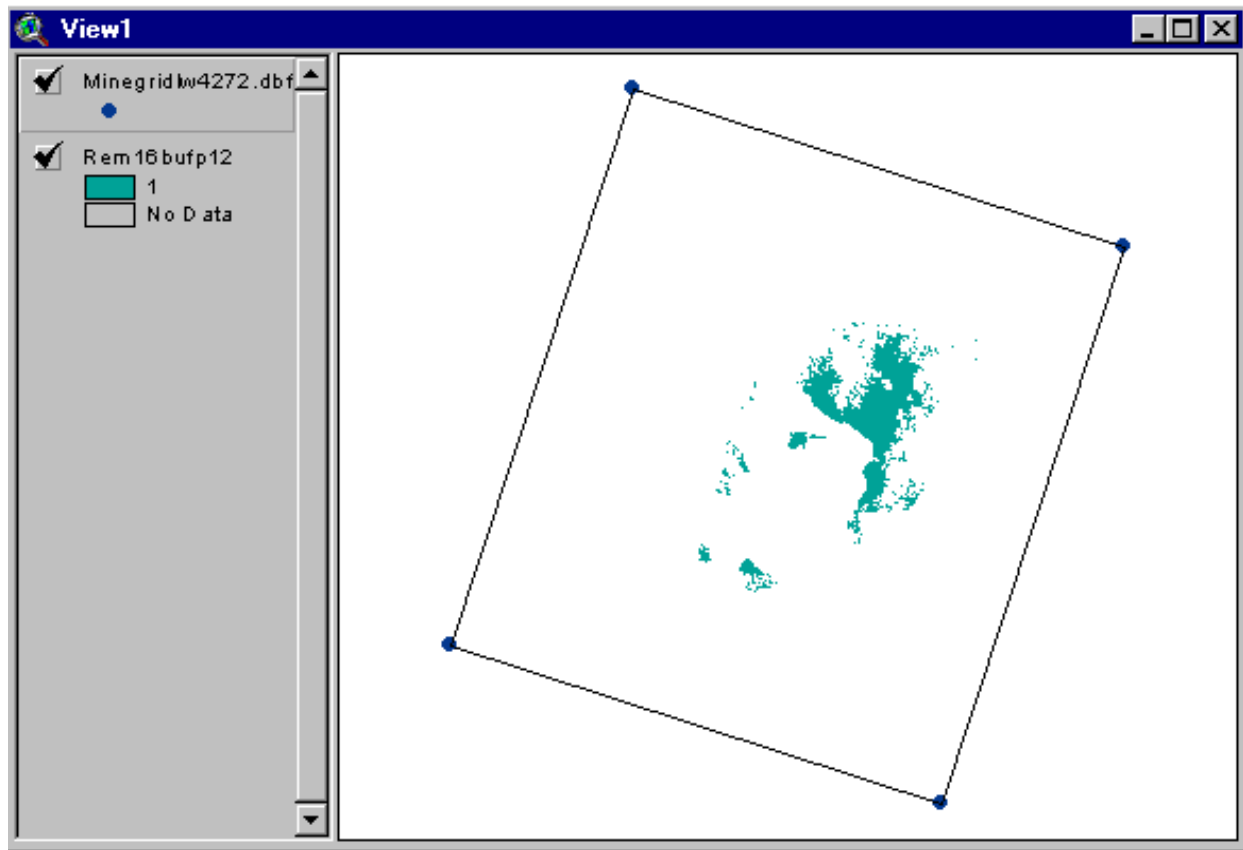
Click rotated rectangle to get its "handles"

Click the "G" Button.

Save the new shapefile as

        c:\testuser\tomgridlw4272.shp

Make minegridlw4272.dbf, active

Under the Edit menu click

    Delete Themes

    Click "Yes"

Click on the rotated graphic to get its handles.

Press Delete

Click the Gridmaker Button (it looks like a grid on the right of the button bar)

You are prompted for 6 input parameters

Previously, you printed these values when you ran minegrid.xls.

Use the printed list and enter the parameters as you are prompted

If the default value is not correct in the Message box, then type the correct value

For <u>left longitude</u>	**-188000**	**(No commas)**
For <u>bottom latitude</u>	**1636269**	
For <u>horizontal span</u>	**436212**	
For <u>vertical span</u>	**498528**	
For <u>rows</u>	**96**	
For <u>columns</u>	**84**	

(Obviously, the #'s you enter would be the appropriate values for the area where you are building a grid. The correct #'s for the Pittsburgh, longwall mining on 42 to 72 inch coal, are those above.)

Save the grid as

c:\testuser\mxxgridlw4272.shp

When you are prompted for Labels, click

No

We are now ready to rotate mxxgridlw4272.shp

We will run ShapeWarp to rotate mxxgridlw4272.shp:

Our "from grid" is: **mxxgridlw4272.shp**

Our "to grid" is: **tomgridlw4272.shp**

Our table of input data is: **minegridlw4272.dbf**

Our table of GCP's is: **coordsmglw4272.dbf** (which we will create)

At this point you are advised to save your project.

However, save it under a new unique name such as:

C:\testuser\warpmglw4272

By saving the project, you can correct any errors that may become evident later, starting over from this point.

Delete all of the themes from ArcView.

Open the Project Manager Window.

Under the ShapeWarp Menu:

Click "Import Table"

Pick c:\testuser\minegridlw4272.dbf as the import table

Name c:\testuser\coordsmglw4272.dbf as the GCP table

In the Pick Field Dialogue window match the field in the list to the query:
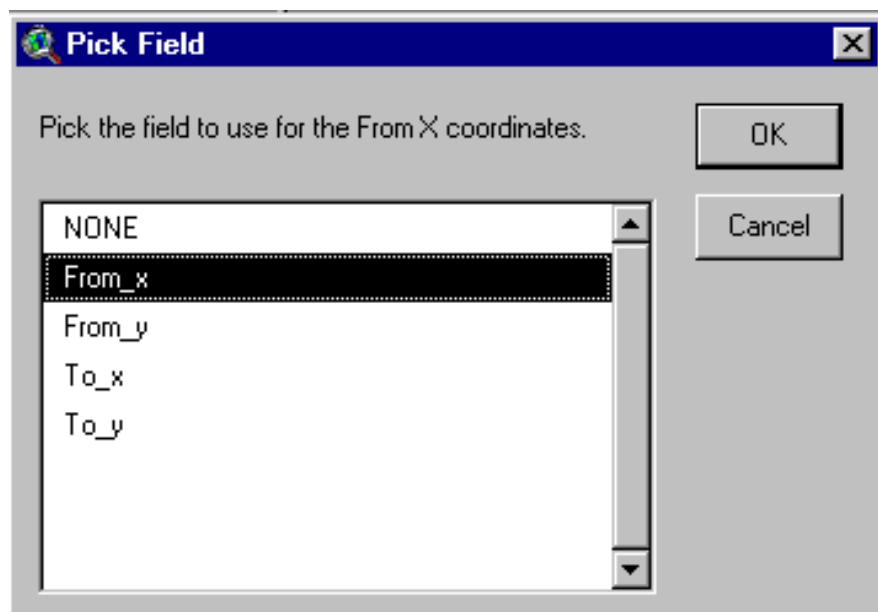
The new GCP table will display on your monitor:

GCP	Use Pnt	From x	From y	To x	To y	RMS	
1	ON	-188000.0000000	2134797.0000000	-188000.0000000	2134797.0000000	0.0000000	
2	ON	248212.0000000	2134797.0000000	226862.0000000	2000000.0000000	0.0000000	
3	ON	248212.0000000	1636269.0000000	72809.0000000	1525872.0000000	0.0000000	
4	ON	-188000.0000000	1636269.0000000	-342054.0000000	1660669.0000000	0.0000000	

Minimize the GCP table

Make the Project Manger Window active.

Click on the ShapeWarp "Diamond" icon.

In response to "Do you want to set the projection for the TO view?

Click "No"

Pick the theme that you want to warp (i.e., rotate):

Pick the Feature Themes that you want to Warp.

Directory: d:\testuser

gridfinalpittlw.shp
gridpittlw.shp
gridtest.shp
lw4272bigrxgrid.shp
mgridlw4272.shp
mxxgridlw4272.shp
pittorig.shp
remainingjuly2000.shp

d:\
testuser
adol
calc1
calc2
calc3
calc4
calc5

OK

Cancel

⊙ Directories
○ Libraries

Data Source Types:
Feature Data Source

Drives:
d:

Pick the theme that has the rotated rectangle:

Pick the Themes for the TO View

Directory: `d:\testuser`

Files:
- lw4272bigrxgrid.shp
- mxxgridlw4272.shp
- pittorig.shp
- remainingjuly2000.shp
- togridpittlw.shp
- togridpittlwx.shp
- **tomgridlw4272.shp**

Directory tree:
- d:\
- **testuser**
  - adol
  - calc1
  - calc2
  - calc3
  - calc4
  - calc5

OK
Cancel

○ Directories
○ Libraries

Data Source Types: `Feature Data Source`

Drives: `d:`

In response to the query about selecting a table

Click "Yes"

Would you like to use an existing table?

Yes   No

Select the coordinate table as

        c:\testuser\coordsmglw4272.dbf
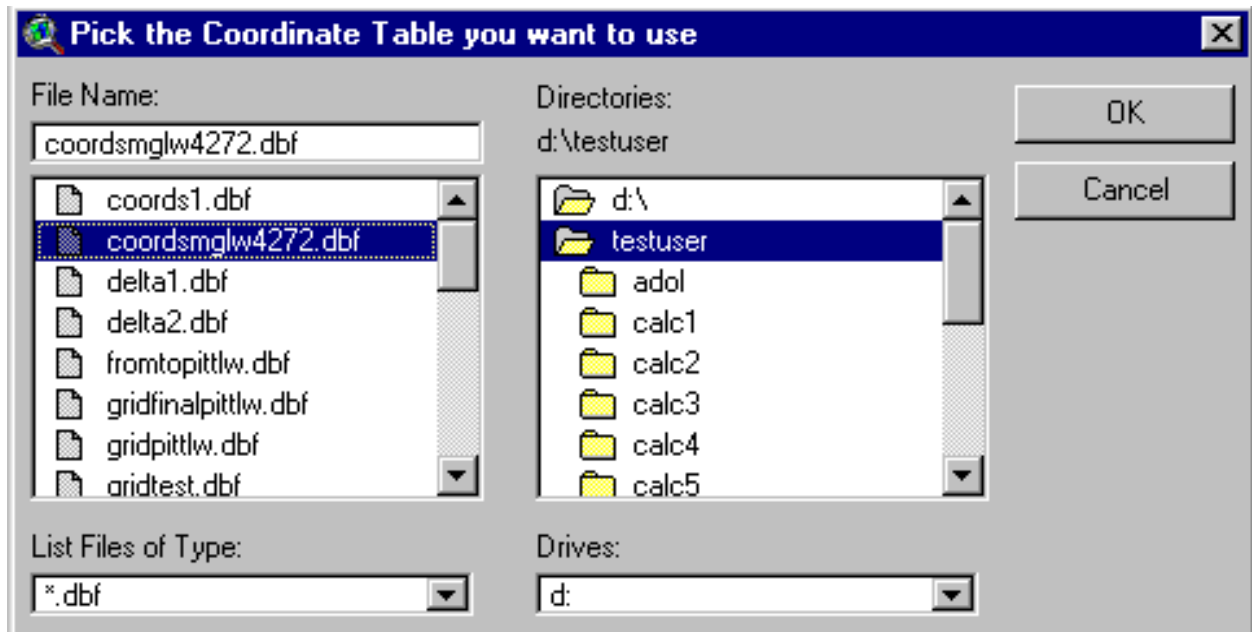
A window will open showing the TO and FROM rectangles. The 4 corner points will be used to guide the rotation:
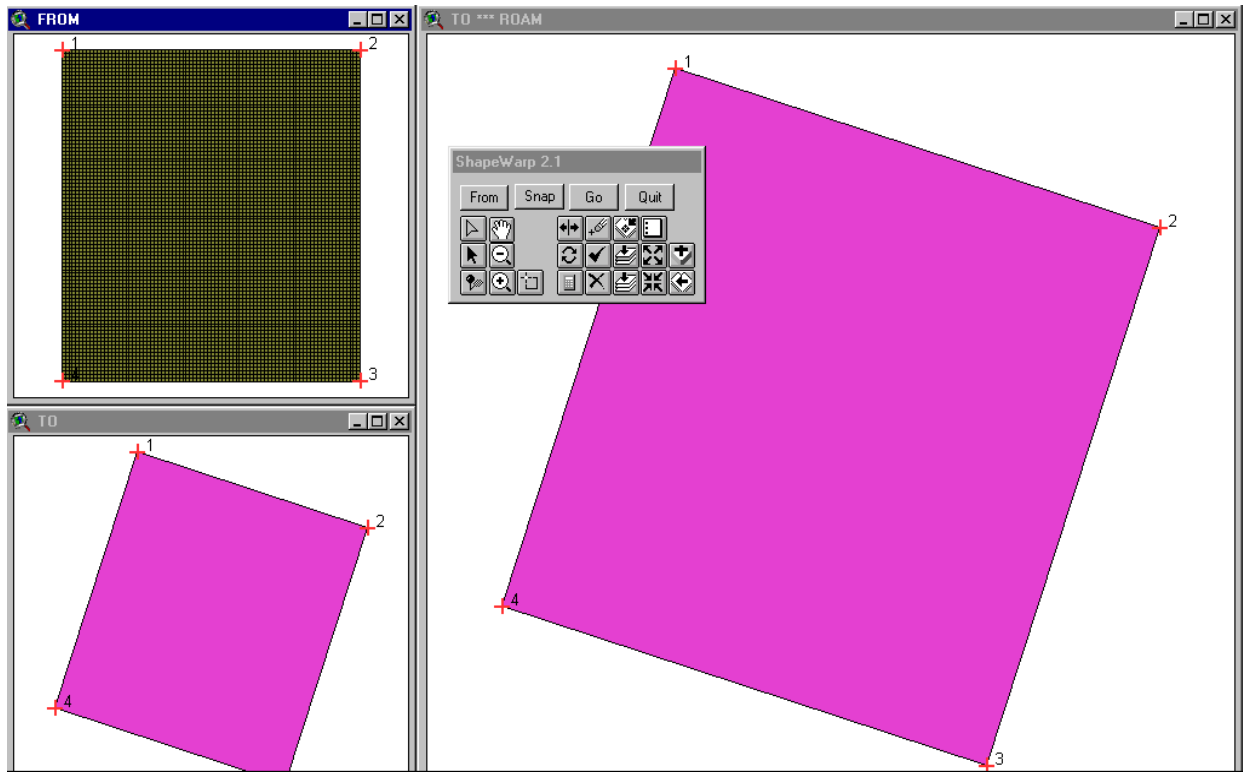
Click the RMS icon on the ShapeWarp toolbar (looks like a calculator).

Select "First Order"

Click "OK"
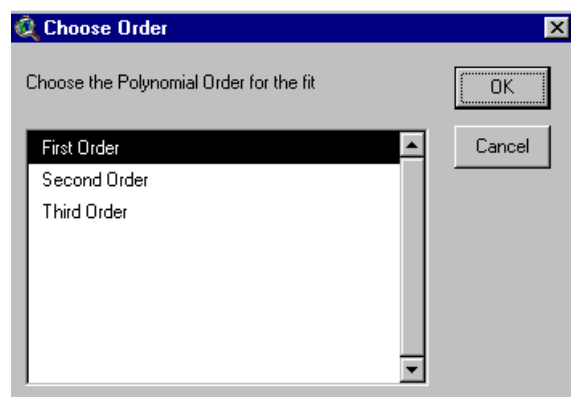
The RMS error should be very small.

On the ShapeWarp toolbar

        Click "Go"

Save the rotated grid as

        c:\testuser\gridfinalmglw4272.shp

Respond "No to query about report.

On the ShapeWarp toolbar

        Click "Quit"

Open project

        c:\testuser\chapter8.apr

Add theme:

        gridfinalmglw4272.shp

In the Legend Editor:

        Make the polygon fill for gridfinalmglw4272, transparent

        Set size = 0.1 for the outline of gridfinalmglw4272.shp

Maximize the View window.

Toggle on the display for gridfinalmglw4272.shp.

Estimate Coal in Interior Safety Barriers

The layer, lw4272sb, contains the safety barrier for the <u>outside</u> extent of the coal allocated to longwall mining, 42 to 72 inch thick coal.

The coal blocks, represented in lw4272bigrxgrid.shp and lw4272final, also need to have interior safety barriers.

We complete 7 steps to determine interior safety barriers:

Step1: Download script, View.ConvertPolygontoPolyline

Using Netscape or Explorer, attach to www.esri.com.

On the left side, click on "ArcScripts

In the window that opens under Primary Software click, "ArcView 3.x"

Scroll to View.ConvertPolygontoPolyline

Download cvtplypl.ave to

c:\esri\av_gis30\arcview\samples\scripts

Step 2: Add cvtplypl.ave as a button to your project

In the Project Manger Window

Click on the Scripts Icon

Click New

Under the Script Menu

Click "Load Text File"

Scroll to c:\esri\av_gis30\arcview\samples\scripts

Select cvtplypl.ave

Click "OK"

Click the Compile button (Looks like check mark)

Make View1 active

Double click in the open space on the right of the button bar

In the Customize Dialog Window

As "Category", select "Buttons"

Move slider scroll bar all the way to the right

In the open space on the right, above the slider bar in the slider window, click once

Then click "New", below to the left

In the Properties Window (bottom half of Customize Window):

Double Click "Click"

In the window that open, scroll to "Script 1" (i.e, the script that you just compiled)

Select Script 1

Click OK

Double Click "Help"

In the Window that opens

Type "Converts Polygon to Polyline//Converts Polygon to Polyline"

Double Click "Icon"

In the window that opens

Scroll to the "Poly" icon

Select "Poly"

Click OK

In the Customize Dialog Window

Click X in the upper right corner to close the window

Notice that the poly button is added to View1

Step 3: Convert gridfinalmglw4272.shp to a polyline

Make gridfinalmglw4272.shp active

Click the "Poly" Button

Save the polyline layer as

c:\testuser\gridplmglw4272

When queried, add theme to View1

Step 4: Convert gridplmglw4272.shp to a grid

Make gridplmglw4272.shp active

Under the Theme Menu

Click "Convert to Grid"

Save the new layer as

c:\testuser\gplmglw4272

Step 5: Intersect gplmglw4272 and lw4272final to obtain the interior safety barrier around coal, without placing the safety barrier on a restricted area

Note: Restricted areas in lw4272final (with value = 0) evaluate false when the intersect request runs. Therefore, gplmglw4272 is kept out of the restricted areas.
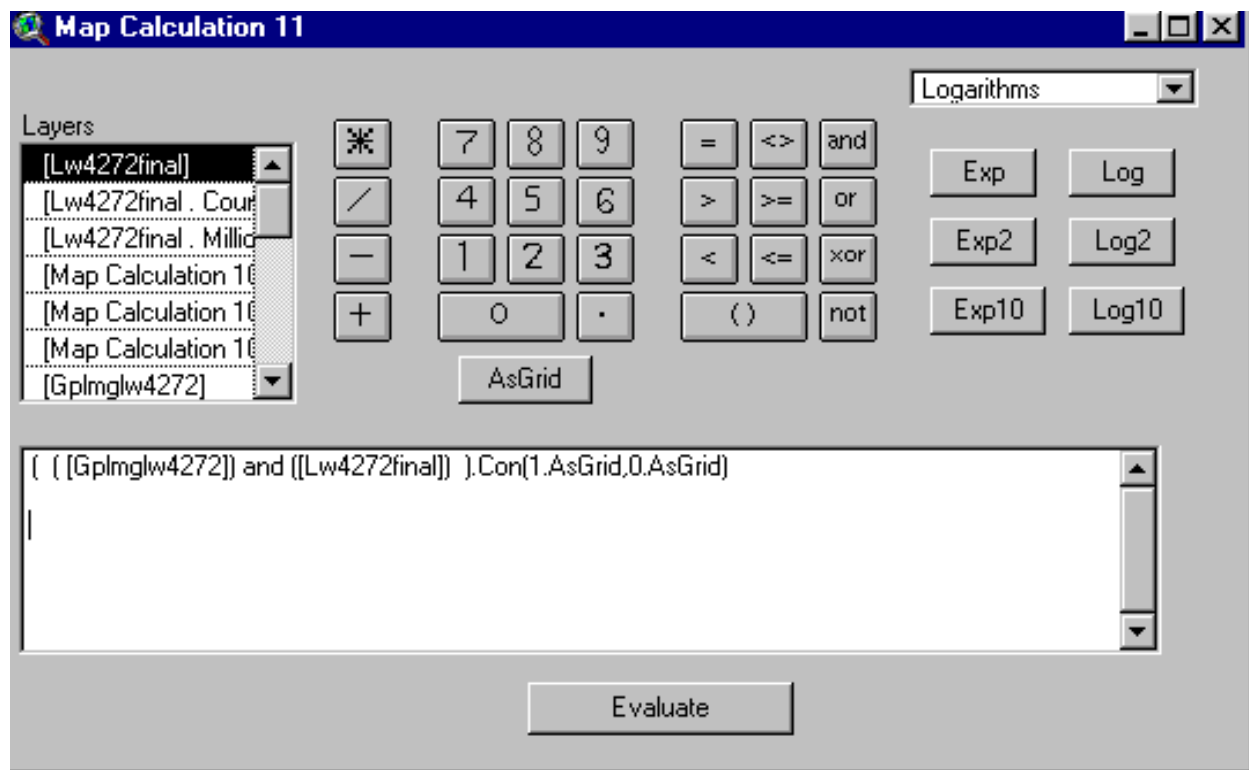
In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:

Step 6: In Map Calculation 11, convert nulls to 9 (needed for step 7).

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:

Map Calculation 13

Logarithms

Layers
[Map Calculation 14
[Map Calculation 14
[Map Calculation 10
[Map Calculation 10
[lw4272final]
[lw4272final . Coun
[lw4272final . million

AsGrid

([[Map Calculation 11]).IsNull.Con(9.AsGrid,[Map Calculation 11])

Evaluate
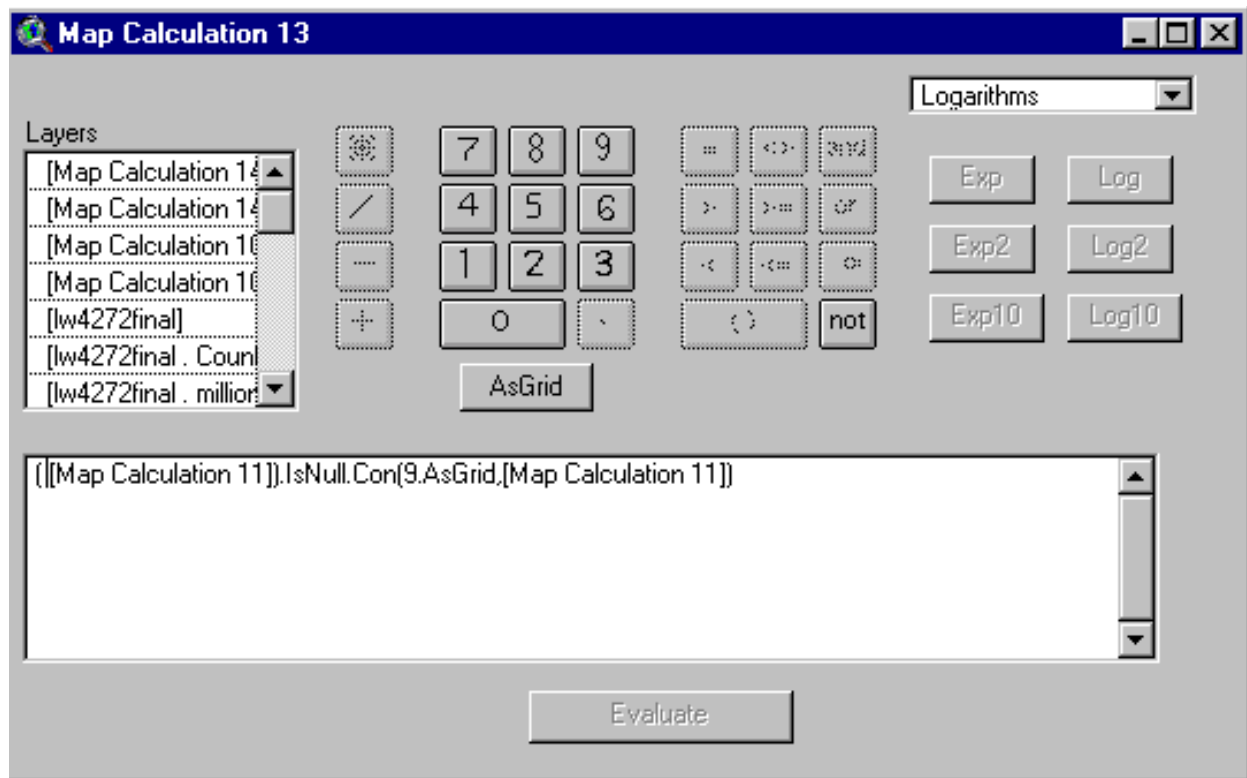
Step 7: Use Map Calculation 13 to split lw4272final into 3 parts:

Areas that are restricted (cells with 0 value)

Areas with available coal less any interior safety barriers (cells with value 1-775)

Areas that represent interior safety barriers (cells with value 999)

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
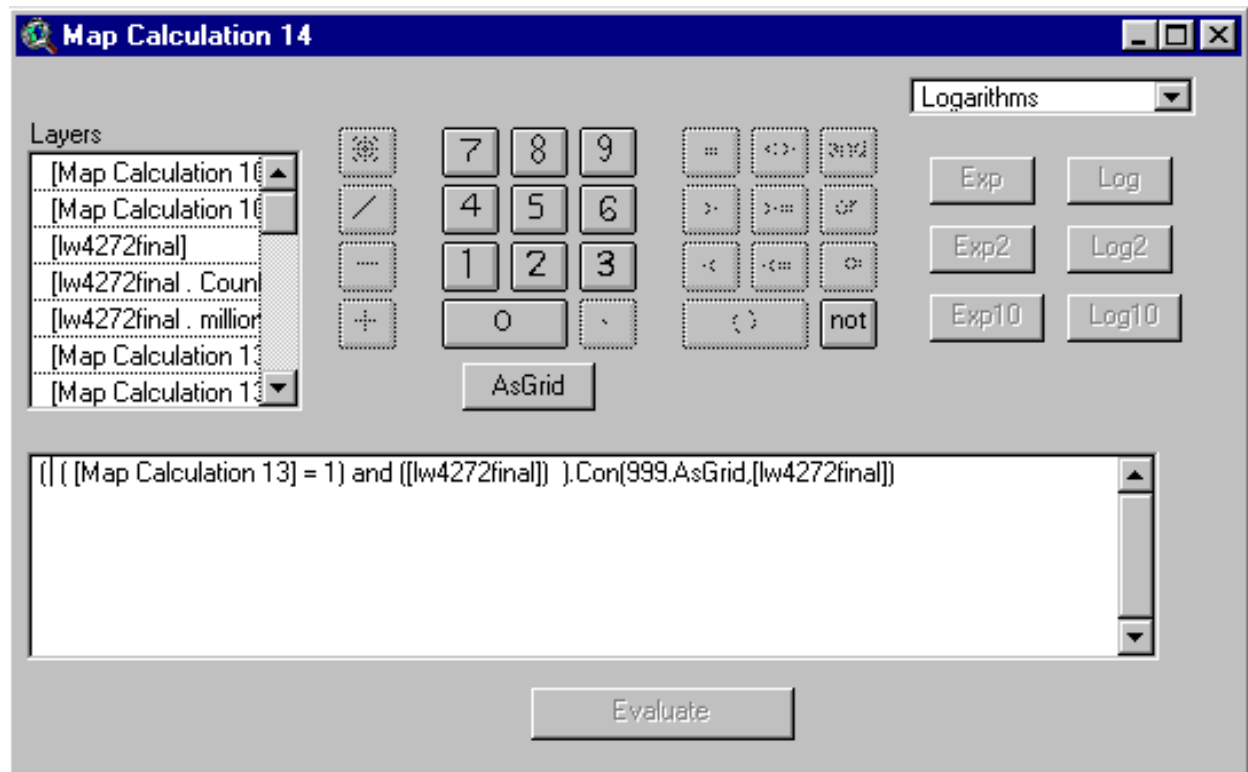
In Theme Properties, rename Map Calculation 14 as:

lw4272finalb

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to rename and retain.

In the legend editor, classify values as indicated in the next display:
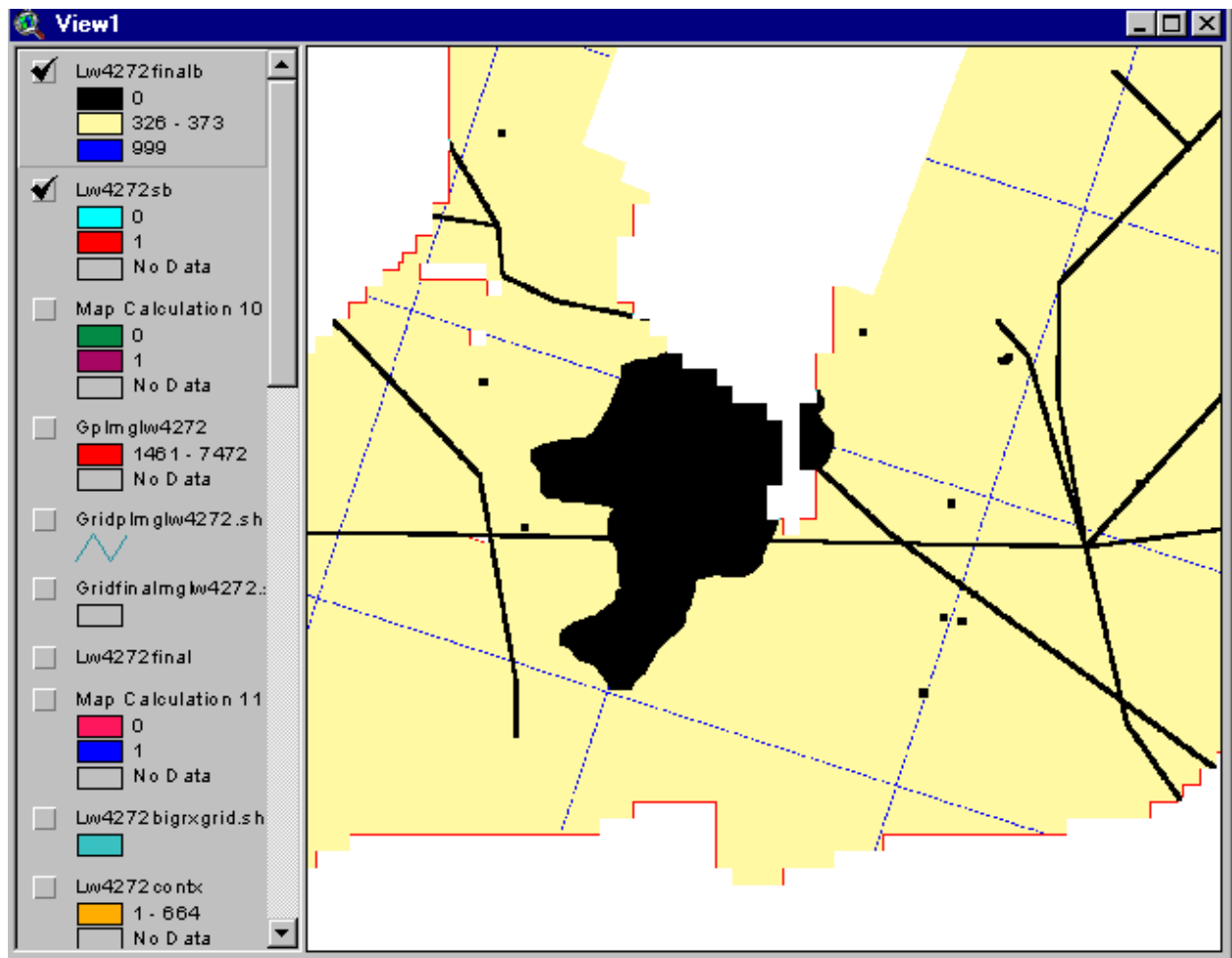
The black cells are restricted areas.

The dark blue thin lines (grid pattern) are interior safety barriers

The yellow cells are areas with available lw4272 coal.

The red thin lines are exterior safety barriers.

Zoom View 1 to see the outside safety barriers:
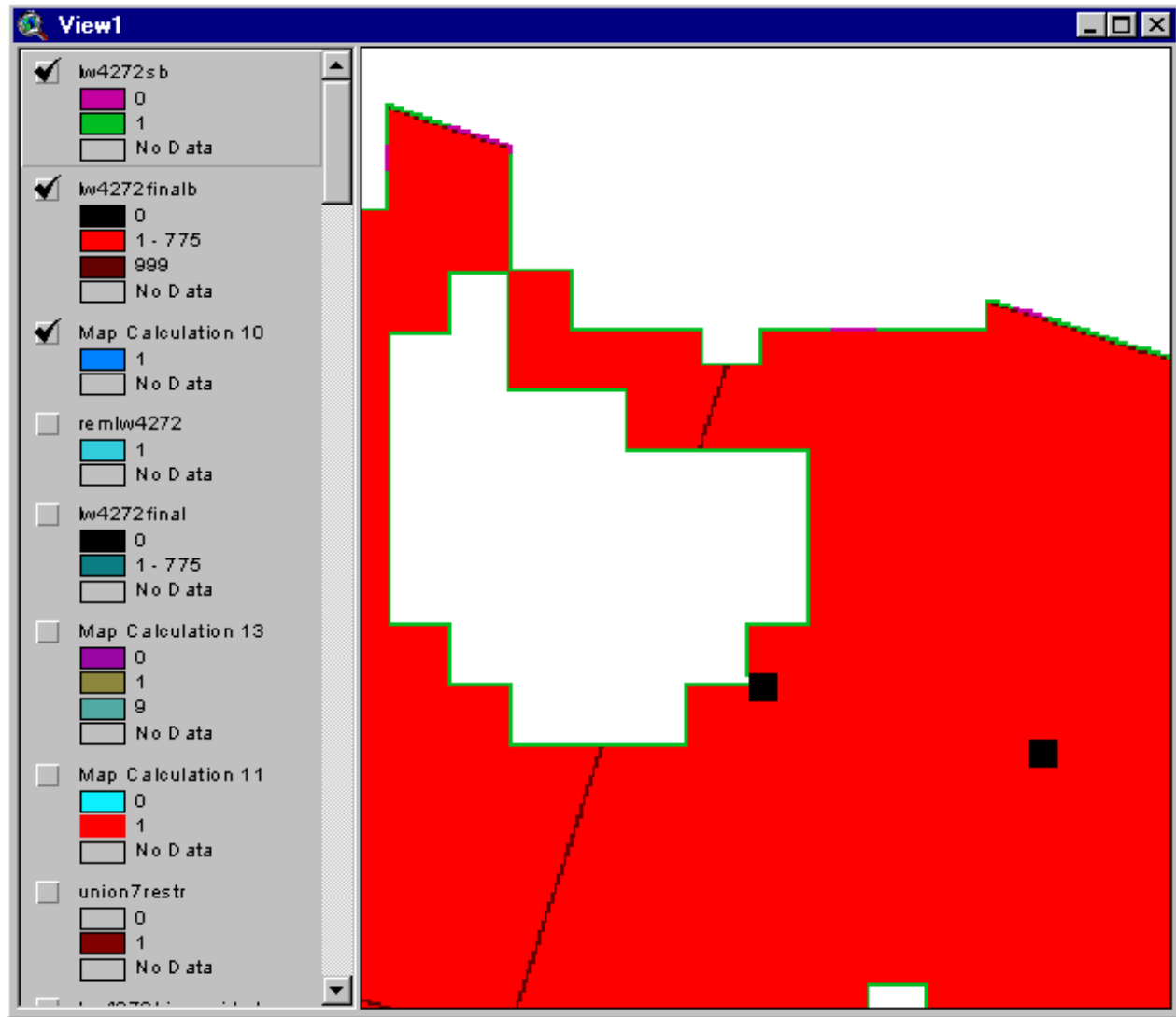
The interior safety barrier is coal taken from the initial coal blocks (in lw4272final) that is reallocated to safety barriers.

Therefore, layers lw4272final and lw4272finalb have the same coal extent, and differ only in their classifications of the coal.
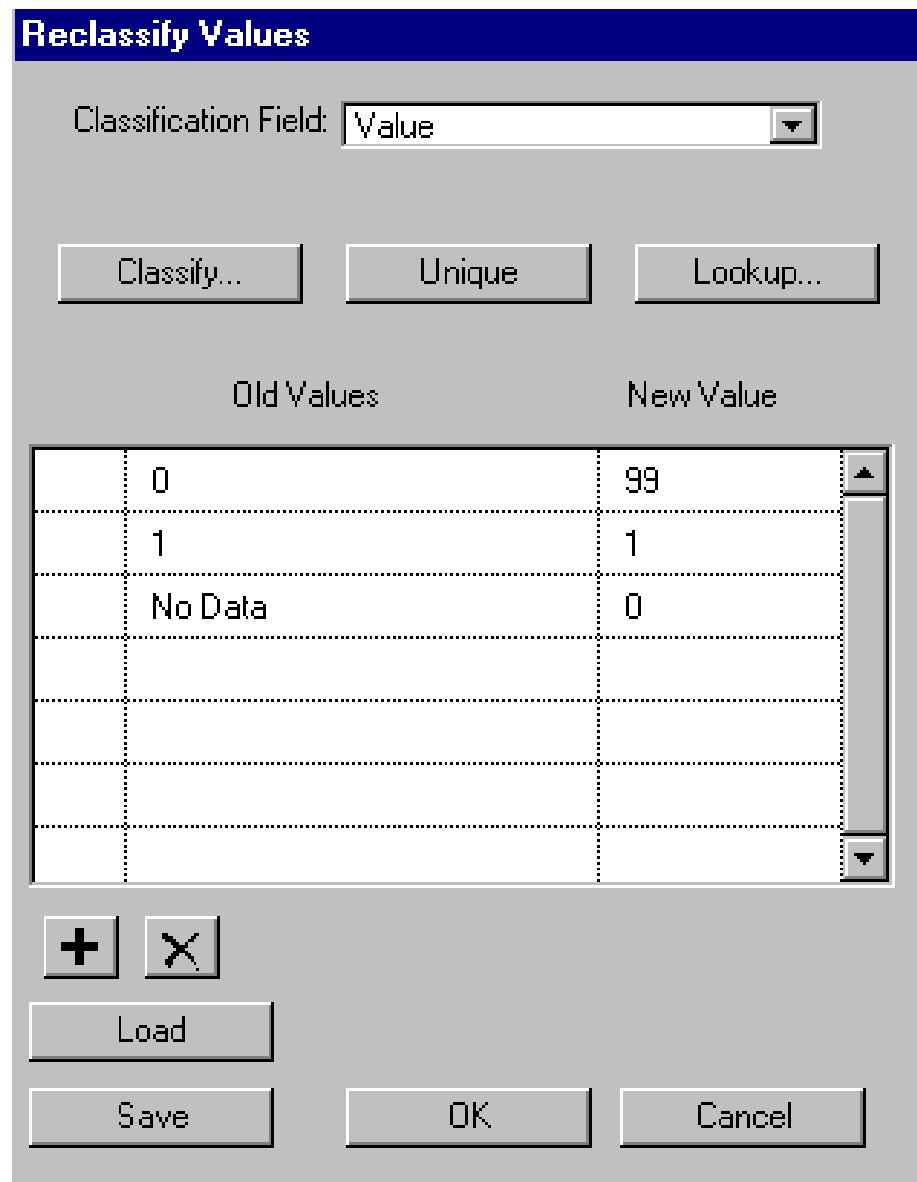
Earlier, we updated the remaining layer by removing lw4272final (equivalent to lw4272finalb) from remsurfall, creating the remaining layer, remlw4272.

The outside safety barriers, layer lw4272sb, remove additional coal.

Update Remaining Coal Layer: Remove Coal in Safety Barrier

We proceed now to update remlw4272 by removing lw4272sb

Step 1: We reclassify lw4272sb following the procedure on p 7-10:

Reclassify Values

Classification Field: Value

Classify...   Unique   Lookup...

Old Values	New Value
0	99
1	1
No Data	0

Load

Save   OK   Cancel

Step 2: We remove the reclassified coal from **remlw4272**, following the 2 step procedure on p. 7-12:
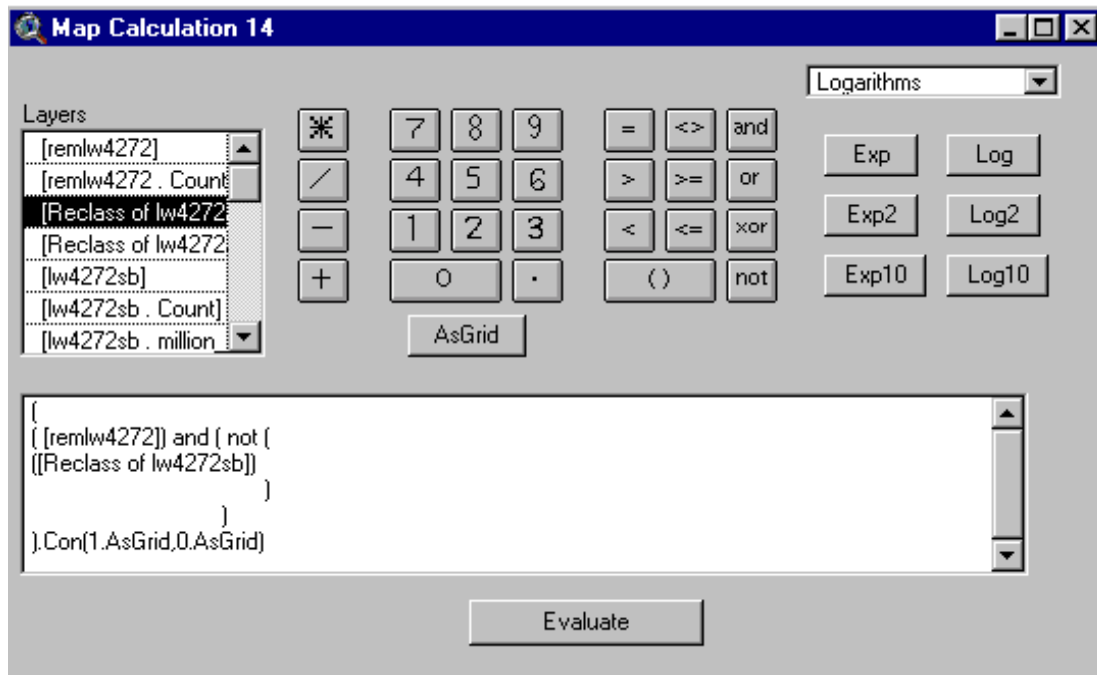
Notice that the 1ˢᵗ coverage in the expression above is the <u>latest remaining coal layer.</u>

Here again you have to substitute in, the correct 1ˢᵗ layer as you iterate:

FIRST ITERATION (lw4272)

The <u>first</u> time you arrive here, you are working on lw4272, therefore the 1ˢᵗ coverage in the expression is:

remlw4272

SECOND ITERATION (lw7296)

The second time you arrive here, you are working on lw7296, therefore the 1ˢᵗ coverage in the expression is:

remlw7296

THIRD ITERATION (lw96)

The <u>third</u> time you arrive here, you are working on lw96, therefore the 1ˢᵗ coverage in the expression is:

remlw96

Map Calculation 15

Logarithms

Layers
- [Map Calculation 14
- [Map Calculation 14
- [Reclass of lw4272
- [Reclass of lw4272
- [remlw4272]
- [remlw4272 . Count
- [lw4272sb]

```
( [Map Calculation 14] = 0).SetNull(1.AsGrid
```
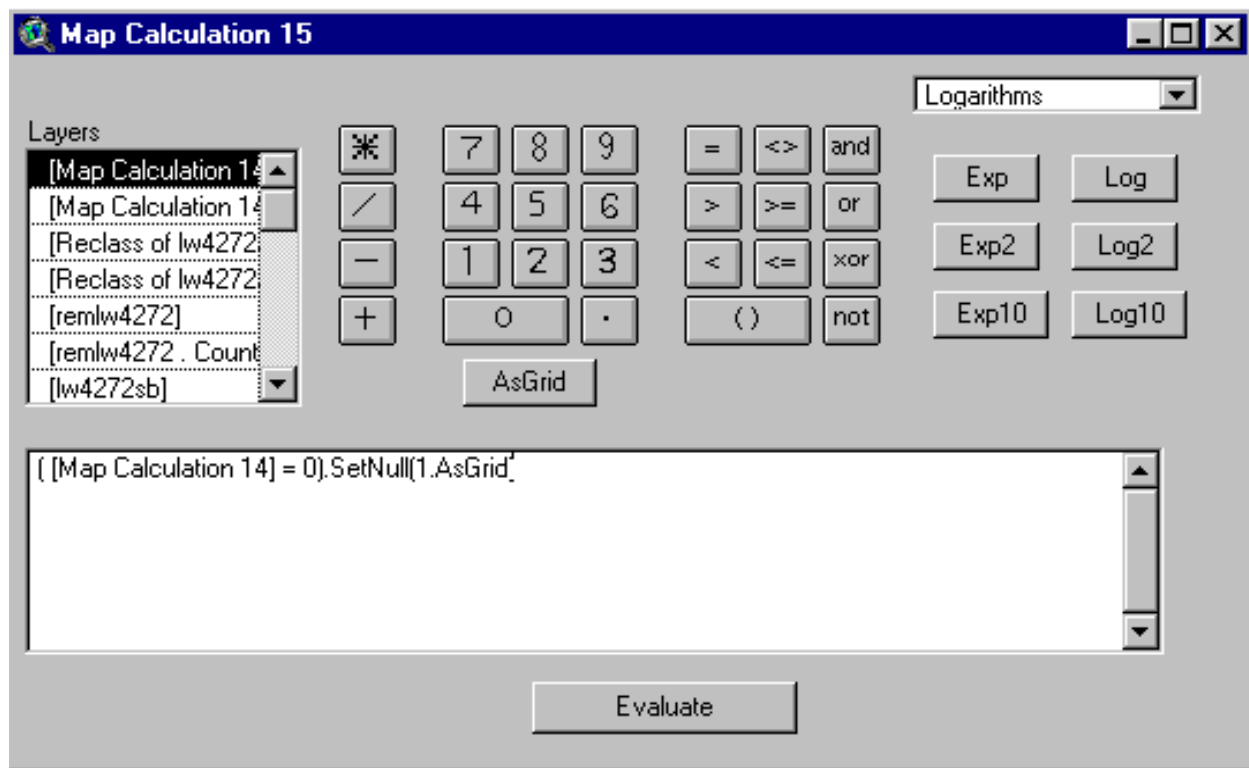
In Theme Properties, rename the new grid as:

remlw4272sb

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to rename and retain.

Add Estimates of Coal Characteristics

Next, we add coal characteristic data to the table for layer, lw4272finalb.

Add the following themes to View1:

thk16
ob16
parting10
sulfur100
btu16

Use Method A (p. 6-66 & pp. 6-84 through 6-89) to estimate coal characteristics:

tons of coal
thickness
overburden
parting
sulfur
btu/lb

Value	Count	Million_tons_coa	Thickness_[in]	Overburden_[ft]	Parting_[in]	Sulfur	Btu/lb
326	325625	173.9	56	699	2.3	2.78	13110
334	150613	92.3	65	822	1.5	2.51	13461
335	177731	116.1	69	615	5.8	2.66	13239
336	274362	171.2	66	699	6.3	3.89	13107
337	359365	218.5	64	612	2.9	2.14	13160
338	356108	207.7	61	755	3.4	1.86	13358
339	315410	201.5	67	820	4.4	3.68	13118
340	291581	183.5	66	879	3.9	3.32	13096
341	209090	131.7	66	732	1.9	4.13	12906
342	235371	146.5	66	1055	3.2	3.69	13132
343	321656	204.6	67	1106	3.5	3.46	13106

Lw4272finalb contains 29 coal resource blocks

The sum, 4.7 billion tons of coal, is the estimate of coal available for longwall mining on coal 42 to 72 inches in thickness

The largest block has 240.6 million tons

The smallest block has 64.6 million tons

The amount of coal in category 999, 35.7 million tons, is coal in **interior safety barriers.**

A final cleanup step:

Streams and stream buffers were not used as a restriction to longwall mining.

In Chapter 4, we calculated the coal in areas with buffered streams for the entire area of the remaining Pittsburgh coal bed.

In Chapter 10, we recalculate restricted coal in a way that accounts for the different treatment of

streams between surface and underground mining operations. The estimate of coal restricted by social and environmental limits will be smaller than the estimate we made in Chapter 4.

Summary, Consolidated Coal 42 to 72 Inches in Thickness

Available coal, longwall mining, 42 to 72 inch in thickness   4.7 billion tons

Coal in outside safety barriers   31.2 million tons

Coal in interior safety barriers   35.7 million tons

   Total coal in safety barriers   66.9 million tons

Latest updated layer of remaining coal   **Remlw4272sb**

Discussion

The estimate of the coal in interior safety barriers used the cell outlines based on 5,139 meters on a side. The coal blocks (at 5,139 meters on a side) are an approximate configuration for future logical mining units. Some blocks may be mined in smaller configurations, adding new mine boundaries and the requirement for additional safety barriers. Also, the configurations may not be the square blocks used in the model. A non-square block would have a larger perimeter than a square block because the latter has the smallest perimeter needed to enclose a given area. Our method does have the advantage of reducing available coal in each technology/thickness category by the amount of coal in the interior barriers. The interior safety barrier estimate should be regarded as a first-order approximation.

The remaining tasks are

1. To repeat the procedure to estimate coal for thickness in the 72 to 96 inch category

2. To repeat the procedure to estimate coal for thickness in the greater than 96 inch category

Coal Resource Blocks, Longwall Mining, Coal 72 to 96 Inches in Thickness

In Analysis Properties, set the Analysis Mask to

Remlw4272sb

Break out the coal in the 72 to 96 inch category

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
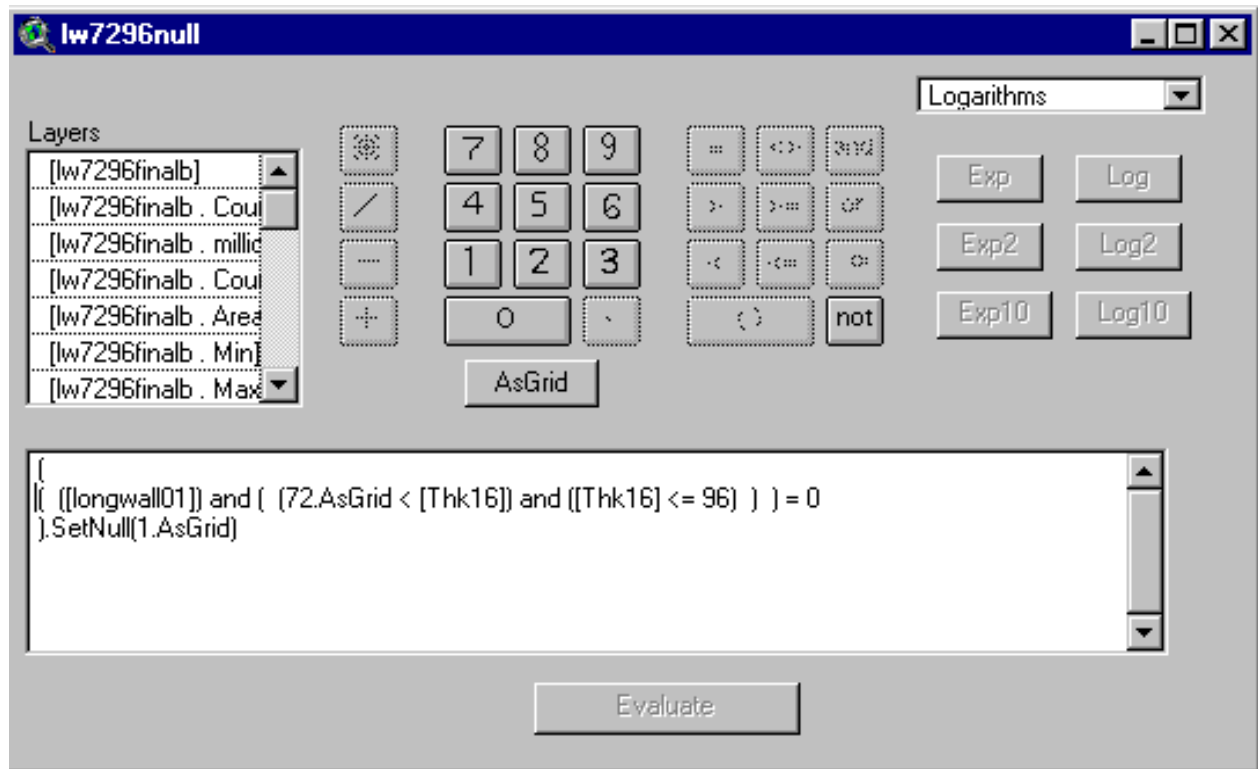
In Theme Properties, rename Map Calculation as:

lw7296null

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to rename and retain.

Jump to page 8-43 and proceed

On pages 8-46 and 8-47, set the minimum resource block size = 78.93 million tons (see table 7-1, p. 7-2).

Comparable to p 8-91, we estimate coal in outside safety barriers:

Attributes Of Lw7296sb

Value	Count	Million_tons_cos
0	85	0.1
1	13345	10.7

Skip around steps 1-4 on p 8-120 to 8-121. Begin with step 3 on p 8-122.

After estimating coal characteristics, the attribute table for lw7296finalb is:

Value	Count	Million tons coal	Thickness (in)	Overburden (ft)	Parting (in)	Sulfur (%)	Btu/lb
0	165834	129.5	82	880	5.7	3.12	13274
118	245009	181.7	78	978	2.9	3.13	13106
119	319873	242.9	80	1126	1.0	3.54	12850
120	241379	191.7	84	1041	5.5	2.96	13250
121	142557	105.1	78	1016	5.0	2.74	13143
122	210849	154.8	77	985	2.8	2.78	13149
123	263529	215.2	86	1045	5.7	4.74	13160
124	175376	132.1	79	952	14.0	5.10	12903
125	282473	217.1	81	1064	4.6	3.33	12771
126	199359	162.7	86	811	2.4	3.14	13378
127	127579	91.5	76	662	11.2	3.59	13149
130	192469	152.0	83	1011	5.2	3.61	13380
131	186122	150.0	85	992	10.9	4.15	13183

Lw7296finalb contains 16 coal resource blocks.

The sum, 2.6 billion tons, is the estimate of coal available for longwall mining on coal 72 to 96 inches in thickness.

The largest coal resource block has 242.9 million tons

The smallest coal resource block has 91.5 million tons

The amount of coal in **interior safety barriers** is estimated to be 19.0 million tons.

Summary, Consolidated Coal 72 to 96 Inches in Thickness

Available coal, longwall mining, 72 to 96 inches in thickness	2.7 billion tons
Coal in outside safety barriers	10.7 million tons
Coal in interior safety barriers	19.0 million tons
Total coal in safety barriers	29.7 million tons
Latest updated layer of remaining coal	**Remlw7296sb**

Coal Resource Blocks, Longwall Mining, Coal with Thickness >96 Inches

The remaining longwall category is coal with thickness greater than 96 inches.

In Analysis Properties, set Analysis Mask to

remlw7296sb

Return to p 8-138 and repeat the steps indicated.

The request to create layer, **lw96bigr**, is slightly different than the request for lw4272bigr:

Because there are so few tons of coal in restricted areas, it is necessary to extend the request that sets up the conditional processing.
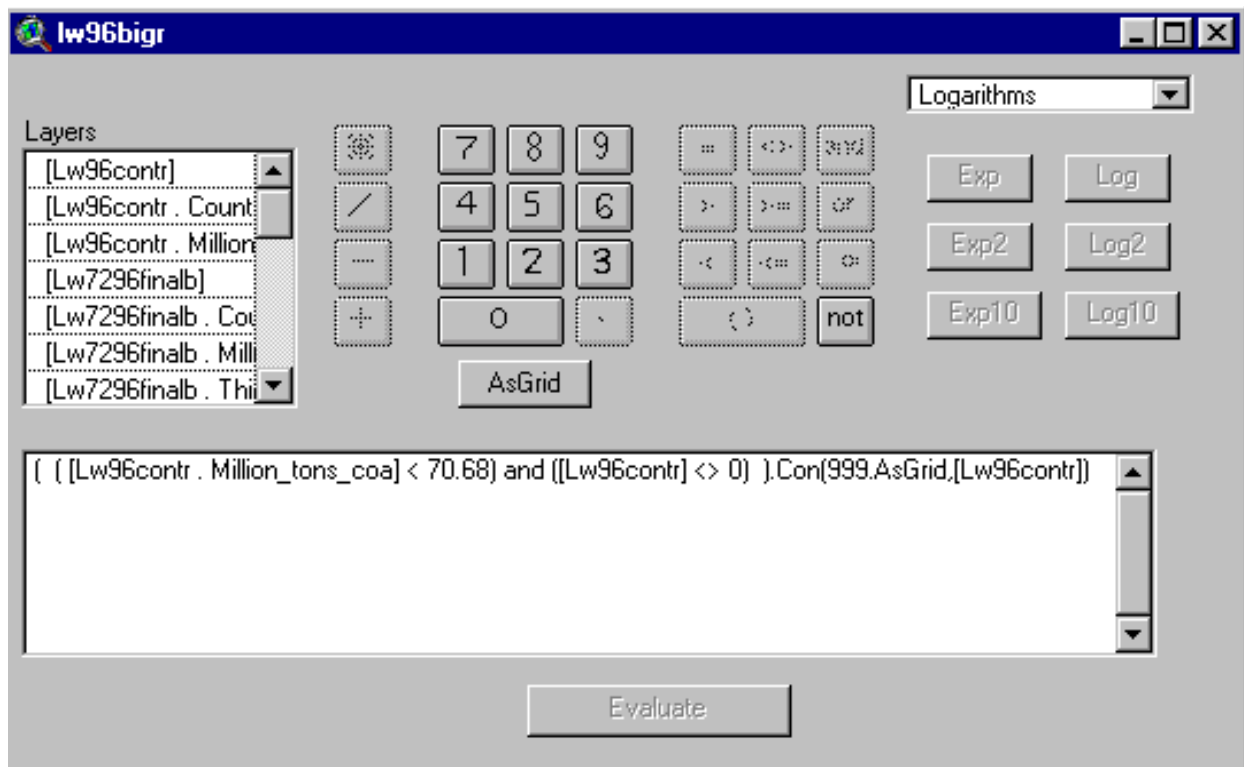
Attributes Of Lw96finalb

Value	Count	Million_tons_coal	Thickness_(in)	Overburden_(ft)	Parting_(in)	Sulfur_(%)	Btu/lb
0	6468	6.5	106	1053	8.7	3.33	13268
14	101926	100.8	104	1142	9.5	2.77	13445
15	146686	145.5	105	1043	9.2	3.19	13276
999	1914	1.9	105	1098	9.5	3.13	13302

Coal available for longwall mining, coal thickness greater than 96 inches, is summarized in the following table:

Summary, Consolidated Coal 96 Inches and Greater in Thickness

Available coal, longwall mining, greater than 96 inches thick   255 million tons

Coal in outside safety barriers   0.9 million tons

Coal in interior safety barriers   1.9 million tons

      Total coal in safety barriers   2.8 million tons

Latest updated layer of remaining coal   **Remlw96sb**

Summary, Longwall Mineable Coal

Next, we summarize results to this point

Tons of Coal Available for Mining		
Category	**billion tons**	**billion tons includes coal in restricted areas**
Longwall Mining, 42-72 inch thickness	4.746	5.004
Longwall Mining, 72-96 inch thickness	2.601	2.730
Longwall Mining, greater than 96 inch thickness	0.246	0.253
Total	7.593	7.987

Tons of Coal in Safety Barriers		
Category	**million tons**	**million tons includes coal in restricted areas**
Longwall Mining, 42-72 inch thickness	66.9	67.9
Longwall Mining, 72-96 inch thickness	29.7	29.8
Longwall Mining, greater than 96 inch thickness	2.8	2.8
Total	99.4	100.5

The third column in the tables adds coal in restricted areas.

The method used to update the remaining coal layer accounts for the restricted coal and the coal allocated to each category.

The restricted coal is just the coal specific to the coal remaining at the time.

Logically, all of the coal assigned to longwall mining and associated safety buffers should be the same amount that is subtracted from the remaining layer.

At the start of the assignment by mining technology, the remaining layer, Remsurfall, had 14,591.3 million tons of coal.

The final (to this point) updated remaining layer, remlw96sb, has 6,504.4 million tons of coal.

The difference in the remaining coal layers is 8,086.9 million tons.

The sum of coal allocated (adding the 3rd column total above) is 8,087.5 million tons.

The 2 tallies agree.

It looks like our methods are working correctly.

A summary of estimates, starting from Rem16mcell (remaining, chapter 5), is:

Remaining (rem16mcell)	15790.2
Safety barriers (mined-out coal)	157.2
Remaining (rem16buf)	15633.0
Coal <12 inches in thickness	42.1
Remaining (rem16bufp12)	15590.9
Coal allocated to surface mining	918.4
Surface mining safety barriers	80.9
Remaining (remsurfall)	14591.3
Coal allocated to longwall mining	7987.0
Longwall mining safety barriers	100.5
Remaining (remlw96sb)	6504.4

Rename grids to more convenient names

Save the current project.

Start a new project.

Open a new view.

Toggle on the Spatial Analyst Extension.

Under File Menu, click "Manage Data Sources" to access the Source Manager:
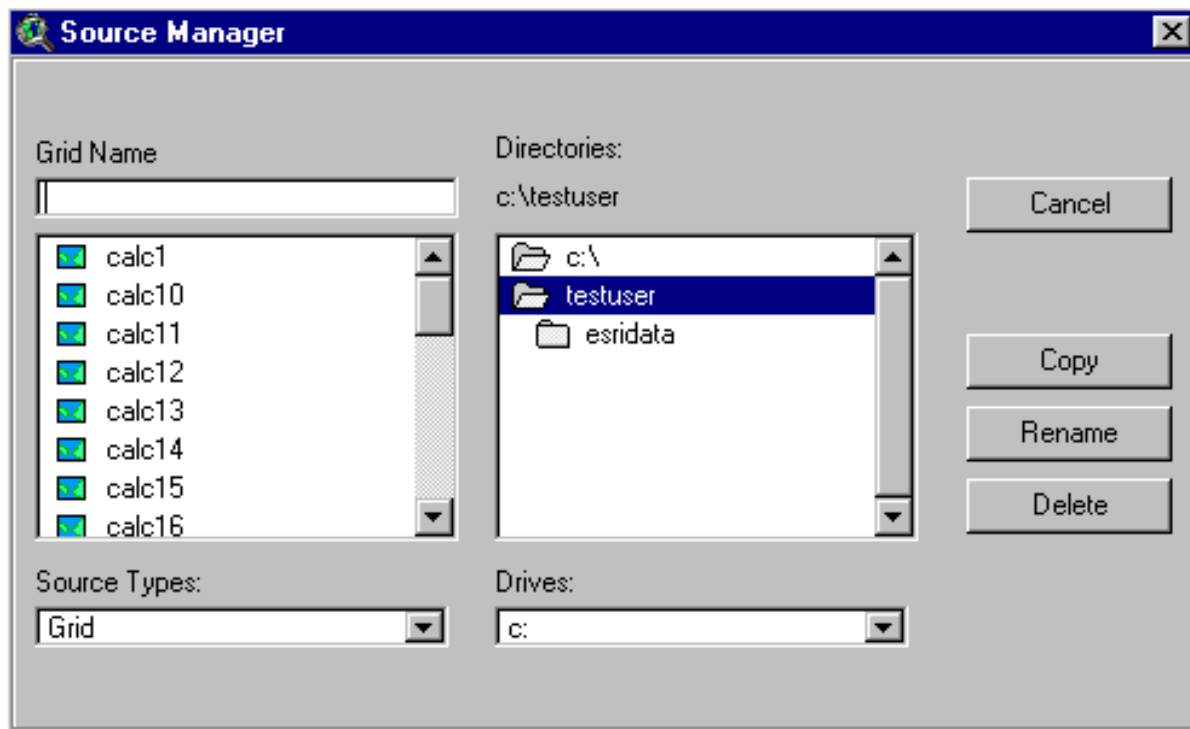
Then rename the initial grids with the following names:

(You would, of course, use your project path when you rename the grids.)

Coverage	Original Names	New Name
Coal that meets technical requirements to be mined by longwall methods	c:\testuser\calc9	c:\testuser\longwall01
Longwall mineable coal as a 1-null coverage	c:\testuser\calc10	c:\testuser\longwall1null
Longwall mineable coal, 42-72 inches in thickness, as a 1-null coverage	c:\testuser\calc11	c:\testuser\lw4272null
Coal restricted for longwall mining, includes all restrictions except stream buffers	c:\tesuser\calc12	c:\testuser\union7restr
Longwall mineable coal, 42-72 inches in thickness, as a 0-1 coverage	c:\testuser\calc13	c:\testuser\lw4272zero
Longwall mineable coal, 42-72 inches in thickness, in coal resource blocks	c:\testuser\lw4272bigrxgrid.shp	
Grid of cells (4,330 meters sq.) at 18 degree tilt used for assigning coal to resource blocks	c:\testuser\gridfinalpittlw.shp	
Longwall mineable coal, 42-72 inches in thickness, with coal grouped into blocks when cells are contiguous	c:\testuser\calc25	c:\testuser\lw4272contx
Longwall mineable coal, 42-72 inches in thickness, grouped with restricted cells removed from available coal	c:\testuser\calc26	c:\testuser\lw4272contr

Longwall mineable coal, 42-72 inches in thickness, with blocks having fewer tons than the minimum size mine removed from available coal	c:\testuser\calc27	c:\testuser\lw4272bigr
Longwall mineable coal, 42-72 inches in thickness, in resource blocks equal to or greater than the minimum size resource block, as a 0 (restricted) and block # coverage	c:\testuser\calc28	c:\testuser\lw4272bigrx
Longwall mineable coal, 42-72 inches in thickness, updated coal resource blocks (after on-the-fly editing)	c:\testuser\calc31	c:\testuser\lw4272final
Latest updated layer of remaining coal, takes longwall 42-72 out of previous remaining layer	c:\testuser\calc33	c:\testuser\remlw4272
Layer of coal in outside safety barriers, longwall mineable coal, 42-72 inches in thickness	c:\testuser\calc41	c:\testuser\lw4272sb
Longwall mineable coal, 42-72 inches in thickness, coal resource blocks and interior safety barriers	c:\testuser\calc40	c:\testuser\lw4272finalb
Latest updated layer of remaining coal, takes outside safety barriers for longwall 42-72 out of previous remaining layer	c:\testuser\calc43	c:\testuser\remlw4272sb
Stream buffers on available coal, longwall mining 42-72 inches in thickness	c:\testuser\calc44	c:\testuser\strlw4272x
Longwall mineable coal, 72-96 inches in thickness, as a 1-null coverage	c:\testuser\calc64	c:\testuser\lw7296null

Longwall mineable coal, 72-96
inches in thickness, as a 0-1
coverage   c:\testuser\calc65   c:\testuser\lw7296zero

Longwall mineable coal, 72-96
inches in thickness, with coal
grouped into blocks when cells
are contiguous   c:\testuser\calc66   c:\testuser\lw7296contx

Longwall mineable coal, 72-96
inches in thickness, grouped
with restricted cells removed
from available coal   c:\testuser\calc67   c:\testuser\lw7296contr

Longwall mineable coal, 72-96
inches in thickness, with blocks
having fewer tons than the
minimum size mine removed
from available coal   c:\testuser\calc68   c:\testuser\lw7296bigr

Longwall mineable coal, 72-96
inches in thickness, in resource
blocks equal to or greater than
the minimum size resource block,
as a 0 (restricted) and block #
coverage   c:\testuser\calc69   c:\testuser\lw7296bigrx

Longwall mineable coal, 72-96
inches in thickness, updated
coal resource blocks (after
on-the-fly editing)   c:\testuser\calc71   c:\testuser\lw7296final

Latest updated layer of remaining
coal, takes longwall 72-96 out
of previous remaining layer   c:\testuser\calc73   c:\testuser\remlw7296

Layer of coal in outside safety
barriers, longwall mineable coal,
72-96 inches in thickness   c:\testuser\calc56   c:\testuser\lw7296sb

Longwall mineable coal, 72-96
inches in thickness, coal resource
blocks and interior safety

barriers	c:\testuser\calc60	c:\testuser\lw7296finalb
Latest updated layer of remaining coal, takes outside safety barriers for longwall 72-96 out of previous remaining layer	c:\testuser\calc72	c:\testuser\remlw7296sb
Stream buffers on available coal, longwall mining 72-96 inches in thickness	c:\testuser\calc75	c:\testuser\strlw7296x
Longwall mineable coal, >96 inches in thickness, as a 1-null coverage	c:\testuser\calc77	c:\testuser\lw96null
Longwall mineable coal, >96 inches in thickness, as a 0-1 coverage	c:\testuser\calc76	c:\testuser\lw96zero
Longwall mineable coal, >96 inches in thickness, with coal grouped into blocks when cells are contiguous	c:\testuser\calc78	c:\testuser\lw96contx
Longwall mineable coal, >96 inches in thickness, grouped with restricted cells removed from available coal	c:\testuser\calc79	c:\testuser\lw96contr
Longwall mineable coal, >96 inches in thickness, with blocks having fewer tons than the minimum size mine removed from available coal	c:\testuser\calc82	c:\testuser\lw96bigr
Longwall mineable coal, >96 inches in thickness, in resource blocks equal to or greater than the minimum size resource block, as a 0 (restricted) and block # coverage	c:\testuser\calc83	c:\testuser\lw96bigrx

Longwall mineable coal, >96 inches in thickness, updated coal resource blocks (after on-the-fly editing)	c:\testuser\calc85	c:\testuser\lw96final
Latest updated layer of remaining coal, takes longwall >96 out of previous remaining layer	c:\testuser\calc87	c:\testuser\remlw96
Layer of coal in outside safety barriers, longwall mineable coal, >96 inches in thickness	c:\testuser\calc91	c:\testuser\lw96sb
Longwall mineable coal, >96 inches in thickness, coal resource blocks and interior safety barriers	c:\testuser\calc94	c:\testuser\lw96finalb
Latest updated layer of remaining coal, takes outside safety barriers for longwall >96 out of previous remaining layer	c:\testuser\calc95	c:\testuser\remlw96sb
Stream buffers on available coal, longwall mining >96 inches in thickness	c:\testuser\calc98	c:\testuser\strlw96x
Longwall mineable coal, 72-96 inches in thickness, in coal resource blocks	c:\testuser\lw7296bigrxgrid.shp	
Longwall mineable coal, >96 inches in thickness, in coal resource blocks	c:\testuser\lw96bigrxgrid.shp	

Congratulations!!!!

You have finished Chapter 8.

You have mastered the use of scripts to aid the processing.

You have completed a detailed analysis of coal available for longwall mining.

Our methods are on track to produce consistent estimates.

Chapter 9.

COAL AVAILABILITY BY MINING TECHNOLOGY
ROOM & PILLAR METHODS USING CONTINUOUS MINERS

Purpose: In this Chapter, we estimate coal available for prospective mining by room and pillar methods using continuous miners, and by thickness within mining method.

Overview: We estimate the amount of coal available for room and pillar mines. Coal can be room and pillar mined when its thickness is equal to or greater than 24 inches, overburden equal to or greater than 100 feet, and bed slope is equal to or less than 12 degrees. We apply these criteria to determine the extent of prospective room and pillar mineable coal.

Room and pillar mining costs are affected by coal thickness. Generally, thicker coal has a lower cost per ton compared to thin coal. When mine costing is applied to the assessed coal, we use different configurations that vary according to coal thickness. To have the correct breakouts, our assessment in this chapter separates out the coal according to coal thickness categories.

Next we determine whether contiguous blocks have enough coal to support a minimum-size mine. To help that process, a square grid is superimposed on top of the coal targeted for room and pillar mining. The superimposed grid has an orientation of 18 degrees to the northwest similar to historic Pittsburgh underground mines. That orientation follows rock fractures that aid extraction. To assess room and pillar continuous mining on coal 24 to 42 inches thick, we allow each cell or resource block to have up to 40.6 million tons of coal when it is completely filled in with coal. However, blocks with large amounts of restricted coal and blocks that are cutoff at the edge of the Pittsburgh bed have smaller amounts of coal. When the coal is contiguous, the blocks with smaller tonnages are combined to form a consolidated coal resource block. For other thicknesses (e.g., 42-72 inches, 72-96 inches, and >96 inches) blocking sizes from table 7-1, p. 7-2 are used as the maximum resource block.

The coal in restricted areas is then removed from the coal in each of the resource blocks. We test to see if each coal resource block has enough coal to support a minimum-size mine. If not, the coal is removed from consideration.

Open a new ArcView project

Add a View Window. Do not add any themes.

Under the File Menu, set Working Directory to your project path.

Work Directory

Specify new work directory

OK

c:\testuser

Cancel

Open View Properties and enter these settings:

View Properties

Name: View1

OK

Creation Date: Saturday, September 25, 1999 05:09:36 PM

Cancel

Creator:

Map Units: meters

Distance Units: miles

Projection...

Area Of Interest...

Background Color:

Select Color...

Comments:
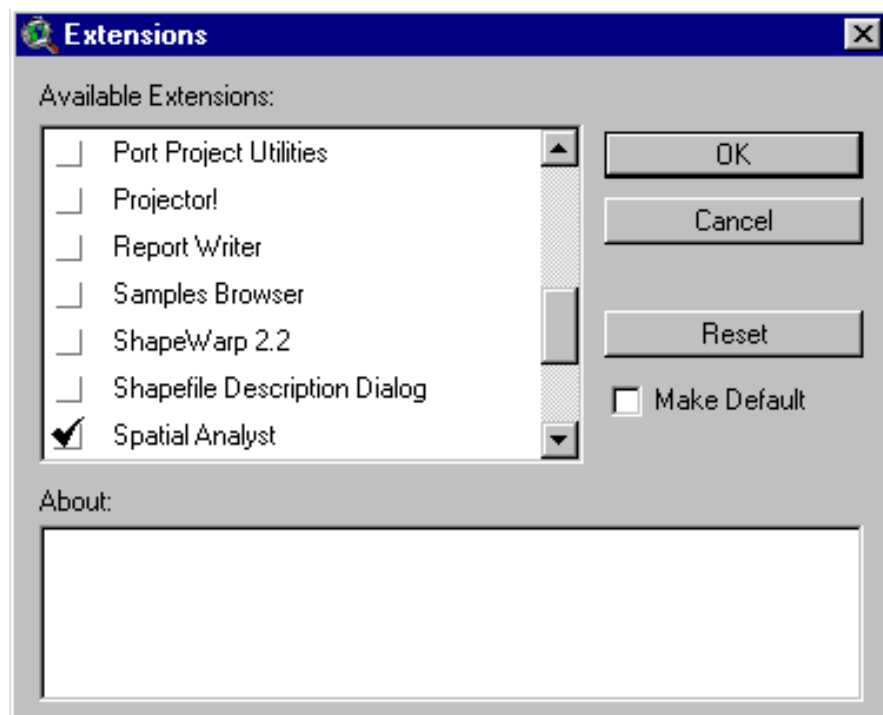
Under the File Menu

Click Extensions

Toggle on

Spatial Analyst

Apply technical restrictions for minimum thickness, overburden thickness, and slope.

In View1, add these grids:

       ob16
       rem16mcell
       rem16bufp12
       remlw96sb
       bedslope
       thk16
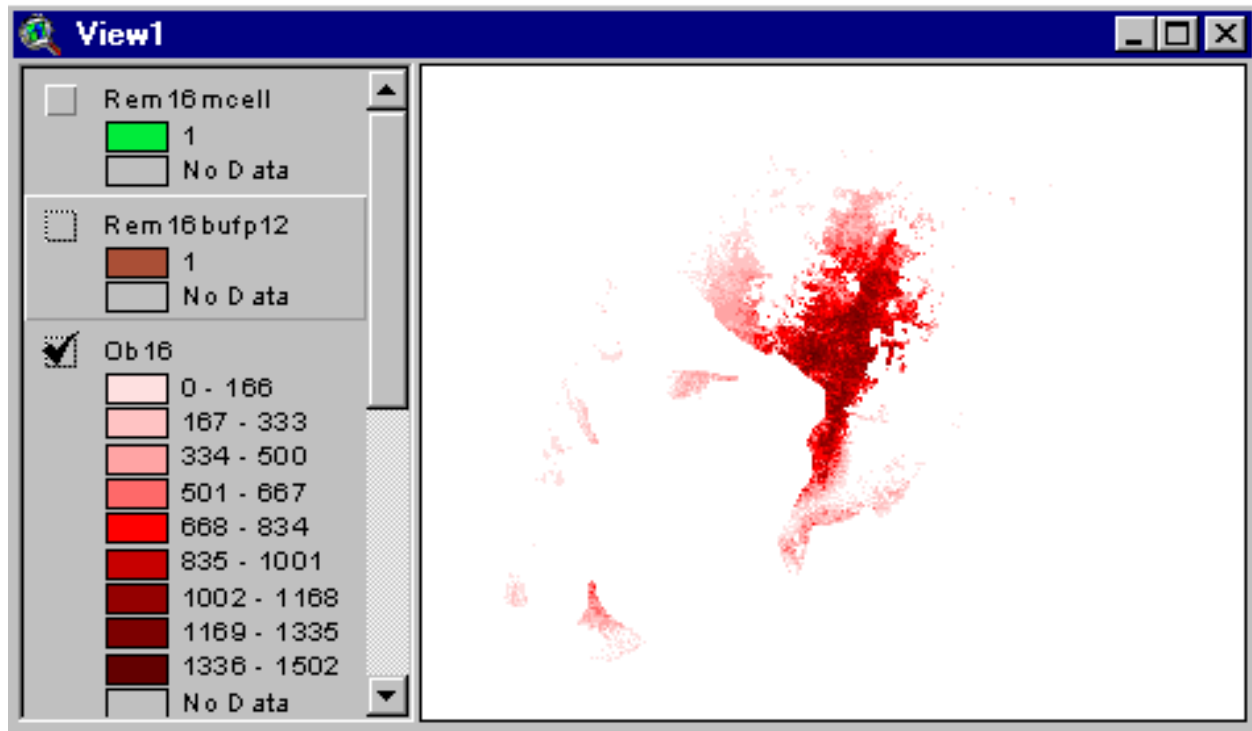
Recall, Rem16bufp12 is remaining coal reduced by a 50 foot safety buffer and by the area where coal has a thickness less than 12 inches.

In Analysis Properties, enter these settings:

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent   Same As Rem16bufp12

Left -155677.503175   Top 1970643.69375

Bottom 1693107.69375   Right 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size   Current Value

Cell Size   16   m

Number of Rows   17346

Number of Columns 21718

Analysis Mask   Remlw96sb

OK   Cancel

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
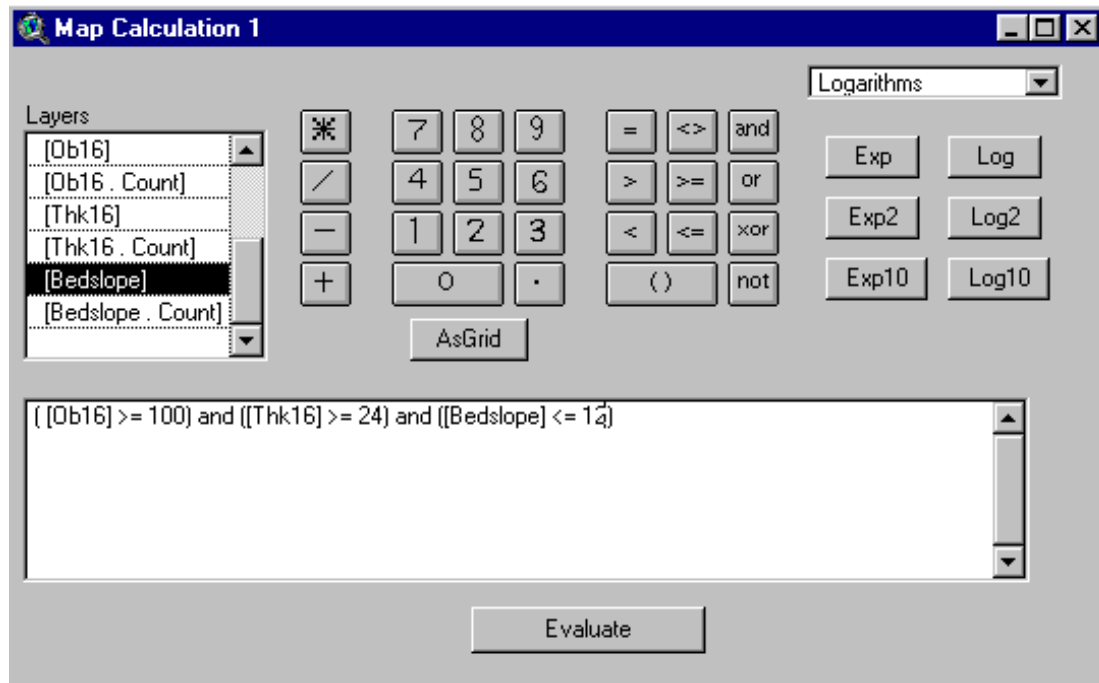
In Theme Properties, rename Map Calculation 1 as: cminer01.

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Change the 0 values to null to create a room and pillar analysis mask:
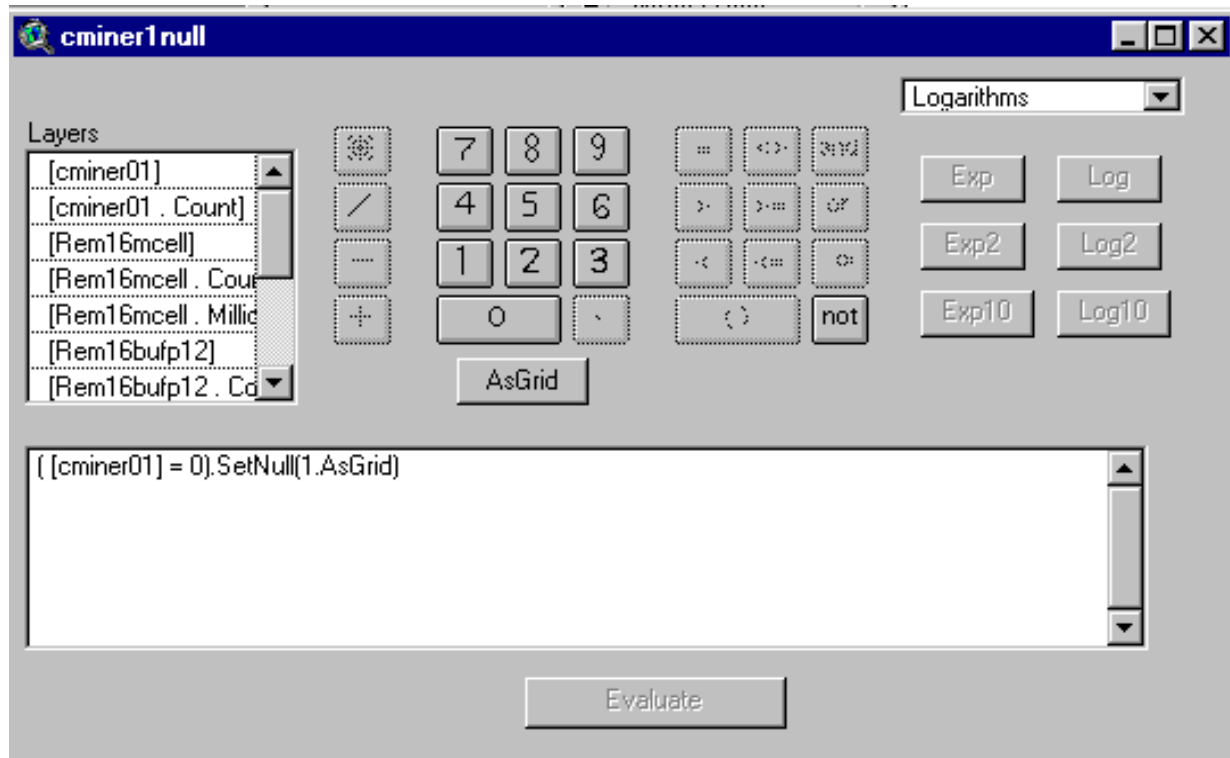
In Theme Properties, rename Map Calculation 1 as: cminer1null.

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Cminer1null is the area of the Pittsburgh coal bed that meets mineability criteria for room and pillar methods using continuous miners:
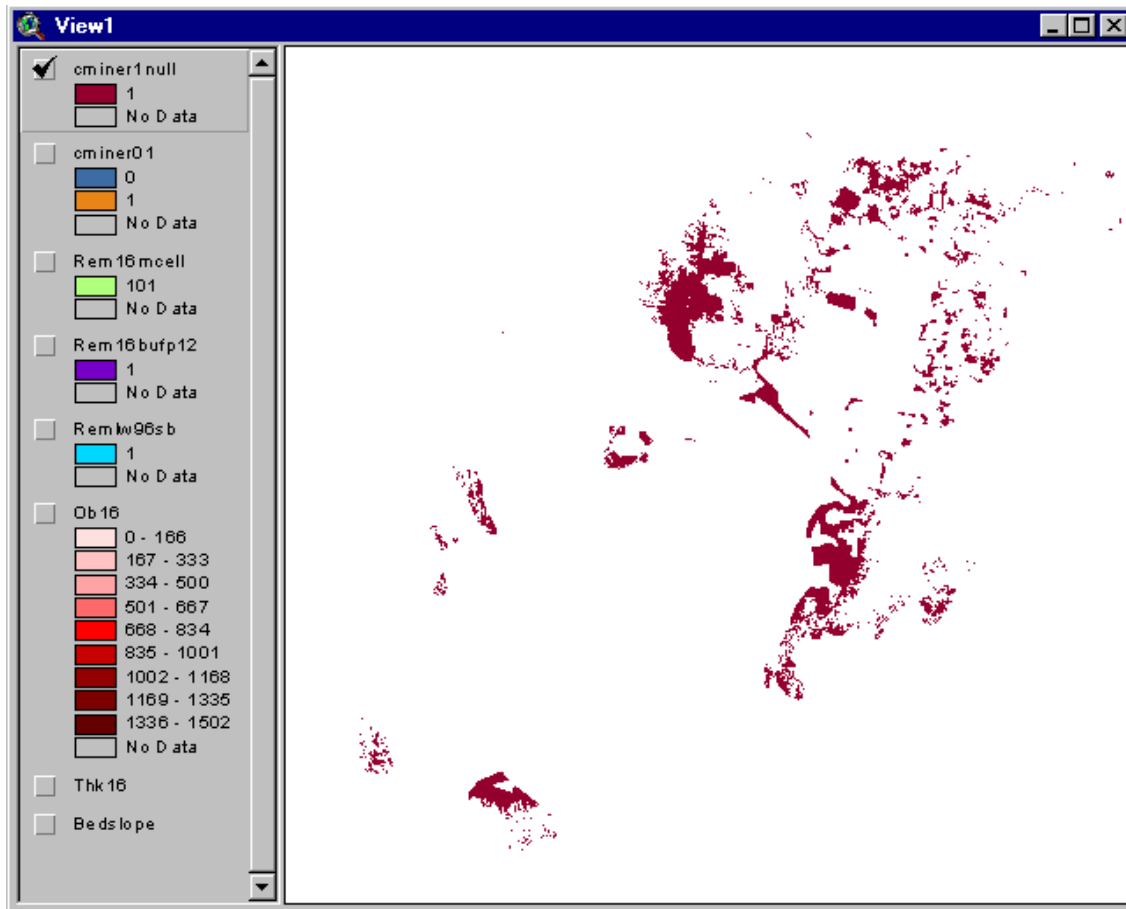
Before assessing coal for minimum economic size, we need to break out the prospective room and pillar mineable coal into thickness categories.

Why?: Because we want to know within thickness categories, whether there is enough coal for viable mining operations.

We consider the following breakouts which mimic the breakouts in COALVAL:

Mining Method	Coal Thickness
Room and Pillar/Continuous Miners	24-42 inches
Room and Pillar/Continuous Miners	42-72 inches
Room and Pillar/Continuous Miners	72-96 inches
Room and Pillar/Continuous Miners	>96 inches

Calculating Tons of Coal Mineable by Room and Pillar Methods, 24 to 42 Inches in Thickness

We proceed now to break cminer01 into the 24-42 inch thickness category.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
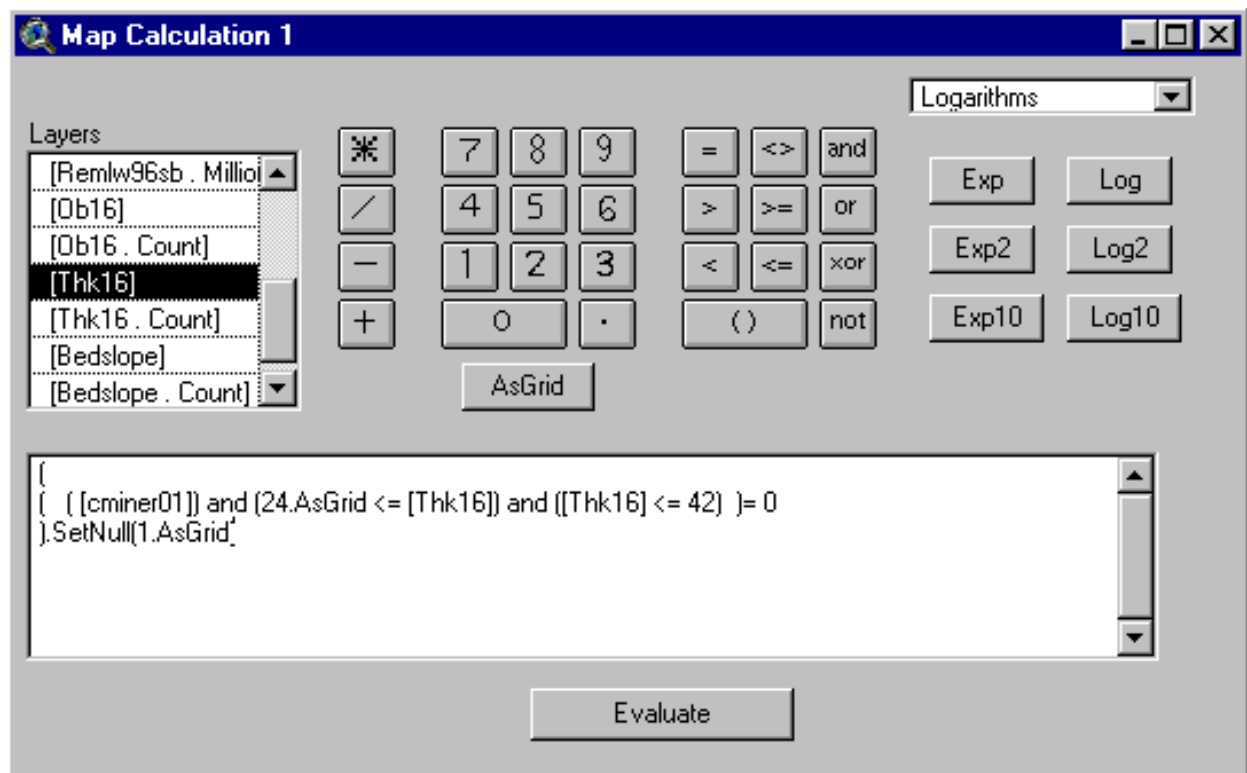
In Theme Properties, rename Map Calculation 1 as: cm2442null

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.
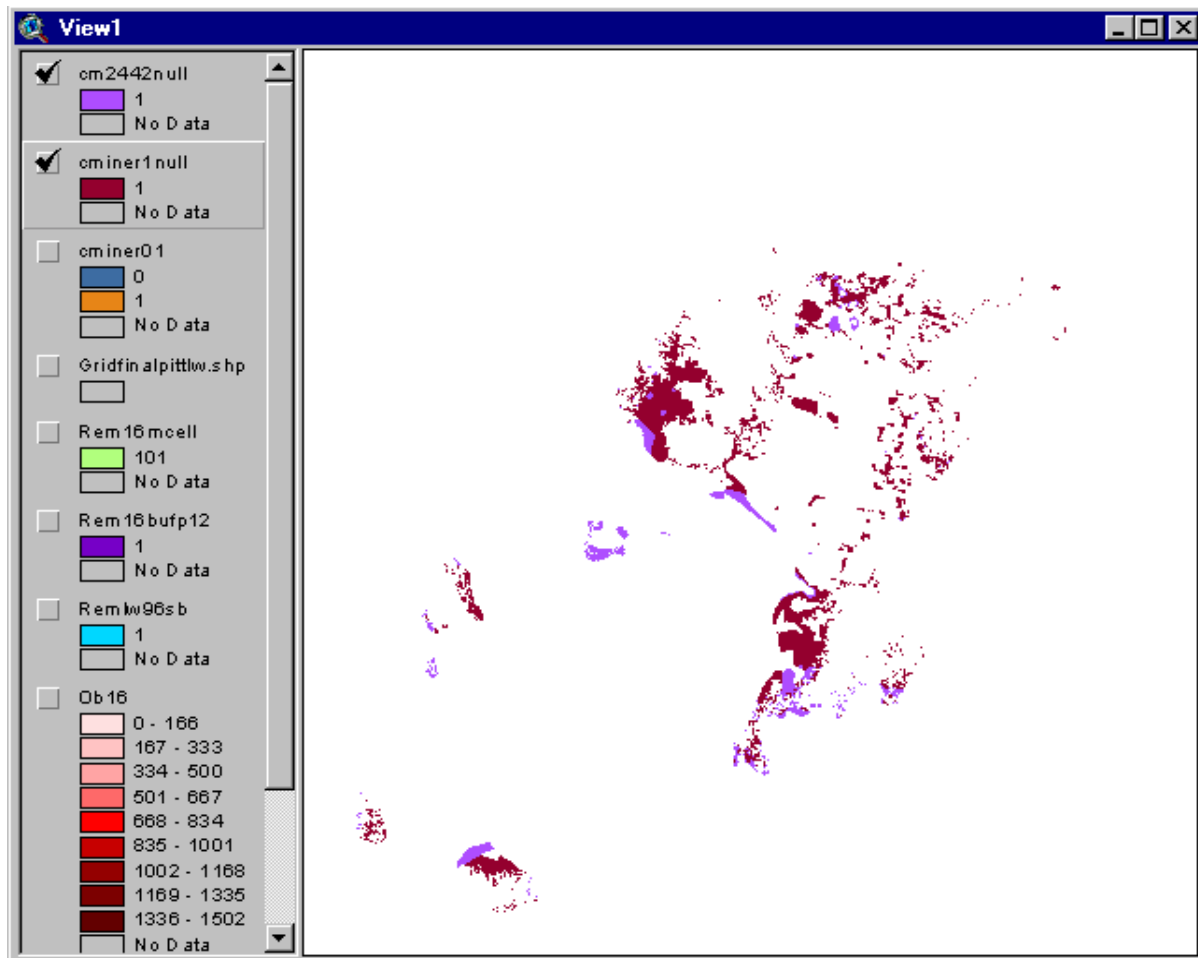
IMPORTANT INSTRUCTION:

Save your ArcView project (e.g., as c:\testuser\chapter9.apr).

Superimpose Grid to Delineate Coal Resource Blocks, Coal 24 to 42 Inches in Thickness

We now digress from assessment work to make a grid. We will use the grid to break the coal into blocks of the size listed in table 7-1, p. 7-2. After the grid is built, <u>we will reopen the chapter9 project.</u>

Open the warp project (which was built in chapter 8):

>> **c:\testuser\warp.apr**

We build a grid with dimensions that would contain tons of coal at levels near the maximum resource block size.

The resource blocks are large enough to contain coal for several large mines. We use the large resource blocks because data are not sufficiently detailed to support mine-scale analysis, as discussed previously on p. 7-2.

Open minegrid.xls in Excel.

Currently, we are working on **cm2442** (continuous miner on coal 24 to 42 inches thick).

<u>For tonnage (cell A16) we enter the maximum-size resource block (column 7) from table 7-1, p. 7-2:</u>

In cell A16:

>> Type: 40600000

>> Press Enter Key

In cell A19:

>> Type: cm2442
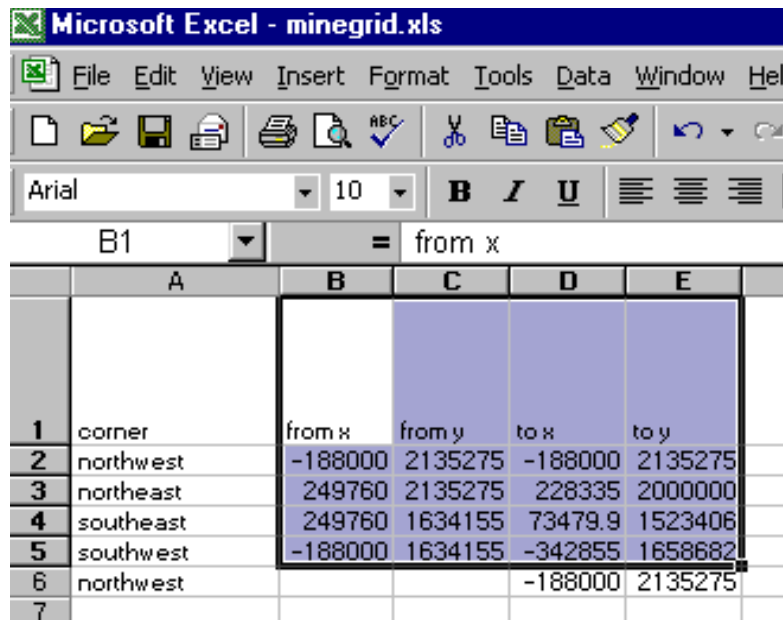
>> Press Enter Key

File Edit View Insert Format Tools Data Window Help

Arial   10   **B** *I* U

A20   =   Parameters for Pittsburgh are below, Change for other beds

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I
1	corner	from x	from y	to x	to y		technolog	aver bed thickness (feet)	length of the resource block in meters
2	northwest	-188000	2135275	-188000	2135275		lw4272	4.75	0
3	northeast	249760	2135275	228335	2000000		lw7296	7	0
4	southeast	249760	1634155	73479.9	1523406		lw96	8.6	0
5	southwest	-188000	1634155	-342855	1658682		cm2442	2.75	5759.922823
6	northwest			-188000	2135275		cm4272	4.75	0
7							cm7296	7	0
8							cm96	8.6	0
9	Angle of rotation								
10	18								5759.922823
11	horizontal span								
12	437760								
13	vertical span								
14	501120								
15	Enter tonnage in A16, Grid will be based upon this tonnage								
16	40600000								
17	Enter technology in cell A19 (select from lw4272, lw7296, lw96, cm2442, cm4272, cm7296, or cm96)								
18	**Note: type technology just as listed above with characters lovercase**								
19	cm2442								
20	Parameters for Pittsburgh are below, Change for other beds								
21	Density based upon 1800 tons/acre-ft in units of tons per square meter-foot, in cell A22								
22	0.445								
23	For rectangular grid, set values are as follows								
24	left long	-188000							
25	right long	250000							
26	bottom lat	1634000							
27	top rotated lat	2000000							
28									

After you calculate corner points for the rotated grid, copy them to a new workbook:

Open a new workbook in Excel.

Highlight the field names and the values for the 4 corner points:

Under the Edit Menu click

Copy

Open the new workbook.

Under the Edit Menu click

Paste Special

In the Paste Special dialogue window click:

Values
OK

Click on the A1 cell.

Save the spreadsheet as

        C:\testuser\blockgridcm2442.dbf   (Dbase IV format)

Close the new workbook.

Respond "yes" or "OK" or "save" to all Excel queries.

If necessary, make your Excel workbook (minegrid.xls) active

At the bottom of the worksheet, notice that there are 2 worksheets listed:

calculate   (the worksheet that is open)
gridmaker

Click gridmaker to open it:

The gridmaker worksheet captures the values you will need later to run the grdmakerrev script in ArcView.

Click on the A1 cell

Under the file menu, click "Print"

You will use these printed values later when you run the grdmakerrev script.

Open ArcView

In the Project Manager Window click

the Tables Icon

Click "Add"

Scroll to c:\testuser\blockgridcm2442.dbf.

Click "OK"

In View1, under the View Menu

Click "Add Event Theme" and make these entries:

Click "OK"

Make the new theme active.

Toggle on its display.

Click on "Connect the Dots" [Button with "Star"]

Zoom to extent of active theme:

Click rotated rectangle to get its "handles"

Click the "G" Button.

Save the new shapefile as

       c:\testuser\toblkgridcm2442.shp

Make blockgridcm2442.dbf, active
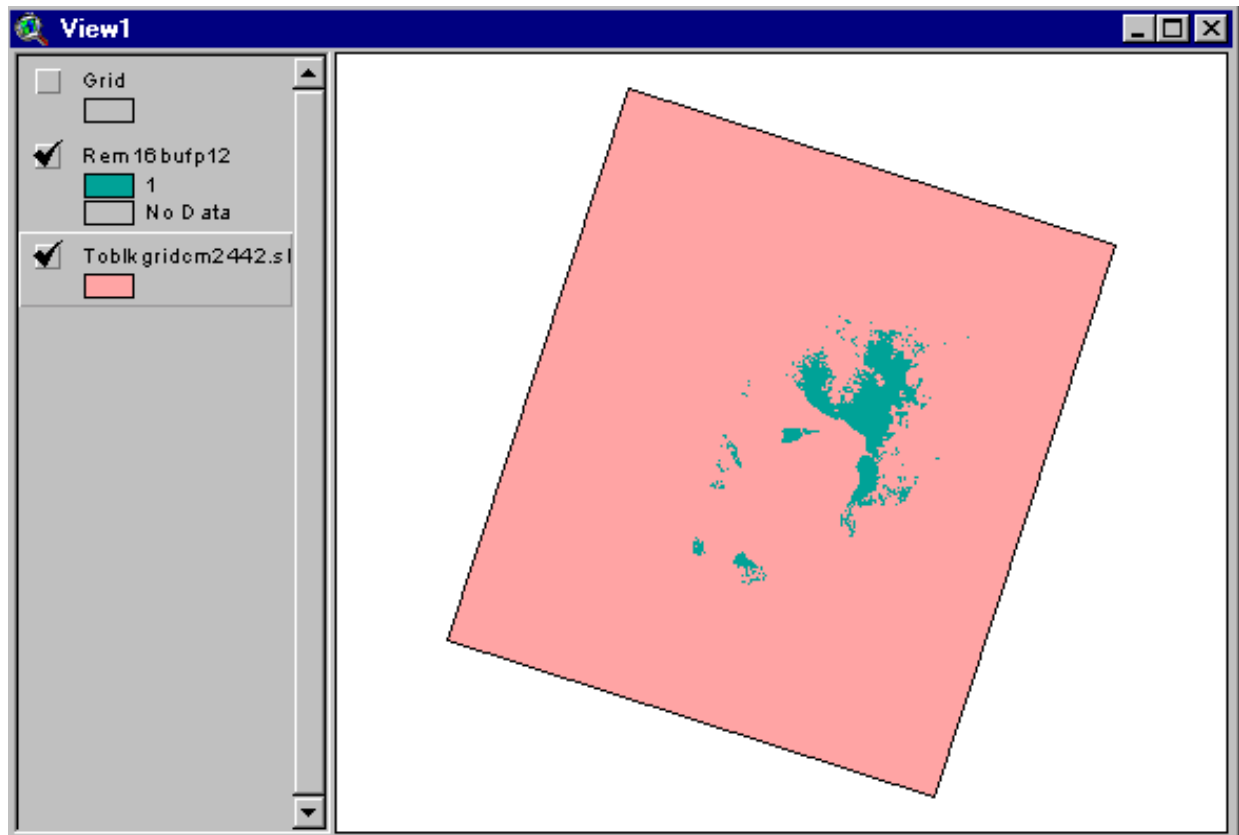
Under the Edit menu click

      Delete Themes

      Click "Yes"

Click on the rotated graphic to get its handles.

Press Delete

Click the Gridmaker Button (it looks like a grid on the right of the button bar)

You are prompted for 6 input parameters

Previously, you printed these values when you ran minegrid.xls.

Use the printed list and enter the parameters as you are prompted

If the default value is not correct in the Message box, then type the correct value

        For <u>left longitude</u>   **-188000**   **(No commas)**

        For <u>bottom latitude</u>   **1634155**

        For <u>horizontal span</u>   **437760**

        For <u>vertical span</u>   **501120**

        For <u>rows</u>   **87**

        For <u>columns</u>   **76**

(**Obviously, the #'s you enter would be the appropriate values for the area where you are building a grid. The correct #'s for the Pittsburgh, continuous mining on 24 to 42 inch coal, are those above.)**

Save the grid as

        c:\testuser\blkxxgridcm2442.shp

When you are prompted for Labels, click

        No

We are now ready to rotate blkxxgridcm2442.shp

We will run ShapeWarp to rotate blkxxgridcm2442.shp:

Our "from grid" is:	**blkxxgridcm2442.shp**
Our "to grid" is:	**toblkgridcm2442.shp**
Our table of input data is:	**blockgridcm2442.dbf**
Our table of GCP's is:	**coordsblkgcm2442.dbf** (which we will create)

At this point you are advised to save your project.

However, save it under a new unique name such as:

> **C:\testuser\warpbgcm2442**

By saving the project, you can correct any errors that may become evident later, starting over from this point.

Delete all of the themes from ArcView.

Open the Project Manager Window.

Under the ShapeWarp Menu:

Click "Import Table"

Pick c:\testuser\blockgridcm2442.dbf as the import table

Name c:\testuser\coordsblkgcm2442.dbf as the GCP table

In the Pick Field Dialogue window match the field in the list to the query:

The new GCP table will display on your monitor:

Minimize the GCP table

Make the Project Manger Window active.

Click on the ShapeWarp "Diamond" icon.

In response to "Do you want to set the projection for the TO view?

Click "No"

Pick the theme that you want to warp (i.e., rotate):

Pick the theme that has the rotated rectangle:

In response to the query about selecting a table

  Click "Yes"

Select the coordinate table as

c:\testuser\coordsblkgcm2442.dbf

A window will open showing the TO and FROM rectangles. The 4 corner points will be used to guide the rotation:

Click the RMS icon on the ShapeWarp toolbar (looks like a calculator).

Select "First Order"

Click "OK"

The RMS error should be very small.

On the ShapeWarp toolbar

> Click "Go"

Save the rotated grid as

> c:\testuser\gridfinalblkgcm2442.shp

Respond "No to query about report.

On the ShapeWarp toolbar

> Click "Quit"

Open project

> **c:\testuser\chapter9.apr**

Add theme:

> gridfinalblkgcm2442.shp

In the Legend Editor:

> Make the polygon fill for gridfinalblkgcm2442.shp transparent

> Set size = 0.1 for the outline of gridfinalblkgcm2442.shp

Maximize the View window.

Toggle on the display for gridfinalblkgcm2442.shp.
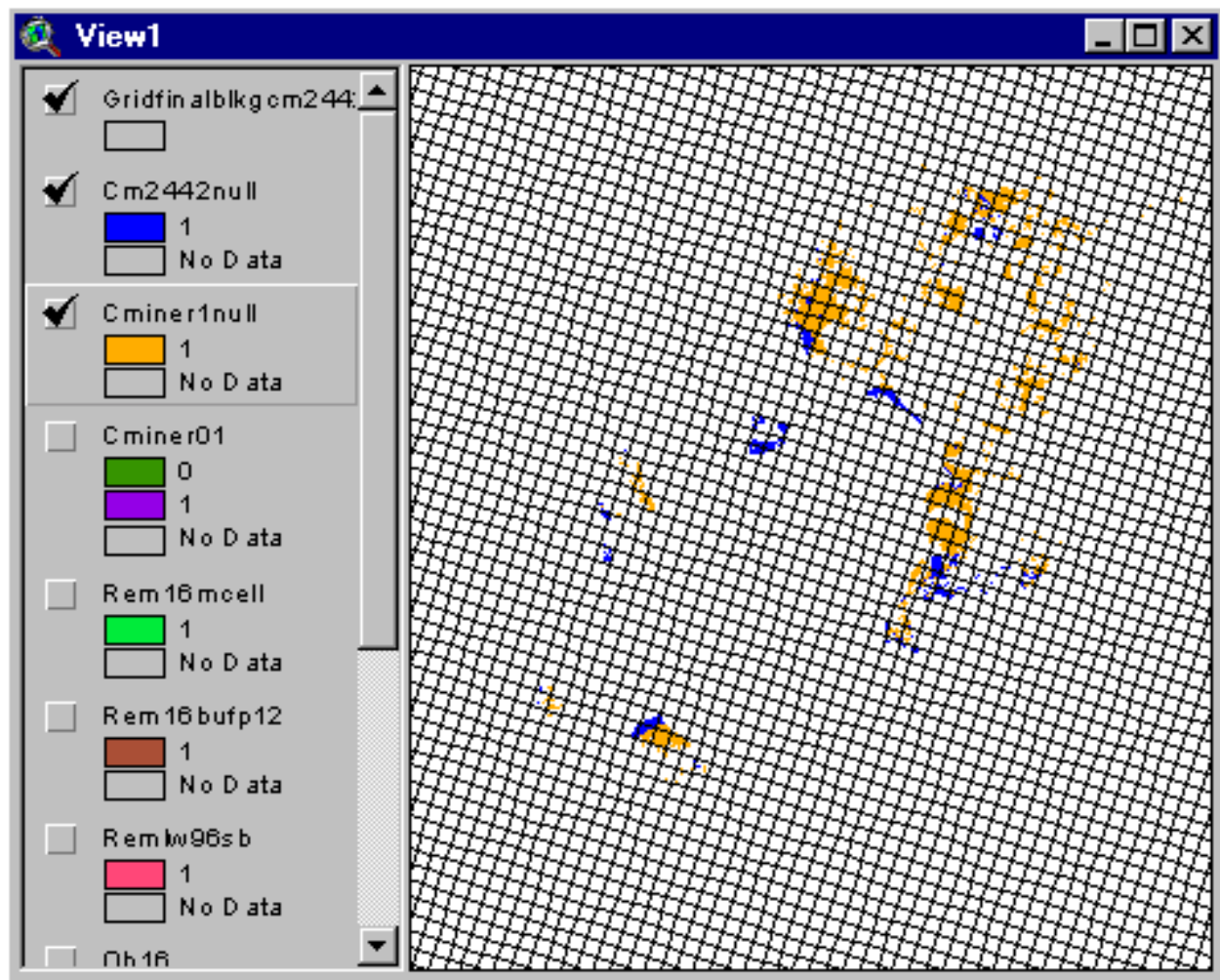
Add these grid themes:

> tonsbycell
> union7restr

Next, we identify all of the blocks (with no connection to other coal) in the cm2442 layer that have fewer than 13.544 million tons of coal.

For coal at thickness in the 24 to 42 inch range, the minimum-size continuous miner mine is 13.544 million tons of coal resource (table 7-1, p. 7-2).

We eliminate blocks smaller than the minimum resource block from the cm2442 layer.

Historic underground mining occurred in areas with streams, but not in areas with large rivers and lakes. Thus, we apply these restrictions:

> water bodies (lakes and large rivers)
> interstate highways
> parks
> urban areas
> oil and gas wells
> pipelines
> populated places

Streams are not applied. In Chapter 10, we calculate coal in areas restricted by social and environmental limits, accounting for the different treatments between surface and underground mining methods. The estimates of restricted coal provided in Chapter 10 are less than the estimated in Chapter 5 where we assumed that mining never occurred in stream buffers.

When mining occurs near streams, industry practice is to place pillars below streams. The "rooms" where the coal is removed (by room and pillar methods) are areas where roof conditions are relatively stable and areas where risk of flooding is relatively low. To minimize risk, the "rooms" in room and pillar mining usually are not placed below streams. The room and pillar method has flexibility to tailor mining operations so that barriers or pillars are left in the areas at high risk for collapse and flooding. The normal recovery rates for room and pillar operations reflect industry practice.

Remove restricted areas from the area of cm2442.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
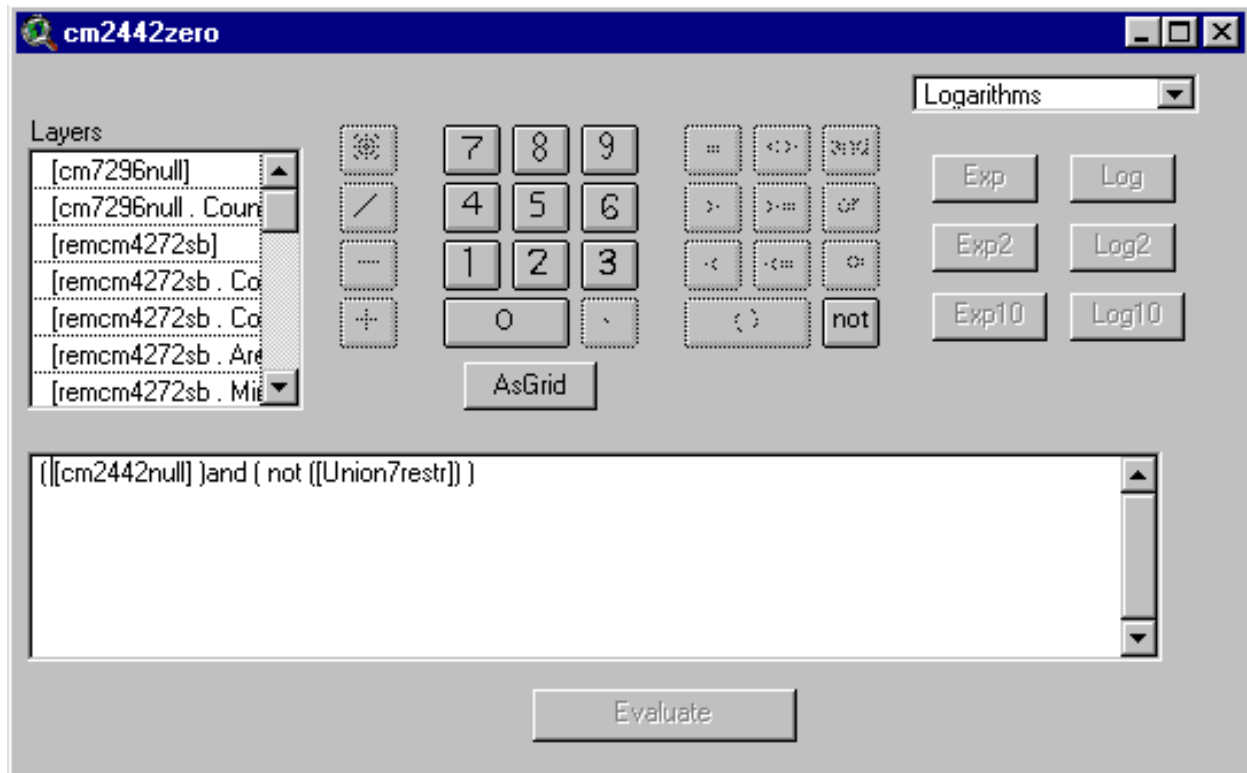
In Theme Properties, rename the new grid as:

    cm2442zero

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Group Contiguous Cells into Blocks or Regions with a Unique Index Number

We now group contiguous cells into regions with a unique index number.

The new layer will contain coal that is unrestricted and coal that is restricted.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
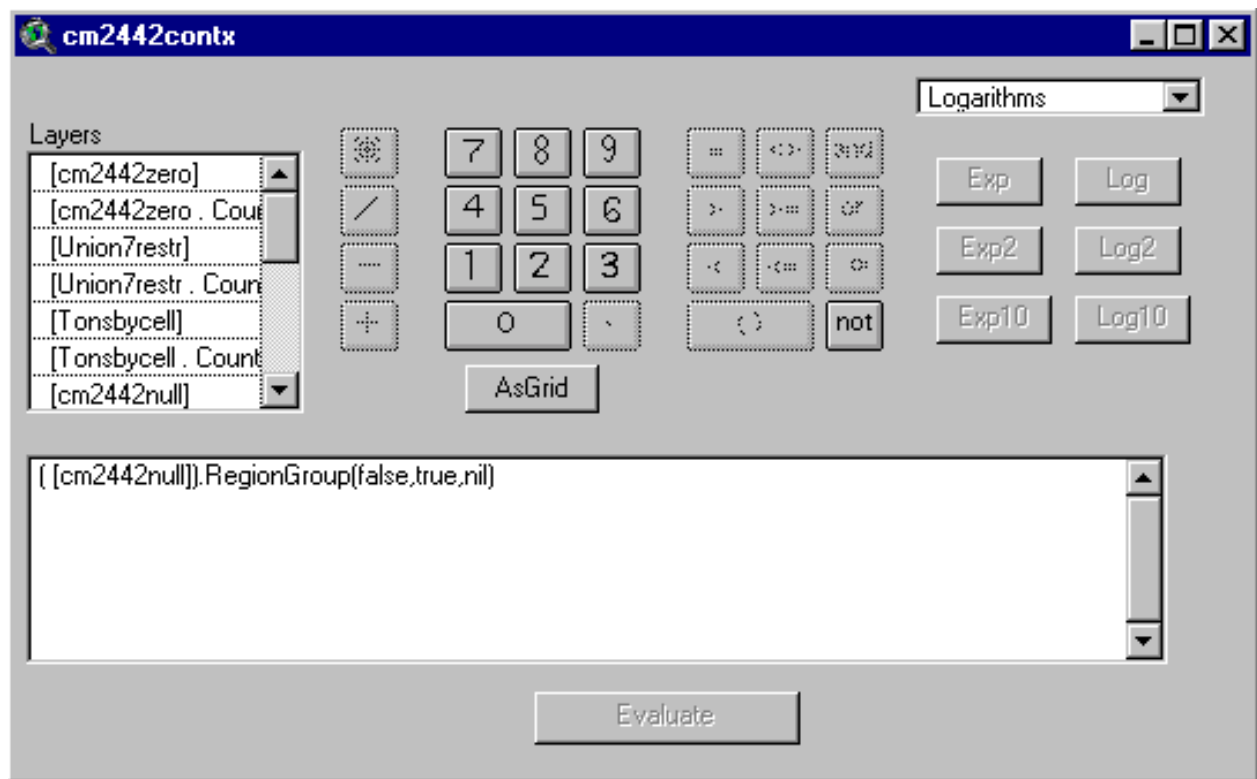
Notice that the first argument in RegionGroup is "false."

A false builds a region from orthogonal neighbors **and** diagonal neighbors.

For continuous mining, we group cells that are connected diagonally (as well as orthogonally) because continuous mining has the flexibility to be applied to irregularly-shaped coal blocks.

We excluded diagonal cells for longwall mining because longwall panels have to follow a rectangular pattern.

In Theme Properties, rename the new grid as:

cm2442contx

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Next, we estimate the tons of coal in restricted areas in each of the regions.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
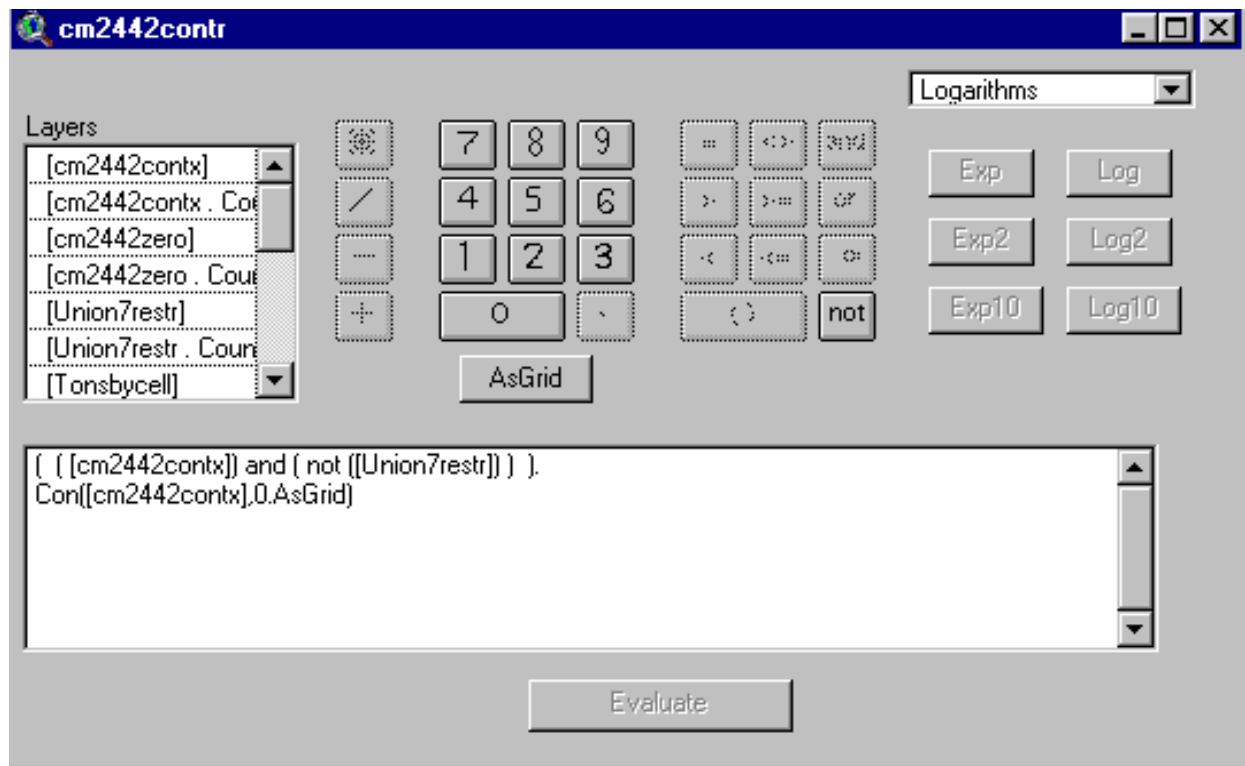
In Theme Properties, rename the new grid as:

cm2442contr

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Identify Coal Resource Blocks with Tonnage at or above Minimum Size for Viable Mining Operation

Next, we identify all the contiguous block of coal that have total tonnage of at least 13.544 million tons (i.e., the minimum-size reserve block for a room and pillar mine).

Our procedure is to
      1. Use the Summarize Zones request under the Analysis Menu to estimate the amount of coal in each block.

      2. Eliminate all blocks where tons are less than 13.544 million tons
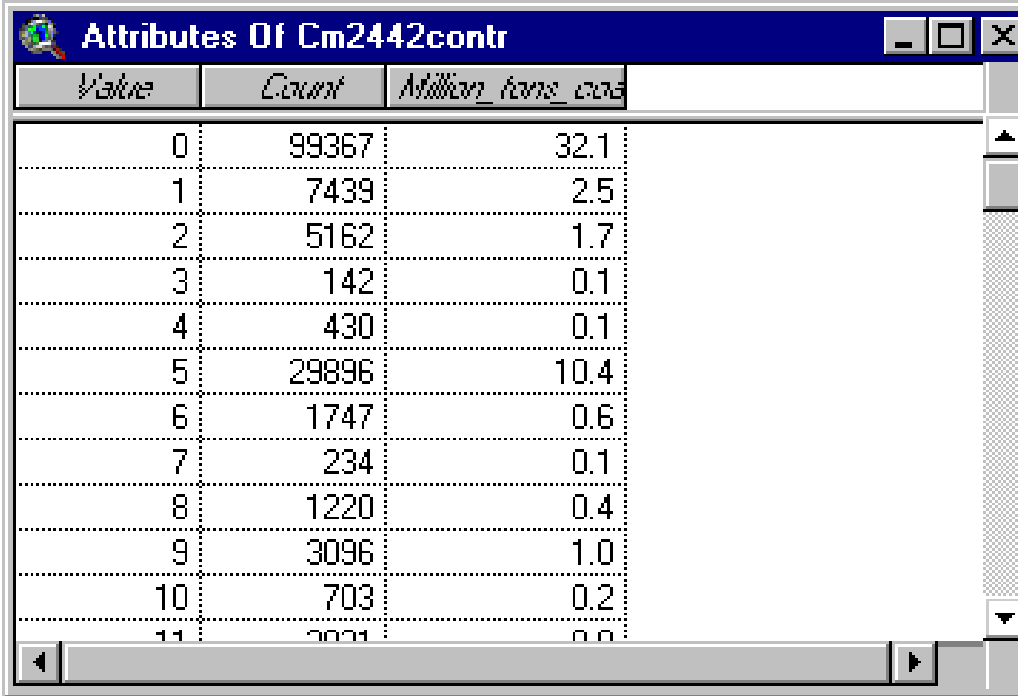
Step 1:
      Make cm2442contr active.

Under the Analysis Menu:

      Click "Summarize Zones"

      Use tonsbycell as the summarizing theme

      Use Method A (pp. 6-66 and 6-84) to add million tons of coal to the table for cm2442contr:

Value	Count	Million_tons_coal
0	99367	32.1
1	7439	2.5
2	5162	1.7
3	142	0.1
4	430	0.1
5	29896	10.4
6	1747	0.6
7	234	0.1
8	1220	0.4
9	3096	1.0
10	703	0.2
11	2221	0.0

Step 2:

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
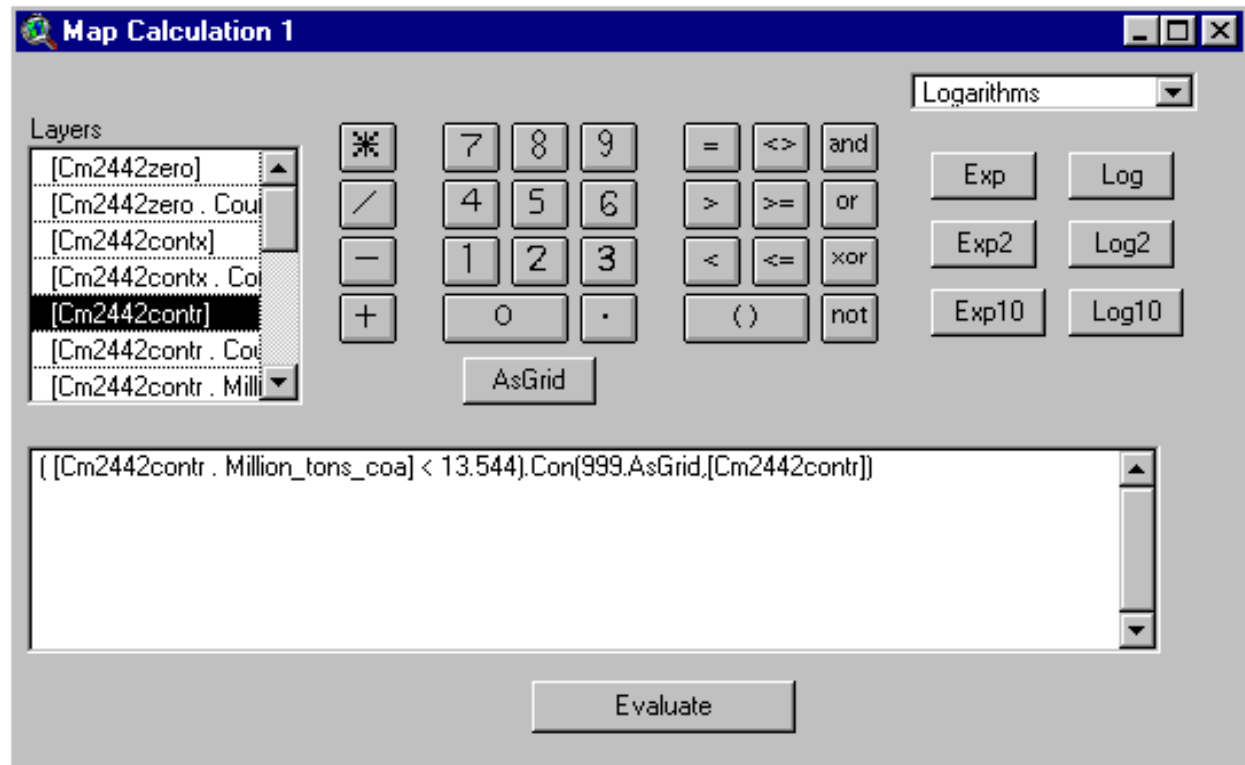
In theme Properties, rename the new grid as: cm2442bigr.

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

[**2nd Iteration Note: The 1st argument for the conditional has to be out of the range of values in the grid being created. Sometimes, you will need to use a higher argument such as 9999.AsGrid. When you come here on the 2nd iteration, cm4272, use 9999.AsGrid as the argument. Jump to p. 9-108 to see the full expression. Then return here and continue.]**

[**4th Iteration Note: Only a relatively small amount of coal occurs in blocks >96 inches. Coal in restricted areas within these blocks is less than the cutoff of 29.442 million tons. To keep the restricted areas as a separate category use the request shown on p. 9-119 in place of the request demonstrated above. Jump to p. 9-119 and follow the directions there.]**

In the view below, the lighter colored areas are the small blocks of contiguous coal that are eliminated by imposing a tonnage cutoff of 13.544 million tons

The areas in the intermediate shade are the locations of restricted coal.

The dark area contains coal potentially available for room and pillar mining.
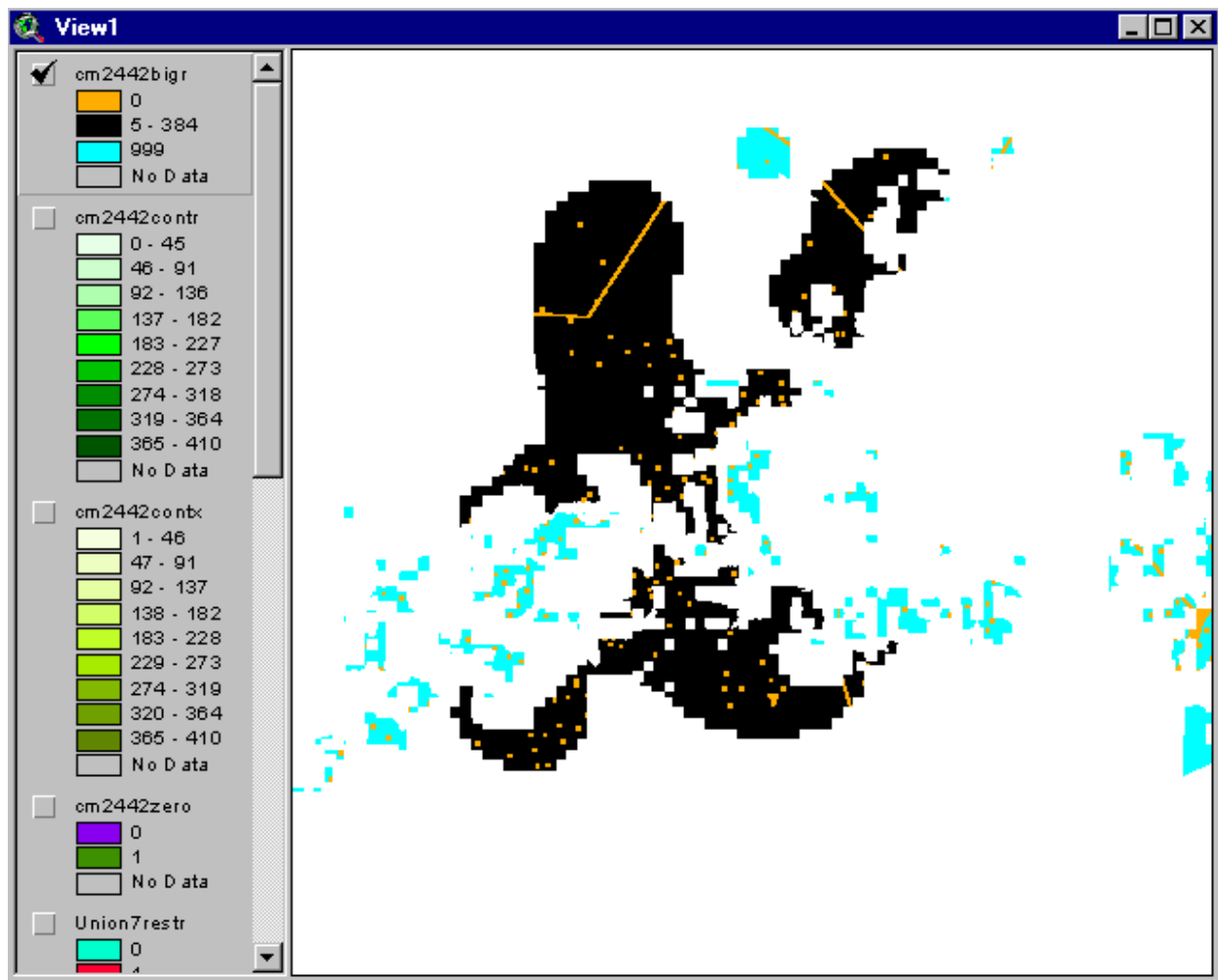
In cm2442bigr turn cells with a value of 999 to null.

The 999 cells are blocks of coal < 13.544 million tons.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
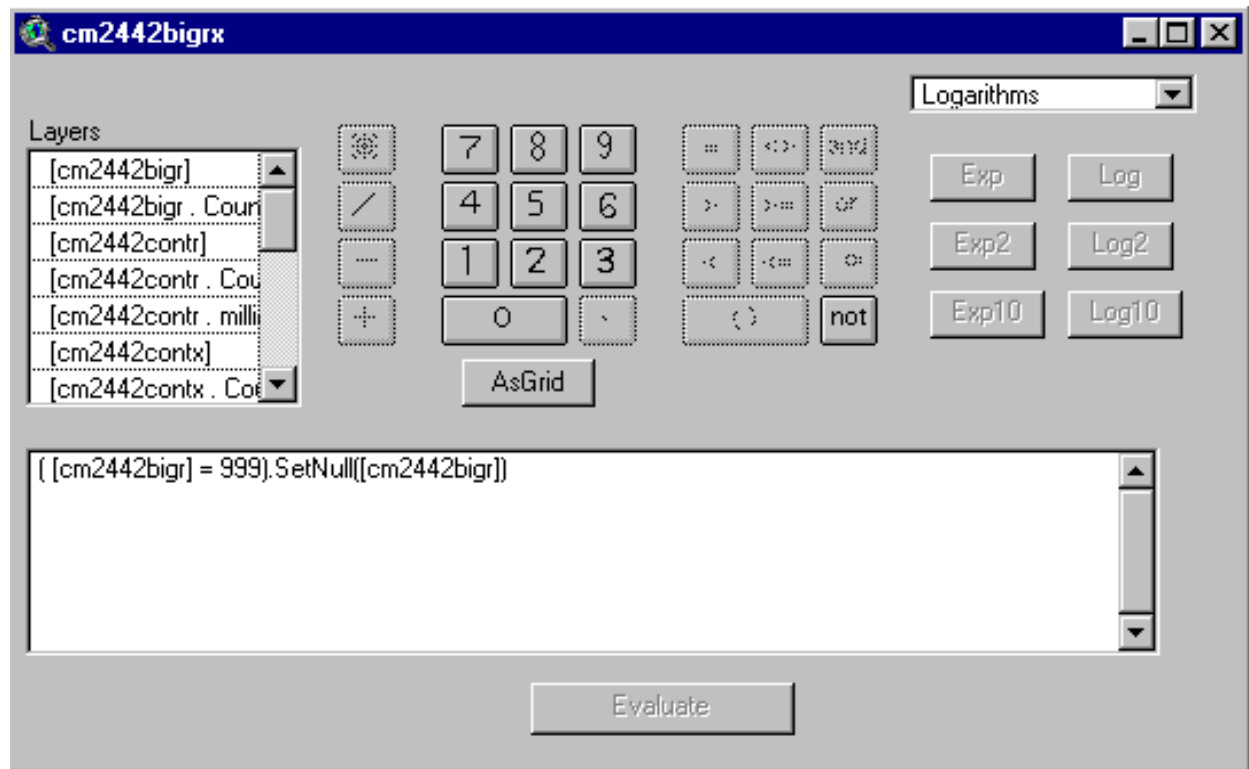
In Theme Properties, rename the new grid as:

   cm2442bigrx

Add its **source** to the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Convert Grid Coverage of Consolidated Coal Resource Blocks to a Polygon-Shapefile Coverage

Convert cm2442bigrx to a shapefile.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
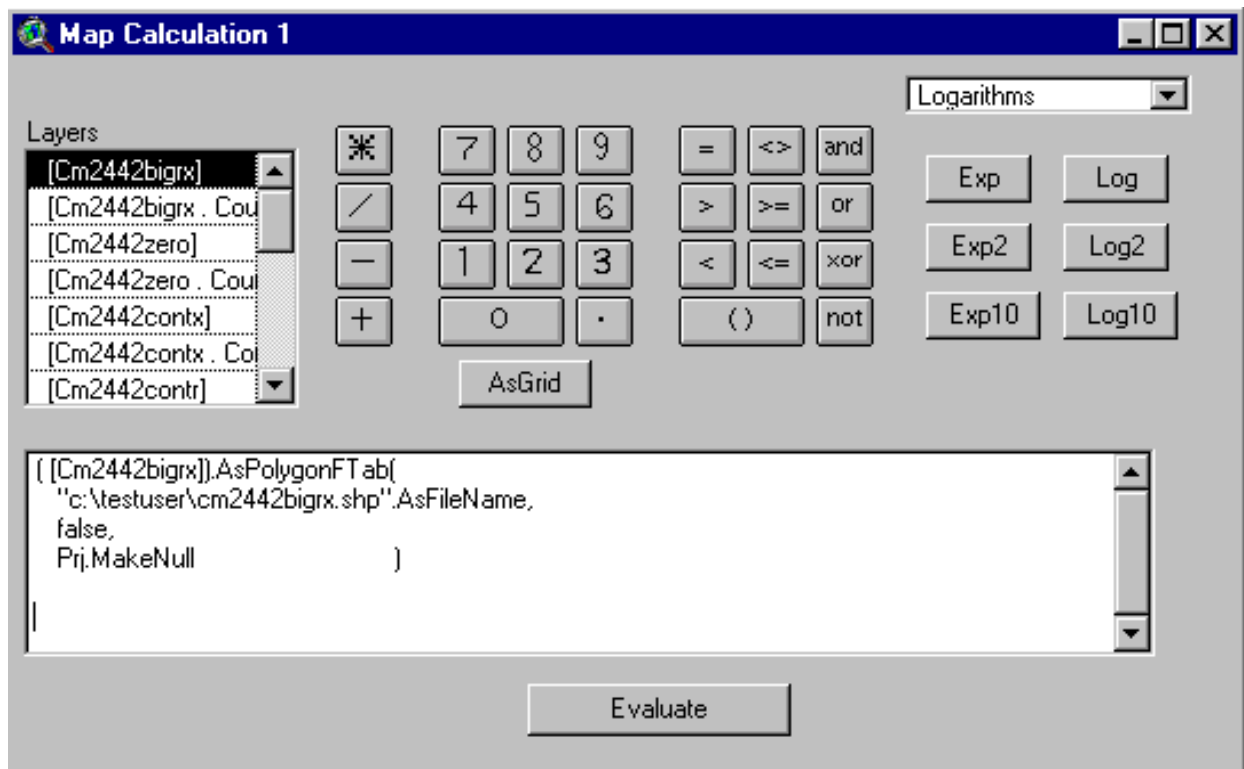
Ignore syntax error message.

Add cm2442bigrx.shp to View1:
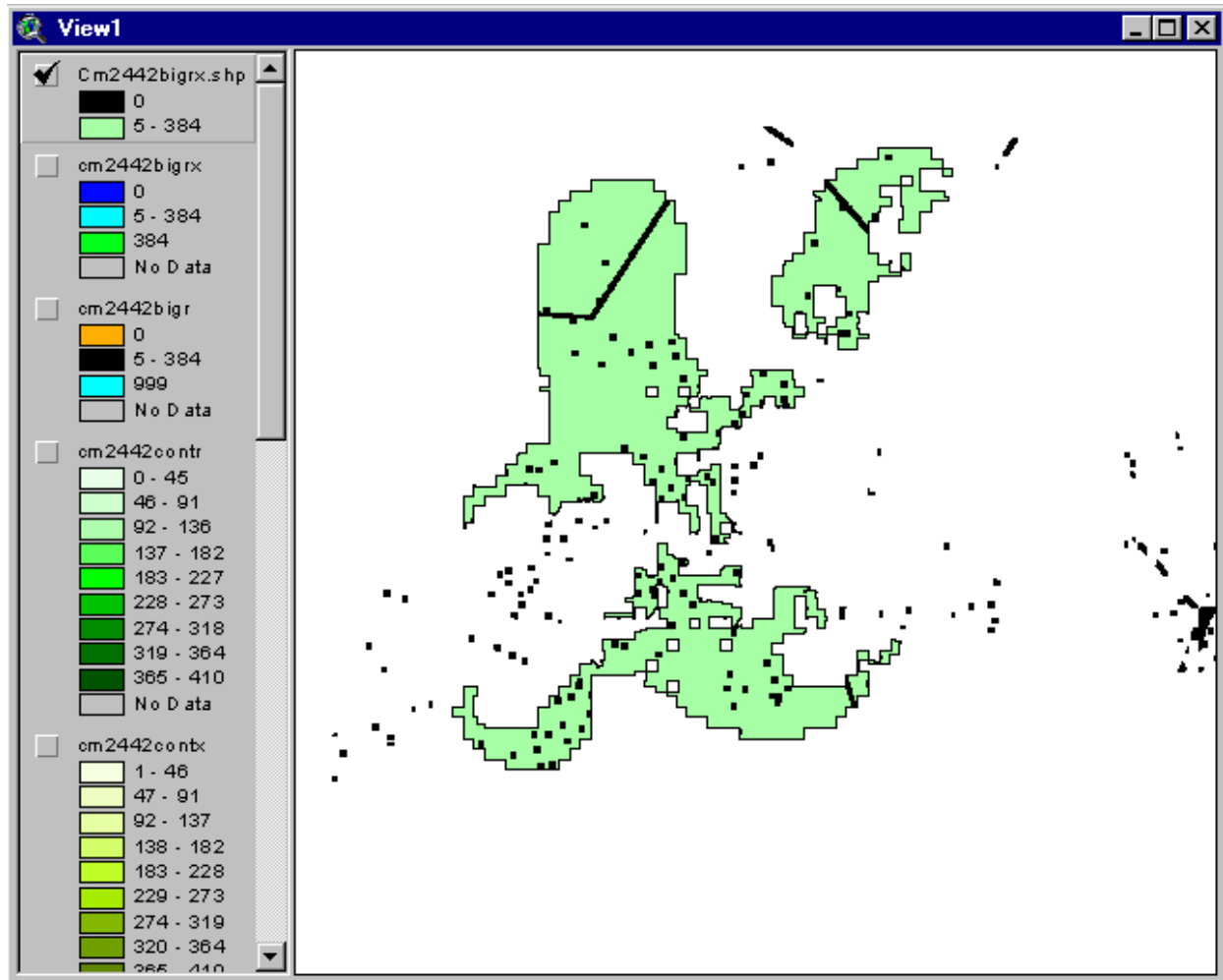
Cells with value 0 represent areas with restrictions.

Notice that there are fragments of restricted areas outside the area with coal for room and pillar mining.

The deleted coal blocks with less than 13.544 million tons of coal had areas with restrictions.

The coal area was deleted but the restriction area was not.

Use Theme Editing to Delete Restriction Fragments

We proceed now to delete the restriction fragments:
    1. Zoom to area with fragments

    2. Make cm2442bigrx.shp active

3. Under the Theme Menu:

Click "Start Editing"

Notice that dashed line is put around the display toggle (in the table of contents) for the cm2442bigrx.shp theme

The dashed line indicates that the theme is in edit mode.

Use the select tool to draw out a box around some of the fragments

Handles will be added to the selected fragments

Press the delete key to eliminate these features from the theme

Follow the edit procedure to delete the restriction fragments.

Use zoom and pan to position the theme in the view window.

Whenever possible use the pull out rectangle to select features.

Some of the features are small.

The pullout rectangle will be an efficient way to select the tiny features.
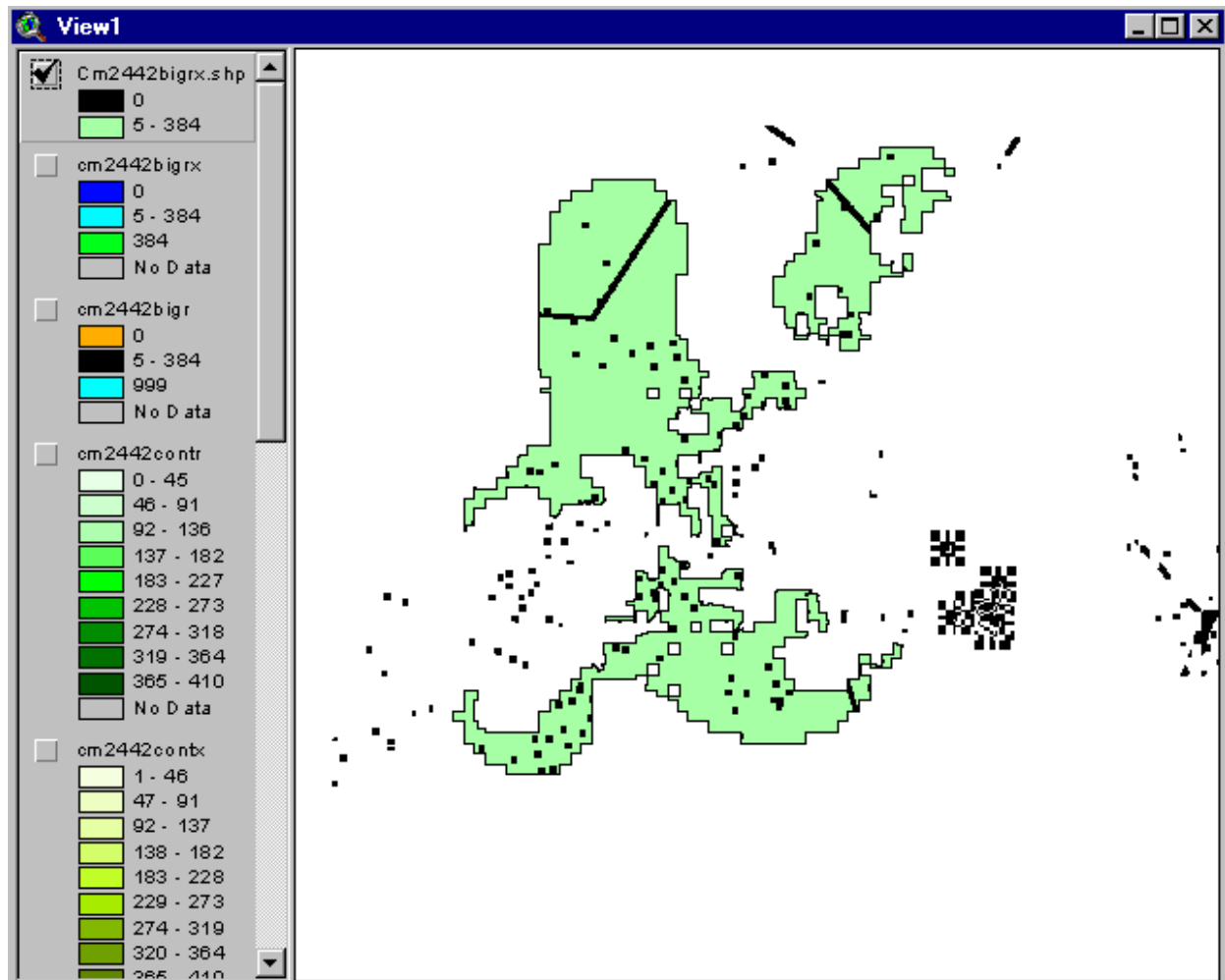
The editing process goes quickly; it will take about 15 to 30 minutes maximum.

Note: On the 4th Iteration, Cm96, you will see that cm96bigrx.shp has only one area with coal above the minimum-size resource block. Therefore, it is not necessary to superimpose the resource block. Therefore, if you are processing cm96 (in case of Pittsburgh but maybe not other beds) at this point:

Convert cm96bigrx.shp to a grid.

Name the layer: c:\testuser\cm96final

When queried to pick field for cell values, select "gridcode"

Jump ahead to p. 9-56.

Break the Coal Blocks Into Units That Are Approximately 40.6 Million Tons or Less

Next, we break the coal blocks into units that are approximately 40.6 million tons or less.

We superimpose the grid (constructed earlier) on cm2442bigrx.

We **intersect** gridfinalblkgcm2442.shp using cm2442bigrx.shp as the overlay theme.

Under the view menu:
Click Geoprocessing Wizard

Select "**Intersect**"

Click "next"

As the #1 theme, select gridfinalblkgcm2442.shp

As the #2 theme, select cm2442bigrx.shp

Set the output file to:
c:\testuser\cm2442bigrxgrid.shp

Click "Finish"
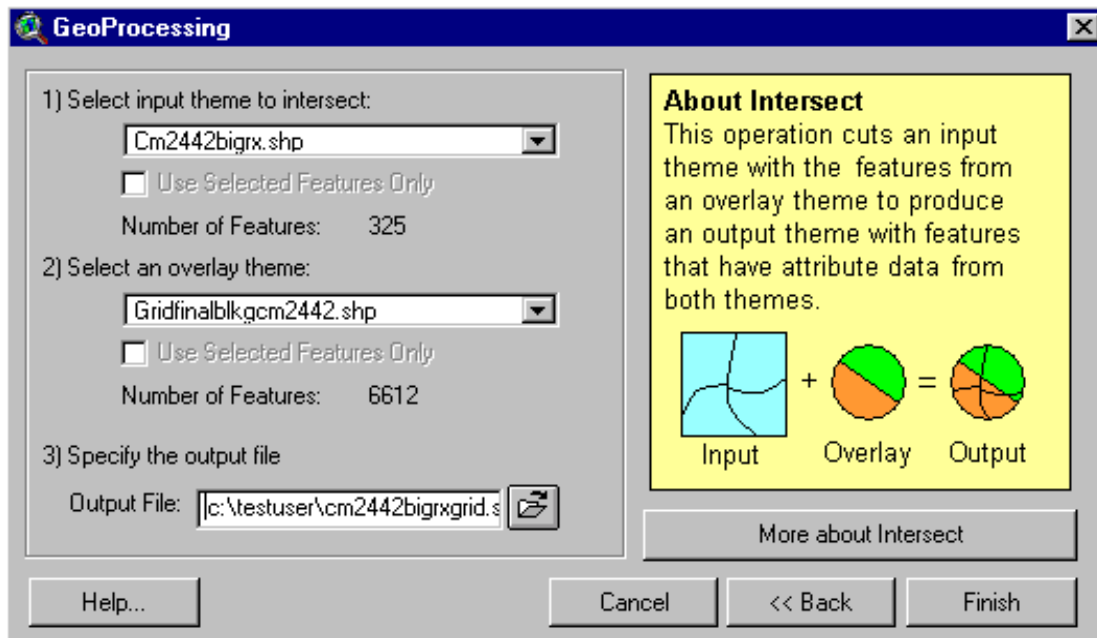
Open the legend editor for cm2442bigrxgrid and make the polygon fill transparent

Toggle on the display for cm2442bigrxgrid.
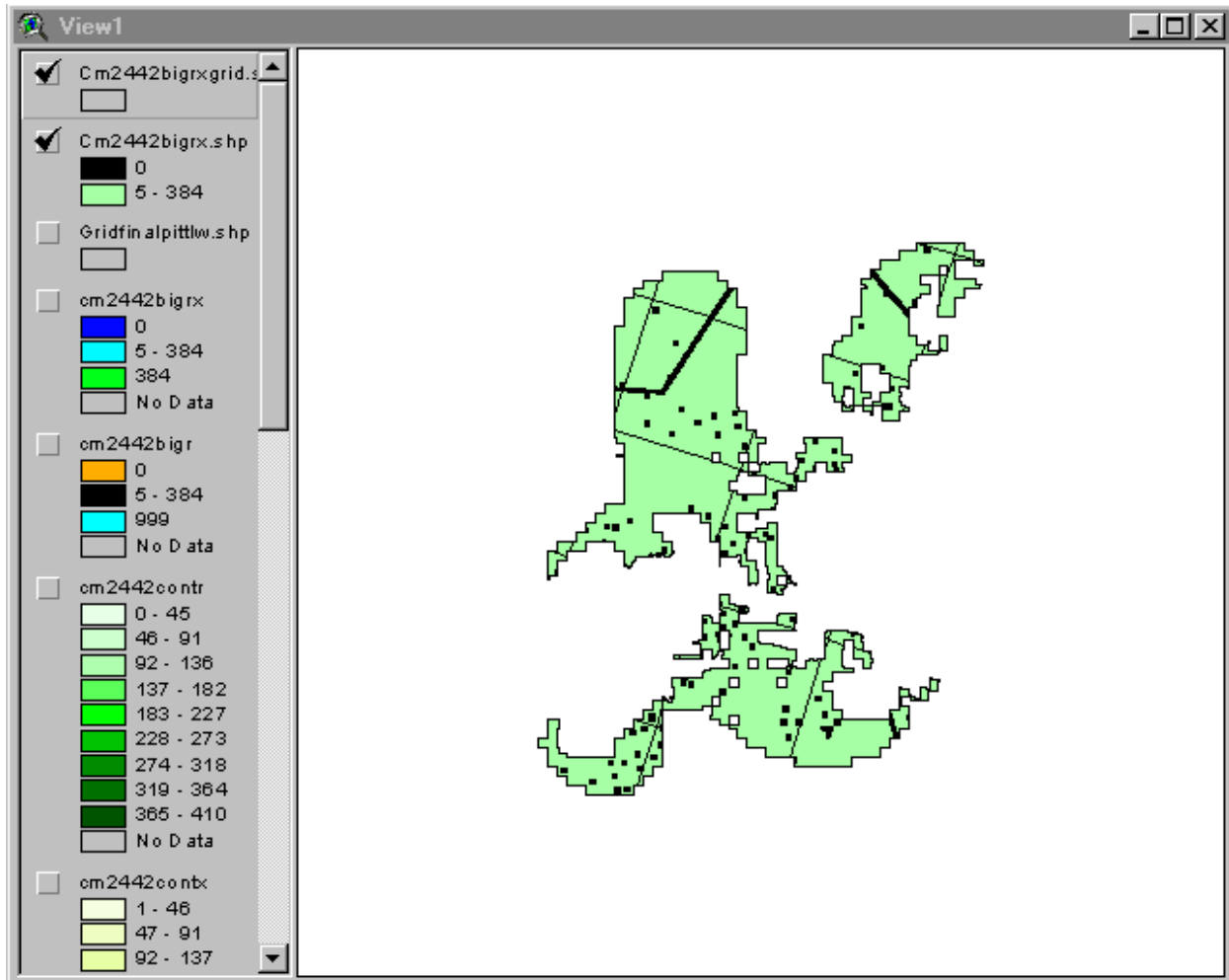
Open the table for cm2442bigrxgrid.

Notice that the same label applies, in some cases, to more than a single polygon.

This occurred because when gridfinalblkgcm2442 acted as a "cookie cutter" against cm2442bigrx, some of the cells that cut through cm2442bigrx enclosed areas **(within a given cell)** that were not contiguous in the cm2442bigrx layer.

Our next task is to edit cm2442bigrxgrid to arrive at a final set of coal resource blocks:

      1. Some blocks will have less than 13.544 million tons of coal but will be contiguous to other blocks. We want to combine small contiguous blocks to see if the combined unit has total tons of coal in excess of 13.544 million tons.

      2. Our method is to use **vector** theme editing. Blocks will be unioned or split to form blocks with coal tonnage at or above 13.544 million tons and up to 40.6 million tons. We will set **theme editing properties** for cm2442bigrxgrid in the Editing Properties dialogue box. When blocks are unioned, the tons of coal in the composite block will be the sum of tons in the separate blocks. When a block is split, the tons assigned to each part will be in proportion to area.

The block editing is done on a shapefile because in vector space we are able to perform, in effect, on the fly re-digitizing of the blocks. These kinds of operations ordinarily cannot be performed in grid space.

Assign a Unique ID to Each Coal Resource Block in the Vector Coverage of Available Coal

We begin by assigning a unique id to each of the polygons in cm2442bigrxgrid.shp.

Make cm2442bigrxgrid.shp active.

Under the Edit Menu:
      Click "Delete Themes"

      Click "Yes"

Start Excel

Open file
      c:\testuser\cm2442bigrxgrid.dbf

Under the Insert Menu:

      Click "Worksheet"

In the new worksheet:

      Enter "Blockid" in cell c1

Enter 1 in cell c2

Enter "=c2 + 1" in cell c3

Copy cell c3 to cells c4 through c566

(You would, of course, run the id over the range appropriate for your theme, as determined by the total # of rows with entries under the Label Column)

Click on "C" at top of column

Under Edit Menu

    Click "Copy"

Click on "A" at top of A Column

Under Edit Menu

    Click "Paste Special"

    Select "values"

Delete column C

Copy Columns A, B, and C (from worksheet cm2442bigrxgrid) to

    Column B (in worksheet Sheet 1)

Click on cell a1

Close Excel

Save file as

    C:\testuser\cm2442bigrxgrid.dbf

Respond "Yes" or "Save" to all queries

Add cm2442bigrxgrid.shp to View1

Open its table and check to see that a new field, Blockid, is in the table.

Make cm2442bigrxgrid active

Under the Analysis Menu

Click "Summarize Zones"

Pick "Blockid" as the field that defines zones

Select tonsbycell as the summarizing theme.

Use Method A (pp. 6-66 and 6-84) to add a new field to the table for cm2442bigrxgrid.shp, containing the estimates of million tons of coal.

Set width = 12

# of decimal places = 4

Attributes of Cm2442bigrxgrid.shp

Blockid	Label	Id	Gridcode	million tons coal
36	AQ60	741	384	14.2193
136	BJ41	470	209	13.7892
109	BK42	611	260	13.5450
186	BJ40	470	209	12.3581
18	AQ61	741	384	11.8248
530	AT25	85	75	11.6397
411	BC28	202	105	11.0998
369	BZ28	164	105	10.9630
269	AR35	268	128	10.6176
281	AS35	268	128	10.3224
14	AP61	741	384	10.2960

Use Theme Editing to Consolidate Coal into Coal Resource Blocks Following the Superimposed Grid Pattern

The next task is to use theme editing to consolidate cm2442bigrxgrid.shp into coal resource blocks with tonnage of at least 13.544 million tons.

When the consolidated block has less than 13.544 million tons, the block is removed from consideration for mining by room and pillar methods.

We follow the procedure as outlined from p. 8-64 through p. 8-79.

Don't forget to set editing rules in Theme Properties, Editing.

DIFFERENCES TO BE AWARE OF

When we grouped coal for longwall mining, resource blocks were not extended under interstate highway buffers. The cost to repair a subsided interstate highway is large. Mining companies do not want to expose themselves to those high costs. Also, it is costly to bypass coal under an interstate highway buffer and continue operations on the opposite side due to the rigidity of the longwall mining technology. Therefore, to assess coal for longwall mining, we treated interstate highway buffers as a constraining boundary for forming resource blocks.

Room and pillar mining is more flexible than longwall mining. Miners can run connecting tunnels between room and pillar mines under most restrictions except bodies of water. If there is significant coal on both sides of an interstate highway, a single mining operation could mine on both sides.

Also, room and pillar mining has nothing like the panel layout required with longwall mining. Room and pillar mining can take place on very irregular blocks of coal.

The process of forming resource blocks for room and pillar mining should allow for the flexibility of the room and pillar method.

The next view shows the final consolidated cm2442bigrxgrid.shp layer.
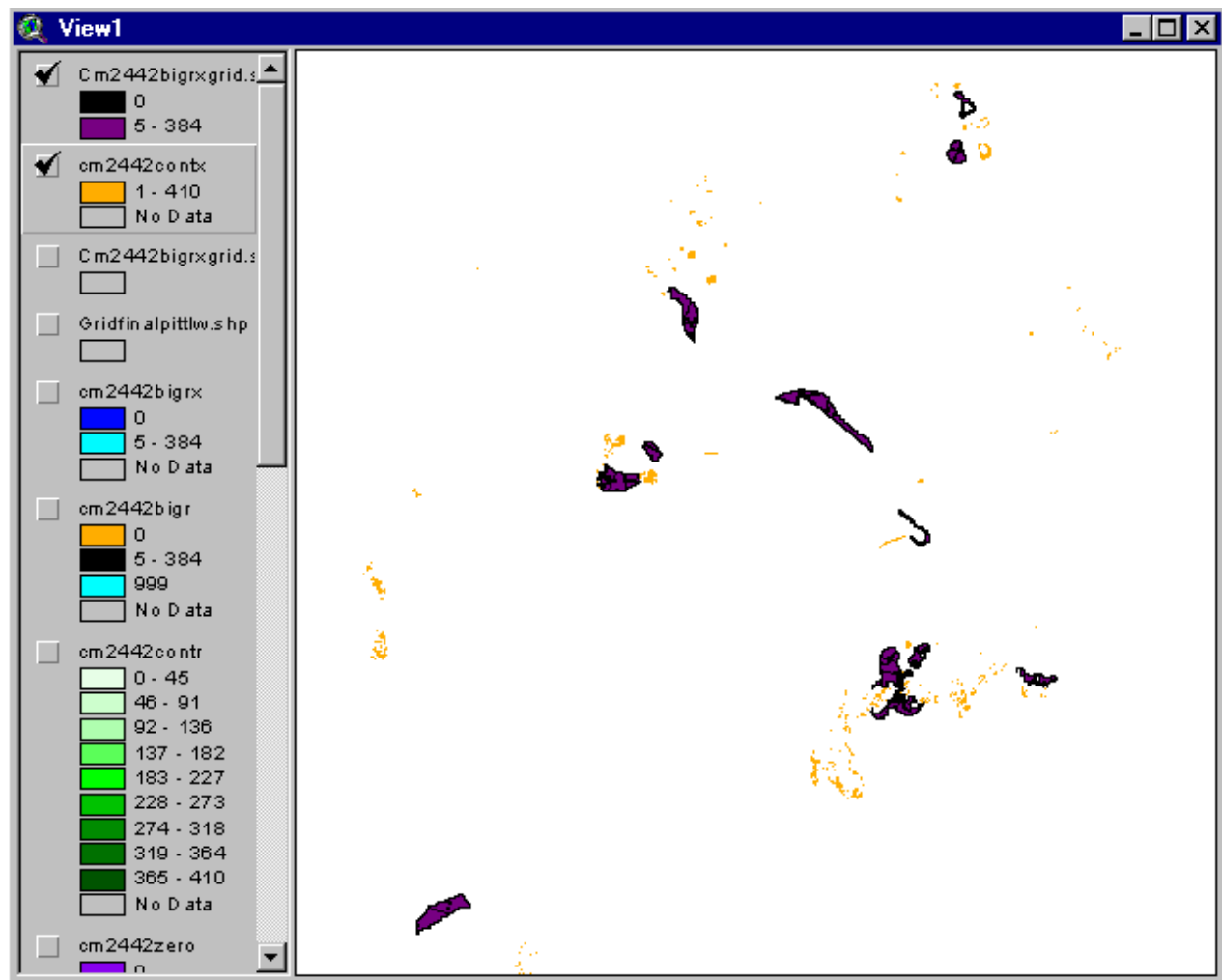
The dark area is the final cm2442bigrxygrid layer.

The lighter area shows the areas that were removed from the initial cm2442 layer.

Next, we convert cm2442bigrxgrid.shp to a grid theme.

Add a Unique Block ID to the Attribute Table of the Final Consolidated Coal Coverage

The consolidated coal blocks in cm2442bigrxgrid.shp may not carry a unique blockid. The consolidation process may have assigned the same blockid to more than a single coal block. When we convert cm2442bigrxgrid.shp to a grid coverage, we want each coal block to have a unique identifier in the grid coverage. In Excel we add a new id, blockid2, to insure that each block has a unique identifier.

In View1, make cm2442bigrxgrid.shp active.

Under the Edit Menu

       Click "Delete Themes"

       Respond "Yes"

Open Excel

       Open cm2442bigrxgrid.dbf

       Insert a new worksheet

       In the new worksheet:

              In column c1, enter "Blockid2"

              In column c2, enter

                    1

              In column c3, enter

                  $=c2+1$

              Copy c3 to all cells through c403

              Click on the "C" at the top of the column

              Under Edit menu, click "copy"

              Click on the "A" at the top of the column

Under Edit menu, click "Paste Special"

In the dialog window

Click on "Values" radial button

Delete the C column

Copy the 1st 5 columns on worksheet1 to the B column on worksheet 2

Click on the a1 cell

Close Excel

Respond "Yes", "Save" or "OK" to all queries

In View1

Add theme, cm2442bigrxgrid.shp

Open its table.

Notice new field, blockid2

We will use blockid2 as the value field when we convert cm2442bigrxgrid.shp to a grid theme

Open Analysis Properties and enter these settings:

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent: Same As Rem16bufp12

Left: -155677.503175
Top: 1970643.69375

Bottom: 1693107.69375
Right: 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size: Current Value

Cell Size: 16   m

Number of Rows: 17346

Number of Columns: 21718

Analysis Mask: No Mask Set

OK   Cancel

Under the Theme Menu

Click "Convert to Grid"

Name the layer: c:\testuser\cm2442grida

When queried to pick field for cell values, select "blockid2"

When queried about "adding features" click "Yes"

Add cm2442grida to View1

Toggle on its display
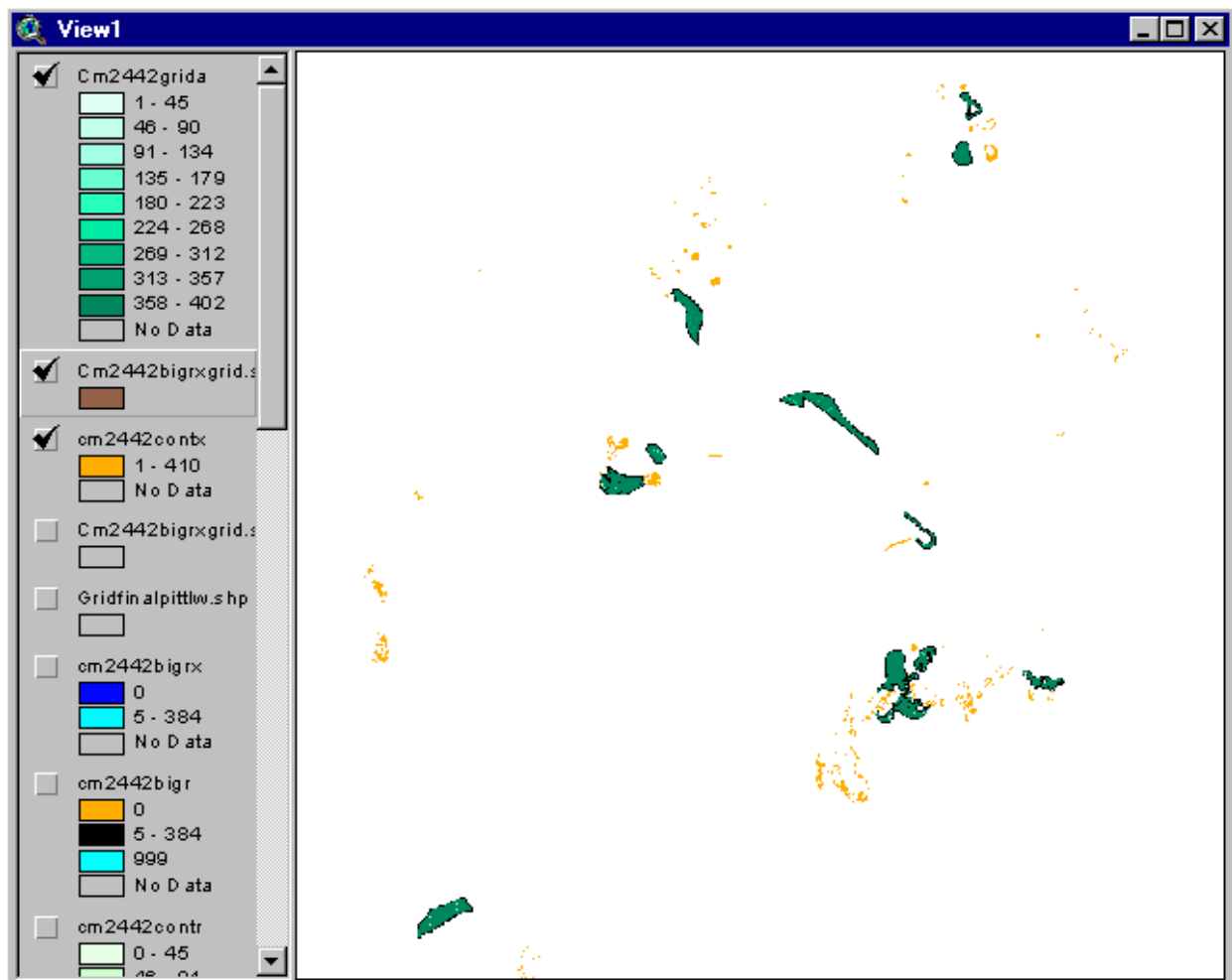
Cleanup to Generate a Final Consolidated Coal Coverage

Next, we do some cleanup to generate a final cm2442 grid.

During consolidation, because some features are small, areas that are restricted might have inadvertently been included in the blocks of mineable coal.

We correct the assignment in 3 steps:
1. In the cm2442grida layer, we reclassify all cells with gridcode=0 as cells with value=0.

2. We set the Analysis Mask to the revised cm2442grida coverage (called Map Calculation 1)

3. Any cells with zero in the layer from step 1 or any cells that are restrictions in union7restr are reclassified as cells with value=0.

Step 3, in effect, takes any restrictions that were put into a mining block out of the block and correctly assigns that coal to the restriction category (value 0).

Step 1:
In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:

Step 2:

Under Analysis Menu

 Click "Properties"

 Enter these settings:

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent   Same As Rem16bufp12

Left -155677.503175   Top 1970643.69375

Bottom 1693107.69375   Right 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size   Current Value

Cell Size   16   m

Number of Rows   17346

Number of Columns   21718

Analysis Mask   Map Calculation 1

OK   Cancel

Step 3:

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
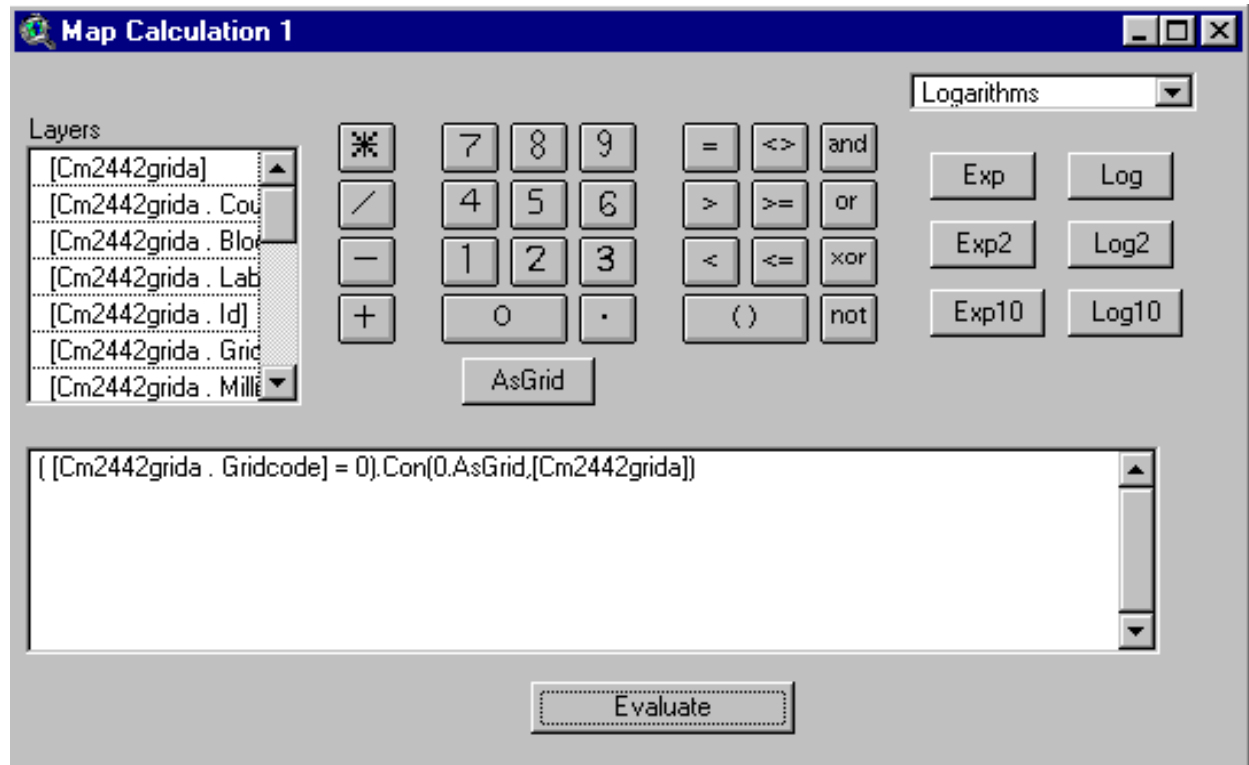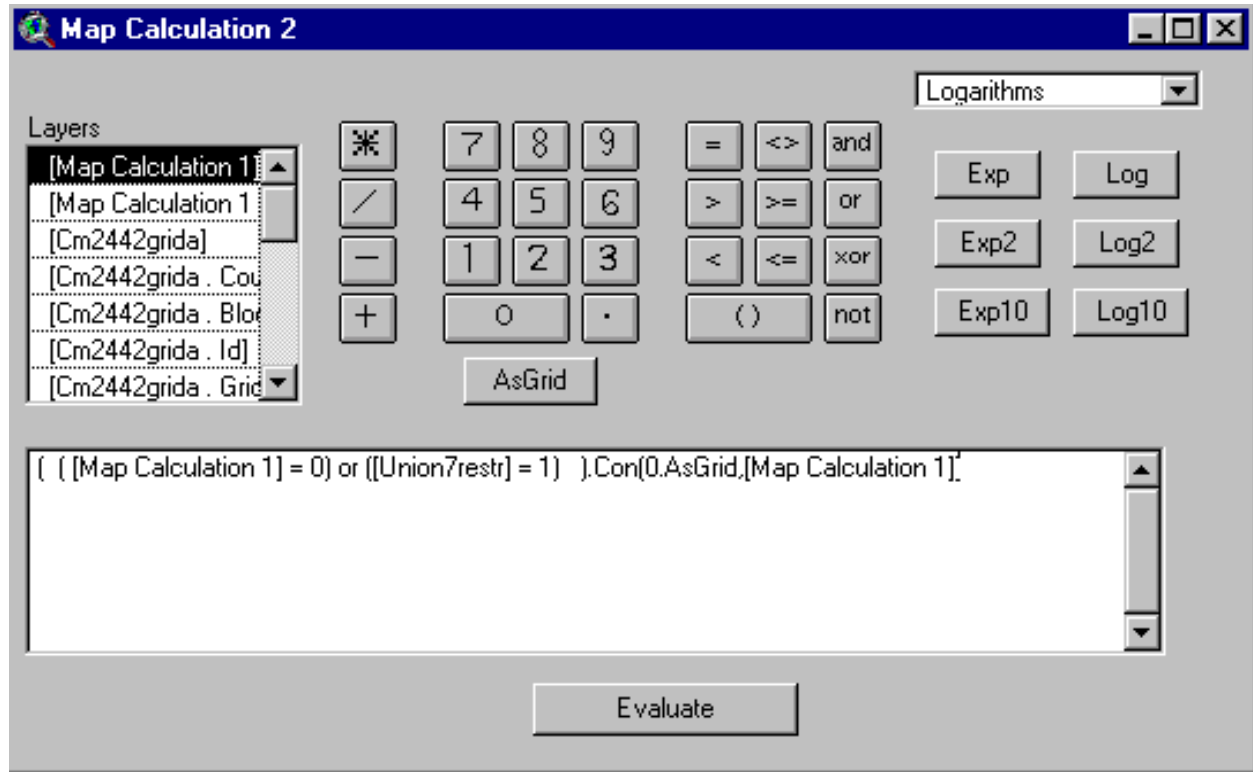
In Theme Properties, rename the new grid as:

     cm2442final

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to rename and retain.

In Legend Editor, change its legend to 2 classes as indicated in the next display

Toggle on its display:
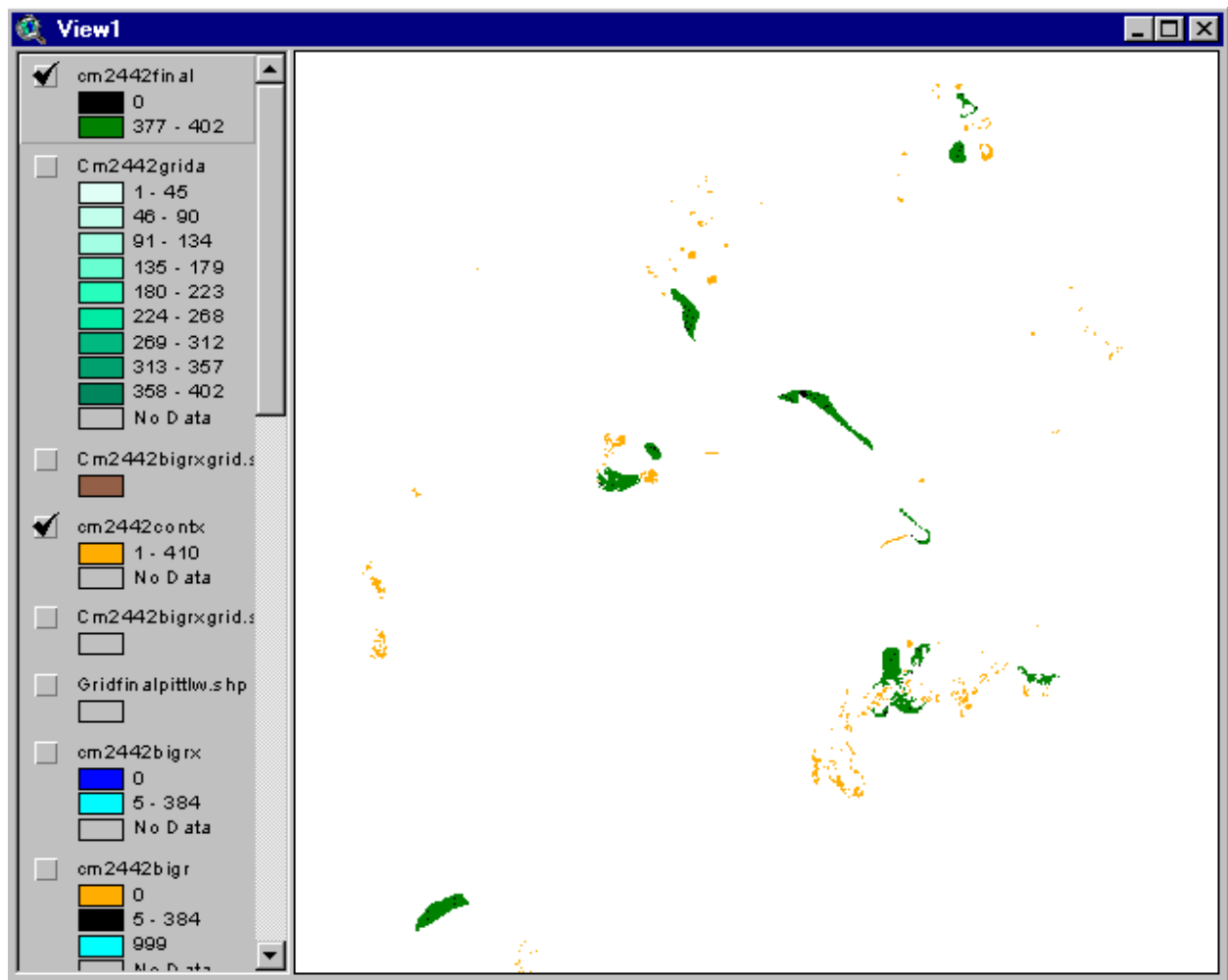
The dark areas (black) are areas that are restricted to coal mining.

The areas with intermediate shading (green) are the consolidated blocks of coal available for room and pillar mining, coal 24 to 42 inches in thickness.

The areas with light shading (gold) are the areas where coal was deleted as a result of the consolidation into mineable blocks.

Update the Remaining Coal Coverage: Remove Final Consolidated Coal Coverage

Next, we update the remaining coal coverage by removing the coal (along with associated restricted areas) in cm2442final from the **latest remaining coal coverage**.

Note: As you repeat the calculations for each coal thickness category, the latest remaining coal coverage will be the latest one created in the previous iteration.

FIRST ITERATION (cm2442)

The first time you arrive here, you are working on cm2442, therefore the latest remaining coal coverage is:
                              remlw96sb

Add grid coverage, remls96sb, to View1

SECOND ITERATION (cm4272)

The second time you arrive here, you are working on cm4272, therefore the latest remaining coal coverage is:

                              remcm2442sb

Add grid coverage, remcm2442sb, to View1

THIRD ITERATION (cm7296)

The third time you arrive here, you are working on cm7296, therefore the latest remaining coal coverage is:

                              remcm4272sb

Add grid coverage, remcm4272sb, to View1

FOURTH ITERATION (cm96)

The fourth time you arrive here, you are working on cm96, therefore the latest remaining coal coverage is:

                              remcm7296sb

Add grid coverage, remcm7296sb, to View1

Open Analysis Properties, and change Analysis Mask to rem16bufp12:

We reclassify cm2442final as follows:

Reclassify Values

Classification Field: | Value ▼ |

| Classify... | Unique | Lookup... |

Old Values	New Value
0	999
377 - 402	1
No Data	0

➕ ✖

| Load |

| Save | OK | Cancel |

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:

Notice that the 1ˢᵗ coverage in the expression above is the <u>latest remaining coal layer.</u>

Here again you have to substitute in, the correct 1ˢᵗ layer as you iterate:

FIRST ITERATION (cm2442)

The <u>first</u> time you arrive here, you are working on cm2442, therefore the 1ˢᵗ coverage in the expression is:

remlw96sb

SECOND ITERATION (cm4272)

The second time you arrive here, you are working on cm4272, therefore the 1ˢᵗ coverage in the expression is:

remcm2442sb

THIRD ITERATION (cm7296)

The <u>third</u> time you arrive here, you are working on cm7296, therefore the 1st coverage in the expression is:

        remcm4272sb

FOURTH ITERATION (cm96)

The <u>fourth</u> time you arrive here, you are working on cm96, therefore the 1st coverage in the expression is:

        remcm7296sb

The second step is to change cells with 0 to null

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
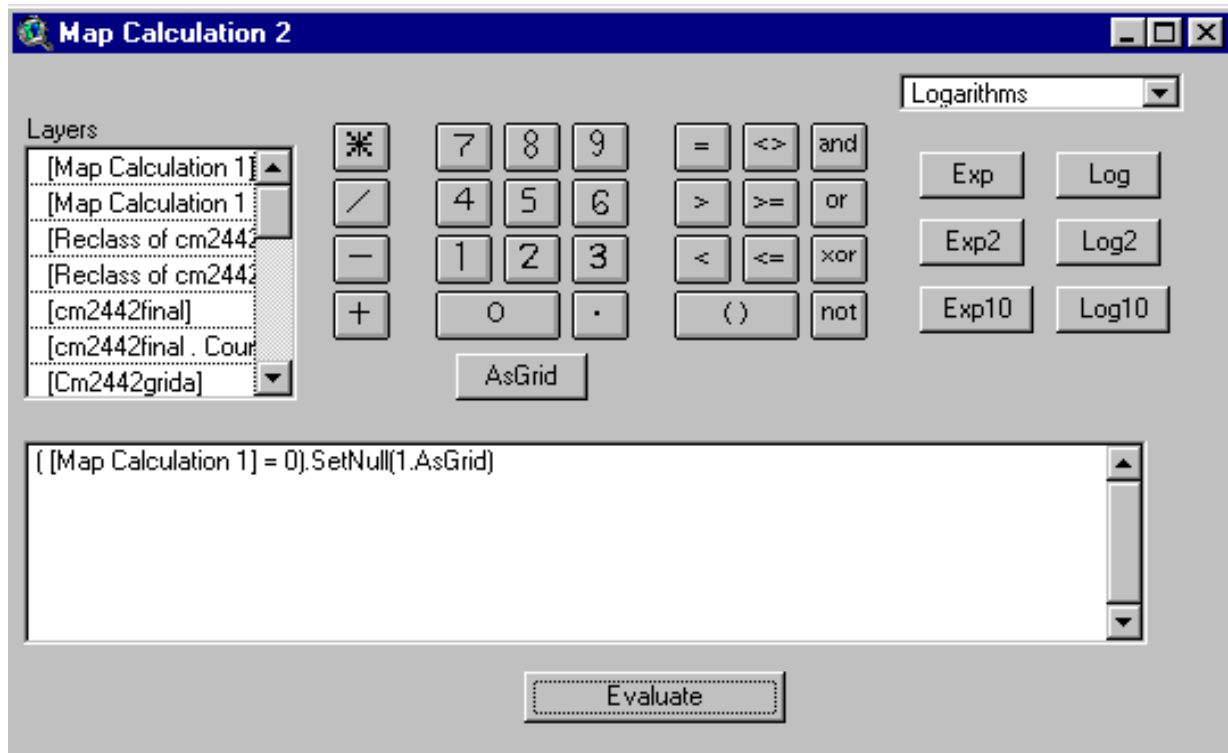
In Theme Properties, rename Map Calculation 2 as: **remcm2442**.

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.

Estimate Tons in Outside Safety Barrier

The next step is to expand cm2442final by 1 cell (for safety barrier).

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
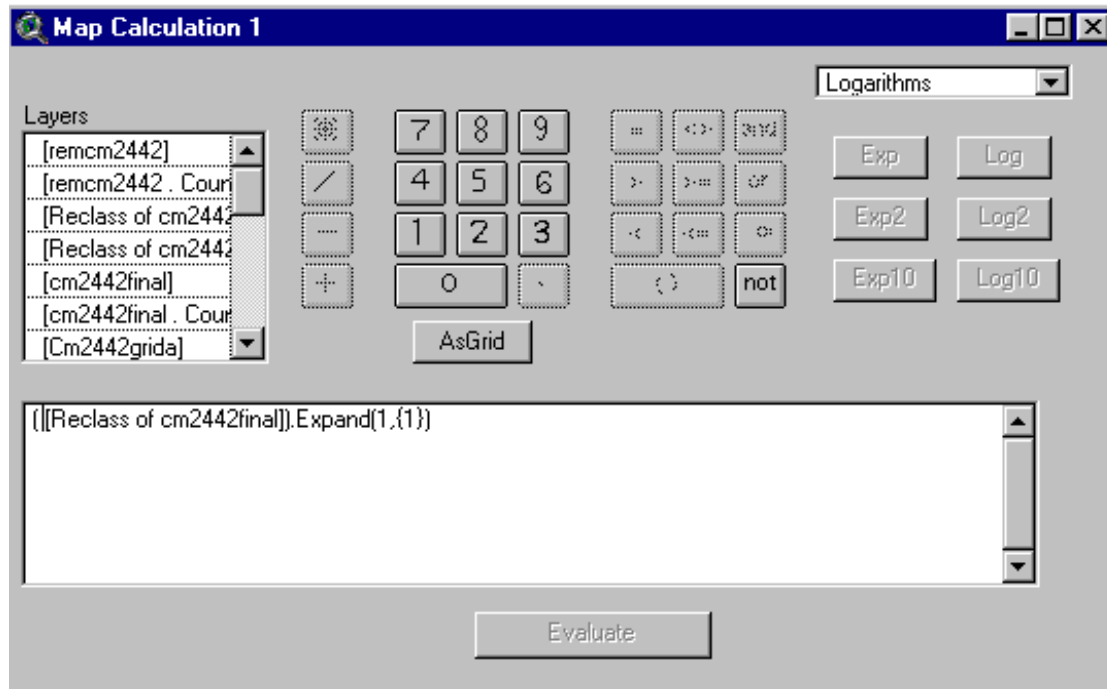
The layer, Map Calculation 1, is a 1 cell expansion of cm2442final. The expansion can extend into the areas that are restricted and into areas that do not have remaining coal.

We correct the initial expansion by setting a mask and evaluating Map Calculation 1 with the mask in place.

Note: Mask is the latest remaining coal layer. See next page for coverage names to use on each of 4 iterations.

Under the Analysis Menu

> Click properties

> Change the analysis Mask to

>> Remcm2442 (**1st Iteration**)

Analysis Properties: View1	
Analysis Extent	Same As Rem16bufp12
Left	-155677.503175
Top	1970643.69375
Bottom	1693107.69375
Right	191810.496825
Analysis Cell Size	Current Value
Cell Size	16 m
Number of Rows	17346
Number of Columns	21718
Analysis Mask	remcm2442
	OK Cancel

FIRST ITERATION (cm2442)

The <u>first</u> time you arrive here, you are working on cm2442, therefore the latest remaining coal coverage (just created) is:

> **remcm2442**

Set Analysis Mask = remcm2442

SECOND ITERATION (cm4272)

The second time you arrive here, you are working on cm4272, therefore the latest remaining coal coverage (just created) is:

> **remcm4272**

Set Analysis Mask = remcm4272

THIRD ITERATION (cm7296)

The <u>third</u> time you arrive here, you are working on cm7296, therefore the latest remaining coal coverage (just created) is:

> **remcm7296**

Set Analysis Mask = remcm7296

FOURTH ITERATION (cm96)

The <u>fourth</u> time you arrive here, you are working on cm96, therefore the latest remaining coal coverage (just created) is:

> **remcm96**

Set Analysis Mask = remcm96

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
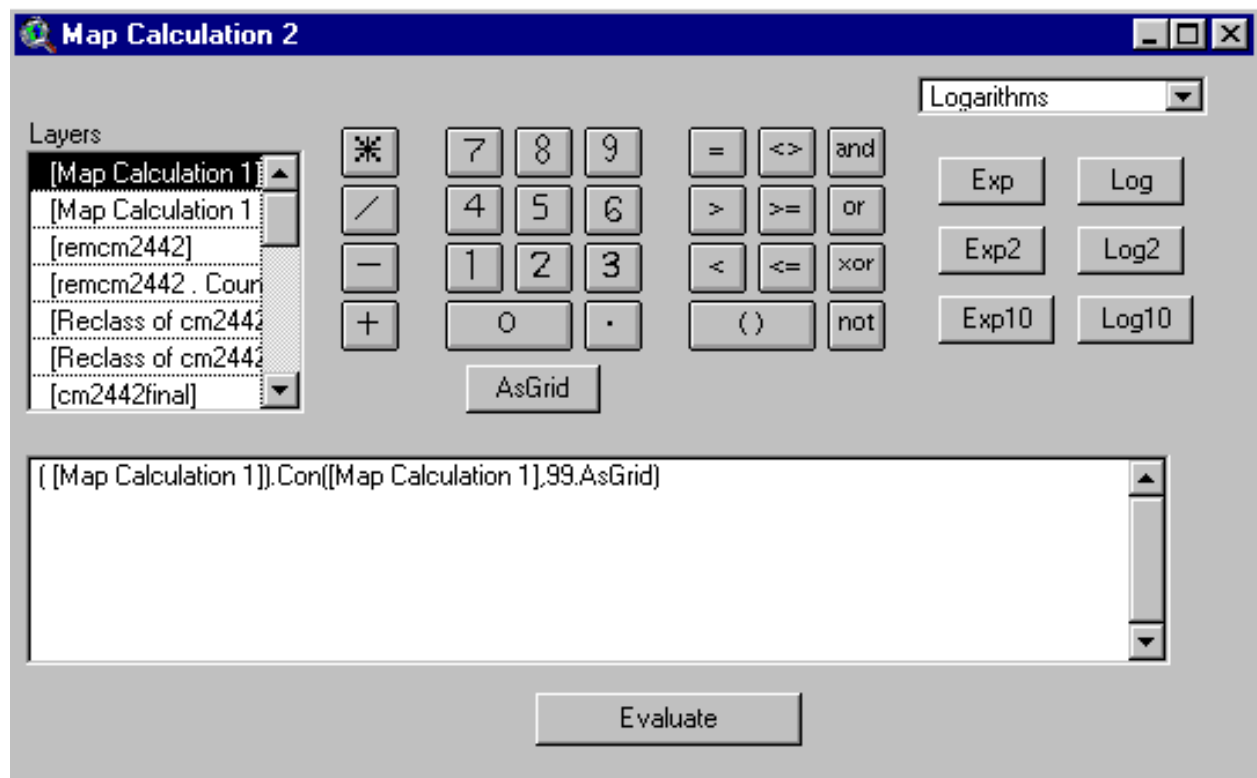
Change the cells with value = 99, to null.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
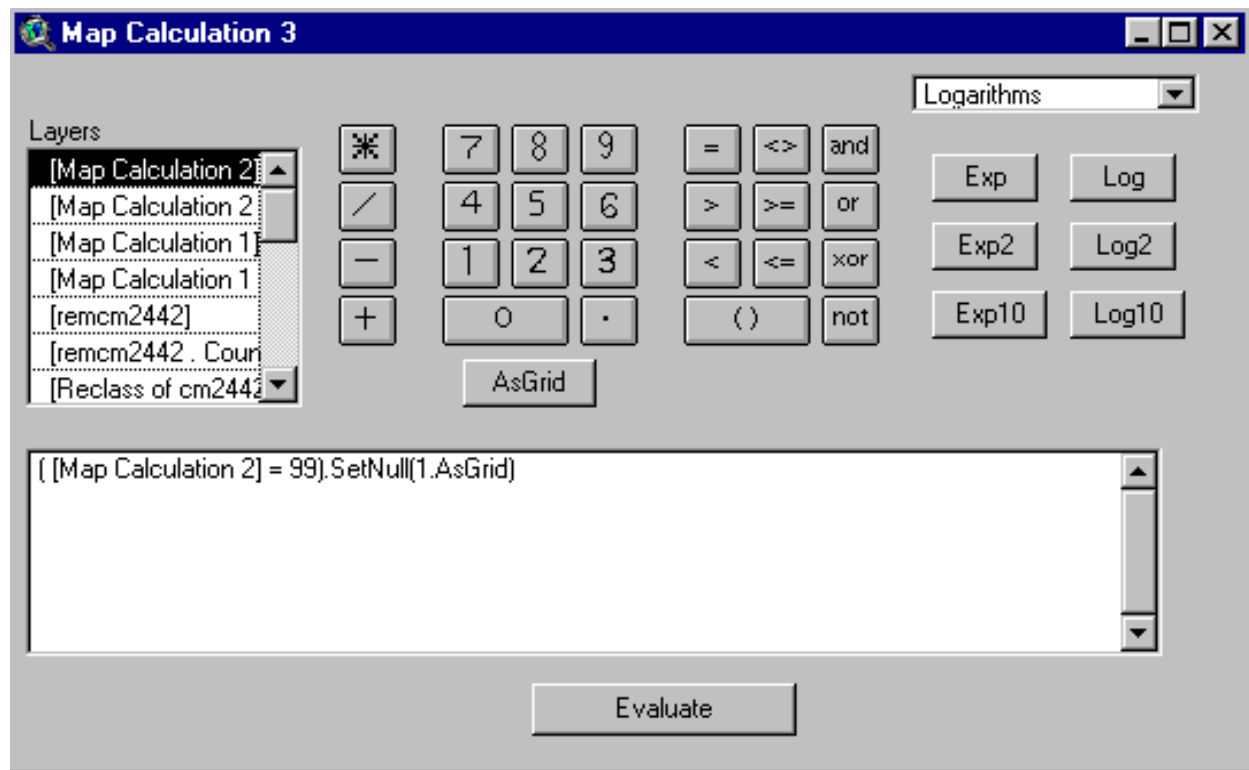
We now remove any coal in the safety barrier for cm2442 that might extend into other restricted areas.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
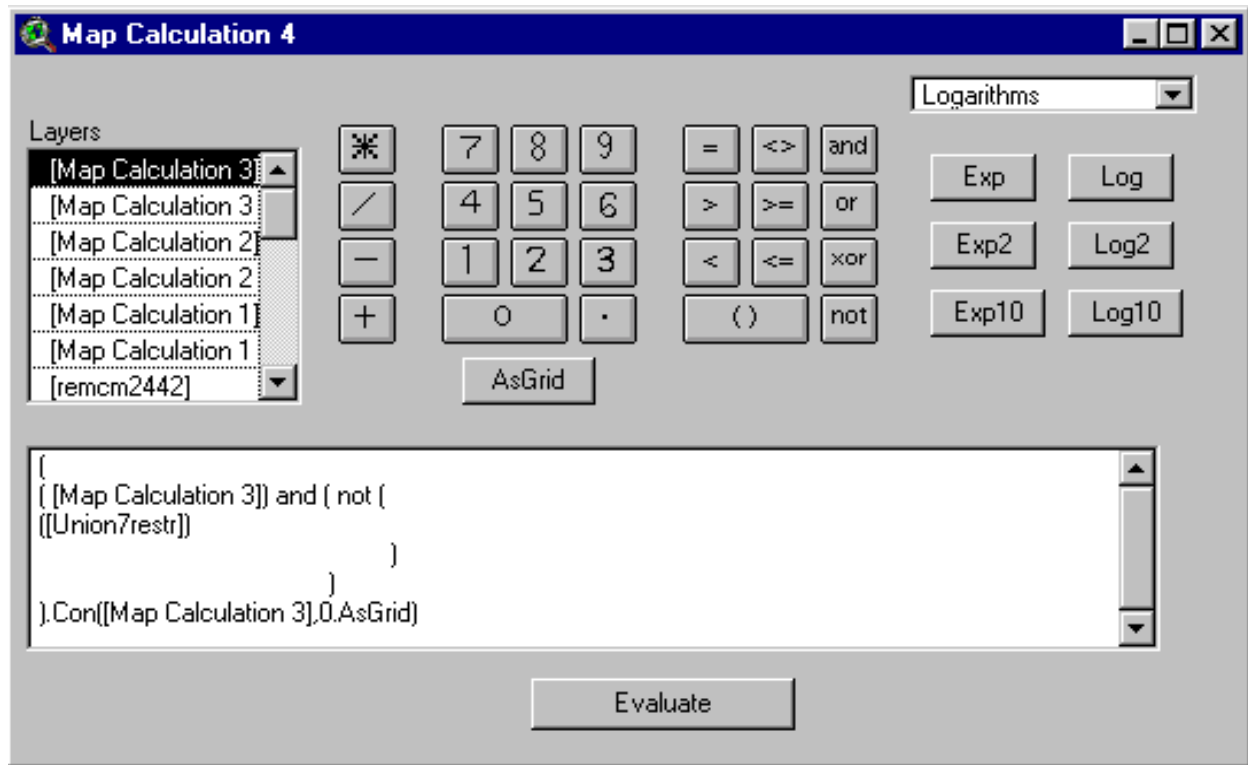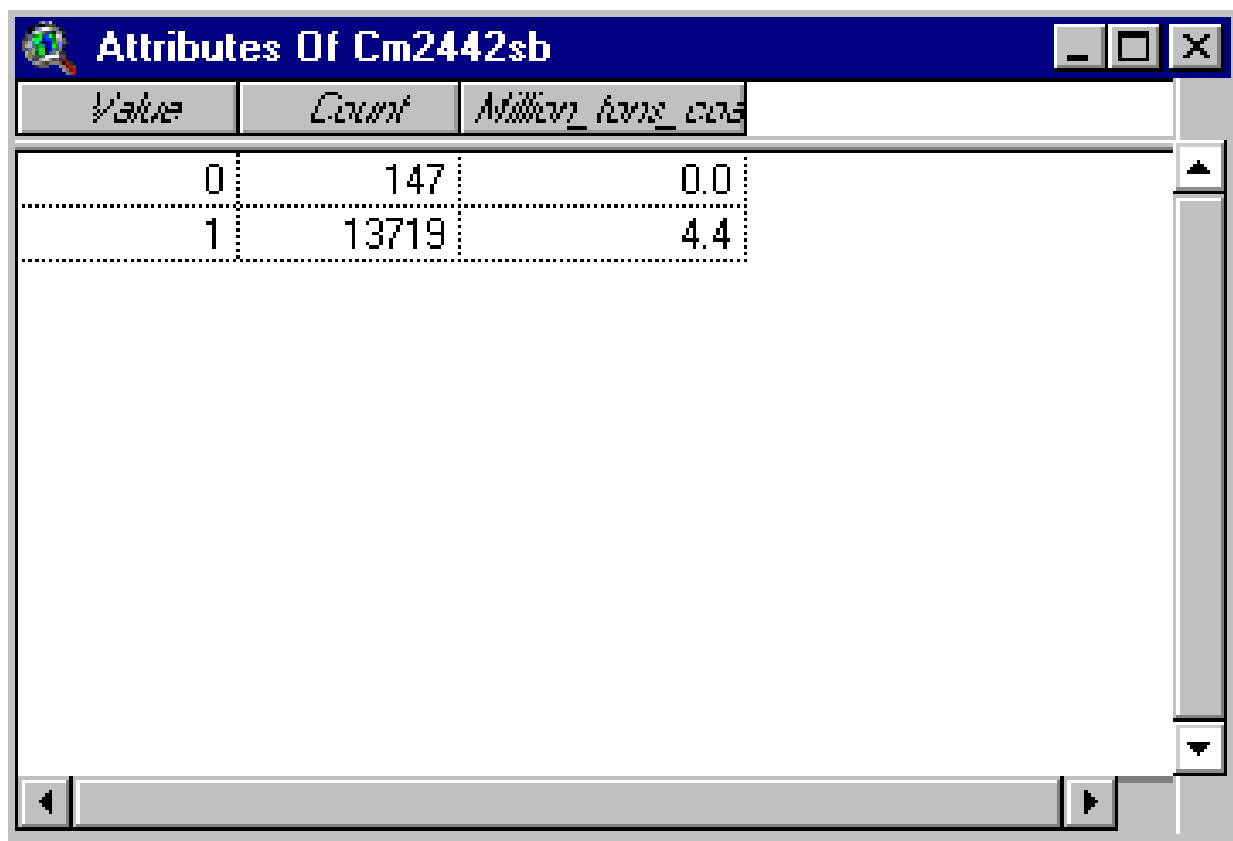
In Theme Properties, name Map Calculation 4 as:

cm2442sb (sb for safety barrier)

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to rename and retain.

Use **Method A** (pp. 6-66 and 6-84) to calculate the tons of coal in outside safety barriers:

Value	Count	Million_tons_cos
0	147	0.0
1	13719	4.4

Attributes Of Cm2442sb

Next, we estimate coal in interior safety barriers.
In Analysis Properties, we set Analysis Mask to the latest remaining coal overage **from the latest complete iteration by mining technology and coal thickness.**.

Note: As you repeat the calculations for each coal thickness category, the latest remaining coal coverage from the last complete iteration by mining technology and coal thickness will be the one created in the previous iteration.

FIRST ITERATION (cm2442)

The <u>first</u> time you arrive here, you are working on cm2442, therefore the latest remaining coal coverage (complete iteration) is:

> **remlw96sb**

In Analysis Properties, set Analysis Mask = remlw96sb (see next page)

SECOND ITERATION (cm4272)

The second time you arrive here, you are working on cm4272, therefore the latest remaining coal coverage (complete iteration) is:

> **remcm2442sb**

In Analysis Properties, set Analysis Mask = remcm2442sb (see next page)

THIRD ITERATION (cm7296)

The <u>third</u> time you arrive here, you are working on cm7296, therefore the latest remaining coal coverage (complete iteration) is:

> **remcm4272sb**

In Analysis Properties, set Analysis Mask = remcm4272sb (see next page)

FOURTH ITERATION (cm96)

The <u>third</u> time you arrive here, you are working on cm96, therefore the latest remaining coal coverage (complete iteration) is:

> **remcm7296sb**

In Analysis Properties, set Analysis Mask = remcm7296sb (see next page)

Under the Analysis Menu, click

"Properties"

Change Analysis Mask to

remlw96sb

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent Same As Rem16bufp12

Left -155677.503175   Top 1970643.69375

Bottom 1693107.69375   Right 191810.496825

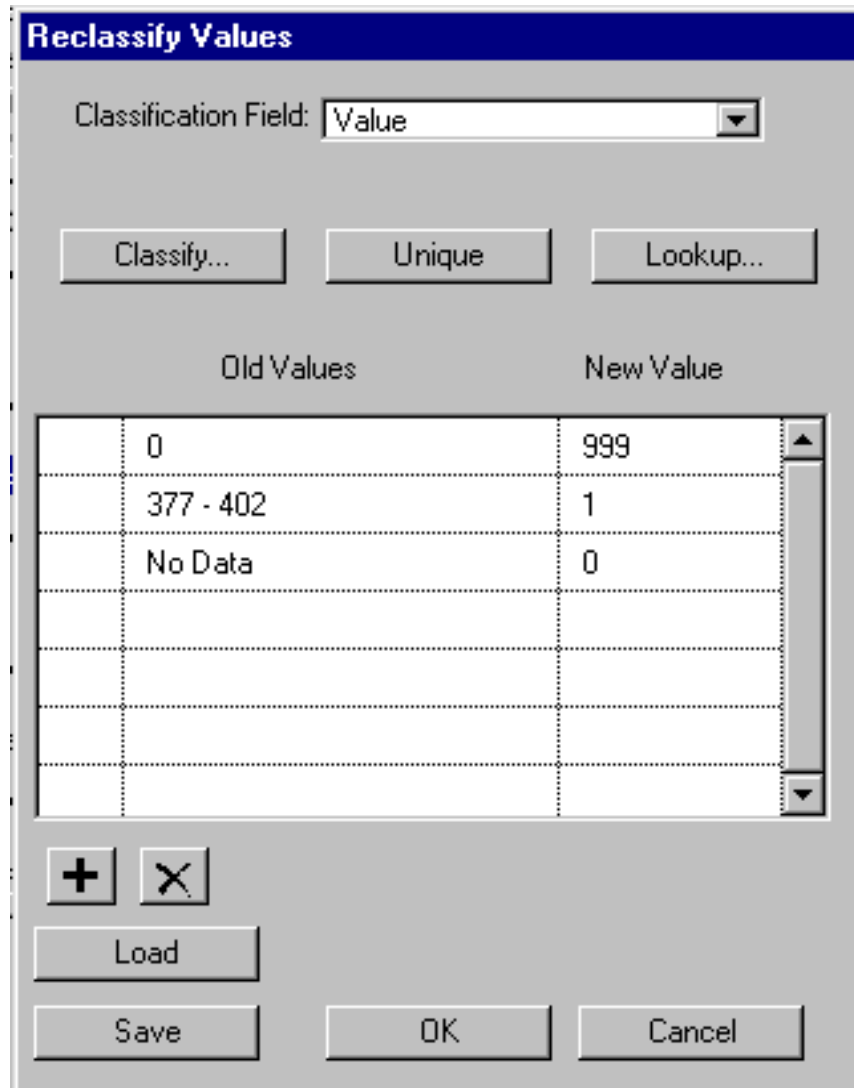Analysis Cell Size Current Value

Cell Size 16   m

Number of Rows 17346

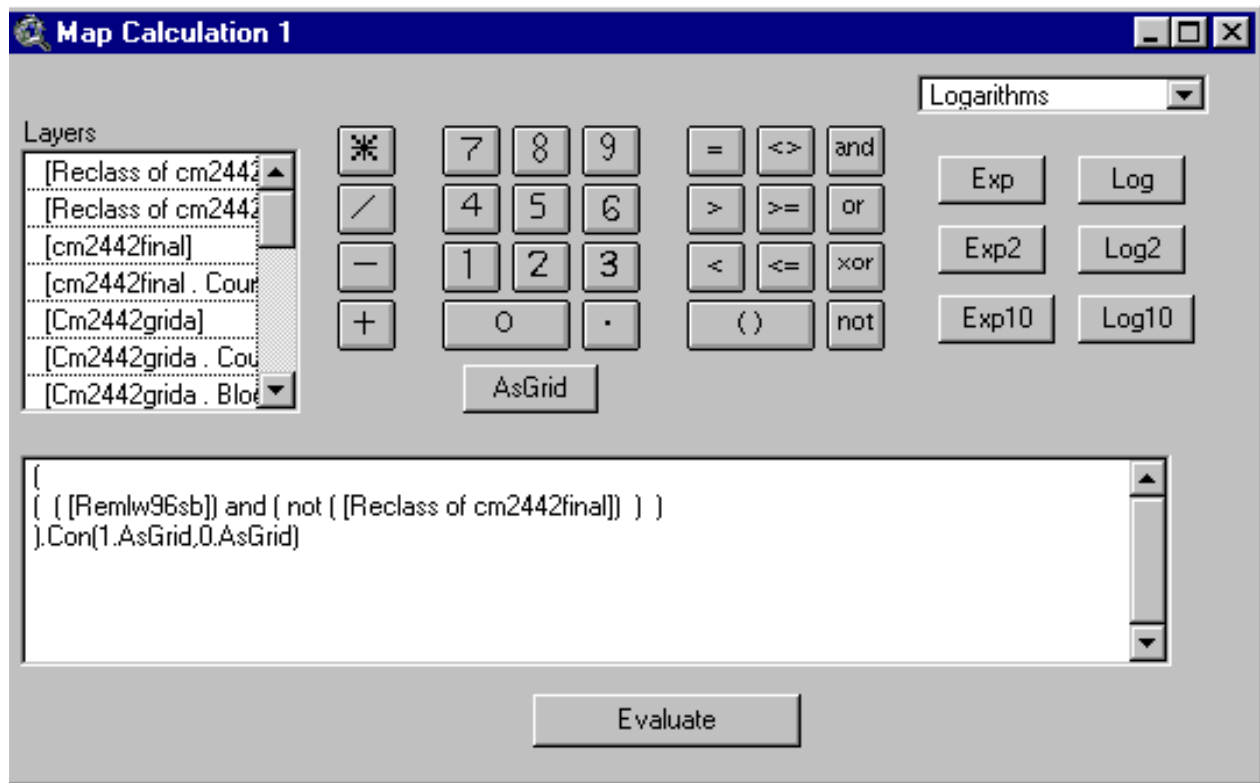Number of Columns 21718

Analysis Mask Remlw96sb

OK   Cancel

Save your project.

<u>It is very important that you save your project.</u>

We proceed to open a new ArcView project (to build and rotate grid) and then return to the main project after that procedure is completed.

Superimpose Grid to Delineate Coal for Representative Mines

Important Note: We now digress from assessment work to make a grid. We will use the grid to break the coal into mine blocks of the size listed in table 7-1 (column 6), p. 7-2. After the grid is built, <u>we will reopen the chapter9 project.</u>

Open this ArcView Project (template for building and rotating grid):

     c:\testuser\warp.apr

We build a grid with dimensions close to those of actual mines.

We use the grid to represent the <u>interior</u> safety barriers between mines for a specific technology/thickness combination.

Open minegrid.xls in Excel.

Currently, we are working on cm2442.

<u>For tonnage (cell A16) we enter the minimum-size resource block (column 6) from table 7-1, p. 7-2:</u>

     13544000   (No commas)

     Press "Enter" on the keyboard

<u>For technology/thickness (cell A19) we enter the corresponding label:</u>

     cm2442
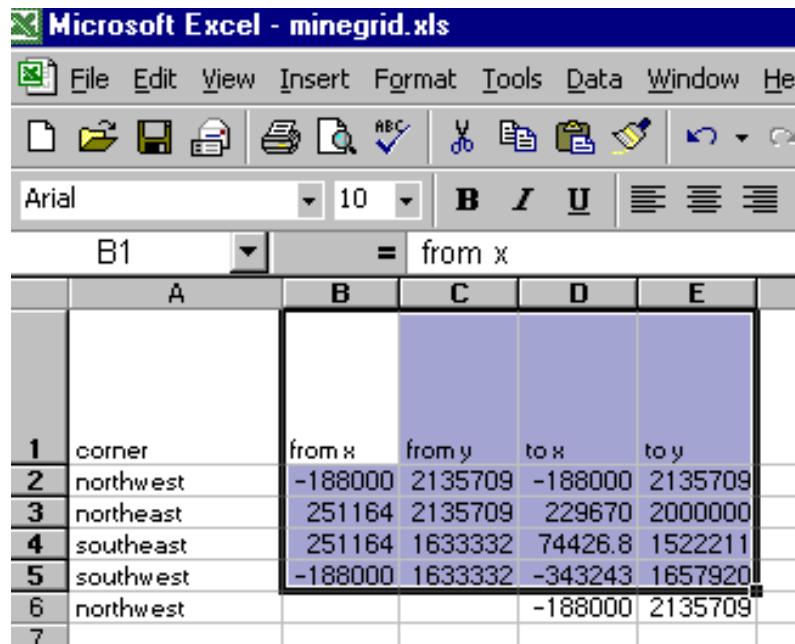
     Press "Enter" on the keyboard

Microsoft Excel - minegrid.xls

File   Edit   View   Insert   Format   Tools   Data   Window   Help

A20   =   Parameters for Pittsburgh are below, Change for other b

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	length of the resourc block in mete
1	corner	from x	from y	to x	to y		technolog	aver bed thickness (feet)	
2	northwest	-188000	2135709	-188000	2135709		lw4272	4.75	
3	northeast	251164	2135709	229670	2000000		lw7296	7	
4	southeast	251164	1633332	74426.8	1522211		lw96	8.6	
5	southwest	-188000	1633332	-343243	1657920		cm2442	2.75	3326.8
6	northwest			-188000	2135709		cm4272	4.75	
7							cm7296	7	
8							cm96	8.6	
9	Angle of rotation								
10	18								3326.8
11	horizontal span								
12	439164								
13	vertical span								
14	502377								
15	Enter tonnage in A16, Grid will be based upon this tonnage								
16	13544000								
17	Enter technology in cell A19 (select from lw4272, lw7296, lw96, cm2442, cm4272, cm7296, or cm96)								
18	**Note: type technology just as listed above with characters lowercase**								
19	cm2442								
20	Parameters for Pittsburgh are below, Change for other beds								
21	Density based upon 1800 tons/acre-ft in units of tons per square meter-foot, in cell A22								
22	0.445								
23	For rectangular grid, set values are as follows								
24	left long	-188000							
25	right long	250000							
26	bottom lat	1634000							
27	top rotated lat	2000000							
28									

After you calculate corner points for the rotated grid, copy them to a new workbook:

Open a new workbook in Excel.

Highlight the field names and the values for the 4 corner points:

corner	from x	from y	to x	to y
northwest	-188000	2135709	-188000	2135709
northeast	251164	2135709	229670	2000000
southeast	251164	1633332	74426.8	1522211
southwest	-188000	1633332	-343243	1657920
northwest			-188000	2135709

Under the Edit Menu click

Copy

Open the new workbook.

Under the Edit Menu click

Paste Special

In the Paste Special dialogue window click:

Values
OK

Click on the A1 cell.

Save the spreadsheet as

        C:\testuser\minegridcm2442.dbf   (Dbase IV format)

Close the new workbook.

Respond "yes" or "OK" or "save" to all Excel queries.

If necessary, make your Excel workbook (minegrid.xls) active

At the bottom of the worksheet, notice that there are 2 worksheets listed:

      calculate   (the worksheet that is open)
      gridmaker

Click gridmaker to open it:

	A	B
1	mining technology	cm2442
2	tonnage	13,544,000
3	Values for running gridmaker	
4	left longitude	-188000
5	bottom latitude	1633332
6	horizontal span	439164
7	vertical span	502377
8	rows	151
9	columns	132
10		

B2 = =calculate!A16

The gridmaker worksheet captures the values you will need later to run the grdmakerrev script in ArcView.

Click on the A1 cell

Under the file menu, click "Print"

You will use these printed values later when you run the grdmakerrev script.

Open ArcView

In the Project Manager Window click

     the Tables Icon

Click "Add"

Scroll to c:\testuser\minegridcm2442.dbf.

Click "OK"

In View1, under the View Menu

     Click "Add Event Theme" and make these entries:

Click "OK"

Make the new theme active.

Toggle on its display.

Click on "Connect the Dots" [Button with "Star"]

Zoom to extent of active theme:

Click rotated rectangle to get its "handles"

Click the "G" Button.

Save the new shapefile as

c:\testuser\tomgridcm2442.shp

Make minegridcm2442.dbf, active
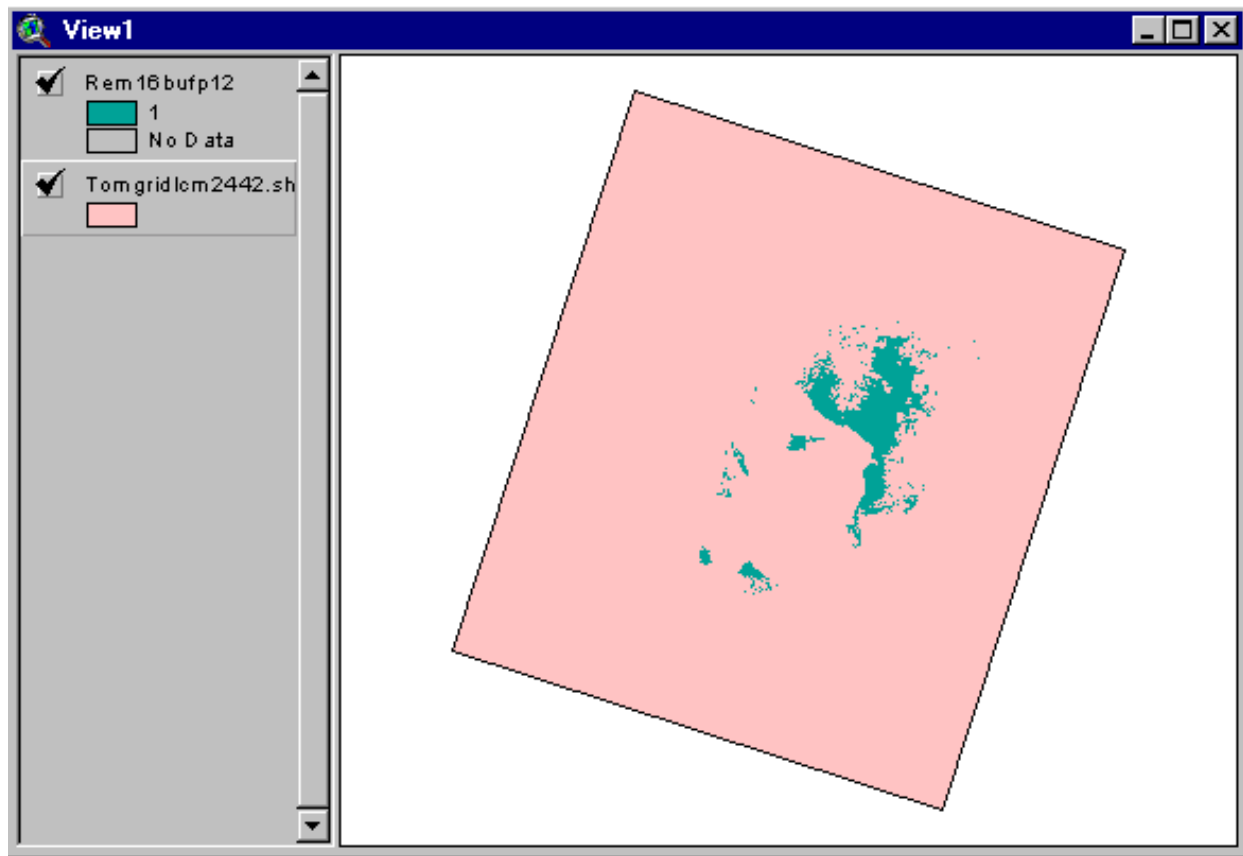
Under the Edit menu click

Delete Themes

Click "Yes"

Click on the rotated graphic to get its handles.

Press Delete

Click the Gridmaker Button (it looks like a grid on the right of the button bar)

You are prompted for 6 input parameters

Previously, you printed these values when you ran minegrid.xls.

Use the printed list and enter the parameters as you are prompted

If the default value is not correct in the Message box, then type the correct value

   For <u>left longitude</u>   **-188000**   **(No commas)**

   For <u>bottom latitude</u>   **1633332**

   For <u>horizontal span</u>   **439164**

   For <u>vertical span</u>   **502377**

   For <u>rows</u>   **151**

   For <u>columns</u>   **132**

(Obviously, the #'s you enter would be the appropriate values for the area where you are building a grid. The correct #'s for the Pittsburgh, continuous mining on 24 to 42 inch coal, are those above.)

Save the grid as

   c:\testuser\mxxgridcm2442.shp

When you are prompted for Labels, click

   No

We are now ready to rotate mxxgridcm2442.shp

We will run ShapeWarp to rotate mxxgridcm2442.shp:

      Our "from grid" is: **mxxgridcm2442.shp**

      Our "to grid" is: **tomgridcm2442.shp**

      Our table of input data is: **minegridcm2442.dbf**

      Our table of GCP's is: **coordsmgcm2442.dbf** (which we will create)

At this point you are advised to save your project.

However, save it under a new unique name such as:

        C:\testuser\warpmgcm2442

By saving the project, you can correct any errors that may become evident later, starting over from this point.

Delete all of the themes from ArcView.

Open the Project Manager Window.

Under the ShapeWarp Menu:

Click "Import Table"

Pick c:\testuser\minegridcm2442.dbf as the import table

Name c:\testuser\coordsmgcm2442.dbf as the GCP table

In the Pick Field Dialogue window match the field in the list to the query:

The new GCP table will display on your monitor:

Minimize the GCP table

Make the Project Manger Window active.

Click on the ShapeWarp "Diamond" icon.

In response to "Do you want to set the projection for the TO view?

> Click "No"

Pick the theme that you want to warp (i.e., rotate):

Pick the theme that has the rotated rectangle:

In response to the query about selecting a table

> Click "Yes"

Select the coordinate table as

c:\testuser\coordsmgcm2442.dbf

Pick the Coordinate Table you want to use

File Name:

`coordsmgcm2442.dbf`

- blkxxgridcm2442.dbf
- blockgridcm2442.dbf
- coords1.dbf
- coordsblkgcm2442.dbf
- coordsmgcm2442.dbf
- coordsmglw4272.dbf
- delta1.dbf
- delta2.dbf

List Files of Type:

`*.dbf`

Directories:

d:\testuser

- d:\
- testuser
  - adol
  - calc1
  - calc2
  - calc3
  - calc4
  - calc5

Drives:

`d:`

OK

Cancel

A window will open showing the TO and FROM rectangles. The 4 corner points will be used to guide the rotation:

Click the RMS icon on the ShapeWarp toolbar (looks like a calculator).

Select "First Order"

Click "OK"

The RMS error should be very small.

On the ShapeWarp toolbar

Click "Go"

Save the rotated grid as

c:\testuser\gridfinalmgcm2442.shp

Respond "No to query about report.

On the ShapeWarp toolbar

Click "Quit"

Open project

c:\testuser\chapter9.apr

Add theme:

gridfinalmgcm2442.shp

In the Legend Editor:

Make the polygon fill for gridfinalmgcm2442, transparent

Set size = 0.1 for the outline of gridfinalmgcm2442.shp

Maximize the View window.

Toggle on the display for gridfinalmgcm2442.shp.

Estimate Coal in Interior Safety Barriers

The layer, cm2442sb, contains the safety barrier for the <u>outside</u> extent of the coal allocated to longwall mining, 24 to 42 inch thick coal.

The coal blocks, represented in cm2442bigrxgrid.shp and cm2442final, also need to have interior safety barriers.

We complete 6 steps to determine interior safety barriers:

Step 1: Add cvtplypl.ave as a button to your project

In the Project Manger Window

       Click on the Scripts Icon

       Click New

       Under the Script Menu

              Click "Load Text File"

              Scroll to c:\esri\av_gis30\arcview\samples\scripts

              Select cvtplypl.ave

              Click "OK"

       Click the Compile button (Looks like check mark)

Make View1 active

Double click in the open space on the right of the button bar

In the Customize Dialog Window

As "Category", select "Buttons"

Move slider scroll bar all the way to the right

In the open space on the right, above the slider bar in the slider window, click once

Then click "New", below to the left

In the Properties Window (bottom half of Customize Window):

Double Click "Click"

In the window that open, scroll to "Script 1" (i.e, the script that you just compiled)

Select Script 1

Click OK

Double Click "Help"

In the Window that opens

Type "Converts Polygon to Polyline//Converts Polygon to Polyline"

Double Click "Icon"

In the window that opens

Scroll to the "Poly" icon

Select "Poly"

Click OK

In the Customize Dialog Window

Click X in the upper right corner to close the window

Notice that the poly button is added to View1

Step 2: Convert gridfinalmgcm2442.shp to a polyline

Make gridfinalmgcm2442.shp active

Click the "Poly" Button

Save the polyline layer as

c:\testuser\gridplmgcm2442

When queried, add theme to View1

Step 3: Convert gridplmgcm2442.shp to a grid

Make gridplmgcm2442.shp active

Under the Theme Menu

Click "Convert to Grid"

Save the new layer as

c:\testuser\gplmgcm2442

Step 4: Intersect gplmgcm2442 and cm2442final to obtain the interior safety barrier around coal, without placing the safety barrier on a restricted area

Note: Restricted areas in cm2442final (with value = 0) evaluate false when the intersect request runs. Therefore, gplmgcm2442 is kept out of the restricted areas.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
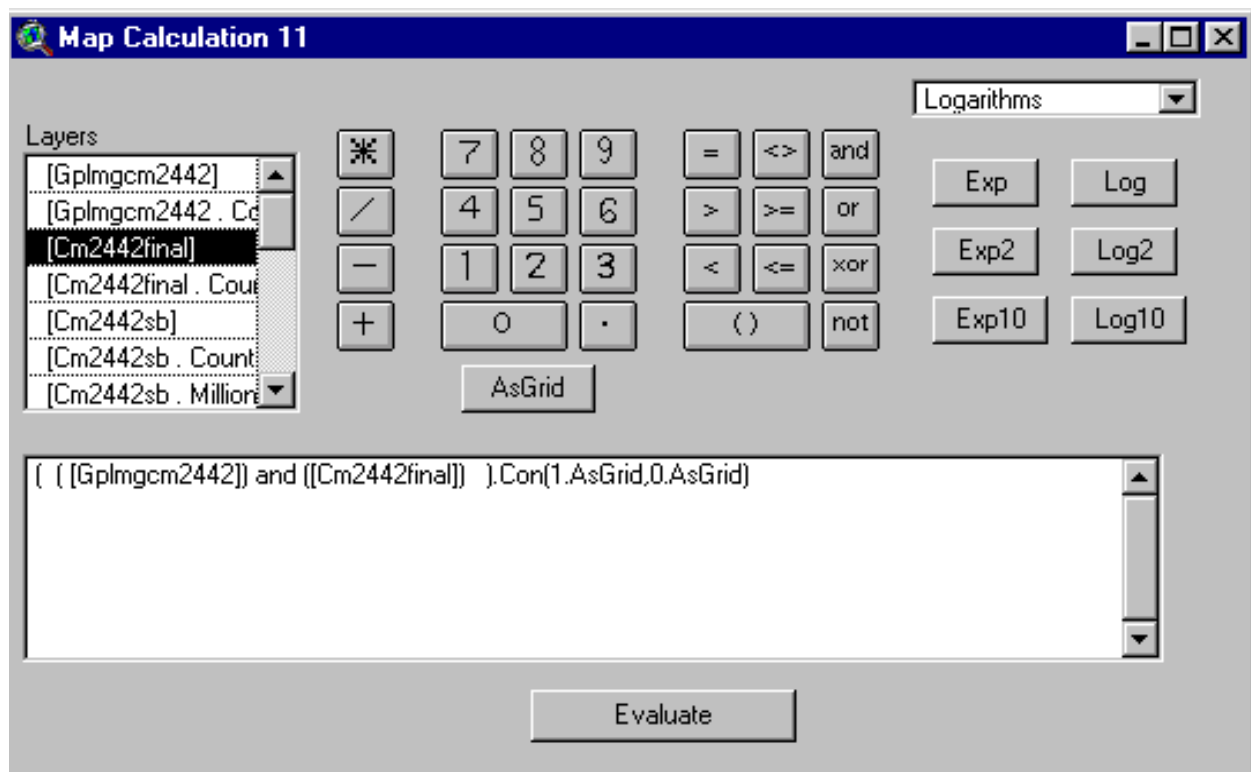
Step 5: In Map Calculation 11, convert nulls to 9 (needed for step 7).

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
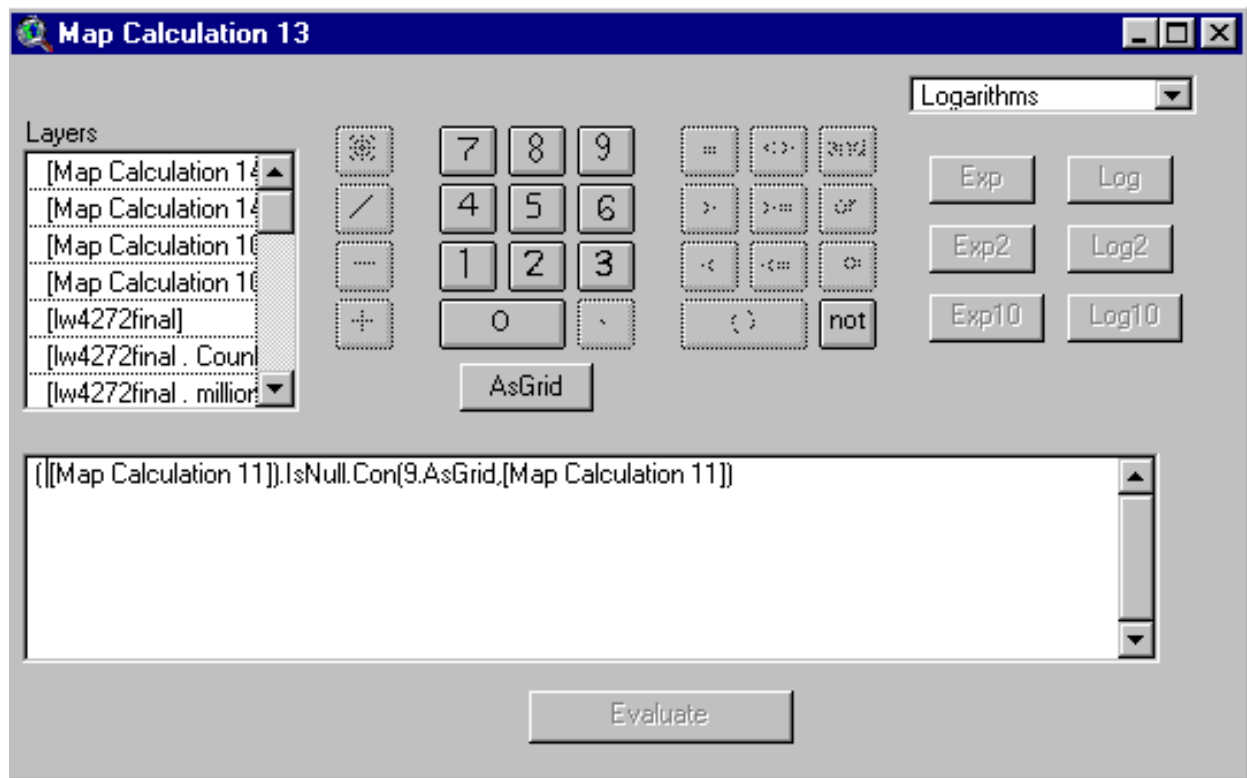
Step 6: Use Map Calculation 13 to split cm2442final into 3 parts:

    Areas that are restricted (cells with 0 value)

    Areas with available coal less any interior safety barriers (cells with value 1-326)

    Areas that represent interior safety barriers (cells with value 999)

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:

Map Calculation 14

Logarithms ▼

Layers

[Map Calculation 13 ▲
[Map Calculation 13
[Map Calculation 13
[Gplmgcm2442]
[Gplmgcm2442 . Co
[Cm2442final]
[Cm2442final . Cou ▼

✳	7	8	9	=	<>	and
/	4	5	6	>	>=	or
—	1	2	3	<	<=	xor
+	0	·	( )	not

AsGrid

Exp   Log
Exp2   Log2
Exp10 Log10

(([Map Calculation 13] = 1) and ([Cm2442final])).Con(999.AsGrid,[Cm2442final])

Evaluate
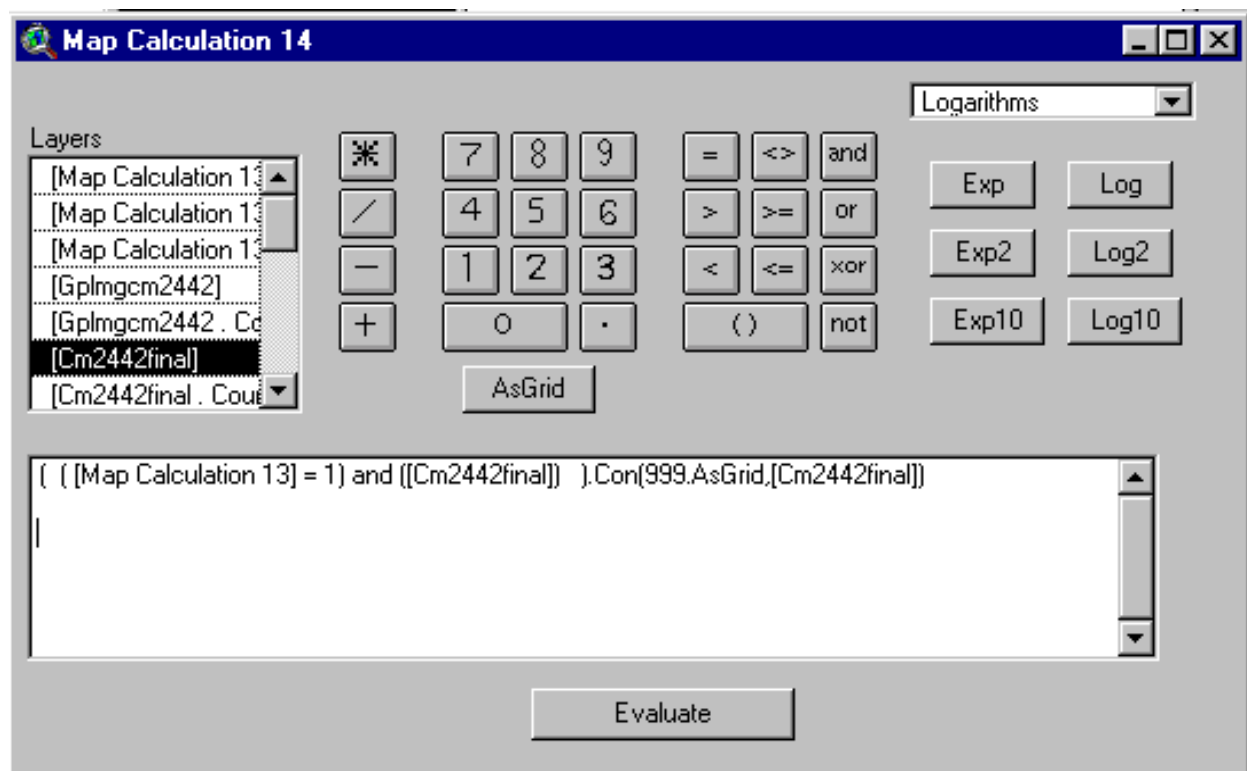
In Theme Properties, rename Map Calculation 14 as:

cm2442finalb

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to rename and retain.

In the legend editor, classify values as indicated in the next display:
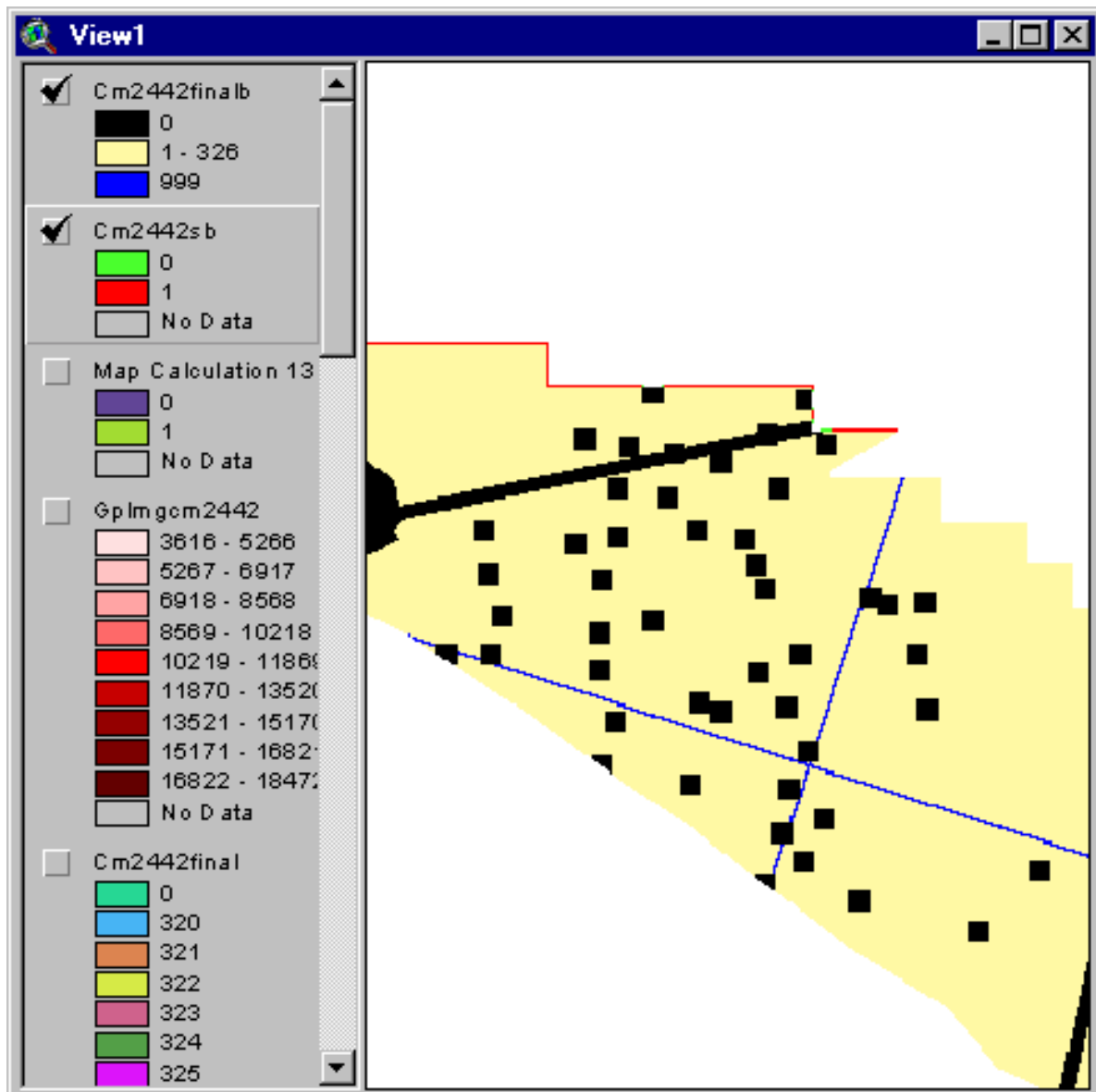
The black cells are restricted areas.

The dark blue thin lines (grid pattern) are interior safety barriers

The yellow cells or light areas are areas with available cm2442 coal.

The red thin lines at the outside edge are exterior safety barriers.

The interior safety barrier is coal taken from the initial coal blocks (in cm2442final) that is reallocated to safety barriers.

Therefore, layers cm2442final and cm2442finalb have the same coal extent, and differ only in their classifications of the coal.

Note: On 4th Iteration, cm96, you will learn that there is no coal in safety barriers (for the Pittsburgh assessment but perhaps not for other beds). Therefore, jump to

p. 9-101
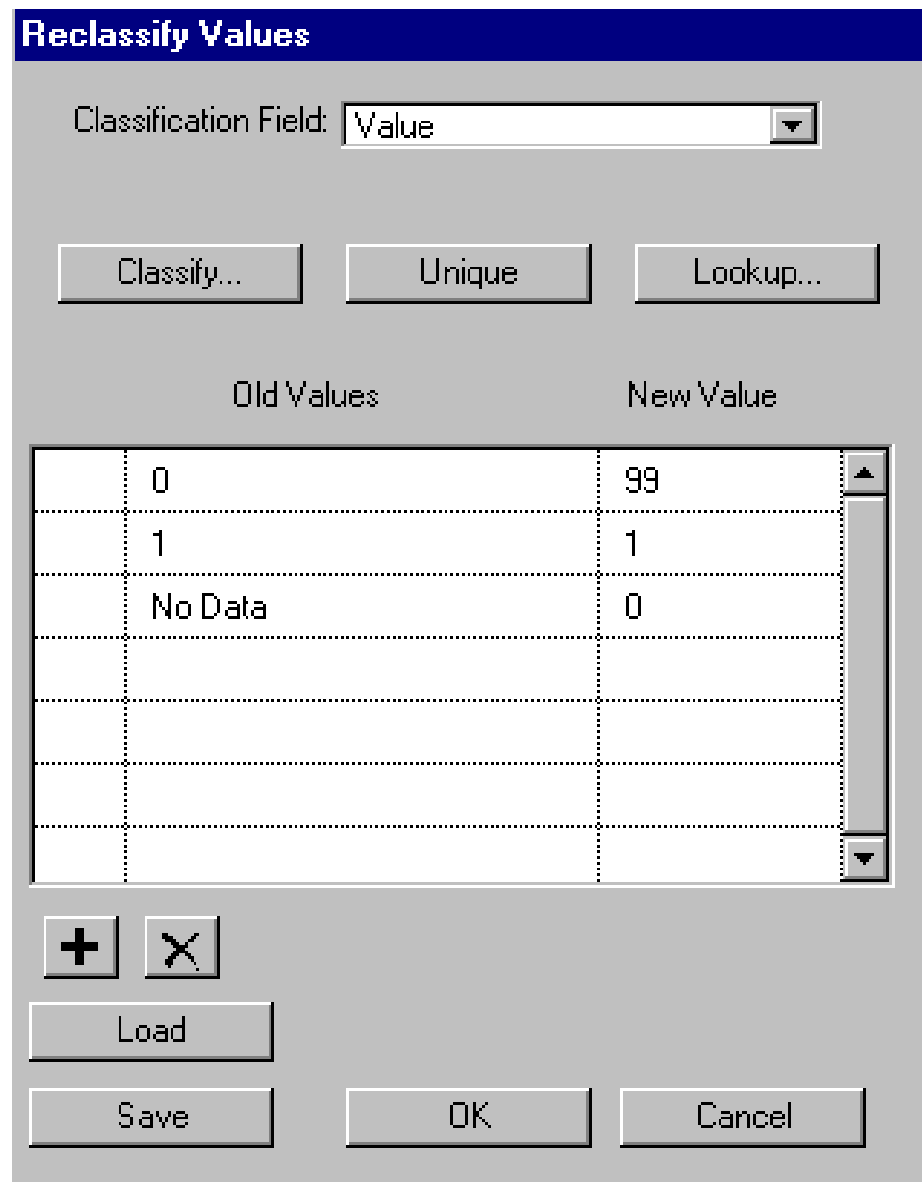
Earlier, we updated the remaining layer by removing cm2442final (equivalent to cm2442finalb) from remsurfall, creating the remaining layer, remcm2442.

The outside safety barriers, layer cm2442sb, remove additional coal.

Update Remaining Coal Layer: Remove Coal in the Exterior Safety Barrier

We proceed now to update remcm2442 by removing cm2442sb

Step 1: We reclassify cm2442sb following the procedure on p 7-10:

Reclassify Values

Classification Field: Value

| Classify... | Unique | Lookup... |

Old Values	New Value
0	99
1	1
No Data	0

+ ✕

Load

| Save | OK | Cancel |

Step 2: We remove the reclassified coal from **remcm2442**, following the 2 step procedure on p. 7-12:
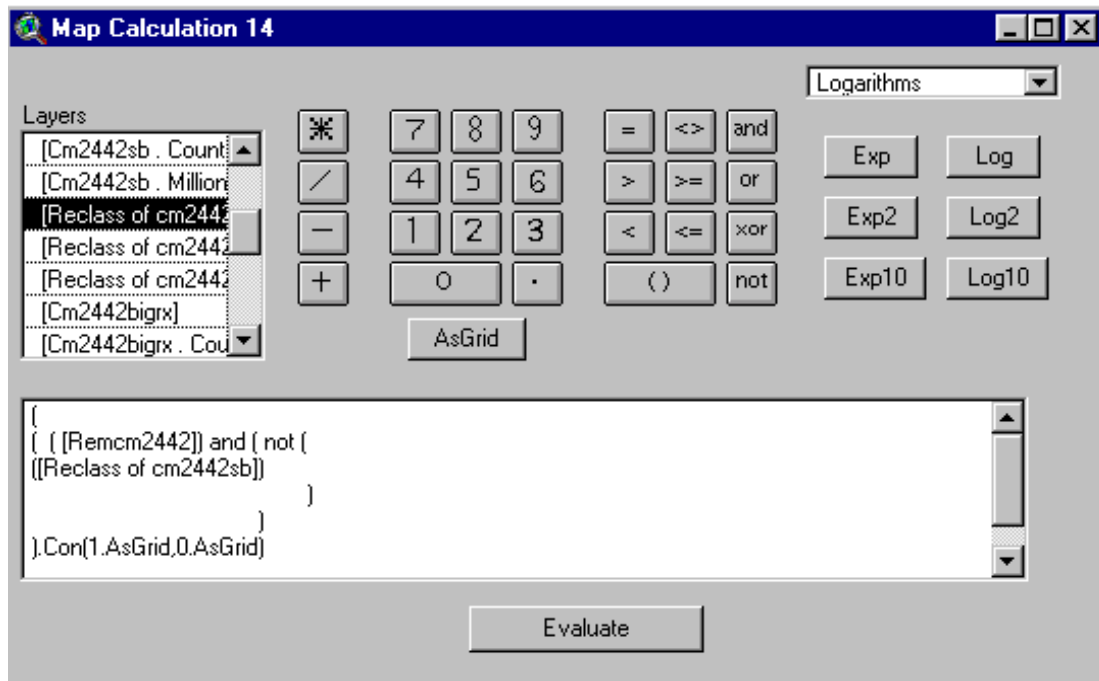
Notice that the 1ˢᵗ coverage in the expression above is the <u>latest remaining coal layer.</u>

Here again you have to substitute in, the correct 1ˢᵗ layer as you iterate, as indicated on the next page.

FIRST ITERATION (cm2442)

The <u>first</u> time you arrive here, you are working on cm2442, therefore the 1st coverage in the expression is:

>   **remcm2442**

SECOND ITERATION (cm4272)

The <u>second</u> time you arrive here, you are working on cm4272, therefore the 1st coverage in the expression is:

>   **remcm4272**

THIRD ITERATION (cm7296)

The <u>third</u> time you arrive here, you are working on cm7296, therefore the 1st coverage in the

expression is:

>   **remcm7296**

FOURTH ITERATION (cm96)

The <u>fourth</u> time you arrive here, you are working on cm96, therefore the 1st coverage in the

expression is:

>   **remcm96**
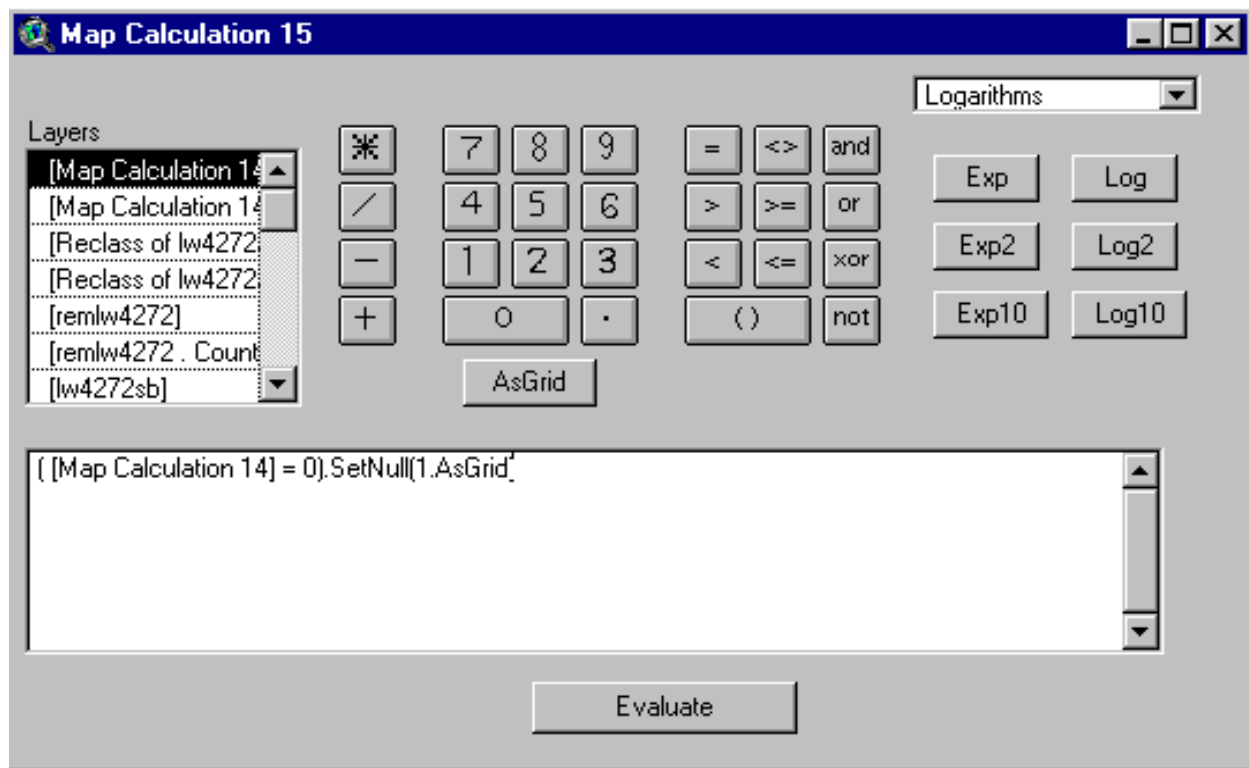
In Theme Properties, rename the new grid as:

remcm2442sb

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to rename and retain.

Estimate Coal Characteristics by Coal Resource Block

Next, we add coal characteristic data to the table for layer, cm2442finalb.

Add the following themes to View1:

 parting10
 sulfur100
 btu16

Use Method A (p. 6-66 & pp. 6-84 through 6-89) to estimate coal characteristics:

 tons of coal
 thickness
 overburden
 parting
 sulfur
 btu/lb

Attributes Of Cm2442finalb

Value	Count	Million_tons_coa	Thickness_(in)	Overburden_(ft)	Parting_(in)	Sulfur_(%)	Btu/lb
0	44118	14.8	35	444	3.8	3.94	12756
320	60691	21.5	37	335	0.6	4.60	12518
321	115372	37.5	34	366	1.0	4.01	12245
322	169861	60.4	37	836	4.3	4.50	12740
323	126474	35.8	30	236	4.9	3.39	12494
324	144879	46.6	34	417	5.7	3.07	13393
325	92105	28.9	33	294	1.6	3.65	13262
326	165659	53.4	34	386	7.9	1.78	13475
999	8469	2.8	34	445	4.0	3.48	12911

Cm2442finalb contains 7 coal resource blocks

We estimate that there are 284 million tons of coal available for room and pillar mining on coal 24 to 42 inches in thickness, using continuous miners.

The largest block has 60.4 million tons

The smallest block has 21.5 million tons

The amount of coal in category 999, 2.8 million tons, is coal in **interior safety barriers.**

A final cleanup step:

Streams and stream buffers were not used as a restriction to room and pillar mining.

In Chapter 5, we calculated the coal in areas with buffered streams for the entire area of the remaining Pittsburgh coal bed. In Chapter 10, we will re-estimate coal in areas with social and environmental limits, accounting for the different treatments between surface and underground mining methods.

Summary, Consolidated Coal 24 to 42 Inches in Thickness

Available coal, room and pillar mining, 24 to 42 in. in thickness   298.9 million tons

Coal in outside safety barriers   4.4 million tons

Coal in interior safety barriers   2.8 million tons

     Total coal in safety barriers   7.2 million tons

Latest updated layer of remaining coal   **Remcm2442sb**

A summary of estimates, starting from Rem16mcell (remaining, chapter 5), is:

Remaining (rem16mcell)	15790.2
Safety barriers (mined-out coal)	157.2
Remaining (rem16buf)	15633.0
Coal <12 inches in thickness	42.1
Remaining (rem16bufp12)	15590.9
Coal allocated to surface mining	918.4
Surface mining safety barriers	80.9
Remaining (remsurfall)	14591.3
Coal allocated to longwall mining	7987.0
Longwall mining safety barriers	100.5
Remaining (remlw96sb)	6504.4
Coal allocated to cm2442 mining	298.9
cm2442 safety barriers	7.2
Remaining (remcm2442sb)	6198.2

The estimates continue to show that the methods are providing consistent analysis.

The remaining tasks are

       To repeat the procedure to estimate available coal in the other thickness categories

Any step that is significantly different will be discussed below.

Otherwise, the procedure for the 24 to 42 inch category is applied

Calculating Tons of Coal Mineable by Room and Pillar Methods, Coal 42 to 72 Inches in Thickness

In Analysis Properties, set the Analysis Mask to

Remcm2442sb

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent Same As Rem16bufp12

Left -155677.503175   Top 1970643.69375

Bottom 1693107.69375   Right 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size Current Value

Cell Size 16   m

Number of Rows 17346

Number of Columns 21718

Analysis Mask remcm2442sb

OK   Cancel

We proceed now to break cminer01 into the 42-72 inch thickness category.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
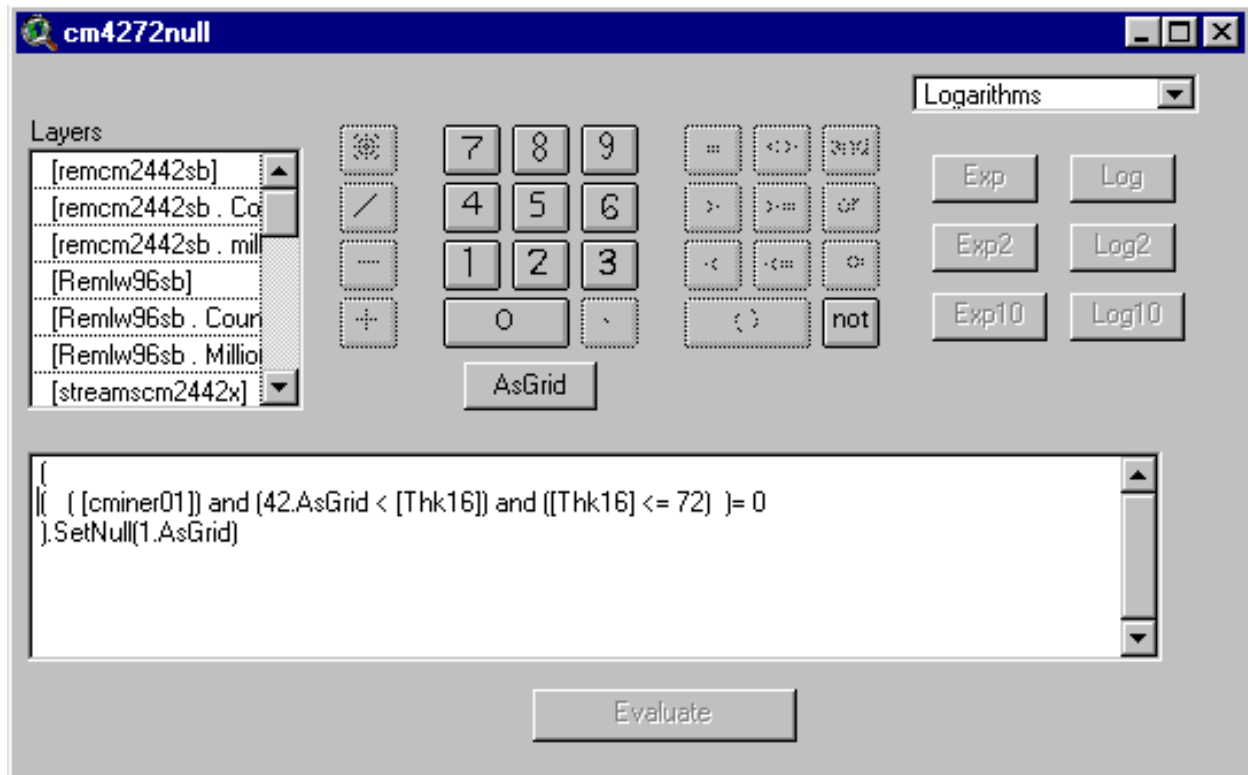
In Theme Properties, rename the new grid as:

cm4272null

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to rename and retain

Set the minimum size mine = 19.750 million tons (table 7-1, column 6, p. 7-2)

Continue processing as indicated on p 9-10.
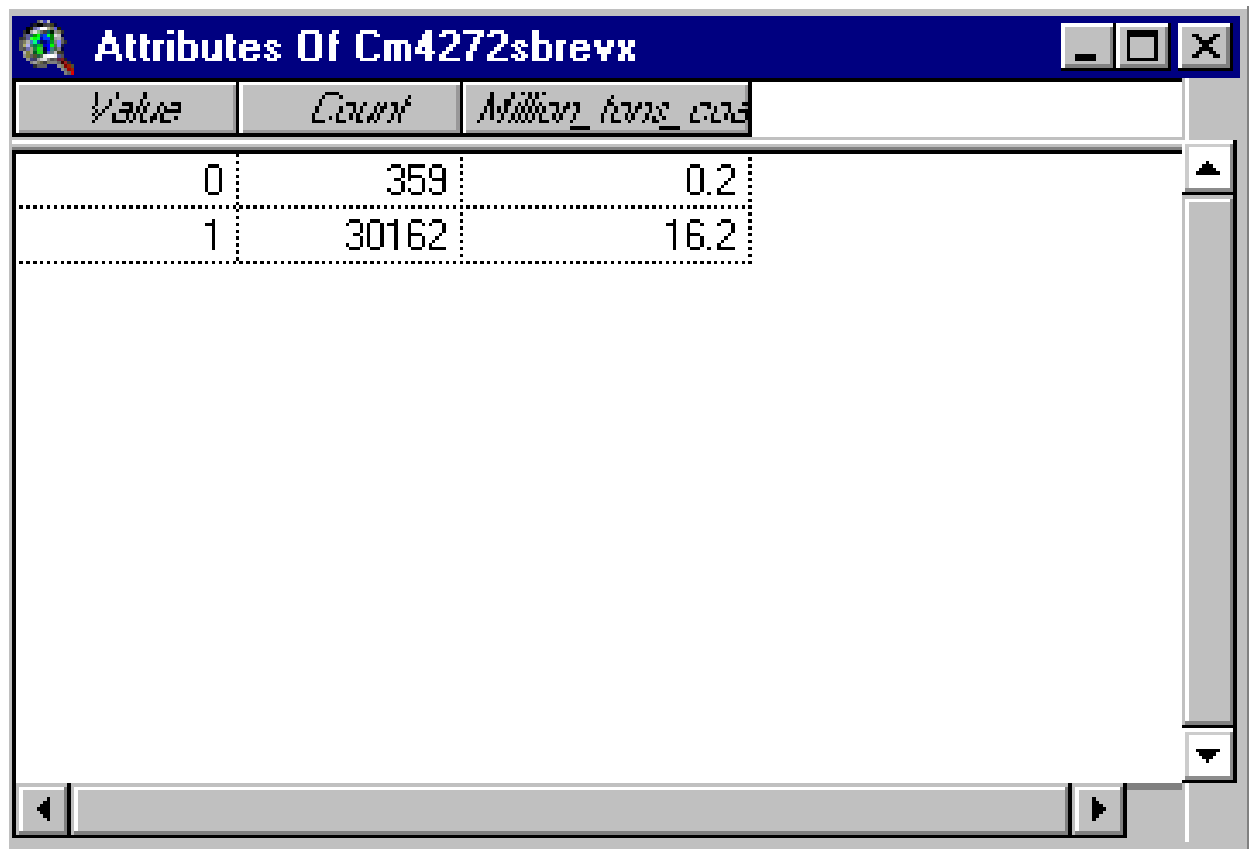
On p 9-33, make the true argument for the conditional equal to

9999.AsGrid
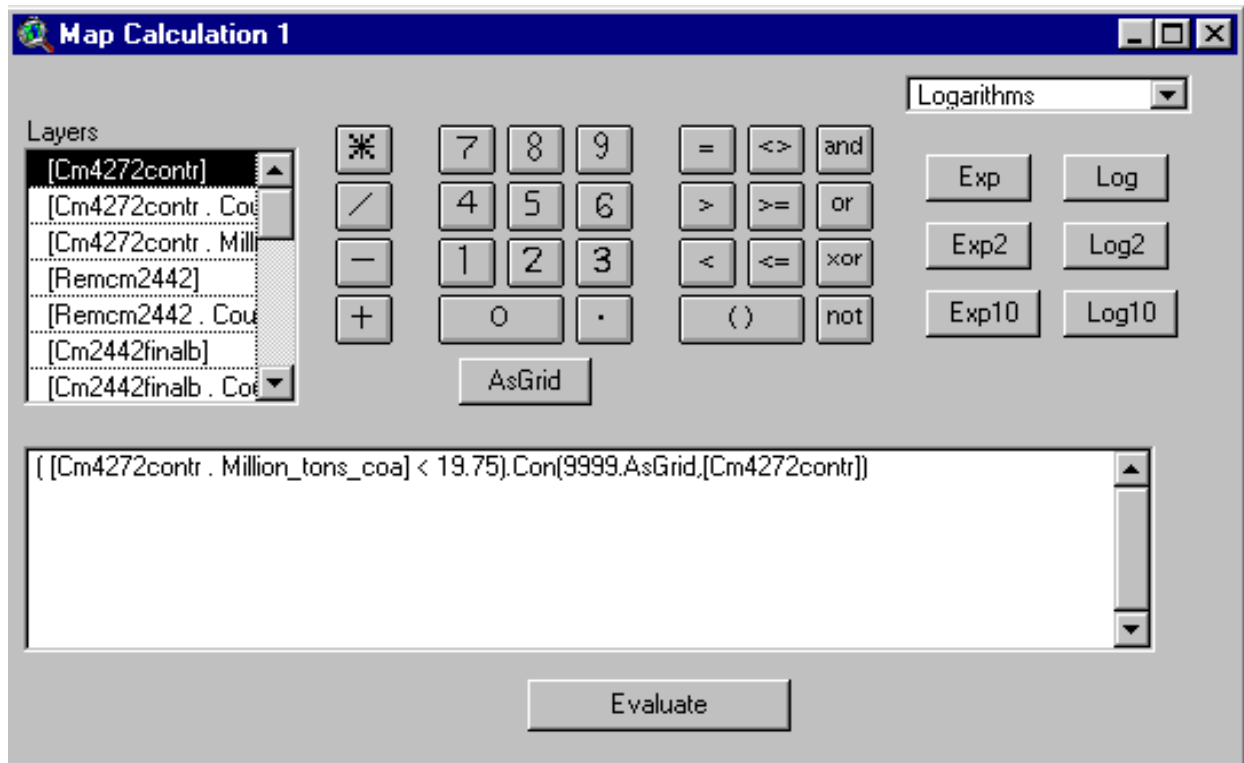
After building this map calculator expression return to p. 9-33.

Tons of coal in outside safety barriers from room and pillar methods using continuous miners, in 42 to 72 inch coal thicknesses, are estimated as 16.2 million tons:

Value	Count	Million_tons_coal
0	359	0.2
1	30162	16.2

Attributes Of Cm4272sbrevx

Final estimates for continuous miner, 42 to 72 inch thicknesses, are:

Value	Count	Million_tons_coal	Thickness_[in]	Overburden_[ft]	Parting_[in]	Sulfur_[%]	Btu/lb
0	217306	117.8	57	336	8.2	3.79	12888
488	131135	63.5	51	289	3.7	4.55	12231
639	58623	36.5	66	246	1.9	1.52	13302
640	40582	25.6	66	444	1.2	1.57	13246
641	127185	69.9	58	317	2.7	2.92	13029
642	91901	54.0	62	306	3.5	2.03	13071
645	105410	53.1	53	286	3.5	4.39	12629
646	96513	51.2	56	310	4.6	4.09	12780
648	114883	71.6	66	585	4.9	4.17	13038
649	59165	35.1	63	343	4.5	4.05	12607
650	94772	55.1	61	232	6.4	3.96	12650
651	88666	50.8	60	229	10.8	3.90	12652
652	93605	50.4	57	172	10.8	3.42	12204
653	70672	38.1	57	193	11.6	4.36	12423
654	100022	50.6	53	212	4.0	4.11	12403
655	53536	29.0	57	258	10.1	4.56	12630
656	86285	52.6	64	298	11.1	4.85	12622
657	47750	30.8	68	344	11.0	4.81	12758
658	70942	34.2	51	168	3.0	4.26	12344
659	136530	64.8	50	253	4.4	4.74	12221

Cm4272finalb contains 36 coal resource blocks.

The sum, 1,743.8 million tons of coal, is the estimate of coal available for room and pillar mining on coal 42 to 72 inches in thickness, using continuous miners.

     The largest block has 71.6 million tons

     The smallest block has 24.2 million tons

The amount of coal in category 999, 20.2 million tons, is coal in **interior safety barriers.**

Summary, Consolidated Coal 42 to 72 Inches in Thickness

Available coal, room and pillar mining, 42 to 72 in. in thickness 1743.8 million tons

Coal in outside safety barriers   16.2 million tons

Coal in interior safety barriers   20.2 million tons

     Total coal in safety barriers   36.4 million tons

Latest updated layer of remaining coal   **Remcm4272sb**

A summary of estimates, starting from Rem16mcell (remaining, chapter 5), is:

Remaining (rem16mcell)	15790.2
Safety barriers (mined-out coal)	157.2
Remaining (rem16buf)	15633.0
Coal <12 inches in thickness	42.1
Remaining (rem16bufp12)	15590.9
Coal allocated to surface mining	918.4
Surface mining safety barriers	80.9
Remaining (remsurfall)	14591.3
Coal allocated to longwall mining	7987.0
Longwall mining safety barriers	100.5
Remaining (remlw96sb)	6504.4
Coal allocated to cm2442 mining	298.9
cm2442 safety barriers	7.2
Remaining (remcm2442sb)	6198.2
Coal allocated to cm4272 mining	1861.6
cm4272 safety barriers	36.6
Remaining (remcm4272sb)	4299.9

The estimates continue to show that the methods are providing consistent analysis.

Calculating Tons of Coal Mineable by Room and Pillar Methods, Coal 72 to 96 Inches in Thickness

In Analysis Properties, set the Analysis Mask to

Remcm4272sb

We proceed now to break cminer01 into the 72-96 inch thickness category.
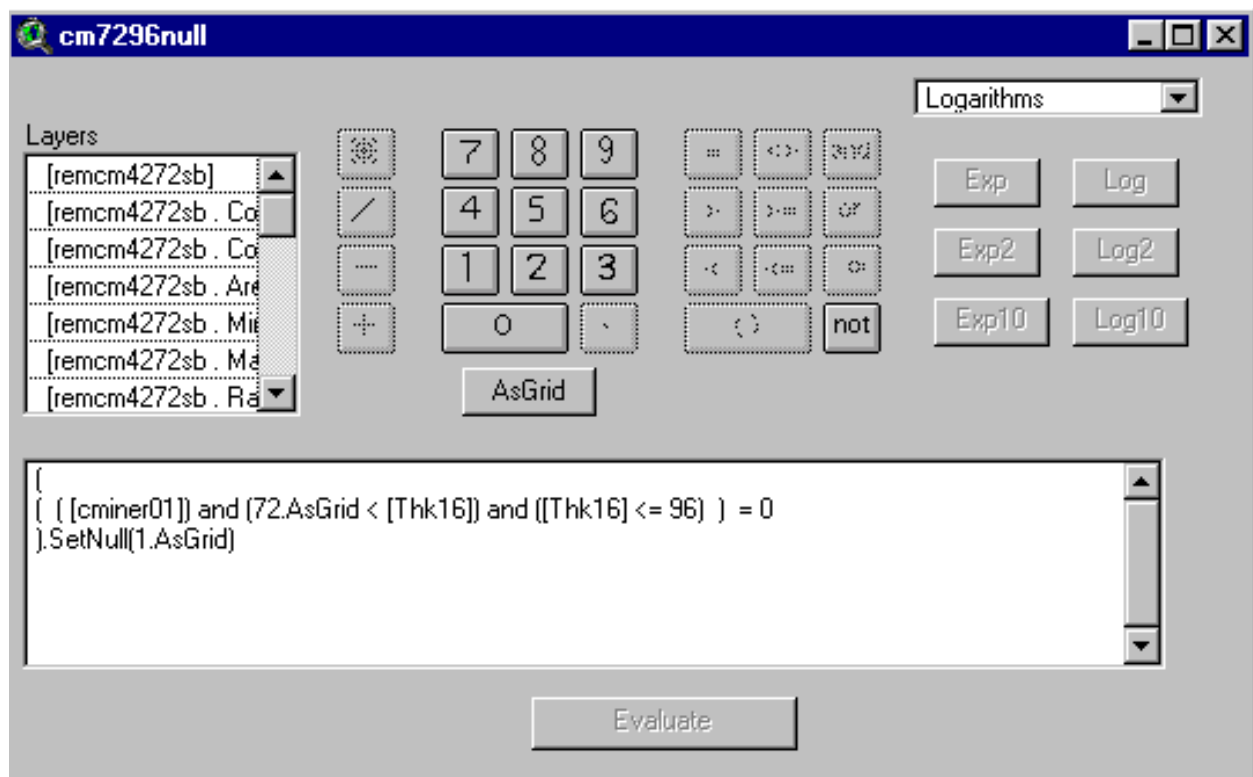
In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:

In Theme Properties, rename the new grid as:
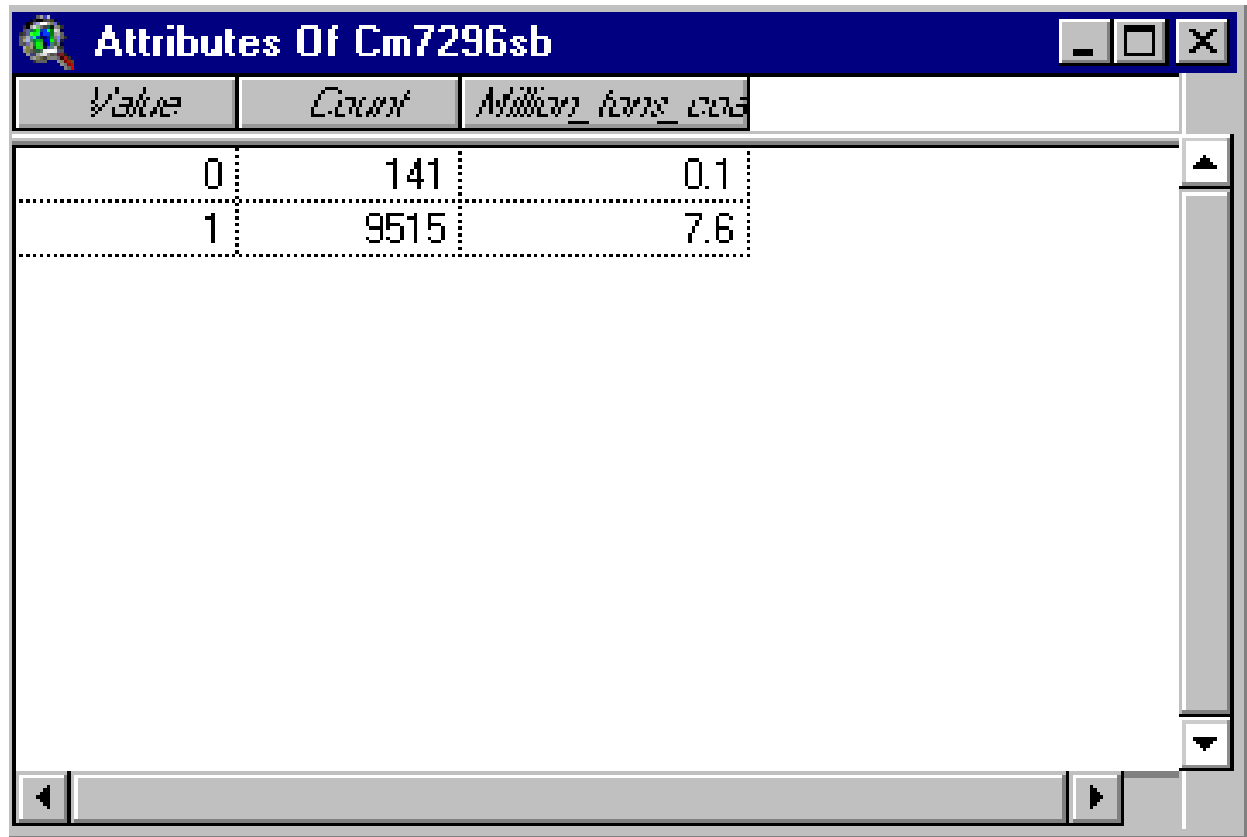
cm7296null

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to rename and retain

Set the minimum size mine = 25.897 million tons (table 7-1, column 6, p. 7-2)

Continue processing as indicated on p 9-10.

Tons of coal in outside safety barriers from room and pillar methods using continuous miners, in 72 to 96 inch coal thicknesses, are estimated as 2.9 million tons:

Attributes Of Cm7296sb

Value	Count	Million_tons_coa
0	141	0.1
1	9515	7.6

Final estimates for continuous miner, 72 to 96 inch thicknesses, are:

Value	Count	Million_tons_coal	Thickness_(in)	Overburden_(ft)	Parting_(in)	Sulfur_(%)	Btu/lb
616	56618	43.9	82	687	6.0	2.23	13363
617	59207	44.2	79	810	3.1	1.90	13434
618	77134	61.0	83	546	1.2	1.57	13553
619	90850	68.9	80	594	2.9	1.64	13536
624	118901	87.0	77	680	7.4	3.77	13147
625	100155	73.9	78	516	4.3	3.45	13210
626	101267	73.5	77	326	11.6	4.76	12726
627	57588	44.5	81	843	2.1	2.94	13536
628	40613	33.3	87	696	2.0	3.19	13451
629	107421	87.5	86	898	2.9	2.84	13571
630	40934	31.9	82	1050	3.3	3.77	13159
631	53025	45.8	91	893	4.4	2.40	13615
632	60066	45.8	80	536	18.9	3.03	13243
633	105794	79.0	79	283	8.3	1.79	13455
634	90779	77.8	90	827	6.8	3.32	13447

Cm7296finalb contains 23 coal resource blocks.

The sum, 1412.9 million tons of coal, is the estimate of coal available for room and pillar mining on coal 72 to 96 inches in thickness, using continuous miners.

The largest block has 87.5 million tons

The smallest block has 31.9 million tons

The amount of coal in category 999, 18.6 million tons, is coal in **interior safety barriers.**

Summary, Consolidated Coal 72 to 96 Inches in Thickness

Available coal, room and pillar mining, 72 to 96 in. in thickness   1412.9 million tons

Coal in outside safety barriers   7.6 million tons

Coal in interior safety barriers   18.6 million tons

    Total coal in safety barriers   26.2 million tons

Latest updated layer of remaining coal   **Remcm7296sb**

A summary of estimates, starting from Rem16mcell (remaining, chapter 5), is:

Remaining (rem16mcell)	15790.2
Safety barriers (mined-out coal)	157.2
Remaining (rem16buf)	15633.0
Coal <12 inches in thickness	42.1
Remaining (rem16bufp12)	15590.9
Coal allocated to surface mining	918.4
Surface mining safety barriers	80.9
Remaining (remsurfall)	14591.3
Coal allocated to longwall mining	7987.0
Longwall mining safety barriers	100.5
Remaining (remlw96sb)	6504.4
Coal allocated to cm2442 mining	298.9
cm2442 safety barriers	7.2
Remaining (remcm2442sb)	6198.2
Coal allocated to cm4272 mining	1861.6
cm4272 safety barriers	36.6
Remaining (remcm4272sb)	4299.9
Coal allocated to cm7296 mining	1495.9
cm7296 safety barriers	26.3
Remaining (remcm7296sb)	2777.6

The estimates continue to show that the methods are providing consistent analysis.

Calculating Tons of Coal Mineable by Room and Pillar Methods, Coal > 96 Inches in Thickness

In Analysis Properties, set the Analysis Mask to

Remcm7296sb

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent Same As Rem16bufp12

Left -155677.503175   Top 1970643.69375

Bottom 1693107.69375   Right 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size Current Value

Cell Size 16   m

Number of Rows 17346

Number of Columns 21718

Analysis Mask remcm7296sb

OK   Cancel

We proceed now to break cminer01 into the >96 inch thickness category.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
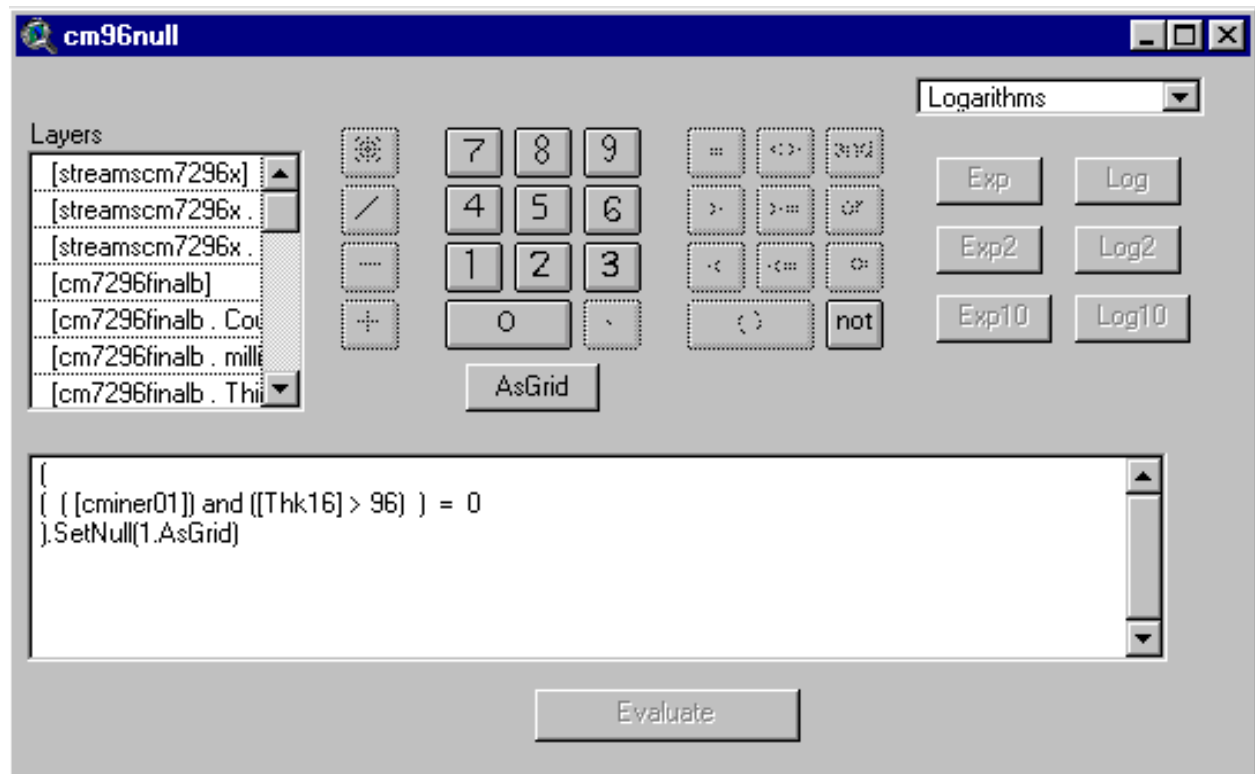
In Theme Properties, rename the new grid as:

    cm96null

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to rename and retain

Set the minimum size mine = 29.442 million tons (table 7-1, column 6, p. 7-2)

Continue processing as indicated on p 9-10.
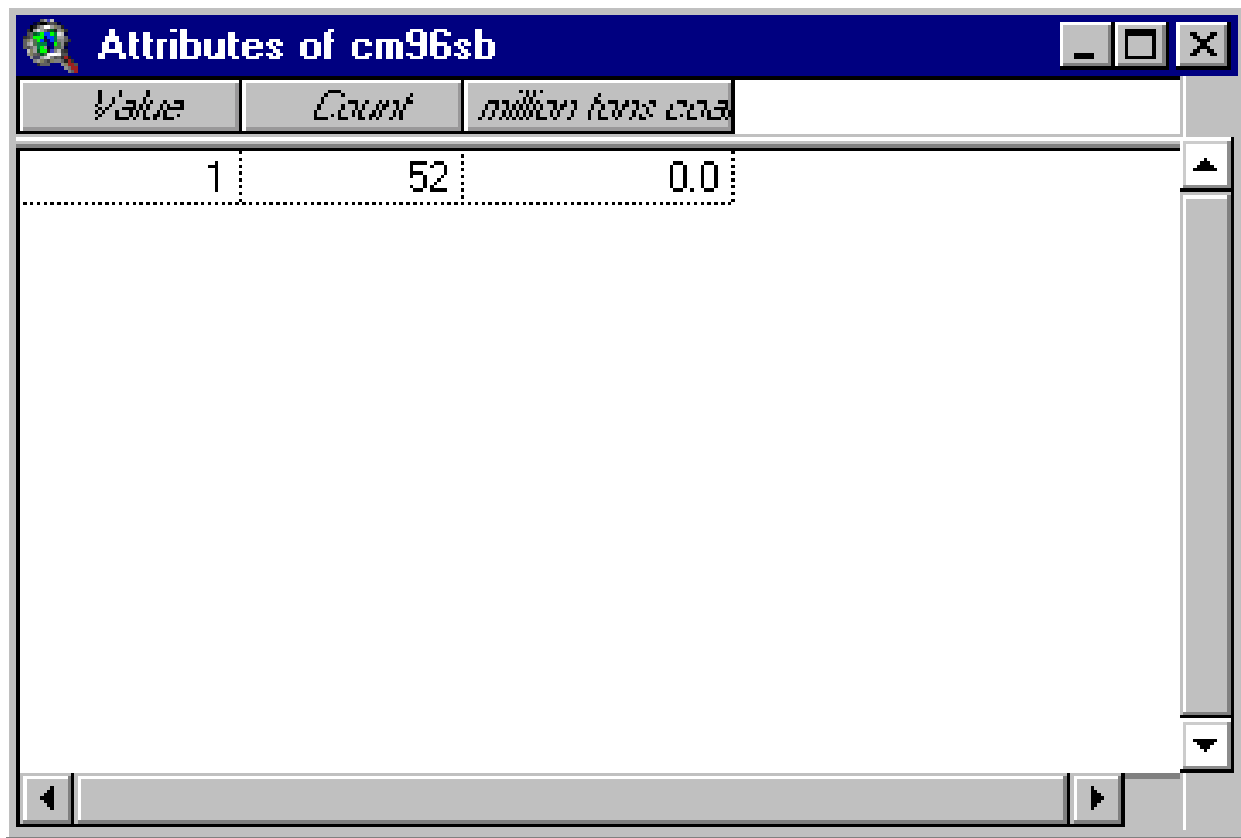
To keep the restricted areas as a separate category use the following request (<u>in place of the request demonstrated on p. 9-33):</u>
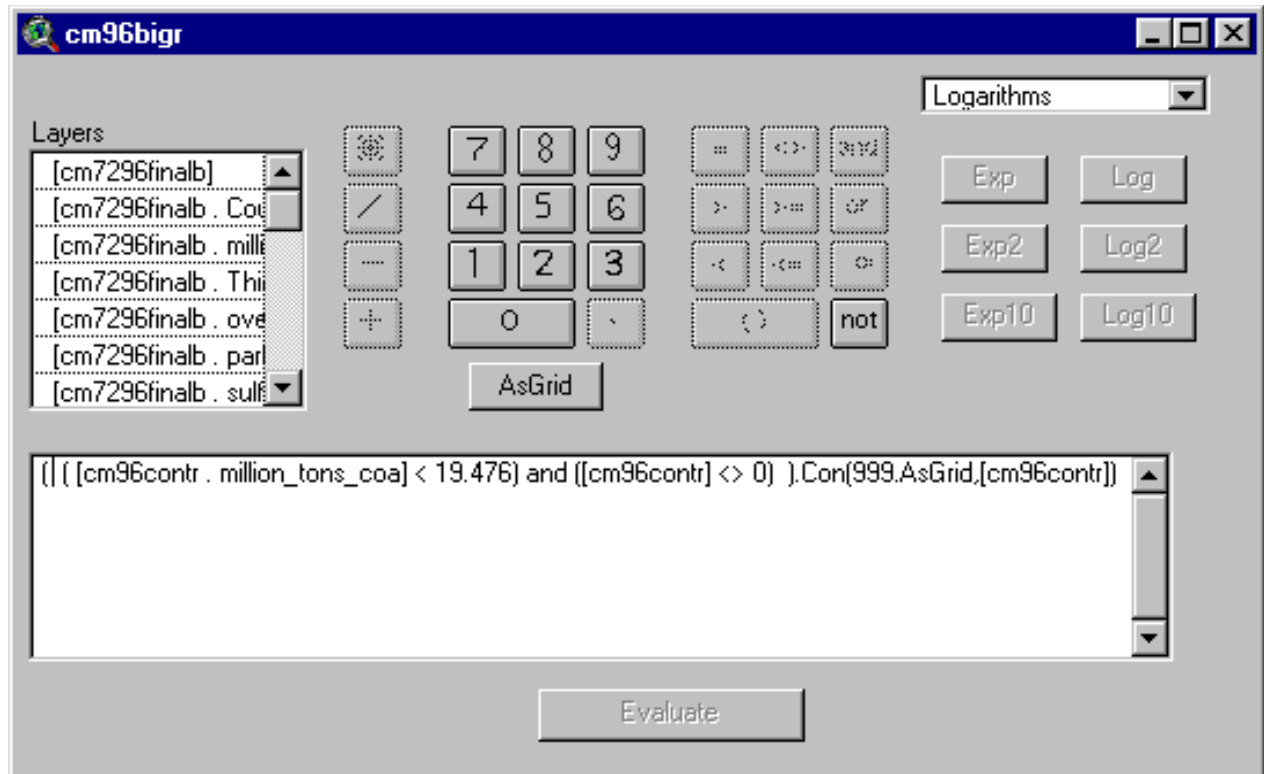
Return to p 9-34 and continue with the normal processing through p. 9-39.

On p. 9-39, you are given some different instructions for cm96.

Tons of coal in outside safety barriers from room and pillar methods using continuous miners, in > 96 inch coal thickness, are estimated as 0.0 million tons:

Value	Count	million tons coal
1	52	0.0
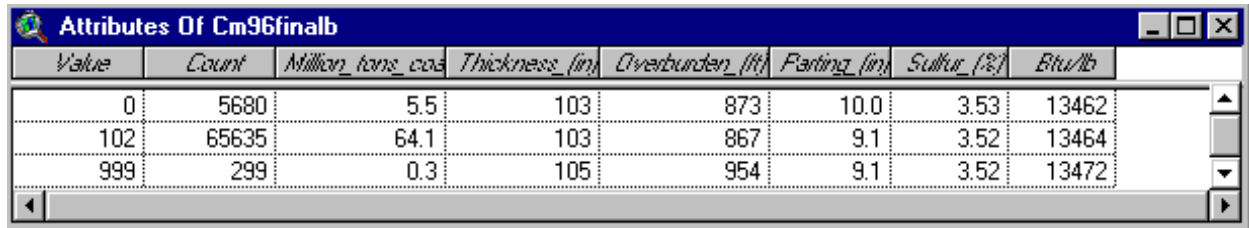
There is negligible coal in outside safety barriers for the 1 block of coal resources, continuous miner >96 inch coal.

Note:

> **There is no remcm96sb grid because there was no coal in exterior safety barriers**

This result is correct for the Pittsburgh coal bed. Other beds may have coal in exterior safety barriers in which case you need to follow all the processing steps.

Final estimates for continuous miner, > 96 inch thickness, are:

Value	Count	Million_tons_coal	Thickness_(in)	Overburden_(ft)	Parting_(in)	Sulfur_(%)	Btu/lb
0	5680	5.5	103	873	10.0	3.53	13462
102	65635	64.1	103	867	9.1	3.52	13464
999	299	0.3	105	954	9.1	3.52	13472

Cm96final contains 1 coal resource block.

There are 64.1million tons of coal available for room and pillar mining on coal > 96 inches in thickness, using continuous miners.

There are 0.3 million tons in **interior safety barriers.**

Summary, Consolidated Coal 96 Inches and Greater in Thickness

Available coal, room and pillar mining, > 96 in. in thickness   64.1 million tons

Coal in outside safety barriers   0.0 million tons

Coal in interior safety barriers   0.3 million tons

    Total coal in safety barriers   0.3million tons

Latest updated layer of remaining coal   **Remcm96**

Summary, Coal Mineable by Room and Pillar Methods Using Continuous Miners

Next, we summarize results to this point

Tons of Coal Available for Mining		
Category	**million tons**	**million tons includes coal in restricted areas**
Room & Pillar Mining, 24-42 inch thickness	284.1	298.9
Room & Pillar Mining, 42-72 inch thickness	1743.8	1861.6
Room & Pillar Mining, 72-96 inch thickness	1412.9	1495.9
Room & Pillar Mining, > 96 inch thickness	64.1	69.6
Total	**3504.9**	**3726.0**

Tons of Coal in Safety Barriers		
Category	**million tons**	**million tons includes coal in restricted areas**
Room & Pillar Mining, 24-42 inch thickness	7.2	7.2
Room & Pillar Mining, 42-72 inch thickness	36.4	36.6
Room & Pillar Mining, 72-96 inch thickness	26.2	26.3
Room & Pillar Mining, > 96 inch thickness	0.0	0.3
Total	**69.8**	**70.4**

The third column in the tables adds coal in restricted areas.

The method used to update the remaining coal layer accounts for the restricted coal and the coal allocated to each category.

A summary of estimates, starting from Rem16mcell (remaining, chapter 5), is:

Remaining (rem16mcell)	15790.2
Safety barriers (mined-out coal)	157.2
Remaining (rem16buf)	15633.0
Coal <12 inches in thickness	42.1
Remaining (rem16bufp12)	15590.9
Coal allocated to surface mining	918.4
Surface mining safety barriers	80.9
Remaining (remsurfall)	14591.3
Coal allocated to longwall mining	7987.0
Longwall mining safety barriers	100.5
Remaining (remlw96sb)	6504.4
Coal allocated to cm2442 mining	298.9
cm2442 safety barriers	7.2
Remaining (remcm2442sb)	6198.2
Coal allocated to cm4272 mining	1861.6
cm4272 safety barriers	36.6
Remaining (remcm4272sb)	4299.9
Coal allocated to cm7296 mining	1495.9
cm7296 safety barriers	26.3
Remaining (remcm7296sb)	2777.6
Coal allocated to cm96 mining	69.6
cm96 safety barriers	0.3
Remaining (remcm96)	2707.8

The estimates continue to show that the methods are providing consistent analysis.
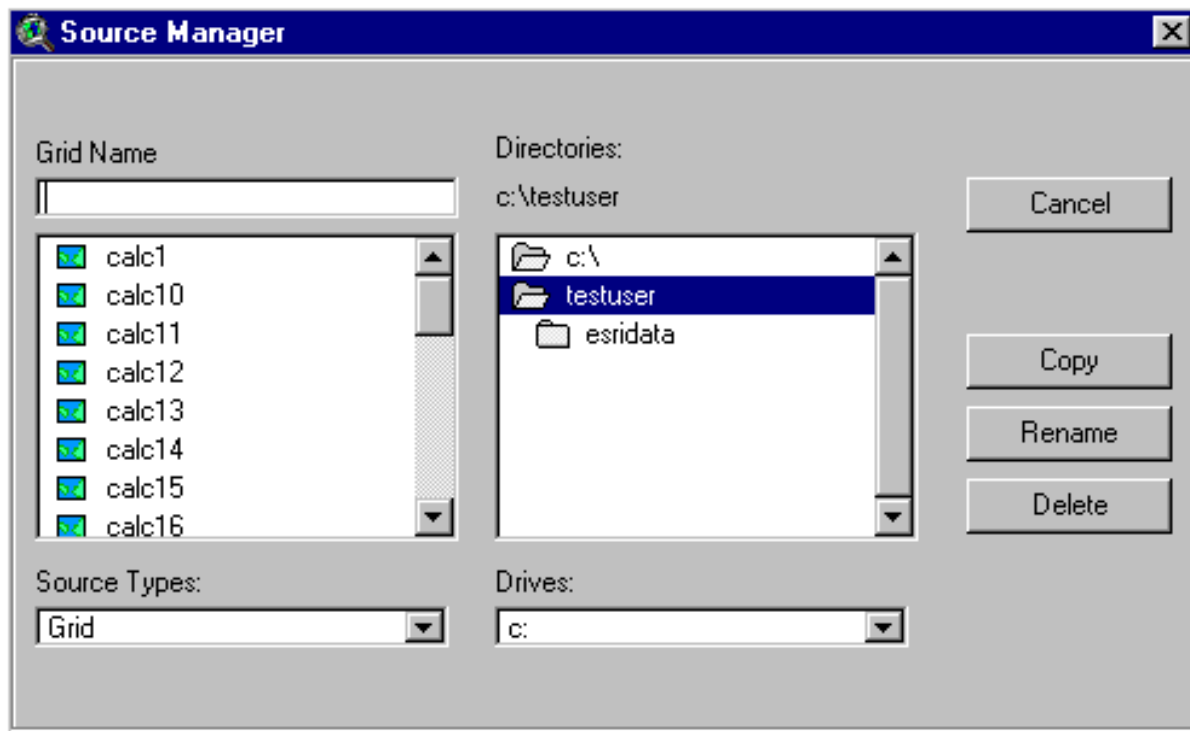
Rename grids to more convenient names

Save the current project.

Start a new project.

Open a new view.

Toggle on the Spatial Analyst Extension.

Under File Menu, click "Manage Data Sources" to access the Source Manager:

Then rename the initial grids with the following names:

(You would, of course, use your project path when you rename the grids.)

Coverage	Original Name	New Name
Coal that meets technical requirements to be mined by room and pillar methods (R&P) using continuous miners	c:\testuser\calc9	c:\testuser\cminer01
R&P mineable coal as a 1-null coverage	c:\testuser\calc10	c:\testuser\cminer1null
R&P mineable coal, 24-42 inches in thickness, as a 1-null coverage	c:\testuser\calc11	c:\testuser\cm2442null
R&P mineable coal, 24-42 inches in thickness, as a 0-1 coverage	c:\testuser\calc13	c:\testuser\cm2442zero
R&P mineable coal, 24-42 inches in thickness, with coal grouped into blocks when cells are contiguous	c:\testuser\calc12	c:\testuser\cm2442contx
R&P mineable coal, 24-42 inches in thickness, grouped with restricted cells removed from available coal	c:\testuser\calc14	c:\testuser\cm2442contr
R&P mineable coal, 24-42 inches in thickness, with blocks having fewer tons than the minimum size mine removed from available coal	c:\testuser\calc15	c:\testuser\cm2442bigr

R&P mineable coal, 24-42 inches in thickness, in resource blocks equal to or greater than the minimum size resource block, as a 0 (restricted) and block # coverage	c:\testuser\calc16	c:\testuser\cm2442bigrx
R&P mineable coal, 24-42 inches in thickness, in coal resource blocks	c:\testuser\cm2442bigrxgrid.shp	
R&P mineable coal, 24-42 inches in thickness, updated coal resource blocks (after on-the-fly editing)	c:\testuser\calc18	c:\testuser\cm2442final
Latest updated layer of remaining coal, takes R&P 24-42 out of previous remaining layer	c:\testuser\calc19	c:\testuser\remcm2442
Layer of coal in outside safety barriers, R&P mineable coal, 24-42 inches in thickness	c:\testuser\calc24	c:\testuser\cm2442sb
R&P mineable coal, 24-42 inches in thickness, coal resource blocks and interior safety barriers	c:\testuser\calc26	c:\testuser\cm2442finalb
Latest updated layer of remaining coal, takes outside safety barriers for R&P 24-42 out of previous remaining layer	c:\testuser\calc29	c:\testuser\remcm2442sb
Stream buffers on available coal, R&P mining 24-42 inches in thickness	c:\testuser\calc31	c:\testuser\strcm2442x

R&P mineable coal, 42-72 inches in thickness, as a 1-null coverage	c:\testuser\calc20	c:\testuser\cm4272null
R&P mineable coal, 42-72 inches in thickness, as a 0-1 coverage	c:\testuser\calc21	c:\testuser\cm4272zero
R&P mineable coal, 42-72 inches in thickness, with coal grouped into blocks when cells are contiguous	c:\testuser\calc22	c:\testuser\cm4272contx
R&P mineable coal, 42-72 inches in thickness, grouped with restricted cells removed from available coal	c:\testuser\calc23	c:\testuser\cm4272contr
R&P mineable coal, 42-72 inches in thickness, with blocks having fewer tons than the minimum size mine removed from available coal	c:\testuser\calc27	c:\testuser\cm4272bigr
R&P mineable coal, 42-72 inches in thickness, in resource blocks equal to or greater than the minimum size resource block, as a 0 (restricted) and block # coverage	c:\testuser\calc25	c:\testuser\cm4272bigrx
R&P mineable coal, 42-72 inches in thickness, in coal resource blocks	c:\testuser\cm4272bigrxgrid.shp	
R&P mineable coal, 42-72 inches in thickness, updated coal resource blocks (after on-the-fly editing)	c:\testuser\calc33	c:\testuser\cm4272final
Latest updated layer of remaining coal, takes R&P 42-72 out of previous remaining layer	c:\testuser\calc35	c:\testuser\remcm4272

Layer of coal in outside safety
barriers, R&P mineable coal,
42-72 inches in thickness   c:\testuser\calc39   c:\testuser\cm4272sb

R&P mineable coal, 42-72
inches in thickness, coal resource
blocks and interior safety
barriers   c:\testuser\calc42   c:\testuser\cm4272finalb

Latest updated layer of remaining
coal, takes outside safety
barriers for R&P 42-72 out
of previous remaining layer   c:\testuser\calc44   c:\testuser\remcm4272sb

Stream buffers on available
coal, R&P mining 42-72
inches in thickness   c:\testuser\calc46   c:\testuser\strcm4272x

R&P mineable coal, 72-96
inches in thickness, as a 1-null
coverage   c:\testuser\calc47   c:\testuser\cm7296null

R&P mineable coal, 72-96
inches in thickness, as a 0-1
coverage   c:\testuser\calc48   c:\testuser\cm7296zero

R&P mineable coal, 72-96
inches in thickness, with coal
grouped into blocks when cells
are contiguous   c:\testuser\calc49   c:\testuser\cm7296contx

R&P mineable coal, 72-96
inches in thickness, grouped
with restricted cells removed
from available coal   c:\testuser\calc50   c:\testuser\cm7296contr

R&P mineable coal, 72-96
inches in thickness, with blocks
having fewer tons than the
minimum size mine removed
from available coal   c:\testuser\calc51   c:\testuser\cm7296bigr

R&P mineable coal, 72-96
inches in thickness, in resource
blocks equal to or greater than
the minimum size resource block,
as a 0 (restricted) and block #
coverage   c:\testuser\calc52   c:\testuser\cm7296bigrx

R&P mineable coal, 72-96
inches in thickness, in coal
resource blocks   c:\testuser\cm7296bigrxgrid.shp

R&P mineable coal, 72-96
inches in thickness, updated
coal resource blocks (after
on-the-fly editing)   c:\testuser\calc54   c:\testuser\cm7296final

Latest updated layer of remaining
coal, takes R&P 72-96 out
of previous remaining layer   c:\testuser\calc56   c:\testuser\remcm7296

Layer of coal in outside safety
barriers, R&P mineable coal,
72-96 inches in thickness   c:\testuser\calc60   c:\testuser\cm7296sb

R&P mineable coal, 72-96
inches in thickness, coal resource
blocks and interior safety
barriers   c:\testuser\calc63   c:\testuser\cm7296finalb

Latest updated layer of remaining
coal, takes outside safety
barriers for R&P 72-96 out
of previous remaining layer   c:\testuser\calc65   c:\testuser\remcm7296sb

Stream buffers on available
coal, R&P mining 72-96
inches in thickness   c:\testuser\calc67   c:\testuser\strcm7296x

R&P mineable coal, > 96 inches in thickness, as a 1-null coverage	c:\testuser\calc68	c:\testuser\cm96null
R&P mineable coal, > 96 inches in thickness, as a 0-1 coverage	c:\testuser\calc69	c:\testuser\cm96zero
R&P mineable coal, > 96 inches in thickness, with coal grouped into blocks when cells are contiguous	c:\testuser\calc70	c:\testuser\cm96contx
R&P mineable coal, > 96 inches in thickness, grouped with restricted cells removed from available coal	c:\testuser\calc71	c:\testuser\cm96contr
R&P mineable coal, > 96 inches in thickness, with blocks having fewer tons than the minimum size mine removed from available coal	c:\testuser\calc73	c:\testuser\cm96bigr
R&P mineable coal, > 96 inches in thickness, in resource blocks equal to or greater than the minimum size resource block, as a 0 (restricted) and block # coverage	c:\testuser\calc72	c:\testuser\cm96bigrx
R&P mineable coal, > 96 inches in thickness, updated coal resource blocks (after on-the-fly editing)	c:\testuser\cm96grida	c:\testuser\cm96final
Latest updated layer of remaining coal, takes R&P > 96 out of previous remaining layer	c:\testuser\calc75	c:\testuser\remcm96

R&P mineable coal, 96
inches in thickness, coal resource
blocks and interior safety
barriers   c:\testuser\calc77   c:\testuser\cm96finalb

Layer of coal in outside safety
barriers, R&P mineable coal,
> 96 inches in thickness   c:\testuser\calc79   c:\testuser\cm96sb

Stream buffers on available
coal, R&P mining > 96
inches in thickness   c:\testuser\calc81   c:\testuser\strcm96x

Congratulations!!!!

You have finished Chapter 9.

You have completed a detailed analysis of coal available for room and pillar mining.

Our methods are on track to produce consistent estimates.

Chapter 10.

RESIDUAL COAL CATEGORIES

Purpose: In this chapter, we estimate the tons of coal in residual categories.

Overview: Residual categories include (1) coal which meets thickness and overburden technical requirements for **longwall extraction** but is not mineable because the slope of the bed exceeds 12 degrees; (2) coal which meets thickness and overburden technical requirements for **room and pillar extraction** but is not mineable because the slope of the bed exceeds 12 degrees; (3) coal which meets thickness and overburden technical requirements for contour strip mining but is not mineable because the slope of the surface exceeds 32 degrees; (4) coal that is not mineable because it has thickness between 12 and 24 inches and an overburden ratio greater than 20 to 1 (too thin for room and pillar and too deep for contour strip mining); (5) coal over 24 inches in thickness with overburden less than 100 feet (cannot use room and pillar) and an overburden ratio greater than 20 to 1 (cannot use contour strip mining); (6) all other remaining coal in blocks too small for mining by any of the technologies, termed fragmented coal. Analysis is applied to estimate the coal in each category. The coal is subtracted from the latest estimate of remaining coal in order to maintain an "adding up" check on our methods.

Our method in this chapter is to use the latest updated layer of remaining coal as a mask and then determine the coal by category as outlined in the preceding paragraph. As we finish a category, we remove that coal from the latest remaining layer to obtain an updated remaining layer. This procedure avoids double counting. Throughout the Pittsburgh coal bed, there are many cells in our coverages that fall into more than a single category across all the categories we consider. Our method guarantees that each cell is assigned to only one category.

Before we calculate the coal in the last category, fragmented coal, we remove the area with restrictions in the following 7 categories (which make up the union7restr layer):

> Parks
> Interstate Highways
> Oil and Gas Wells
> Water Bodies
> Urbanized Areas
> Populated Places
> Natural Gas Pipelines

This identifies the coal in the fragmented category that is not mineable because it occurs in a restricted area. The rationale for separating the restricted coal from other coal (in the fragmented category) is that the coal became fragmented because of the restrictions. The restrictions broke up the continuity of the coal.

Coal that meets thickness and overburden requirements but not the slope requirement for longwall and room and pillar extraction.
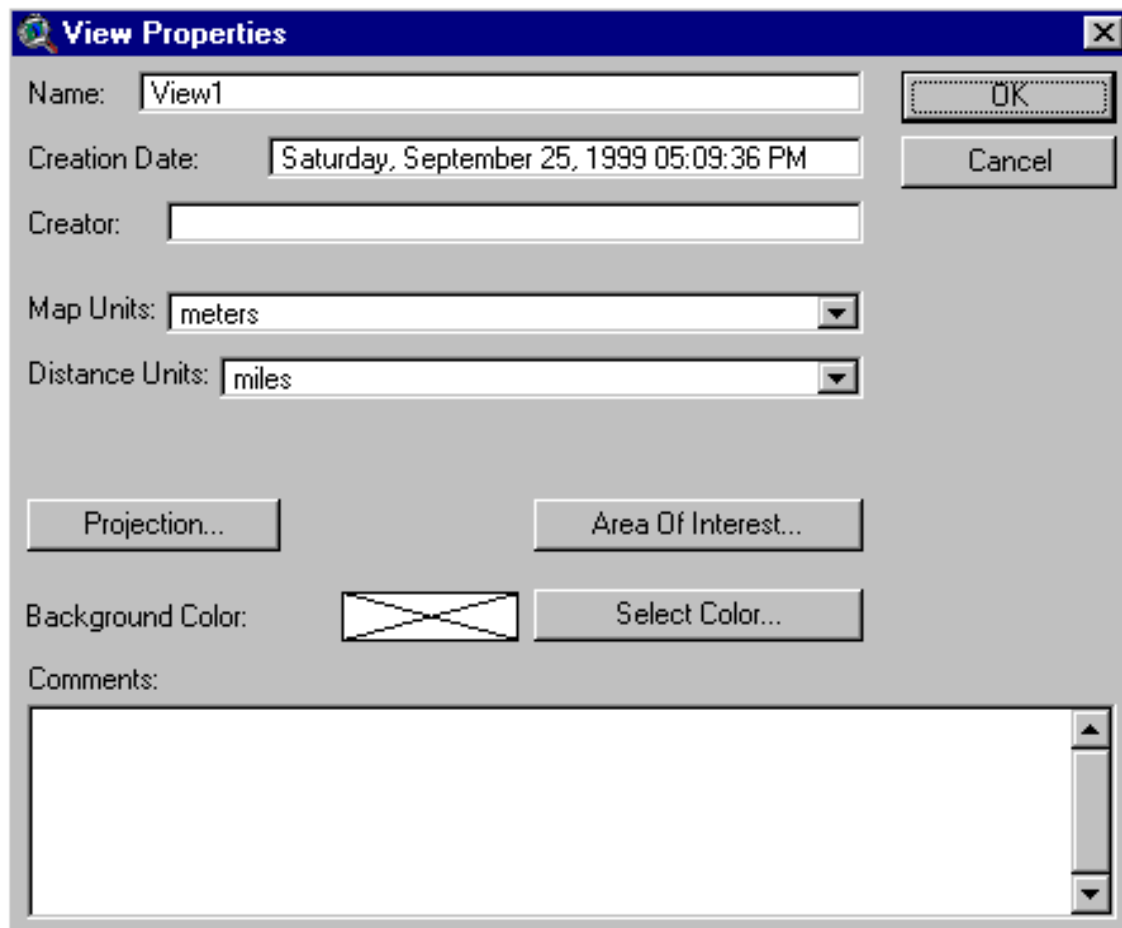
Open a new ArcView project.

Add a View Window. Do not add any themes.

Under the File Menu, set Working Directory to your project path.

Work Directory ☒

Specify new work directory   OK

| c:\testuser | Cancel

Open View Properties and enter these settings:

View Properties ☒

Name: | View1 | OK

Creation Date: | Saturday, September 25, 1999 05:09:36 PM | Cancel

Creator: | |

Map Units: | meters ▼ |

Distance Units: | miles ▼ |

Projection...   Area Of Interest...

Background Color: | ⊠ | Select Color...

Comments:

| | ▲
  |
  |
  |
  | ▼

Under the File Menu

  Click Extensions

  Toggle on

    Spatial Analyst

In View1, add these grid themes:

> bedslope
> ob16
> rem16bufp12
> remcm96
> thk16
> tonsbycell
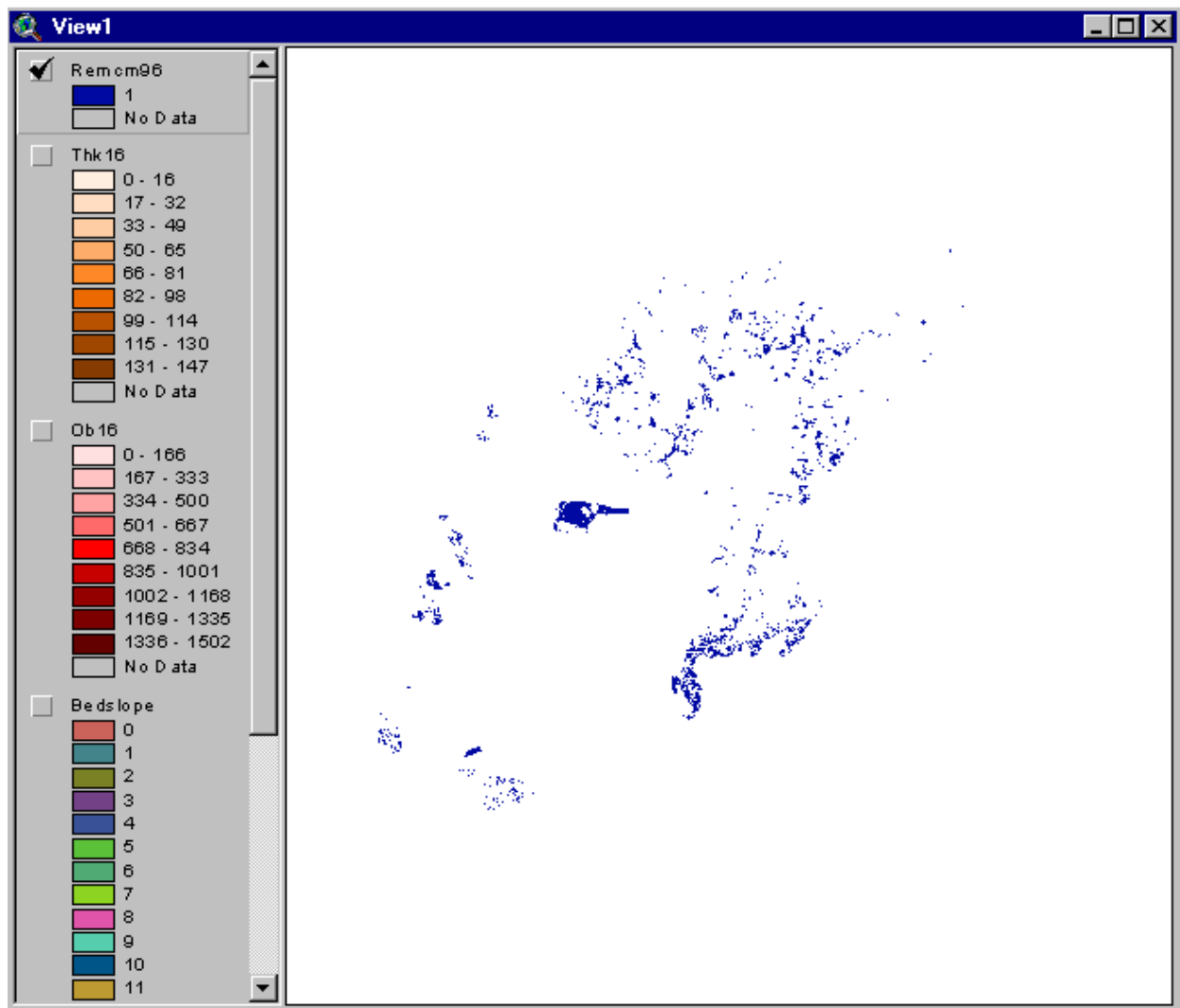
In Analysis Properties, enter these settings:

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent Same As Rem16bufp12

Left -155677.503175   Top 1970643.69375

Bottom 1693107.69375   Right 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size As Specified Below

Cell Size 16   cm

Number of Rows 17346

Number of Columns 21718

Analysis Mask Remcm96

OK   Cancel

Delineate Layer of Coal, Underground Mineable, With Slope of Bed Greater than 12 Degrees and Estimate the Tonnage in this Layer

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
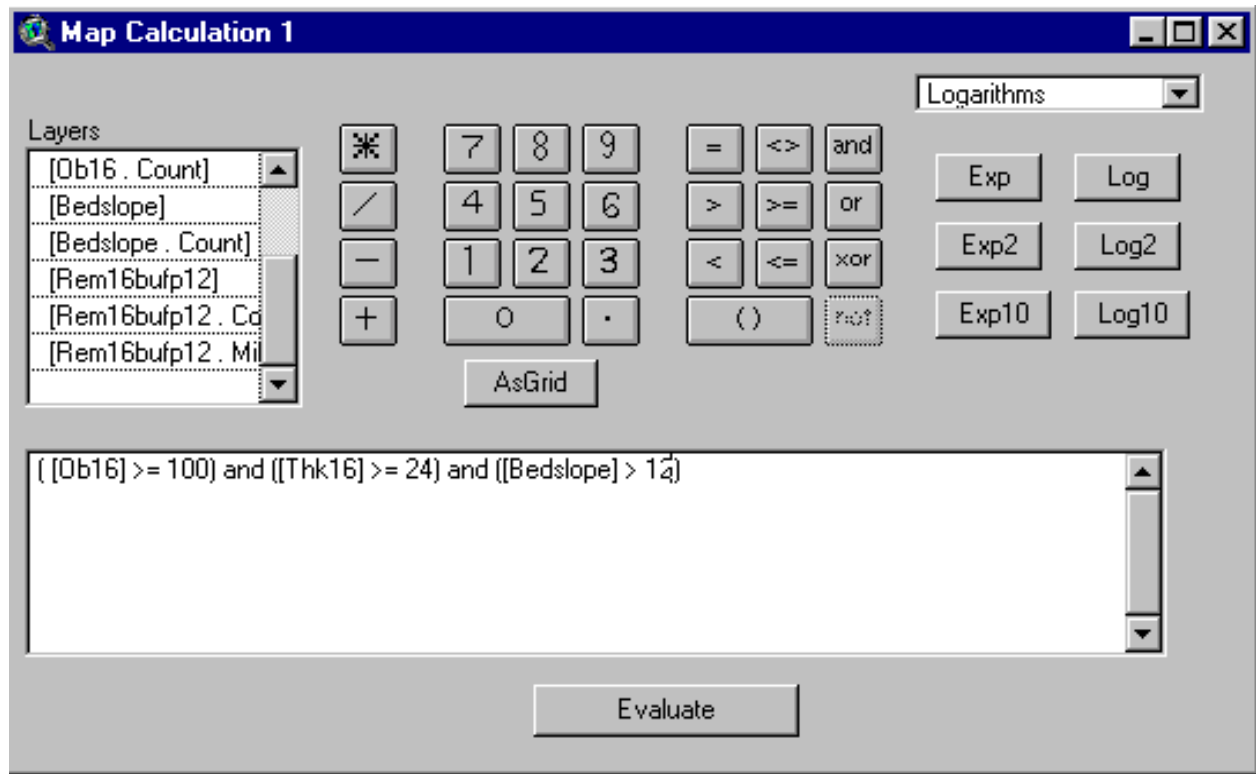
In Theme Properties, rename Map Calculation 1 as: bedslopegt12.

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to retain and rename.
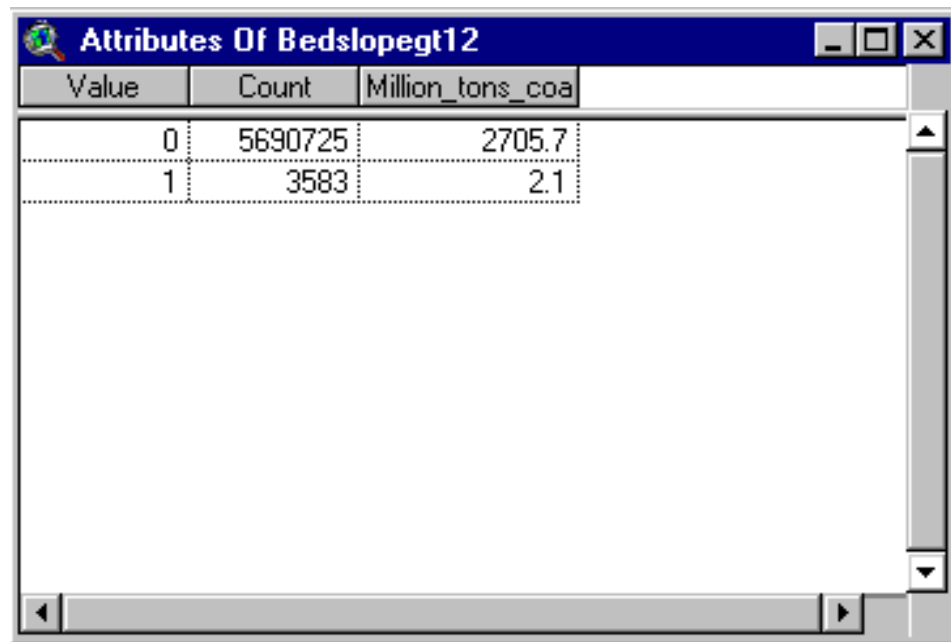
These cells include coal that would be mineable by either room and pillar or by longwall methods except for the fact that the bed has a slope in excess of 12 degrees.

Longwall mineable coal is included because the limits of equal to or greater than 100 feet for overburden also include overburden at or above 300 feet needed for longwall extraction.

Similarly, the condition on coal thickness includes coal that could be mined either by room and pillar or longwall methods.
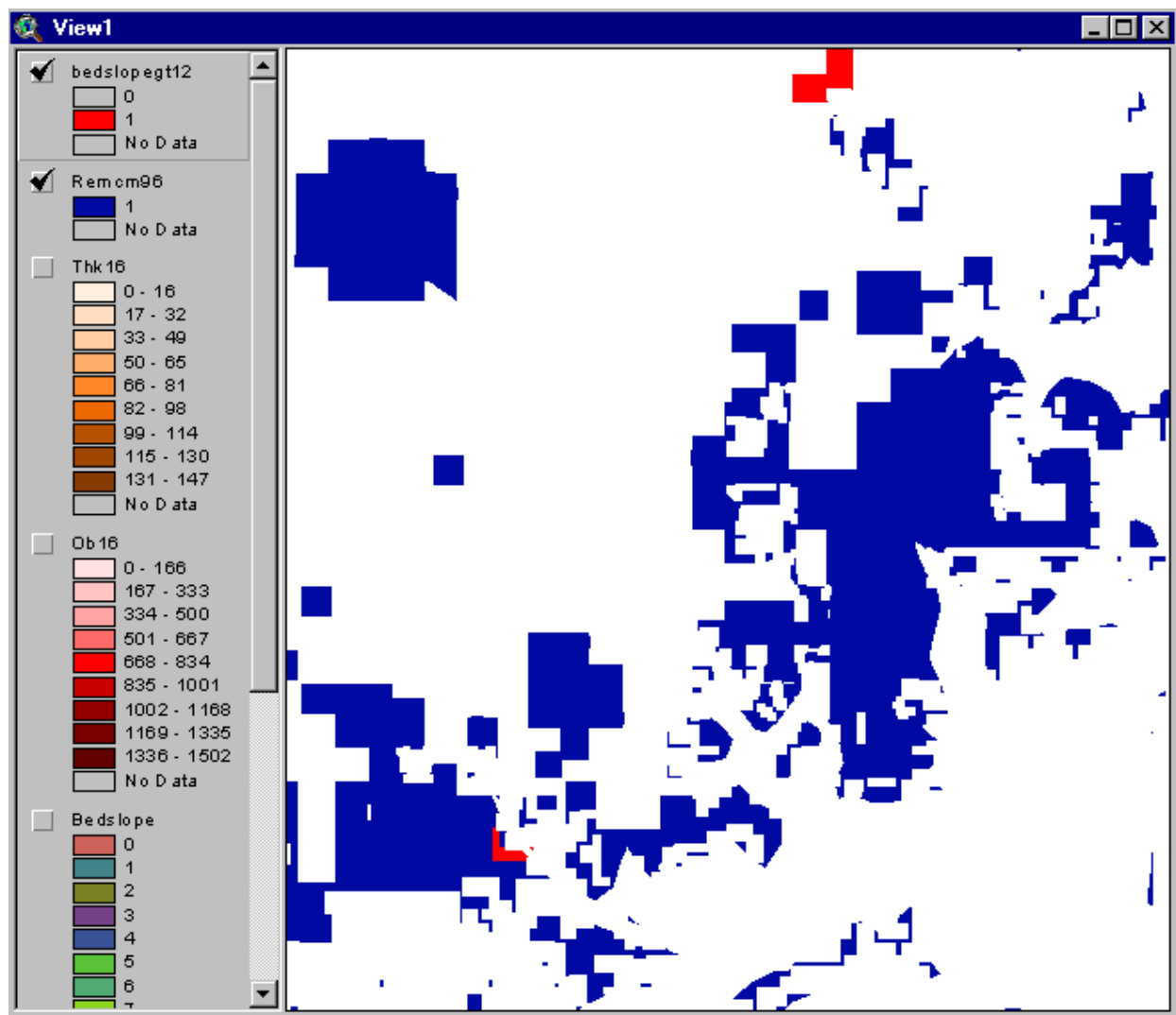
Use Method A (pp. 6-66 and 6-84) to calculate the tons of coal in the area where the bed has a slope exceeding 12 degrees:

Attributes Of Bedslopegt12		
Value	Count	Million_tons_coal
0	5690725	2705.7
1	3583	2.1

There are 2.1 million tons of coal in areas where the bed slope exceeds 12 degrees. This coal is not mineable by longwall or room and pillar methods because the slope is too steep.

Update Layer of Remaining Coal by Removing Coal Where the Slope of the Bed Exceeds 12 Degrees

Next, we update the remaining coal coverage by removing the coal in bedslopegt12 from the latest remaining coal coverage.

The latest remaining coal coverage is remcm96.

Open Analysis Properties, and change Analysis Mask to rem16bufp12:

We reclassify bedslopegt12 as follows:

Reclassify Values

Classification Field: Value

[Classify...] [Unique] [Lookup...]

Old Values	New Value
0	1
1	No Data
No Data	No Data

[+] [X]

[Load]

[Save] [OK] [Cancel]

In Theme Properties, rename the new grid as

Rembslopegt12

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to rename and retain.

A summary of estimates, starting from Rem16mcell (remaining, chapter 5), is:

Remaining (rem16mcell)	15790.2
Safety barriers (mined-out coal)	157.2
Remaining (rem16buf)	15633.0
Coal <12 inches in thickness	42.1
Remaining (rem16bufp12)	15590.9
Coal allocated to surface mining	918.4
Surface mining safety barriers	80.9
Remaining (remsurfall)	14591.3
Coal allocated to longwall mining	7987.0
Longwall mining safety barriers	100.5
Remaining (remlw96sb)	6504.4
Coal allocated to cm2442 mining	298.9
cm2442 safety barriers	7.2
Remaining (remcm2442sb)	6198.2
Coal allocated to cm4272 mining	1861.6
cm4272 safety barriers	36.6
Remaining (remcm4272sb)	4299.9
Coal allocated to cm7296 mining	1495.9
cm7296 safety barriers	26.3
Remaining (remcm7296sb)	2777.6
Coal allocated to cm96 mining	69.6
cm96 safety barriers	0.3
Remaining (remcm96)	2707.8
R&P and longwall coal	
with bedslope > 12 degrees	2.1
Remaining (rembslopegt12)	2705.7

Delineate coal that meets thickness and stripping ratio requirements but not the slope requirement for contour strip extraction.

In Analysis Properties, enter these settings:

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent   Same As Rem16bufp12

Left -155677.503175   Top 1970643.69375

Bottom 1693107.69375   Right 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size   Current Value

Cell Size   16   cm

Number of Rows   17346

Number of Columns   21718

Analysis Mask   Rembslopegt12

OK   Cancel

Add grids: stripratio10 and surfslope, to View1.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
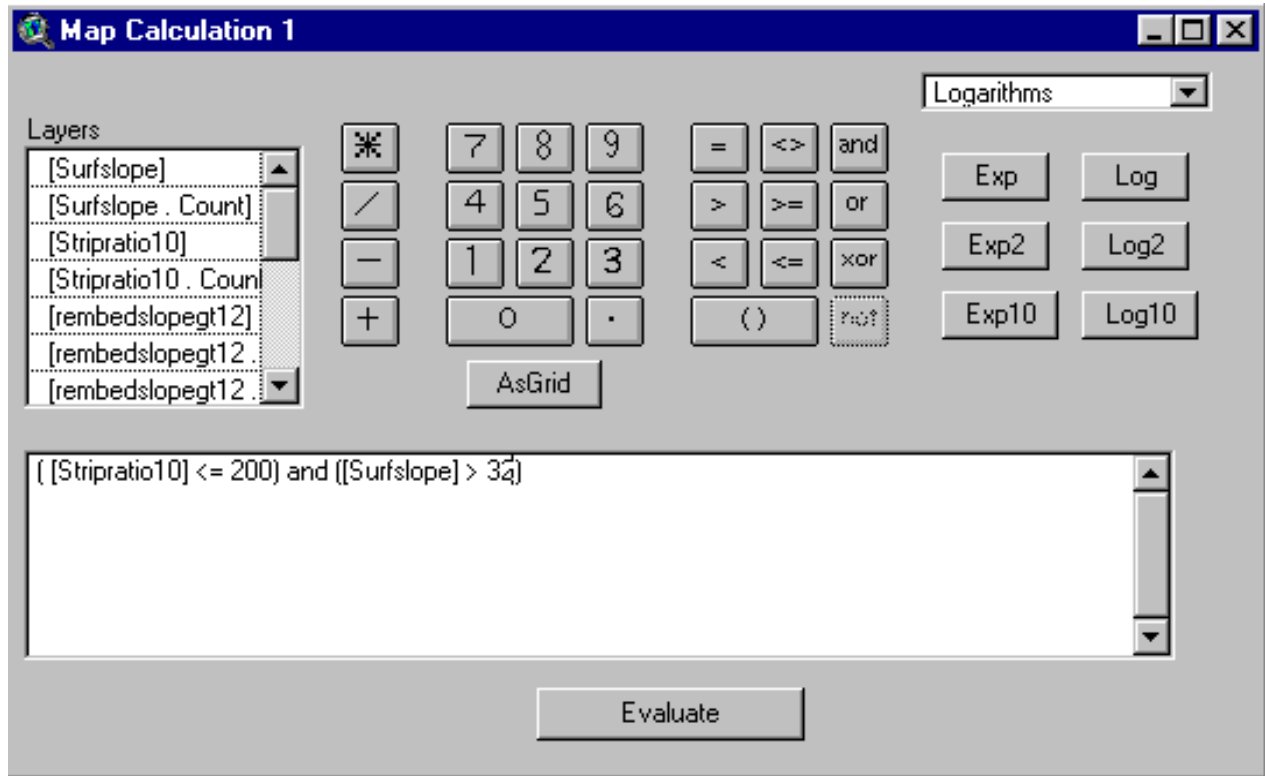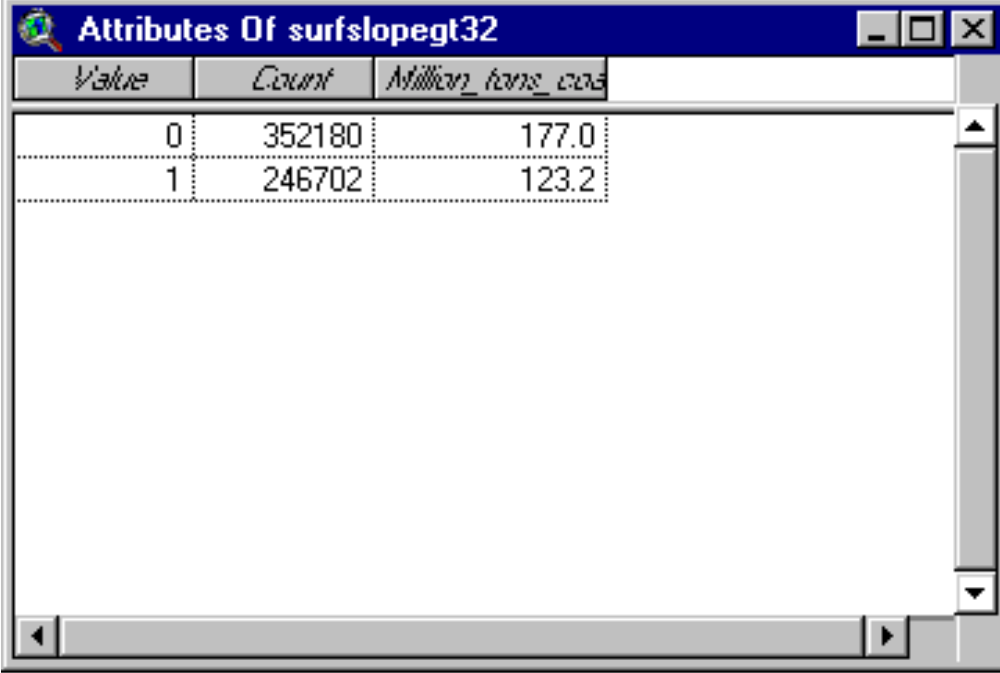
In Theme Properties, rename Map Calculation 1 as:

Surfslopegt32

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to rename and retain.

Use Method A (pp. 6-66 and 6-84) to calculate the tons of coal in the area where the surface has a slope exceeding 32 degrees:

Attributes Of surfslopegt32

Value	Count	Million_tons_coal
0	352180	177.0
1	246702	123.2
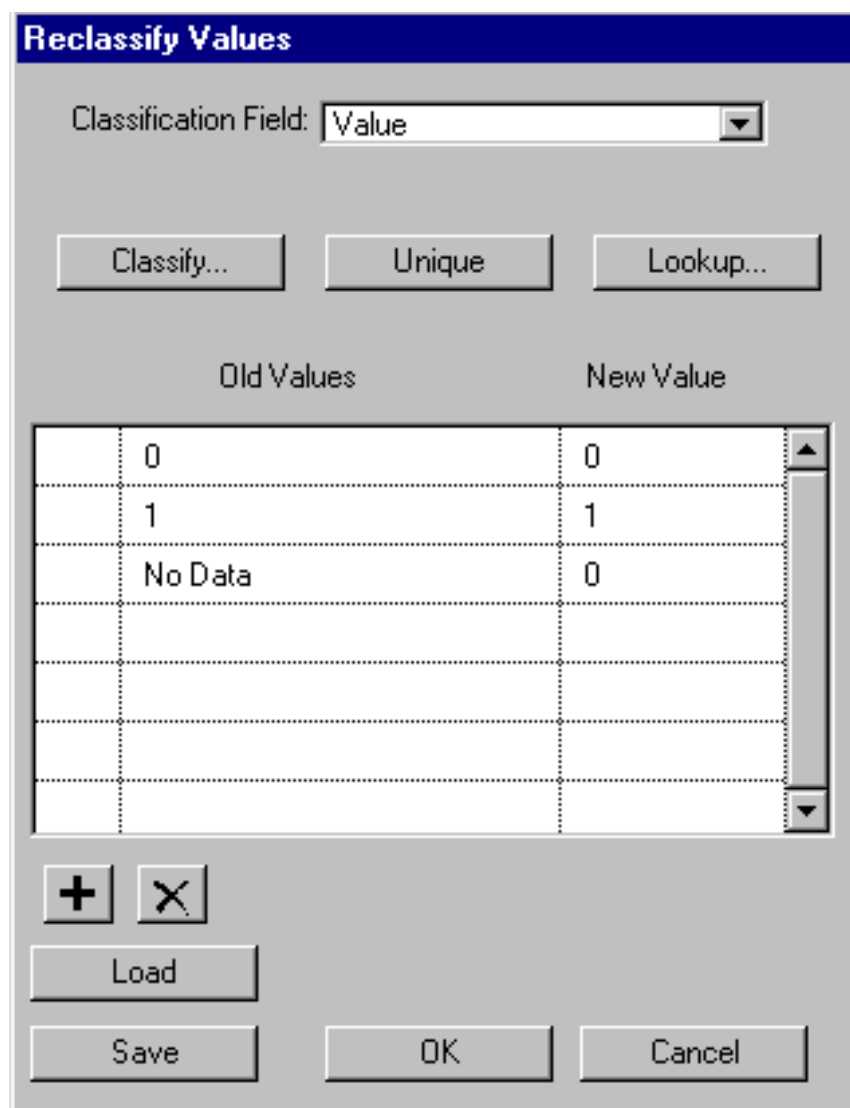
There are 123.2 million tons of coal in areas where the surface slope exceeds 32 degrees. This coal is not mineable by strip contour methods because the surface slope is too steep.

Update Layer of Remaining Coal by Removing Coal Where the Surface Slope Exceeds 32 Degrees

Next, we update the remaining coal coverage by removing the coal with surface slope greater than 32 degrees from the latest remaining coal coverage.

The latest remaining coal coverage is rembslopegt12.
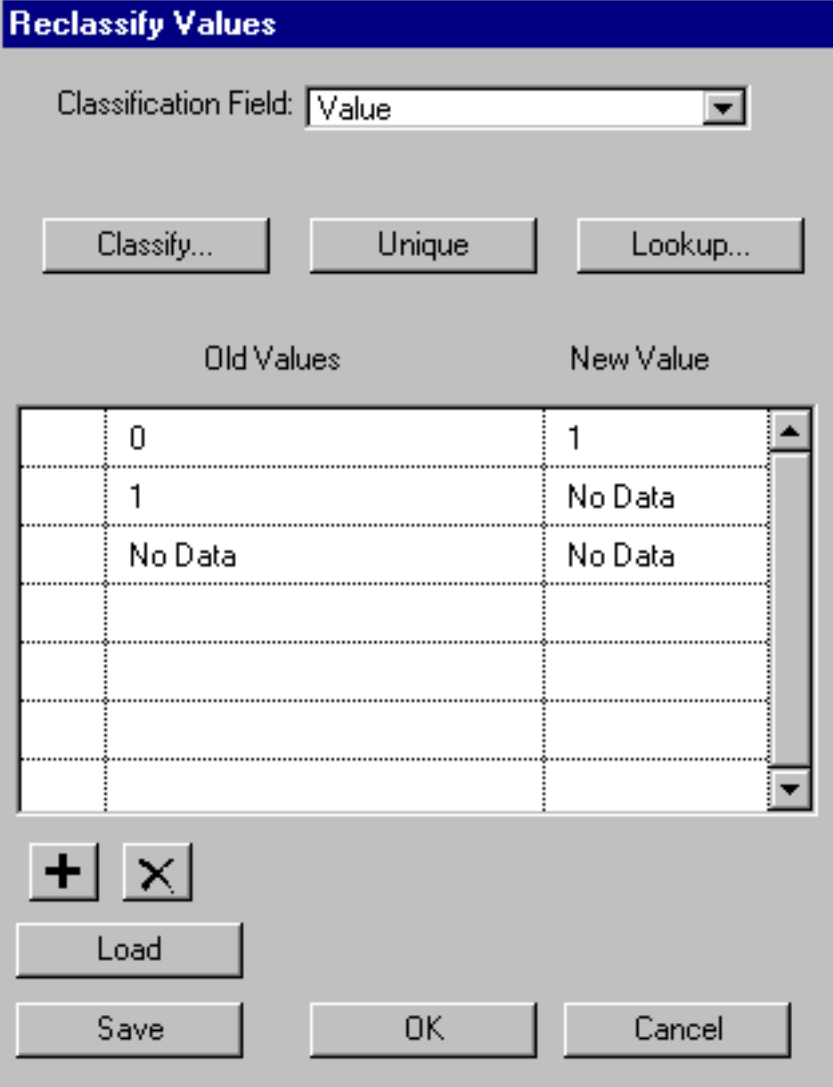
Reclassify surfslopegt32 as follows:

Reclassify, Reclass of Surfslopegt32, as follows:

Reclassify Values

Classification Field: Value

| | Classify... | | Unique | | Lookup... | |

Old Values	New Value
0	1
1	No Data
No Data	No Data

+ ×

Load

Save   OK   Cancel

In Theme Properties, rename the new grid as:

Remssgt32

Record its **source** in the list of coverages to rename and retain.

Use Method A (pp. 6-66 and 6-84) to calculate the tons of coal in remssgt32:

Value	Count	Million_tons_coa
1	5442927	2582.5

The estimate, 2,582.5 million tons, is the coal remaining after removal of the surface mineable coal that cannot be mined because the surface slope exceeds 32 degrees.

A summary of estimates, starting from Rem16mcell (remaining, chapter 5), is:

Remaining (rem16mcell)	15790.2
Safety barriers (mined-out coal)	157.2
Remaining (rem16buf)	15633.0
Coal <12 inches in thickness	42.1
Remaining (rem16bufp12)	15590.9
Coal allocated to surface mining	918.4
Surface mining safety barriers	80.9
Remaining (remsurfall)	14591.3
Coal allocated to longwall mining	7987.0
Longwall mining safety barriers	100.5
Remaining (remlw96sb)	6504.4
Coal allocated to cm2442 mining	298.9
cm2442 safety barriers	7.2
Remaining (remcm2442sb)	6198.2
Coal allocated to cm4272 mining	1861.6
cm4272 safety barriers	36.6
Remaining (remcm4272sb)	4299.9
Coal allocated to cm7296 mining	1495.9
cm7296 safety barriers	26.3
Remaining (remcm7296sb)	2777.6
Coal allocated to cm96 mining	69.6
cm96 safety barriers	0.3
Remaining (remcm96)	2707.8
R&P and longwall coal	
with bedslope > 12 degrees	2.1
Remaining (rembslopegt12)	2705.7
Strippable coal	
with surface slope >32 degrees	123.2
Remaining (remssgt32)	2582.5

Delineate coal that has thickness of at least 12 inches and less than 24 inches but a stripping ratio greater than 20 to 1.

In Analysis Properties, enter these settings:

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent `Same As Rem16bufp12`

Left `-155677.503175`   Top `1970643.69375`

Bottom `1693107.69375`   Right `191810.496825`

Analysis Cell Size `Current Value`

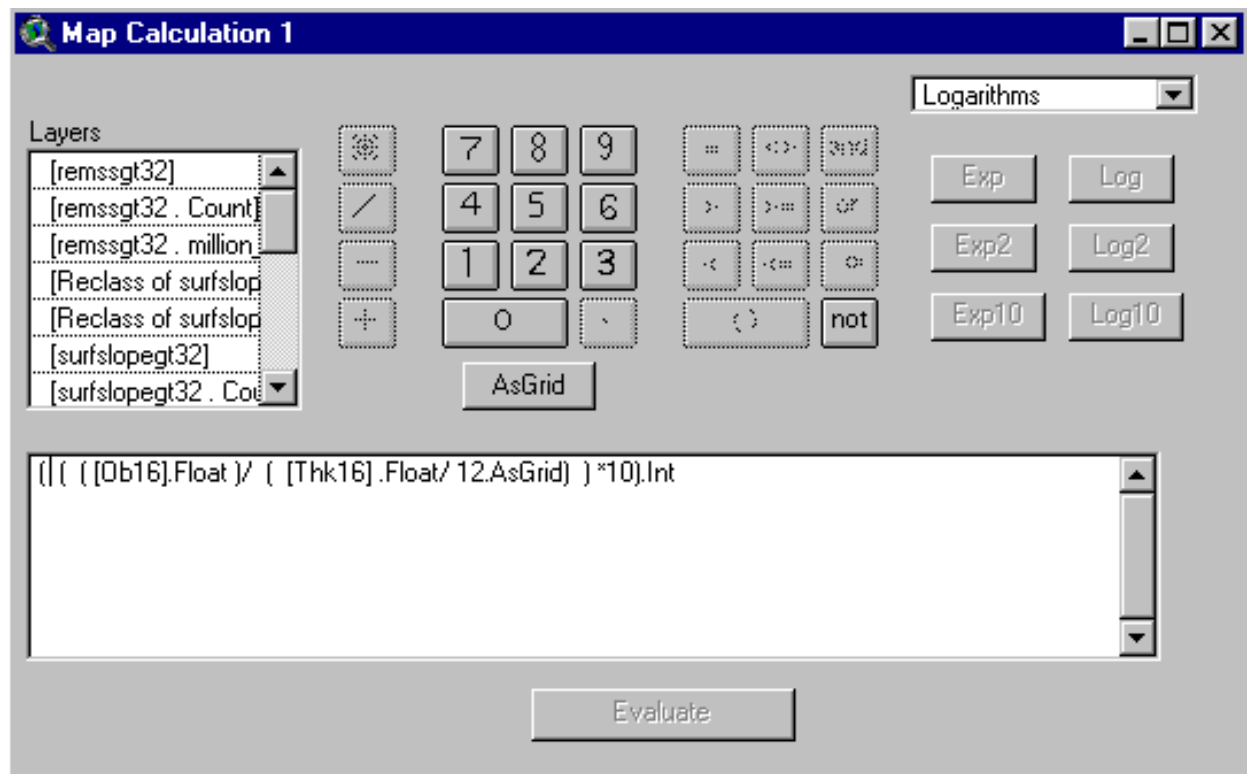Cell Size `16`   m

Number of Rows `17346`

Number of Columns `21718`

Analysis Mask `remssgt32`

OK   Cancel

We have to create a layer of stripping ratios that extend over the entire remaining layer.

The layer, stripratio10, has non-null entries when the stripping ratio is equal to or less than 20 to 1 (see page 6-5).

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:

In Theme Properties, rename Map Calculation 1 as:

        Stripratio10x

Add its **source** to the list of coverages to rename and retain.

Next, we identify coal that is within 12 to 24 inches in thickness and has a stripping ratio greater than 20 to 1.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
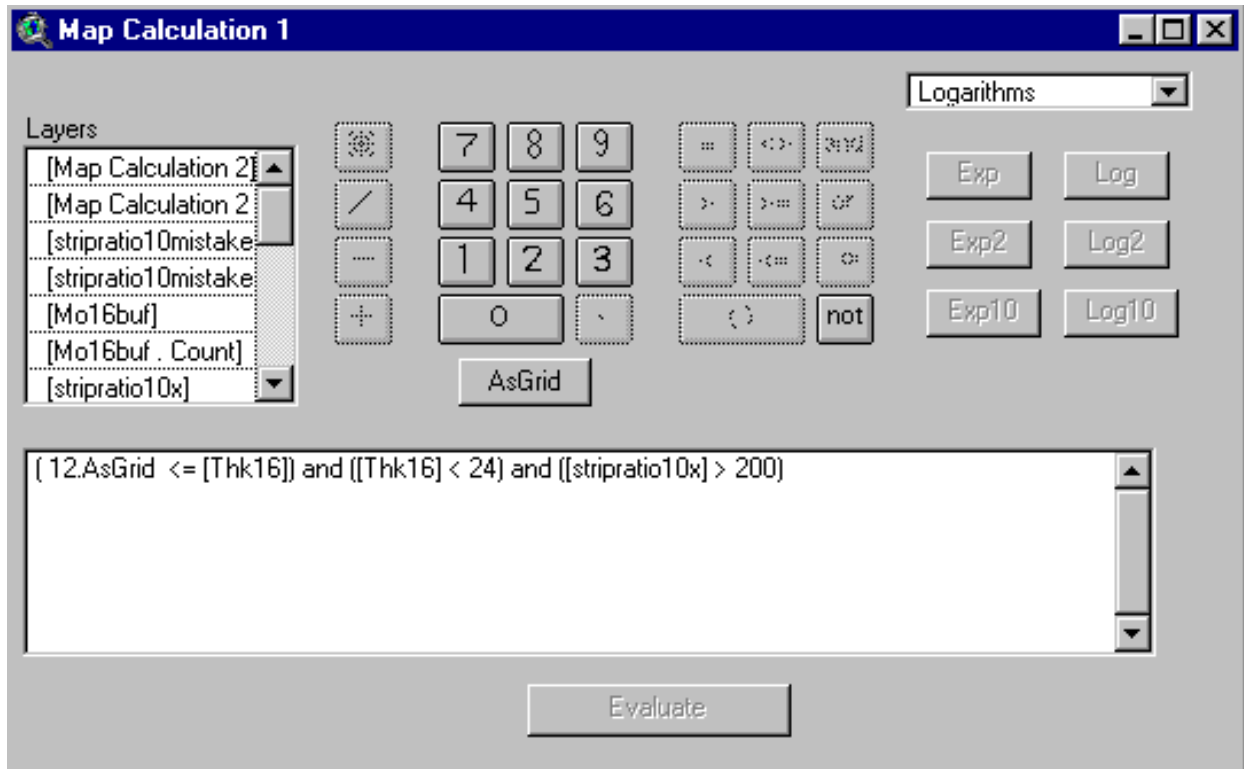
In Theme Properties, rename Map Calculation as:

Cmthinsdeep

Add its **source** to the list of coverages to rename and retain.
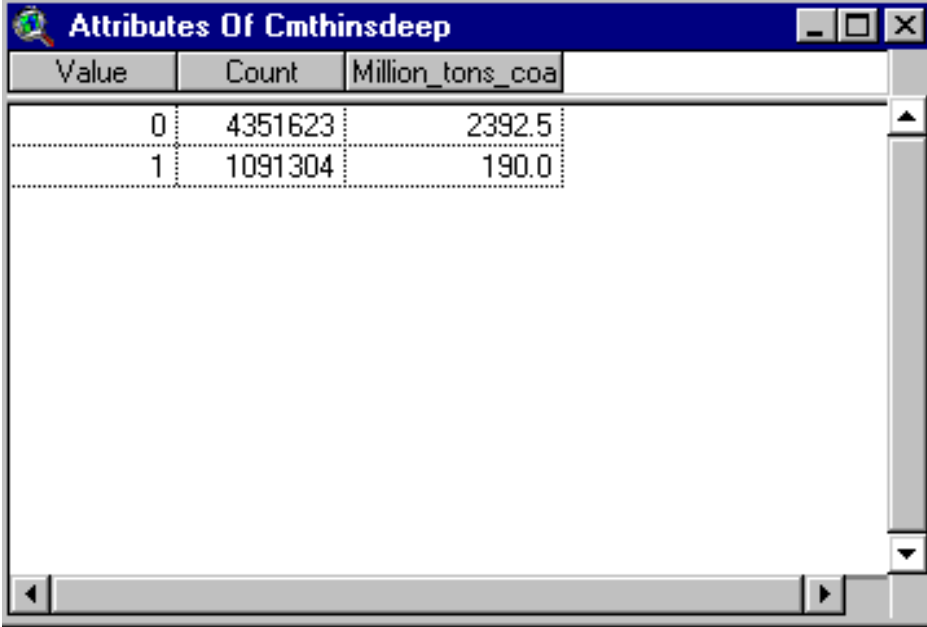
Toggle on its display:
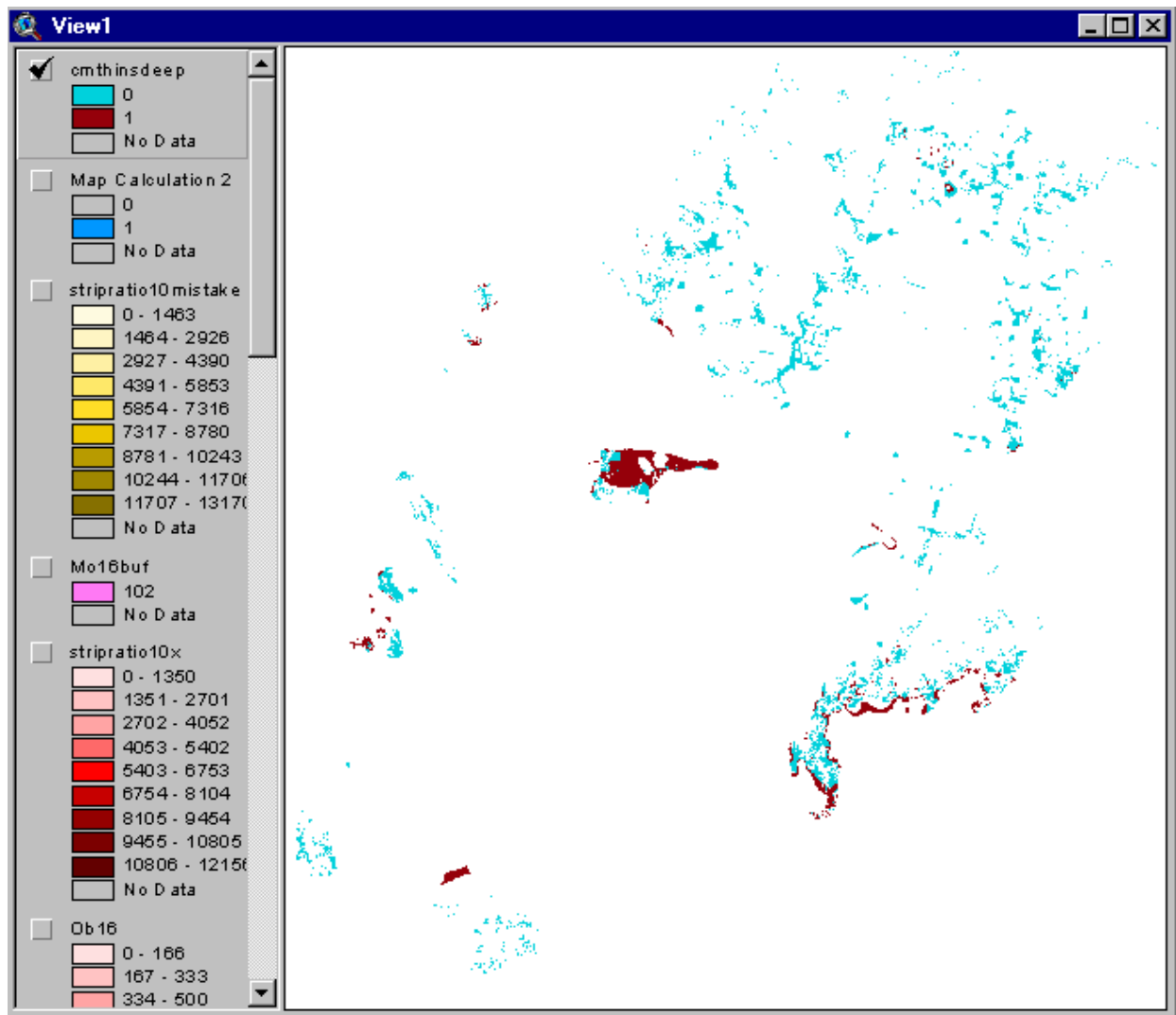
Most of the coal (in brown or dark shade) that is too thin for room and pillar and too deep for strip contour mining or area mining is located in a pod of Pittsburgh coal to the southwest of the main body of Pittsburgh coal.

Much of this coal has thickness of between 18 and 22 inches in thickness and about 100 to 300 feet of overburden.

Next, we calculate the tons of unmineable coal using Method A (pp. 6-66 and 6-84):

Attributes Of Cmthinsdeep		
Value	Count	Million_tons_coa
0	4351623	2392.5
1	1091304	190.0

There are about 190.0 million tons of coal in thickness range between 12 to 24 inches with stripping ratios greater than 20 to 1. The coal is too thin for room and pillar extraction and too deep for strip contour or small area mining.

Update Layer of Remaining Coal

Next, we update the remaining coal coverage by removing this unmineable coal from the latest remaining coal coverage.

The latest remaining coal coverage is remssgt32.

Because the Analysis Mask = remssgt32, removing coal that meets the conditions for being unmineable leaves the new estimate of remaining coal.

Therefore, we obtain the remaining layer by reclassifying the cmthinsdeep layer:

Reclassify Values

Classification Field: Value ▼

[Classify...] [Unique] [Lookup...]

Old Values	New Value
0	1
1	No Data
No Data	No Data

[+] [×]

[Load]

[Save] [OK] [Cancel]

In Theme Properties, rename the new grid as:

Remthindeep

Add its **source** to the list of coverages to rename and retain.

2,392.5 million tons of coal remain to be assigned to a category.

A summary of estimates, starting from Rem16mcell (remaining, chapter 5), is:

Remaining (rem16mcell)	15790.2
Safety barriers (mined-out coal)	157.2
Remaining (rem16buf)	15633.0
Coal <12 inches in thickness	42.1
Remaining (rem16bufp12)	15590.9
Coal allocated to surface mining	918.4
Surface mining safety barriers	80.9
Remaining (remsurfall)	14591.3
Coal allocated to longwall mining	7987.0
Longwall mining safety barriers	100.5
Remaining (remlw96sb)	6504.4
Coal allocated to cm2442 mining	298.9
cm2442 safety barriers	7.2
Remaining (remcm2442sb)	6198.2
Coal allocated to cm4272 mining	1861.6
cm4272 safety barriers	36.6
Remaining (remcm4272sb)	4299.9
Coal allocated to cm7296 mining	1495.9
cm7296 safety barriers	26.3
Remaining (remcm7296sb)	2777.6
Coal allocated to cm96 mining	69.6
cm96 safety barriers	0.3
Remaining (remcm96)	2707.8
R&P and longwall coal with bedslope > 12 degrees	2.1
Remaining (rembslopegt12)	2705.7
Strippable coal with surface slope >32 degrees	123.2
Remaining (remssgt32)	2582.5
Coal between 12 and 24 inches in thickness and with stripping ratio greater than 20 to 1	190.0
Remaining (remthindeep)	2392.5

Delineate coal that has thickness of 24 inches or more, overburden of less than 100 feet, and a stripping ratio greater than 20 to 1.

In Analysis Properties, enter these settings:

Analysis Properties: View1	
Analysis Extent	Same As Rem16bufp12
Left	-155677.503175
Top	1970643.69375
Bottom	1693107.69375
Right	191810.496825
Analysis Cell Size	Current Value
Cell Size	16 m
Number of Rows	17346
Number of Columns	21718
Analysis Mask	remthindeep

OK   Cancel

Next, we identify coal that is 24 inches or greater in thickness, has overburden of less than 100 feet, and has a stripping ratio greater than 20 to 1.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
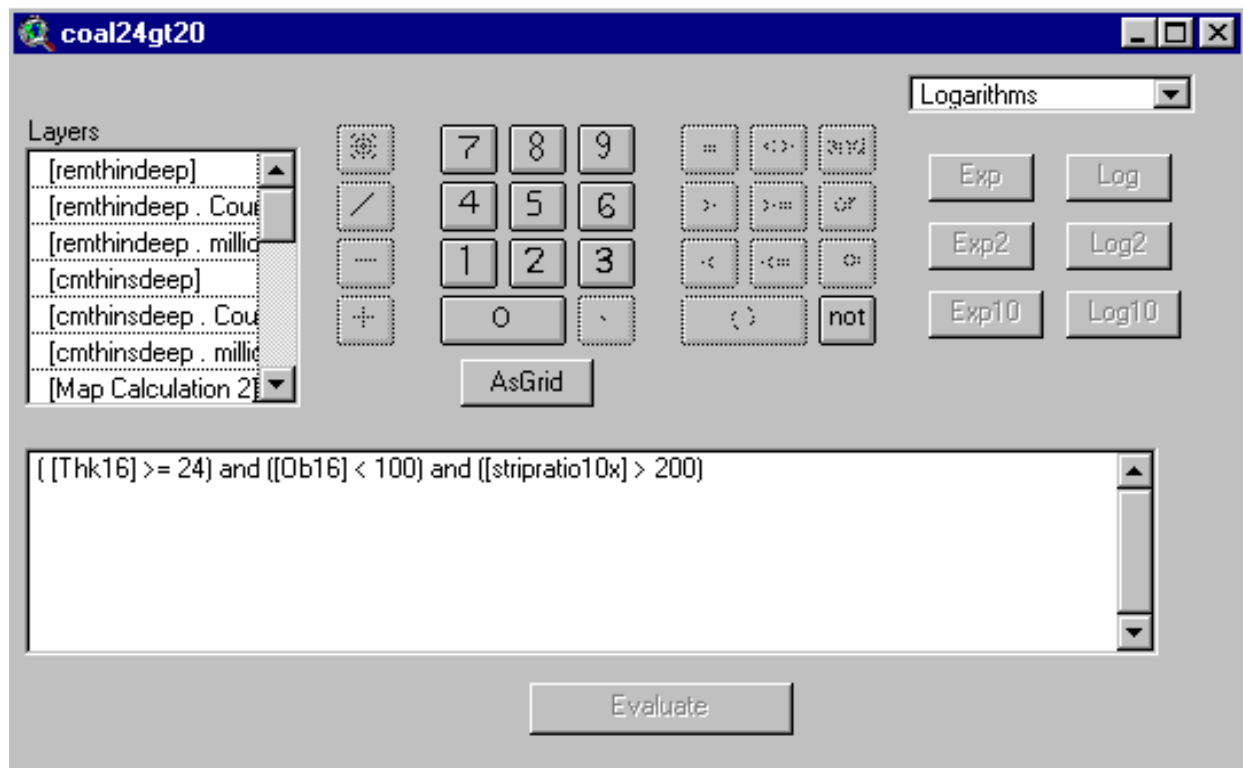
In Theme Properties, rename the new grid as:

Coal24gt20
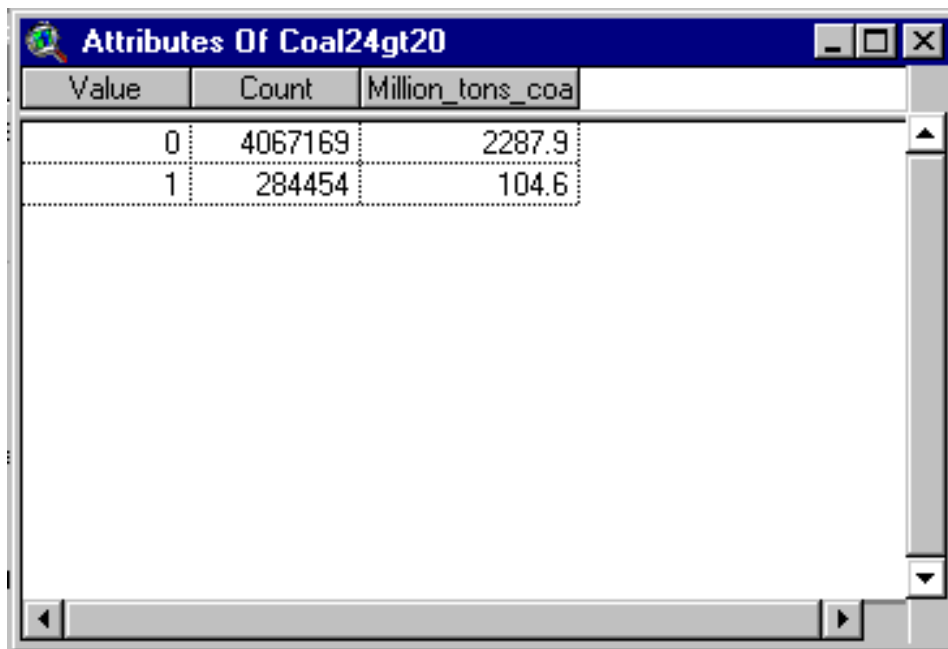
Add its **source** to the list of coverages to rename and retain.

Toggle on its display:
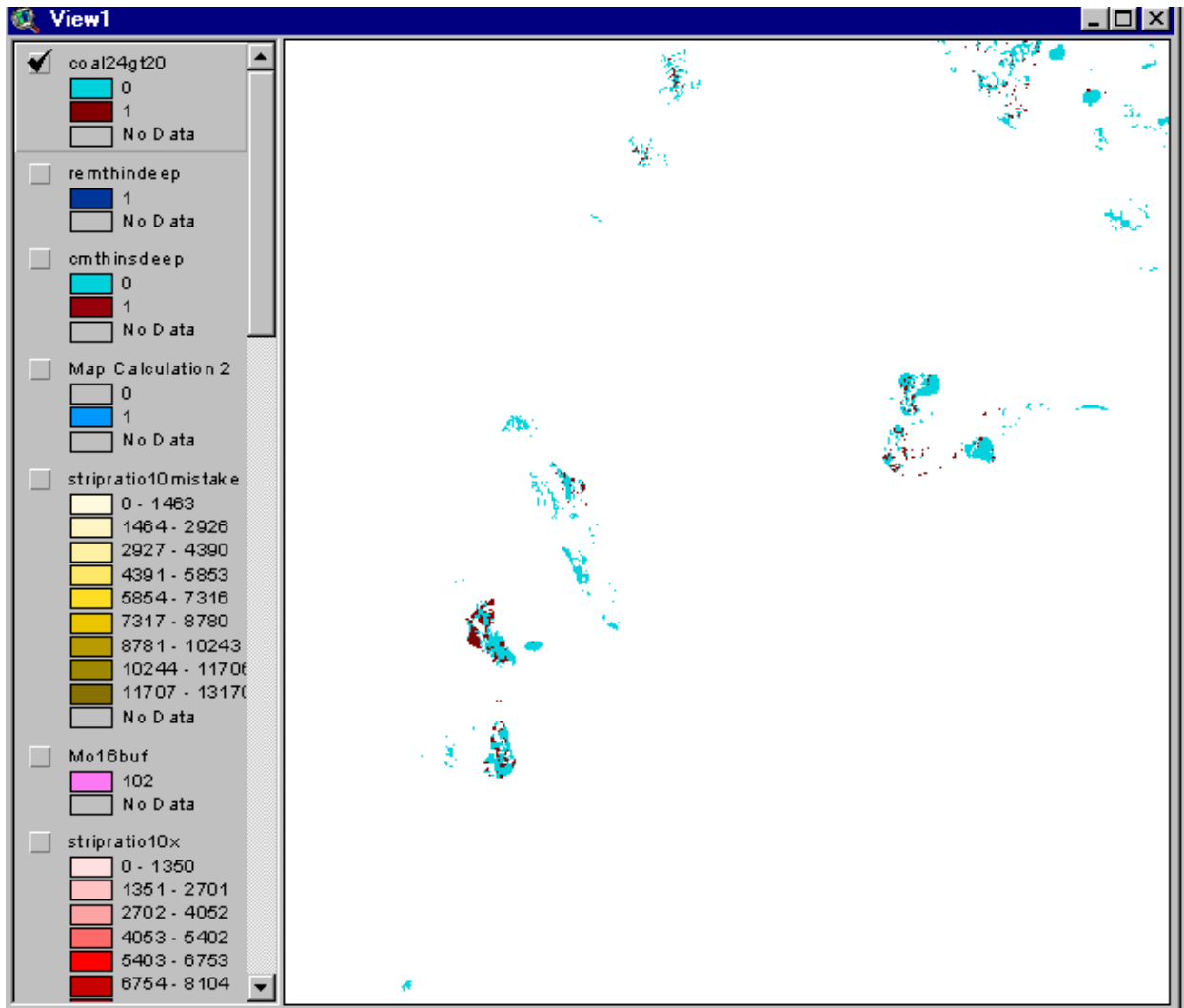
Most of the coal (in brown or dark shade) has insufficient overburden for room and pillar or is too deep for strip contour mining or area mining. Much of this coal is located in the pods of Pittsburgh coal to the southwest of the main body of Pittsburgh coal.

Next, we calculate the tons of unmineable coal using Method A (pp 6-66 and 6-84):

Attributes Of Coal24gt20

Value	Count	Million_tons_coa
0	4067169	2287.9
1	284454	104.6

There are about 104.6 million tons of coal with thickness of 24 inches or greater, with overburden of less than 100 feet, and with stripping ratio greater than 20 to 1. The coal has too little overburden for room and pillar extraction and is too deep for strip contour or small area mining.

Update Layer of Remaining Coal

Next, we update the remaining coal coverage by removing this unmineable coal from the latest remaining coal coverage.

The latest remaining coal coverage is remssgt32.

Because the Analysis Mask = remthindeep, removing coal that meets the conditions for being unmineable leaves the new estimate of remaining coal.

Therefore, we obtain the remaining layer by reclassifying the coal24gt20 layer:

In Theme Properties, rename the new grid as:

Remcoal24gt20

Add its **source** to the list of coverages to rename and retain.

2,287.9 million tons of coal remain to be assigned to a category.

A summary of estimates, starting from Rem16mcell (remaining, chapter 5), is:

Remaining (rem16mcell)	15790.2
Safety barriers (mined-out coal)	157.2
Remaining (rem16buf)	15633.0
Coal <12 inches in thickness	42.1
Remaining (rem16bufp12)	15590.9
Coal allocated to surface mining	918.4
Surface mining safety barriers	80.9
Remaining (remsurfall)	14591.3
Coal allocated to longwall mining	7987.0
Longwall mining safety barriers	100.5
Remaining (remlw96sb)	6504.4
Coal allocated to cm2442 mining	298.9
cm2442 safety barriers	7.2
Remaining (remcm2442sb)	6198.2
Coal allocated to cm4272 mining	1861.6
cm4272 safety barriers	36.6
Remaining (remcm4272sb)	4299.9
Coal allocated to cm7296 mining	1495.9
cm7296 safety barriers	26.3
Remaining (remcm7296sb)	2777.6
Coal allocated to cm96 mining	69.6
cm96 safety barriers	0.3
Remaining (remcm96)	2707.8
R&P and longwall coal with bedslope > 12 degrees	2.1
Remaining (rembslopegt12)	2705.7
Strippable coal with surface slope >32 degrees	123.2
Remaining (remssgt32)	2582.5
Coal between 12 and 24 inches in thickness and with stripping ratio greater than 20 to 1	190.0
Remaining (remthindeep)	2392.5
Coal 24 inches and greater, with overburden less than 100 feet, and stripping ratio greater than 20 to 1	104.6
Remaining (remcoal24gt20)	2287.9

The remaining coal, 2287.9 million tons, occurs in blocks too small to support a minimum size mining operation.

The screening process to identify small blocks removed restricted areas and then grouped contiguous coal for underground mining or, in the case of surface mining, coal segments within 2 miles. We then estimated the coal in the non-restricted parts of the blocks to see if there were enough resources to support a minimum size mining operation.

Reasons that coal could fall through to the fragmentation category include:

 - restrictions break the coal into non-contiguous segments reducing the likelihood that there will be adequate coal in contiguous blocks; this effect applies mainly to interstate highways which span large areas and break the coal into separate blocks.

 - smaller insular blocks around the perimeter of the remaining Pittsburgh bed are thrown into the fragmentation category when restrictions reduce the coal to an amount below the resources required by a minimum size mine.

 - the blocking of the coal into thickness and overburden categories to fit mining technologies can fragment the coal when there is a lot of local variation in thickness and overburden; this effect is quite prominent in the pods of Pittsburgh coal to the southwest of the main body of remaining Pittsburgh coal.

 - there are many irregular configurations in the coal near the mined out areas of the Pittsburgh accounting for significant fragmentation.

Delineate Restricted Coal Within the Layer of Fragmented Coal

Next, we proceed to estimate coal in restricted areas (using the union7restr layer) within the latest updated remaining layer, remcoal24gt20.

In many cases, the restrictions remove enough coal so that the coal resource block does not have enough coal to support a minimum size mine.

In these cases, the coal not available for mining is the coal remaining after the restricted coal is removed (in effect this coal is bypassed if the area were ever to be mined).

In Analysis Properties, set Analysis Mask to remcoal24gt20:

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent: Same As Rem16bufp12

Left: -155677.503175   Top: 1970643.69375

Bottom: 1693107.69375   Right: 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size: Current Value

Cell Size: 16   m

Number of Rows: 17346

Number of Columns: 21718

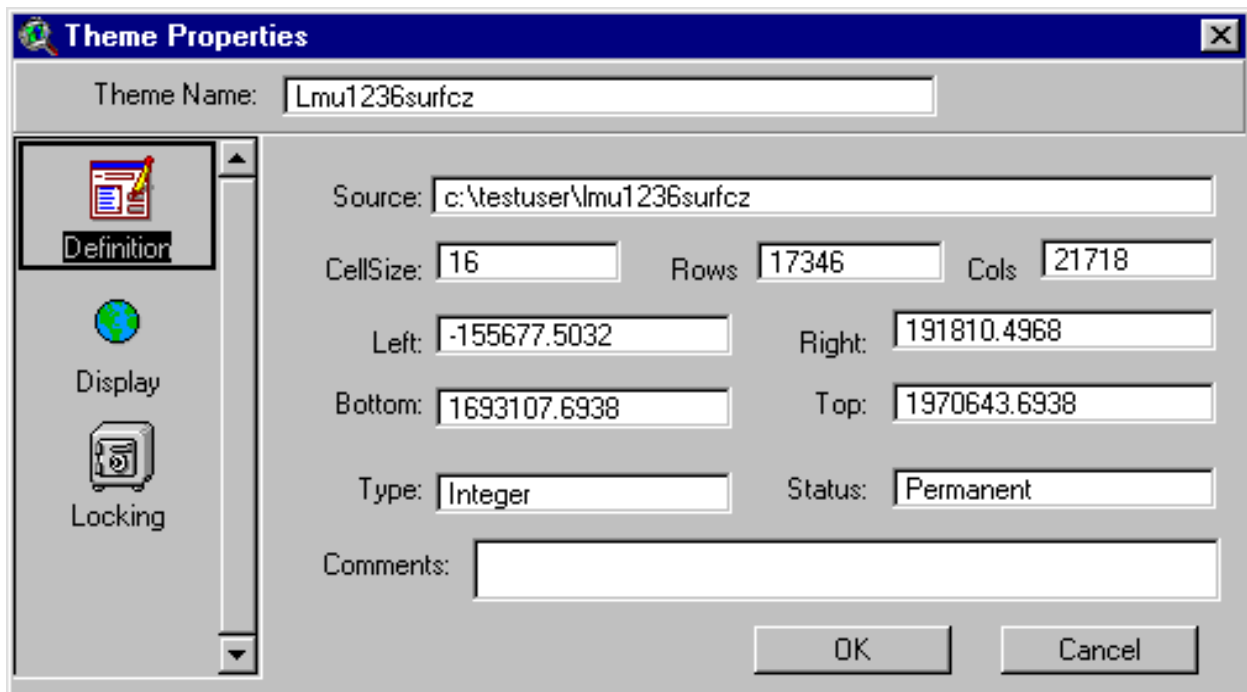Analysis Mask: remcoal24gt20

OK   Cancel

Add grid theme union7restr to View1.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
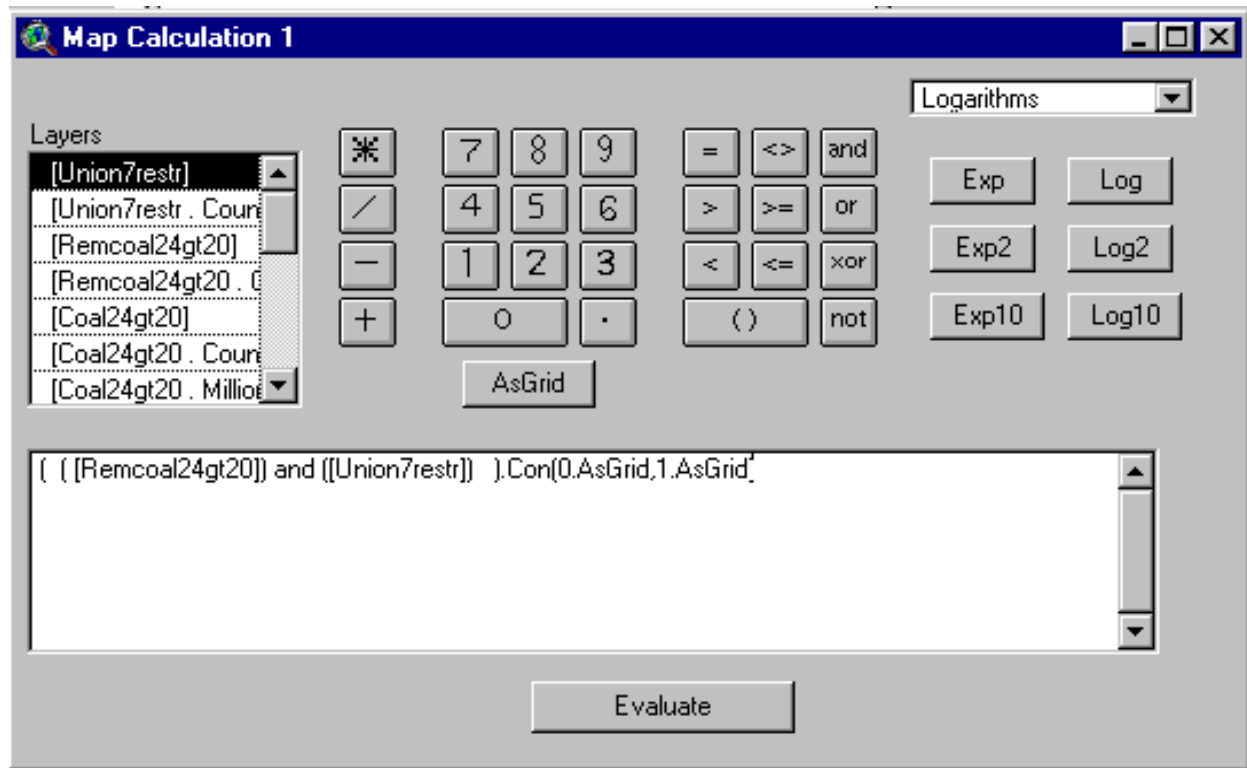
In Theme Properties, rename the new grid as:

>fragcoalr
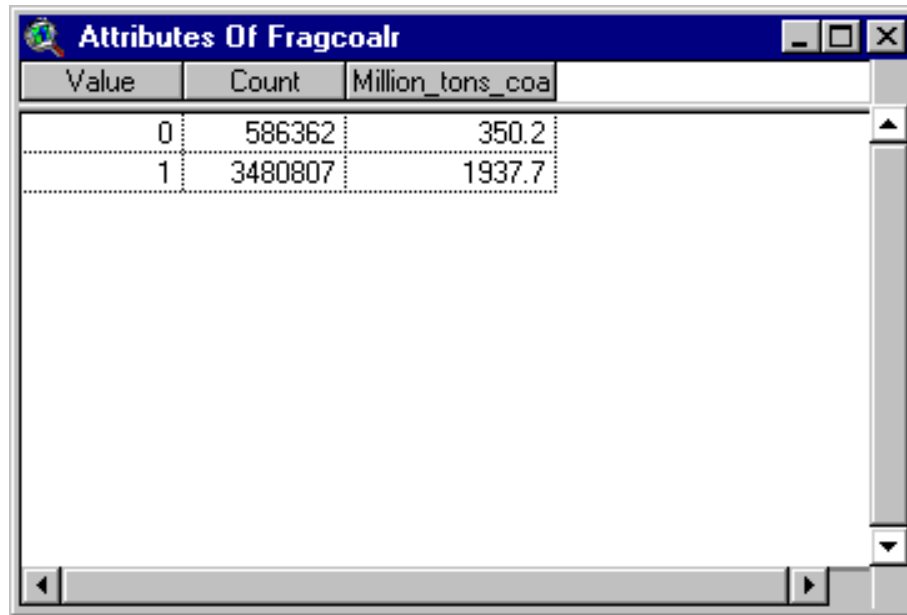
Add its **source** to the list of coverages to rename and retain.

Toggle on the display for fragcoalr:
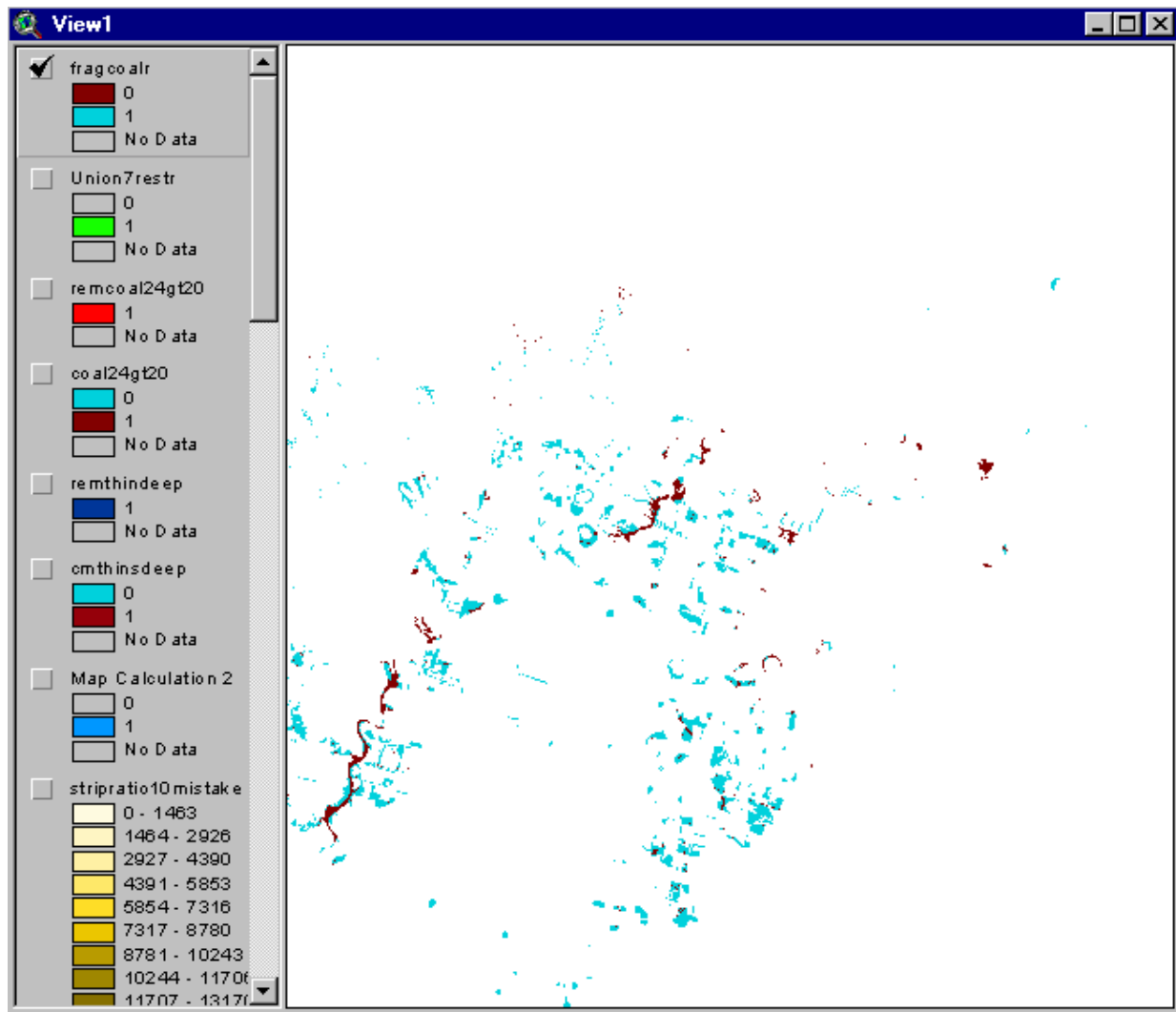
The dark (brown) areas are restricted areas within fragmented coal; the light (blue) areas are areas of fragmented coal that are not restricted.

Use Method A (pp. 6-66 and 6-84) to calculate the tons of coal in fragcoalr:

Value	Count	Million_tons_coa
0	586362	350.2
1	3480807	1937.7

Attributes Of Fragcoalr

Fragmented coal, net of restricted coal, is estimated to be 1,937.7 million tons.

Restricted coal within fragmented coal is estimated to be 350.2 million tons.

A summary of estimates, starting from Rem16mcell (remaining, chapter 5), is:

Remaining (rem16mcell)	15790.2
Safety barriers (mined-out coal)	157.2
Remaining (rem16buf)	15633.0
Coal <12 inches in thickness	42.1
Remaining (rem16bufp12)	15590.9
Coal allocated to surface mining	918.4
Surface mining safety barriers	80.9
Remaining (remsurfall)	14591.3
Coal allocated to longwall mining	7987.0
Longwall mining safety barriers	100.5
Remaining (remlw96sb)	6504.4
Coal allocated to cm2442 mining	298.9
cm2442 safety barriers	7.2
Remaining (remcm2442sb)	6198.2
Coal allocated to cm4272 mining	1861.6
cm4272 safety barriers	36.6
Remaining (remcm4272sb)	4299.9
Coal allocated to cm7296 mining	1495.9
cm7296 safety barriers	26.3
Remaining (remcm7296sb)	2777.6
Coal allocated to cm96 mining	69.6
cm96 safety barriers	0.3
Remaining (remcm96)	2707.8
R&P and longwall coal	
with bedslope > 12 degrees	2.1
Remaining (rembslopegt12)	2705.7
Strippable coal	
with surface slope >32 degrees	123.2
Remaining (remssgt32)	2582.5
Coal between 12 and 24 inches in thickness and with stripping ratio greater than 20 to 1	190.0
Remaining (remthindeep)	2392.5
Coal 24 inches and greater, with overburden less than 100 feet, and stripping ratio greater than 20 to 1	104.6
Remaining (remcoal24gt20)	2287.9
Restrictions to Fragmented Coal	350.2
Fragmented Coal, Net	1937.7

Delineate Coal in Areas With Environmental and Social Restrictions

Next, we recalculate the coal restricted by environmental and social limits:

> Pipelines
> Oil and Natural Gas Wells
> Urban Areas
> Parks
> Interstate Highways
> Populated Places
> Streams
> Water Bodies

The first step is to consolidate all of the restriction cells into a single coverage. The following coverages by mining technology are the layers we want to consolidate:

> Lmu1236surfcz
> lmu36surfcz
> lmusasmz
> auger1236f
> auger36f
> lw4272finalb
> lw7296finalb
> lw96finalb
> cm2442finalb
> cm4272finalb
> cm7296finalb
> cm96final

In Analysis Properties, enter these settings:

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent | Same As Rem16bufp12 ▼

Left | -155677.503175   Top | 1970643.69375

Bottom | 1693107.69375   Right | 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size | Current Value ▼

Cell Size | 16   m

Number of Rows | 17346

Number of Columns | 21718

Analysis Mask | No Mask Set ▼

OK   Cancel

We process each layer by

      1. Checking its properties to see if the extent covers the remaining Pittsburgh

      2. Reclassifying the coal so that restrictions have value=1 and all other cells have value=0.

The process is demonstrated using the first layer, lmu1236surfcz

Add grid theme, lmu1236surfcz, to View 1.

Open the Theme Properties Window:

Rows = 17346, Cols = 21718, and Left Bottom entries indicate the extent is Rem16bufp12, which is what we want.

Reclassify lmu1236surfcz as follows:

Reclassify Values

Classification Field: | Value ▼

| Classify... | Unique | Lookup... |

Old Values	New Value
0	1
1	0
2	0
No Data	0

| + | ✕ |

| Load |
| Save | OK | Cancel |

In Theme Properties, name the new grid as:

Cs1236r

Add its **source** to the list of coverages to rename and retain.

Repeat the 2 step process for each of the coal layers and the fragmented coal layer.

After entering "0" as the new value for "NoData", make sure you <u>press the Enter Key</u>

Open the table for your coverages.

You should have a very large count for the 0 cells.

Also, a good result is indicated when your new reclassified grid has **black fill** for the NoData category.

Next, we union all the coverages to obtain a consolidated coverage of restricted areas where prospective coal mining is targeted.

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
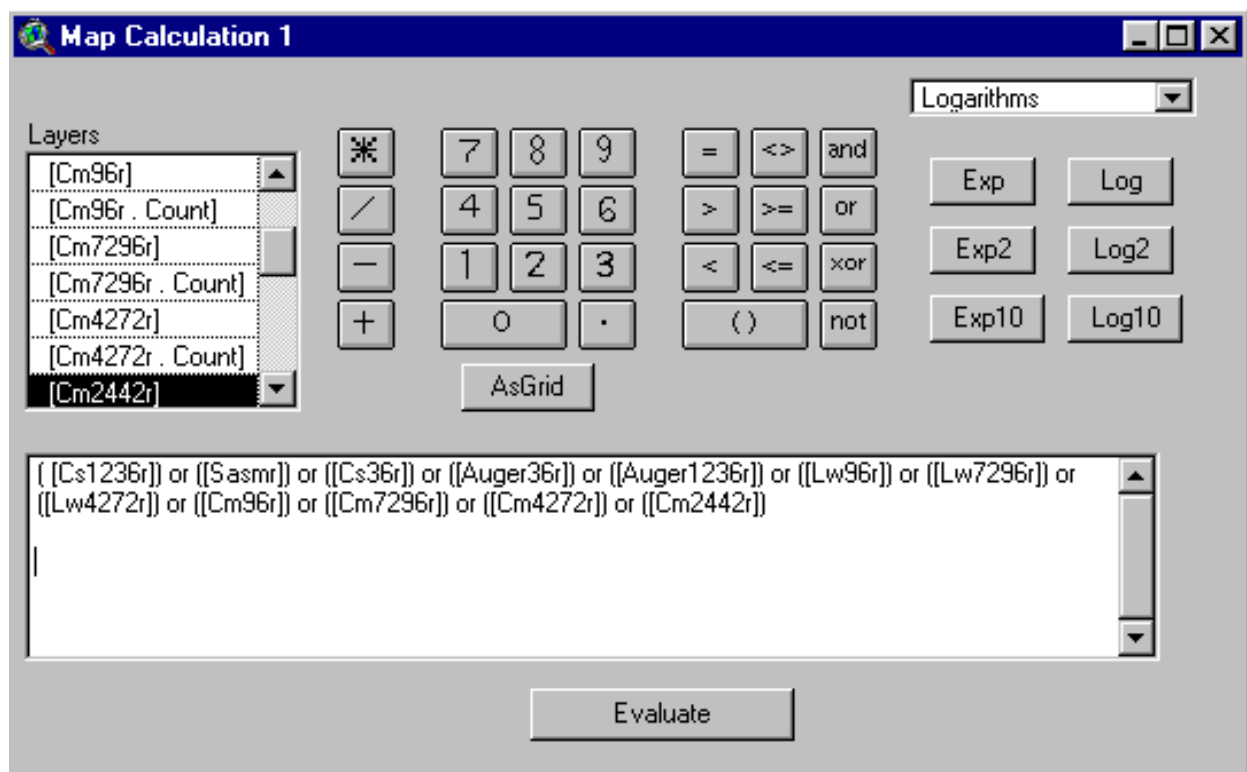
In Theme Properties, rename the new grid as:
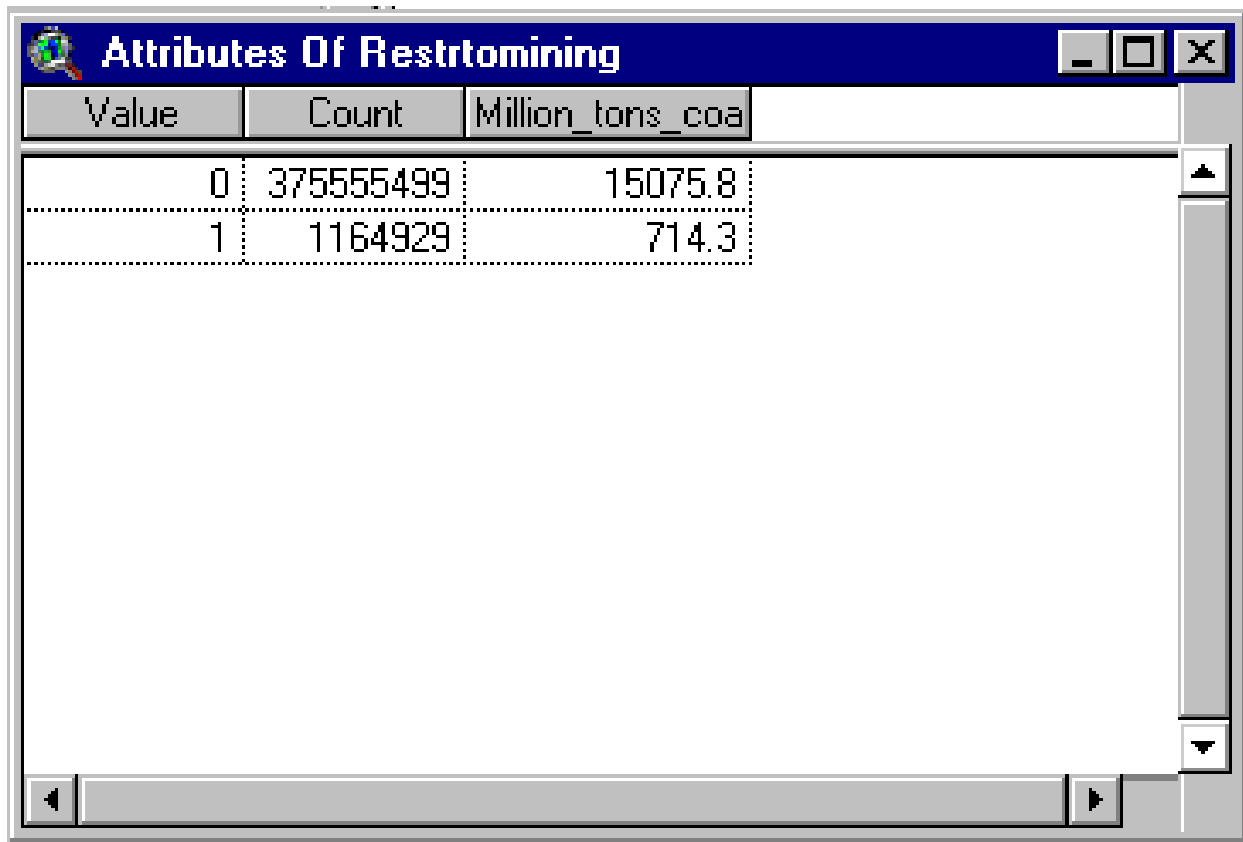
Restrtomining

Add its **source** to the list of coverages to rename and retain.

Toggle on the display for restrtomining:
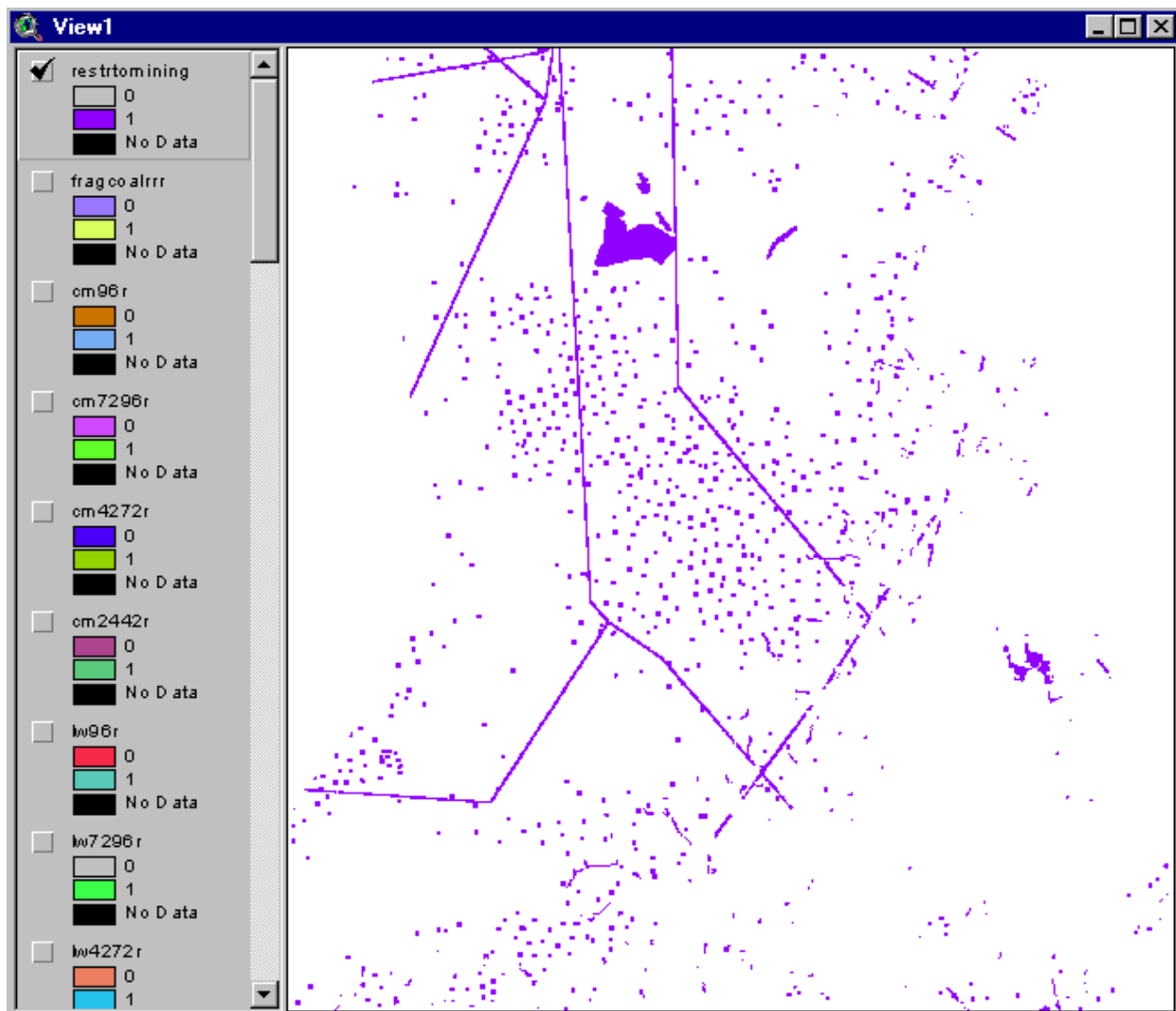
Use Method A (pp. 6-66 and 6-84) to calculate tons of coal in the restricted areas:

Attributes Of Restrtomining			
Value	Count	Million_tons_coa	
0	375555499	15075.8	
1	1164929	714.3	

The estimate of tons in restricted areas that occur **where coal is available for mining** is 714.3 million tons.

Earlier, chapter 5 p 5 - 25, we estimated coal in restricted areas to be 2,265.6 million tons.
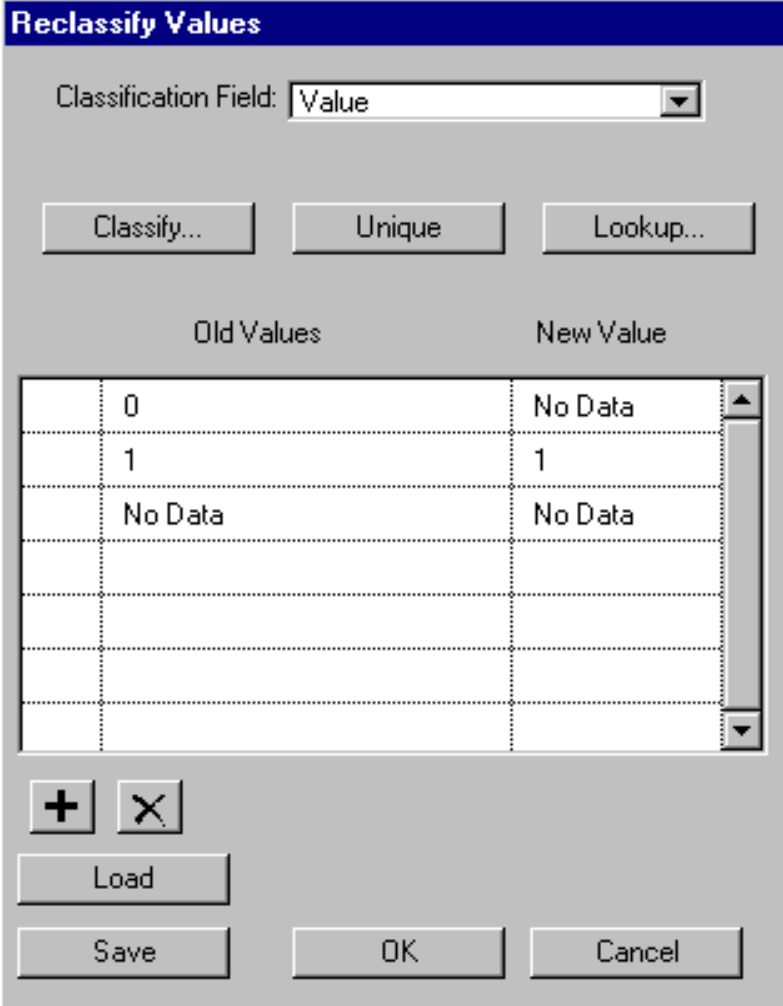
While that estimate is correct for the entire remaining Pittsburgh bed, the relevant issue is the amount of restricted coal in areas that would otherwise be available for mining.

Large amounts of coal are set aside due to environmental and social restrictions. Even larger amounts of coal are set aside due to technical considerations. Coal availability is significantly impacted by both environmental and social constraints, and by technical constraints.

Break Down the Aggregate Estimate for Restricted Areas into Mutually Exclusive Estimates for Each Restriction Category

Next, we break down the aggregate estimate for restricted areas into separate estimates for each of the environmental and social constraints.

Reclassify restrtomining as follows:

In Theme Properties, rename the new grid as:

> Restrtm1null

Add its **source** to the list of coverages to rename and retain.

In Analysis Properties, enter these settings:

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent: Same As Rem16bufp12

Left: -155677.503175   Top: 1970643.69375

Bottom: 1693107.69375   Right: 191810.496825

Analysis Cell Size: Current Value

Cell Size: 16   m

Number of Rows: 17346

Number of Columns: 21718

Analysis Mask: restrtm1null

OK   Cancel

Add these grid themes to View1:

Pipelineszero
Wellszero
Urbanareazero
Parkszero
Interstazero
Placeszero
Streamszero
Waterzero

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request:
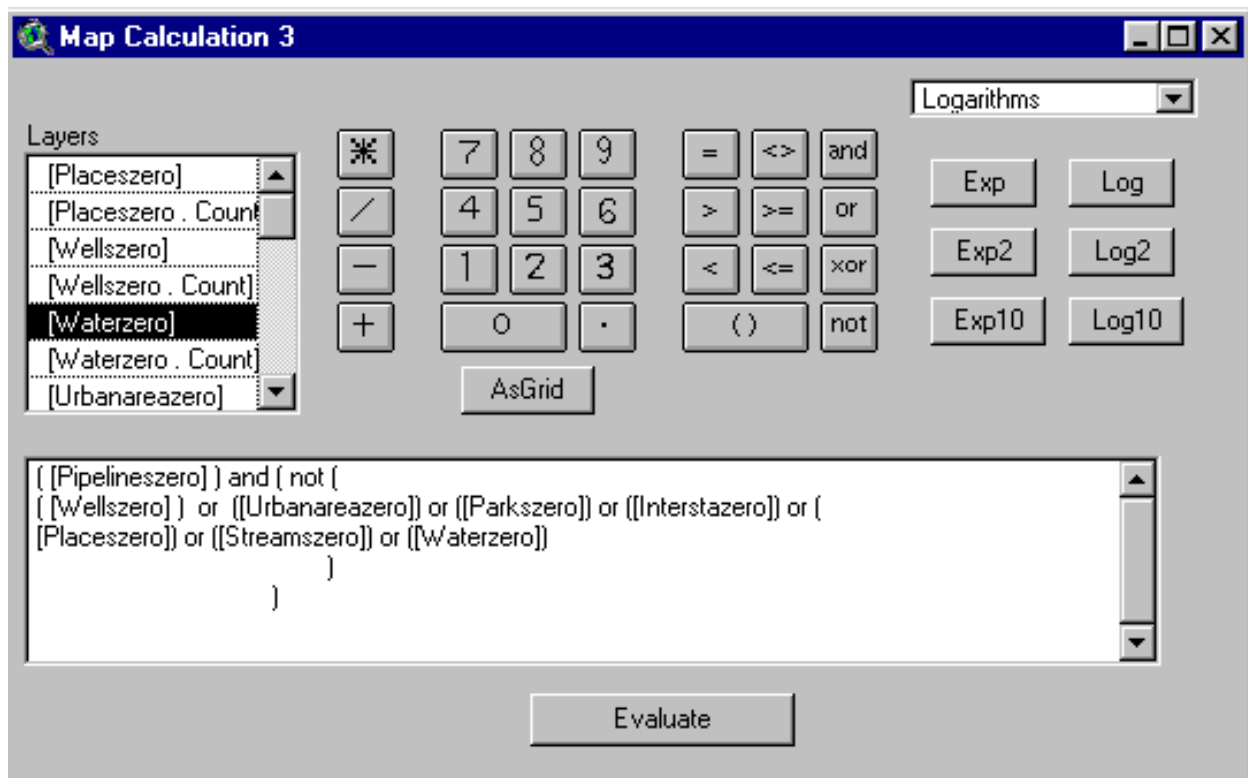
- Make Map Calculation 3 active

- Under the Analysis Menu, click "Summarize Zones"

- Make tonsbycell the summarizing theme

- Record the tonnage from the Stats table

- <u>Make the Stats table active; under File Menu export the Stats table</u>

- Repeat for each restriction coverage

We are following this Hierarchy (recall similar calculation on p 5-23 through 5-24):

    Pipelines
    Wells
    UrbanArea
    Parks
    Interstate Highways
    Populated Places
    Streams
    Water Bodies

Pipelines have lowest priority. The expression in Map Calculator for Pipelines includes only the area with pipelines exclusive of overlap with any of the other restriction coverages.

To make the estimate for Wells (the next coverage in our list), we

    Make Map Calculation 3 active

    Under Theme Menu, click "Edit Theme Expression"

    In Map Calculator, replace Pipelines with Wells and eliminate Wells from the "not" list:

Proceed in like manner to analyze each restriction coverage.

In each case, we replace the left side (of "and") coverage with the coverage next on our hierarchy.

Also, we remove the coverage being processed from the "not" expression.

Don't forget to save the table from "Summarize Zones"
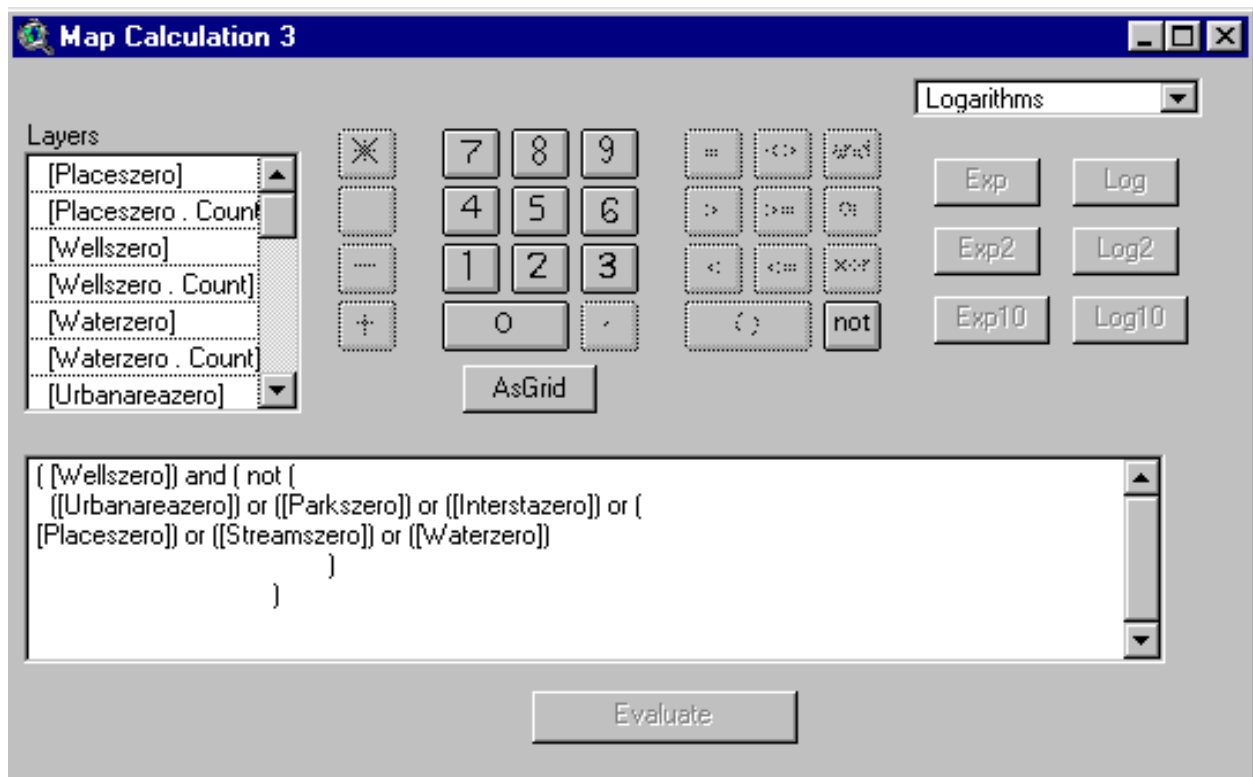
Estimates which are mutually exclusive are:

Pipelines	279,843,872
Wells	72,132,880
UrbanArea	25,196,828
Parks	73,180,040
Interstate Highways	50,322,088
Populated Places	78,564,336
Streams	105,982,368
Water Bodies	29,029,088
Total	714,251,500

The Total agrees with the composite exclusive estimate made above.

Summary of Final Estimates

Next, we summarize and report final results.

The results are aggregated into 3 categories:

Coal Available for Mining
Coal Set Aside due to Environmental and Social Restrictions
Coal Not Mineable Because of Technical Limits

Coal Available for Mining

Surface Mineable Coal	745.1 million tons
Coal Mineable by Auger	73.9 million tons
Longwall Mineable Coal	7,593.0 million tons
Room & Pillar Mineable Coal	3,504.9 million tons
Total	11,916.9 million tons

Environmental & Social Restrictions (tons)

Pipelines	279,843,872
Wells	72,132,880
UrbanArea	25,196,828
Parks	73,180,040
Interstate Highways	50,322,088
Populated Places	78,564,336
Streams	105,982,368
Water Bodies	29,029,088
Total	714,251,500

Technical Restrictions

Safety Barrier, Mined-Out Coal	157.2 million tons
Coal < 12 inches in thickness	42.1 million tons
Surface Mining Safety Barriers	80.9 million tons
Longwall Mining, Safety Barriers	100.5 million tons
Room & Pillar, Safety Barriers	70.4 million tons
Underground, Bed Slope > 12 Degrees	2.1 million tons
Surface, Surface Slope > 32 Degrees	123.2 million tons
12 to 24 in., Stripping Ratio > 20 to 1	190.0 million tons
>24 in., Overburden < 100 ft, > 20 to 1	104.6 million tons
Fragmented Coal	2,287.9 million tons
Total	3,158.9 million tons

Coal Available for Mining   **11,916.9 million tons**
Environmental & Social Restrictions   **714.3 million tons**
Technical Restrictions   **3,158.9 million tons**

      Total   **15,790.1 million tons**

The total, over all assignments, equals remaining Pittsburgh coal resources of 15,790 million tons.

This adding-up check indicates that the methods have resulted in consistent estimates.

Of note is the fact that technical restrictions are about 4 times as large as environmental and social restrictions.

The amount of coal that falls into the technical restriction category can only be known when the entire remaining bed is allocated to mineable coal resource blocks.

In chapter 5, we estimated environmental and social restrictions as 2,266 million tons.

We assumed that stream buffers were areas restricted for coal mining. Stream buffers contain a large amount of potentially restricted coal: 1,320.3 million tons

After the assessment of mining methods, stream buffer restrictions were found to be a relatively small amount: 106.0 million tons.

Underground mining on the Pittsburgh does occur below stream buffers. In contrast, mining does not occur below water bodies. Water bodies remained as an important restriction to all coal mining and stream buffers remain an important restriction to surface mining.

The analysis shows that fragmented coal can be an important restriction to available coal.

Only by analyzing the entire remaining Pittsburgh coal bed, were we able to identify coal that could fall into the fragmented category.

Rename grids to more convenient names

The final step is to rename grids to more convenient names

Save the current project

Start a new project

Open a new view

Toggle on the Spatial Analyst Extension

Under File Menu, click "Manage Data Sources" to access the Source Manager
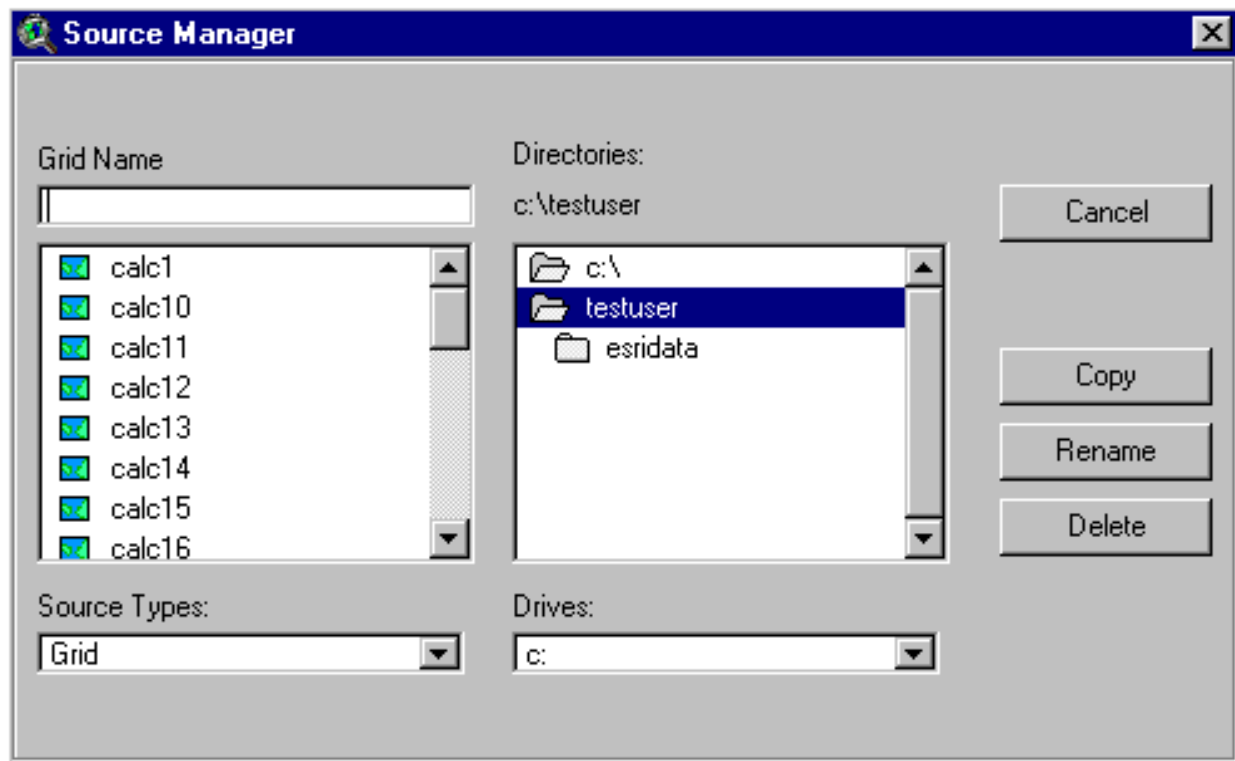
Then rename the initial grids with the following names:

(You would, of course, use your project path when you rename the grids.)

Coverage	Original Name	New Name
Coal that meets technical requirements to be mined by room and pillar (R&P) or longwall methods except that it has a bed slope > 12 degrees	c:\testuser\calc9	c:\testuser\bedslopegt12
Latest updated layer of remaining coal, takes coal with bed slope > 12 degrees out of previous remaining layer	c:\testuser\rclss2	c:\testuser\rembslopegt12
Coal that meets technical requirements to be mined by surface methods except that it has a surface slope > 32 degrees	c:\testuser\calc11	c:\testuser\surfslopegt32
Latest updated layer of remaining coal, takes coal with surface slope > 32 degrees out of previous remaining layer	c:\testuser\rclss3	c:\testuser\remsslopegt32
Stripping ratio for surface mineable coal	c:\testuser\calc13	c:\testuser\stripratio10x
Coal 12 to 24 inches in thickness with stripping ratio > 20 to 1	c:\testuser\calc14	c:\testuser\cmthinsdeep
Latest updated layer of remaining coal, takes coal 12 to 24 inches in thickness with stripping ratio > 20 to 1 out of previous remaining layer	c:\testuser\rclss5	c:\testuser\remthindeep
Coal > 24 inches in thickness, with overburden < 100 feet, and with stripping ratio > 20 to 1	c:\testuser\calc17	c:\testuser\coal24gt20

Latest updated layer of remaining coal, takes coal > 24 inches in thickness, with overburden < 100 feet, and with stripping ratio > 20 to 1 out of previous remaining layer c:\testuser\rclss6 c:\testuser\remcoal24gt20

Areas identified as fragmented coal c:\testuser\calc18 c:\testuser\fragcoalr

Areas with restricted coal within the area with coal identified as mineable by surface methods, coal 12 to 36 inches in thickness c:\testuser\rclss7 c:\testuser\cs1236r

Areas with restricted coal within the area with coal identified as mineable by surface methods, coal > 36 inches in thickness c:\testuser\rclss9 c:\testuser\cs36r

Areas with restricted coal within the area with coal identified as mineable in small area surface mines, coal >36 inches in thickness c:\testuser\rclss10 c:\testuser\sasmr

Areas with restricted coal within the area with coal identified as mineable by auger, coal 12 to 36 inches in thickness c:\testuser\rclss11 c:\testuser\auger1236r

Areas with restricted coal within the area with coal identified as mineable by auger, coal > 36 inches in thickness c:\testuser\rclss12 c:\testuser\auger36r

Areas with restricted coal within the area with coal identified as mineable by longwall methods, coal 42 to 72 inches in thickness	c:\testuser\rclss13	c:\testuser\lw4272r
Areas with restricted coal within the area with coal identified as mineable by longwall methods, coal 72 to 96 inches in thickness	c:\testuser\rclss14	c:\testuser\lw7296r
Areas with restricted coal within the area with coal identified as mineable by longwall methods, coal > 72 inches in thickness	c:\testuser\rclss15	c:\testuser\lw96r
Areas with restricted coal within the area with coal identified as mineable by R&P methods, coal 24 to 42 inches in thickness	c:\testuser\rclss16	c:\testuser\cm2442r
Areas with restricted coal within the area with coal identified as mineable by R&P methods, coal 42 to 72 inches in thickness	c:\testuser\rclss17	c:\testuser\cm4272r
Areas with restricted coal within the area with coal identified as mineable by R&P methods, coal 72 to 96 inches in thickness	c:\testuser\rclss18	c:\testuser\cm7296r
Areas with restricted coal within the area with coal identified as mineable by R&P methods, coal > 96 inches in thickness	c:\testuser\rclss19	c:\testuser\cm96r

Areas with restricted coal within the area of fragmented coal	c:\testuser\rclss20	c:\testuser\fragcoalrrr
Restricted coal, obtained from a union of the 13 layers of restricted coal indexed immediately above	c:\testuser\calc20	c:\testuser\restrtomining
Restricted coal, as a 1-null layer	c:\testuser\rclss4	c:\testuser\restrtm1null

Congratulations!!!!

You have finished Chapter 10 and the complete coal evaluation.

You have mastered the use of ArcView and Spatial Analyst.

You have completed a detailed analysis of coal available for an entire coal bed.

The results uncover the role that technical limits ultimately play in reducing coal available for mining.

For some beds such as the Pittsburgh, technical limits represent a larger constraint to coal availability than do social and environmental limits.

Give yourself two pats on the back.

Appendix A

Estimating Coal by Reliability, Thickness, and Overburden Categories

Problem: **Estimate Coal (excluding coal in restricted areas) by Reliability, Overburden, and Thickness Categories**

You are tasked to estimate coal tonnage in buffers within specified distances of drill holes.

Then, you are required to estimate coal within reliability class by coal thickness and coal overburden categories.

Complication: By Federal and State law, some coal cannot be mined (e.g., within 100 feet of interstates, 300 feet of public parks, etc.). Your estimates are to exclude the coal in these set-aside areas.

Primary Data:

(1) You have a point file (for a specific coal bed) containing longitude and latitude for the locations of drill holes. Each record in this file also contains (for each drill hole), the coal thickness of the sampled coal, measured in inches.

(2) Using bed elevation (by drill hole) and a DEM, you also have calculated overburden at each drill hole location measured in feet and added this overburden estimate to each drill hole record.

(3) You have a polygon feature theme that delineates the area of remaining coal for the target bed.

This appendix is designed to illustrate methods. Small sample data sets are used. The illustrations do not adhere in all cases to the coal classification methods described in U.S. Geological Survey Circular 891. However, the methods illustrated in the appendix can be applied using the specific classifications found in Circular 891.

Steps to Organize Your Project Work

Establish a data folder (on your computer hard drive) and place all the data you need for the project in that folder:

1. Point file with drill hole data

2. Shapefile of remaining coal

3. Shapefiles of set-aside areas such as roads, parks, etc.
    This step may require you to download multiple county files, merge the separate county files into a multiple county file, and then clip that coverage using a polygon coverage slightly bigger than the areal extent in the remaining coal coverage.

Decide upon an appropriate projection for your project. Set projection parameters and reproject all of your coverages to that projection.

Add Project Data and Open Themes in the View Window

Copy all of the files from the diskette (Data for Spatial Analyst Assessment) to c:\sptemp
     remaining.shp
     drillholes.shp
     interstate.shp
     park.shp

Open a New ArcView Project
     When Queried to Create a New Project: Make sure radial button is on for a **New View**
     When Queried to Add Data: Click No
     Under the File Menu:
         Click "Set Working Directory"
             In the dialog window enter: c:\sptemp
             Click "OK"
     Under the File Menu:

Work Directory

Specify new work directory

`c:\sptemp`

[OK] [Cancel]
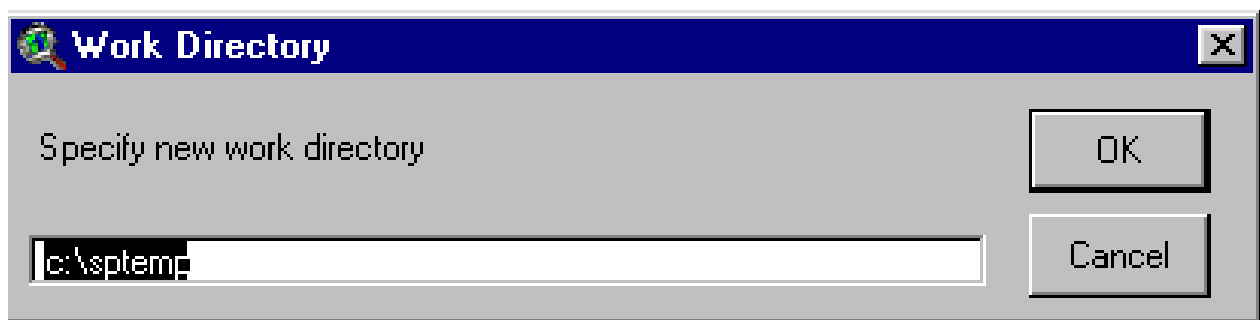
         Click "Extensions"
             Click the toggle for Spatial Analyst
             Click "OK"
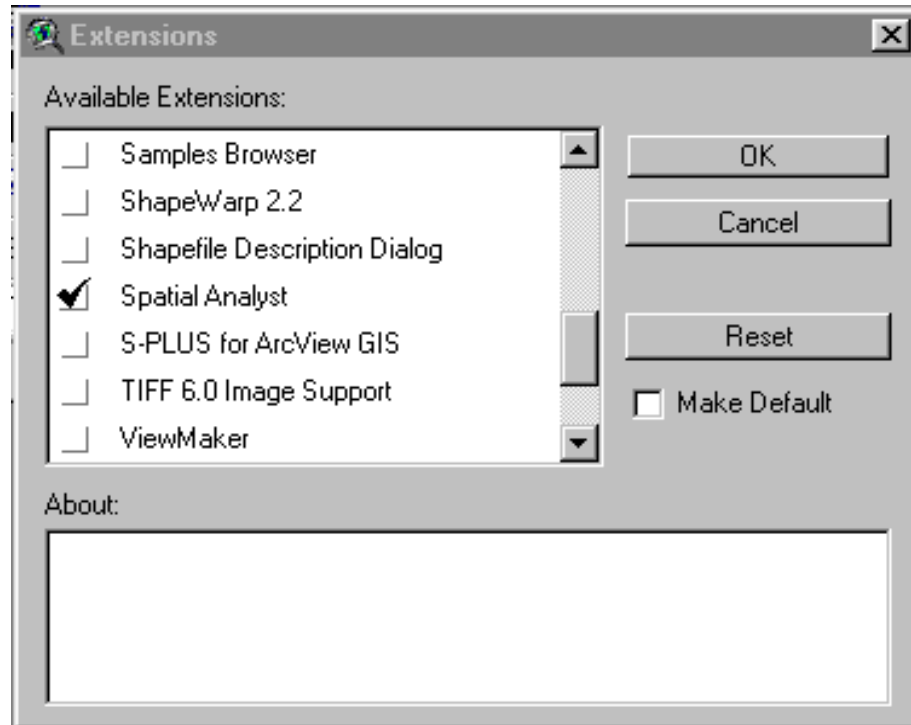
Under the View Menu:
> **Click "Properties"**
> Set Map Units: Meters
> Set Distance Units: Miles
> Click "OK"

A - 4
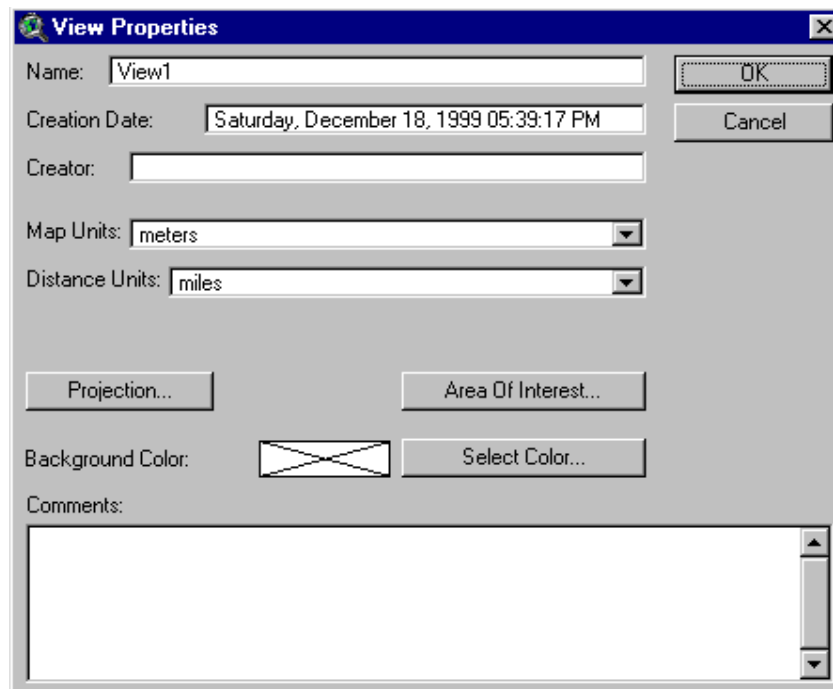
Add these themes:
      c:\sptemp\remaining.shp
      c:\sptemp\drillholes.shp

Toggle on display for both themes (**drillholes** above **remaining** in Table of Contents)

In Table of Contents, double click to open legend editor for remaining.shp
    Change:
        polygon fill to hollow
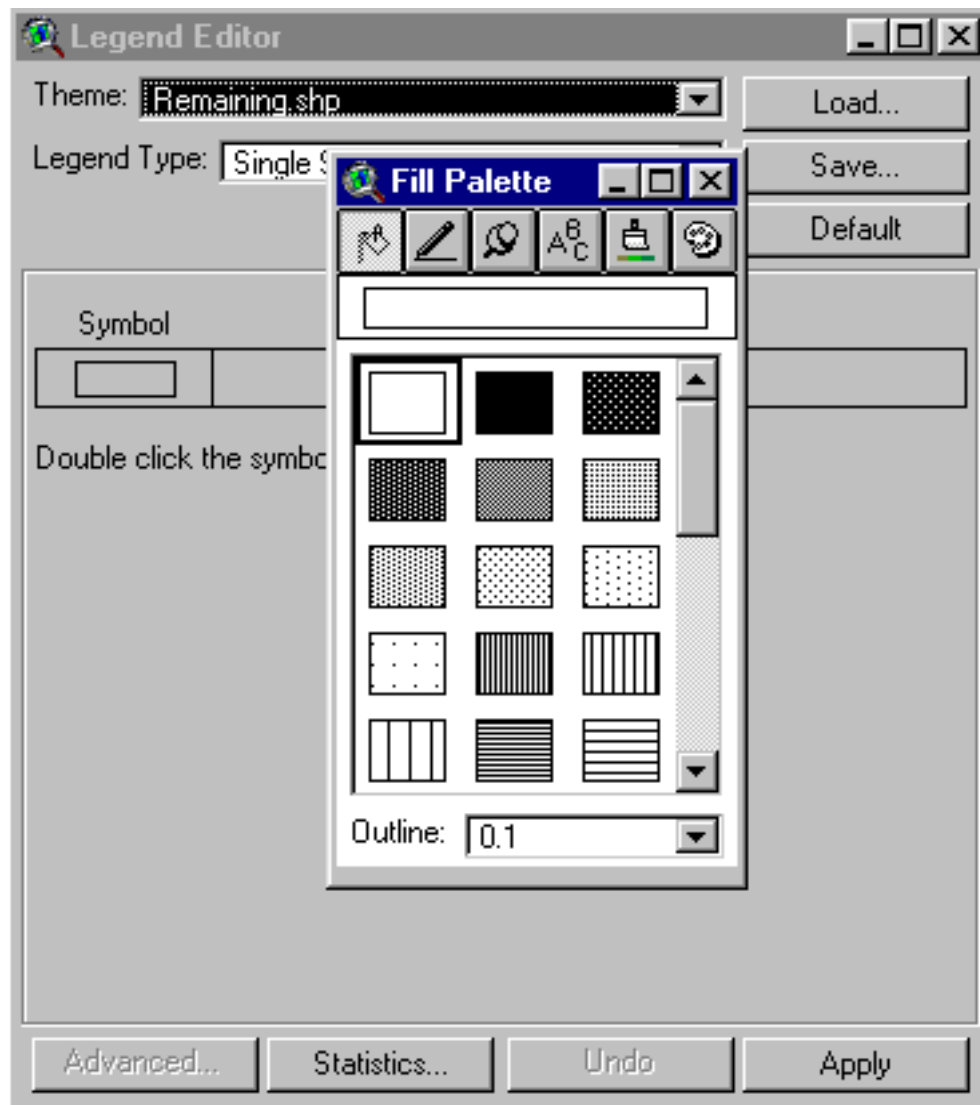
In Table of Contents, double click to open legend editor for drillholes.shp

Change:

symbol size to 4 and

color to red
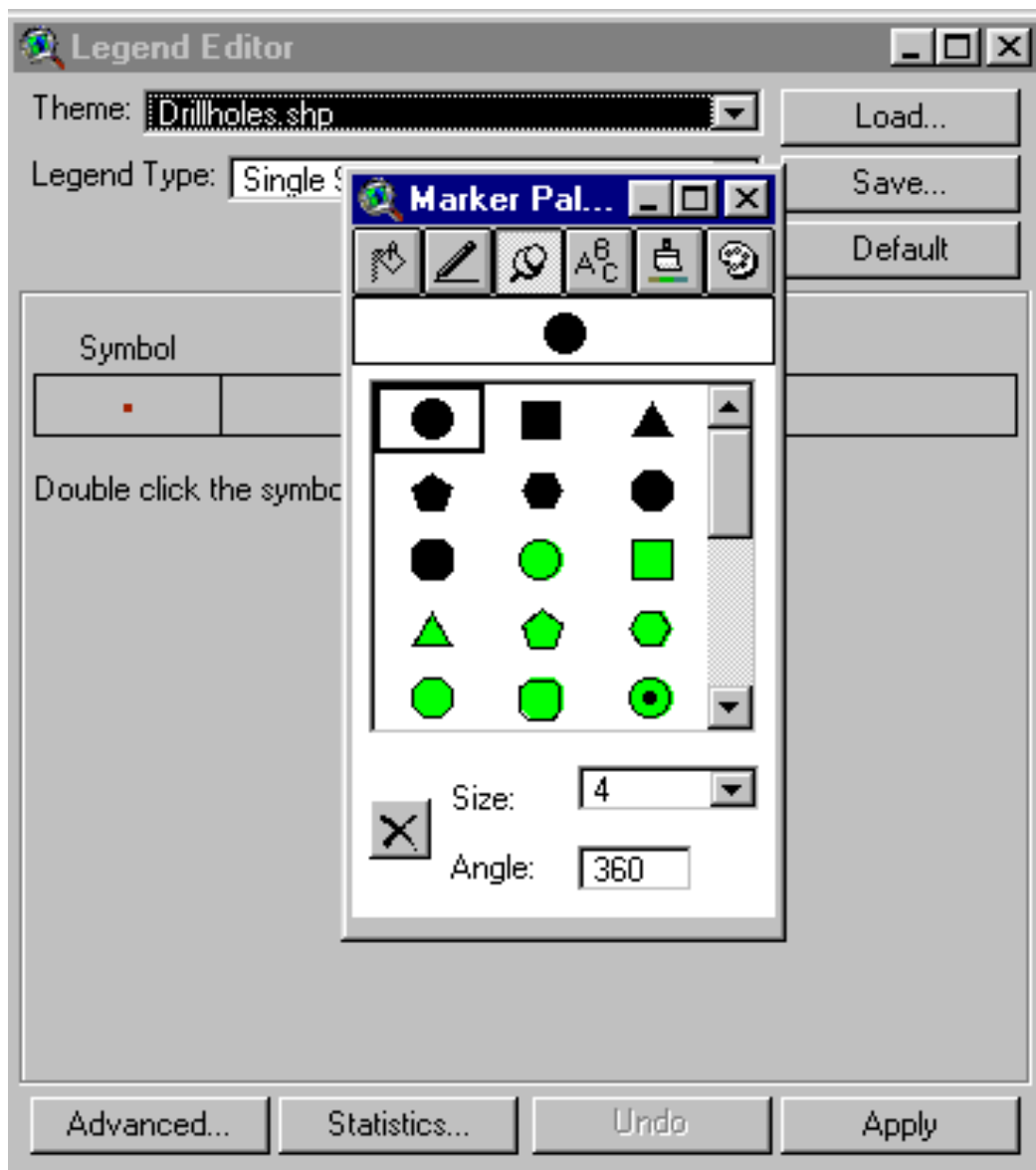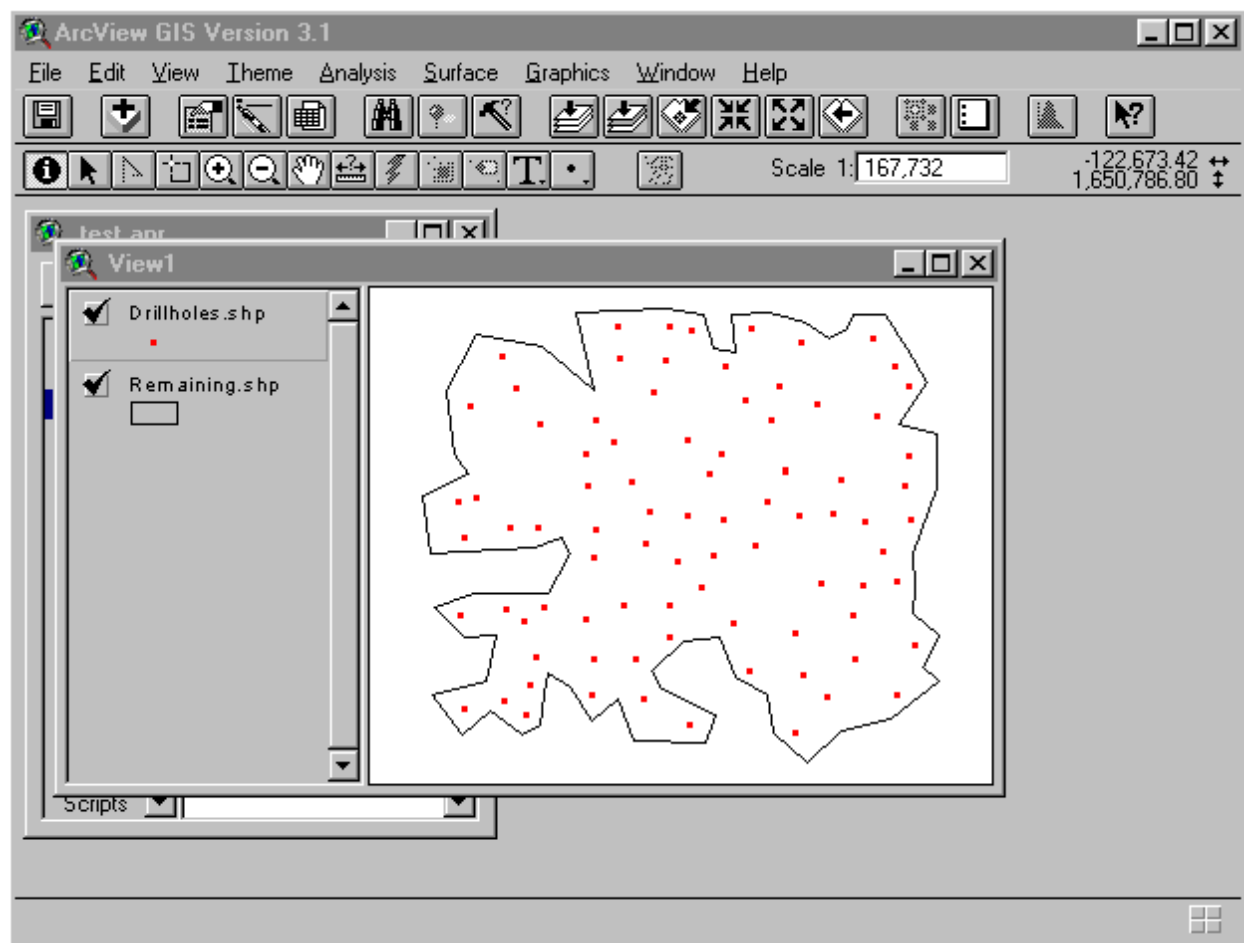
Create a Grid Coverage of Coal Thicknesses

Our first task is to create a grid coverage that assigns a coal thickness to every cell in the coverage. In other words, we proceed to fit a surface to the drillhole data with coal thickness as our interpolated variable.

We want to have a model or grid of coal thickness only in the area of remaining coal. Therefore, initially we make remaining.shp into a grid. By doing so, we can use the remaining grid as a mask At this point, we decide upon the analysis extent and cell size to use throughout the project.

> **Make remaining.shp active**
> **Zoom to active theme**

The "Zoom to Active Theme" Button is between the Graphics and Window Icons (at the button level). It looks like a stack of three books, the middle book is gray, there is an arrow pointing at the top of the stack

Under Analysis Menu
   Click Properties
      Analysis Extent: Same as Display
      Analysis Cell Size:
         Pick "As Specified Below"
            Notice the <u>m</u> to the right of cell size indicating map units in meters
         Cell Size: 16 (Note: make sure you press <u>Enter</u> after you type 16.

You should then see <u>630</u> or <u>693</u> in the Rows Window and <u>a number</u> in the Columns Window.

Click "OK"

Record the row and column counts on a piece of paper. Periodically, we will check our settings against these counts.

A row count of 630 or 693 covers the area outside the remaining layer.

Proceed if your row count is either 630 or 693.

Analysis Properties: View1

Analysis Extent   Same As Display ▼

Left -135809.671157   Top 1658331.271002

Bottom 1647236.463958   Right -121918.972738

Analysis Cell Size   As Specified Below ▼

Cell Size 16   m

Number of Rows 693

Number of Columns 868

Analysis Mask   No Mask Set ▼

OK   Cancel

Make remaining.shp the active theme

Under the theme menu
 Click **Convert to grid**
 In window that opens change the grid name to **remainingcoal**
 ID is the correct field for cell value. Click "OK"
 Click "No" when queried to Join Feature Attributes
 Click "Yes" when queried to add theme to view
 Display remainingcoal

Under Analysis Menu
 Click **Properties**
 Set analysis mask to **remainingcoal**
 Click "OK"
 See Settings in the display that follows:

Open the table for drillholes

Examine the field names. Note the field called **thick_in**. This is the field we will use to build a thickness surface.

Inclass	Finclass	Bed_elev_	Thick_in_	Overburd
6	5	1318	39.5	
6	2	1138	34.1	
6	2	1000	13.0	
6	2	990	17.0	
6	2	1000	34.0	
6	2	1123	33.0	
6	2	1124	17.0	
6	2	1136	34.1	
6	2	987	15.0	
6	2	999	14.0	
6	2	1055	20.0	

Make Drillholes.shp the active theme
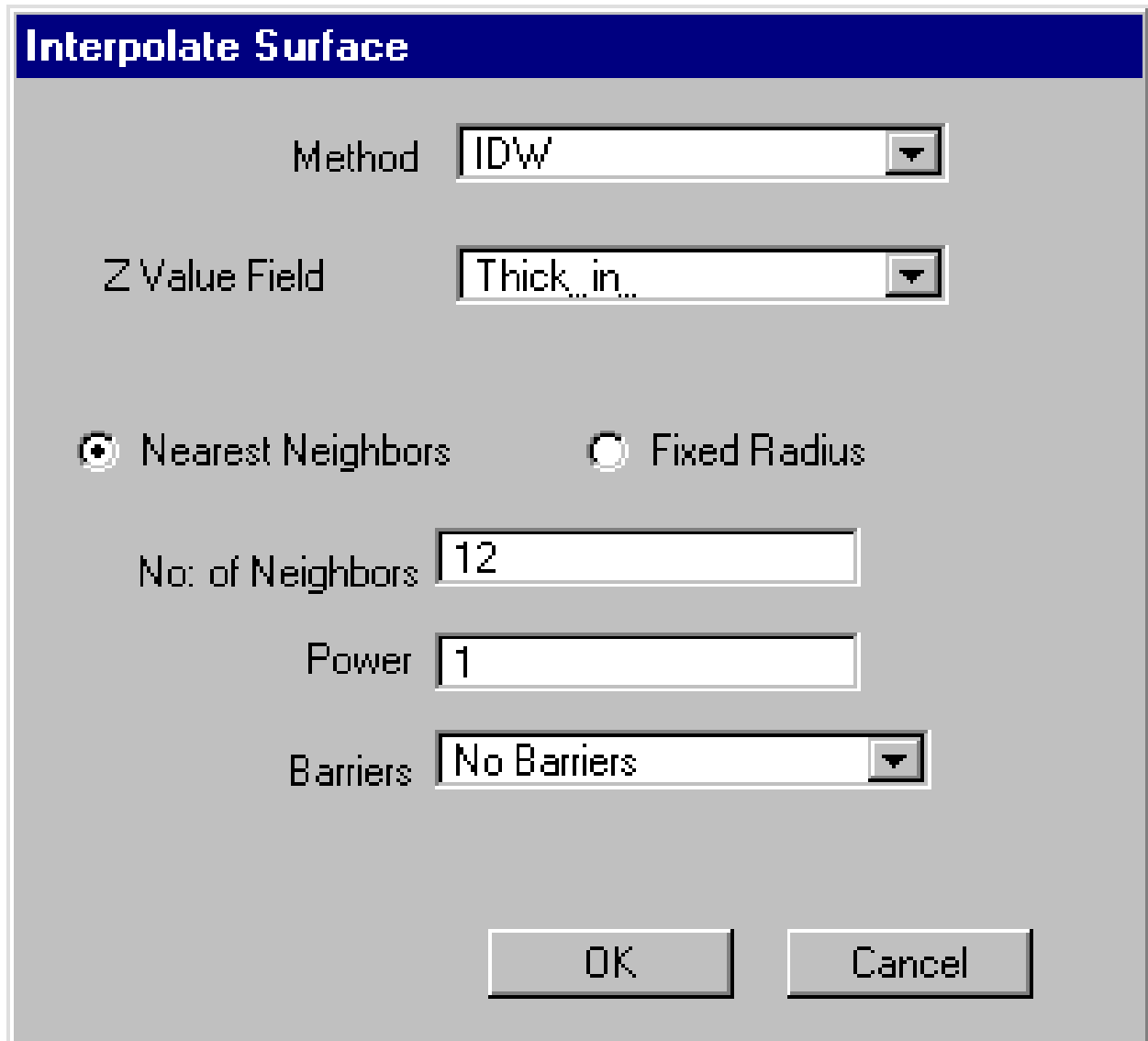
Under the Surface Menu
      Click **Interpolate Grid**
      Set Z Value Field to thick_in
      Set Power to 1
      Accept all other values
      Click "OK"

Interpolate Surface

Method   IDW

Z Value Field   Thick...in...

◉ Nearest Neighbors   ◯ Fixed Radius

No: of Neighbors   12

Power   1

Barriers   No Barriers

OK   Cancel

Next, we convert the thickness grid to an integer grid. To do this we must decide the level of significance for thickness, to retain in the project. We set the significance at one place to the right of the decimal point. To have an integer grid with this significance, we multiply the thickness grid by 10 and apply the integer request (int):

Under the Analysis Menu
      Click Map Calculator
      Double click "Surface from Drillholes.shp" in the Layers List
      Click the * (in the left-middle part of the window)
      Click "1" and "0" on the number pad
      On keyboard, press the "End" key (above the arrow keys)
      Click the dot on the number pad in ArcView
      Type "int"

      Your expression should be:
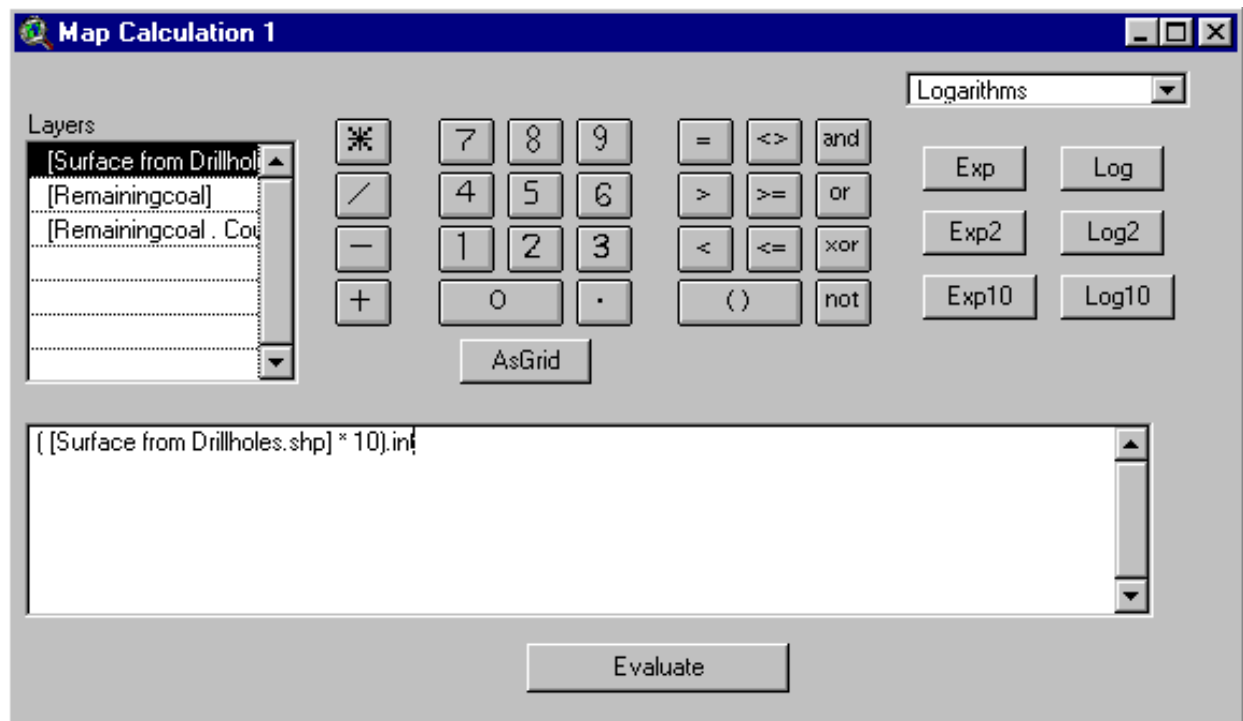
      Click Evaluate

Now for a little cleanup

Make Surface from Drillholes.shp the active theme
Under the Edit menu
        Click "Delete Themes
        Click "Yes"

Make Map Calculation 1 the active theme
Under the theme Menu
        Click Properties
        Rename: Thickness*10
        Click "OK"

Theme Properties

Theme Name: | Thickness*10

Definition

Source: | c:\sptemp\calc1

CellSize: | 16   Rows | 693   Cols | 868

Left: | -135809.6712   Right: | -121921.6712

Bottom: | 1647236.464   Top: | 1658324.464

Type: | Integer   Status: | Permanent

Comments: |

OK   Cancel

Under the File Menu: Save project as: c:\sptemp\coal
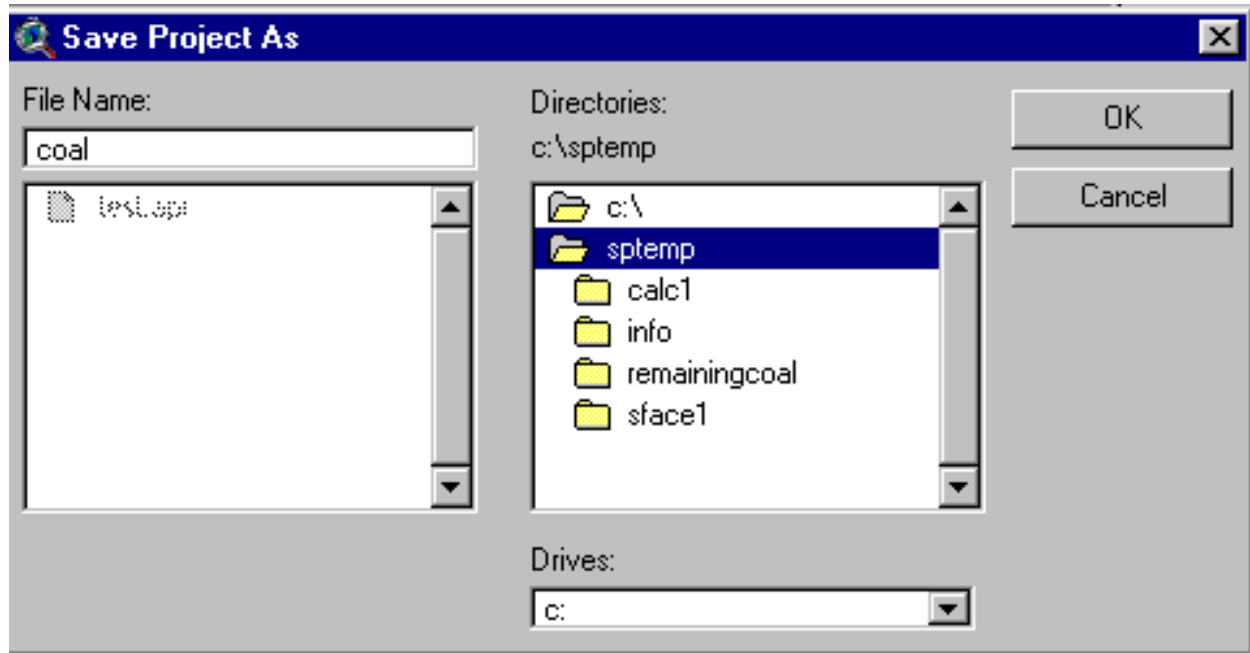
Create a Grid Coverage That Has Tons of Coal as the Cell Value for Each Cell

Next, we use the thickness grid to make a new grid that has tons of coal for each cell
    Some Preliminary Math:
        There are 0.445 tons of coal per square meter-foot
           (equivalent to 1800 tons per acre-foot)
        Thickness*10 is measured <u>in inches</u> and has been multiplied by 10 for conversion
        to an integer grid
        To convert to feet: thickness*10 x (1/10) x (1/12)
        Each cell is (16m x 16m) or 256 square meters
        A square meter-foot in a cell follows as: 256 x (1/10) x (1/12) = 2.1333

        Thus tons of coal per cell = 0.445 x 2.1333 x (thickness*10)
        Or tons of coal per cell = 0.94933 x (thickness*10) per cell

        Example: Consider a cell where thickness*10 = 240 (cell has coal 2 feet thick)
        Coal in cell (16m x 16m) = 0.94933 x 240 = 240.9 tons

Under the Analysis Menu
    Click Map Calculator
    Enter this request:

Map Calculation 1

Layers
[Thickness*10]
[Thickness*10 . Co
[Remainingcoal]
[Remainingcoal . C

AsGrid

([Thickness*10] * 0.94933).int

Evaluate

Logarithms

Exp   Log
Exp2   Log2
Exp10 Log10
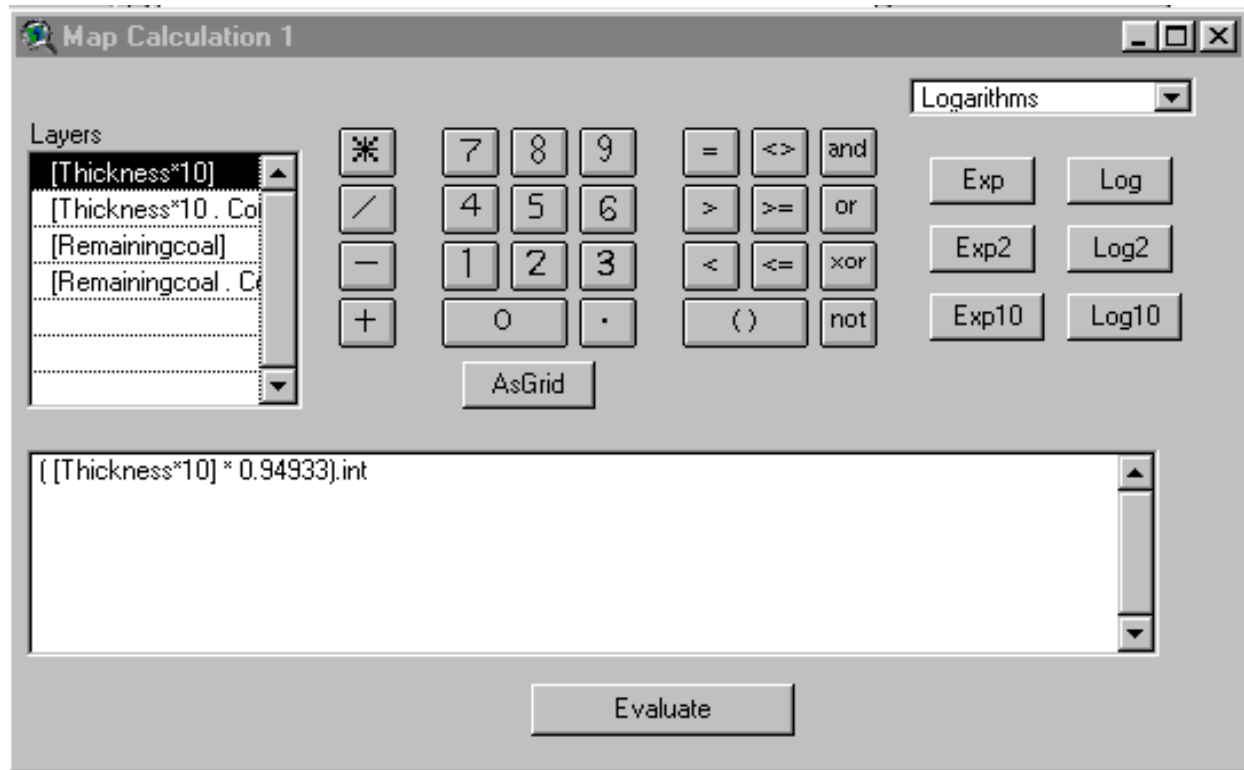
    Click **Evaluate**

    After Map Calculation 1 is added to the View Window, click the "X" of the Map Calculator Dialogue Window to close the window.

In the Theme Properties window change Name of Map Calculation 1 to **Tons By Cell**

    Save Project

Create Coverages of Areas Restricted for Coal Mining

Next, we build coverages of restricted areas. We have two cases, parks and interstates.

Interstates

Convert the interstate feature theme to a grid theme:
    Add the interstate feature theme from c:\sptemp
    Check to make sure Analysis Properties are unchanged (cell size =16,

rows = 630 or 693, and columns = the number you recorded)
Make the interstate theme active
      Under the theme menu:
            Click: Convert to Grid
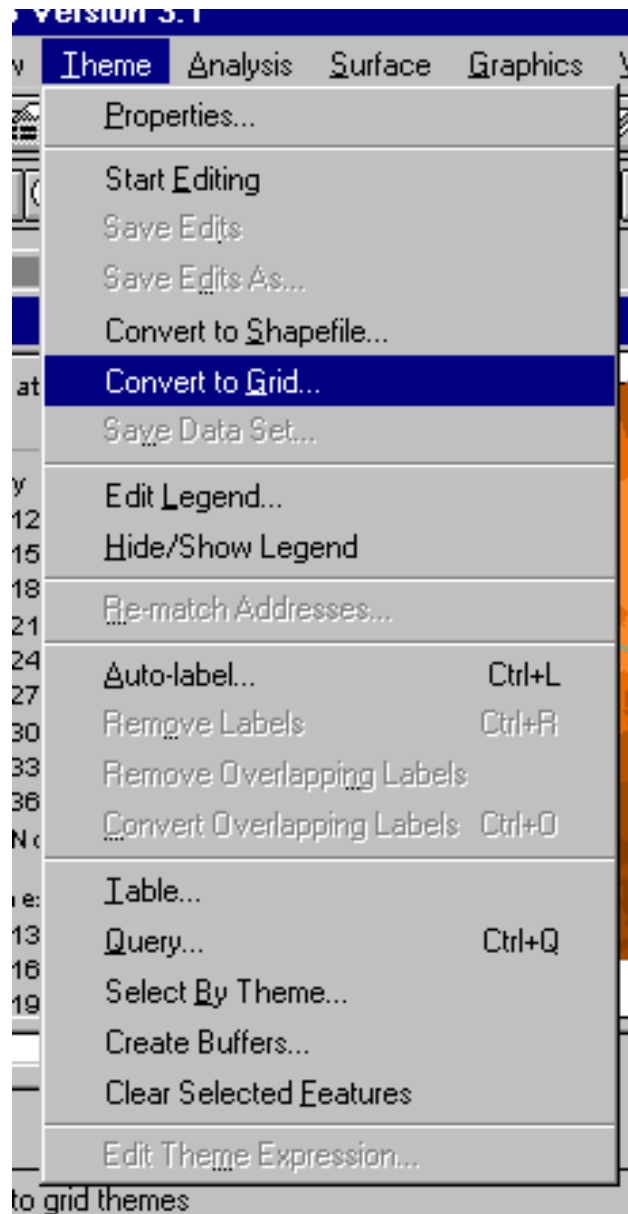
      Save theme as c:\sptemp\interstate
      When queried to pick field for cell values, click "Ok"
      When queried to join feature attributes, click "No"

When queried to add grid to view, click "Yes"
Toggle on the interstate grid
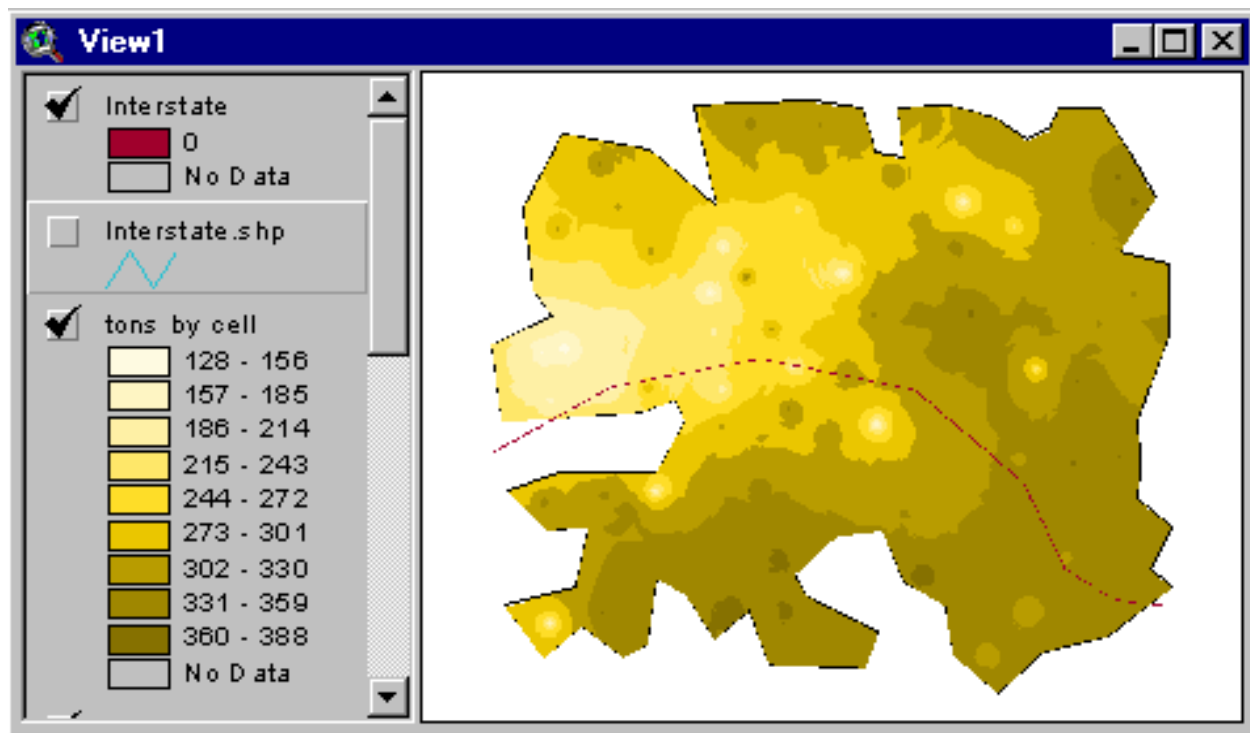
Federal law requires a 100 foot buffer around roads. Our representation of an interstate is one cell wide. Remember in Analysis Properties we set cell size to 16 meters or approx. 50 feet. An interstate is considerably wider than 50 feet. We will assume that in total an interstate is 650 feet wide in rural areas (or 6 more cell widths on each side of the original cell). A 100 foot buffer adds 2 more cell widths. In total, we will add 8 cells to each side of the single road cell:

Under the Analysis Menu
Click Properties
Set Analysis Mask to "No Mask Set"
This important step puts an unrestricted buffer on the feature so that any part of the feature that is not on remaining coal will still block access when its buffer (as distinct from the feature) overlaps the remaining coal area.)

Analysis Properties: View1	
Analysis Extent	Current Value
Left	-134616.17523
Top	1657826.961591
Bottom	1647740.773369
Right	-123112.468665
Analysis Cell Size	Current Value
Cell Size	16 m
Number of Rows	630
Number of Columns	719
Analysis Mask	No Mask Set

OK   Cancel

Under the Analysis Menu
Click Map Calculator
Evaluate this request:
After Map Calculation 1 is added to the View Window, click on the "x" of the Map Calculator Dialogue Window to close it.
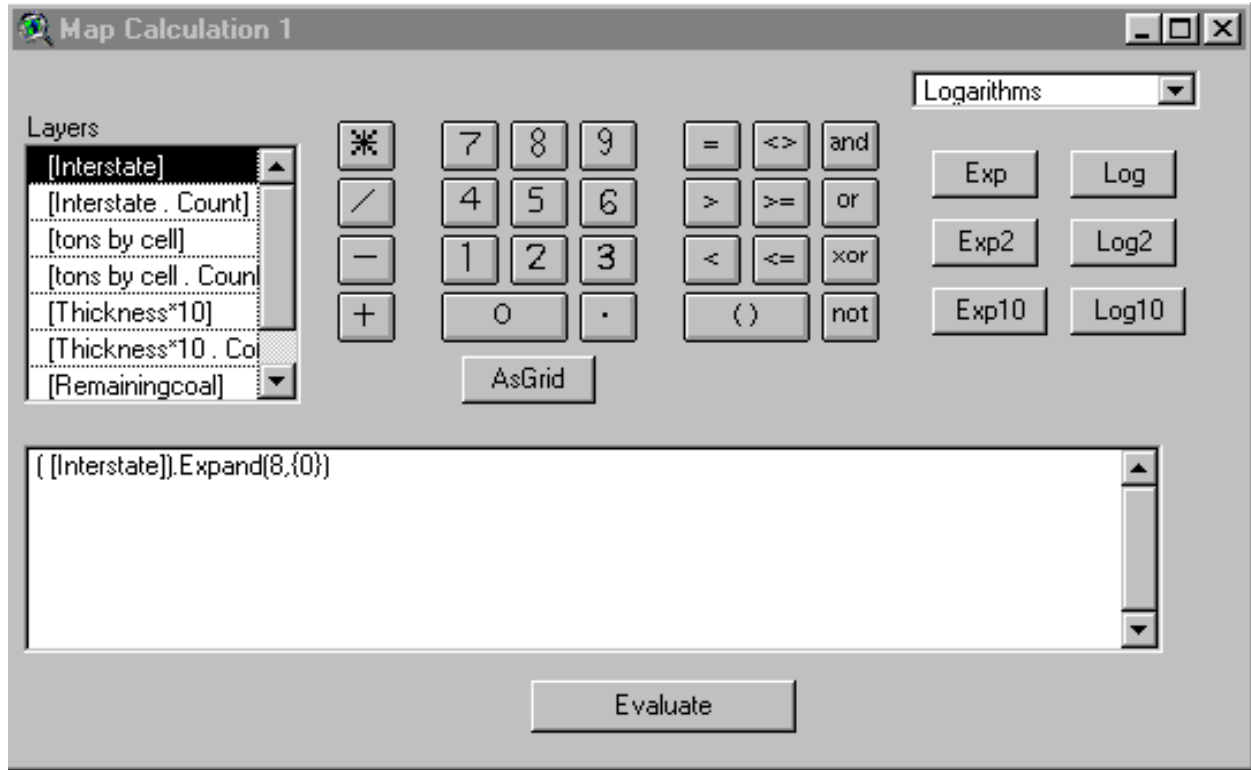
Rename Map Calculation 1 as **Interstate with 100' buffer**
Toggle on its display

Theme Properties

Theme Name: Interstate with 100' buffer

Source: c:\sptemp\calc3

CellSize: 16   Rows 693   Cols 868

Left: -135809.6712   Right: -121921.6712

Bottom: 1647236.464   Top: 1658324.464

Type: Integer   Status: Temporary

Comments:

Definition   Display   Locking

OK   Cancel

View1

Interstate with 100'
- 0 (green)
- No Data

Interstate
- 0 (red)
- No Data

Interstate.shp

tons by cell
- 128 - 156
- 157 - 185
- 186 - 214
- 215 - 243
- 244 - 272
- 273 - 301
- 302 - 330

Parks

Convert the park feature theme to a grid theme:

>	Add the park feature theme from c:\sptemp
>	Check to make sure Analysis Properties are unchanged (cell size =16,
>	rows = 630 or 693, and columns = the value you recorded)

>	**Make the park theme active**
>>		Under the theme menu:
>>>			Click: Convert to Grid
>>>			Save theme as **c:\sptemp\parks**
>>>			Add theme to view and toggle on its display
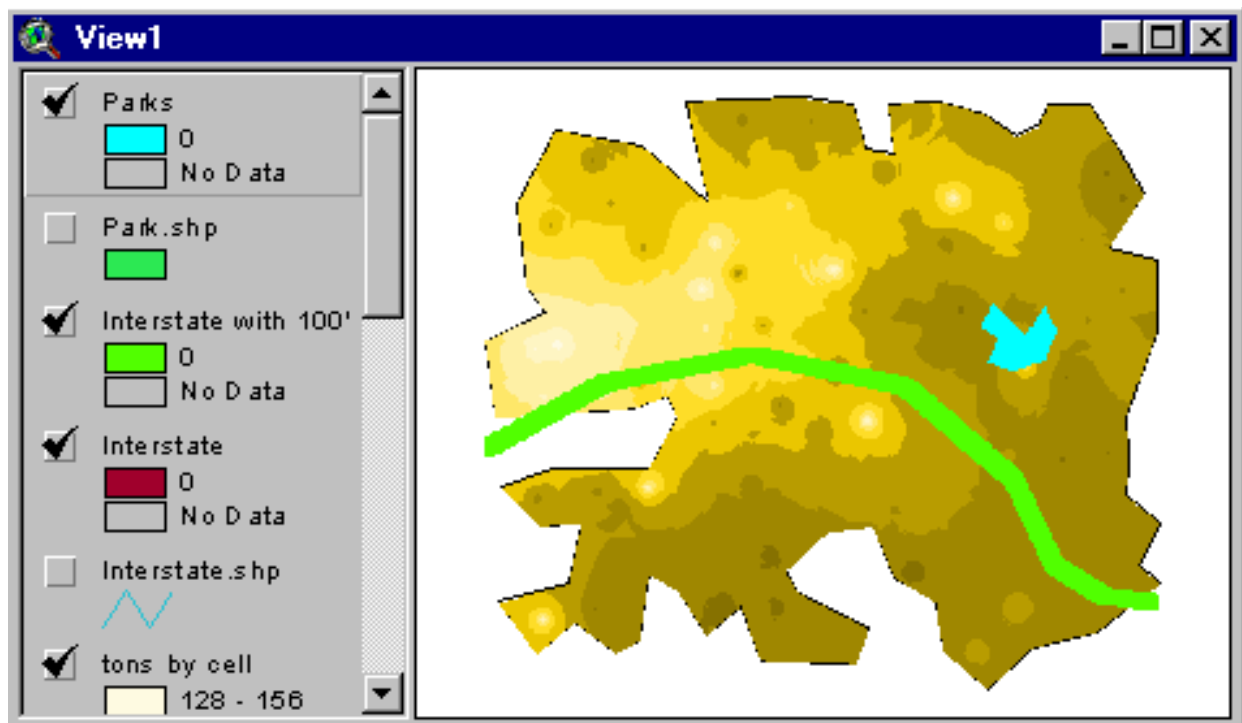
Federal law requires a 300 foot buffer around parks.

Therefore, we will expand the park grid by 6 cells

Under the Analysis Menu
              Click Map Calculator
              Evaluate this request:
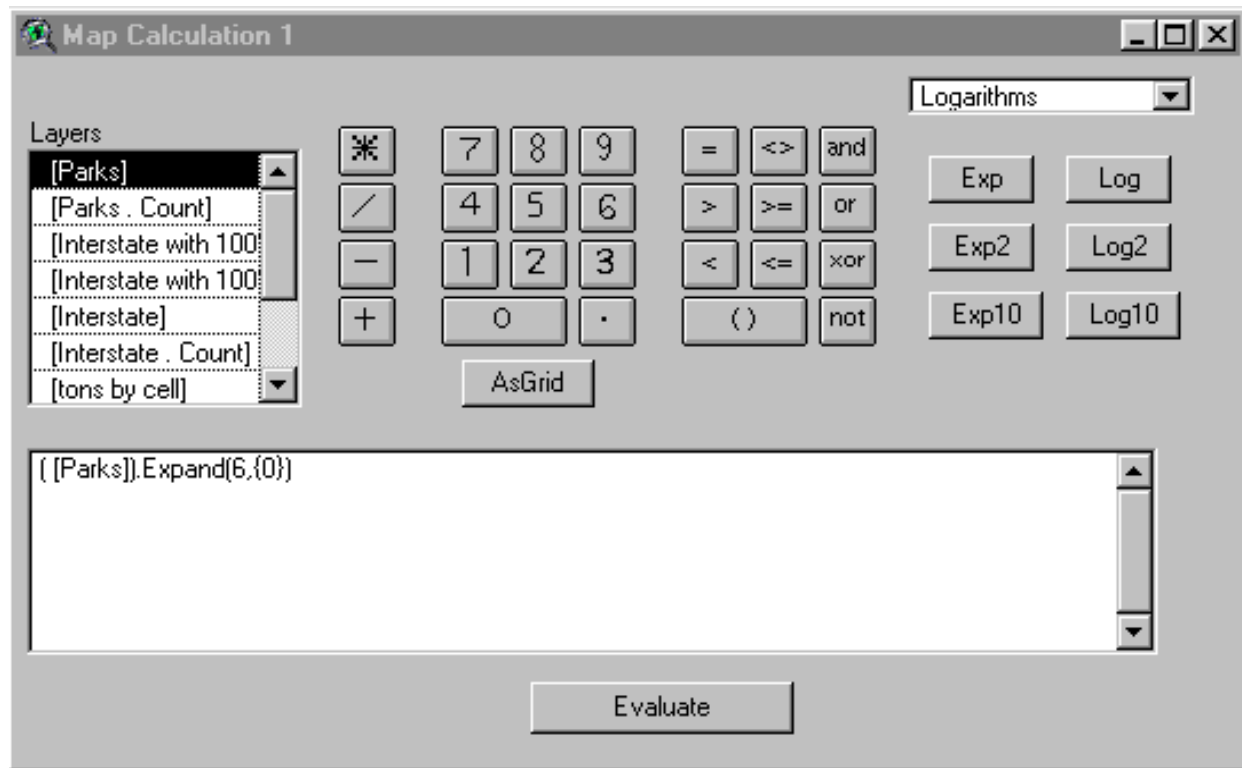
        Rename Map Calculation 1 as **Park with 300' buffer**
        Toggle on its display
        You may have to change colors in Legend Editor to see the buffer

A - 24
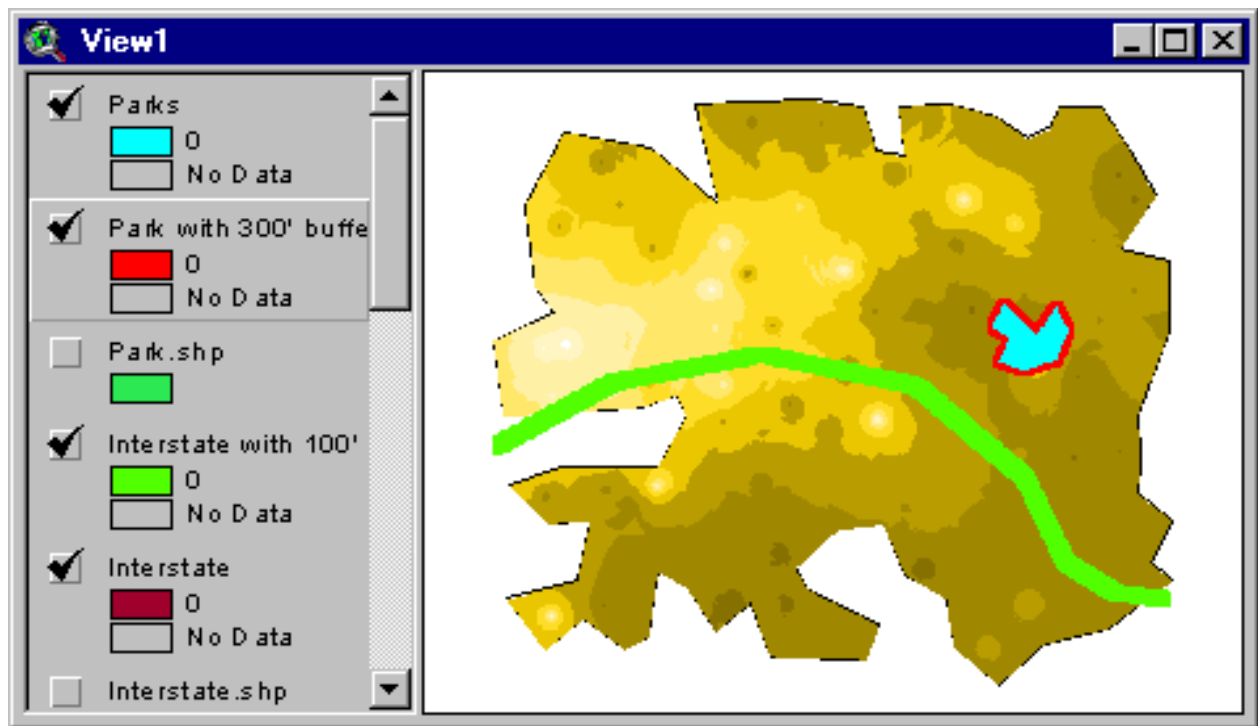
Create a Grid Coverage That Delineates Measured, Indicated, Inferred, and Hypothetical Coal Resources

Calculate distance to drillholes:

       Make drillholes.shp the active theme

       Under Analysis Menu
              Click **Find Distance**

       Make **<u>Distance to Drillholes.shp the active theme</u>**

       Under the Analysis Menu
              Click **Reclassify**

       Change Old Values to these ranges:
              (Note: 402.337 meters = 0.25 miles)
              However to demo method, we assume 100.584 meters = 0.25 mile
              Use the Meter settings; other values show relationship to Circular 891

SKIP AROUND THESE CONVERSIONS (WHAT YOU SHOULD USE):

	True Conversions	
Meters	Miles	891 Category
0 - 402.337	0 - 0.25	Measured
402.337 - 1207.011	0.25 - 0.75	Indicated
1207.011 - 4828.044	0.75 - 3	Inferred
> 4828.044	>3	Hypothetical

USE THESE CONVERSIONS (USED FOR CONVENIENCE):

	Assumed Conversions	
Meters	Miles	
0 - 100.584	0 - 0.25	Measured
100.584 - 301.752	0.25 - 0.75	Indicated
301.752 - 1207.008	0.75 - 3	Inferred
1207.008 - 4300	>3	Hypothetical

Reclassify Values

Classification Field: | Value | ▼

| Classify... | | Unique | | Lookup... |

Old Values	New Value
0 - 100.584	1
100.584 - 301.752	2
301.752 - 1207.008	3
1207.008 - 4300	4
1166.478 - 1399.774	**6**
1399.774 - 1633.07	7
1633.07 - 1866.365	8

| + | X |

| Load |

| Save | | OK | | Cancel |

Eliminate all the other Old Value entries except No Data
To eliminate value lines
Click at left of line to highlight it
The click X near bottom of list

Click OK

Open Legend Editor for the **Reclass of Distance to Drillholes.shp** theme

Make these changes to labels

      Out to 0.25 miles
      From 0.25 to 0.75 miles
      From 0.75 to 3 miles
      Greater than 3 miles

Legend Editor

Theme: Reclass of Distance to Drillholes.shp
Legend Type: Unique Value

Load...
Save...
Default

Values Field: Value

Symbol	Value	Label	Count
	1	Out to 0.25 miles	10324
	2	From 0.25 to 0.75 mile	83347
	3	From 0.75 to 3 miles	386760
	4	Greater than 3 miles	121093
		No Data	

Color Schemes: Bountiful Harvest

Advanced... | Statistics... | Undo | Apply
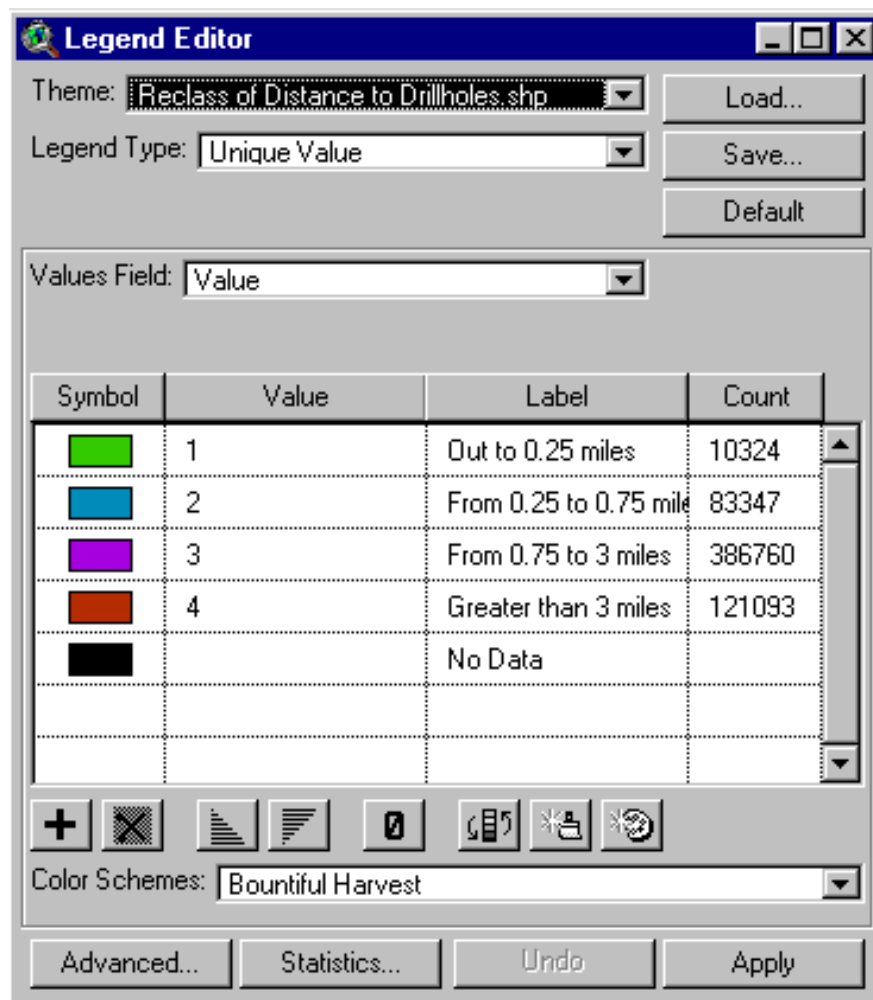
Toggle on, toggle off display for Distance grid to see reliability zones.

Create Grid That Has Restricted Areas Removed

To eliminate the area in Interstates and Parks (including buffers, we need to turn those themes into a 0 and 1 grid:

   In Map Calculator evaluate this request:

   Open Theme Properties and Rename Map Calculation 1 as parkw300class
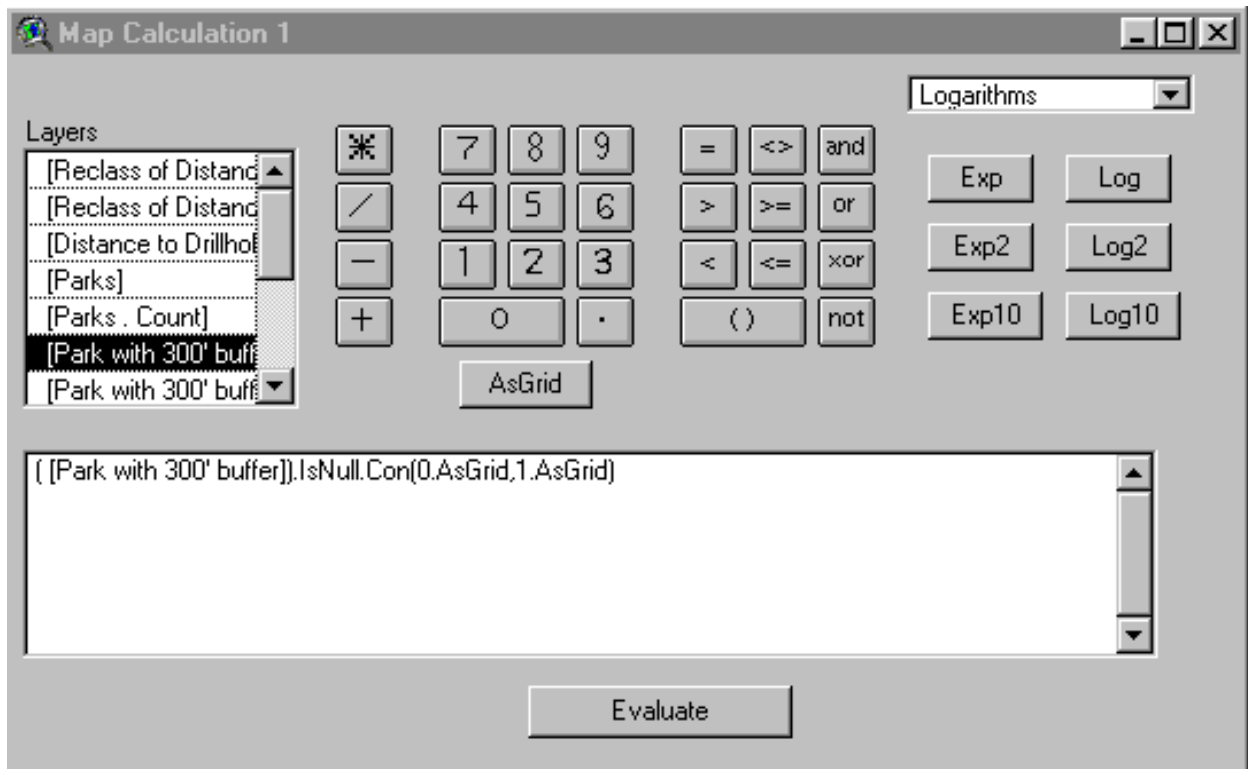
   In Map Calculator evaluate this request:

Open Theme Properties and Rename Map Calculation 1 as interstatew100class
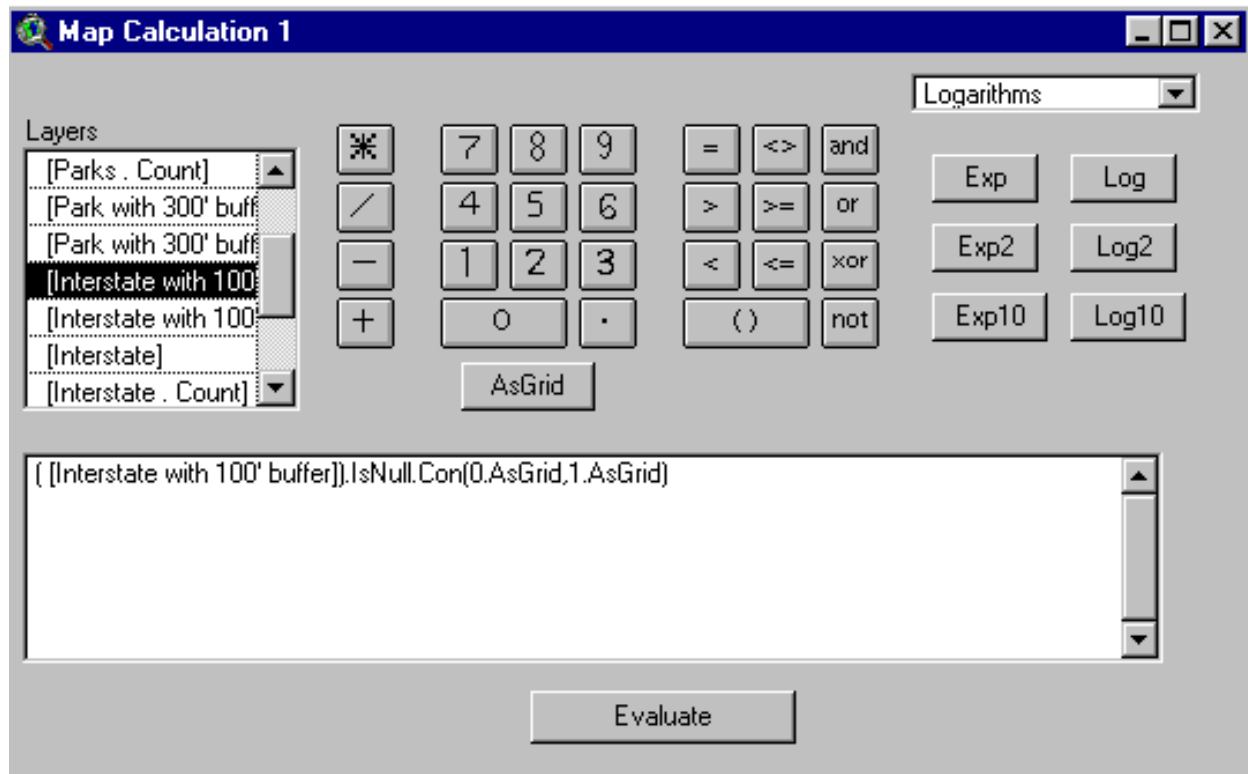
Next, we estimate the coal in the remaining coal area by reliability class:

Under the Analysis Menu

Click 'Properties"
Set **Analysis Mask** to

Remainingcoal

Under the Analysis Menu
     Click "Map Calculator"

     Evaluate this Request:

Some things to notice:
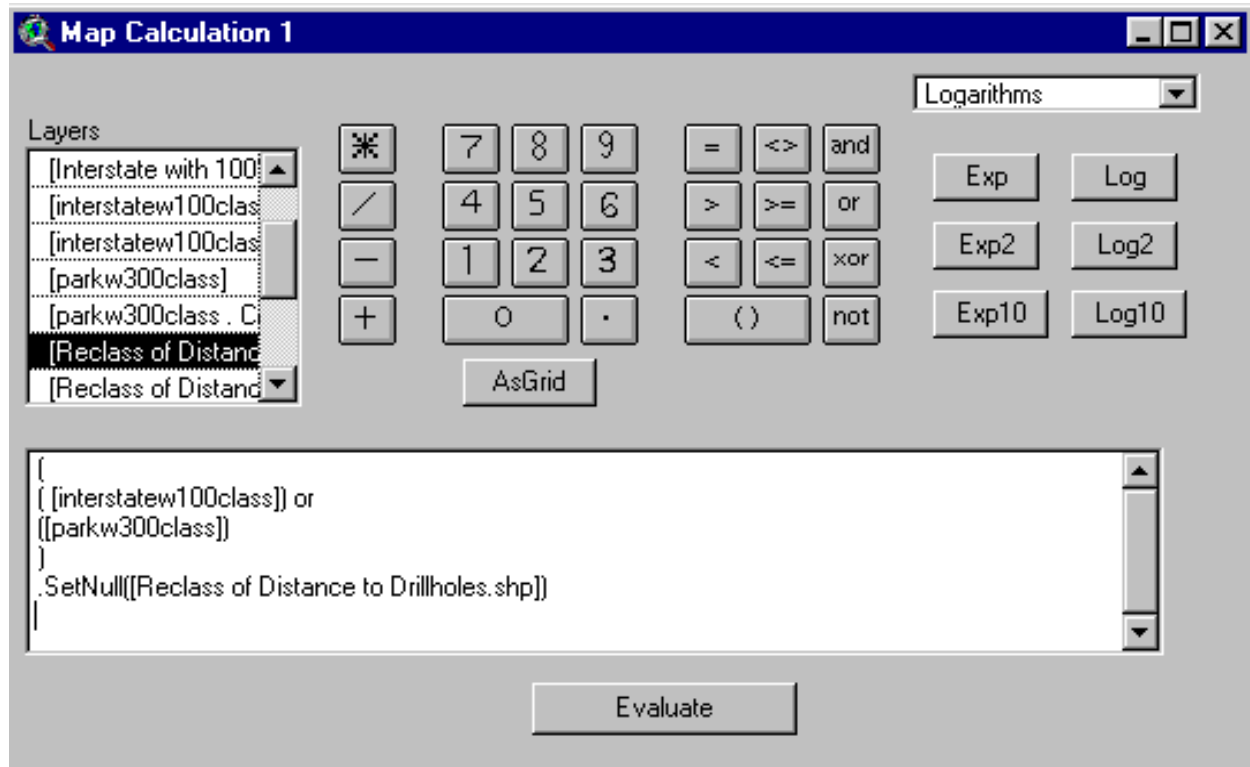
Map Calculator doesn't care about spacing of line returns or spacing of parentheses. Therefore, beginning and ending parentheses can be isolated, nested conditions indented, and "enters" used to move to new lines as above.

The request above removes restricted coal from the assessment.

In Theme Properties, rename Map Calculation 1 as

     remainareabyreliability

Under the View Menu

Click "Themes Off"

Then toggle on the display for **remainareabyreliability**:
The display shows that interstates and parks (and their buffers) have been removed from remaining coal.
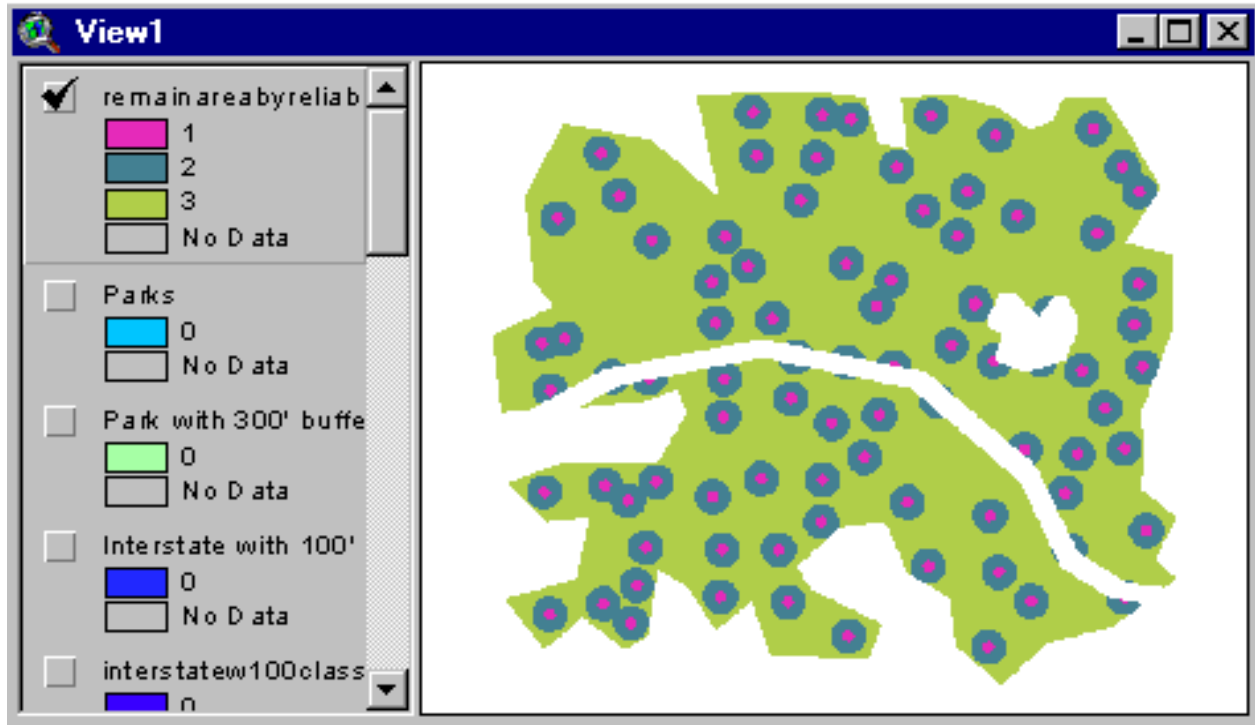
Also, the area with remaining coal does not have any coal located beyond 3 miles from a drill hole.

Therefore, the remainareabyreliability grid has 3 reliability categories instead of 4.

However, you also could have coal in the hypothetical category (> 3 miles from a drillhole).

Estimate Tons of Coal in Each Reliability Category

Make **remainareabyreliability** active.

Under the Analysis Menu

Click "Summarize Zones"

Select "Tons by cell" as the theme containing the variable to summarize.

Click "OK"

When queried concerning a chart, click "Cancel"

Move the "Stats of Tons by Cell" table to the upper right of the <u>viewable</u> part of the View Window:
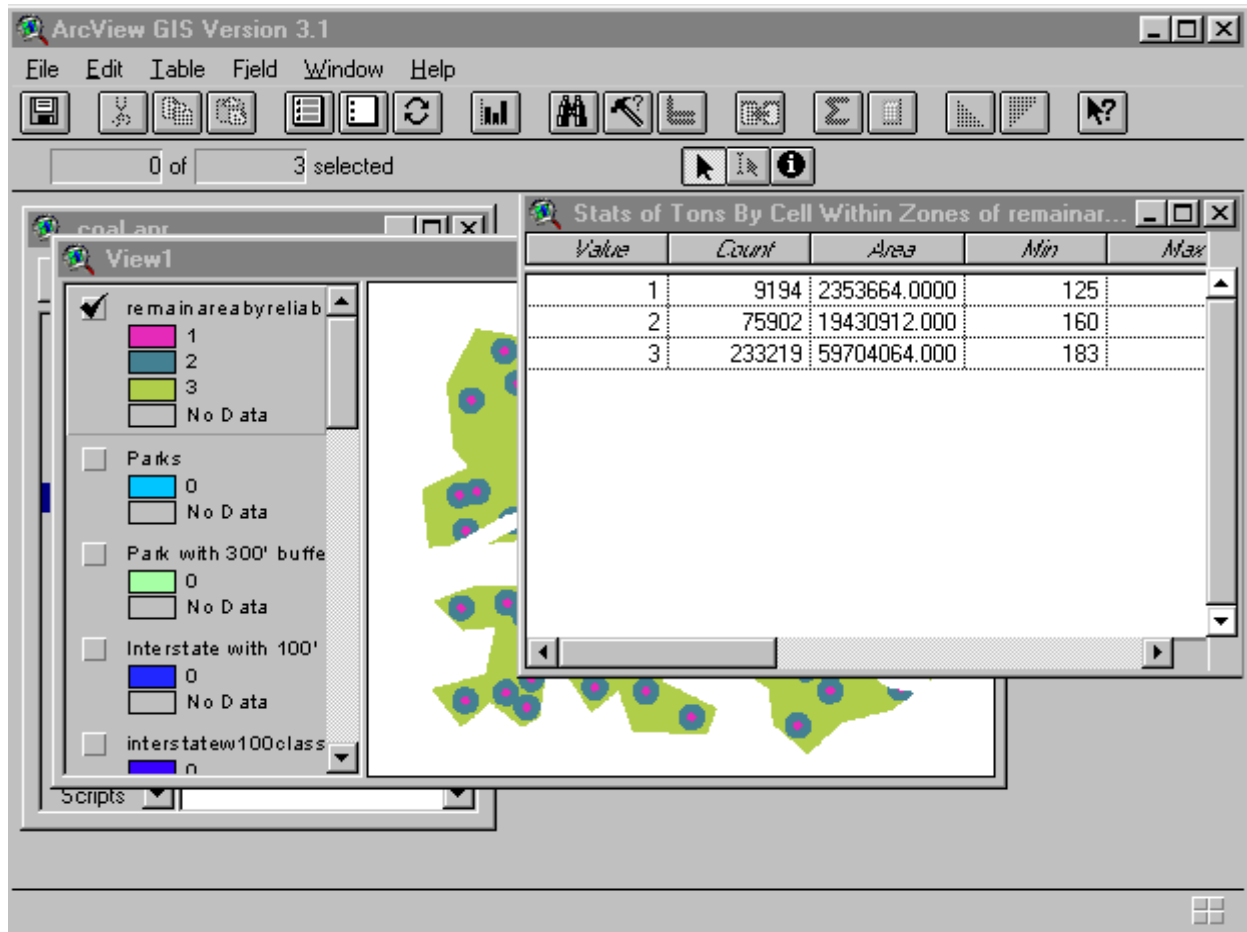
Make View1 Active.

Open the attribute table for **remainareabyreliability**

Align the <u>attribute</u> table and the <u>stats</u> table as follows:

Notice that the cell count agrees between the 2 tables

Join **Stats to Attributes** using **Value** as the common field:
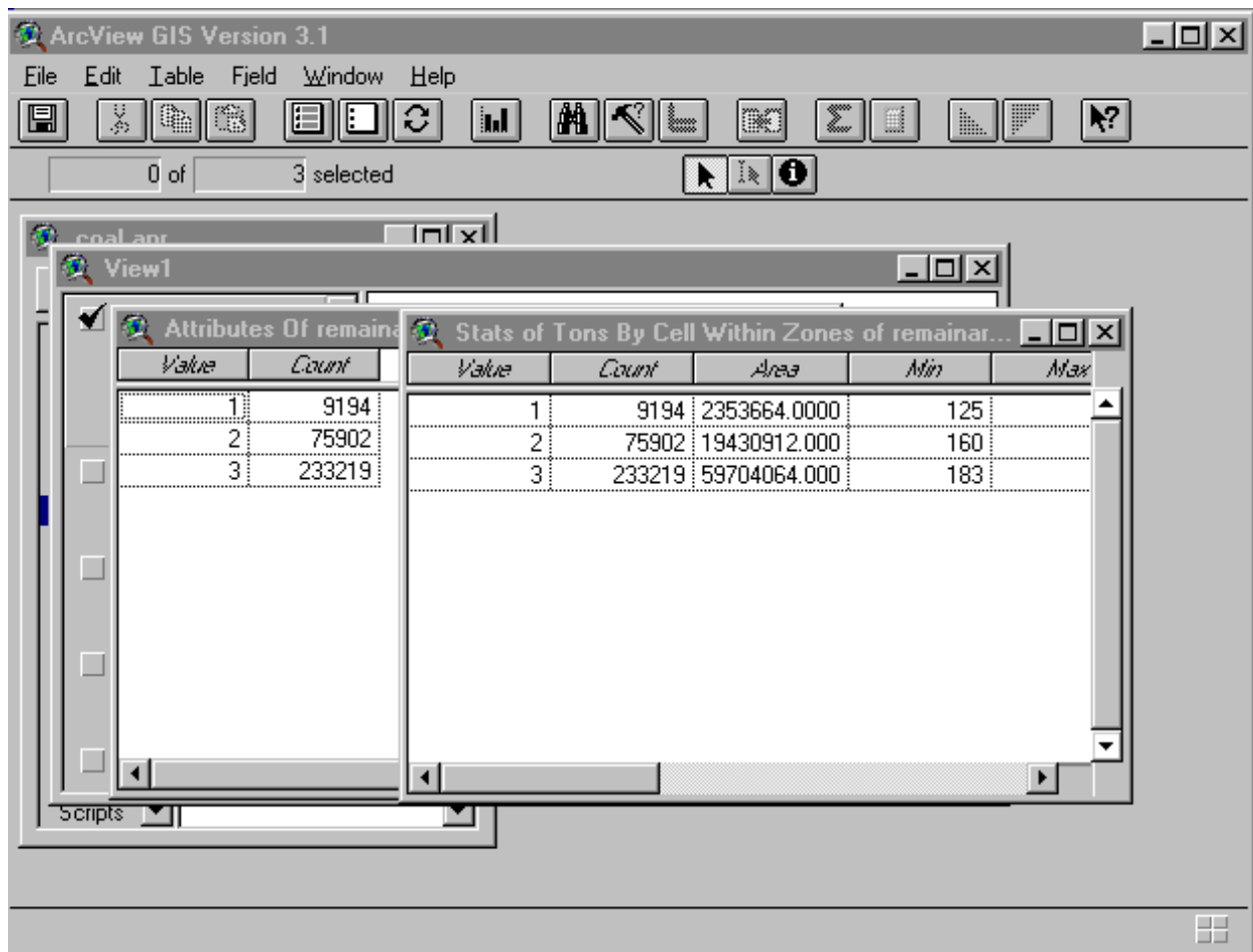
Click on **Value** in the Stats table

Click on **Value** in the Attributes table

The Join button should be active; click on it.

Under the Table Menu:

      Click "Start Editing"
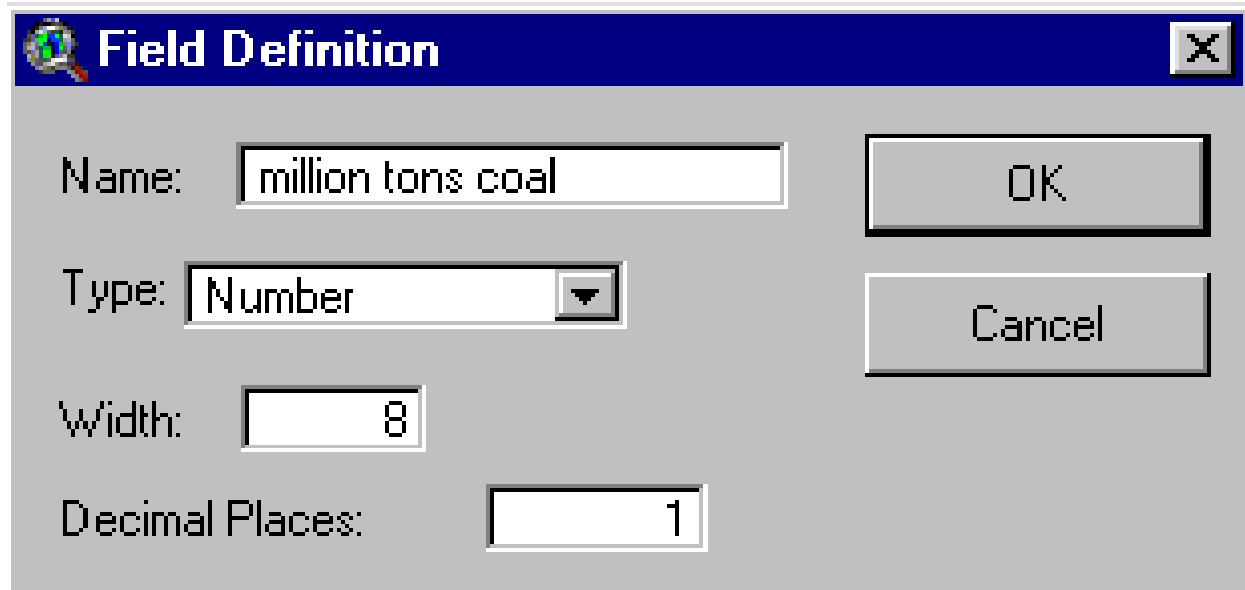
Under the Edit Menu

Click "Add Field"

Enter these settings in the Field Definition Window:

Click "OK"

Click "Yes" (to query about field name)

```
Field Definition                                    ✕

  Name:     million tons coal                      OK

  Type:    Number          ▼
                                                  Cancel
  Width:         8

  Decimal Places:          1
```

Click on Calculate Button (Looks like calculator)

In the Field Calculator Window enter these settings:
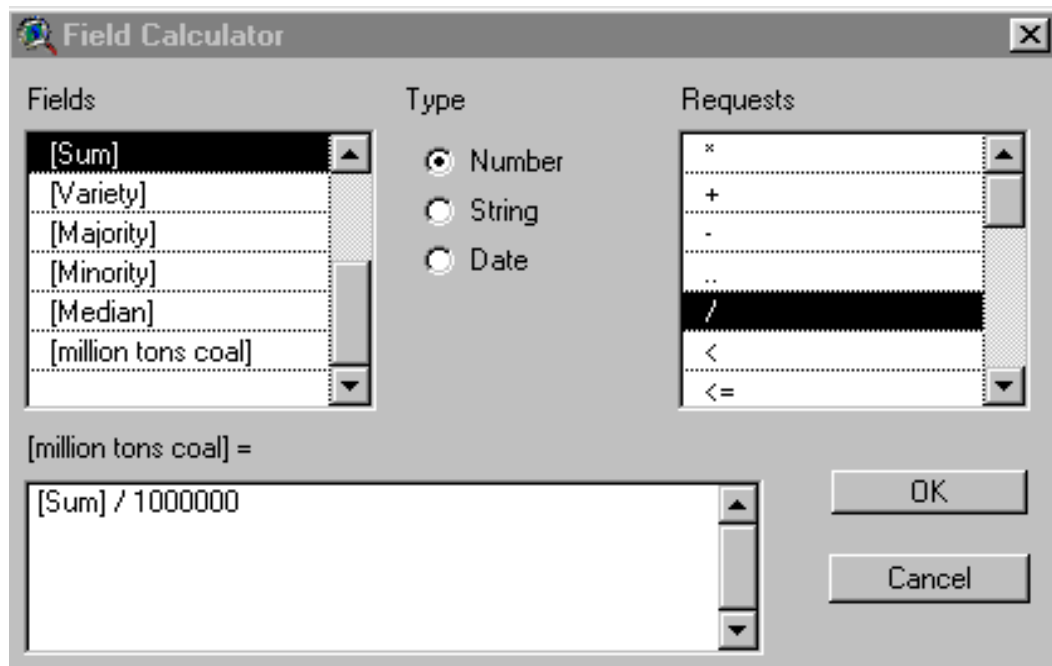
Click "OK"

The field "million tons of coal" is populated with the estimates:

Under the Table Menu

    Click "Stop Editing"

    In response to query "Save Edits" click "Yes"

    Under Table Menu

        Click "Remove All Joins"

Click "million tons of coal" field name in the Attribute table

Under the Field Menu

    Click "Statistics"

    Record Sum

    Sum should equal **96.5 million tons**

    Measured coal is estimated to be **2.8 million tons**

    Indicated coal is estimated to be **23.3 million tons**

    Inferred coal is estimated to be **70.4 million tons**

    Click "OK"

Reclassify Thickness Grid

Next, we reclassify thickness*10 to correspond with target thickness categories:

    Make thickness*10 the active theme

    Under the Analysis Menu

        Click Reclassify

        Enter these settings:

Reclassify Values

Classification Field: Value ▼

[Classify...]   [Unique]   [Lookup...]

Old Values	New Value
120 - 240	1
240 - 360	2
360 - 440	3
No Data	No Data

[+] [X]

[Load]

[Save]   [OK]   [Cancel]

Click   "OK"

A - 38

Change Table of Contents for Reclass of Thickness*10 to these labels:

    12 to 24 inches
    from 24 to 36 inches
    greater than 36 inches

Click "Apply"

Create Grid Coverage of Overburden
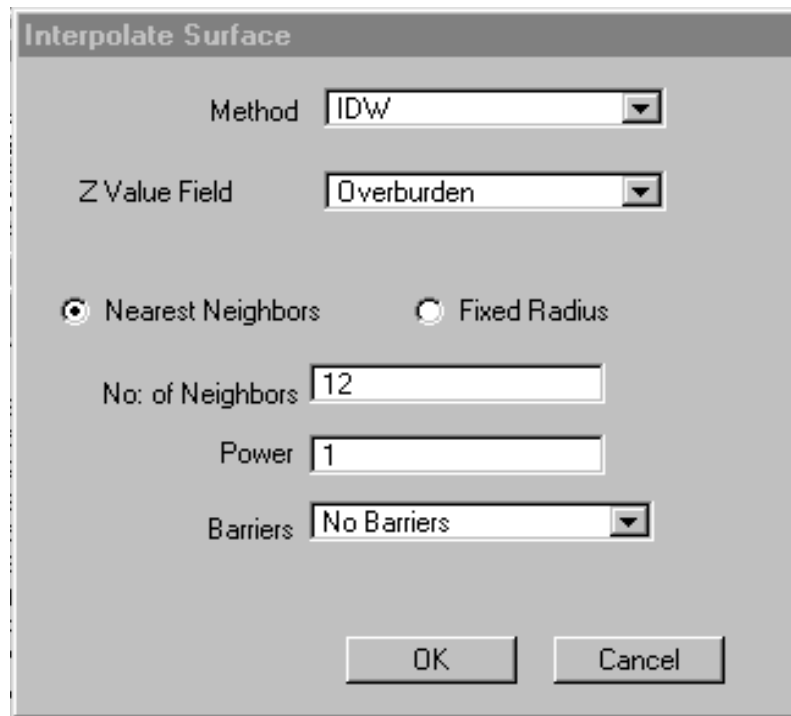
Next, we add overburden point estimates and interpolate to obtain an overburden surface grid:

Make the **drillholes.shp** theme active

Under the Surface Menu

Click "Interpolate Grid"

Enter these settings:

Interpolate Surface

Method	IDW
Z Value Field	Overburden

⦿ Nearest Neighbors   ○ Fixed Radius

No: of Neighbors	12
Power	1
Barriers	No Barriers

OK   Cancel

Make new   theme active

Save your project

Under Theme Menu

Click "Properties"

Rename new theme as:
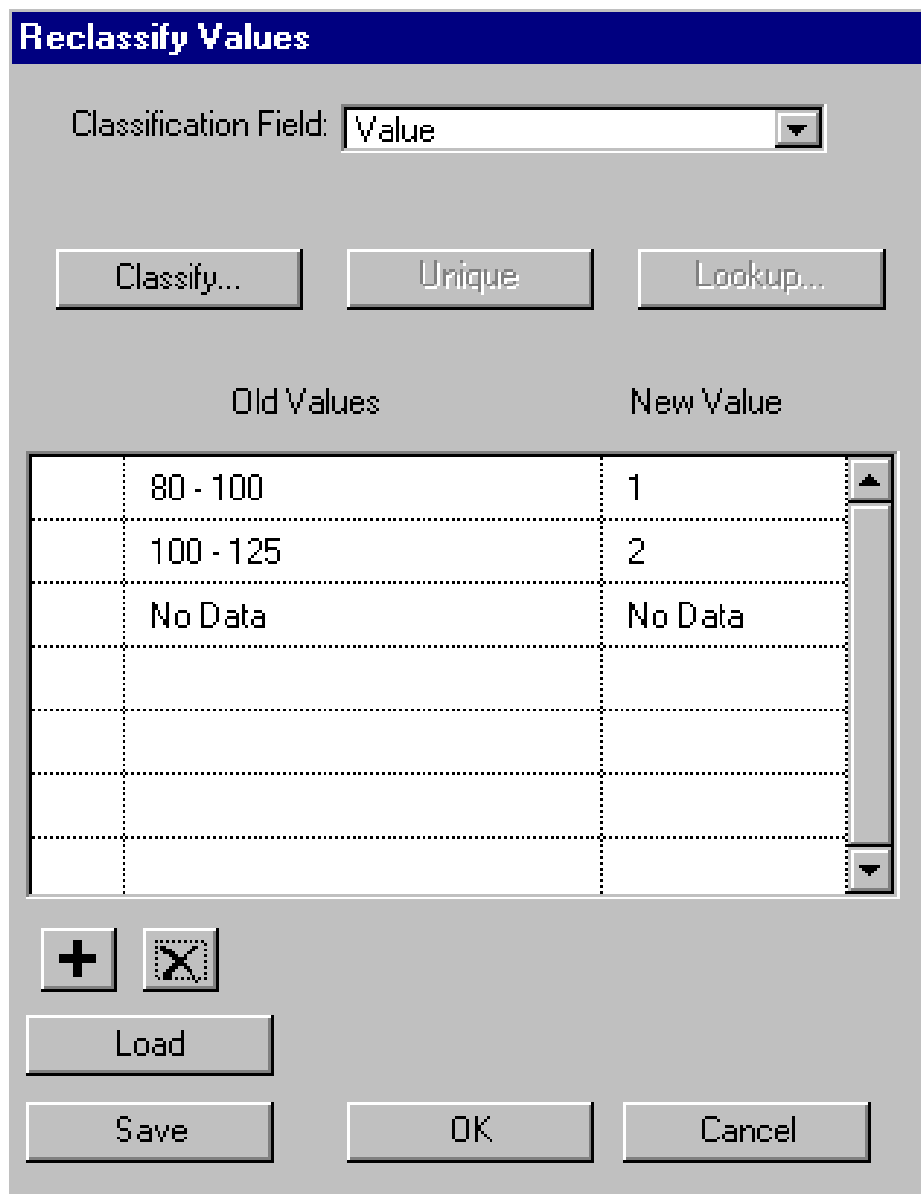
overburden

Reclassify Overburden Grid

Under the Analysis Menu

Click "Reclassify"

Enter these settings:

Reclassify Values

Classification Field: Value ▼

[Classify...] [Unique] [Lookup...]

Old Values	New Value
80 - 100	1
100 - 125	2
No Data	No Data

[**+**] [**X**]

[Load]

[Save] [OK] [Cancel]

Click   "OK"

Change labels in Table of Contents for Reclass of Overburden to:

A - 41

80 to 100 feet

from 100 to 125 feet

Legend Editor

Theme: Reclass of overburden

Legend Type: Unique Value

Load...
Save...
Default

Values Field: Value

Symbol	Value	Label	Count
(yellow)	1	80 to 100 feet	98193
(blue)	2	from 100 to 125 feet	242117
(white)		No Data	

Color Schemes: Bountiful Harvest

Advanced...   Statistics...   Undo   Apply

Click "Apply"

Delineate Coal in Each Category Classified by Reliability, Thickness, and Overburden

Next, we calculate tons of coal in all possible combinations of reliability (3), thickness (3), and

A - 42

overburden (2).

There are 18 possible combinations. Because some categories may not have any cells, fewer than18 categories can be found..

In Map Calculator, evaluate this request (you press enter to move to a new line):

Click "Evaluate"

Notice that we use "Reclass of Distance to Drillholes.shp" as the grid coverage of remaining
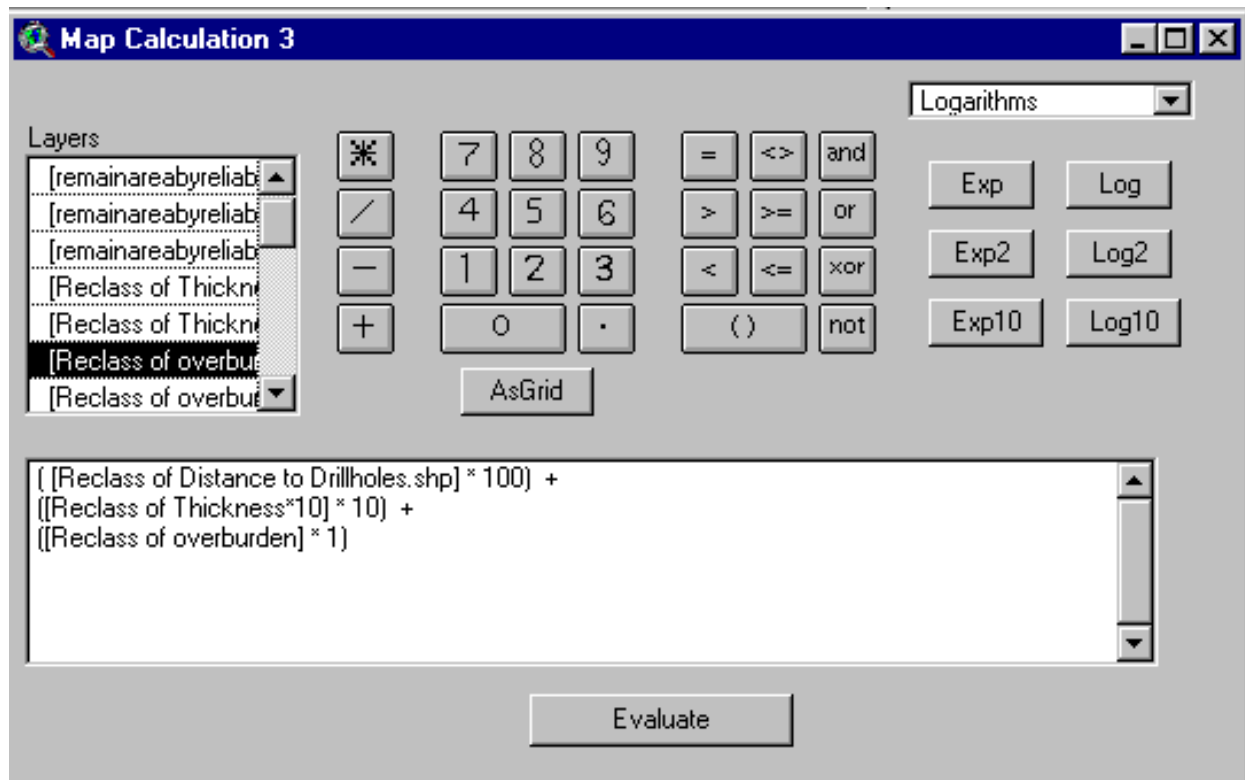
coal.

This layer contains coal in the restricted areas occupied by the interstate and park buffers.

We start by estimating all coal, including coal in restricted areas.

Then we estimate coal, excluding coal in restricted areas.

Finally, we subtract the coal (including restricted coal) from coal (excluding restricted coal) to obtain the estimates of restricted coal by category of reliability, thickness, and overburden.

The request (Map Calculation 3) creates a coverage that identifies coal in unique classes of reliability, thickness, and overburden.

Under Theme Menu:

      Click "Properties"

      Name the new grid as: **coalrestr**

As shown on A-45, you should see 15 categories (reliability, thickness, overburden) displayed as a separate color.

The tree diagram on p. A-46 is the key for identifying and labeling each category.

<u>Analysis Tree</u>

Sequence

Thickness   Overburden

Reliability

1   1   1   ____

1   1   2   ____

1   1   1   2   1   ____

1   2   2   ____

1   2

3   1   3   1   ____

1   3   2   ____

2   1   1   ____

2   1   2   ____

1   2   2   1   ____

2   2   2   2   ____

2

3   2   3   1   ____

2   3   2   ____

3   1   1   ____

3   1   2   ____

1   3   2   1   ____

3   2   3   2   2   ____

3

3   3   3   1   ____

3   3   2   ____

A - 46
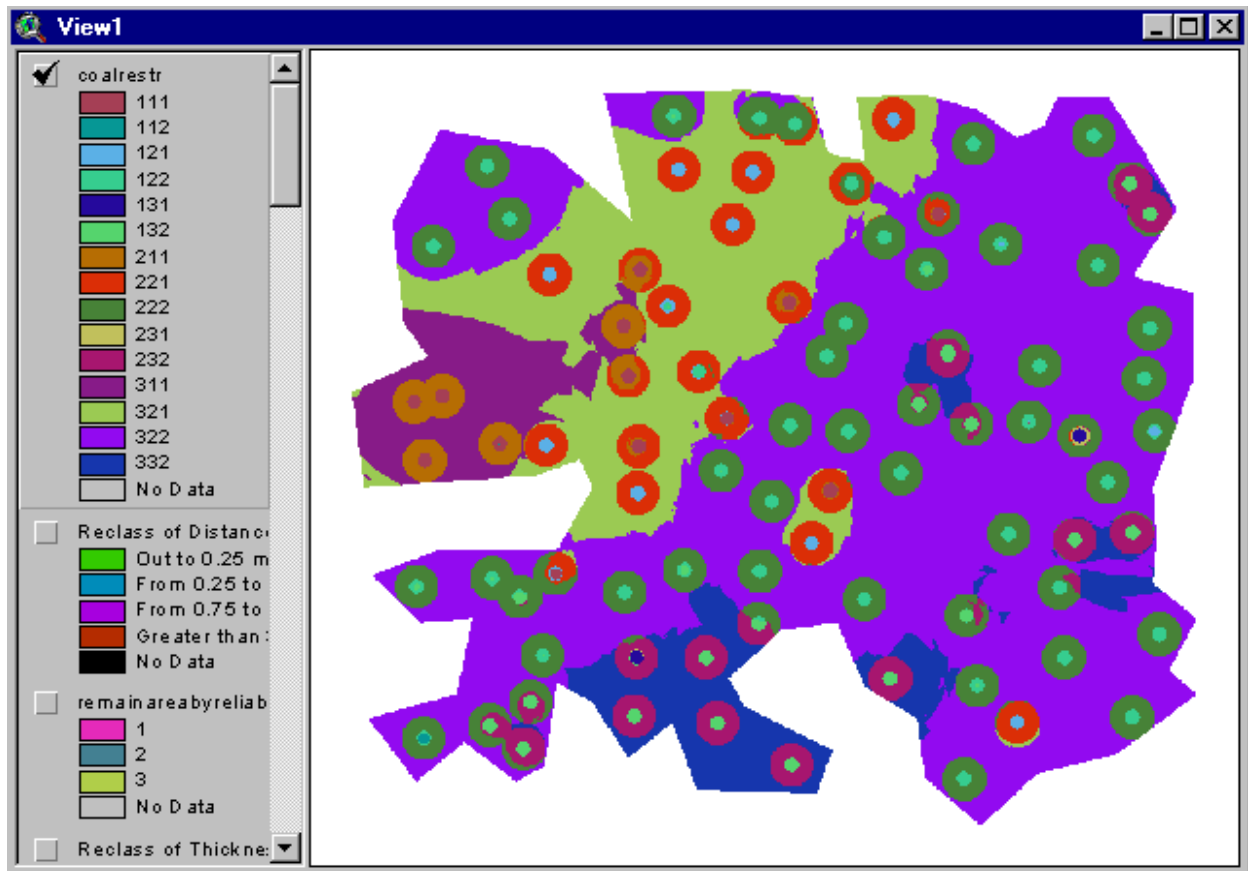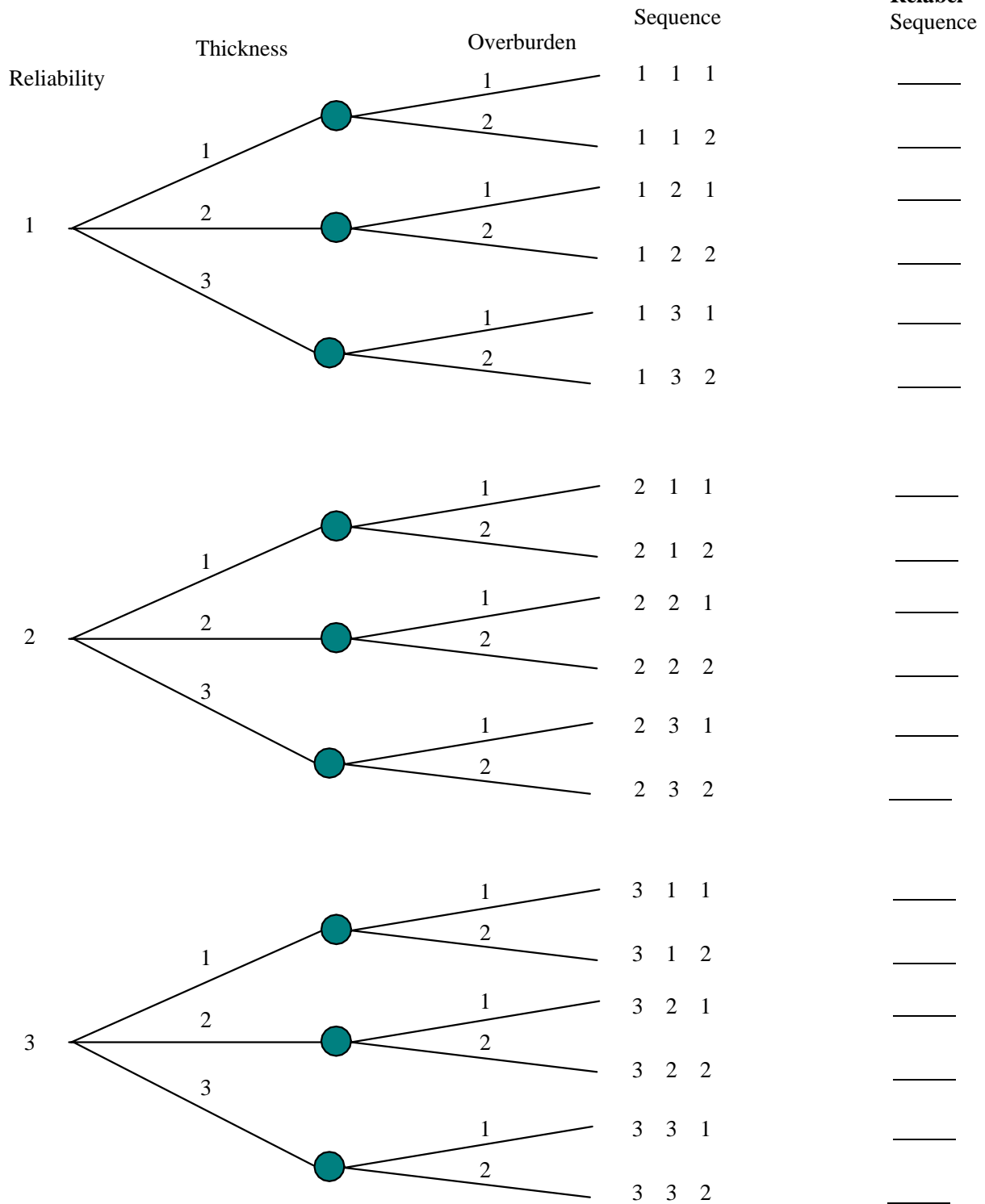
Estimate Tons of Coal, in Each Category and Total

Make Coalrestr active.

Under the Analysis Menu

Click "Summarize Zones"

As the summarizing theme pick **Tons by Cell**

In response to query about chart, click "Cancel"
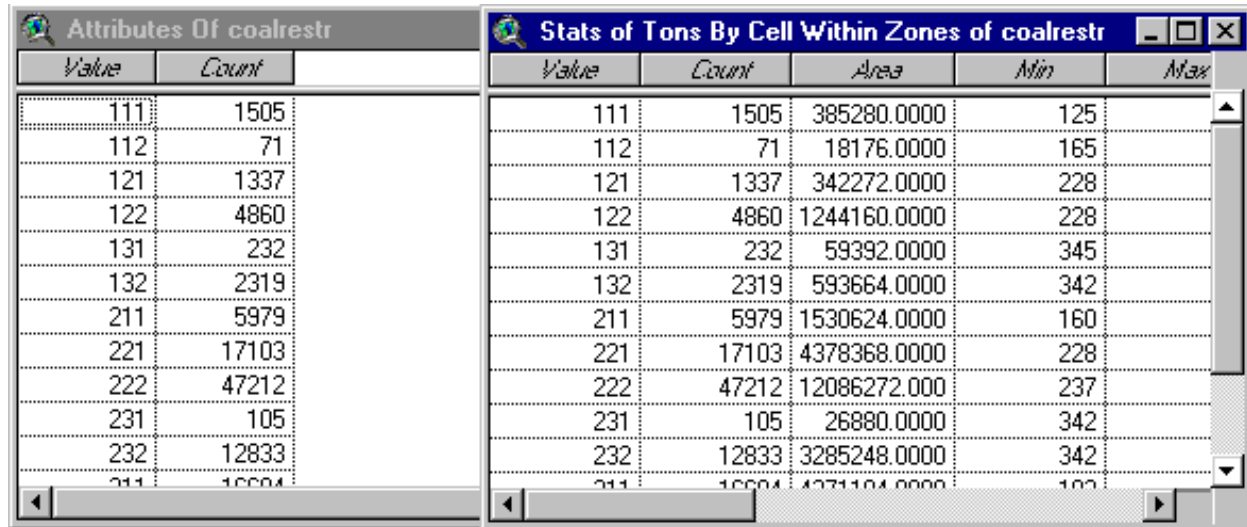
Move the "Stats of Tons by Cell" table to the upper right of the <u>viewable</u> part of the View Window:
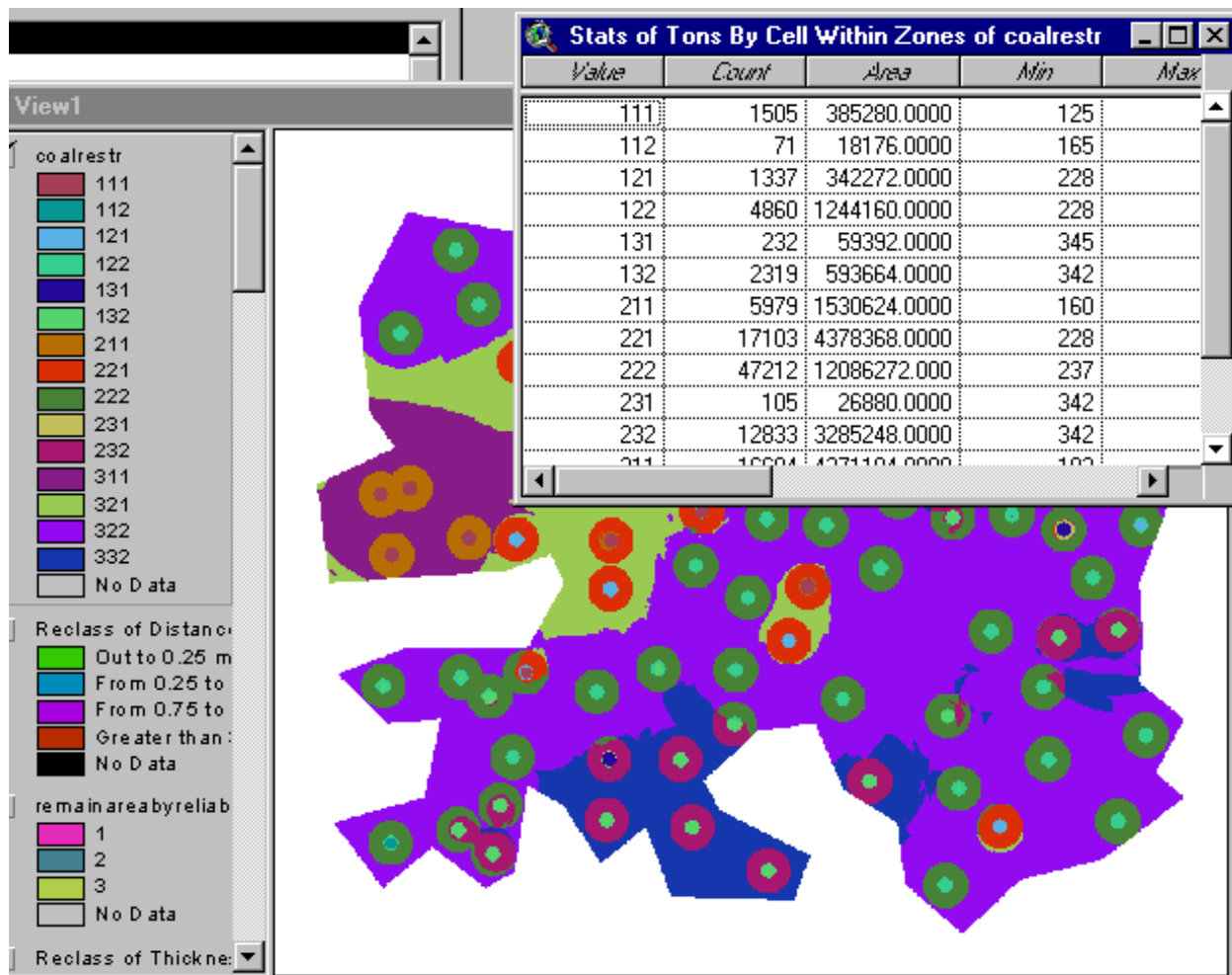
Make View1 Active.

Open the attribute table for **coalrestr**

Align the <u>attribute</u> table and the <u>stats</u> table as follows:

Attributes Of coalrestr		
Value	Count	
111	1505	
112	71	
121	1337	
122	4860	
131	232	
132	2319	
211	5979	
221	17103	
222	47212	
231	105	
232	12833	

Stats of Tons By Cell Within Zones of coalrestr				
Value	Count	Area	Min	Max
111	1505	385280.0000	125	
112	71	18176.0000	165	
121	1337	342272.0000	228	
122	4860	1244160.0000	228	
131	232	59392.0000	345	
132	2319	593664.0000	342	
211	5979	1530624.0000	160	
221	17103	4378368.0000	228	
222	47212	12086272.000	237	
231	105	26880.0000	342	
232	12833	3285248.0000	342	

Notice that the cell count agrees between the 2 tables

Join **Stats to Attributes** using **Value** as the common field:

     Click on **Value** in the Stats table

     Click on **Value** in the Attributes table

     The Join button should be active (6th button in from right); click on it.
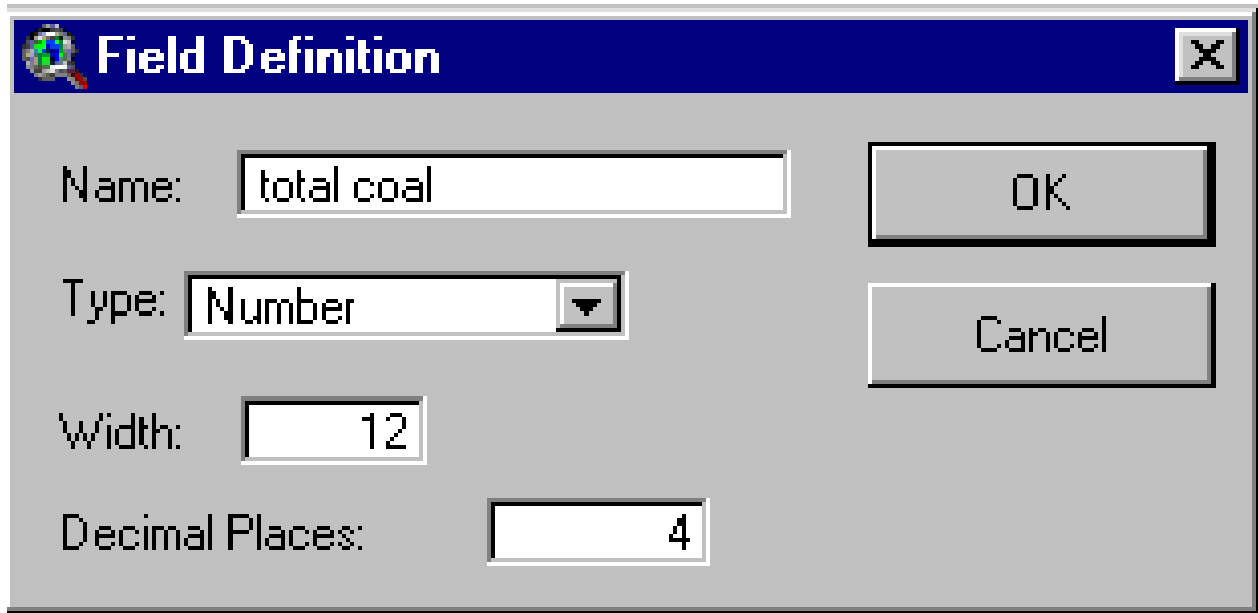
     Under the Table Menu:

          Click "Start Editing"

     Under the Edit Menu

          Click "Add Field"

          Enter these settings in the Field Definition Window:

Field Definition

Name: total coal

Type: Number

Width: 12

Decimal Places: 4

OK

Cancel

Click "OK"

Click "Yes" (to query about field name)

Click on Calculate Button (Looks like calculator)

In the Field Calculator Window enter these settings:
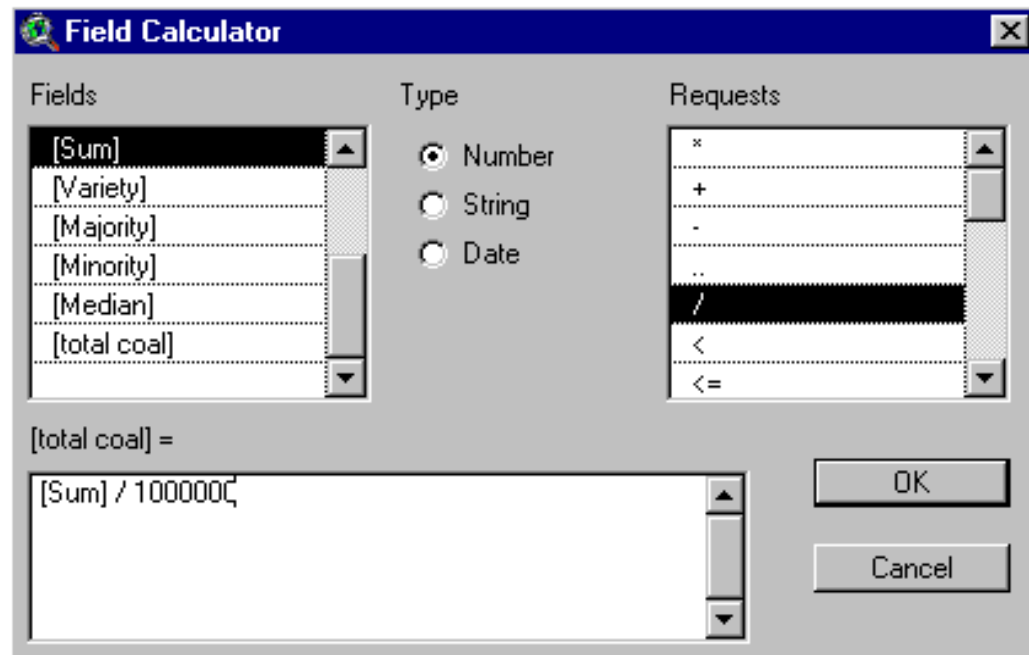
Click "OK"

The field "total coal" is populated with the estimates:

Under the Table Menu

Click "Stop Editing"

In response to query "Save Edits" click "Yes"

Under Table Menu

Click "Remove All Joins"

Click "total coal" field name in the Attribute table

Under the Field Menu

Click "Statistics"

Record Sum
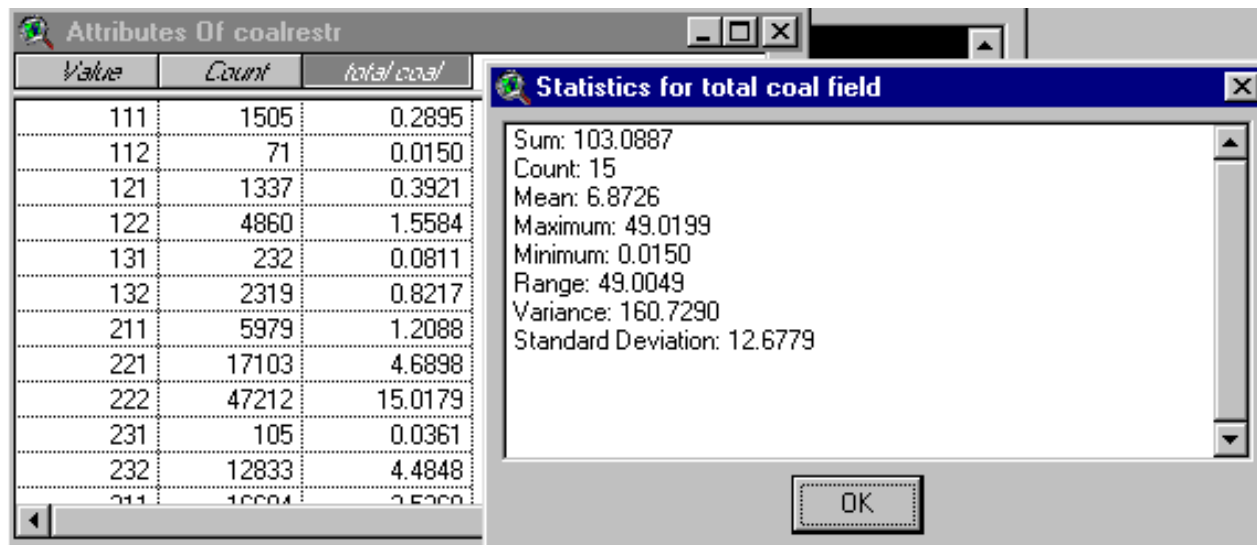
Sum should equal **103.1 million tons**

Click "OK"

This estimate includes the coal in all categories, including coal that falls in restricted areas.

Estimate Tons of Coal (Excluding Restricted Coal) in Each Category

Next, we estimate coal in all categories (reliability, thickness, and overburden) but we exclude coal in the restricted areas.

In Map Calculator, enter this expression:
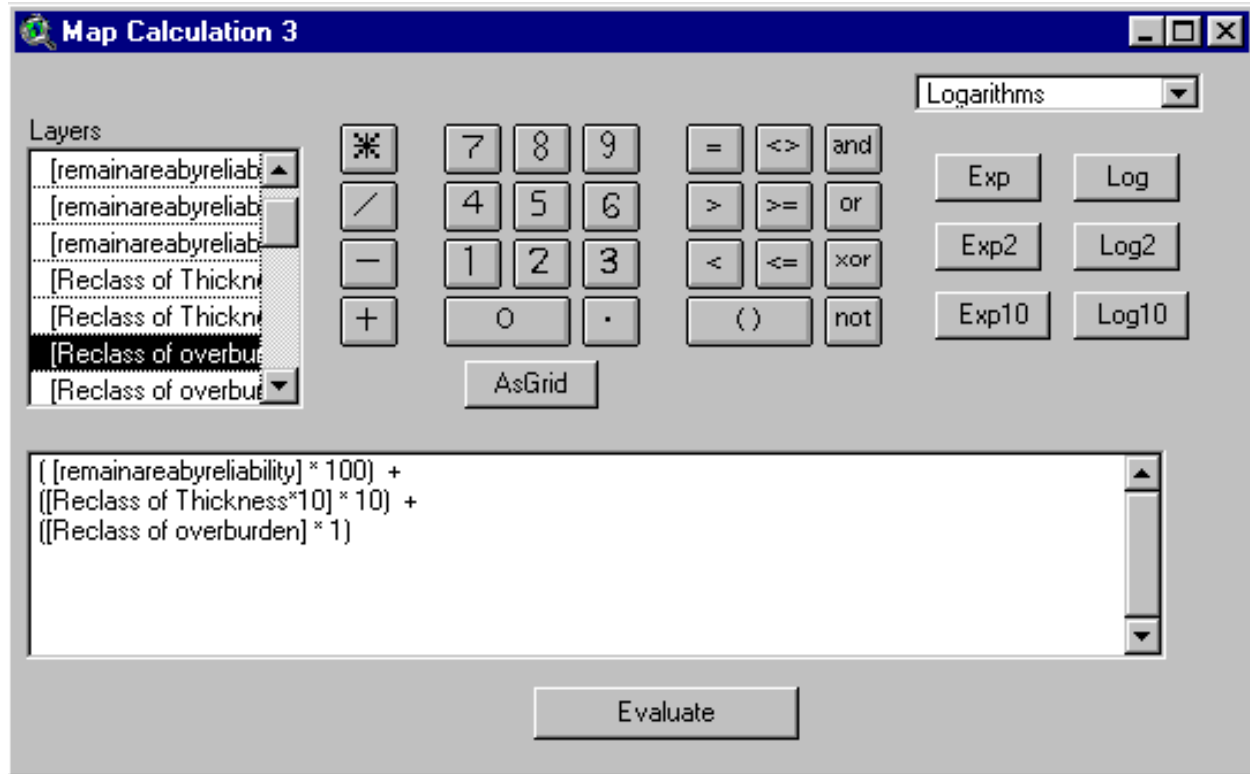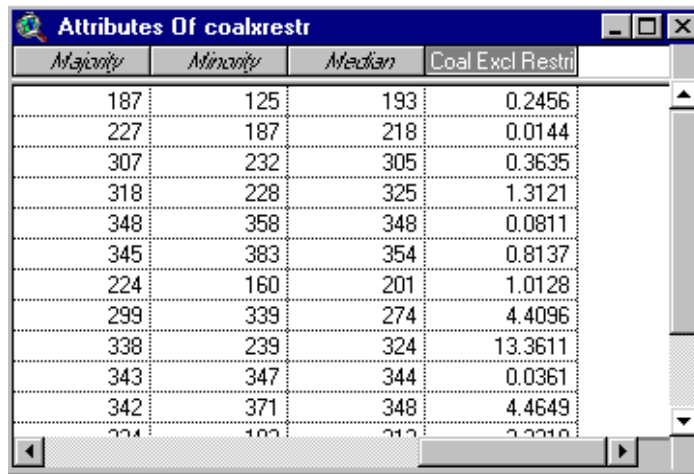
Click "Evaluate"

Under Theme Properties

Rename the grid as: **coalxrestr**
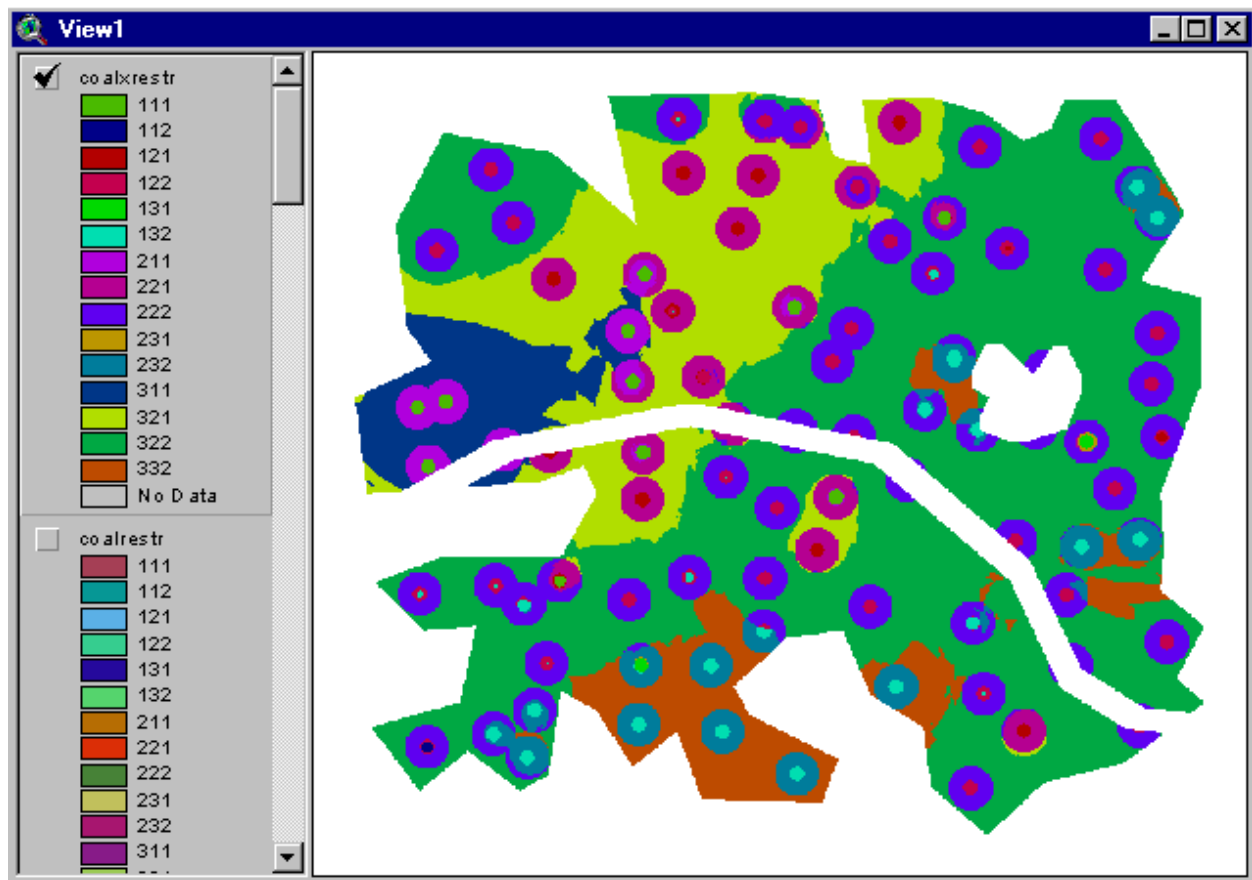
Use procedure, p. A-47 thru A-51 to estimate **Coal Excl Restri:**
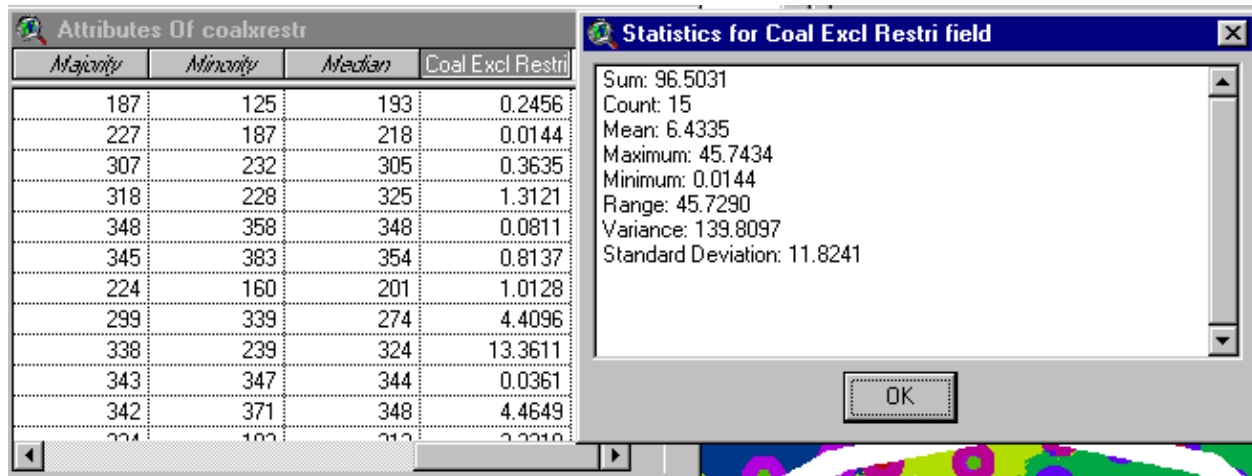
Make field, Coal Excl Restri, active

Under Field Menu

     Click "Statistics":

Notice that the total, 96.5 million tons, is the same estimate we obtained previously (see p. A-37).

Open the tables for

Coalrestr

Coalxrestr

Align the tables as follows:
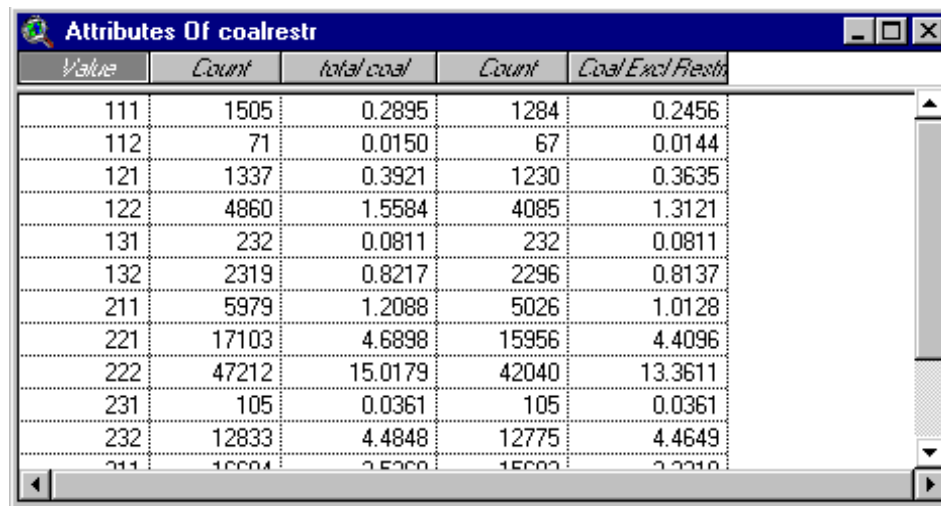
Value	Count	total coal		Value	Count	Coal Excl Restr
111	1505	0.2895		111	1284	0.2456
112	71	0.0150		112	67	0.0144
121	1337	0.3921		121	1230	0.3635
122	4860	1.5584		122	4085	1.3121
131	232	0.0811		131	232	0.0811
132	2319	0.8217		132	2296	0.8137
211	5979	1.2088		211	5026	1.0128
221	17103	4.6898		221	15956	4.4096
222	47212	15.0179		222	42040	13.3611
231	105	0.0361		231	105	0.0361
232	12833	4.4848		232	12775	4.4649

Join Attributes of Coalxrestr to Attributes of Coalrestr

Make the **Value** field active in Attributes of Coalxrestr

Make the **Value** field active in Attributes of Coalrestr

Click the Join Button

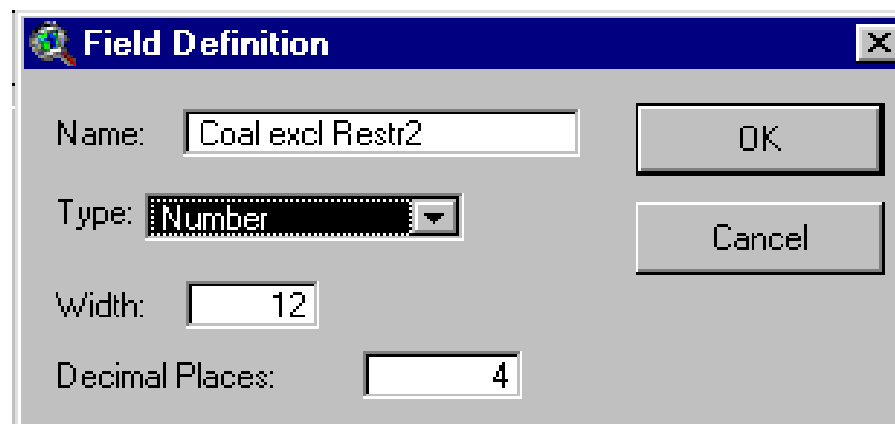Under   the Table Menu

     Click "Start Editing"

     Under the Edit Menu

        Click "Add Field"

In Field Definition, enter these settings:
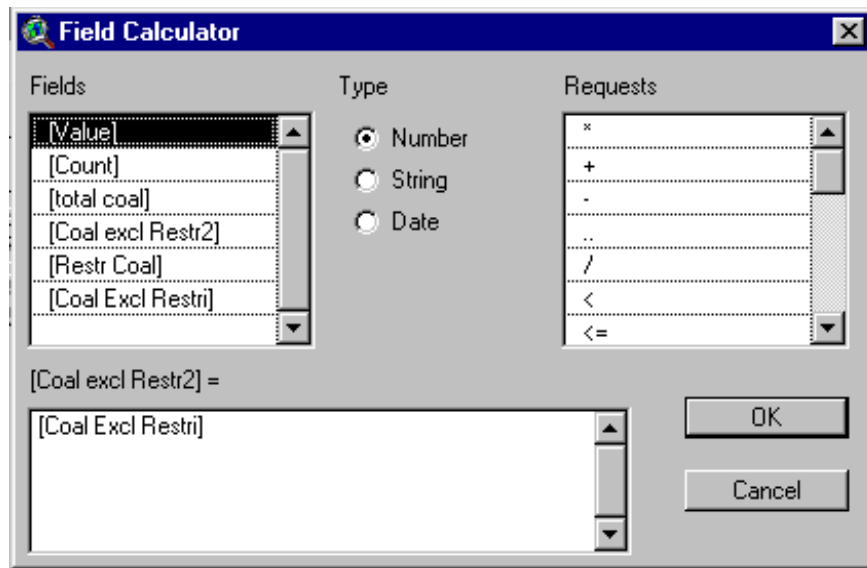
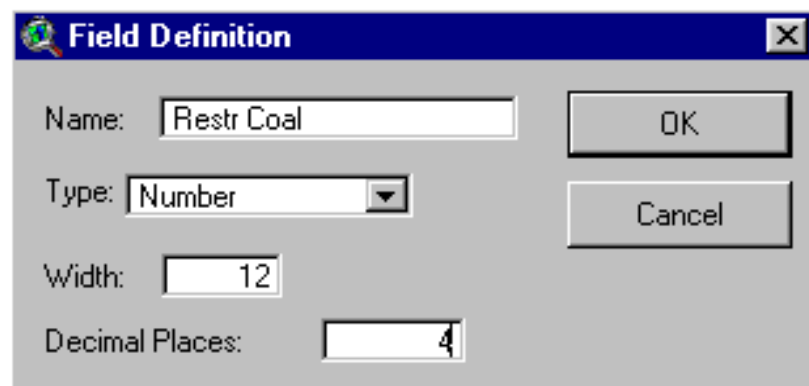Click the Field Calculator and enter these settings:

Click "OK"
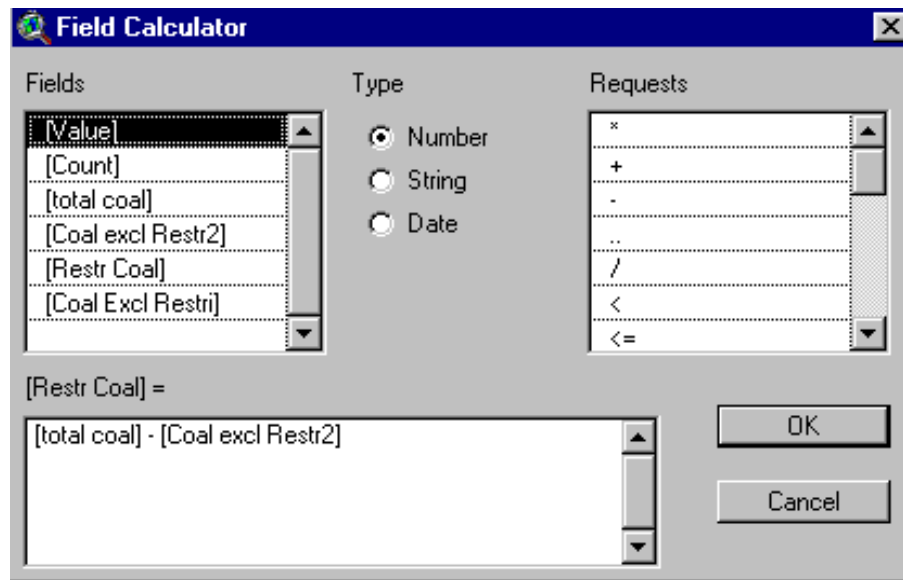
Under the Table Menu

Click "Remove All Joins"

Under the Edit Menu

Click "Add Field"

In Field Definition, enter these settings:

Click the Field Calculator and enter these settings:

Click "OK"

Under the Table Menu

Click "Stop Editing"

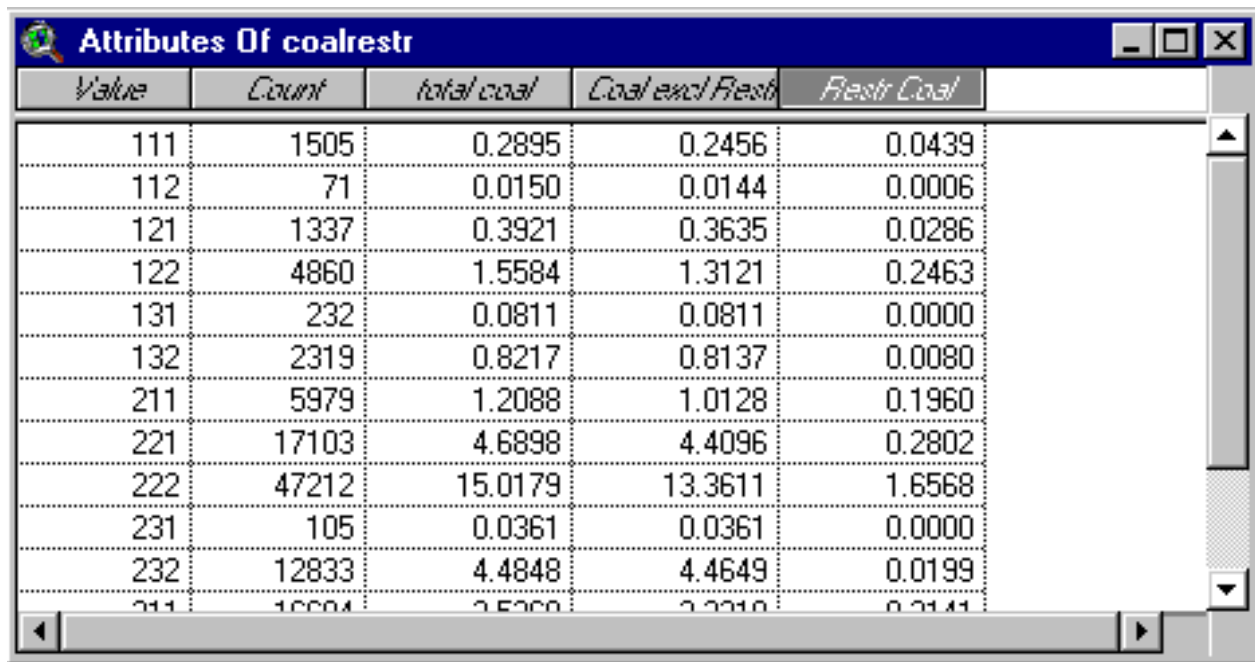In response to "Save Edits", click "Yes"

Now, we have estimates in each of 15 categories (by reliability, thickness, and overburden) for

        Total Coal (which includes coal in restricted areas)
        Coal Excl Restr (removes coal in restricted areas)
        Restr Coal (i.e., the amount of coal in restricted areas)

Save Tables for Further Analysis

To save the Attributes table for further analysis in Excel:

        Make the **Coalrestr** theme active
        Click the "Open Table" button

Attributes Of coalrestr

Value	Count	total coal	Coal excl Restr	Restr Coal
111	1505	0.2895	0.2456	0.0439
112	71	0.0150	0.0144	0.0006
121	1337	0.3921	0.3635	0.0286
122	4860	1.5584	1.3121	0.2463
131	232	0.0811	0.0811	0.0000
132	2319	0.8217	0.8137	0.0080
211	5979	1.2088	1.0128	0.1960
221	17103	4.6898	4.4096	0.2802
222	47212	15.0179	13.3611	1.6568
231	105	0.0361	0.0361	0.0000
232	12833	4.4848	4.4649	0.0199
311	16694	3.5369	3.3219	0.2141

Under File Menu click
     Export
     Pick "dBASE"
     Click "OK"
     Save file as

         c:\sptemp\coalbycats